TOSHIBA

SERVICE MANUAL

DIGITAL PLAIN PAPER COPIER

8070/6570
5570/4580

GENERAL PRECAUTIONS REGARDING THE INSTALLATION AND SERVICE FOR THE COPIER 6570, 5570

The installation and service should be done by a qualified service technician.

1. Transportation/Installation

- When transporting/installing the copier, move it by the casters while lifting the stoppers.
  The copier is quite heavy and weighs approximately 250 kg (551 lb), therefore pay full attention when handling it.
- Be sure to use a dedicated outlet with AC 115V or 120V/20A (220V, 230V, 240V/10A) or more for its power source.
- The copier must be grounded for safety.
  Never ground it to a gas pipe or a water pipe.
- Select a suitable place for installation.
  Avoid excessive heat, high humidity, dust, vibration and direct sunlight.
- Also provide proper ventilation as the copier emits a slight amount of ozone.
- To insure adequate working space for the copying operation, keep a minimum clearance of 80 cm (32”) on the left, 80 cm (32”) on the right and 10 cm (4”) in the rear.

2. Service of Machines

- Basically, be sure to turn the main switch off and unplug the power cord during service.
- Be sure not to touch high-temperature sections such as the exposure lamp, the fuser unit, the damp heater and their periphery.
- Be sure not to touch high-voltage sections such as the chargers, the transfer belt and the high-voltage transformer.
- Be sure not to touch rotating/operating sections such as gears, belts, pulleys, fan, etc.
- When servicing the machines with the main switch turned on, be sure not to touch live sections and rotating/operating sections. Avoid exposure to laser radiation.
- Use suitable measuring instruments and tools.
- Avoid exposure to laser radiation during servicing.
  - Avoid direct exposure to beam.
  - Do not insert tools, parts, etc. that are reflective into the path of the laser beam.
  - Remove all watches, rings, bracelets, etc. that are reflective.

3. Main Service Parts for Safety

- The breaker, door switch, fuse, thermostat, thermofuse, thermistor, etc. are particularly important for safety. Be sure to handle/install them properly.

4. Cautionary Labels

- During servicing, be sure to check the rating plate and the cautionary labels such as “Unplug the power cord during service”, “Hot area”, “Laser warning label” etc. to see if there is any dirt on their surface and whether they are properly stuck to the copier.

5. **Disposition of Consumable Parts/Packing Materials**
   - Regarding the recovery and disposal of the copier, supplies, consumable parts and packing materials, it is recommended to follow the relevant local regulations or rules.

6. **When parts are disassembled, reassembly is basically the reverse of disassembly unless otherwise noted in this manual or other related documents. Be careful not to reassemble small parts such as screws, washers, pins, E-rings, toothed washers in the wrong places.**

7. **Basically, the machine should not be operated with any parts removed or disassembled.**

8. **Precautions Against Static Electricity**
   - The PC board must be stored in an anti-electrostatic bag and handled carefully using a wrist-band, because the ICs on it may become damaged due to static electricity.

   Caution: Before using the wrist band, pull out the power cord plug of the copier and make sure that there is no uninsulated charged objects in the vicinity.

Caution	**:**	Dispose of used RAM-IC's (including lithium battery) according to the manufacturer's instructions.
Vorsicht	**:**	Entsorgung des gebrauchten RAM-IC's (inklusive der Lithium Batterie) nach Angaben des Herstellers.

1. SPECIFICATIONS • ACCESSORIES • OPTIONS • SUPPLIES

1.1 Specifications

- Copy process ..... Indirect electrophotographic process (dry)
- Type ..... Console type
- Original platen ..... Fixed type (left side, center reference)
- Acceptable originals ..... Sheets, books, and 3-dimensional objects
  When the document feeder is used, sheet originals only (60 to 90 g/m^2, or 16 lb. to 24 lb.) (without carbon backing, staples and tape)
  Maximum size: A3 (Ledger)

Item	6500/6570 (5500/5570)	4580	8000/8070
Copy speed	65 cpm (55cpm)	45 cpm	80cpm
PM cycle	400K (340K)	280K	440K
Region	NAD, TWD, SAD, ASD, AUD, MJD, UKD	NAD, ASD, MJD	NAD, TWD, SAD, ASD, AUD MJD, UKD

- Copy speed (CPM)

Paper supply	LCF		Cassette		Manual feeding			
					Size selected		No size selected	
Model / Paper size	6570 6500 5570 5500	8070 8000	6570 6500 5570 5500	8070 8000	6570 6500 5570 5500	8070 8000	6570 6500 5570 5500	8070 8000
A4, B5, A5-R LT, ST-R	65 55 45	80	65 55 45	76	48 48 45	48	33 33 25	33
A4-R, B5-R LT-R	—	—	51 45 35	61	42 42 35	42	33 33 25	33
B4, FOLIO LG, COMP	—	—	44 39 30	52	37 37 30	37	33 33 25	33
A3, LD	—	—	38 34 25	43	33 33 25	33	33 33 25	33

* Manually placed originals, one-sided and continuous copy modes

(1) In the models of 6500/6570/5500/5570

* In the case of the automatic document feeder, 65 (55) sheets/minute when an A4 (LT) size single-sided original is fed in the continuous copy mode at original size by the LCF.
* Re-processing speed of automatic duplexing unit .... A4, A5-R, LT, ST-R : 65 (55) sheets/minute
  A4-R, LT-R : 51 (45) sheets/minute
  LG : 44 (39) sheets/minute
  A3, LD : 38 (34) sheets/minute

Note: CPM in a parenthesis is the specification of the 5500/5570.

(2) In the models of 8000/8070 (4580)

* In the case of the automatic documnent feeder, 65 (45) sheets/minute when an A4(LT) size single-sided original is fed in the continuous copy mode at original size by the LCF.
* Re-processing speed of automatic duplexing unit .... A4, A5-R, LT, ST-R : 70 (45) sheets/minute
  A4-R, LT-R : 57 (35) sheets/minute
  LG : 50 (30) sheets/minute
  A3, LD : 42 (25) sheets/minute

Note: CPM in a parenthesis is the specification of the 4580.

- System copy speed (CPM)

Copy mode		6500/6570	5500/5570	4580	8000/8070
Single-sided originals	1 set	42	38	33	42
↓	3 sets	55	45	41	61
Single-sided copies	5 sets	59	51	42	67
Single-sided originals	1 set	32	28	24	32
↓	3 sets	43	39	33	44
Duplex copies	5 sets	48	43	36	49
Two-sided originals	1 set	23	22	17	23
↓	3 sets	39	35	31	40
Duplex copies	5 sets	45	41	36	47
Two-sided originals	1 set	28	28	28	28
↓	3 sets	45	42	37	49
Single-sided copies	5 sets	52	46	40	58

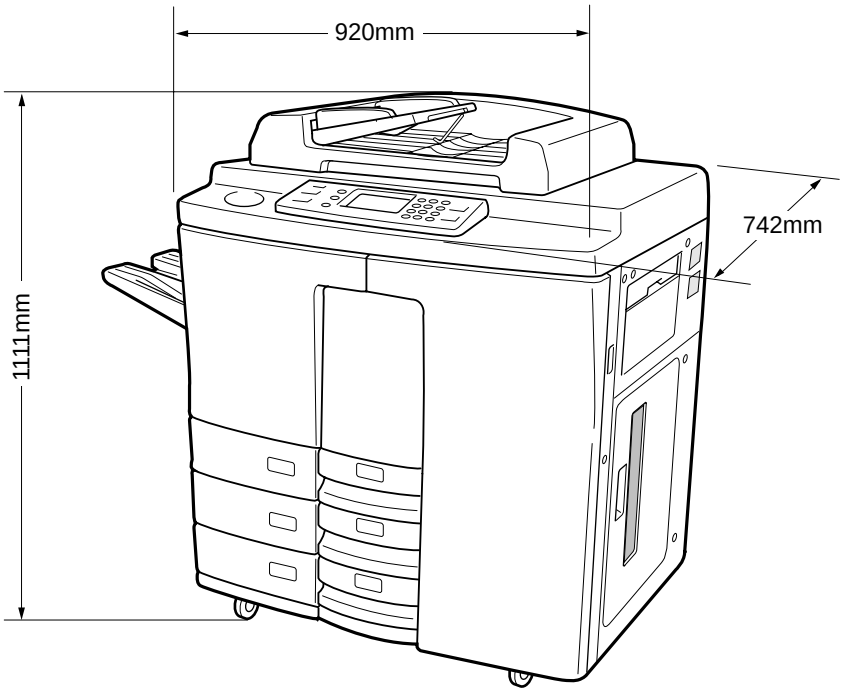
* Ten A4 or LT originals are set in the ADF. This includes the first copy time.

- Copy paper

	Cassette	Duplexing	LCF	Manual feeding	Note
Size	A3 ~ A5-R LD ~ ST-R		A4, LT	A3 ~ A5-R LD ~ ST-R	Adjustable to a non-standard size
Thickness	64 ~ 80 g/m^2			64 ~ 130 g/m^2	
Special paper	—	—	—	Tracing paper, label paper, OHP film	Our company recommended

- First copy time ..... 3.6 seconds max. (A4 or LT, LCF, 100% manually placed original)
- Warm-up time ..... Approx. 420 sec.
- Multiple copying ..... 1 to 999, numerical keypad entry
- Reproduction ratio ..... Fixed ratio: 100% or 101% (selected in adjustment mode)
  Zoom ratios: 25 ~ 400% (in 1% steps)
- Paper supply ..... Automatic feeding: LCF (capacity: 4000 sheets), 3 cassettes (capacity: 500 sheets each), manual bypass feeding (capacity: 100 sheets, 64 to 80 g/m^2)
  Manual feeding: 64 to 130 g/m^2 (80 to 130 g/m^2 paper is feed one sheet at a time)
- Original capacity (automatic document feeder)
  ..... A4, A4-R, A5-R, LT, LT-R, ST-R: 60 sheets
  LG: 35 sheets
  A3, LD: 30 sheets
- Paper capacity (automatic duplexing unit)
  ..... 60 sheets (Our company recommended paper 80 g/m^2)
- Toner supply ..... Automatic density detection and replenishment
  Toner hopper supply
- Exposure control ..... Automatic control and manually selectable (11 steps)
- Weight ..... Copier: 250 kg

- Power source ..... AC115V/20A, AC 220 • 240V/10A
- Power consumption ..... 2.0 kW or less
  * The power of the automatic document feeder, automatic duplexing unit and LCF is supplied from the copier body.
- Total counter ..... Mechanical total counter
- Machine size ..... Refer to the figure below



* The specifications and external appearance are subject to change without notice in the interest of product improvement.

1.2 Accessories

		Remarks
Unpacking Instructions	1 pc.	
Operator's Manual	1 pc.	Except MJD
Drum	1 pc.	
Drum cover	1 pc.	
CS card	1 pc.	For MJD
Sheet CE	1 pc.	
Original feed tray	1 pc.	
Set-up report	1 set	For NAD, MJD

1.3 Options

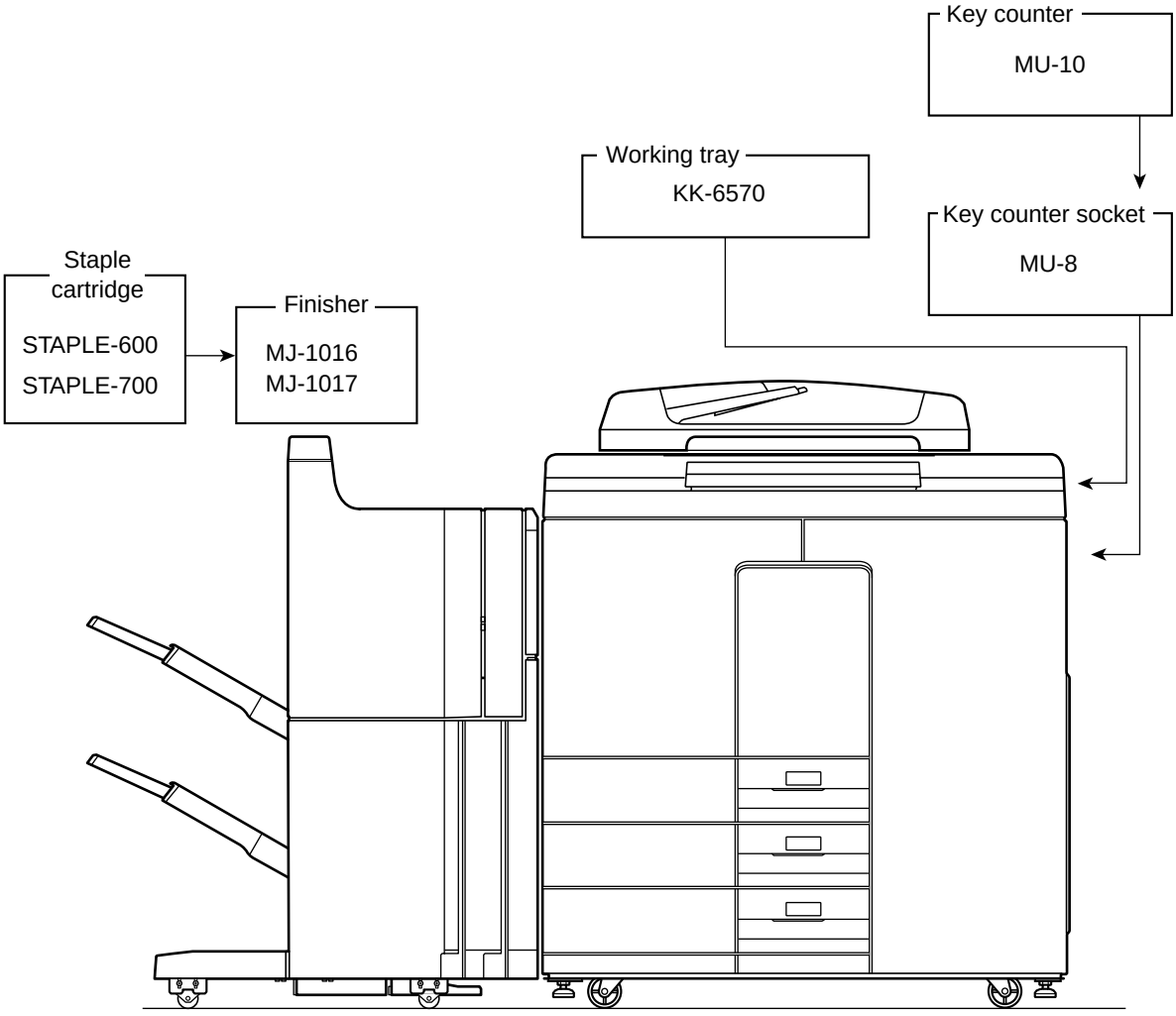
	DP4580,5570.6570,8070	DP5500,6500,8000
Finisher	MJ-1006, MJ-1007	MJ-1015, MJ1016
Hole punch	—	MJ-6002N MJ-6002E MJ-6002F MJ-6002S
Staple cartridge	STAPLE-600, STAPLE-700	
Key counter	MU-8, MU-10	
Working tray	KK-6570	

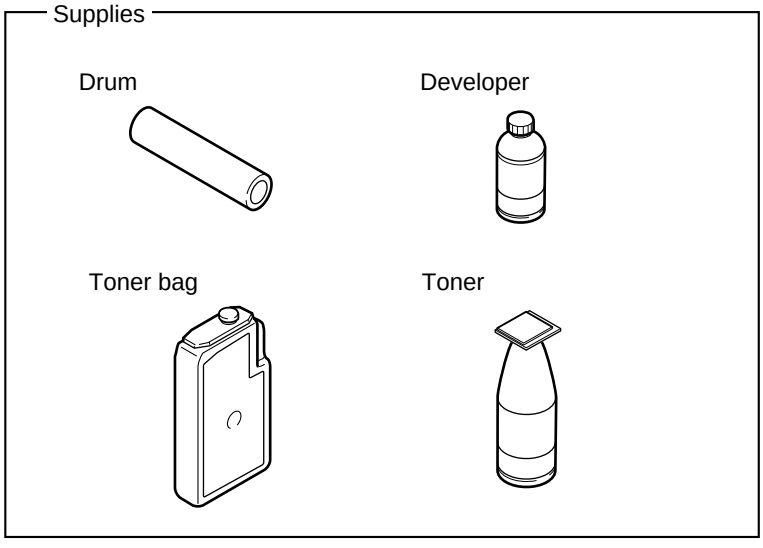
1.4 Supplies

Drum	OD-6570
Developer	D-6570
Toner bag	TB-6550, TB-6550E
Toner	T-6570, T-6570E

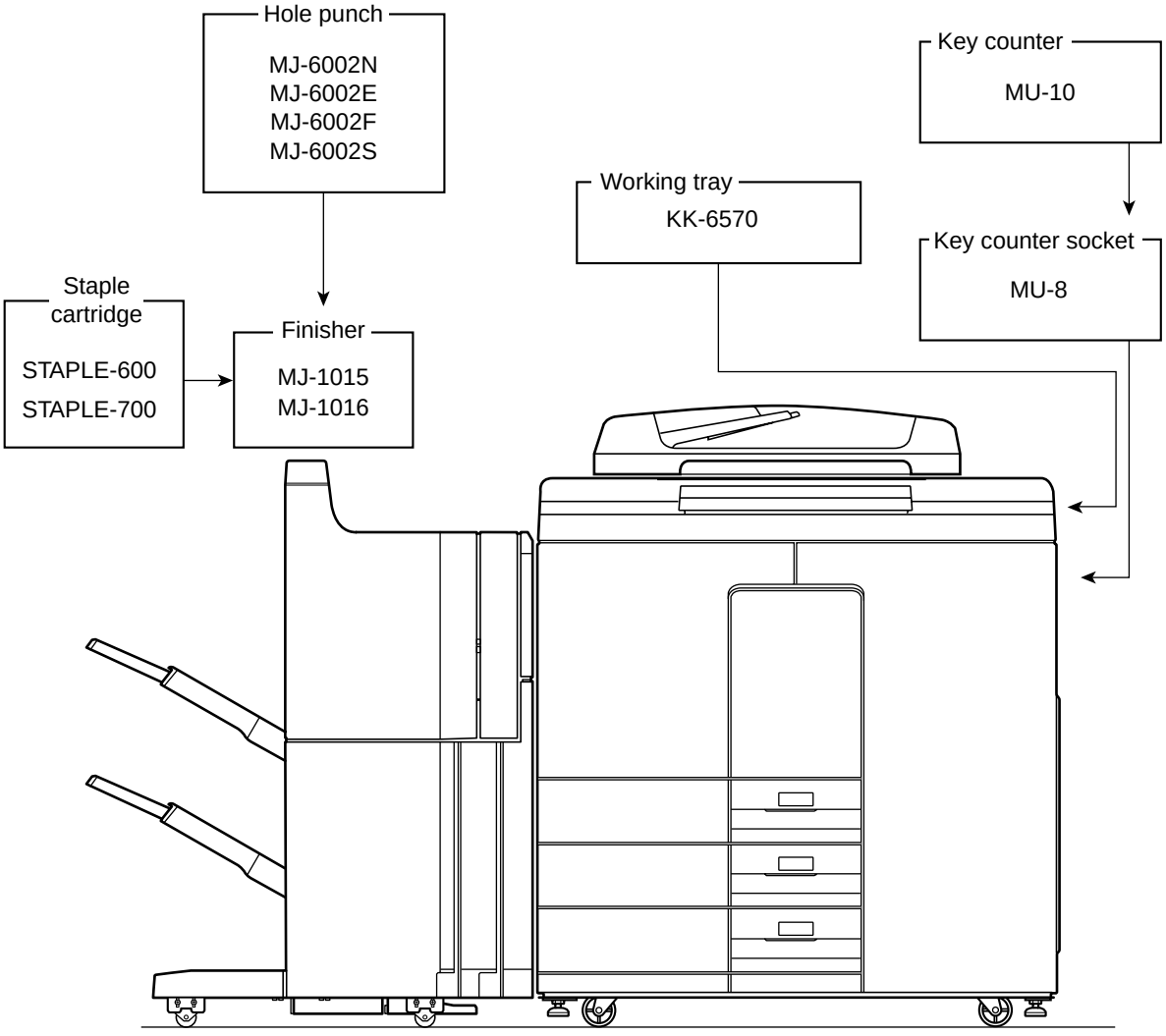
1.5 System List

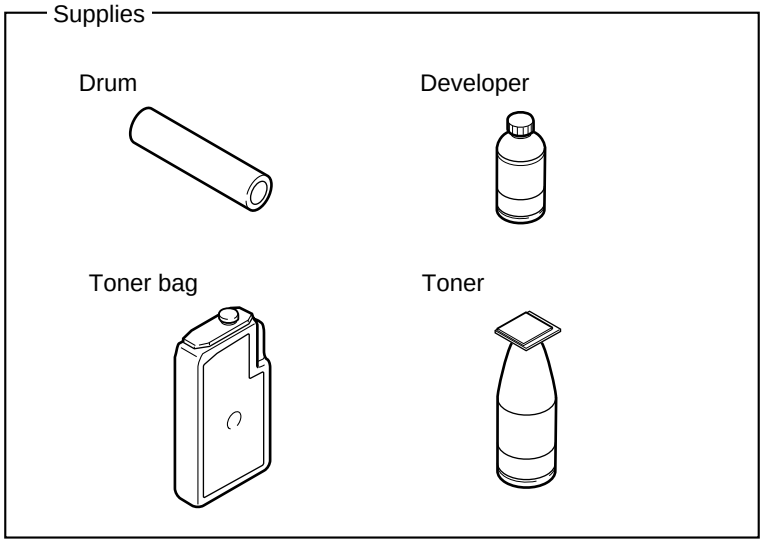
1) For DP4580/5570/6570/8070





2) For DP5500/6500/8000



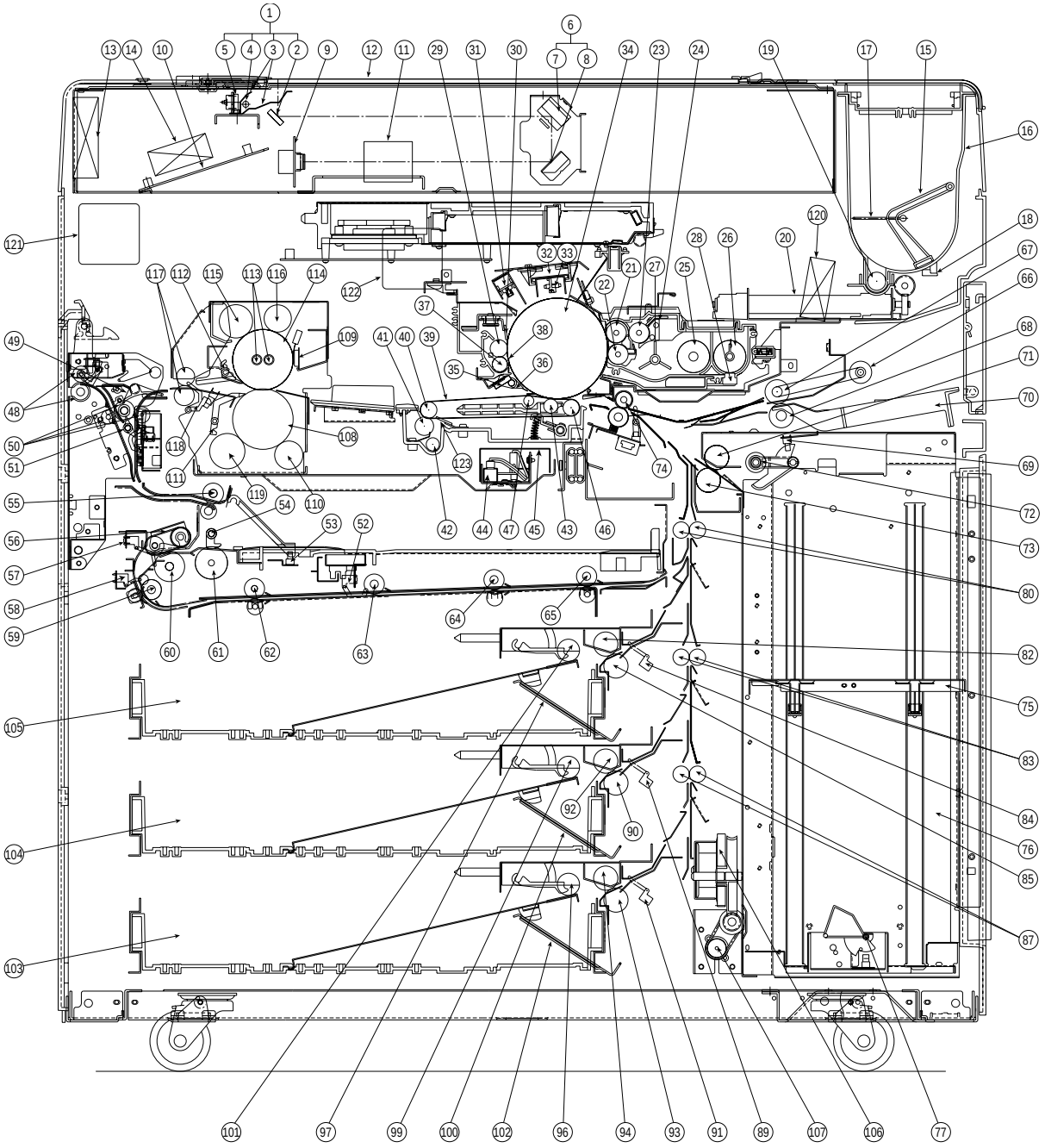


2. OUTLINE OF THE MACHINE

2.1 Sectional Views and Electrical Parts Location Diagram

2.1.1 Sectional View

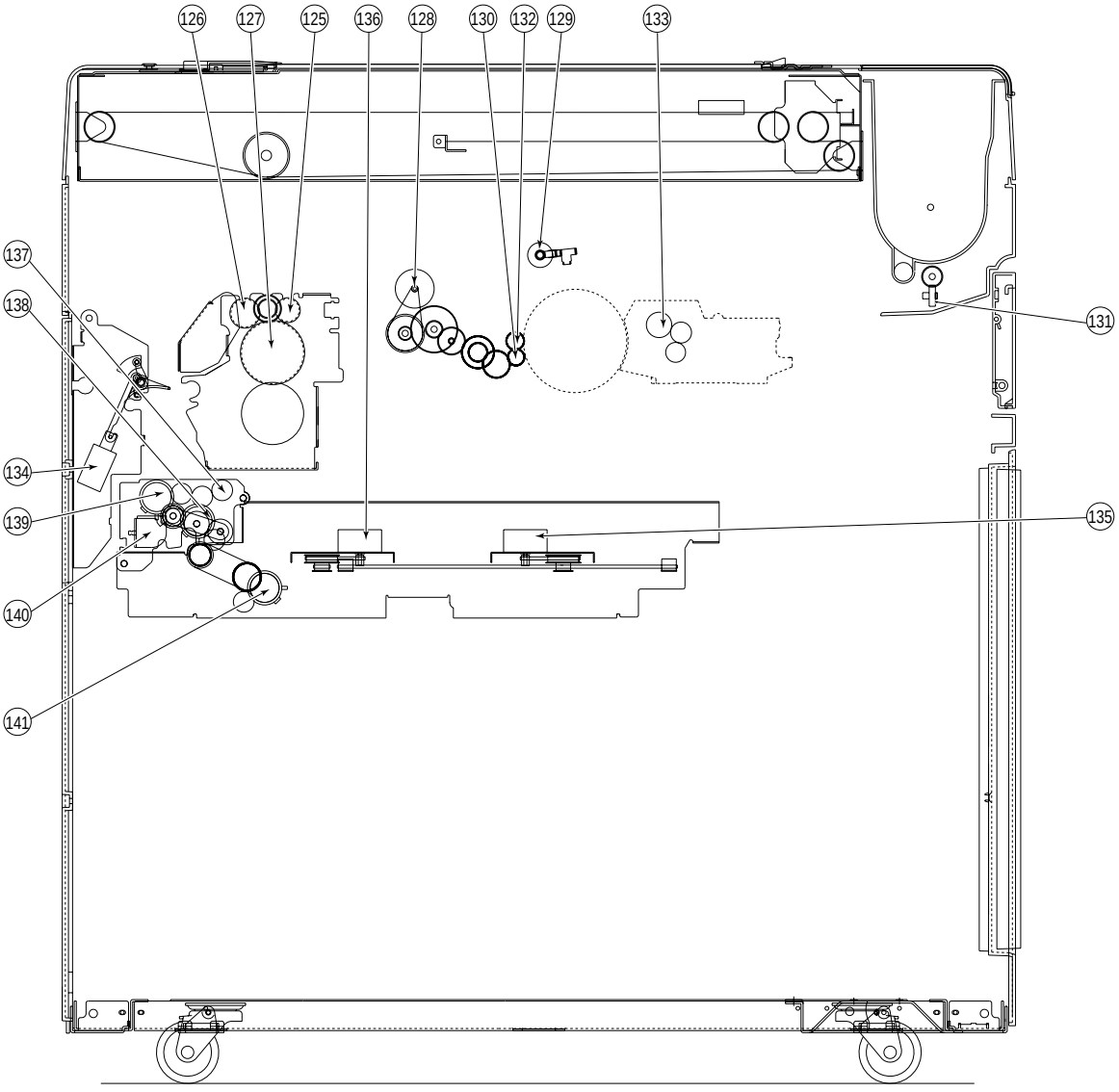
[A] Front views of copiers excluding drive systems



No.	Name	No.	Name
1	Carriage 1	39	Transfer belt
2	Mirror 1	40	Transfer belt drive roller
3	Reflector	41	Transfer belt cleaning brush
4	Exposure lamp	42	Transfer belt/toner recovery auger
5	Thermostat	43	Transfer belt power supply roller
6	Carriage 2	44	Lower damp heater
7	Mirror 2	45	Lower damp heater cover
8	Mirror 3	46	Transfer belt follower roller
9	CCD drive PC board	47	Transfer belt separation auxiliary roller
10	Scanner control PC board	48	Exit roller
11	Lens	49	ADU/eject selector gate
12	Original glass	50	ADU/reversal transport roller
13	Scanner optical cooling fan	51	ADU/ reversal selector gate
14	SLG board cooling fan	52	TR1 sensor
15	Toner empty detection lever	53	Empty sensor
16	Toner hopper	54	Holding gate
17	Toner stirrer lever	55	ADU inlet/reversal roller
18	Toner empty switch	56	Separation belt
19	Spiral shaft	57	Feed sensor
20	Toner transport auger unit	58	Aligning sensor
21	Upper magnetic roller	59	ADU/aligning roller
22	Lower magnetic roller	60	Feed roller
23	Transport roller	61	Pick-up roller
24	Leveler	62	Paper transport roller 1
25	Mixer 1	63	Paper transport roller 2
26	Mixer 2	64	Paper transport roller 3
27	Supply/recovery paddle	65	Paper transport roller 4
28	Auto-toner sensor	66	Manual pickup roller
29	Fur brush	67	Manual feed roller
30	Main blade	68	Manual feed separation roller
31	Discharge LED	69	LCF paper empty switch (S26)/tray up switch (S39)
32	Main charger	70	Manual feed tray
33	Main charger wire cleaner	71	LCF feed roller
34	Drum	72	LCF pick-up roller
35	Toner adhesion sensor	73	LCF separation roller
36	Separation claw	74	Aligning roller
37	Toner recovery auger	75	Elevator tray
38	Recovery blade	76	LCF (large capacity feeder)

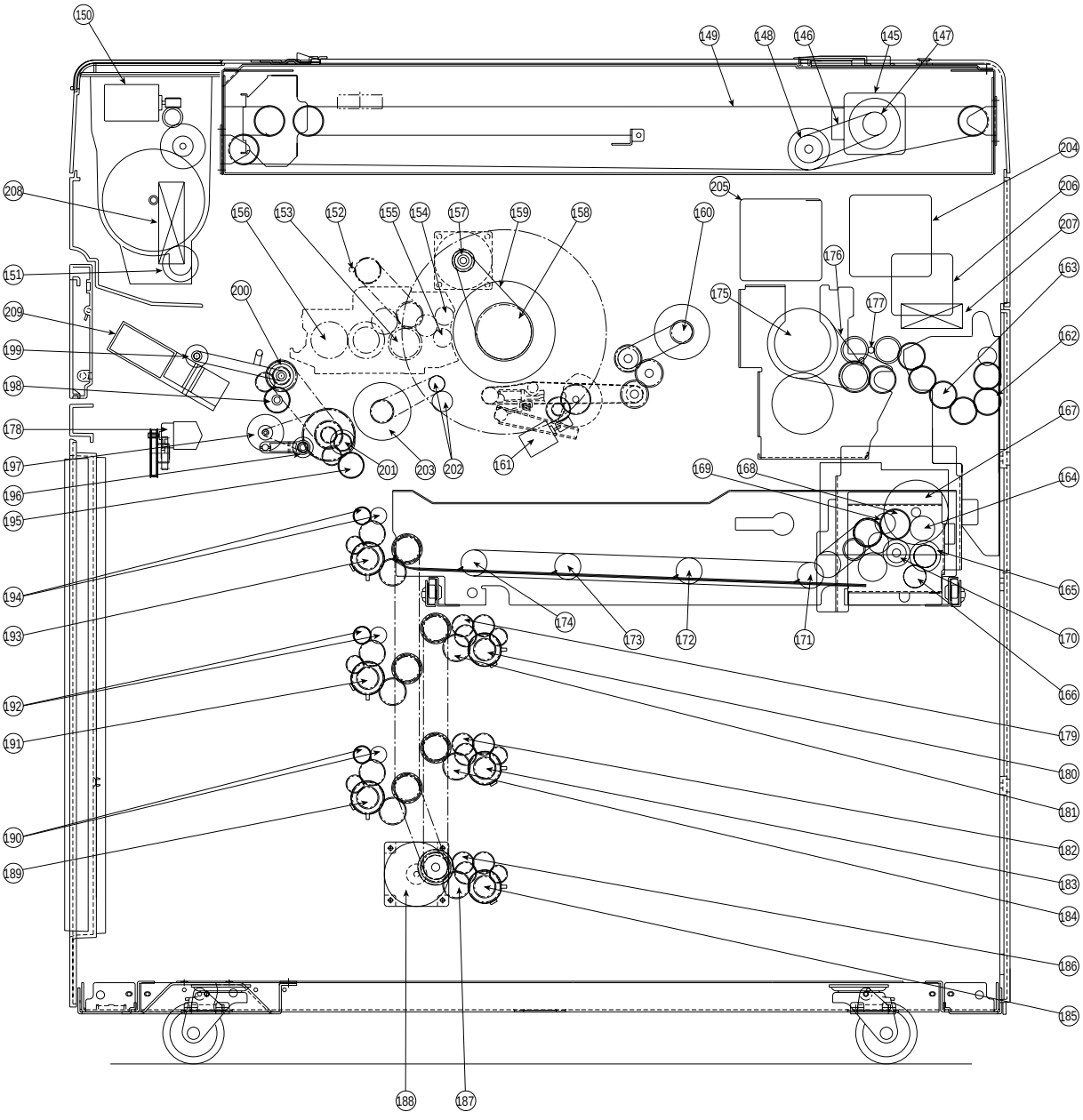
No.	Name	No.	Name
77	Tray bottom switch (S40)	104	Middle cassette
80	PFP upper aligning roller	105	Upper cassette
82	PFP upper feed roller	106	Wire rewind roller
83	PFP middle aligning roller	107	Tray motor (M30)
84	PFP upper paper switch (S28)	108	Lower heat roller
85	PFP upper separation roller	109	Thermostat
87	PFP lower aligning roller	110	Cleaning roller 3
89	PFP middle paper start switch (S32)	111	Lower separation claw
90	PFP middle separation roller	112	Upper separation claw
91	PFP lower paper start switch (S36)	113	Heater lamp
92	PFP middle feed roller	114	Upper heat roller
93	PFP lower separation roller	115	Cleaning roller 1
94	PFP lower Feed roller	116	Cleaning roller 2
96	PFP lower pick-up roller	117	Exit roller
97	Upper elevator	118	Exit switch (S10)
99	PFP middle pick-up roller	119	Cleaning roller 4
100	Middle elevator	120	Manual feed inlet fan
101	PFP upper pick-up roller	121	System fan
102	Lower elevator	122	Laser unit fan
103	Lower cassette	123	Transfer belt cleaning blade

[B] Front Drive System



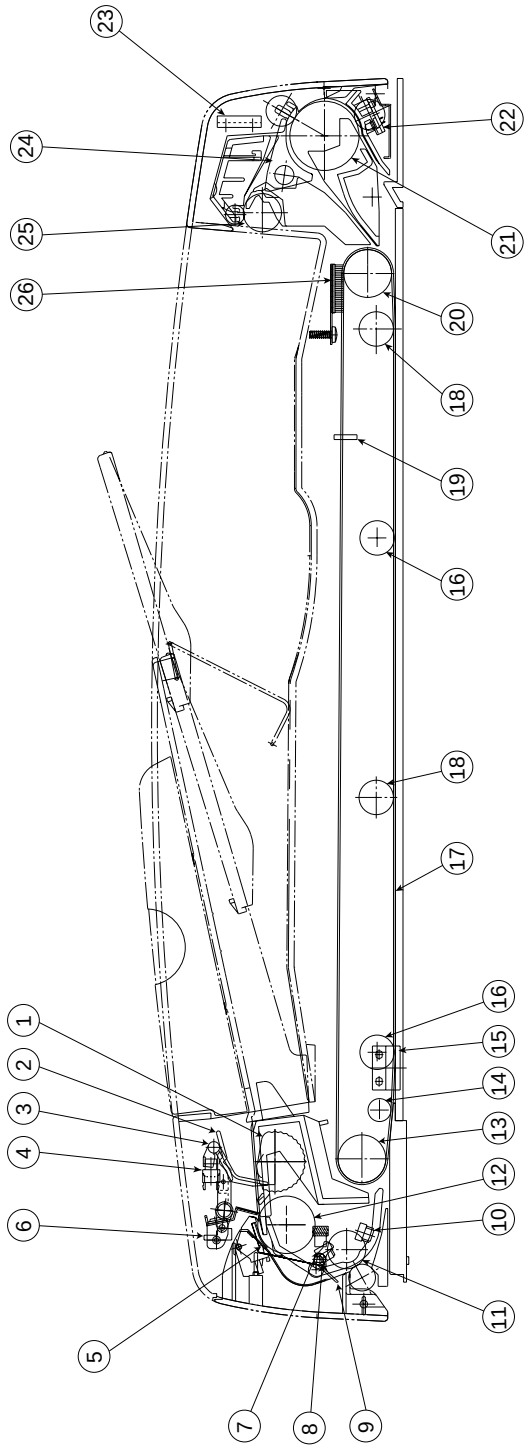
No.	Name	No.	Name
125	Cleaning roller 2	134	Gate solenoid
126	Cleaning roller 1	135	End guide motor (M8)
127	Upper heat roller	136	Side guide motor (M9)
128	Belt for the toner auger (M15)	137	ADU inlet/reversal roller
129	Main cleaning motor (M11)	138	Forward rotation clutch
130	Toner recovery auger	139	Reversal clutch
131	Toner transport auger	140	Holding gate solenoid
132	Fur brush	141	Transport roller clutch
133	Transport roller (G23)		

[C] Rear Drive System



No.	Name	No.	Name
145	Scanning motor (M1)	178	Toner transport motor (M15)
146	Drive belt	179	PFP upper feed roller
147	Drive pulley	180	Upper feed roller clutch (CL6)
148	Follower pulley	181	PFP upper separation roller
149	Drive wire	182	PFP middle feed roller
150	Toner motor (M14)	183	Middle feed roller clutch (CL10)
151	Toner transport auger	184	PFP middle separation roller
152	Developer motor (M16)	185	Lower feed roller clutch (CL11)
153	Paddle	186	PFP lower feed roller
154	Upper magnetic roller	187	PFP lower separation roller
155	Lower magnetic roller	188	Pedestal motor (M31)
156	Mixer	189	Lower aligning roller clutch (CL9)
157	Drum motor (M12)	190	PFP lower aligning roller
158	Drum pulley (Drum)	191	Middle aligning roller clutch (CL8)
159	Drum drive belt	192	PFP middle aligning roller
160	Belt transport unit drive motor (M25)	193	Upper aligning roller clutch (CL7)
161	Belt transport unit contact/release cam motor (M26)	194	PFP upper aligning roller
162	Exit roller	195	LCF separation roller
163	ADU/reversal transport roller	196	LCF pick-up roller
164	Coupling	197	Feed motor (M32)
165	Aligning clutch	198	Manual feed separation roller
166	Aligning roller	199	Manual pick-up roller
167	ADU motor	200	Manual feed roller
168	Feed clutch	201	LCF feed roller
169	Separation belt	202	Aligning rollers
170	Feed roller	203	Aligning motor (M17)
171	Paper transport roller 1	204	Slot exhaust fan (M23)
172	Paper transport roller 2	205	Exit fan (M19)
173	Paper transport roller 3	206	Heater fan (M20)
174	Paper transport roller 4	207	Reversal fan (M27)
175	Upper heat roller pulley	208	Duct in fan (M22)
176	Fuser drive belt	209	Developer fan (M23)
177	Heat roller motor (M18)		

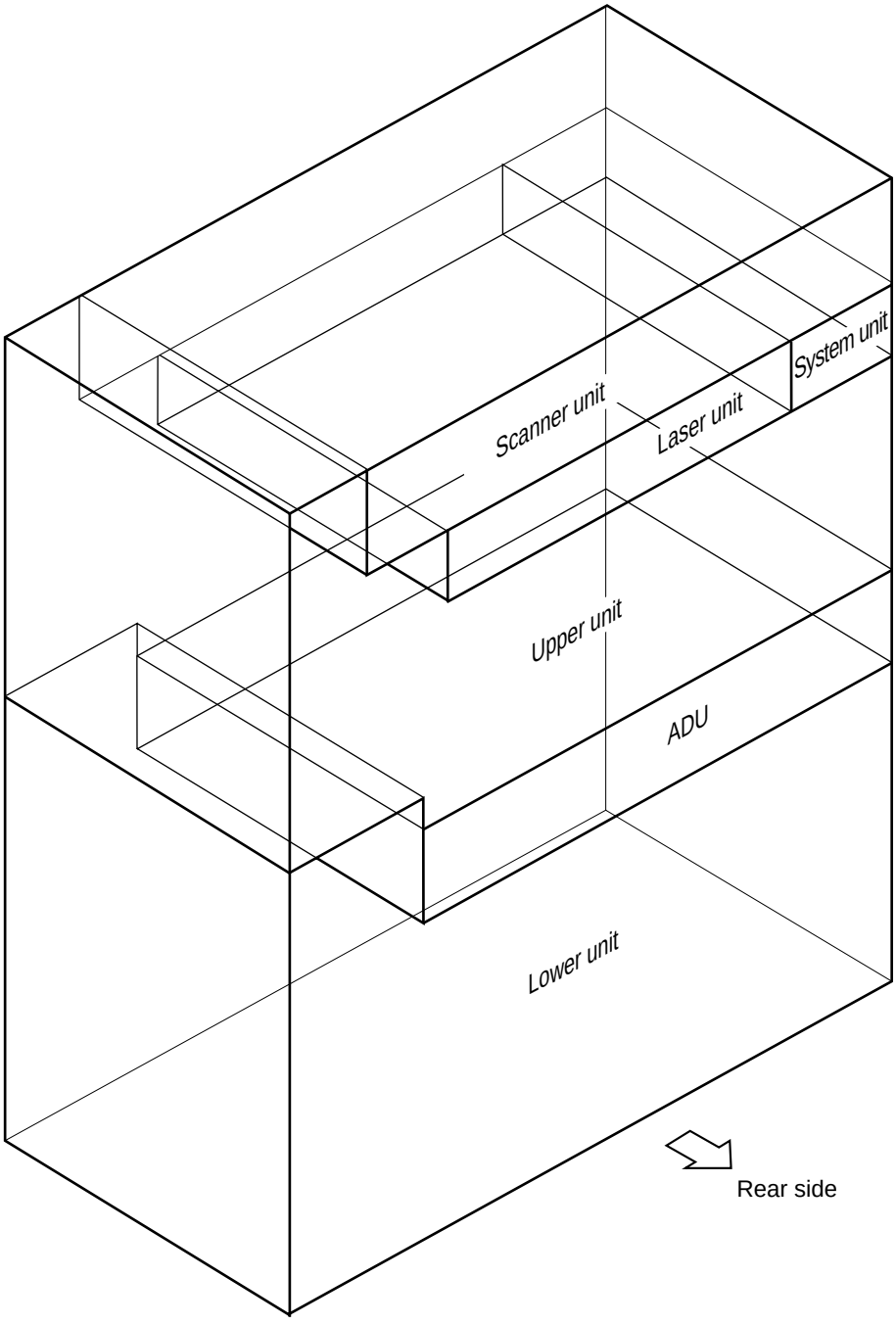
[D] Sectional View of Automatic Document Feeder



No.	Name	No.	Name	No.	Name
1	Pick-up roller	10	Timing sensor	19	APS switch
2	Weight	11	Aligning roller	20	Belt follower roller
3	Empty sensor lever	12	Feed roller	21	Reversal roller
4	Empty sensor	13	Belt drive roller	22	Exit sensor
5	Separation pad	14	Belt drop roller	23	Exit cover switch
6	Feed cover switch	15	DF open switch	24	Flapper
7	Aligning sensor	16	Belt holding roller	25	Exit roller
8	Size sensor	17	Transport belt	26	Transport belt cleaning brush
9	Size sensor lever	18	Belt holding roller		

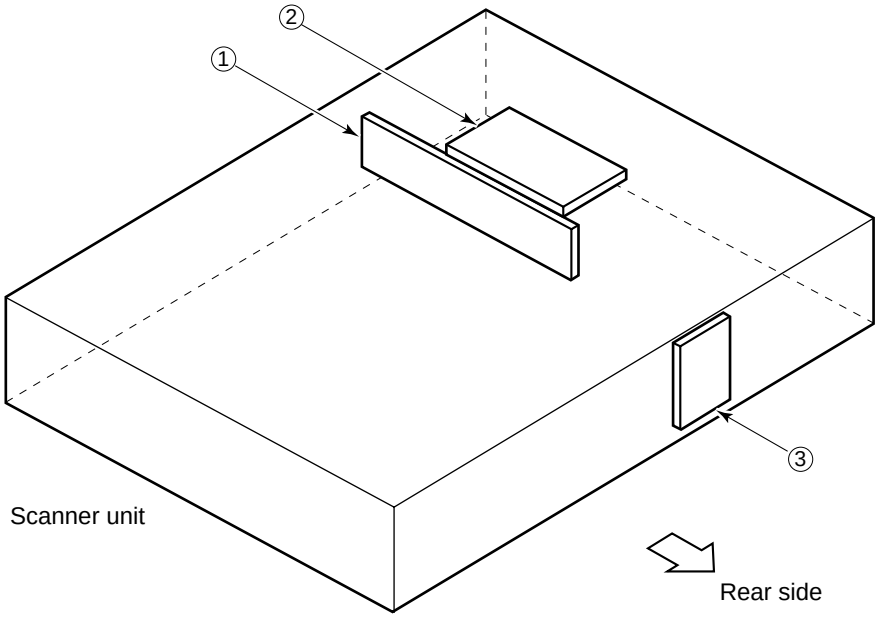
2.1.2 Electrical parts layout

[A] Configuration of Units



[B] Scanner Unit

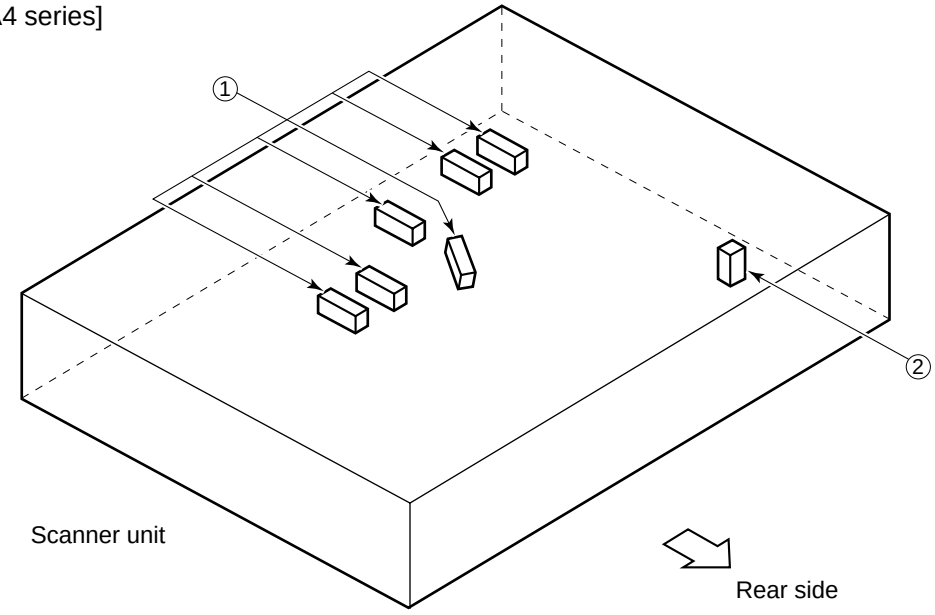
(B-1) PC board



No.	Name	Symbol
1	CCD drive PC board (PWA-F-CCD-300)	CCD
2	Scanning optical system control PC board (PWA-F-SLG-300)	SLG
3	Scanning motor drive PC board (PWA-F-SDV-300)	SDV

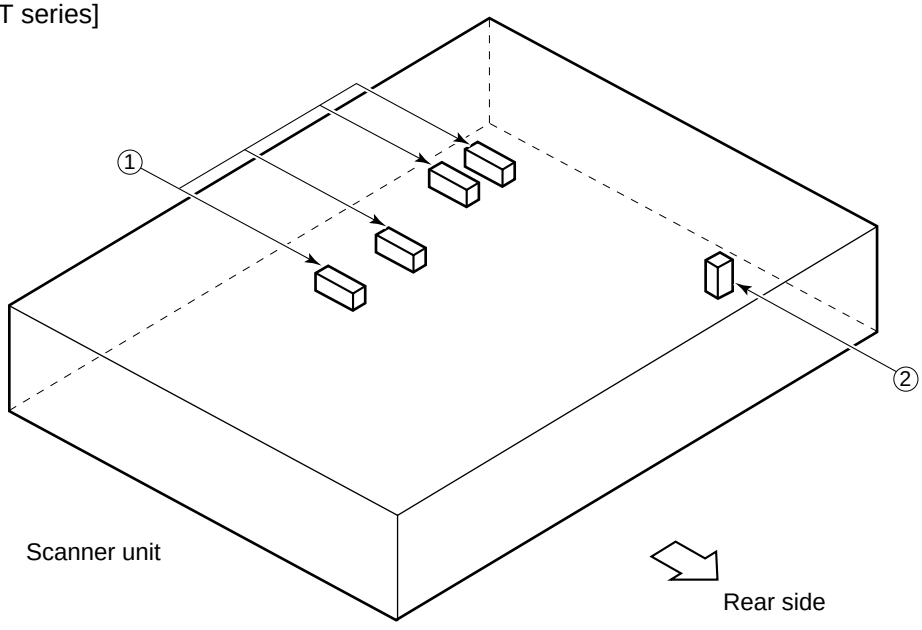
(B-2) DC electrical parts (except motors, PC boards)

[A4 series]



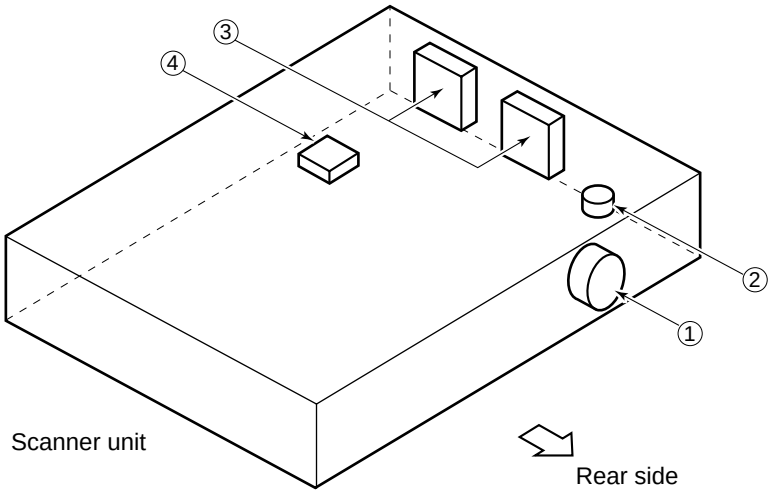
No.	Name	Symbol
1	Automatic paper size detector (APS1-6)	S1-6
2	Home switch (HOME-SW)	S2

[LT series]



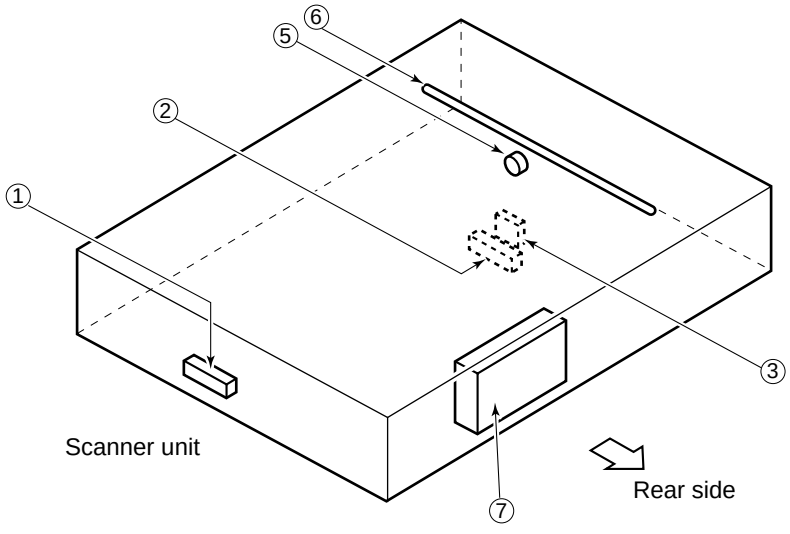
No.	Name	Symbol
1	Automatic paper size detector (APS1-4)	S1-4
2	Home switch (HOME-SW)	S2

(B-3) Motors



No.	Name	Symbol
1	Scanning motor (SCN-MOT)	M1
2	Document motor (DCM-MOT)	M2
3	Scanning optical system cooling fan motor (OPT-FAN-MOT)	M3-1,-2
4	SLG PC board cooling fan motor (SLG-FAN-MOT)	M4

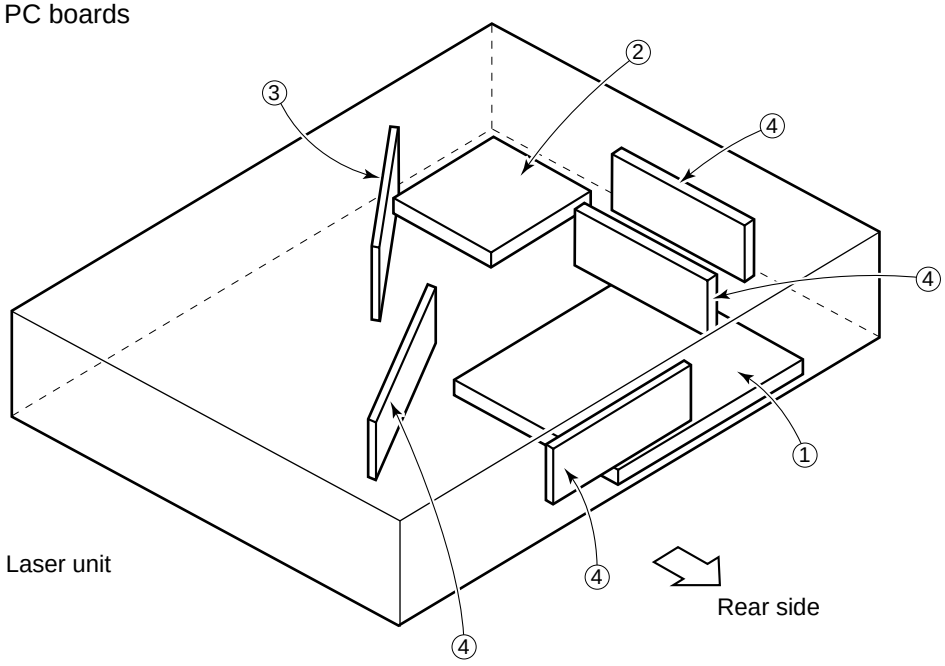
(B-4) AC electrical parts



No.	Name	Symbol
1	Damp heater (M) (D-HTR-M)	DHM
2	Damp heater (L) (D-HTR-L)	DHL
3	Fuse PC board (PWA-F-FUS-351)	FUS
5	Thermostat (85°C)	THMO
6	Exposure lamp (EXPO-LAMP) (EXP)	EXP
7	Lamp regulator PC board (PS-LRG-300)	LRG

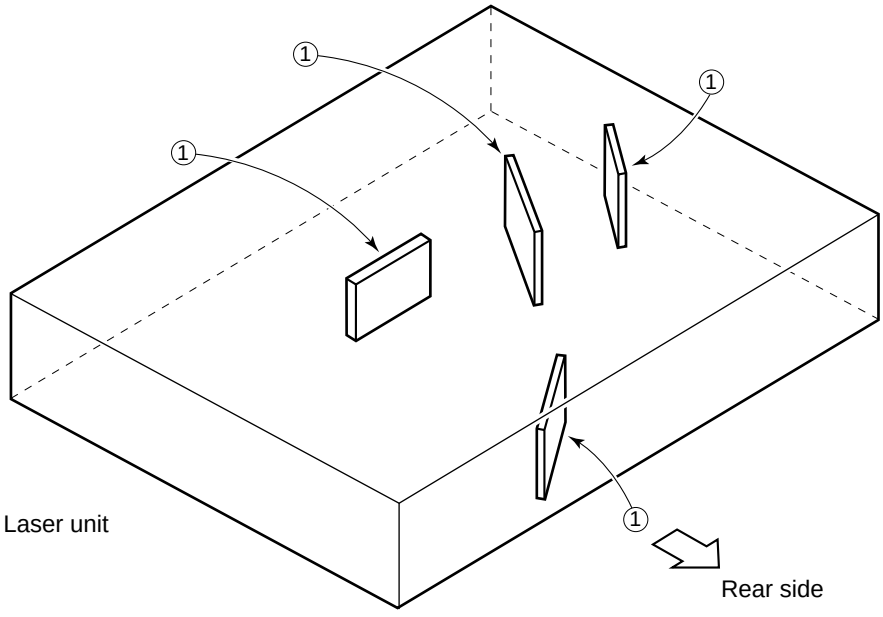
[C] Laser Unit

(C-1) PC boards



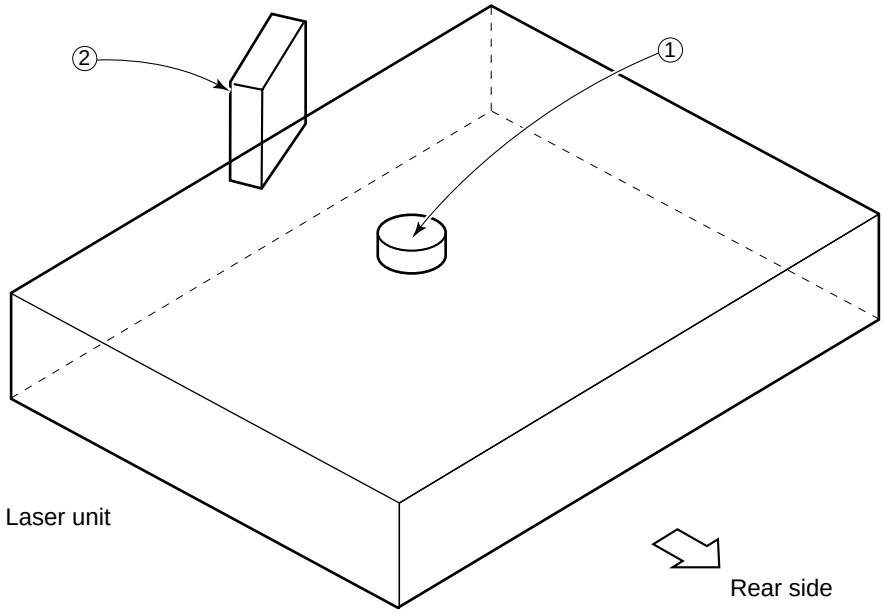
No.	Name	Symbol
1	PLG PC board (PWA-F-PLG-300)	PLG
2	Polygon mirror motor drive PC board (M/A-DRV-POL-300)	POL
3	Sensor PC board (PWA-F-SNS-300)	SNS
4	Laser PC board (K-PWA-F-LDR-300)	LDR

(C-2) Electrical parts (except motors, PC boards)



No.	Name	Symbol
1	Galvanomirror (ASM-GALVA)	GLV

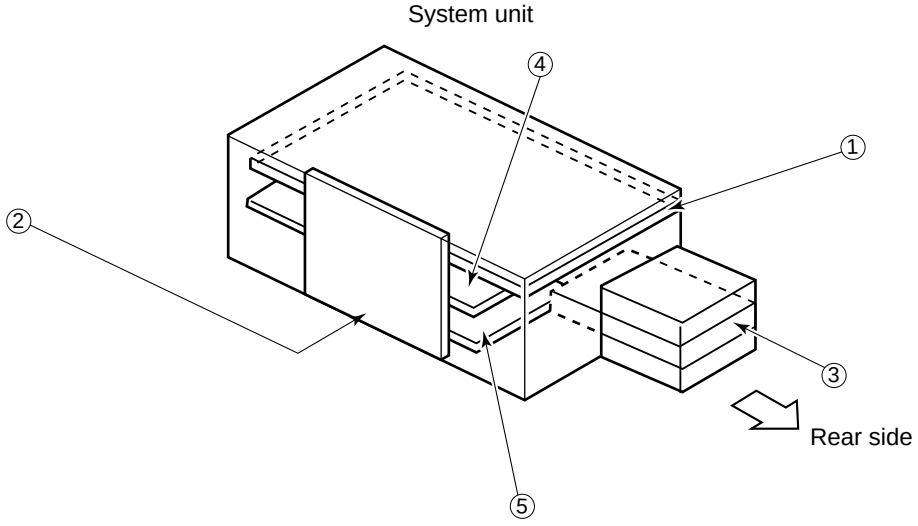
(C-3) Motors



No.	Name	Symbol
1	Polygon mirror motor (POL-MOT)	M5
2	Laser unit fan (LSU-FAN-MOT)	M6

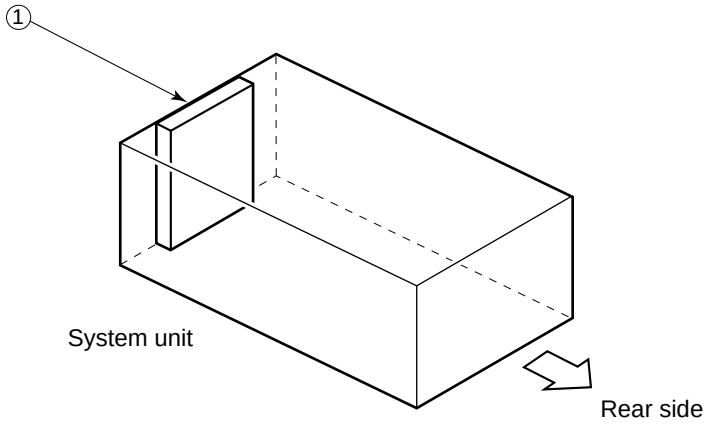
[D] System Unit

(D-1) PC boards



No.	Name	Symbol
1	System PC board (PWA-F-SYS-300)	SYS
2	Mother board (PWA-F-MTB-300)	MTB
3	Hard disk (HDD)	HDD
4	LAN printer board or SCSI board (option)	LAN or SCSI
5	NIC board (option for LAN printer board)	NIC

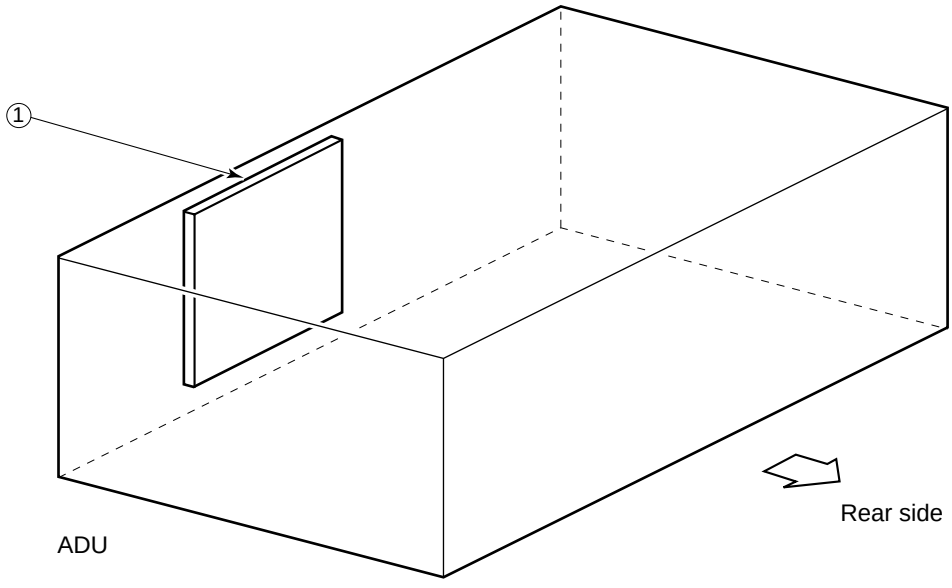
(D-2) Motor



No.	Name	Symbol
1	System fan motor (FAN-SYS)	M7

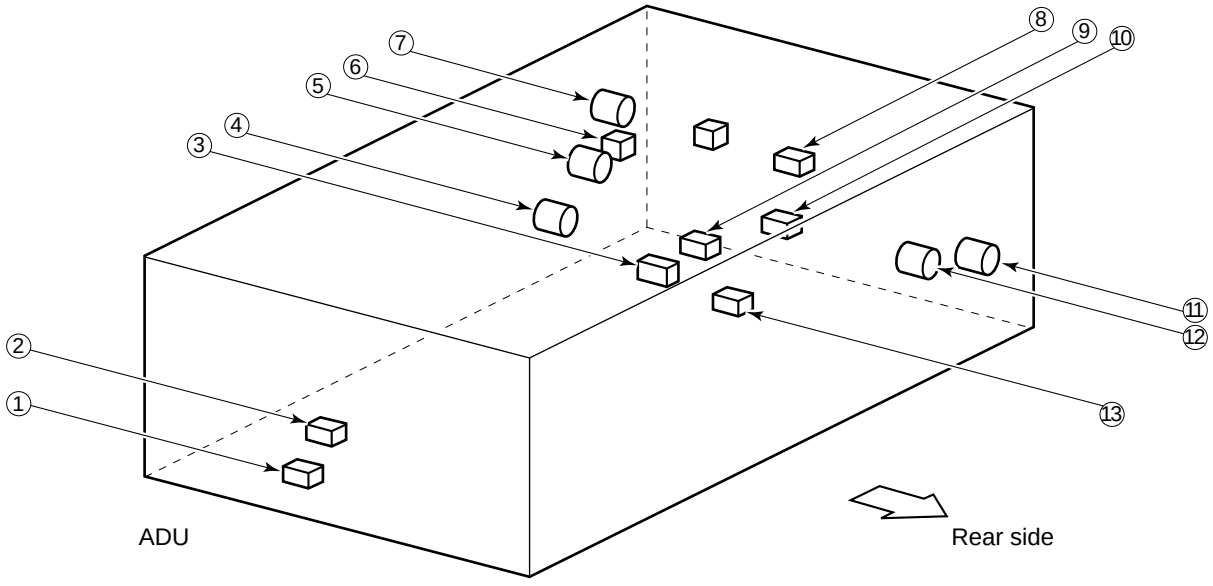
[E] ADU

(E-1) PC board



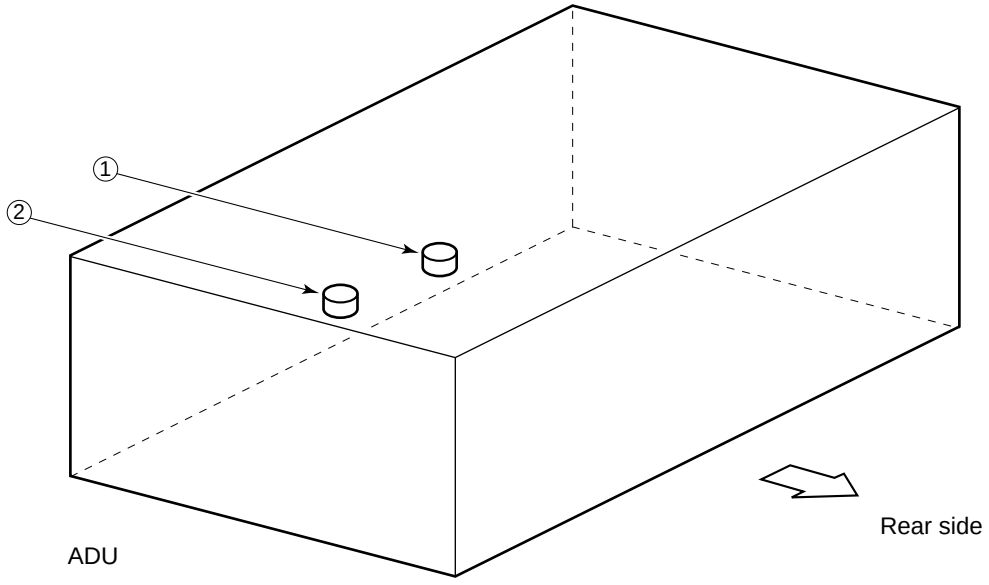
No.	Name	Symbol
1	ADU PC board (PWA-F-ADU-300)	ADU

(E-2) DC electrical parts (except motors, PC boards)



No.	Name	Symbol
1	Transport switch (TR2-SW)	S3
2	End switch (END-SW)	S4
3	Transport switch 1 (TR1-SW)	S5
4	Transport clutch (TR-CLT)	CL1
5	Reverse clutch (REV-CLT)	CL2
6	Guide solenoid (GID-SOL)	SOL1
7	Stack clutch (STK-CLT)	CL3
8	Feed switch (FED-SW)	S6
9	Empty switch (EMP-SW)	S7
10	Aligning switch (RGT-SW)	S8
11	Aligning clutch (RGT-CLT)	CL4
12	Feed clutch (FED-CLT)	CL5
13	Side switch (SID-SW)	S9

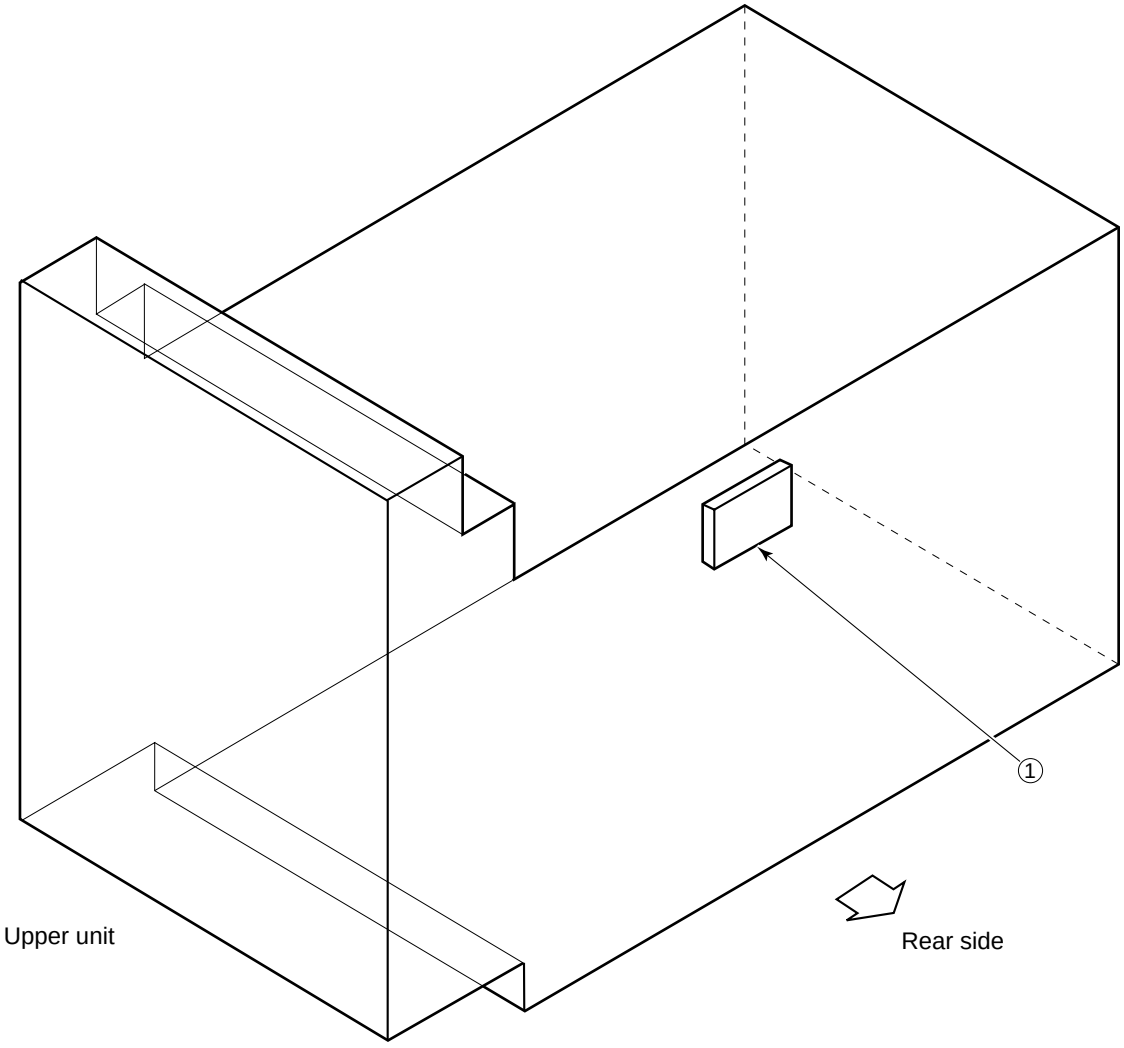
(E-3) Motors



No.	Name	Symbol
1	End guide motor (END-MOT)	M8
2	Side guide motor (SID-MOT)	M9

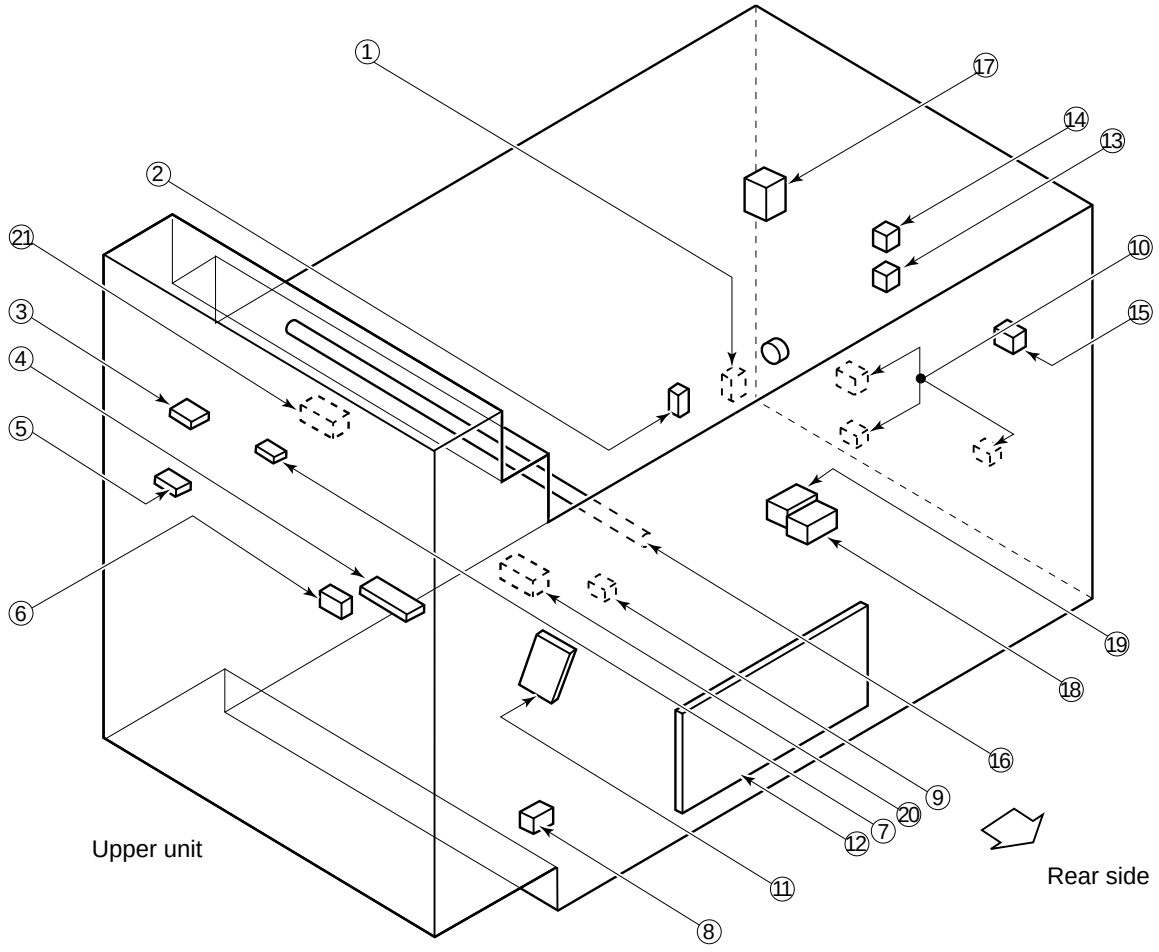
[F] Upper Unit

(F-1) PC board



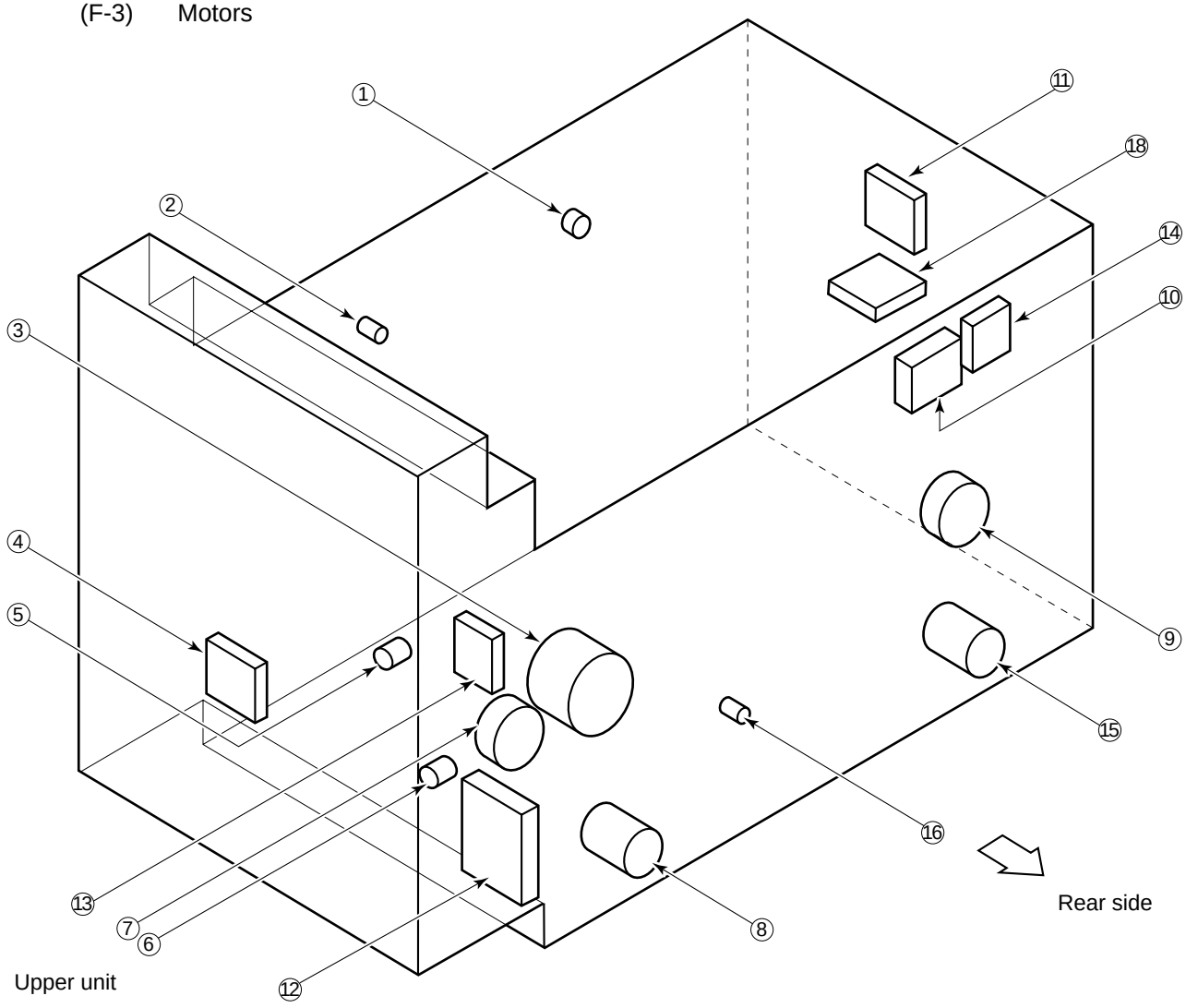
No.	Name	Symbol
1	Motor control PC board (PWA-F-MOT-300)	MOT

(F-2) DC electrical parts (except motors, PC boards)



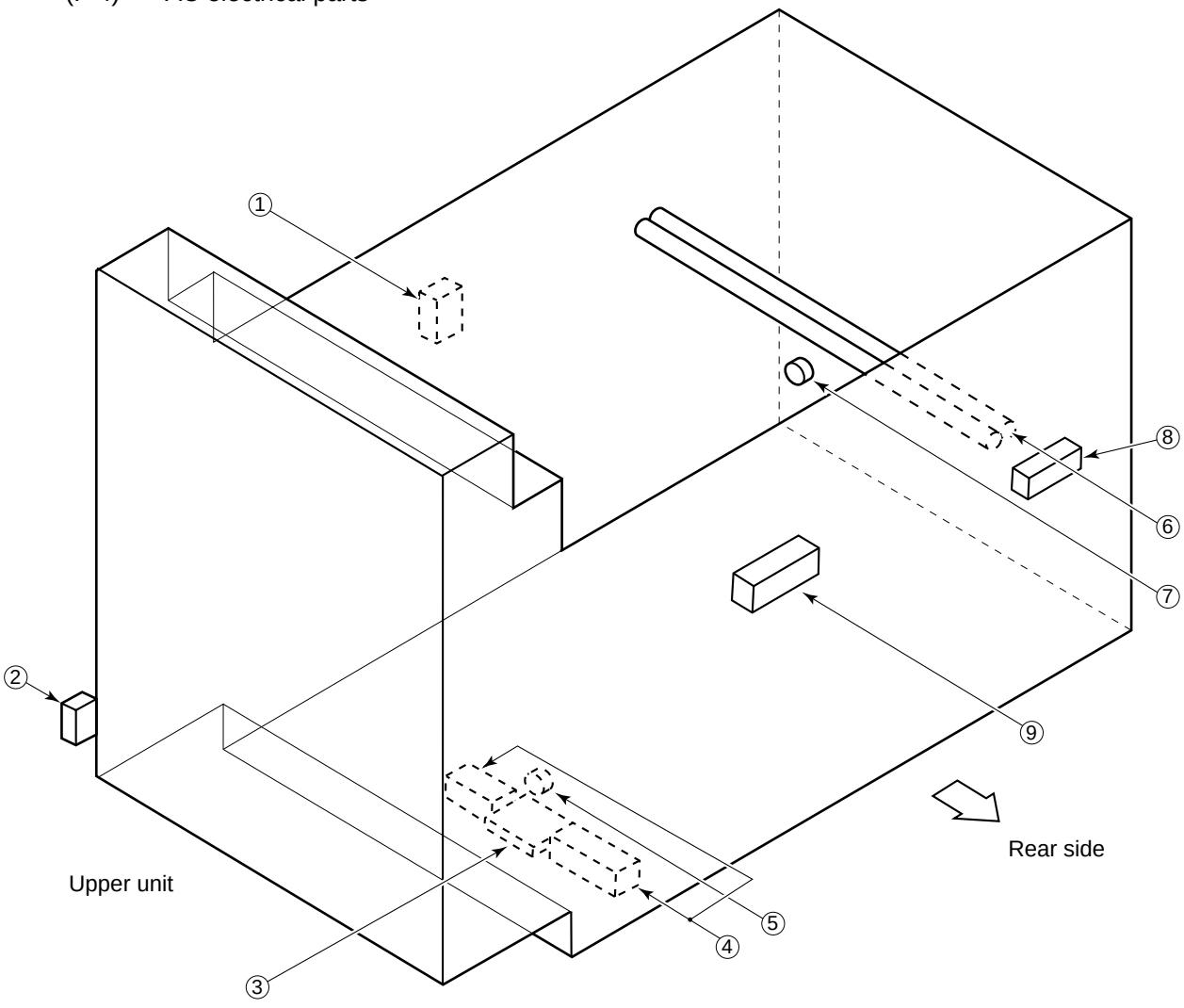
No.	Name	Symbol
1	Fuser exit switch (EXIT-SW)	S10
2	Scraper solenoid (SOL3)	SOL3
3	Toner supply sensor (TNR-HOP-SW)	S11
4	Auto toner sensor (SNR-ATC-300)	ATS
5	Toner empty sensor (TNR-EMP-SW)	S12
6	Paper stop switch (P-STP-SW)	S13
7	Developer switch (DEV-SW)	S14
8	Toner full switch (T-FULL-SW)	S15
9	Main cleaning switch (CLN-M-SW)	S16
10	Heat roller thermistor (THMS-HTR-300)	THMSH
11	Developer bias transformer (PS-HVT-DB-300)	HVT-DB
12	High-voltage power supply for main charger and transfer belt (PS-HVT-TM-300)	HVT-TM
13	Reversal exit switch (TRNE-SW)	S17
14	Reversal switch (TRN-SW)	S18
15	Reversal door switch (EXC-SW)	S19
16	Discharge LED lamp (ERS-300)	ERS
17	Gate solenoid (GATE-SOL)	SOL4
18	Transfer belt touch switch (IR-TCH-SW)	S43
19	Transfer belt separation switch (TR-SEP-SW)	S44
20	Toner adhesion sensor	IQM
21	Drum thermister	THMSD

(F-3) Motors



No.	Name	Symbol
1	Fur brush motor (FUR-MOT)	M10
2	Main cleaning motor (CLN-MOT)	M11
3	Drum motor (DRM-MOT)	M12
4	Manual inlet fan motor (SFB-FAN-MOT)	M13
5	Toner motor (TNR-MOT)	M14
6	Toner transport motor (AUG2-MOT)	M15
7	Developer motor (DEV-MOT)	M16
8	Aligning motor (RGT-MOT)	M17
9	Heat roller motor (HTR-MOT)	M18
10	Exit fan motor (EXIT-FAN-MOT)	M19
11	Heater fan motor (HTR-FAN-MOT)	M20
12	Developer fan motor (DEV-FAN-MOT)	M21
13	Duct in fan motor (DUCT-IN-FAN-MOT)	M22
14	Duct out fan motor (DUCT-OUT-FAN-MOT)	M23
15	ADU motor (ADU-MOT)	M24
16	Transfer belt motor (TRB-MOT)	M25
17	Transfer belt cam motor (TRB-CAM-MOT)	M26
18	Reversal fan motor (REV-FAN-MOT)	M27

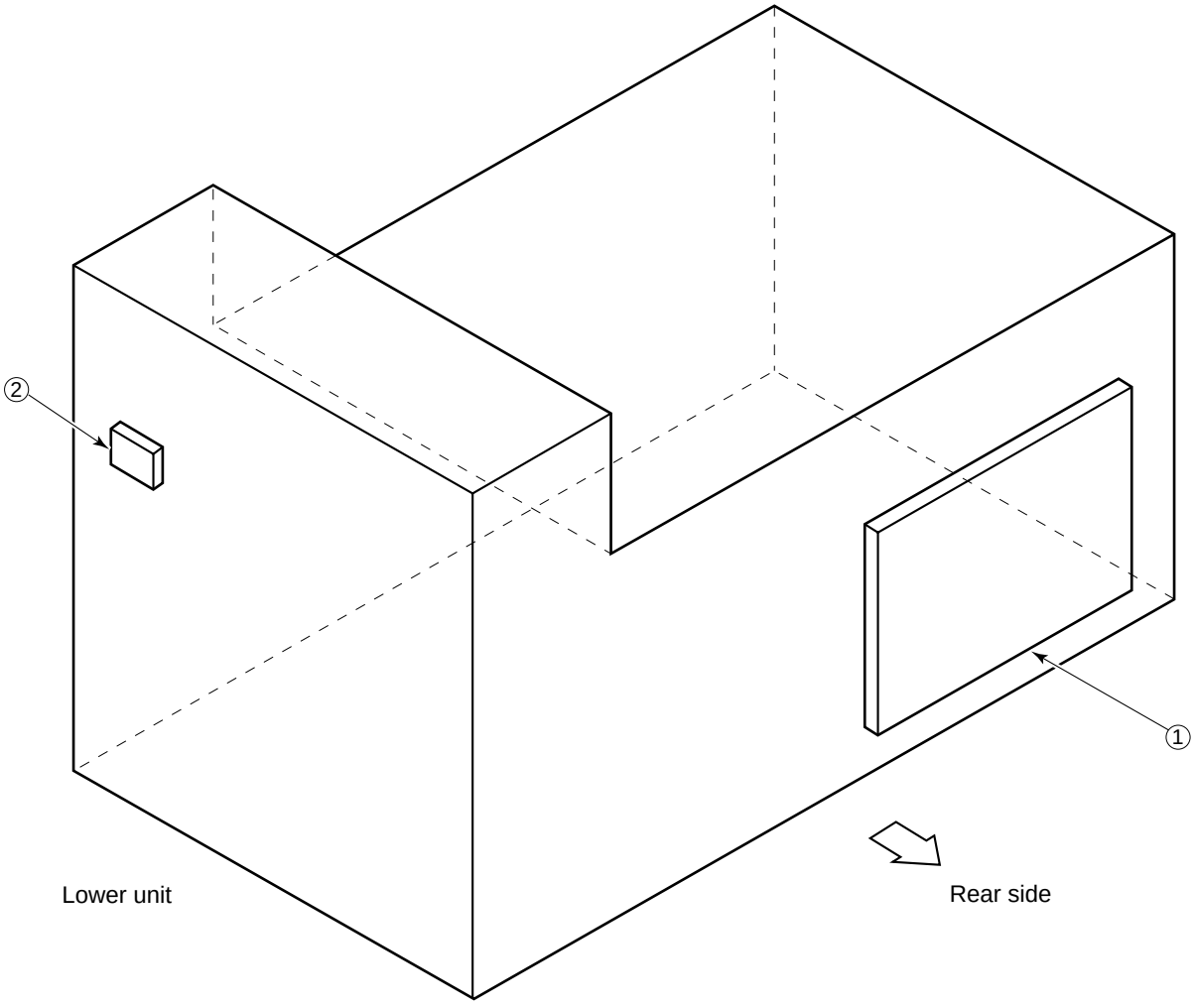
(F-4) AC electrical parts



No.	Name	Symbol
1	Door switch (DOOR-SW)	S41
2	Main switch (MAIN-SW)	S42
3	Fuse PC board (PWA-F-FUS-351)	FUS
4	Damp heater (lower) (D-HTR-L)	DHL-1,-2
5	Thermostat	THM-D
6	Heater lamp (HTR-LAMP)	HTR-L
7	Fuser thermostat (THERMO-152-FUS)	THM-F
8	EXIT door switch (EXIT-AC-SW)	S45
9	Fuser switch (HTR-SW)	S46

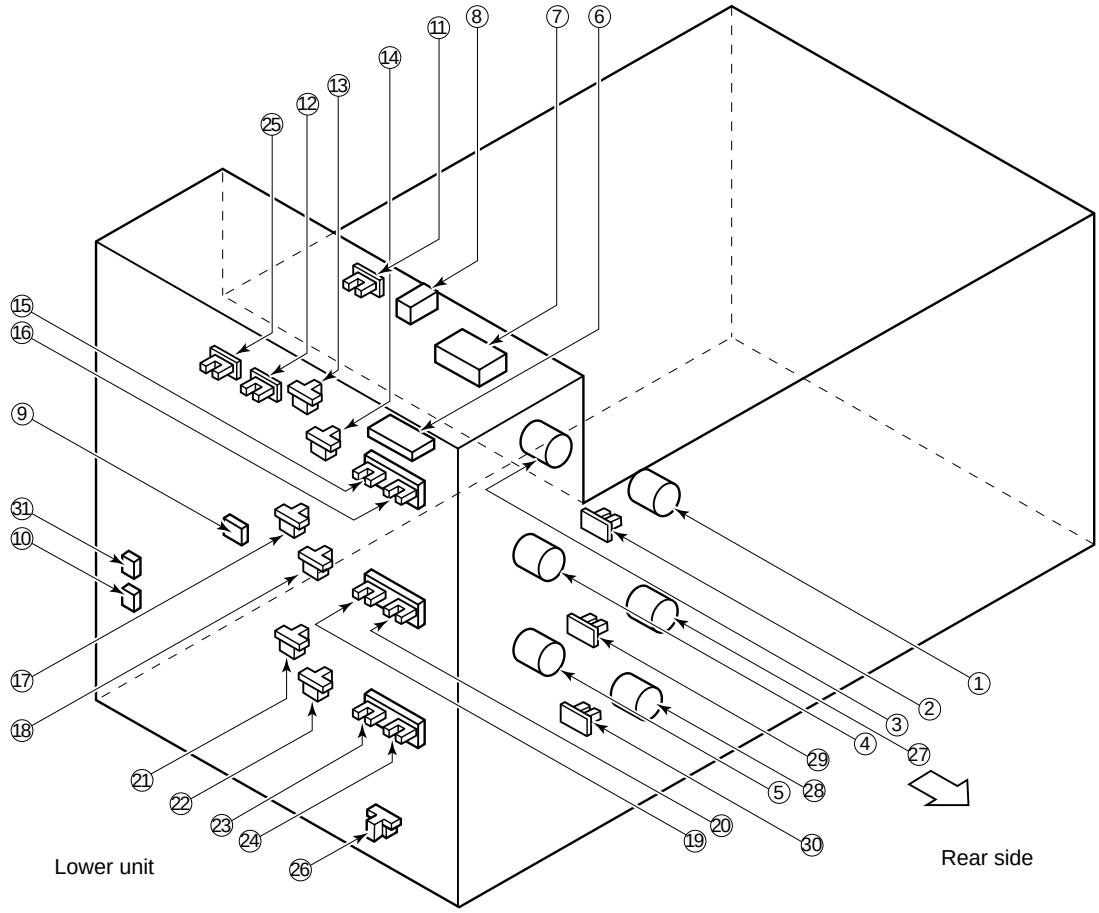
[G] Lower Unit

(G-1) PC boards



No.	Name	Symbol
1	Logic PC board (PWA-F-LGC-300)	LGC
2	LCF PC board (PWA-F-LCF-150)	LCF

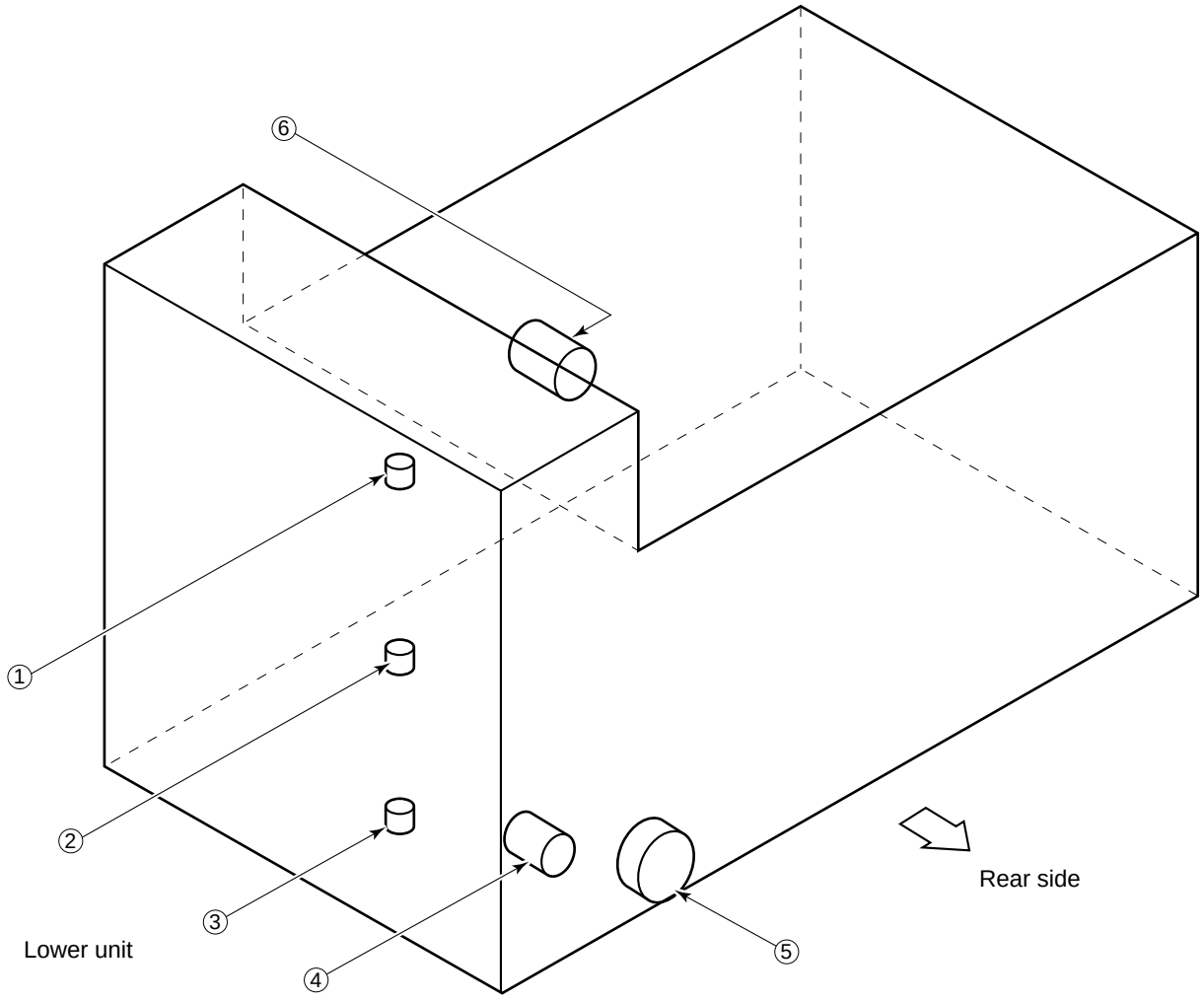
(G-2) DC electrical parts (except motors, PC boards)



No.	Name	Symbol
1	Upper feed clutch (FD2-CLT)	CL6
2	Upper cassette switch (CST2-SW)	S20
3	Upper aligning clutch (RGT2-CLT)	CL7
4	Middle aligning clutch (RGT3-CLT)	CL8
5	Lower aligning clutch (RGT4-CLT)	CL9
6	Manual paper width detector switch (SFB-SIZE-SW)	S21
7	Manual pick-up solenoid (MANUAL-SOL)	SOL5
8	Manual feed switch (M-FEED-SW)	S22
9	LCF switch (LCF-SW)	S23
10	LCF door switch (LCF-DOOR-SW)	S24
11	LCF paper start switch (LCF-FEED-SW)	S25
12	LCF paper empty switch (LCF-EMP-SW)	S26
13	PFP upper paper stop switch (PSTP2-SW)	S27
14	PFP upper paper start switch (FEED2-SW)	S28
15	PFP upper paper empty switch (EMP2-SW)	S29
16	PFP upper tray up switch (TUP2-SW)	S30

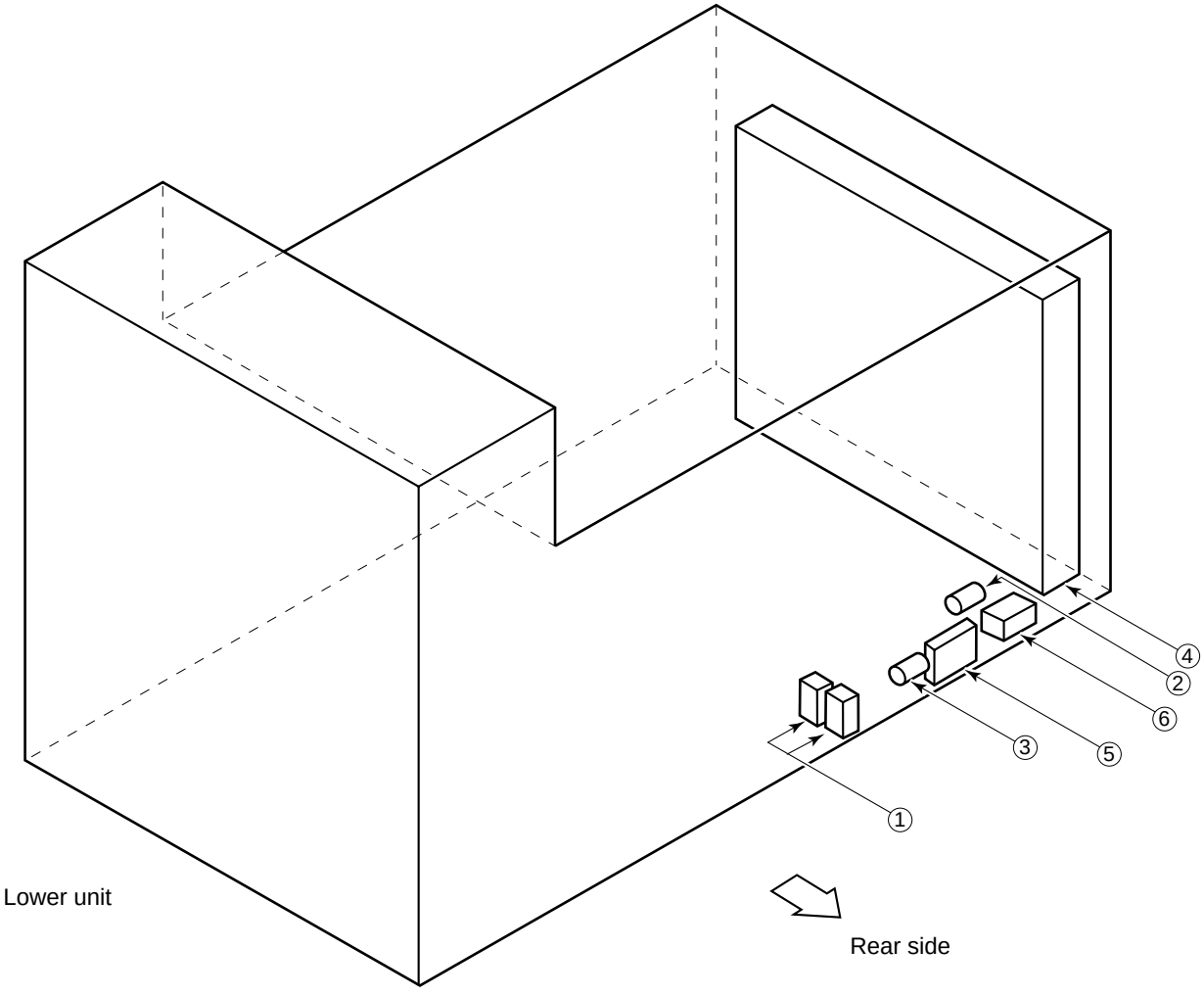
No.	Name	Symbol
17	PFP middle paper stop switch (PSTP3-SW)	S31
18	PFP middle paper start switch (FEED3-SW)	S32
19	PFP middle empty switch (EMP3-SW)	S33
20	PFP middle tray up switch (TUP3-SW)	S34
21	PFP lower paper stop switch (PSTP4-SW)	S35
22	PFP lower paper start switch (FEED4-SW)	S36
23	PFP lower empty switch (EMP4-SW)	S37
24	PFP lower tray up switch (TUP4-SW)	S38
25	LCF tray up switch (T-UP-SW)	S39
26	LCF tray bottom switch (LCF-BOTTOM-SW)	S40
27	Middle feed clutch (FD3-CLT)	CL10
28	Lower feed clutch (FD3-CLT)	CL11
29	Middle cassette switch (CST3-SW)	S47
30	Lower cassette switch (CST3-SW)	S48
31	LCF door switch 2 (LCF-DOOR-SW)	S49

(G-3) Motors



No.	Name	Symbol
1	PFP upper tray motor (TR2-MOT)	M27
2	PFP middle tray motor (TR3-MOT)	M28
3	PFP lower tray motor (TR4-MOT)	M29
4	LCF tray motor (TRAY-MOT)	M30
5	Pedestal motor (PFP-MOT)	M31
6	Feed motor (FED-MOT)	M32

(G-4) AC electrical parts



No.	Name	Symbol
1	SSR	SSR
2	Breaker	BRK
3	Noise filter	NF
4	Switching power supply unit for JPD (PS-ACC-300JU)	PS
	Switching power supply unit for EUR (PS-ACC-300E)	
5	Power outlet	POUT
6	Fuse holder (FUSE -HOLDER)	FHOL

2.2 Symbols and Functions of Components

(1) Motors

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
M1	SCN-MOT (scanning motor)	Scans the optical system	
M2	DCM-MOT (document motor)	Drives the copy range indicator	
M3	OPT-FAN-MOT (scanning optical system cooling fan motor)	Cools the optical system	
M4	SLG-FAN-MOT (SLG PC board cooling fan motor)	Cools the SLG PC board	
M5	POL-MOT (polygon mirror motor)	Drives the polygon mirror	
M6	LSU-FAN-MOT (laser unit fan motor)	Cools the laser unit	
M7	FAN-SYS (system fan motor)	Cools the system unit	
M8	END-MOT (end guide motor)	Drives the ADU paper end guides	
M9	SID-MOT (side guide motor)	Drives the ADU paper side guides	
M10	FUR-MOT (fur brush motor)	Drives the fur brush	
M11	CLN-MOT (main cleaning motor)	Drives the charger wire cleaner	
M12	DRM-MOT (drum motor)	Drives the drum	
M13	SFB-FAN-MOT (manual inlet fan motor)	Sends air to the cleaner and charger	
M14	TNR-MOT (toner motor)	Supplies toner	
M15	AUG2-MOT (toner transport motor)	Transport waste toner to the toner bag	
M16	DEV-MOT (developer motor)	Drives the developer unit and suction fans	
M17	RGT-MOT (aligning motor)	Drives the aligning roller	
M18	HTR-MOT (heat roller motor)	Drives the heat rollers	
M19	EXIT-FAN-MOT (exit fan motor)	Cools paper exit	
M20	HTR-FAN-MOT (heater fan motor)	Cools the drum and cleaner	
M21	DEV-FAN-MOT (developer fan motor)	Used for sucking air into the developer	
M22	DUCT-IN-FAN-MOT (duct in fan motor)	Cools the machine inside	
M23	DUCT-OUT-FAN-MOT (duct out fan motor)	Cools the machine inside	
M24	ADU-MOT (ADU motor)	Drives the ADU paper feed	
M25	TRB-MOT (transfer belt motor)	Drives the transport belt	
M26	TRB-CAM-MOT (transfer belt cam motor)	Contacts the transfer belt to the drum	
M27	TR2-MOT (PFP upper tray motor)	Drives vertical movement of the upper tray	
M28	TR3-MOT (PFP middle tray motor)	Drives vertical movement of the middle tray	
M29	TR4-MOT (PFP lower tray motor)	Drives vertical movement of the lower tray	
M30	TRAY-MOT (LCF tray motor)	Drives the LCF tray	
M31	PFP-MOT (pedestal motor)	Drives all rollers in the feed and transport systems	
M32	FED-MOT (feed motor)	Drives the feed roller and manual roller	

(2) Solenoids

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
SOL1	GID-SOL (guide solenoid)		
SOL3	SOL3 (scraper solenoid)	Drives the separation claw	
SOL4	GATE-SOL (gate solenoid)	Drives the exit/ADU switching gate	
SOL5	MANUAL-SOL (manual Pick-up solenoid)	Drives vertical movement of the manual pick-up roller	

(3) Electromagnetic spring clutches

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
CL1	TR-CLT (ADU transport clutch)	Drives the paper transport of the ADU	
CL2	REV-CLT (ADU reverse clutch)	Exits the copy in reverse	
CL3	STK-CLT (ADU stack clutch)	Stacks the copy in the ADU	
CL4	RGT-CLT (ADU aligning clutch)	Aligns the paper feeding of the ADU	
CL5	FED-CLT (ADU feed clutch)	Drives the ADU paper feeding	
CL6	FD2-CLT (PFP upper feed clutch)	Feeds the PFP upper cassette paper	
CL7	RGT2-CLT (PFP upper aligning clutch)	Transfers drive to the PFP upper aligning roller	
CL8	RGT3-CLT (PFP middle aligning clutch)	Transfers drive to the PFP middle aligning roller	
CL9	RGT4-SW (PFP lower aligning clutch)	Transfers drive to the PFP lower aligning roller	
CL10	FD3-CLT (PFP middle feed clutch)	Feeds the PFP middle cassette paper	
CL11	FD4-CLT (PFP lower feed clutch)	Feeds the PFP lower cassette paper	

(4) Counters

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
T	T-CTR (total counter)	Total counter	

(5) Switches

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
S1-*	APS1-6 (automatic paper-size detector)	Detects the paper-size	
S2	HOME-SW (home switch)	Detects the optical system home position	
S3	TR2-SW (transport switch)	Detects a paper in the ADU transporting section	
S4	END-SW (end switch)	Detects the end guide position of the ADU	
S5	TR1-SW (transport switch 1)	Detects a paper in the ADU transporting section	
S6	FED-SW (feed switch)	Detects a leading edge of the paper in the ADU	
S7	EMP-SW (empty switch)	Detects a paper on the ADU stacking tray	

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
S8	RGT-SW (aligning switch)	Detects aligning position of the paper in the ADU	
S9	SID-SW (side switch)	Detects the side guide position of the ADU	
S10	EXIT-SW (fuser exit switch)	Detects exiting paper	
S11	TNR-HOP-SW (toner supply cover switch)	Detects opening/closing of the toner supply cover	
S12	TNR-EMP-SW (toner empty switch)	Detects a no toner state in the toner hopper	
S13	P-STP-SW (paper stop switch)	Used for stopping the feed roller	
S14	DEV-SW (developer switch)	Detects attachment of the developer unit	
S15	T-FULL-SW (toner full switch)	Detects a waste toner full state	
S16	CLN-M-SW (main cleaning switch)	Detects the position of the main charger wire cleaning pad	
S17	TRNE-SW (reversal exit switch)		
S18	TRN-SW (reversal switch)		
S19	EXC-SW (reversal door switch)		
S20	CST2-SW (upper cassette switch)	Detects misplacement of the upper cassette	
S21	SFB-SIZE-SW (manual paper width detector switch)	Detects width of the paper	
S22	M-FEED-SW (manual feed switch)	Detects manual feed	
S23	LCF-SW (LCF switch)	Detects attachment of the LCF unit	
S24	LCF-DOOR-SW (LCF door switch)	Detects opening/closing of the LCF door	
S25	LCF-FEED-SW (LCF paper start switch)	Detects the LCF feed roller	
S26	LCF-EMP-SW (LCF paper empty switch)	Detects LCF paper empty	
S27	PSTP2-SW (PFP upper paper stop switch)	Used for aligning paper supply from the upper cassette	
S28	FEED2-SW (PFP upper paper start switch)	Detects paper supply from the upper cassette	
S29	EMP2-SW (PFP upper empty switch)	Detects a no paper state in the upper cassette	
S30	TUP2-SW (PFP upper tray up switch)	Detects rising of the upper tray	
S31	PSTP3-SW (PFP middle paper stop switch)	Used for aligning paper supply from the middle cassette	
S32	FEED3-SW (PFP middle paper start switch)	Detects paper supply from the middle cassette	
S33	EMP3-SW (PFP middle empty switch)	Detects a no paper state in the middle cassette	
S34	TUP3-SW (PFP middle tray up switch)	Detects rising of the middle tray	
S35	PSTP4-SW (PFP lower paper stop switch)	Used for aligning paper supply from the lower cassette	
S36	FEED4-SW (PFP lower paper start switch)	Detects paper supply from the lower cassette	
S37	EMP4-SW (PFP lower empty switch)	Detects a no paper state in the lower cassette	
S38	TUP4-SW (PFP lower tray up switch)	Detects rising of the lower tray	
S39	T-UP-SW (LCF tray up switch)	Detects rising of the LCF tray	

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
S40	T-DOWN-SW (LCF tray down switch)	Detects the bottom position of the LCF tray	
S41	DOOR-SW (door switch)	Used for ensuring safety	
S42	MAIN-SW (main switch)	Used for switching the main power supply ON and OFF	
S43	TR-TCH-SW (Transfer belt touch switch)	Used for touching the transfer belt	
S44	TR-SEP-SW (Transfer belt estrangement switch)	Used for separating the transfer belt	
S45	EXIT-AC-SW (Exit door inter lock switch)	Used for ensuring safety	
S46	HTR-SW (Fuser switch)	Used for safety without fuser unit	
S47	CST3-SW (Middle cassette switch)	Detects misplacement of the middle cassette	
S48	CST4-SW (Lower cassette switch)	Detects misplacement of the lower cassette	
S49	LCF-DOOR2-SW (LCF door switch 2)	Detects opening/closing of the LCF door	

(6) Heaters and lamps

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
DHM	D-HTR-M (damp heater (M))	Maintains the optical system at the preset temperature	
DHL	D-HTR-L (damp heater (L))	Maintains the optical system at the preset temperature	
DHL	D-HTR-L (damp heater (lower))	Maintains the drum, and transfer/separation charger case at the preset temperature	
HTR-L	HTR-LANMP (heater lamp)	Used for fusing	
EXP	EXPO-LAMP (exposure lamp)	Exposes the original	
LRG	PS-LRG-300 (lamp regulator PC board)	Controls the exposure lamp	
ERS	ERS-300 (discharge LED lamp)	Used for discharging the drum	

(7) PC boards

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
CCD	PWA-F-CCD-300 (CCD image pre-processing PC board)	Control CCD image pre-processing	
SLG	PWA-F-SLG-300 (scanning optical system control PC board)	Controls the scanning optical system	
SDV	PWA-F-SDV-300 (scanning motor drive PC board)	Drives the scanning motor	
PLG	PWA-F-PLG-300 (PLG PC board)	Controls the laser unit	
POL	M/A-DRV-POL-300 (polygon mirror motor drive PC board)	Drives the polygon mirror motor	
SNS	PWA-F-SNS-300 (sensor PC board)	Detects the beam position	
LDR	K-PWA-F-LDR-300 (laser PC board)	Drives the laser	
SYS	PWA-F-SYS-300 (system PC board)	Whole system control and data processing	

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
MTB	PWA-F-MTB-300 (mother board)	Option board connecting	
HDD	Hard disk (HDD)	Stores image data	
LAN or SCSI	LAN printer board or SCSI board	Printer	Option
NIC	NIC board	Network interface card	Option for LAN printer board
ADU	PWA-F-ADU-300 (ADU PC board)	Controls the ADU	
MOT	PWA-F-MOT-300 (motor control PC board)	Drives the drum and transport belt	
LGC	PWA-F-LGC-300 (logic PC board)	Controls the entire copier	
LCF	PWA-F-LCF-150 (LCF PC board)	Displays LCF tray, scan key and tray operations	
IPC	(Finisher interface board)	Finisher interface board	

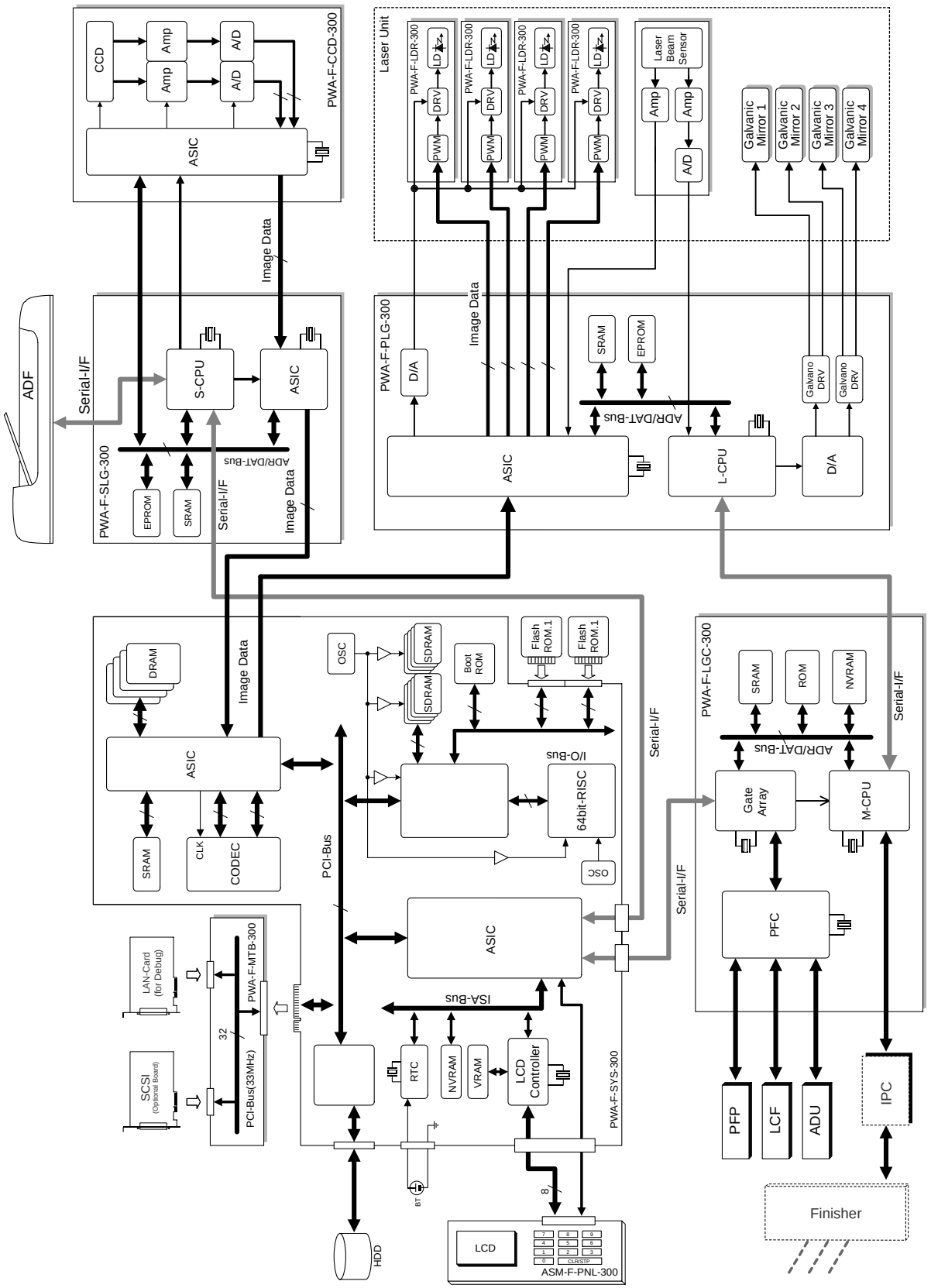
(8) Transformers

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
HVT-DB	PS-HVT-DB-300 (developer bias power supply)	Generates high voltage for the developer bias	
HVT-TM	PS-HVT-TM-300 (high-voltage power supply for main charger and transfer belt)	Develops high voltage for charging and transfer and the developer bias voltage	

(9) Other

Symbol	Name	Function	Remarks
ATS	SNR-ATC-300 (auto toner sensor)	Senses the toner temperature by a magnetic sensor	
GLV	ASM-GALVA (galvanomirror)	Control the beam position	
FUS	PWA-F-FUS-351 (fuse PC board)	Cuts out an over current of the damp heater	
THMSH	THMS-HTR-300 (heat roller thermistor)	Detects the temperature of the heat roller	
SSR	(SSR)	Switches the heater lamp	
BRK	Breaker	Safety switch	
NF	Noise filter	Cuts out a noise signal	
THM-D	Thermostat	Protects over heating of the damp heater	
THMO	Thermostat (85°C)	Protects the exposure lamp over heating	
THM-F	THERMO-152-FUS (fuser thermostat)	Protects the fuser unit over heating	
PS	PS-ACC-300JU (switching power supply unit)	Supplies electrical power	For UC, JPD
	PS-ACC-300E (switching power supply unit)		For Europe
IQM	(Toner adhesion sensor)	Detects toner adhesion volume on the drum surface	
THMSD	(Drum thermistor)	Detects drum surface temperature	

2.3 System Block Diagram

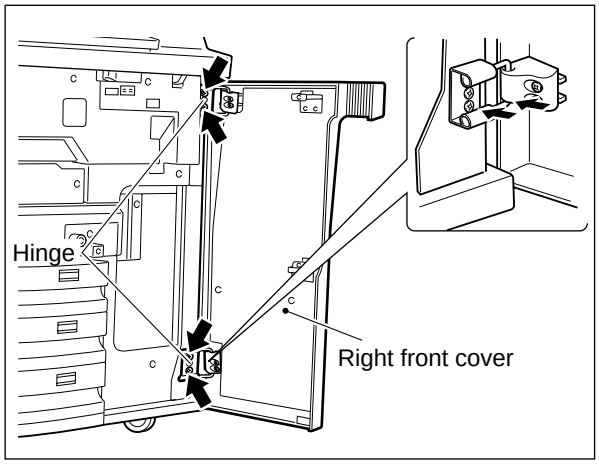


2.4 Removal of Covers and PC Boards

2.4.1 Removal of covers

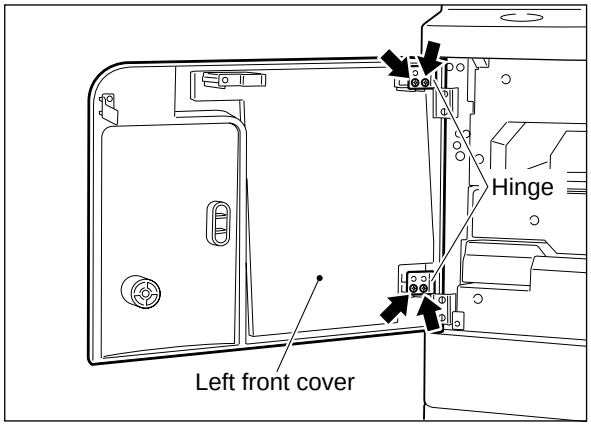
[A] Right front cover

(1) Open the right front cover.
(2) Remove the screws on the hinges at both ends (2 screws for each).



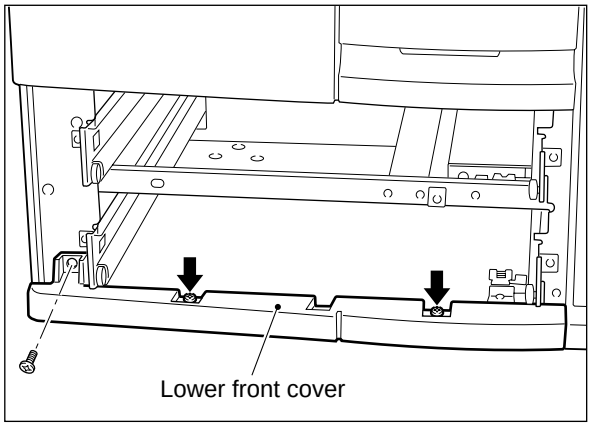
[B] Left front cover

(1) Open the right front cover, then open the left front cover.
(2) Remove the top and bottom hinge brackets (2 screws for each).



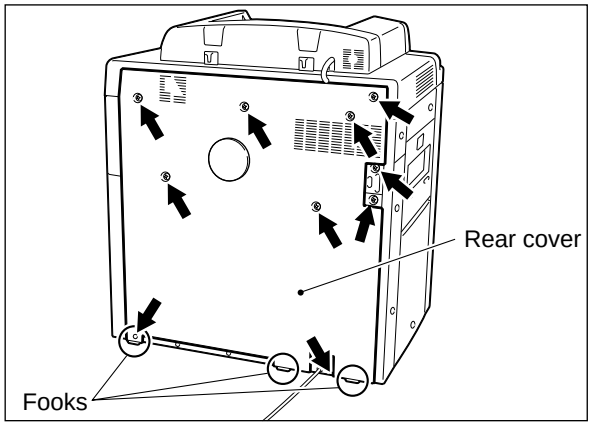
[C] Lower front cover

(1) Remove the intermediate and lower cassettes.
(2) Remove the 3 screws.



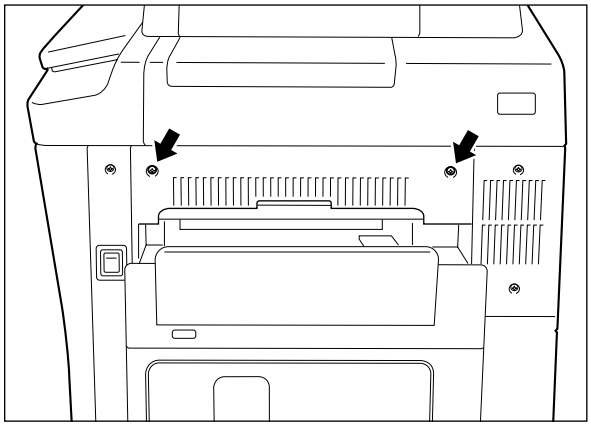
[D] Rear cover

(1) Remove the 10 screws.
(2) Remove the lower hook (3 p'ces).



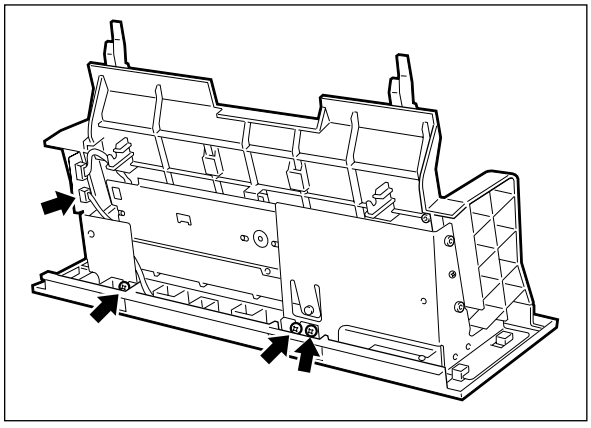
[E] Upper feed cover

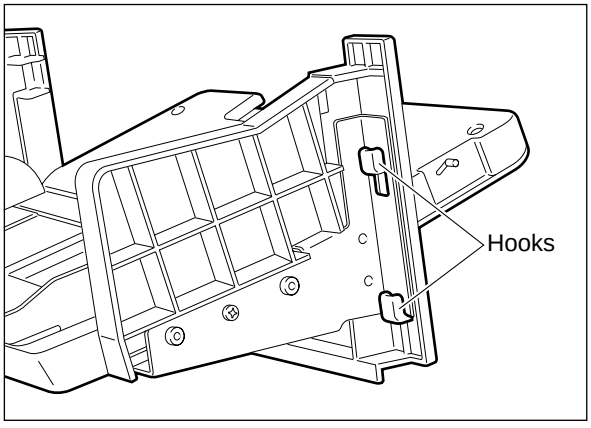
(1) Slide the LCF unit.
(2) Remove the 2 screws.



[F] Lower feed cover

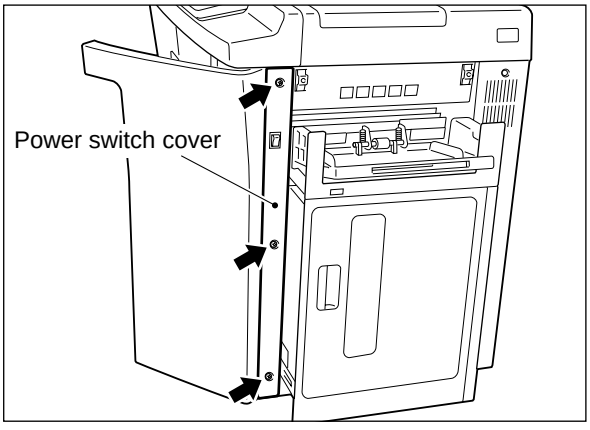
(1) Draw out the LCF, and remove the manual feed unit.
(2) Remove the lower feed cover (3 screws, 1 connector, both sides hooks 4 pcs.).





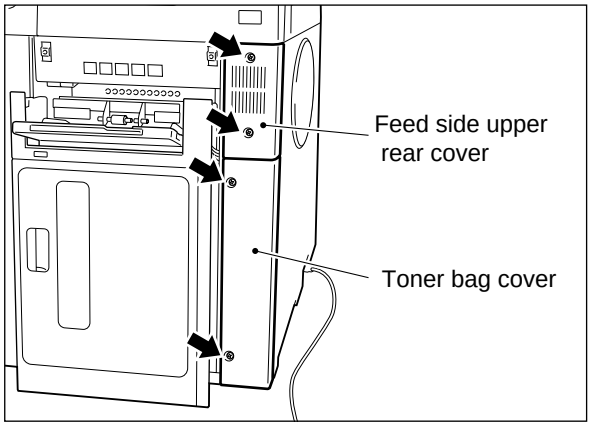
[G] Power switch cover

(1) Slide the LCF unit.
(2) Remove the 3 screws.

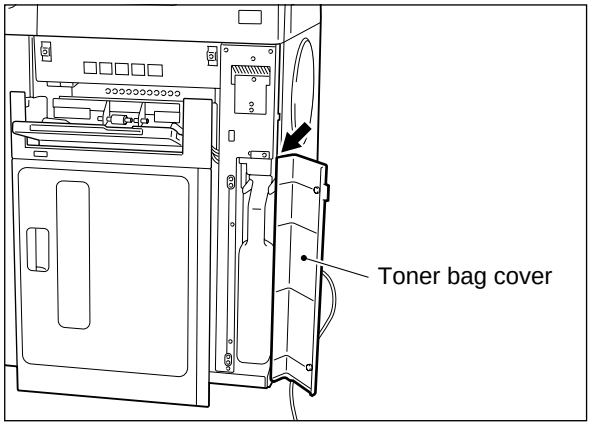


[H] Rear top cover on paper (feed side) and toner bag cover

(1) Remove feed-side rear cover (2 screws).

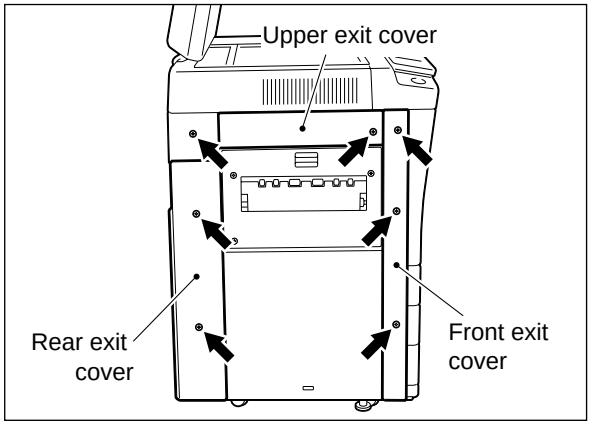


(2) Remove the 2 coin screws, open the toner bag cover and remove the upper hinge screw.
(3) Remove the toner bag cover from the lower hinge.

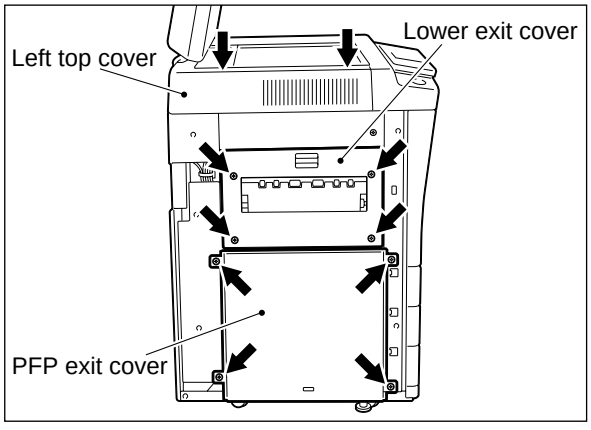


[I] Upper exit cover, lower exit cover, PFP exit cover, front exit cover and rear exit cover

(1) Remove the upper exit cover (2 screws).
(2) Remove the front exit cover (3 screws).
(3) Remove the rear exit cover (2 screws).



(4) Remove the lower exit cover (4 screws).
(5) Remove the PFP exit cover (4 screws).

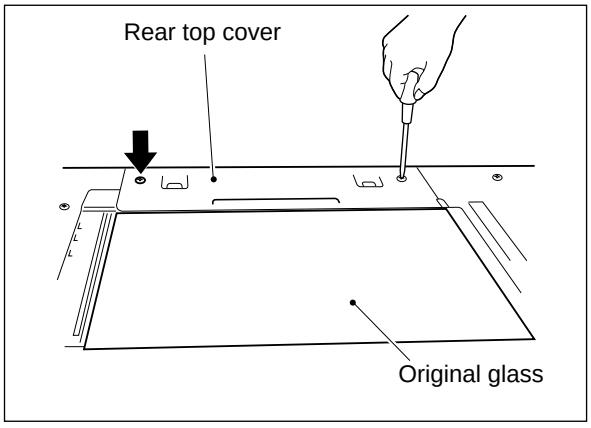


[J] Left top cover

(1) Remove the 2 screws.

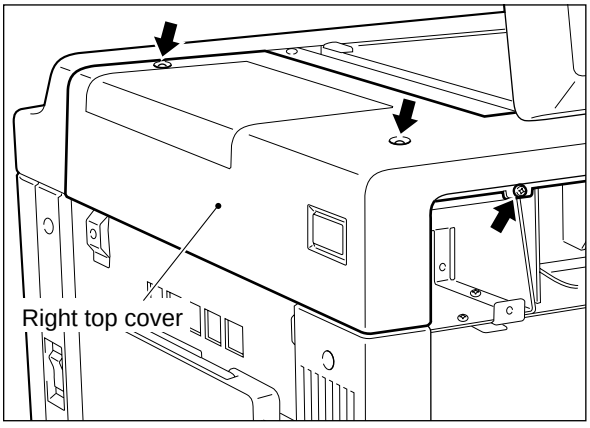
[K] Rear top cover

(1) Remove the ADF unit.
(2) Remove the 2 screws.



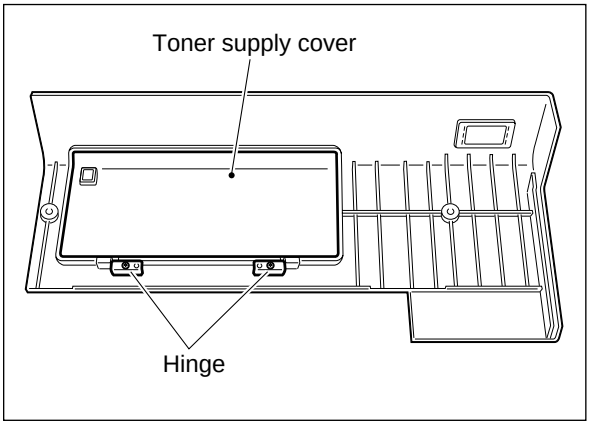
[L] Right top cover

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Remove the 3 screws.



[M] Toner supply cover

(1) Remove the right top cover.
(2) Remove the two hinges (1 screw for each), and remove the toner supply cover.



[N] Middle inner cover

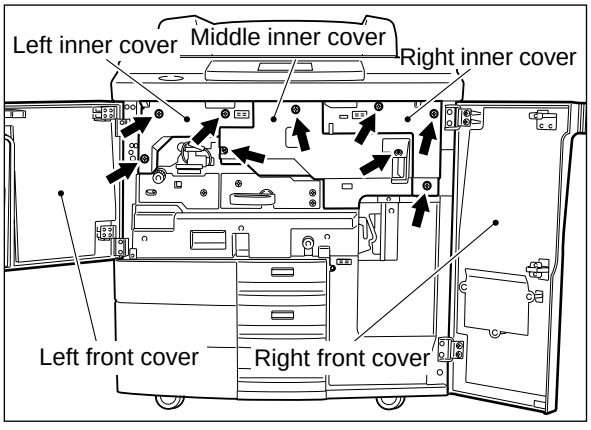
(1) Open the right and left front covers.
(2) Remove the 3 screws.

[O] Right inner cover

(1) Remove the middle inner cover.
(2) Remove the 3 screws.

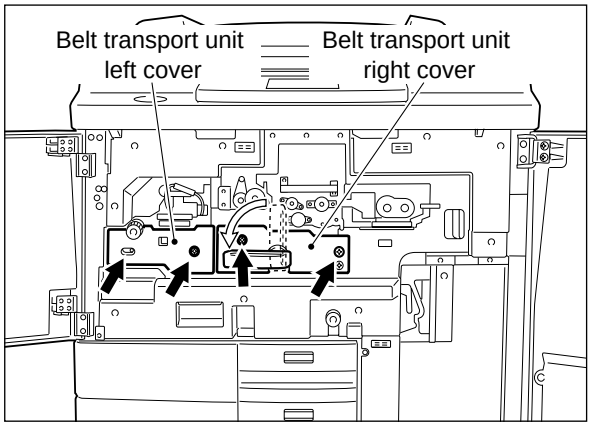
[P] Left inner cover

(1) Remove the middle inner cover.
(2) Remove the 3 screws.



[Q] Belt transport unit right cover

(1) Push down the jam release in the direction of the arrow, and draw out the belt transport unit towards you.
(2) Remove the 2 screws.

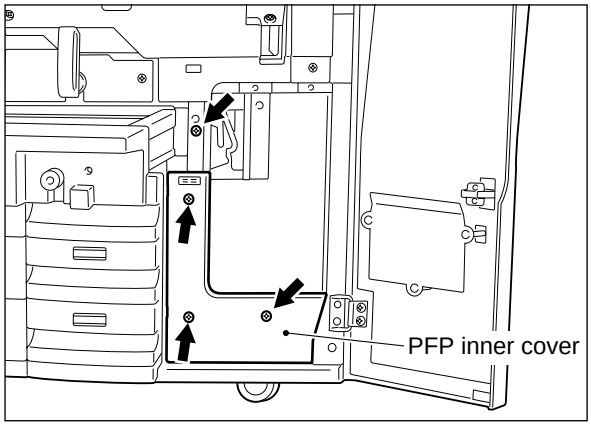


[R] Belt transport unit left cover

(1) Remove the 2 screws.

[S] PFP inner cover

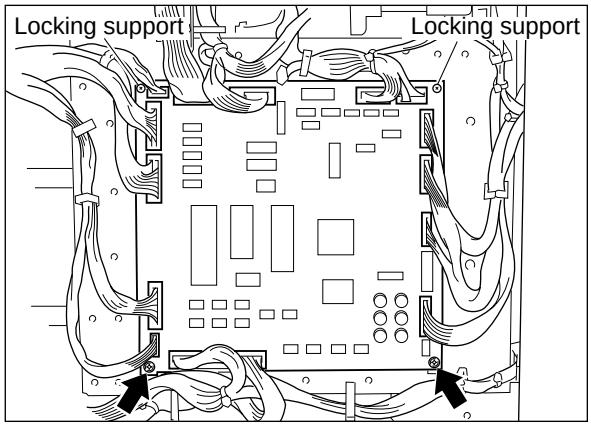
(1) Draw out the ADU unit.
(2) Remove the 4 screws.



2.4.2 Removal of PC boards

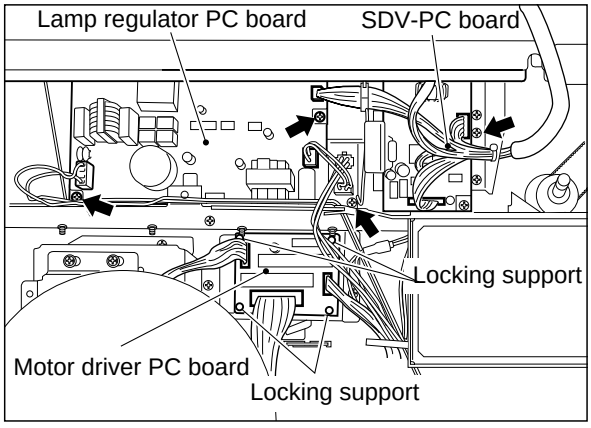
[A] Logic PC board (PWA-F-LGC-300)

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the 15 connectors.
(3) Remove the lock supports (2 pcs.) and the 2 screws, then remove the logic PC board.



[B] Motor drive PC board (PWA-F-MOT-300)

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the 3 connectors.
(3) Remove the lock supports (4 pcs.), then remove the motor drive PC board.



[C] Lamp regulator PC board (PS-LRG-JU-300, PS-LRG-E-300)

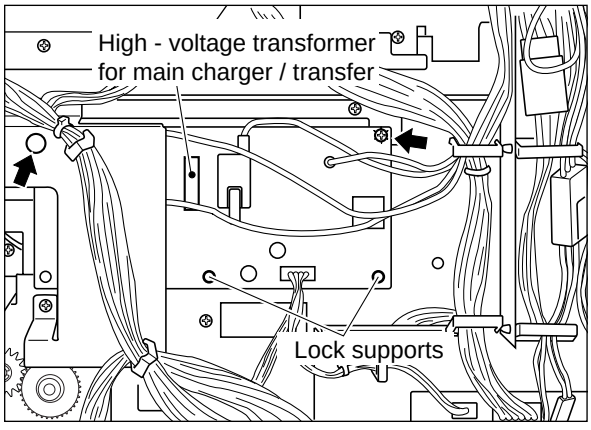
(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the 3 connectors.
(3) Remove the 2 screws, then remove the lamp regulator PC board.

[D] SDV-PC board (PWA-F-SDV-300)

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the 3 connectors.
(3) Remove the 2 screws and then remove the SDV-PC board.

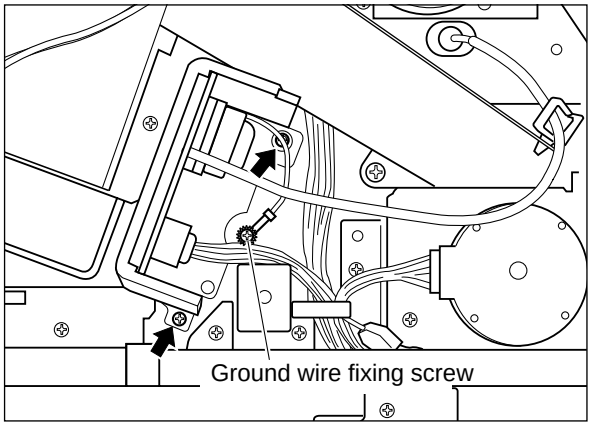
[E] High-voltage transformer for main charger and transfer (PS-HVT-TM-300)

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the 5 connectors.
(3) Remove the lock supports (2 pcs.) and the 2 screws. Then remove the high-voltage transformer for main charger and transfer.

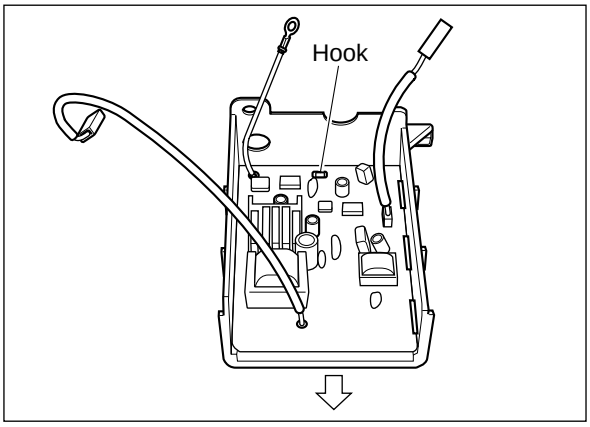


[F] Developer bias transformer (PS-HVT-DB-300)

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the 2 connectors.
(3) Remove the 2 unit fixing screws and the earth lead fixing screws, and take out the developer bias transformer.

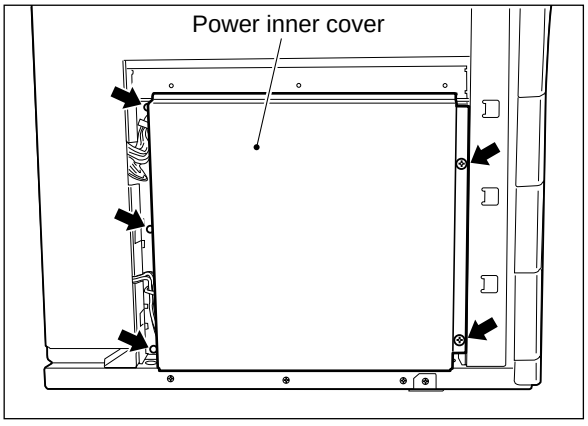


(4) Remove the PC board fastener hook, and draw out the developer bias transformer.



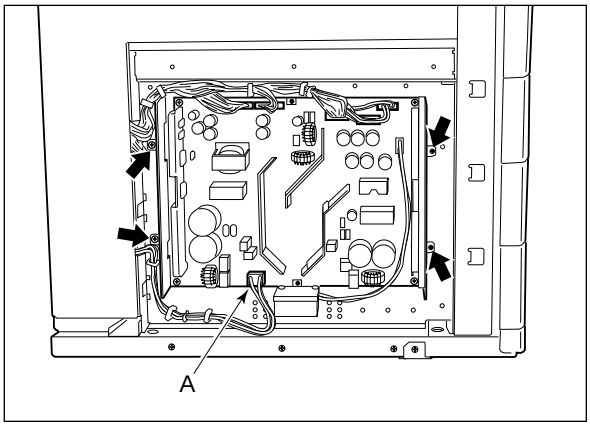
[G] Switching power supply unit

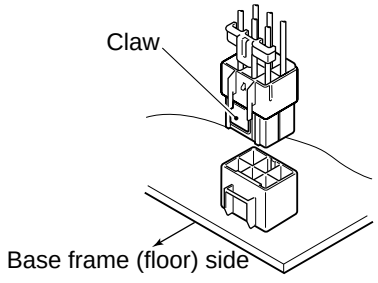
(1) Remove the front exit cover (3 screws).
(2) Remove the rear exit cover (2 screws).
(3) Remove the PFP exit cover (4 screws).
(4) Remove the power supply inner cover (5 screws).



(5) Disconnect the 9 connectors.
(6) Remove the 4 screws, and remove the switching power supply unit.

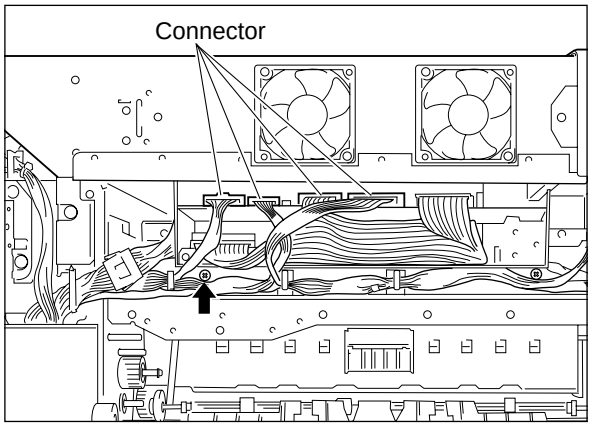
Note: Claws are located on the base frame side (floor side) of the connector shown in the view A, and are difficult to see.

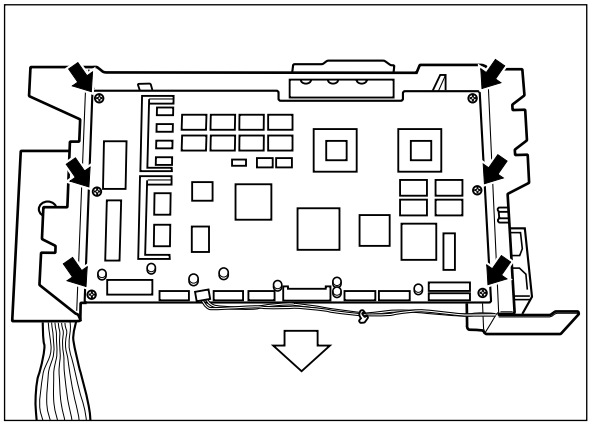




[H] System PC board (PWA-SYS)

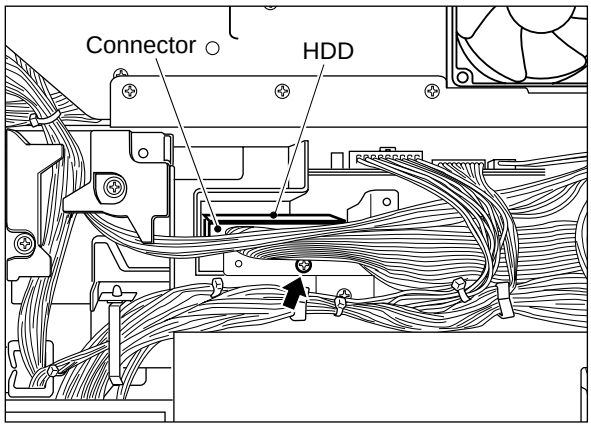
(1) Remove the glass holder, original glass and left top cover.
(2) Remove the indicator screw, and slide the indicator to remove the scanner section lens cover.
(3) Disconnect the connector from the system PC board side of the harness connecting the scanner logic PC board and the system PC board, and remove the cover on the rear side.
(4) Remove the system PC board side of the harness connecting the system PC board and the PLG PC board.
(5) Remove the screw fastening the system electrics unit.
(6) Remove the upper exit cover, and open out the lower exit cover.
(7) Remove the slot cover on the inside of the upper exit cover (15 screws).
(8) Disconnect the 4 connectors from the system PC board and the 2 screws, and drive out the system electrics unit.
(9) Remove the 6 screws, and draw out the system PC board in the direction of the arrow from the mother PC board.



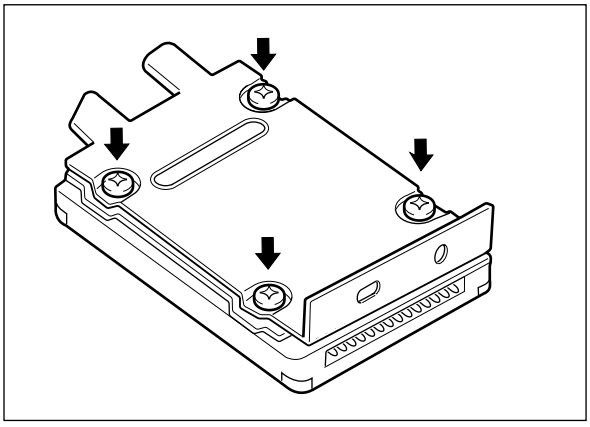


[I] HDD

(1) Remove the upper exit cover.
(2) Remove the system electronics slot cover (15 screws).
(3) Remove the screw and connector, and take out the HDD unit.

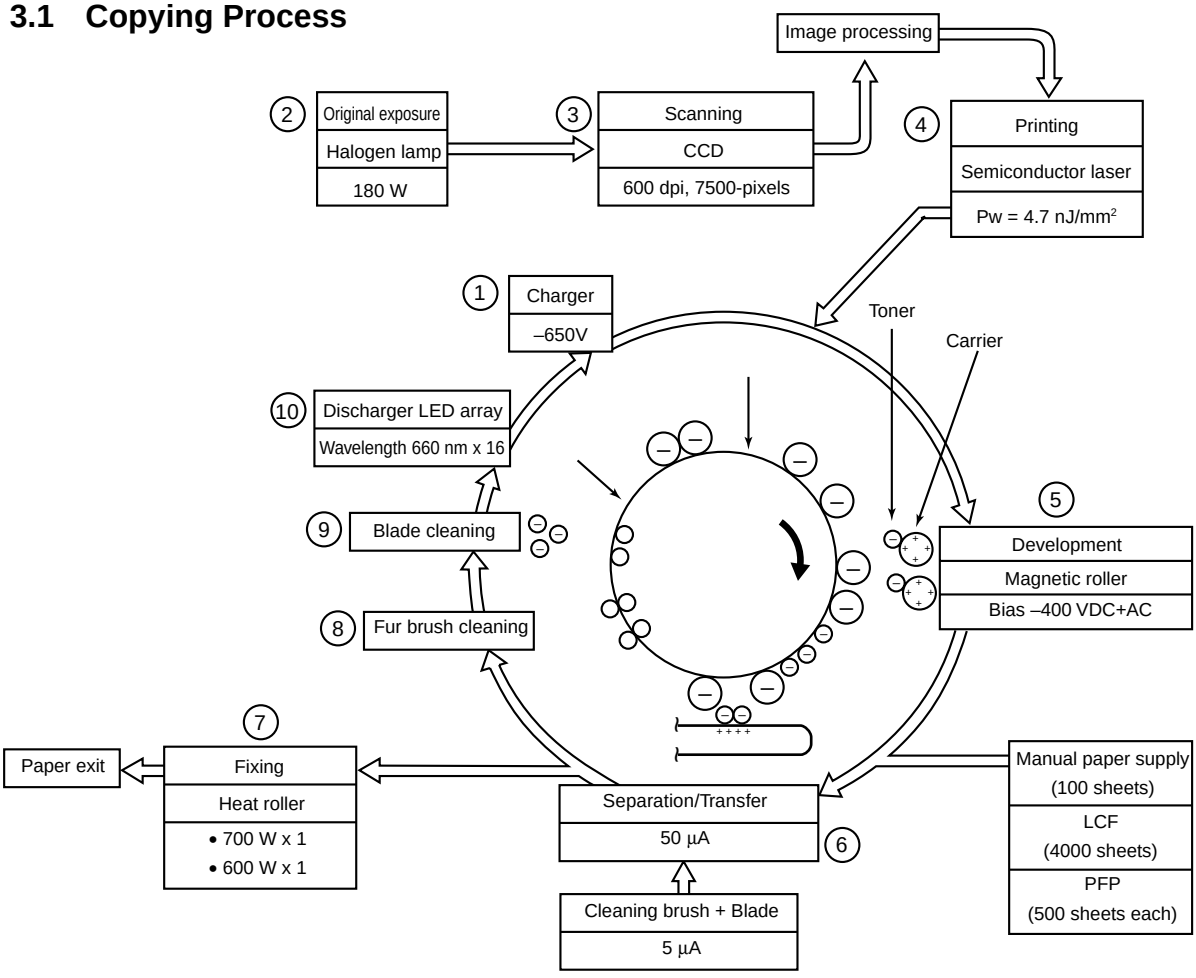


(4) Remove the bracket (4 screws).



3. COPYING PROCESS

3.1 Copying Process



① Charging: Negatively charges the surface of the photosensitive drum.

⬇

② Original exposure: Images are converted to optical signals.

⬇

③ Scanning: Image optical signals are converted to electrical signals.

⬇

④ Printing: Image electrical signals are converted to optical signals (for laser emission) and exposed on the photosensitive drum.

⬇

⑤ Development: ⊖ toner adheres to the surface of the photosensitive drum and forms a visible image.

⬇

⑥ Transfer/separation: Transfers the visible image from the drum onto the transfer (copy) sheet.
Simultaneously separates the transfer sheet and toner from the drum.

⬇

⑦ Fixing: Fixes the toner on the transfer sheet by applying heat and pressure.

⬇

⑧ Fur brush cleaning: Dirt and paper dust is cleaned from the drum.

⬇

⑨ Cleaning: Mechanically removes any remaining toner on the drum.

⑩ Discharger LED array: Discharges any remaining ⊖ charge from the drum.

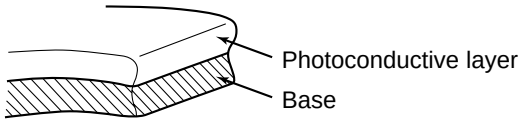
3.2 Details of Copying Process

(1) Photosensitive Drum

The photosensitive drum has two layers, an outer and an inner layer. The outer layer is a semi-conductive layer. It uses an organic photoconductive carrier (OPC) material. The inner layer is Aluminum and is a conductive material.

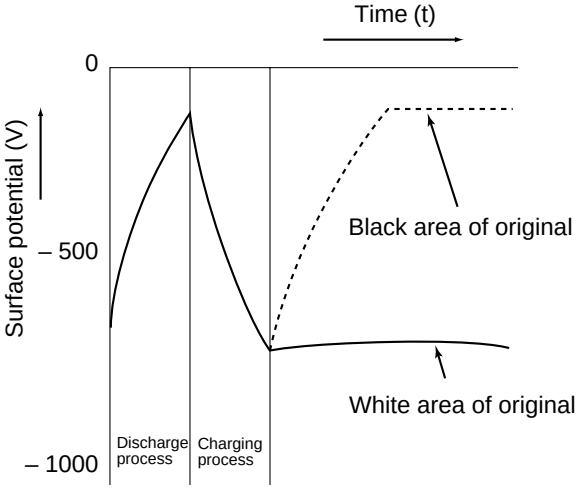
The resistance of the drum's semi-conductive outer layer changes depending on the strength of the incident light.

- When the incident light is strong, its resistance decreases and the photosensitive drum becomes a conductor.
- When the incident light is weak, the resistance increases and the photosensitive drum becomes an insulator.



Structure of the photosensitive drum

Formation of "Latent Image" is performed in the following manner. The minus (negative) potential on the drum surface, corresponding to the black areas of the original document, are removed (neutralized) by light from the scanner/optics system while the minus charge remains on the surface of the drum corresponding to the white areas of the original document. The resultant image (which the human eye cannot see) is called "Latent Image."

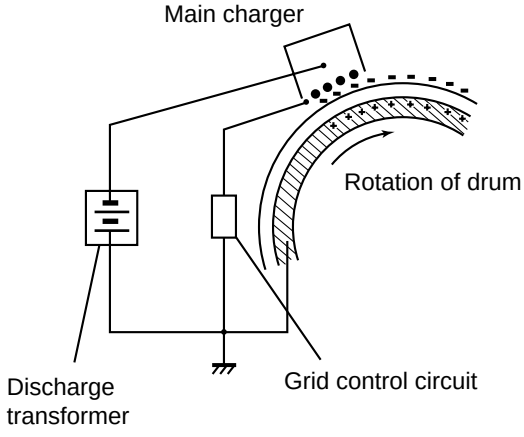


Electric potential of the photosensitive drum

(2) Charging

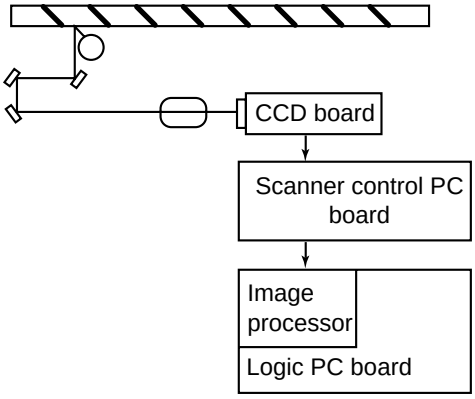
Charging is the process of uniformly applying a charge to the surface of the photosensitive drum.

The minus (negative) electrostatic charge produced by the charge corona assembly is applied to the charge corona "grid." Its purpose is to produce a uniform minus (negative) electrostatic charge across the photosensitive drum surface. The Grid Control Circuit that is part of the Discharge Transformer ultimately determines the voltage potential on the drum surface. (See illustration)



(3) Scanning

Scanning is the process of directing light at the original document. Part of the scanning process is the conversion of reflected light (from the original document) into electrical signals. The Charged Coupled Device (CCD) receives light from the optics area and converts them into electrical signals that are sent to the Image Processing System for further processing into digital signals.



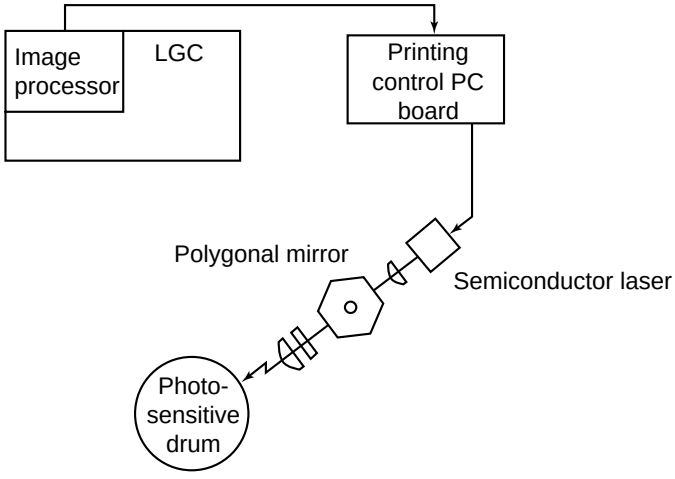
(Example)

Light intensity at the CCD photodetector	Value of signals to be output
Light	255
Dark	0

Contrast (differences in light and dark) is divided into 256 steps.

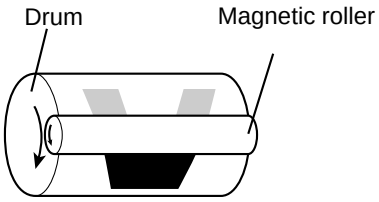
(4) Printing (Latent Image forming)

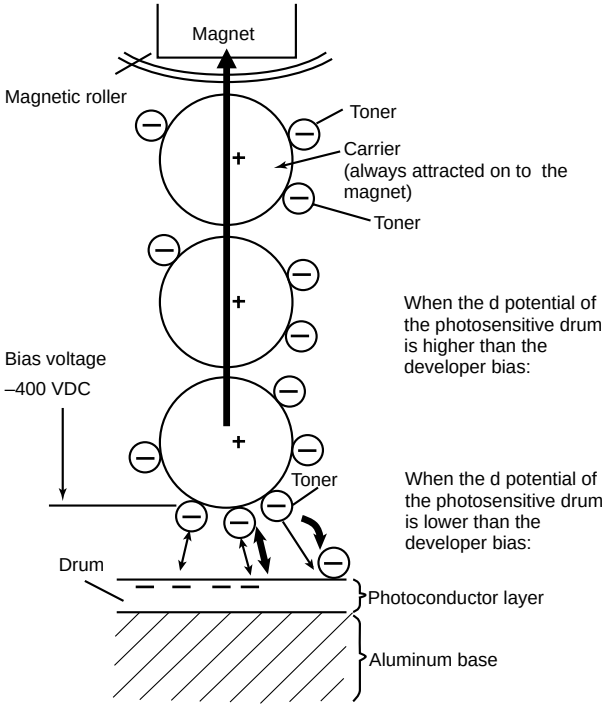
Printing is the process of converting image signals (from the image processor) into optical signals and then directing these signals towards the photosensitive drum via a laser unit. This action produces an electrostatic latent image on the surface of the drum.

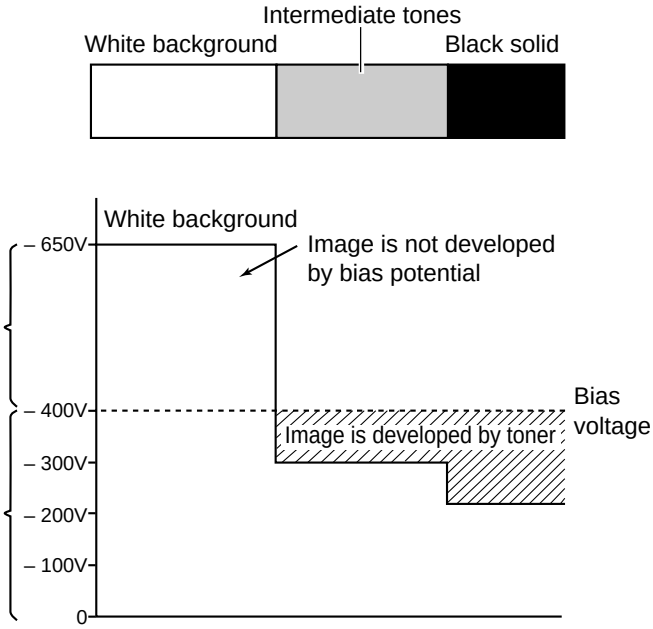


(5) Development

Development is the process of converting the electrostatic latent image into “visible image.” The developing agent is “brushed” unto the surface of the photosensitive drum by means of magnetic roller(s). The developing agent, commonly called “developer,” is coated with toner (which has a minus/negative charge). Toner is attracted to the latent image on the drum surface on the areas whose surface potential is lower than the developer bias voltage of the magnetic roller. At this point, the latent image becomes developed image.

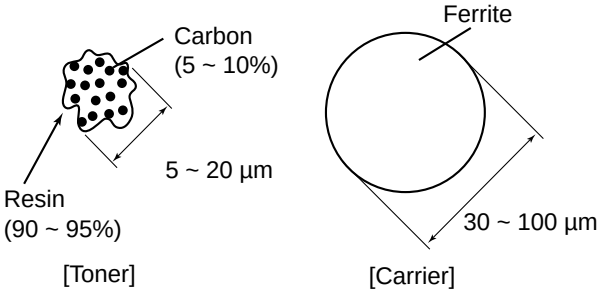






- About Developing Agent

  Two materials comprise the Developing Agent (developer): the toner material and the carrier material. The toner has a minus (negative) charge applied to it and the developer, a plus polarity (positive charge). Mixing and agitating the carrier material during the mixing process produces electrostatic charge of the material. This action produces a plus polarity (positive charge) on the car-



rier material. Toner, which has a minus (negative) charge, adheres to the carrier material and producing what is commonly referred to as “developer.”

Toner is a material mainly made with plastic and carbon materials.

Carrier is ferrite beads with a coating layer for the reason of the stabilization of the frictional charge with toner.

Note:

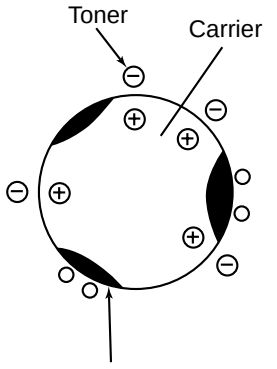
If the developer material is used for long periods (beyond its normal life span), toner will become stuck to the carrier.

↓

The carrier’s (charging) performance is lowered.

Result: 1. Image density is lowered.
2. Toner scattering occurs.
3. Fogging occurs.

Solution: Exchange the developer material.



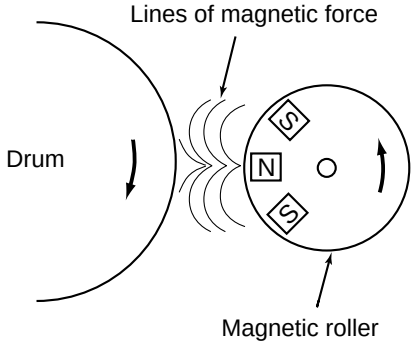
- Magnetic roller

  - Magnetic brush development -

  The South and North poles are arranged, as shown in the figure on the right inside the magnetic roller. The developer material contacts the drum forming a brush.

  ||

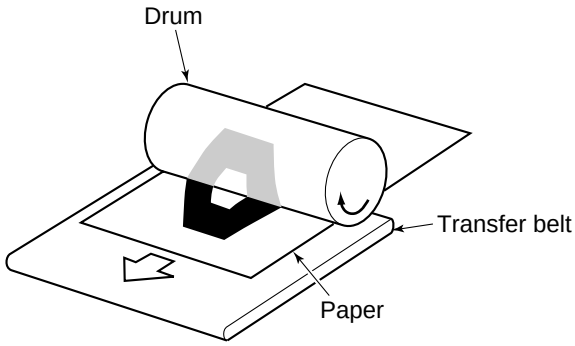
  This is caused by the lines of magnetic force between the South and North poles.



(6) Transfer/Separation

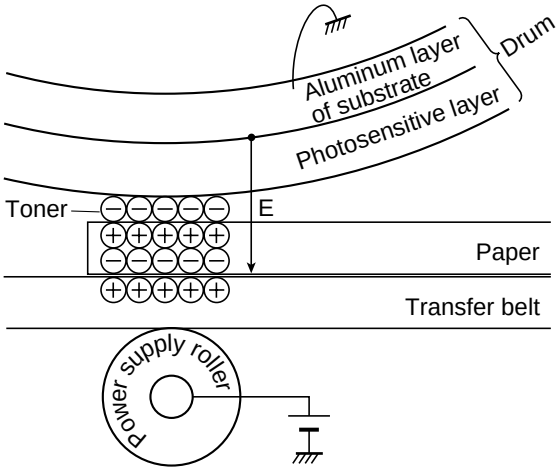
The transfer process transfers the developed image onto the surface of the copy paper.

- Paper passing under the drum is held in contact to the belt by static electricity produced by the transfer belt. onto the paper.
- Separation is accomplished shortly after transfer begins.



1. Transfer

Plus bias is applied to the power supply roller, and the transfer belt is charged to have a plus bias. This causes an electric field (E) to form between the transfer belt (plus charge) and the aluminum layer (earth) of the drum substrate. This, in turn, polarizes the paper as shown in the figure. Tone is transferred to the paper by electrostatic attraction acting between the toner (minus charge) and the polarization charge (plus charge) on the top surface of the paper.



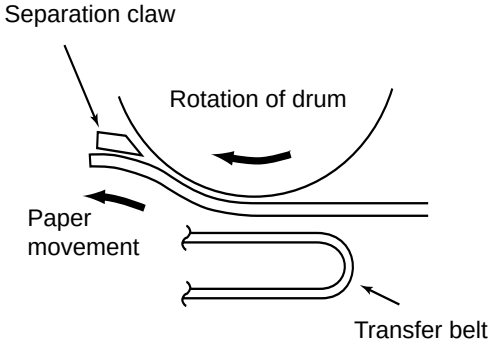
2. Separation

The paper is held in contact against the belt and separated from the drum by electrostatic attraction acting between the belt (plus charge) and the polarization charge (minus charge) on the bottom surface of the paper.

Reference

- Combined use of transfer belt and separation claw.

  To prevent the copy paper from failing to be separated during the operation, due to incomplete transfer belt charging or absorption of moisture, and thus jamming up the cleaner, a separation claw mechanically separates any copy paper which fails to be separated.



(7) Fixing

Toner is melted into the fibers of the paper with the application of heat and pressure.

Method: Melting point of the toner is 100°C. ~110°C.

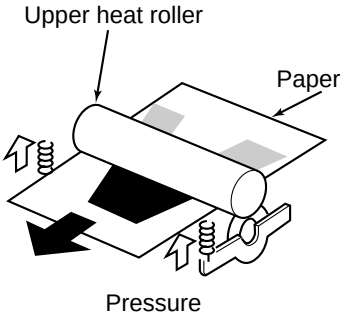
↓

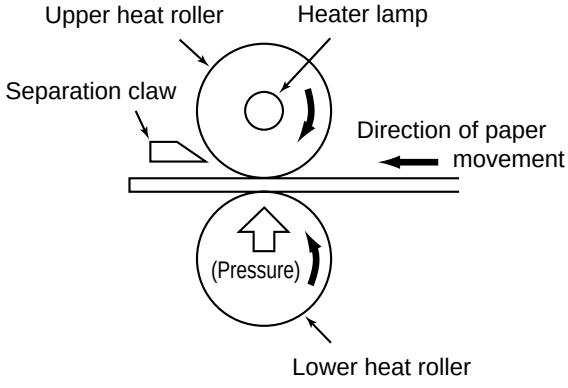
Heat: The upper (heat) roller applies the required heat that melts the toner.

plus

Pressure: The pressure (lower) roller applies pressure that fixes the melted toner into the fibers of the paper.

The combination and the function of the two rollers accomplish the fixing process of the fusing system.





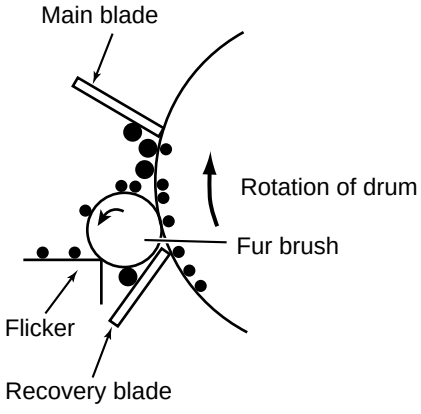
(8) Cleaning

This process cleans the surface of the drum. It also collects the residual toner.

The following two processes are carried out:

(1) The fur brush scrapes of excessive toner and paper scraps.
(The flicker scrapes off toner from the brush.)

(2) Residual toner on the drum is scraped off.
The drum surface is cleaned.



(9) Discharge

This process electrically discharges any residual electrostatic charge left on the surface of the drum.

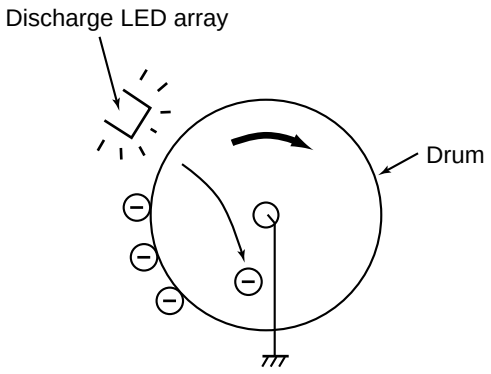
If not removed, an uneven charge is placed on the drum surface that will affect the print quality of the next copy. Double imaging will occur.

Method: A discharge LED array illuminates the entire surface of the drum.

The drum becomes a conductor and all residual charges will be grounded.

All electrostatic charges are removed at this time.

The drum therefore is prepared to take on a new charge.



3.3 Comparison of Copying Process Conditions

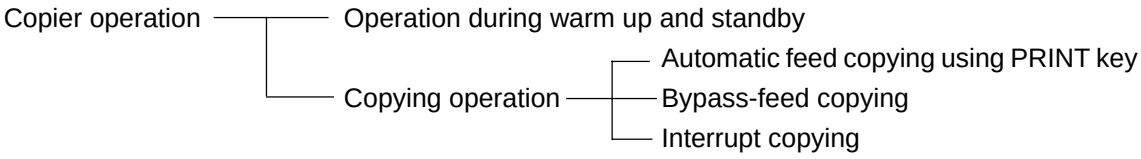
Process	6560	8070 /6570/5570
1. Drum	OD-6560 (OPC drum)	OD-6570 (OPC drum)
(1) Sensitivity	(1) Highly sensitized drum	(1) Highly sensitized drum
(2) Surface potential	(2) -680 V (grid voltage -780 V) Scolotron system (output variable by numerical keypad)	*(2) -650 V (grid voltage -720 V) Scolotron system
2. Main charger	Variable grid output (input 0 to 255 is set up on control panel numerical keypad)	←
3. Exposure (1) Light control	(1) Automatic exposure + 11-step step light control	(1) Automatic exposure + 11-step LCD setting
(2) Light source	(2) 300W halogen lamp Stabilized by regulator (brightness is fixed even if voltage changes)	(2) Laser scan (Adjustment not needed)
4. Image density control	None	Toner adhesion volume sensor
5. Development (1) Magnetic roller	(1) One magnetic roller	(1) Two magnetic rollers
(2) Auto-toner	(2) Magnetic bridge-circuit system	(2) ←
(3) Toner replenishment	(3) Toner hopper system	(3) ←
(4) Toner-empty detection	(4) Density sensing system/lever joint use	(4) ←
(5) Toner	(5) T-6560, T-6560E	(5) T-6570, T-6570E
(6) Developer material	(6) D-6560	(6) D-6570
(7) Developer bias	(7) DC-200 V	*(7) DC-400 V + AC
6. Discharge before cleaning	Variable output semiconductor transformer	None
7. Transfer bias	DC -1.4~-1.6 kV	None
8. Transfer	Transfer charger system	Transfer belt system
9. Separation	Separation charge system Separation claw applied	Static electricity separation by transfer belt Separation claw applied
10. Discharge	Tungsten lamp (white)	LED (red)

(*) Digital copiers of the 8070/6570/5570 have a maintenance of image quality, so the values of Drum surface potential and Developer bias are changed in response to the image quality based on the adjustment value. This maintenance of image quality is applied from the first production of the 8070/6570/5570.

Process	6560	8070 /6570/5570
11. Pre-cleaning discharge	None	None
12. Cleaning (1) System	(1) Blade system + brush	(1) ←
(2) Recovered toner	(2) Non-reusable	(2) ←
13. Fur brush bias	Earth	←
14. Fixing (1) System • Fixing	(1) Long-life heat roller system • Heat roller: Teflon-coated roller (ø60) (lamp rating: 900W)	(1) Long-life heat roller system • Upper heat roller: Teflon-coated roller (ø60) (lamp rating: 700 + 600W)
• Pressure	• Pressure roller: PFA tube roller (ø60) (lamp rating: 250W)	• Lower heat roller: PFA tube roller (ø60) (without lamp)
(2) Cleaning	(2) • Heater roller cleaning roller (ø18) • Cleaning silicon felt roller (ø27) • Press roller cleaning silicon roller (ø28)	(2) • Upper heater roller cleaning roller (Cleaning roller 1) (ø33) • Cleaning felt roller (Cleaning roller 2) (ø27) • Lower heat roller cleaning felt roller (Cleaning roller 3) (ø28) • Cleaning metal roller (Cleaning roller 4) (ø29)
(3) Heater temperature control	(3) ON/OFF control by thermistor (upper/lower roller independent temperature control)	(3) ←
15. Control	Microcomputer control	←
16. Drive system	Separated independent drive by DC motor	←

4. COPIER OPERATION

4.1 Operation Outline



4.2 Description of Operation

4.2.1 Warming up

(1) Initialize operation

- The main switch is turned ON.
- The heater lamp is turned ON.
- Copy quantity indicator “1” and “WAIT WARMING UP” are displayed.
- Fan
- Initialization of the scanning optical system
  - ~ The carriages move to their home positions and then stop.
  - ~ The carriages move to the peak detection position.
  - ~ The halogen lamp is turned ON. ~ The peak is detected. (white color detection of the shading correction board) ~ The halogen lamp is turned OFF.
  - ~ Original size indicators are initialized and move to a position indicating the copy area.
- Initialization of the paper feed section
  - ~ Each slot’s cassette trays move upward.
  - ~ The ADU (auto-duplexing unit) guides move to the maximum size position after their home position is detected.
- Initialization of laser optical system
  - ~ The polygon mirror is rotated.
  - ~ The beam position is controlled.
- Other
  - ~ The main charger cleaner operates.

(2) Pre-running operation

When the heater reaches a preset temperature, the pre-run operation is carried out. (This operation is not carried out if the heat roller is sufficiently hot.)

- The fuser unit rotates.
- The drum rotates.
  - ~ The drum motor, fur brush motor and auger motor turns ON.
- Maintenance of image control
  - ~ A patch is formed on the drum, and the reflectivity of this patch is read so that the optimum conditions are set.
- This operation stops after 2 minutes of operation.

(3) When the heat roller temperature is sufficient for fixing,
- The heater lamp is turned OFF.
- Copy quantity indicator “1” and “READY” are displayed.

4.2.2 Standby (ready)
- All keys on the control panel are operable.
- When there is no key input for a set amount of time.
  ~ The copy quantity “1” is indicated, the reproduction ratio indicates “actual size”, and the exposure is set to automatic.

4.2.3 Automatic feed copying using the START key
(1) The START key is pressed to ON.
- “READY” changes to “COPYING”.
- The main charger, developer bias and discharge lamp turns ON. The fans operate at high speed.
- The drum, transfer belt, fuser and developer are running.

(2) Cassette feeding
- The PFU motor and feed clutch on the feed trays turn ON.
  ~ The pick-up roller, paper feed roller, separation roller and transport roller start to rotate.
- Paper reaches the transport roller.
  ~ The paper stop switch of the paper feed tray turns ON.
- After a set amount of time, the feed clutch is turned OFF.
- Paper reaches the aligning roller.
  ~ The aligning switch is turned ON, and the aligning operation is carried out.
- After a set amount of time, the feed roller stops rotating.

(3) Carriage operation
- The exposure lamp is turned ON. → White shading compensation is carried out.
- The scanning motor is turned ON. → Carries 1 and 2 start to advance.
- At this time, if the toner density of the developer material is lower than the set value, the copier enters the toner supply operation.

(4) After a set time lag after the carriage operation:
- The aligning motor is turned ON. → Paper is sent to the transfer unit.
- The counter is incremented.

(5) Shortly after the aligning motor is turned ON:
The transfer charge come ON.

(6) Termination of carriage scanning
- The scanning motor is turned OFF.
- The exposure lamp is turned OFF.
- The aligning motor is turned OFF (after the trailing edge of the paper exits the aligning roller).

(7) Exit operation

- The exit switch detects the passing of the paper's trailing edge.
- The main charger, developer bias and discharge lamp turns OFF.
- Operation of the drum, transfer belt, fuser unit and developer unit stops. The fans return to standby mode rotation.
- The copier displays "READY" and enters the standby mode.

4.2.4 Bypass-feed copying

(1) A sheet of paper is inserted through the bypass guide.
- The manual feed switch is turned ON.
  ~ "READY FOR BYPASS FEEDING" is displayed.
- Carriages move to their home positions.

(2) The START key is pressed
- "READY FOR BYPASS FEEDING" changes to "COPYING".
- The main charger, developer bias and discharge lamp turns ON, and the fans rotate at high speed.
- The drum, transfer belt, fuser and developer unit are running.

(3) Sheet-bypass feeding
- The manual pickup solenoid turns ON and the LCF motor rotates in reverse.
  ~ The manual feed roller is lowered.
  ~ The manual feed roller, paper feed roller, and separation roller are running.
- Aligning operation
- Paper reaches the aligning roller.
- After a set time lag, the manual pickup solenoid and LCF motor turns OFF.
  ~ Paper feeding is terminated.

(4) Same as operation (3) through (6) of automatic feed copying using the START key.

4.2.5 Interrupt copying

(1) The INTERRUPT key is pressed.
- The interruption LED is turned ON.
- The copying operation is temporarily halted and carriages-1 and -2 return to their home position.
- "JOB INTERRUPTED JOB 1 SAVED" is displayed.
- The copying mode is set to automatic exposure and 1-to-1 reproduction ratio. The copy quantity indicator remains unchanged.

(2) The preferred copying modes are specified.

(3) After interrupt copying is terminated:
- "PRESS INTERRUPT TO RESUME JOB 1" is displayed.
- When the INTERRUPT key is pressed again, the interrupt lamp goes OFF and the copier returns to the conditions before the interruption.
- "READY TO RESUME JOB 1" is displayed.

(4) The START key is pressed.
The copying operation before the interruption is resumed.

4.3 Fault Detection

If a fault occurs in the copier, a symbol corresponding to the type of fault will be displayed in order to draw the attention of the operator.

4.3.1 Classification of faults

A) Faults which can be cleared without resetting the door switch.
   (1) ADD PAPER
   (2) BYPASS MISFEED
   (3) INSERT KEY COPY COUNTER
   (4) ADD TONER
   (5) REPLACE TONER BAG

B) Faults which cannot be cleared without resetting the door switch.
   (1) CLEAR PAPER
   (2) DEVELOPER UNIT MISLOADING

C) Faults which cannot be cleared unless the main switch (S1) is turned OFF.
   (1) CALL SERVICE

4.3.2 Explanation of faults

A-1) ADD PAPER

[In the case of the copier and PFP cassettes] (When the cassette is not installed)
Detects the absence of the cassette tray.

↓

When the cassette is not installed:
When the cassette is installed but there is no paper in the cassette:
→ Paper empty status.
↓
Signal sent to control circuit.
↓
The ADD PAPER display will flash.
↓
*The START key will not function.

[In the case of the Copier and LCF and the pedestal] (When the cassette is installed)
By combining the operation of the tray motor and the condition of the tray-up switch and the empty switch, the CPU detects whether or not there is paper.

- When the power is turned ON or when the LCF door is opened/closed (for the pedestal: when the power is turned ON or when the cassette is loaded) ~
  The PFC (Paper Feed Controller) causes the LCF to initialize.
  ↓
  Detects whether or not there is paper
  Tray motor comes ON ~ The tray rises.
  At this time, both tray-up and LCF empty switches are OFF.
  → A fixed time later, if the tray-up switch is not turned ON:
  ||
  The tray is not normal → The "ADD PAPER" is displayed regardless of paper being present or not.
  ↕
  Turning OFF/ON the power clears this condition.

  → Within a fixed time, the tray-up switch is turned ON:
  ~ The tray motor stops.
  At this time, if the empty switch is ON ~ It is determined there is paper.
  At this time, if the empty switch is OFF ~ It is determined there is no paper.
  ↓
  The add paper indication blinks.

- During copying, sheets of paper are fed and when the paper supply becomes low
  → The tray-up switch goes OFF → The PFC turns on the tray motor ~ The tray moves up.
  → The tray-up switch come ON → The tray motor stops.

- During copying, when the empty switch goes OFF despite the tray-up switch being ON
  ↓
  It is determined there is no paper.
  ↓
  The add paper indication blinks.
  ↓
  Copying stops.

A-2) BYPASS MISFEED ( )

- During sheet bypass copying

  The manual pick-up solenoid has been turned ON
  ↓
  The paper stop switch-1 comes ON

  * If the paper stop switch-1 does not come ON within the specified time: (E12)

  ↓

  BYPASS MISFEED

  ↓

  The BYPASS MISFEED symbol is displayed ( )

  ↓

  Copying cannot be started

  ↓

  Clearing method: Remove the paper from the sheet-bypass guide. The manual-feed switch goes OFF.

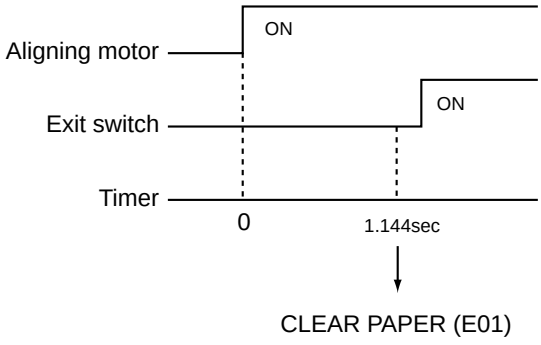
A-3) INSERT KEY COPY COUNTER

- If the key copy counter (optional) is installed in the copier and is then withdrawn:
  The INSERT KEY COPY COUNTER display appears ←
  ↓
  Copying is not possible

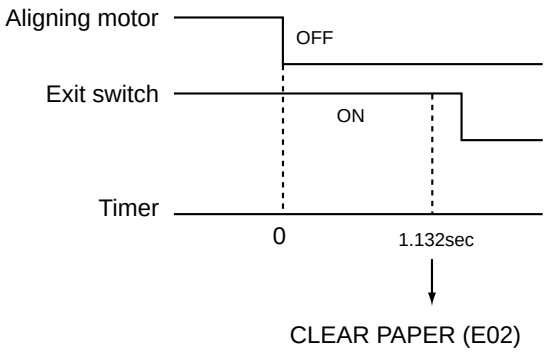
- If the counter is withdrawn during copying:
  The machine will stop after the paper being copied has exited.

B-1) CLEAR PAPER ( )

- Leading-edge jam detection by the exit switch: (E01)
  The aligning motor is turned ON
  ↓ 1.144 sec.*
  The exit switch comes ON
  * When the exit switch has not come ON after 1.144 seconds have elapsed.
  ↓
  The CLEAR PAPER symbol (E01) appears and copying will stop.



- Trailing-edge jam detection by the exit switch : (E02)
  The aligning motor goes OFF.
  ↓ 1.132 sec*
  The exit switch goes OFF (detects paper exit)
  * When the exit switch does not go OFF even after 1.132 seconds:
  ↓
  The CLEAR PAPER symbol appears (E02), and copying stops.



- Immediately after power ON
  ↓
  The exit switch is detecting paper (ON)
  ↓
  CLEAR PAPER (E03)

- If the front cover is opened during copying
  ↓
  CLEAR PAPER (E41)

- Leading edge jam detection by the paper stop switch in front of the aligning roller:(E31~36)
  After the leading edge of the paper passes the transport rollers, if the paper stop switch-1 is not turned ON within a fixed time
  ↓
  Paper misfeeding (E31~36)

- During paper feeding from the ADU:
  After the feed clutch is turned ON, if the paper stop switch (S16) does not come ON within a fixed time.
  ↓
  Paper misfeeding (E53)

- During paper stacking in the ADU:
  If the ADU jam switch does not detect any paper at the fixed timing
  ↓
  Paper misfeeding (E50)

- During paper feeding from the copier and the pedestal:
  After the feed clutch is turned ON, if paper stop switch does not come ON within a fixed time
  ↓
  Paper misfeeding (E15,16,17,19: The error code is different according to the cassette used.)

B-2) ADD TONER ( )

Toner density has become low

↓

Toner empty detection: Auto-toner sensor

↓

Control circuit: fthe ADD TONER symbol appears: copying is not possible

Clearing method: Open the toner supply cover and supply toner from the toner cartridge.
Toner supply operation: copying is possible

B-3) REPLACE TONER BAG ( )

The toner bag becomes full of toner

↓

The toner bag tilts due to its own weight: the toner-full switch will be turned ON.

↓

REPLACE TONER BAG display

- When the toner-full switch comes ON during copying

  ↓

  Copying will stop after the last sheet has exited during copying
  Clearing method: Replace with a new toner bag.

B-4) Developer unit misloading

Disconnection of the developer unit.

↓

Developer unit loading abnormal is displayed.

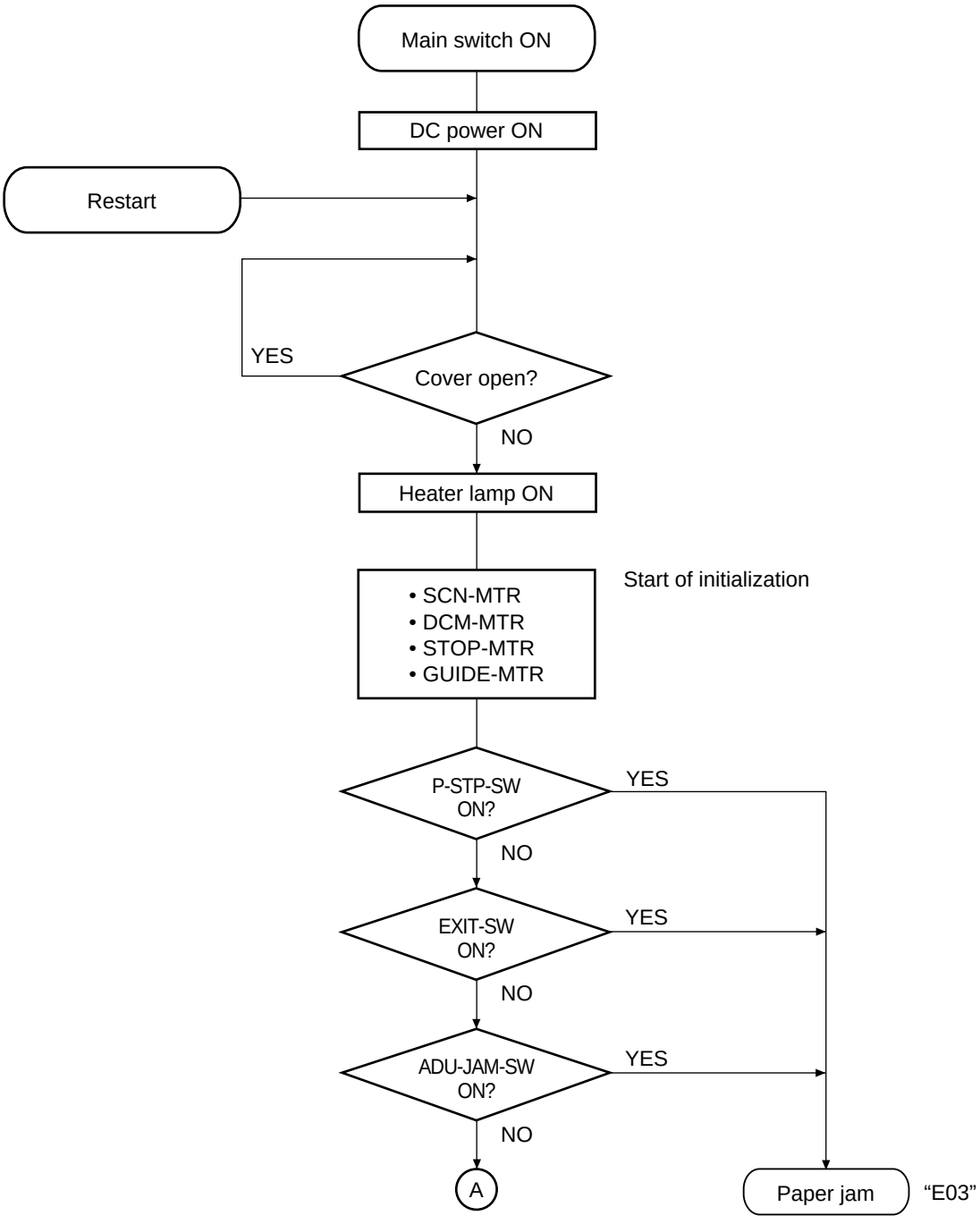
Clearing method: Connect the developer unit connector and close the front cover.

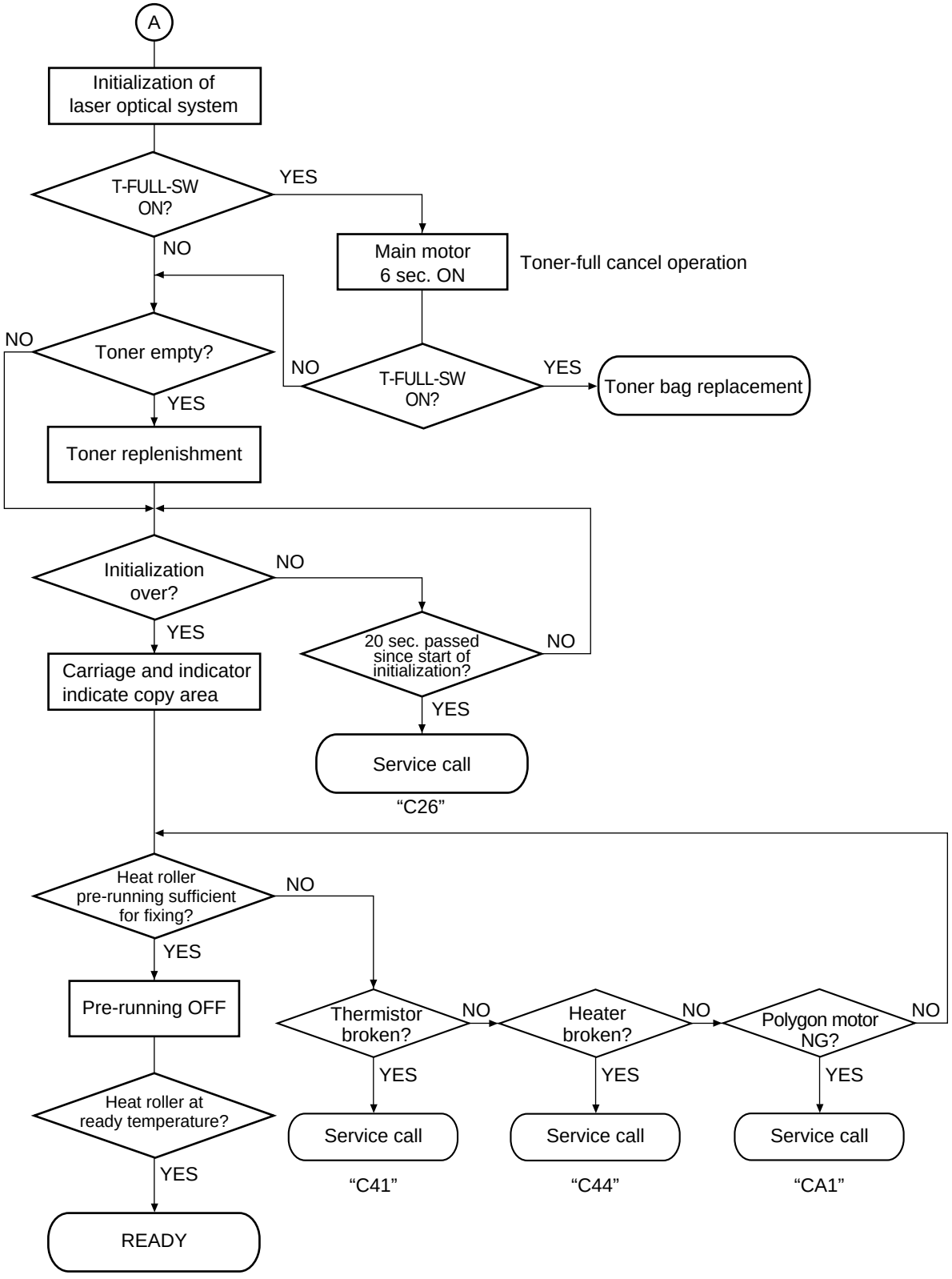
C-1) CALL SERVICE

If the CLEAR/STOP key and the “8” key are pressed simultaneously when the CALL SERVICE symbol is flashing, one of the error codes will appear on the message display.
For the contents of the error codes, refer to the “SERVICE HANDBOOK”.

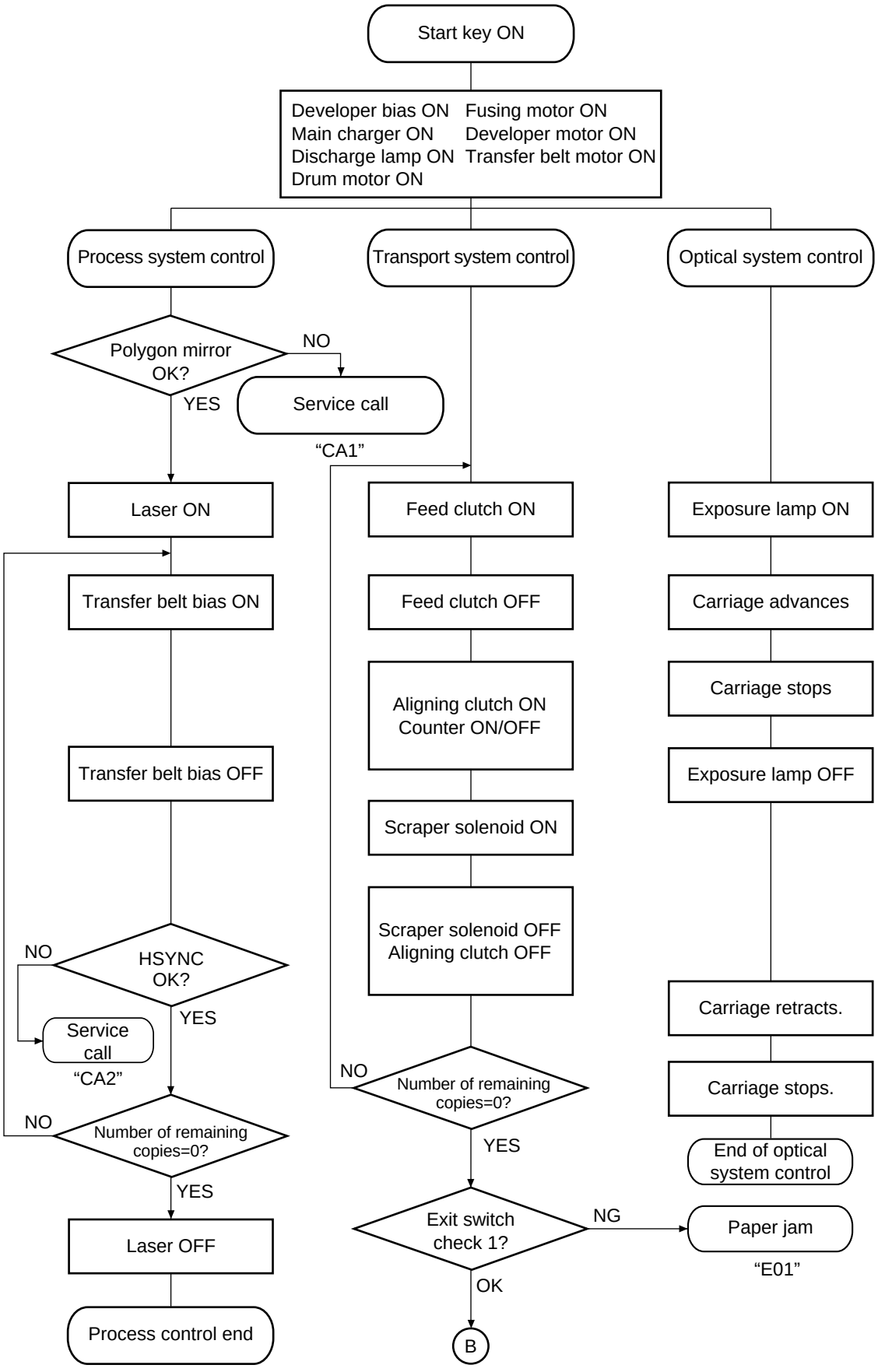
4.4 Flow Charts

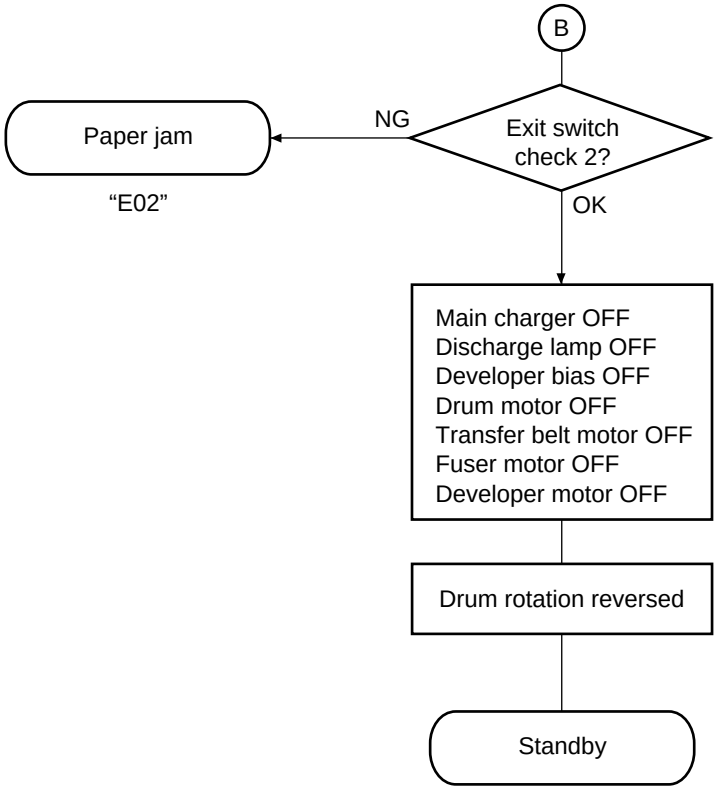
4.4.1 Power ON to ready




A
Initialization of laser optical system
T-FULL-SW ON?
YES
NO
Main motor 6 sec. ON
Toner-full cancel operation
Toner empty?
NO
YES
T-FULL-SW ON?
NO
YES
Toner bag replacement
Toner replenishment
Initialization over?
NO
YES
20 sec. passed since start of initialization?
NO
YES
Carriage and indicator indicate copy area
Service call
"C26"
Heat roller pre-running sufficient for fixing?
NO
YES
Pre-running OFF
Thermistor broken?
NO
YES
Heater broken?
NO
YES
Polygon motor NG?
NO
YES
Heat roller at ready temperature?
YES
READY
Service call
"C41"
Service call
"C44"
Service call
"CA1"

4.4.2 Automatic feed copying

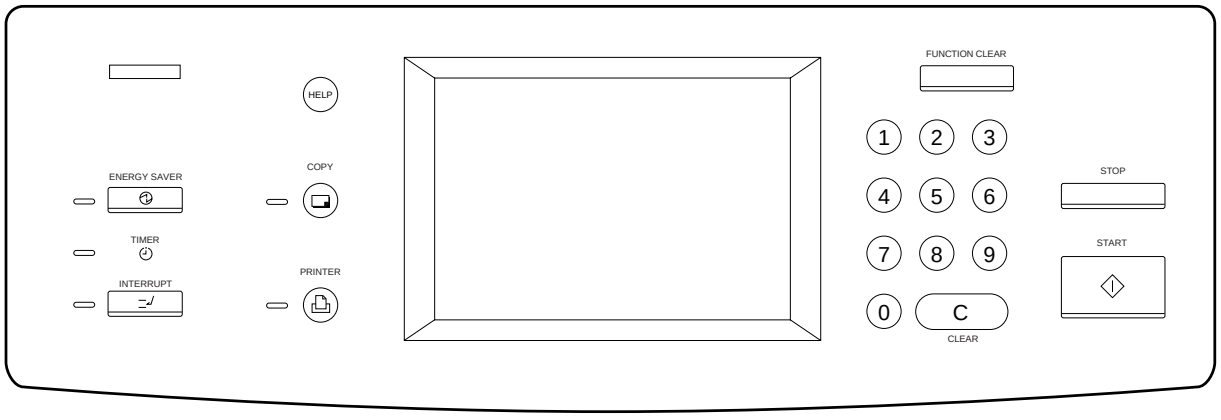



B
Exit switch check 2?
NG
Paper jam
“E02”
OK
Main charger OFF
Discharge lamp OFF
Developer bias OFF
Drum motor OFF
Transfer belt motor OFF
Fuser motor OFF
Developer motor OFF
Drum rotation reversed
Standby

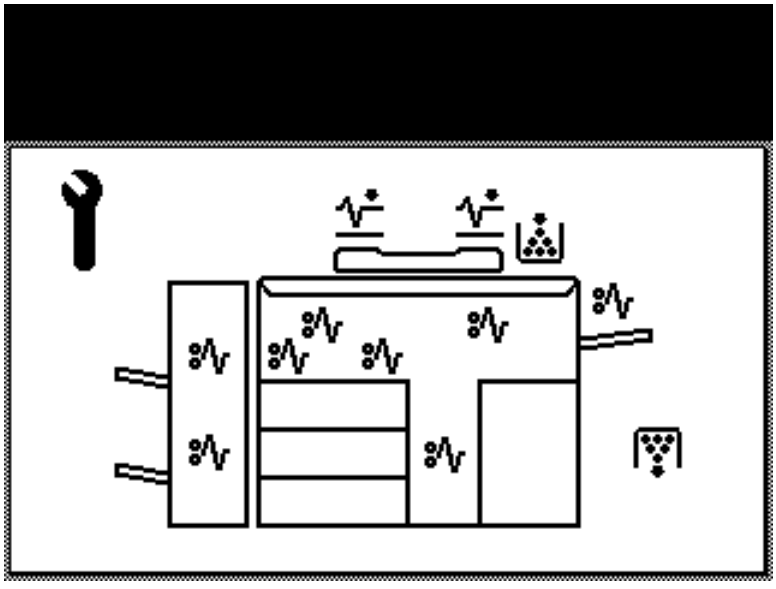
5. DISPLAY UNIT

5.1 Detailed Drawing of the Control Panel and the Display Panel

The display unit consists of key switches and touch-panel switches for copier operation/selection of each mode, LEDs and an LCD displaying the copier state or messages.
When the operator's attention is needed, a graphic symbol lights or flashes and a message indicating that particular condition is displayed in the LCD panel.



Arrangement of the control panel



LCD panel indicating operator's attention

5.2 Items Shown on the Display Panel

5.2.1 Display during normal copying

No.	Message	Conditions of machine	Notes
1	WAIT WARMING UP	Being warmed up • Indicated after the main switch is switched ON up until the machine becomes capable of copying.	• The number and reproduction ratio of copies are indicated, for example, as “0”, “100%” when the main switch comes ON.
2	READY	Capable of copying. • Indicated when the machine is capable of copying and the operator’s instructions for copying conditions are awaited. • Returns to the initial condition if no key input is given for 45 seconds.	• Copy quantity indicator indicates as “1”. When a digital key is pressed, the set number is indicated. • The set number is cleared to “1” by pressing the CLEAR/STOP key. • Manual copying is possible.
3	COPYING	Now copying. • Indicated by pressing the START key. • Copy quantity indicator becomes “1” and copying is completed.	• After completion of copying, the copy quantity indicator returns to the initially set number.
4	WAIT 30 SEC FOR WARMING UP	Energy saving conditions.	• Released by pressing the ENERGY SAVER key or the START key.
5	PLACE NEXT ORIGINAL	ADU 1-sided copying standby state.	• When using ADU 1-sided, and when not using ADF.
6	————	Timer OFF • No message is displayed in the display panel. • Timer LED is turned ON.	• Press the START key to clear.

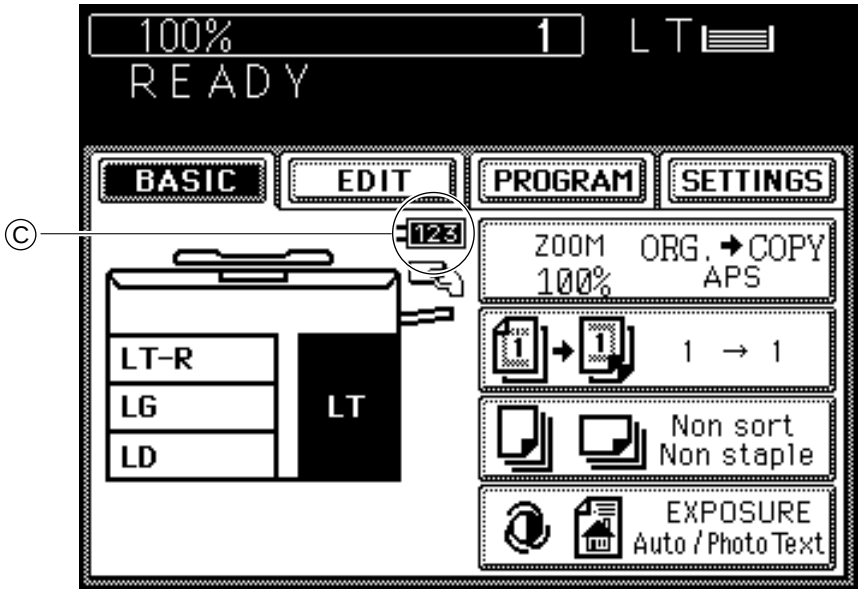


Fig. 5.2-1

5.2.2 Display in the event of faulty conditions

No.	Message	Abnormal state & indication	Solution
7	ADD PAPER	Indication of lack of paper. • Flashes when there is no paper in the cassette A in Fig. 5.2-2. • Manual copying is possible.	• Supply paper to the selected cassette. • Select another cassette.
8	ADD TONER	Indication of lack of toner. • B in Fig. 5.2-2 is indicated when the toner in the toner hopper runs out. • When this message is displayed, it is not possible to copy.	• Released after the toner is supplied and the toner supply cover is closed.
9	SET KEY COPY COUNTER	Key copy counter withdrawn. • Indicated when the key copy counter is withdrawn when the machine is READY or during copying. C in Fig. 5.2-1. • When it is removed after the pressing of the START key, the machine stops after that copy is completed, but the counter counts it.	• Released and returned to normal conditions by inserting the key copy counter.
10	DISPOSE OF USED TONER	Indication of need to replace the toner bag. • Indicated when the toner bag is full. D in Fig. 5.2-2. The copier stops.	• Open the toner bag cover and replace the toner bag. Released after the toner bag is replaced and the toner bag cover is closed.

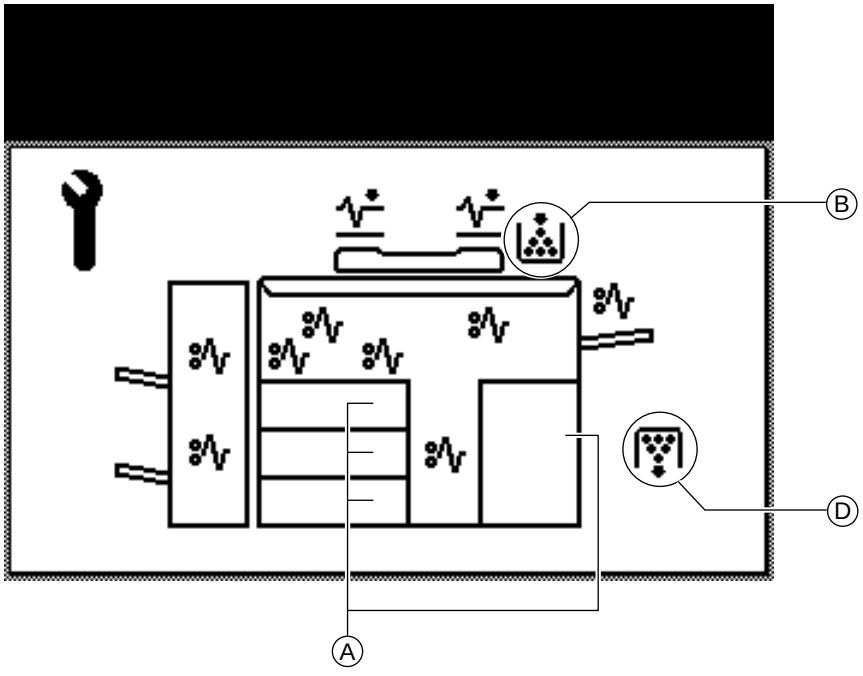


Fig. 5.2-2

No.	Message	Abnormal state & indication	Solution
11	PAPER MISFEED IN BYPASS	Bypass paper jamming • Indicated when paper jams at the bypass guide. A in Fig. 5.2-3.	The machine is returned to normal conditions automatically by pulling the paper out from the bypass guide.
12	MISFEED IN COPIER	Paper jammed in the machine. • Indicated when paper jams in the machine. B in Fig. 5.2-3.	Press the HELP/INFO key and remove the paper jammed in the copier by following the message.
13	MISFEED IN COPIER	Cassette paper misfeed. • Indicated when paper supplied from the cassette does not reach the sensor in front of the aligning roller in a set time. C in Fig. 5.2-3.	Press the HELP/INFO key and remove the paper jammed in the copier by following the message.
14	MISFEED IN DOC. FEEDER	Original jammed • Indicates when an original is jammed in the document feeder. D in Fig. 5.2-3.	Open the jam access cover and ADF unit, and remove the jammed original.
15	MISFEED IN FINISHER	Paper jammed in the finisher. • Indicates when paper is jammed in the finisher. E in Fig. 5.2-3.	Remove the paper jammed in the finisher and open and close the front cover once.
16	MISFEED IN DUPLEXER	Indicates when paper is jammed in the ADU section. F in Fig. 5.2-3.	Press the HELP/INFO key and remove the paper jammed in the copier by following the message.

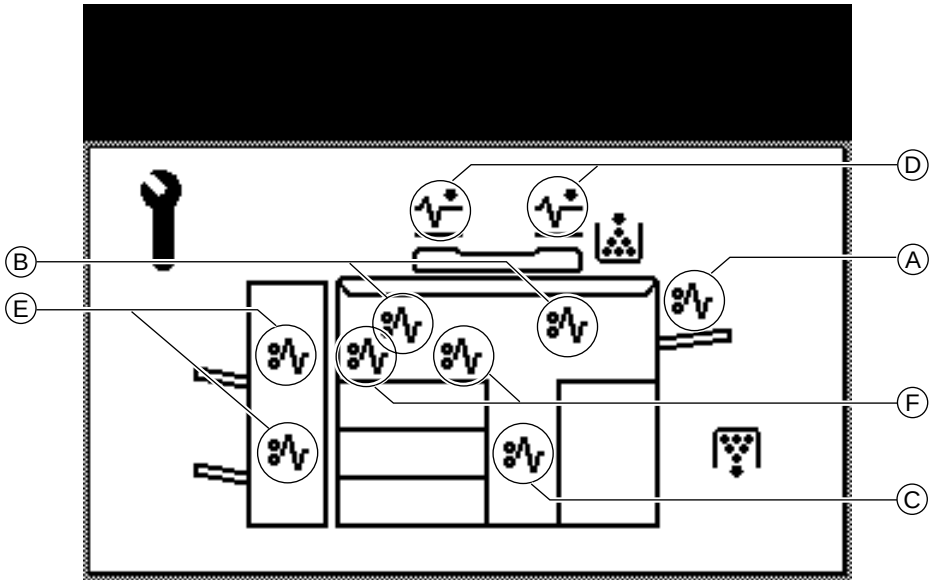


Fig. 5.2-3

No.	Message	Abnormal state & indication	Solution
17	CALL FOR SERVICE	Some part of the mechanism, motors, switches or sensors is abnormal. A in Fig. 5.2-4.	Turn OFF the machine, remove the cause of the fault and turn the machine back ON.
18	TIME FOR PERIODIC MAINTENANCE	Indication of PM cycle. • Indicated when it is time for periodic maintenance and inspection. • Capable of copying.	Maintenance and inspection by a qualified service technician.

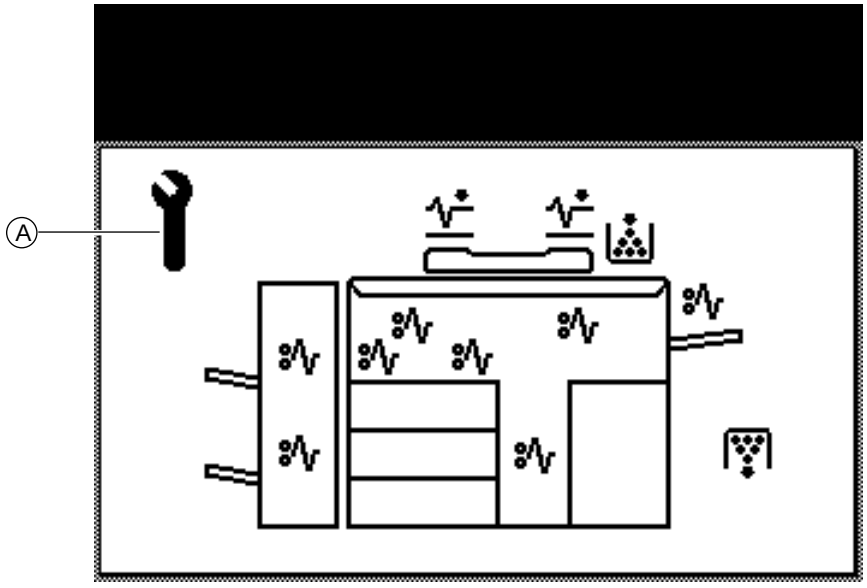


Fig. 5.2-4

5.3 Relation between Copier Conditions and Operator's Actions

Condition \ Operation	START key	Clear key	Stop keys	Digital keys	Zoom keys	Density key	Paper size key	Copy size key	Cassette key	Interrupt key	Energy saver key	Manual feed insertion	Touch panel
Warm-up	○	○	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Copy ready	○	○	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Zoom switching	—	○	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Copying	—	—	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	○ *	—	—	—
Reserve setting enabled	○	○	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Lack of paper	—	○	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Lack of toner	—	○	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Key counter missing	—	○	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Manual feed jammed	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Toner bag replaced	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Paper jammed in the unit	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Serviceman call	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Interrupted	○	—	—	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	—	○	○
Pre-heating	○	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	○	—	—

○: Performs the action or indication according to the operation. – : Ignores the operation

(1) Energy saver condition is released by pressing the Energy saver key or the START key.

Note: Interruption condition is automatically released if the machine is not used for 45 sec.

(2) Avoid manual insertion during the copying operation since this may result in paper jamming.

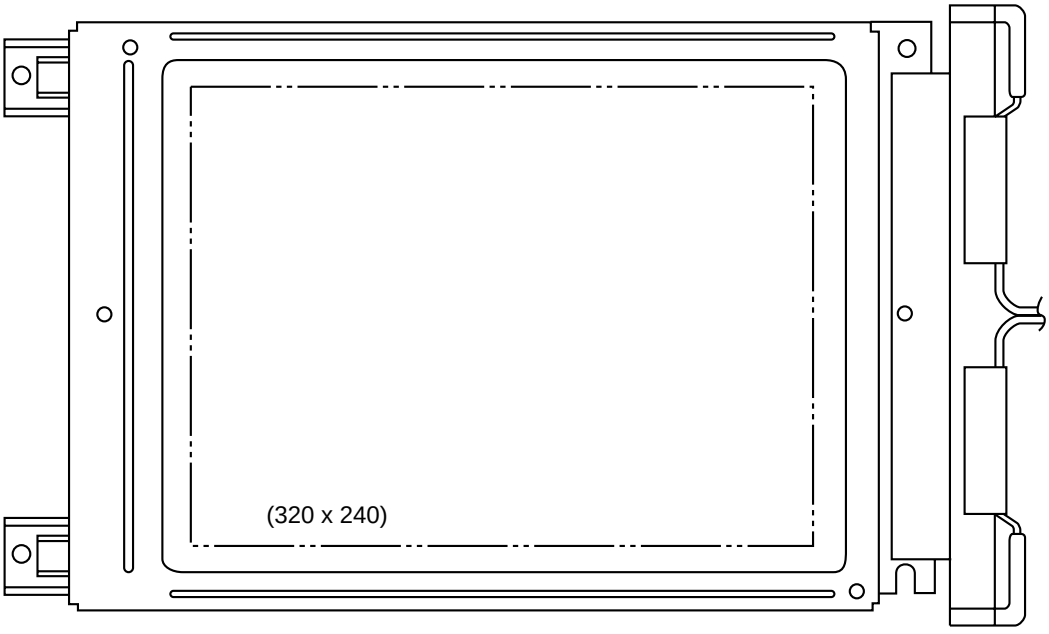
* Interrupt key is acceptable during copying operation, but not acceptable during original scanning operation.

Mar. 1999 © TOSHIBA TEC

5.4 Description of Operation

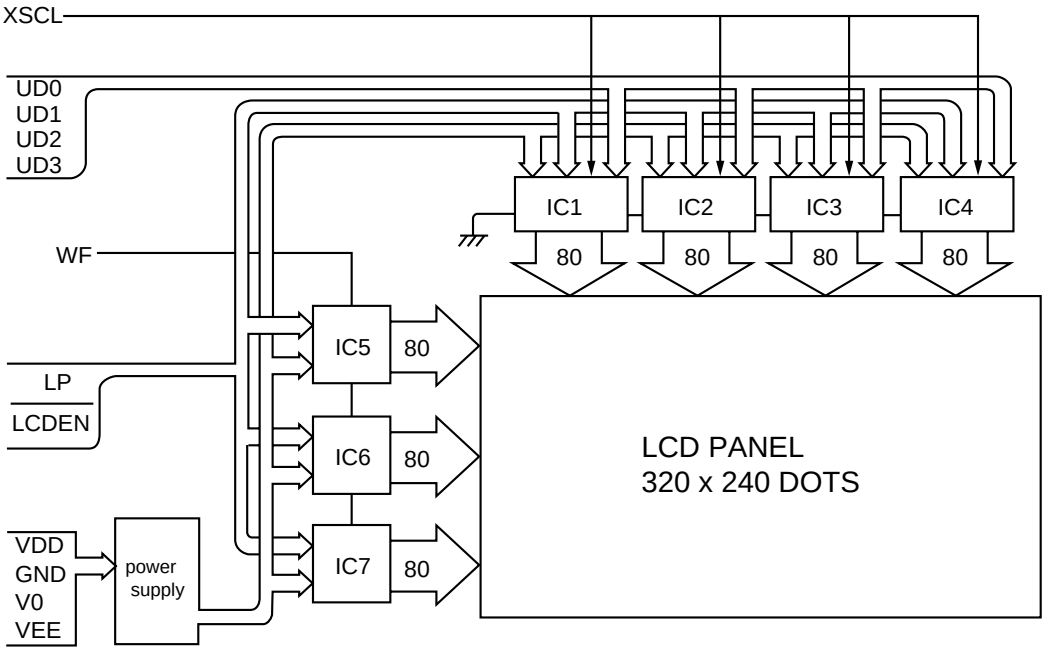
5.4.1 Dot matrix LCD circuit

(1) Structure



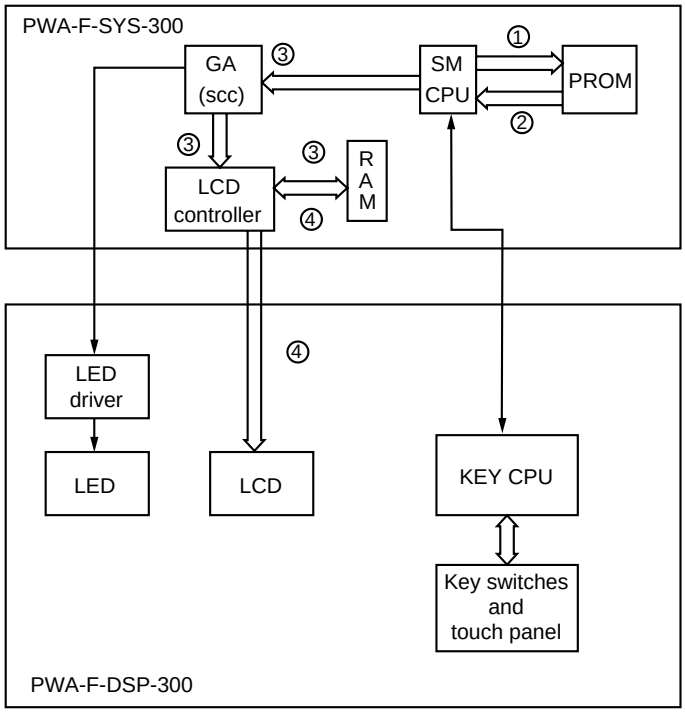
The DSP-LCD-230 is an STN black & white mode transmissive type LCD with a 320x240-dot display capacity. It includes a driver LSI, frame, print board, and lateral CFL backlighting.
*STN:Super Twisted Nematic

(2) Block diagram



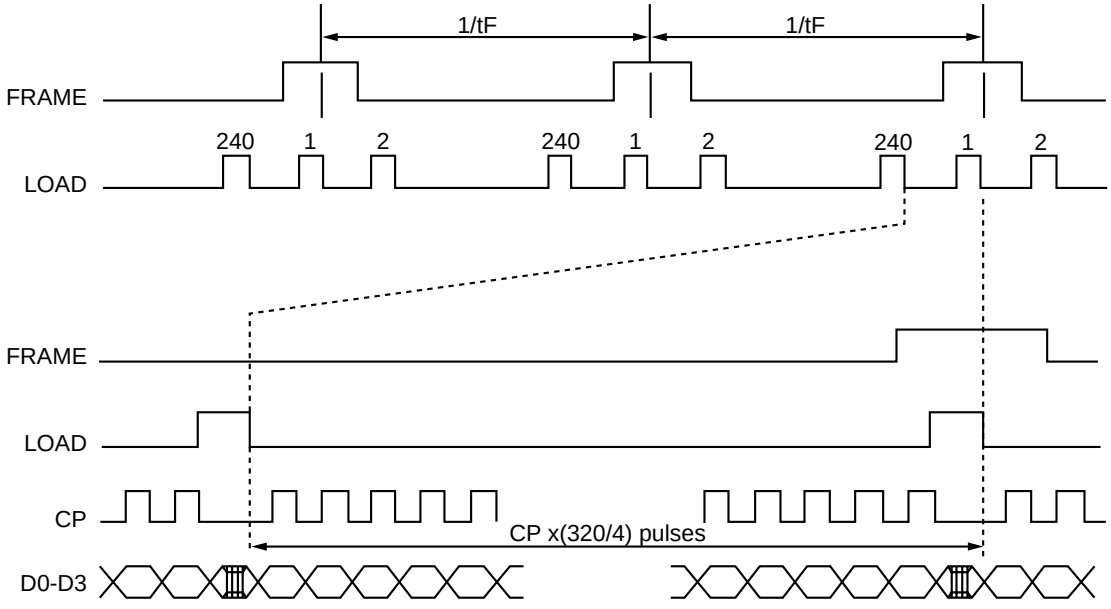
(3) LCD drive operation

The following describes the drive operation to display the message “100% READY”.



1 The SM CPU requests the data for displaying “100% READY” from the PROM.
2 The PROM outputs the data for displaying the message to the SM CPU.
3 The SM CPU writes the data for LCD display to RAM IC41.
4 The LCD controller/driver IC42 reads the display data from RAM IC41, and outputs the data to the LCD.

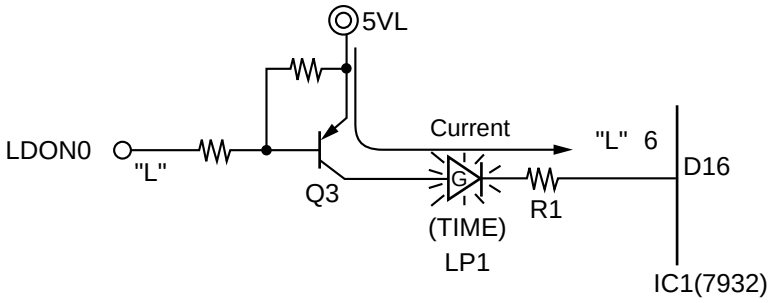
(4) Data Transmission Method



5.4.2 LED display circuit

(1) Method of LED display

The following description is based on the example of displaying “TIME” on the LED display.



When the signal LDON0 changes to “L” level, the transistor is turned ON.

Also when pin 6 (D16) of IC1 changes to “L”, a current flows from 5VL via the transistor to LP1 (“TIME”) i.e. LP1 (“TIME”) is turned ON.

Conditions for LED to light

1 The transistor (Q2 or Q3) connected to the LED anode is ON.

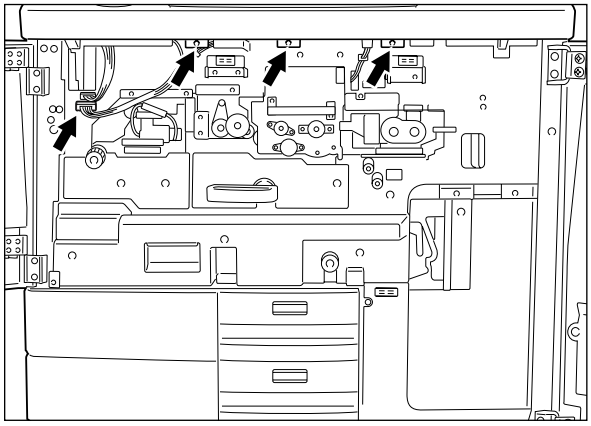
2 The output connected to the cathode of that LED is “L”.

The LED comes ON when 1 and 2 above are satisfied.

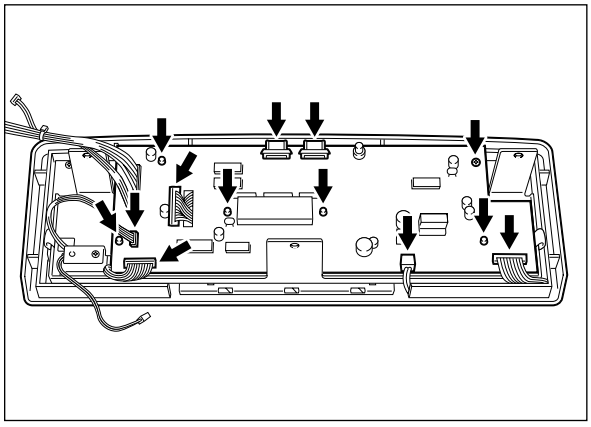
5.5 Disassembly and Replacement

[A] Control Panel

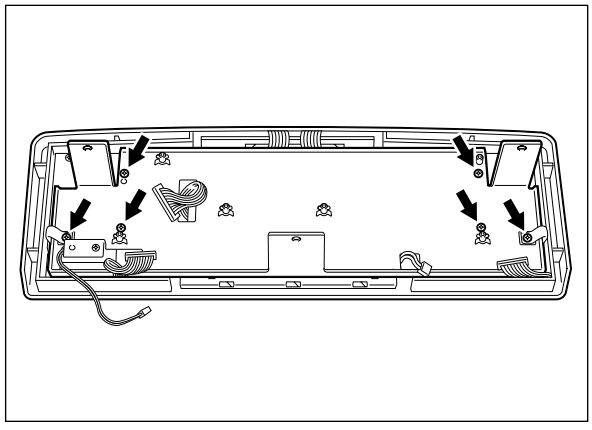
(1) Open the control panel.
(2) Remove the left, middle and right inner covers (3 screws for each).
(3) Disconnect the connector inserted into the copier frame.
(4) Remove the 3 screws fixing the control panel.
(5) Remove the control panel upwards.
(6) Disconnect the connector.



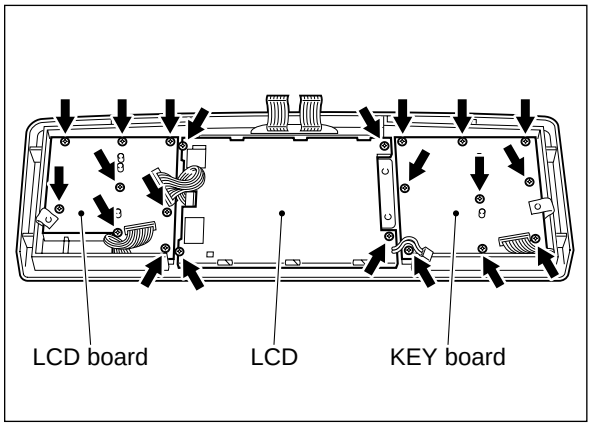
(7) Remove the 5 locking supports and screw.
(8) Disconnect the 7 connectors, and remove the PC board.



(9) Remove the toothed screw and aluminum sheet (2 places).
(10) Remove the 4 screws and bracket.



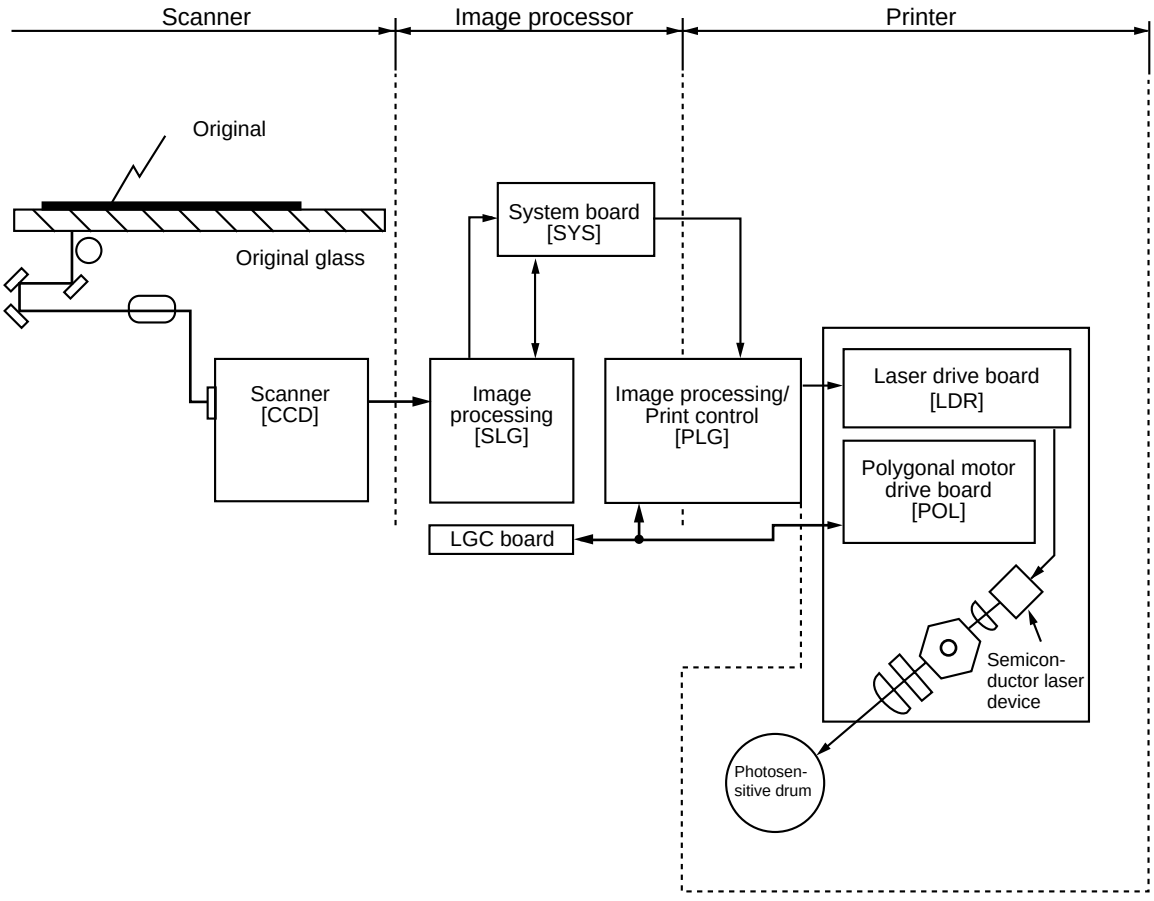
(11) Remove the 8 screws and LCD board.
(12) Remove the 9 screws and KEY board.
(13) Remove the 4 screws and LCD.



6. IMAGE PROCESSING

6.1 Introduction

The following diagram shows the processes beginning at the Scanner section to the Printer section (where light is transferred to the photosensitive drum.)
ASIC which is short for “Application Specific IC” is for a specific use.



The following table shows the functions carried out by the two image processing boards.

Board	Number of ASIC	Fanction
SLG board (PWA-F-SLG-300)	1	High quality image processing, image memory editing, editing processing, gamma correction, tone processing, external output system interface
PLG board (PWA-F-PLG-300)	1	Smoothing processing, external input system interface, image area control, laser related control

6.2 Image Processing Circuit

6.2.1 Overview

Unlike existing analog copiers where reflected light is projected directly to the photosensitive drum, digital copiers project reflected light (from the original document) to the Charged Coupled Device (CCD). The CCD converts optical images into electrical signals which ultimately undergo shading correction which is nothing more than compensations for variance in the light source and the CCD unit.
After shading corrections are made, signals are sent to the image processing section where processing operations are performed. Data are then sent to the printer section for conversion into light beam that are directed to the photosensitive drum for printing of the latent image.

The image processing operation is performed by the SLG board (PWA-F-SLG-300) and PLG board (PWA-F-PLG-300).

(1) Image processing circuit on the SLG board
One image processing ASIC is mounted on the SLG board and implement the following functions:
<Functions>
High quality image processing, image memory editing, editing processing, gamma correction, tone processing, external output system interface

(2) Image processing circuit on the PLG board
One image processing ASIC is mounted on the PLG board and implements the following functions:
<Functions>
Smoothing processing, external input system interface, image area control, laser related control

6.2.2 Configuration

Figure A shown below represents the image processing section of this digital copier.

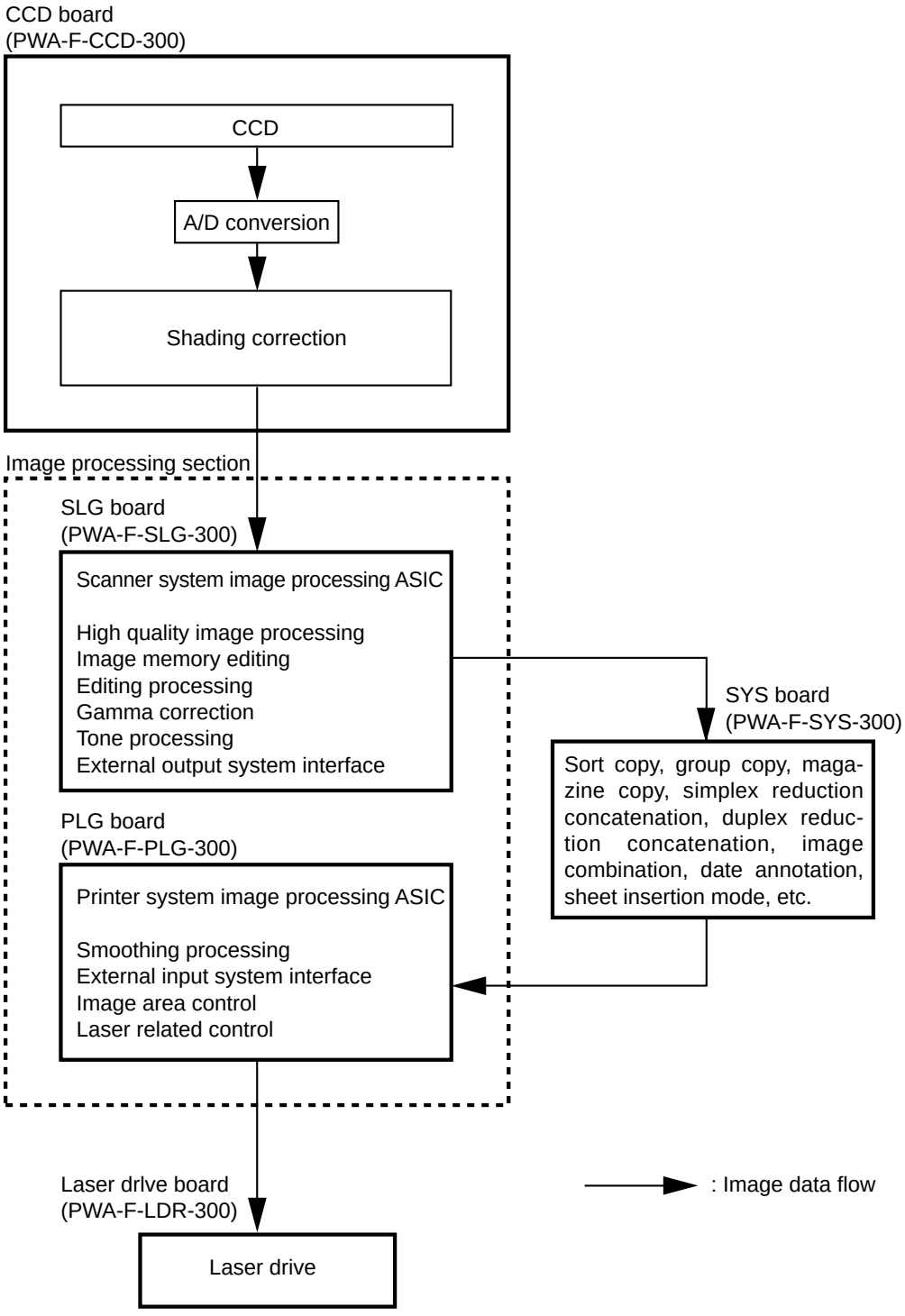


Fig. A. Construction of the image processing section

6.3 SLG Board (PWA-F-SLG-300)

6.3.1 Features

(1) The image processing ASICs are controlled by CPU on the SLG board (PWA-F-SLG-300).

(2) The image processing functions of the SLG board implement the following functions:

- High quality image processing
- Image memory editing
- Editing processing
- Gamma correction
- Tone processing
- External output system interfacing

6.3.2 Functional description of the image processing circuit

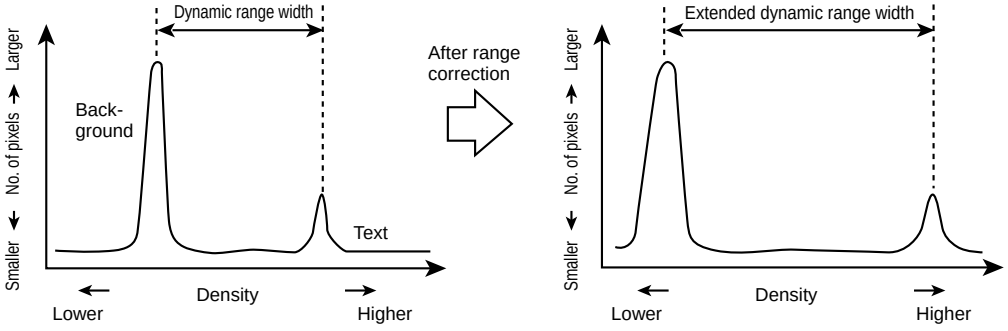
An ASIC mounted on the SLG PC board implement the functions described below.

(1) High quality image processing

(A) Range correction

This function converts image signals to density range width and corrects it to match each original document's image. When copying the images of an original having a certain amount of background (such as appear in newspapers), it reduces the background density.

<Example>



Histogram

(B) Filtering

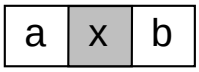
This function is comprised of a low-pass filter circuit and a high-pass filter circuit.

(a) Low-pass filter circuit

This circuit eliminates image and electrical noise as well as restrict Moire. It provides an image that closely resembles the original document's. It does this by averaging the differences between the targeted pixel and those adjacent to it.

For example, assuming the density of the target pixel position to be x and the densities of its front and back positions to be a and b, respectively, the density of the target pixel position x' after low-pass filter operation is given:

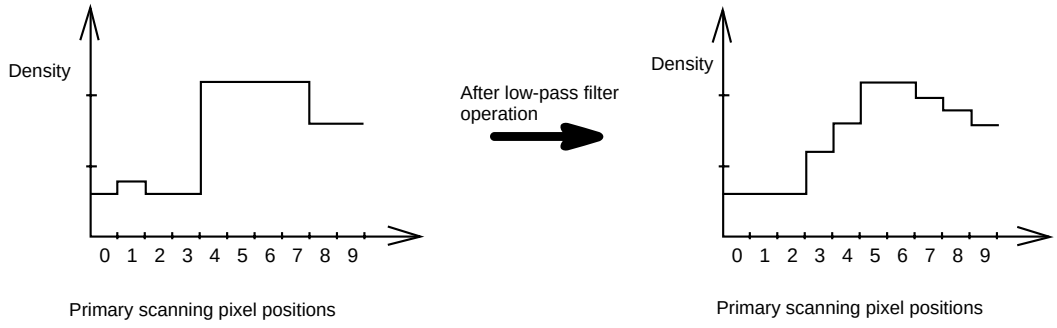
For (3 x 1) matrix,



$$x' = \frac{a + b + x}{3}$$

The above operation is performed for all pixel positions to accomplish high original reproducibility.

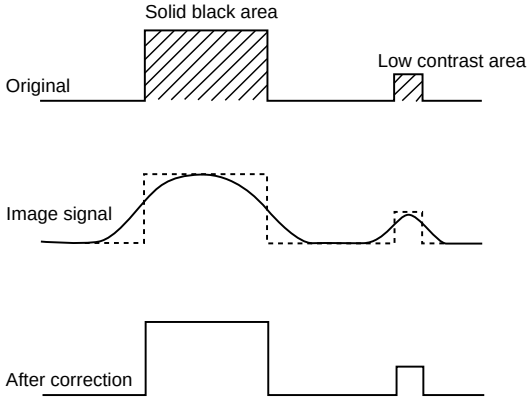
The following figure shows the primary scanning pixel is processed by the low-pass filter.


Density
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
Primary scanning pixel positions
After low-pass filter operation
Density
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
Primary scanning pixel positions

(b) High-pass filter circuit

When images with sharp edges are scanned and directed to the CCD, the edges of these characters tend to become dull in appearance. This is due to the physical imperfections of the CCD lens as well as the mirrors that direct the light to it.

To compensate for this phenomenon, an edge-enhancement operation is performed. It recognizes the differences in density between the targeted pixel and those adjacent to it an makes compensations to ensure that the final output image closely resembles the image of the original document. (See illustration below)



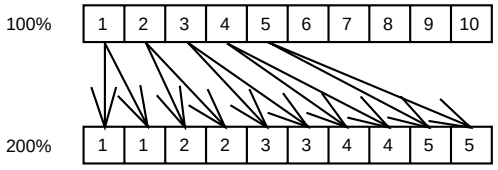
(2) Image memory editing

Editing functions such as enlargement/reduction and mirror image copying are performed by using a line memory. The line memory is used for storing one line of pixel data in the primary scanning direction and is updated with new pixel data each time the next line is scanned.

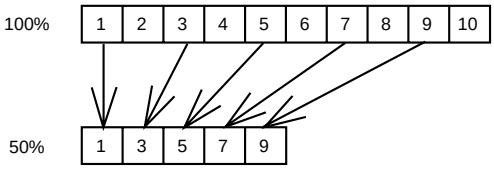
(a) Enlargement/reduction

This function is accomplished by using line memory control in the portion of the operation.

<Example> Enlargement



<Example> Reduction



(b) Mirror image

This function reverses the right side and the left side in the primary direction of the original and this reversed image is output.

(3) Editing operations

Trimming, masking and negative/positive reversal functions are accomplished.

(a) Trimming

With the rectangular area signal, the image signals inside the rectangular area are left and other image signals are erased.

(b) Masking

Using the rectangular area signal, the image data inside the rectangular area are erased with other image signals left.

(c) Negative/positive reversal

This function reverses image data from negative to positive or vice versa on the entire area.

(4) Gamma correction processing

This function is used to correct the input/output characteristics of the scanner/printer so that image signals are obtained which have input/output characteristics matching a particular copying mode.

(5) Tone processing

This function works to process tone so that faithful reproduction of halftone images such as photographs are accomplished.

(6) External output system interface

This function performs the output control of the output interface for the SYS board (PWA-F-SYS-300).

6.4 PLG Board (PWA-F-PLG-300)

6.4.1 Features

(1) The image processing ASICs are controlled by CPUs mounted on the PLG board (PWA-F-PLG-300) and the LGC board (PWA-F-LGC-300).

(2) The image processing functions of the PLG board work to accomplish the following:

- Smoothing processing
- External input system interface
- Image area control
- Laser related control

6.4.2 Functional description of the image processing circuit

An image processing ASIC of the PLG board works to accomplish the following:

(1) Smoothing processing
This function works to eliminate jaggedness occurring on character edges of images input from the external input system interface for smooth image output.

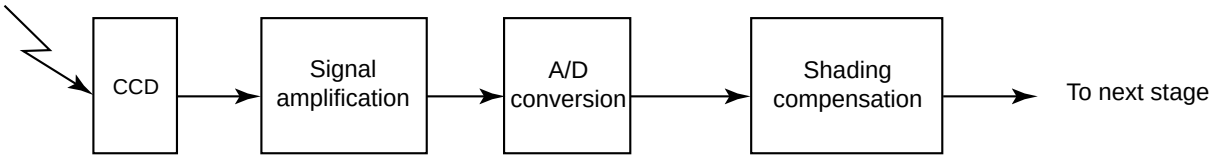
(2) External input system interface
This function works to control the input interface to the SYS board (PWA-F-SYS-300).

(3) Image area control
This function works to set the effective image area of four directions of output image.

(4) Laser related control
This function works to control the DAPC (Double Auto Power Control) and to adjust the multiple laser beam position.

6.5 Scanner

Light that is reflected from the original document's surface is directed to the CCD where photovoltaic conversion occurs. During this operation, optical image data are converted into electrical signals which are then converted into digital signals by the A/D conversion portion of the image processing system.



(1) Photo-voltaic conversion
A conversion from optical signals to electrical signals performed by the CCD. See Chapter 7, 6-1.

(2) Signal amplification
The amplification of the electrical signals from the CCD.

(3) A/D conversion
The conversion from Analog signals to Digital signals.

(4) Shading correction
Corrections made by the shading compensation circuit to make up for distortions of images produced by the mirrors and the elements of the CCD. See Chapter 7, 6-2.

6.6 Printer

Image signals processed by the PLG board perform the laser writing operation through the writing control ASIC and the laser drive board processings.

(1) Setting of effective image area ..... • The top, bottom, left and right margins are set.

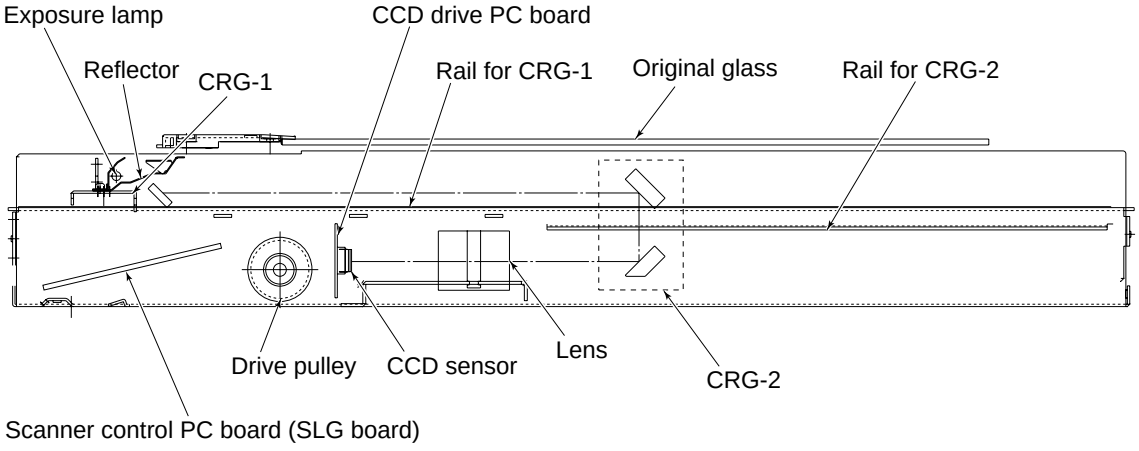
(2) Synchronization Clock Generation block ..... • HSYNC and the reference clock signal at printer block of horizontal synchronizing signal (HSYNC) synchronized with the signal.

(3) Laser drive block ..... • ON/OFF control of the semiconductor laser and DAPC (Double Auto Power Control) control.

7. SCANNER

7.1 Functions

During a scanning process, light is directed at the surface of the original document and then to the CCD via mirrors and the CCD lens and a slit. The CCD unit in which optical image data are converted to electrical signals accomplishes photovoltaic conversion. The resultant analog signals undergo A/D conversion, which ultimately become digital signals. These signals undergo compensation processes in order to produce the required image. Digital signals are then sent to the printer section of image processing.



7.2 Configuration

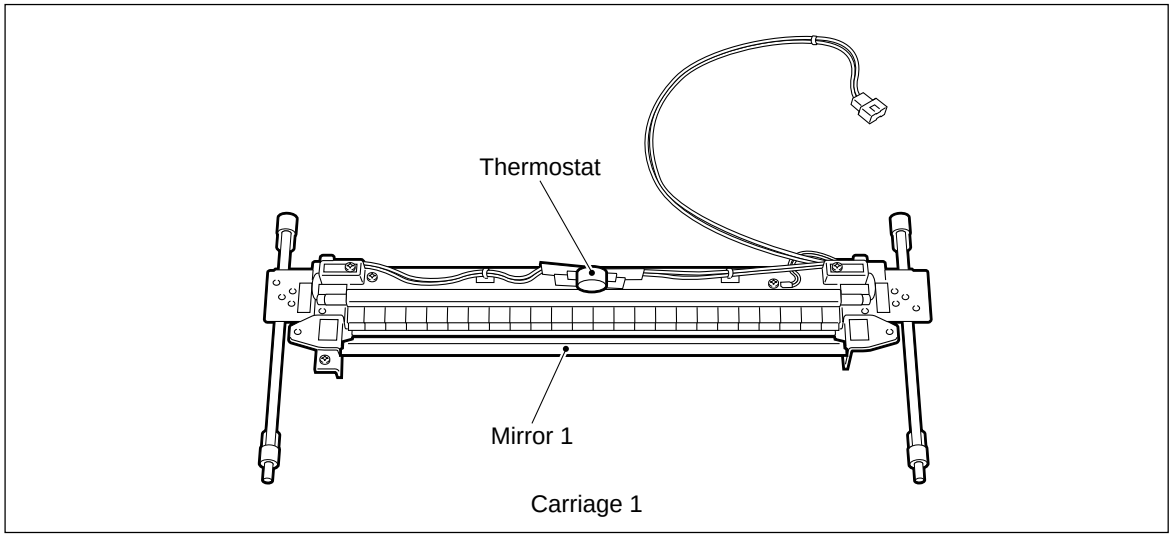
The following describes the configuration of the optical system and the purpose of its components.

(1) Original glass

The original glass is where the original document is placed for scanning. The exposure lamp illuminates the original document.

(2) Carriage 1

Carriage 1 is the optical assembly that has the exposure lamp and is used for scanning the original document. The illustration below shows some of the components that make up the assembly.



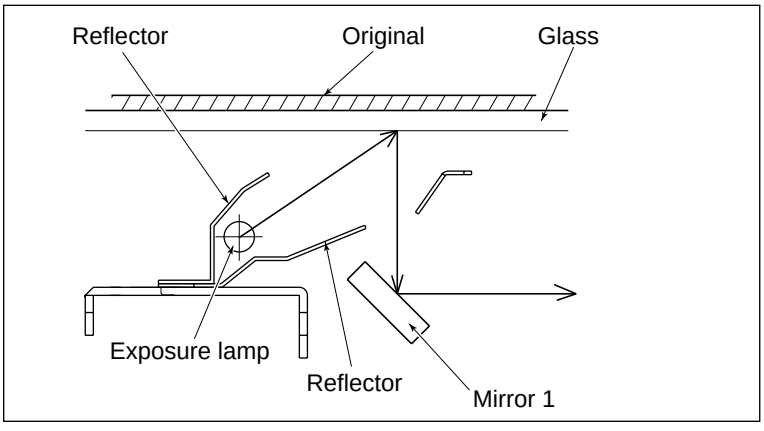
Carriage 1

a. Exposure lamp

The exposure lamp is the light source used for illuminating the original document. It is a 180-watt Halogen lamp.

b. Reflector

The reflector's purpose is to maximize the amount light being directed to the original document that is emitted by the exposure lamp.



c. Mirror 1

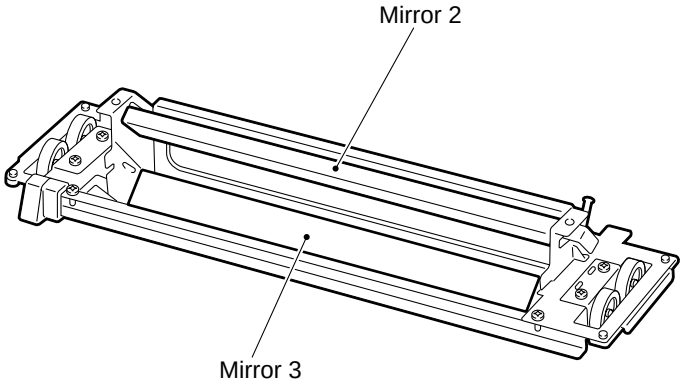
Mirror 1 is for guiding light reflected from the original to mirror 2. Mirror 2 is described later on.

d. Thermostat

It is a temperature-control device that prevents over-heating of the exposure lamp's assembly.

(3) Carriage 2

The Carriage 2 assembly directs light reflected from mirror 1 to the CCD assembly. It contains mirrors 2 and 3. The scanner motor drives this assembly. Its scanning speed as well as the distance that it travels is half that of carriage 1.



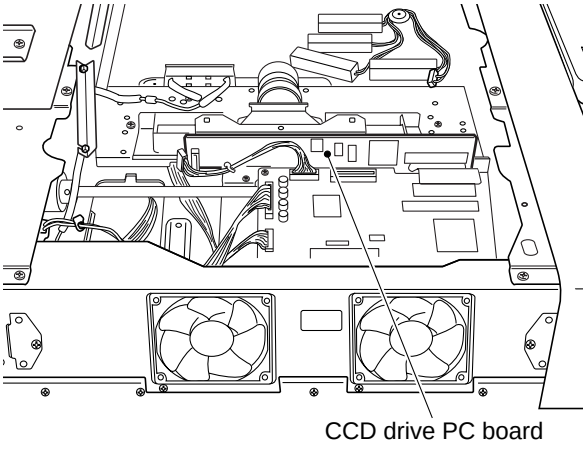
Carriage 2

(4) Lens → CCD

Light reflected from mirror 3 is projected to the CCD. The CCD is located at the focal point of a fixed lens.

(5) CCD drive PC board

The Image processing board performs image correction preprocessing (amplification, mixing, A/D conversion and shading correction of electrical signals obtained by the CCD).

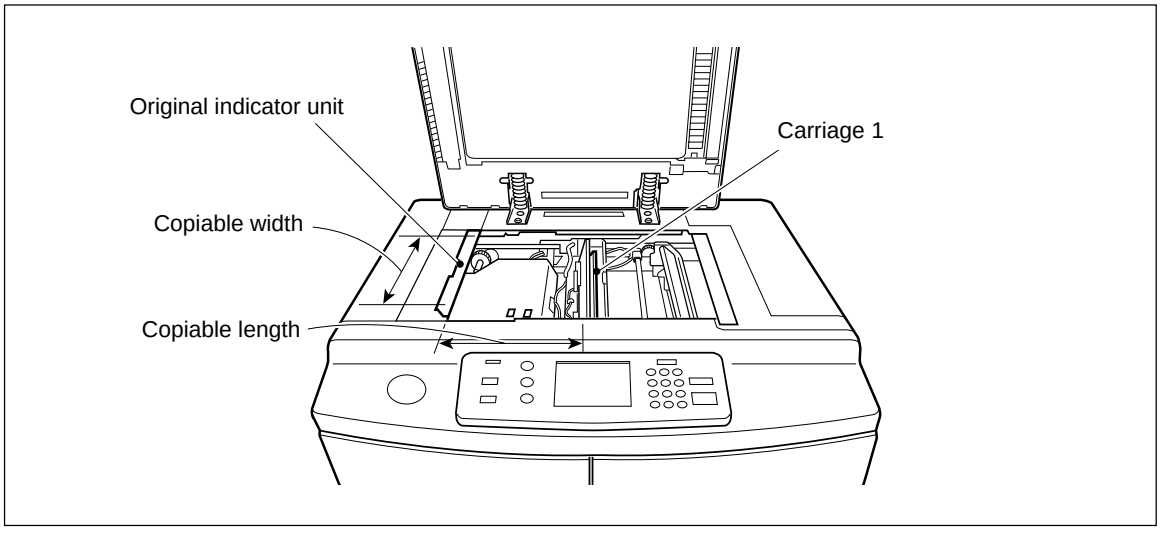


(6) Automatic original detection unit

The automatic original detection unit (APS sensor) uses sensors located on the lens cover and on the base frame for detection of the size of the original without the process of scanning.

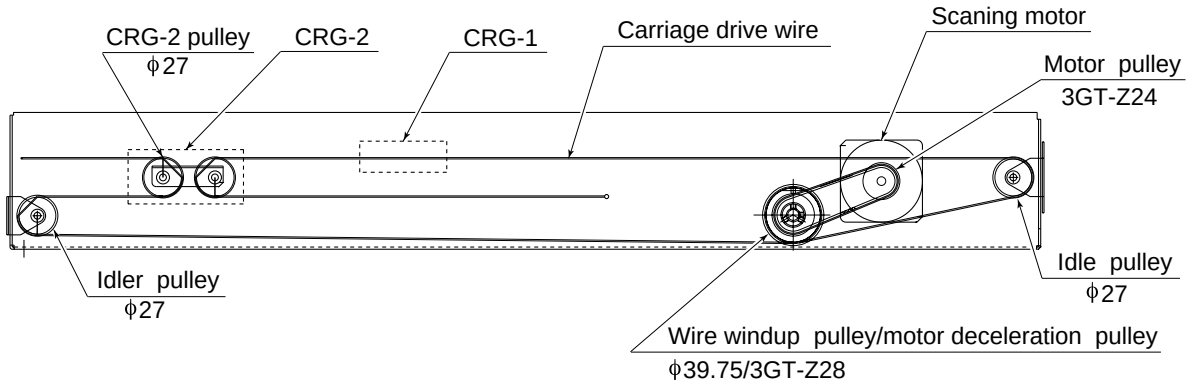
(7) Original width indicator unit

The original width indicator unit is for indicating the original width currently selected by the copier. The original size is displayed by the yellow lines on the indicator and carriage 1.



7.3 Description of Operation

7.3.1 Scanning motor



Optical System (rear side)

Scanner motor drive is transferred to carriages 1 and 2 via the timing belt and the carriage drive wire. Initially, carriage 1 moves to the home position. The actuation of the “home switch” determines the home position of Carriage 1 assembly. During a PRINT cycle, carriages 1 and 2 are driven to scan the original document.

7.3.2 Document motor

The document motor positions the “original width indicators” to indicate the placement position of the original document when the reproduction ratio is changed from its default setting of 100% or when a particular paper size is selected from any of the cassette trays.

7.3.3 Optical fan motor

The optical fan motors rotate to cool the optical unit during copying and stop rotation during standby.

7.4 Drive of the 5-Phase Stepping Motor

7.4.1 Features

Up till now, 2-phase hybrid stepping motors having a step angle of 1.8 have been regarded as being the highest performing motors. Compared to these motors, however, 5-phase stepping motors have the following features:

(1) A small step angle (full step: 0.72°, half-step: 0.36°) achieves a resolution 2.5 times that of conventional stepping motors. As 2.5 times the number of steps can be used when moving the same distance, high-speed positioning using optimum acceleration and deceleration is now possible.
(2) Extremely small fluctuation in operating torque achieves little vibration and smooth rotation. This makes a 5-phase stepping motor ideal for applications where uneven torque and noise are a problem.
(3) As vibrations are small even at the resonant point, special dampers are not required, and the motor can be used in all operating ranges.
(4) The self-start frequency is roughly 2.5 times higher than that of 2-phase stepping motors, and moreover, 5-phase stepping motors do not have a resonant range. This achieves speed control with a large variable speed ratio without the need for acceleration and deceleration.
(5) Response is much faster than that of 2-phase stepping motors, allowing higher speed setting.
(6) 4- and 5-phase excitation systems achieve excellent damping characteristics.
(7) The step angle can be varied (e.g. 0.72°, 0.36°, 0.18°) depending on the excitation system.

7.4.2 Principle of the stepping motor

The fundamental differences between a 2-phase hybrid stepping motor and a 5-phase stepping motor are the number of stator main poles and the winding configuration. A 2-phase stepping motor is wound in a 2-phase, 4-pole configuration, whereas a 5-phase stepping motor is wound in a 5-phase, 2-pole configuration. Fig. 7.4-1 shows the relationship between stator and rotor teeth in a 5-phase stepping motor, and the winding configuration.

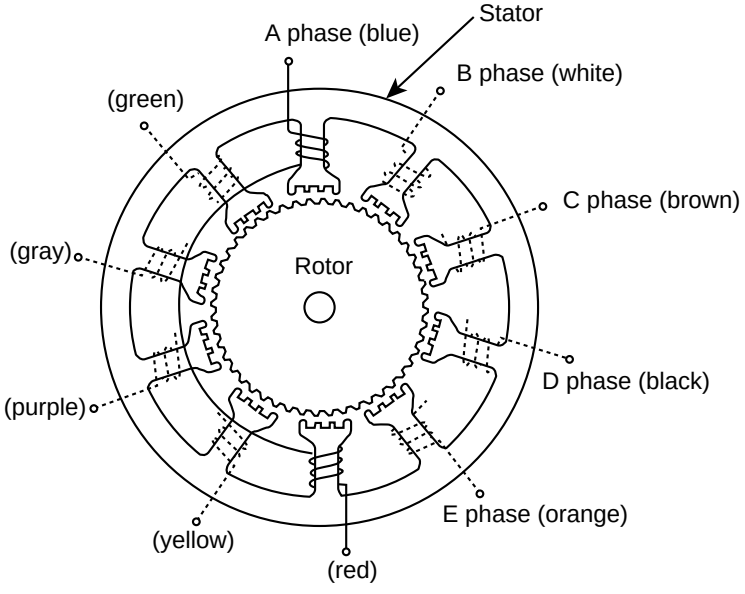


Fig. 7.4-1 Structure of 5-phase Stepping Motor

The stator comprises 10 main poles, with two main poles in apposition forming a single phase. The coil is wound so that the two opposite main poles are the same polarity (N or S). Assuming a rotor tooth pitch of τ_R, the stator teeth are arranged in such a way that the stator teeth on adjacent main poles shift by 0.6 τ_R with respect to the rotor teeth. This means that the stator teeth on adjacent main poles shift by (0.6-0.5) τ_R=τ_R/10 with respect to teeth on the rotor cup on the opposite side that are shifted by 0.5 τ_R. Fig. 7.4-2 illustrates this relationship.

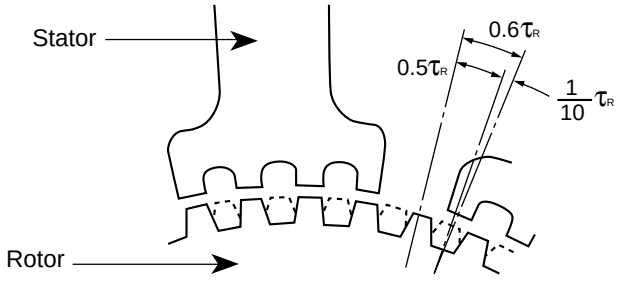


Fig. 7.4-2 Relationship between Stator Teeth and Rotor Teeth

Consequently, if the polarity of the stator is moved as shown in Fig. 7.4-3, the rotor rotates clockwise 1/10th of the rotor tooth pitch at a time.

$$\frac{\tau_R}{10} = \frac{360}{50} \times \frac{1}{10} = 0.72° \quad \text{..... (1)}$$

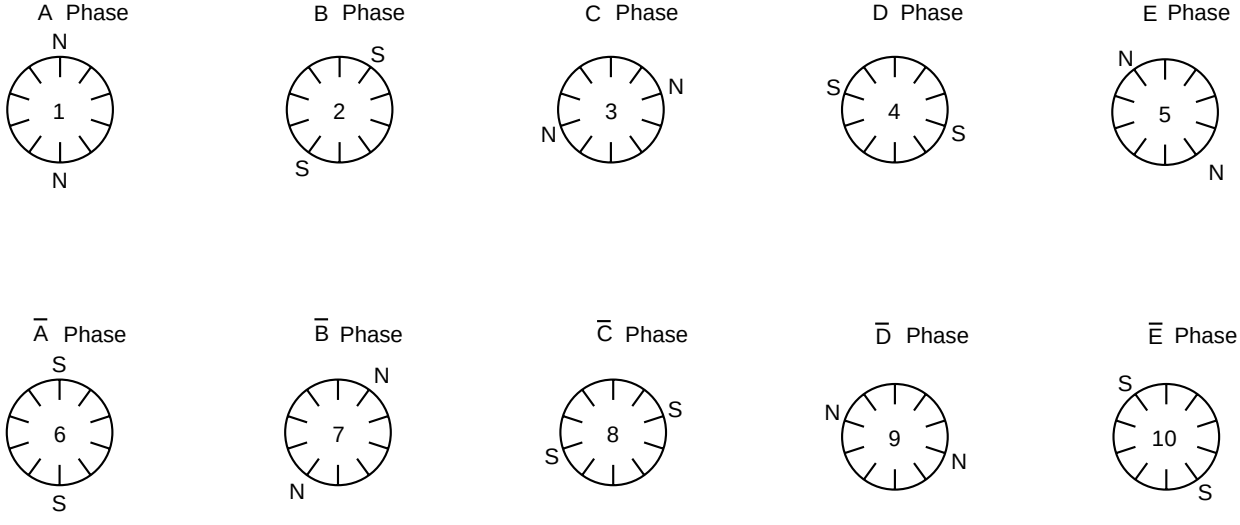


Fig. 7.4-3 Movement of Poles at 1-phase Excitation

7.4.3 5-phase motor drive circuit (fixed current type)

The drive circuit mainly comprises the following:

- microstep drive controller (IC4)
- driver (IC5)
- current detection resistor (R2)

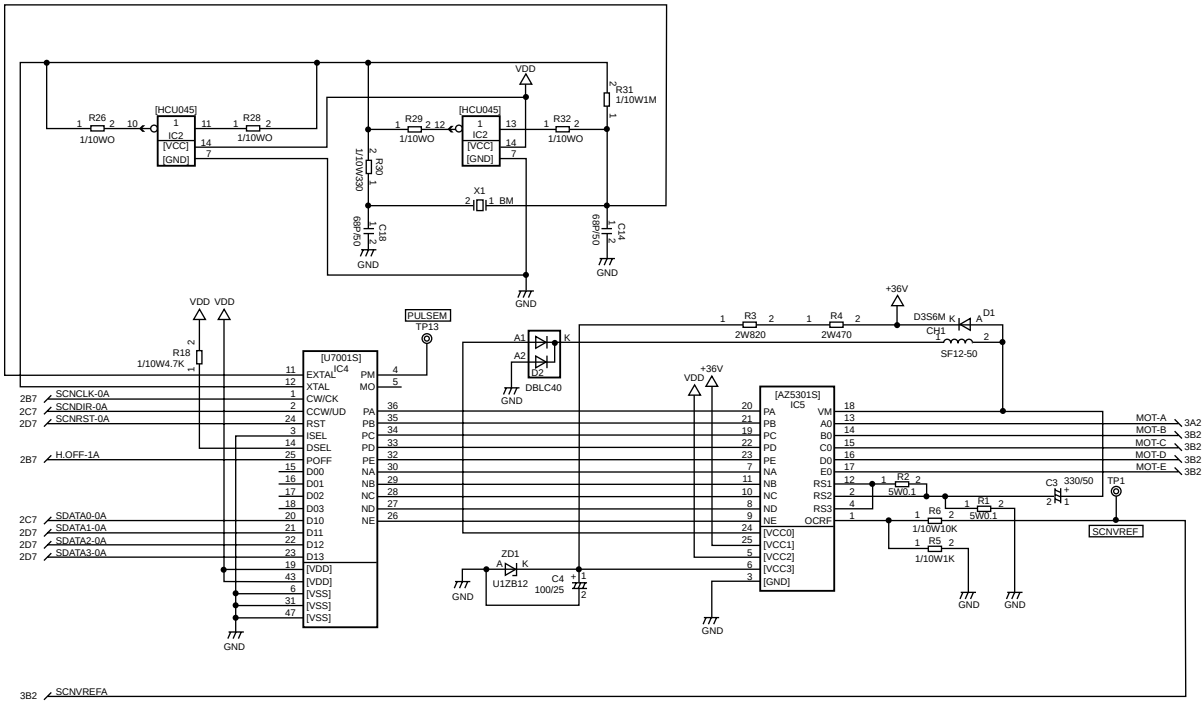


Fig. 7.4-4. PWA-SDV

– Excitation Process of Phase A –

① H.OFF is set to ON (High).

② CLK signal, rotation direction DIR signal and division data (DATA 0 to 3) are input.

③ After about 10 ms, SCCLK is input.

④ IC4 outputs excitation ON according to the division data from PA1 (Pch side) and NA to NE (Nch side). IC5 receives this excitation signal, drive and flows current to the motor.

⑤ The current flowing to the motor passes through the current detection resistor R2 as it is as the total current. The total current and the CPU set current value are compared by IC5. IC5 controls the motor drive power.

7.5 Exposure Control Circuit

7.5.1 Overview

[A] The exposure control circuit is comprised of the following four blocks:

(1) Lamp regulator

This circuit applies voltage to the exposure lamp correspondent to the duty ratio of the PWM signal.

(2) CCD sensor circuit

This circuit reads the amount of light from the shading correction plate. This information is used to compare the light intensity reflected from the original document and the light from the shading correction plate. Adjustments are made in the image processing circuit for enhancement of signals.

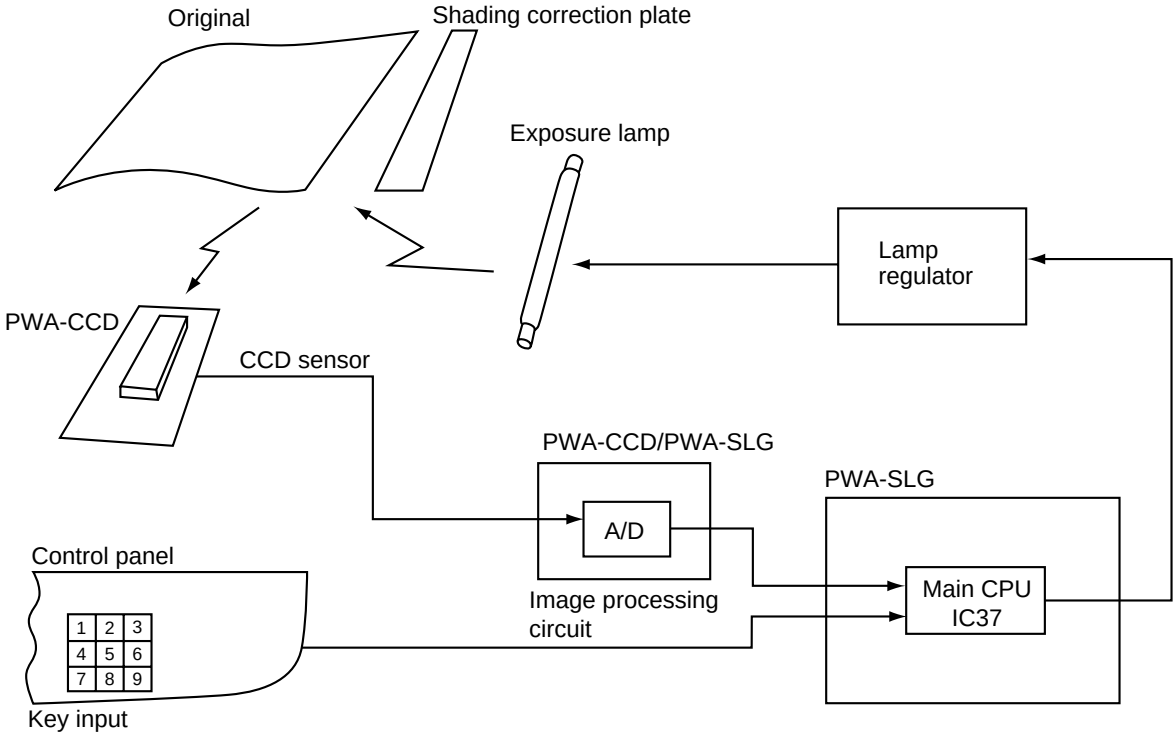
(3) Image processing circuit

This circuit converts the signals from the CCD into binary values and performs a series of image processing operations such as gamma correction, shading correction, etc.

(4) Control panel

The duty ratio of PWM signal can be set at increments of 1% through the digital keys by the operator.

Note: The ON/OFF switching of the exposure lamp is carried out by a unique signal (EXPO-ON) separate from the PWM signal.



Construction of exposure control circuit

[B] The exposure control circuit has two functions:

(1) Normal mode

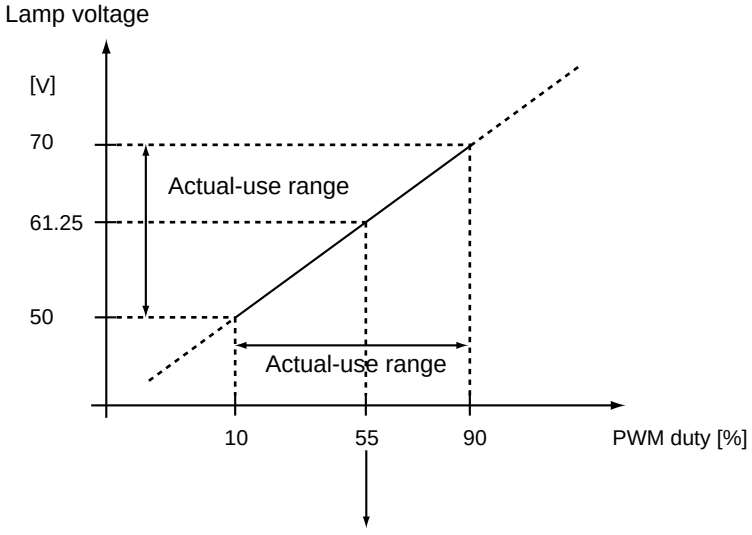
The duty ratio of the PWM signal is controlled at 55% (lamp voltage : 61.25V).

(2) Check mode

Through input from the digital keys, the PWM signal output is varied from 30% ~ 70% to allow the exposure to be set arbitrarily.

7.5.2 Lamp regulator function

The figure below shows a typical characteristic diagram. Control is performed so that a voltage across the lamp voltage proportional to the duty ratio of PWM signal is produced.



Characteristic diagram of the lamp regulator

7.5.3 Control section

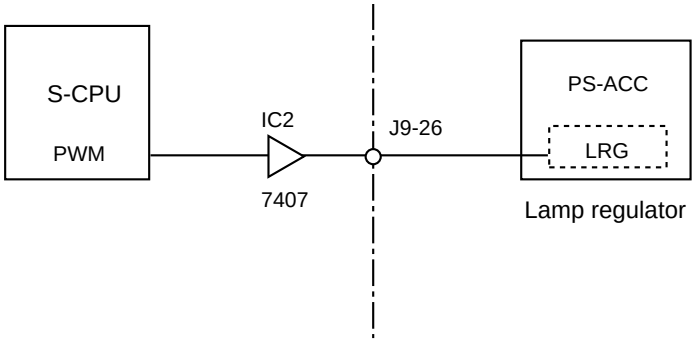
The control section consists of the folllowing 2 blocks:

① Scanner CPU

Comprised of software, the main CPU calculates the voltage to be applied to the lamp according to the normal mode and check mode.

② PWM timer circuit

This comprised by the following circuit. The exposure data is converted to PWM signals by the scanner CPU, and output to J9-26 via IC2 from the scanner CPU PWM output terminal.



7.5.4 Lamp regulator circuit

The lamp regulator circuit ensures that illumination from the exposure lamp is constant. Any tendencies for variances in illumination is monitored and controlled by a series of detection and comparison circuits.

Its principle control is as follows:

(1) AC115V (or 220/240V) power source is rectified to provide DC160V (or 310/340V) which is used as the power source for the exposure lamp.

(2) The PWM1 signal for light adjustment is averaged by an integration circuit and provides reference VS for feedback control of the lamp regulator circuit.

(3) When the oscillator circuit is triggered by EXPO-ON/OFF signal, it generates a lamp drive PWM2 signal which turns on the lamp drive transistor (T_{r1}), causing current I_1 to flow through:

Capacitor C → Exposure lamp (L) → Primary side of T1 (P) → Lamp drive transistor (T_{r1}) → Capacitor C

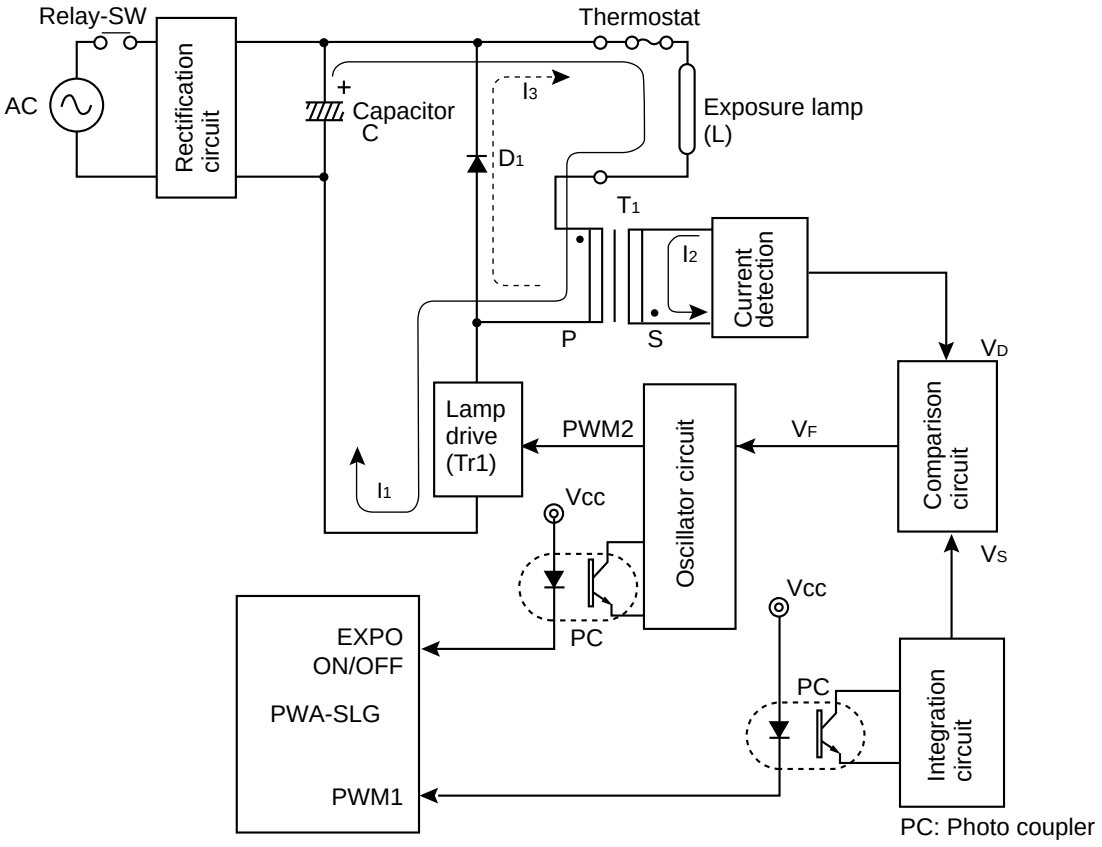
This causes current I2 proportional to the winding ratio of T1 and the rate of change of I_1 to generated on the secondary side of T1(s).

(4) The amount of lamp current converted to detection voltage VD by a current detection circuit is compared with the smoothing signal VS of PWM1 signal from the logic circuit by a comparison circuit whose difference signal VF is fed back to the oscillator circuit.

(5) When the lamp drive transistor (T_r1) is turned OFF, the counter electromotive force of T1 causes current to flow along:

Primary winding of transformer T1 (P) → Freewheeling diode D1 → Exposure lamp (L) → Primary winding of tranformer T1 (P)

This causes continuous current I_3 to flow through the exposure lamp (L) regardless of the drive transistor (T_r1) being turned ON/OFF.



Construction of lamp regulator circuit

7.6 Outline of Control

7.6.1 Photo-voltaic conversion

The purpose of photo-voltaic conversion is to form electrical signals corresponding to the intensity of light reflected from the original. A CCD is used for photo-voltaic conversion. CCDs are single-chip photo-voltaic conversion device in which several thousands of photosensing elements several microns square are arranged in a single line. This copier uses a CCD having 7,500 of these photosensing elements.
The photosensor comprises a P-layer, N-layer semiconductor. Optical energy generates a (–) (minus) charge on the P-layer proportional to the optical energy and irradiation time. The charge generated at the photosensor is transferred to the transfer area, shifted from center to right and left in the figure below according to the transfer clock, and is output from the CCD. During this operation, in order to increase the image transmission speed from CCD, even-numbered and odd-numbered image signals are separated into left and right signals, and 4 channels are output in parallel.

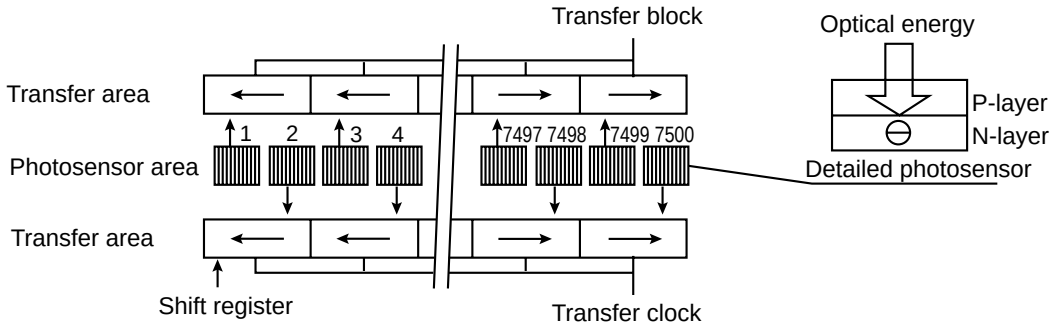


Fig. 7.6-1 Principle of CCD Photo-Voltaic Conversion

7.6.2 Shading compensation

The following problems affect the voltage values obtained by photo-voltaic conversion by the CCD:

① Variation in light distribution from the light source.

② Light intensities vary at the CCD elements. The elements farthest from the center do not receive as much light as those elements in the center of the CCD.

③ The photo-voltaic capacities of each of the 7,500 CCD elements are uneven.
Consequently, these problems must be compensated. This is called “shading compensation.” Shading compensation involves normalizing optical energy according to the following equation based on already known scanned black data and white data, and compensating for uneven illuminance of the image data and device unevenness.

$$I = k \times \frac{(S - K)}{(W - K)}$$

where,

k: Coefficient
S: Image data before compensation
K: Black data (in black memory)
W: White data (in white memory)

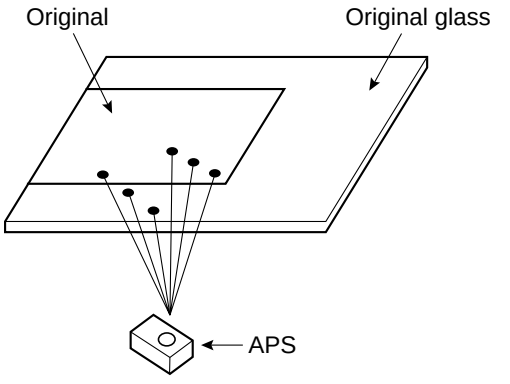
7.7 Automatic Original-Size Detection Circuit

This circuit detects the original size (standard sizes only) using reflection-type photosensors on the base frame and lens cover of the optical unit.

7.7.1 Principle of original-size detection

The reflection-type photosensors are located on the base frame and lens cover of the optical unit. Each photosensor comprises an infrared light emitting diode (LED, light-emitting side) and a phototransistor (light-receiving side). When an original is placed on the original glass, the light emitted by the LEDs is reflected by the original and led to the phototransistor. In this way, the presence or absence of an original is detected by whether reflected light exists or not.

[A4 Series]



[LT Series]

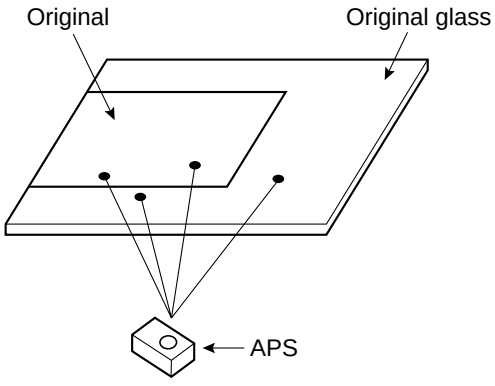


Fig. 7.7-1

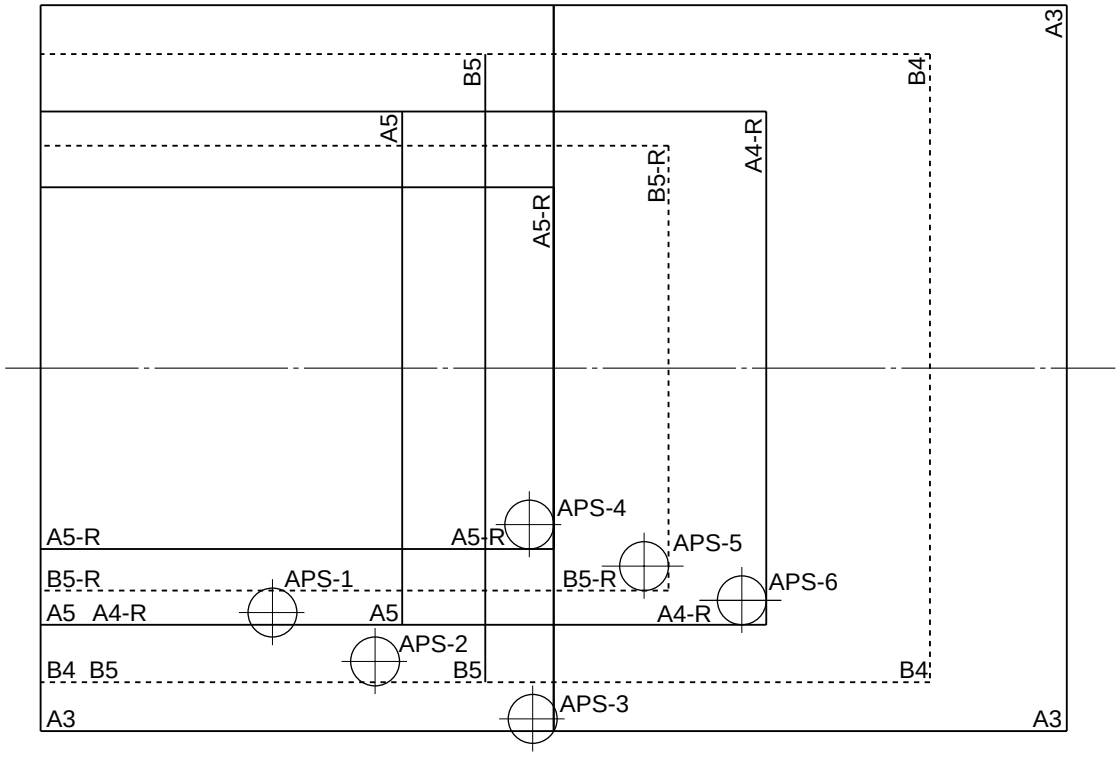
7.7.2 Original size detection

(1) If the copier is set in the original size detection mode, the carriage is set at its home position.

(2) Detection is performed in an instant when the platen cover is opened, each sensor receive the reflecting light and the condition of a matrix shown in (4) are satisfied.

(3) Original size detection is performed when the output signals from each sensor are input to the S-CPU (IC7) on the scanner control PC board.

[A4 Series]



[LT Series]

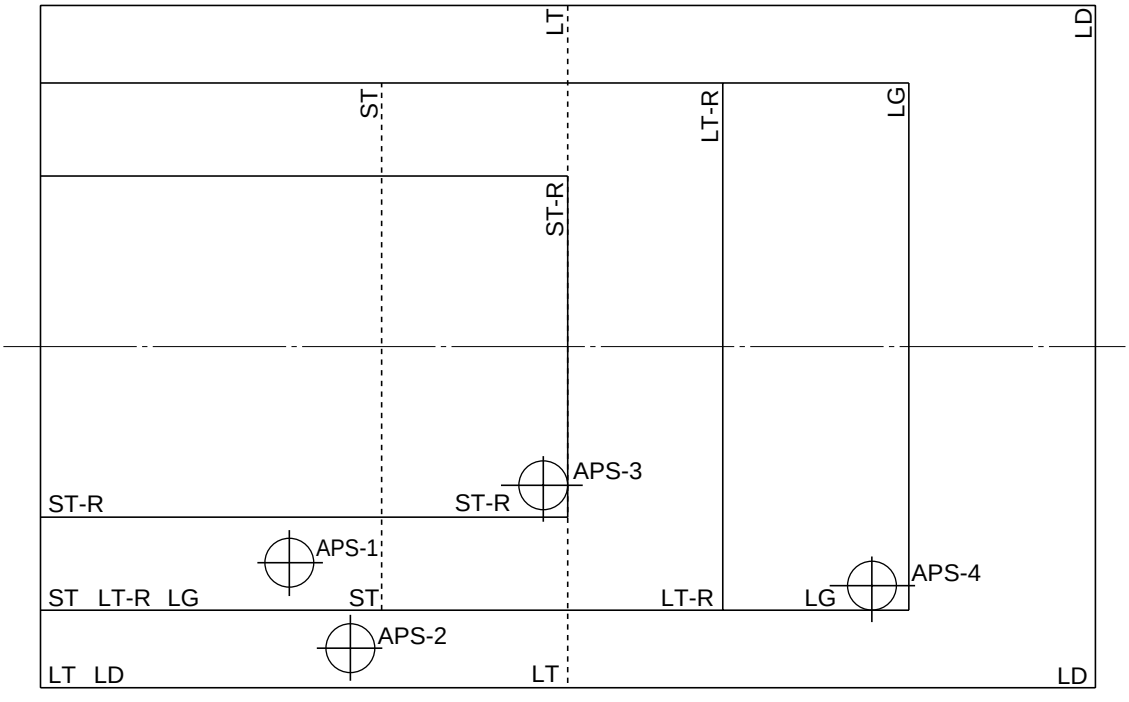


Fig. 7.7-3 Sensor Detection Points

(4) Original size is determined by a combination of the presence/absence of the original at the each locations stated in step (3). Combination charts for size determination of A4 series and LT series are shown below.

[A4 Series]

	1 beam sensor (No.)					
	APS-1	APS-2	APS-3	APS-4	APS-5	APS-6
A5	○					
A5-R				○		
A4	○	○	○	○		
A4-R	○			○	○	○
A3	○	○	○	○	○	○
B5	○	○				
B5-R	△			○	○	
B4	○	○		○	○	○

○ : Original presence

blank : Original absence

△ : Original presence or absence

[LT Series]

	1 beam sensor (No.)			
	APS-1	APS-2	APS-3	APS-4
ST	○			
ST-R			○	
LT	○	○	○	
LT-R	○		○	
LG	○		○	○
LD	○	○	○	○

○ : Original presence

blank : Original absence

* Platen SW=OFF

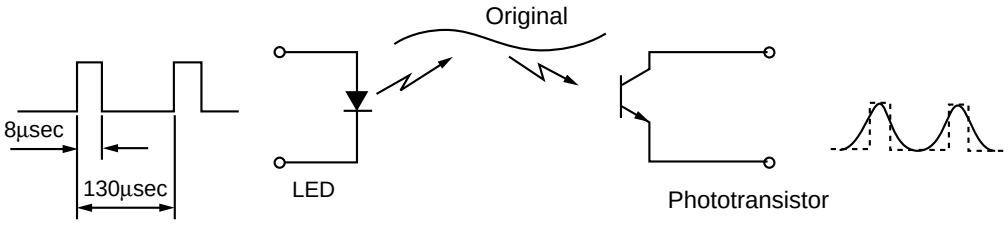
- Following judgement is performed by the APS sensor output signal.
  Size decision :Size is displayed on the LCD panel and select a specific paper or reproduction ratio.
  Size not fixed :Reproduction ratio and paper are not selected.
  The carriage-1 is stay on the standby position even though the reproduction ratio is changed when original size is changed.

* Platen SW=ON

- Keep the recognized original size (or no original state) just before the platen SW is turned on regardless the APS sensor output signal.

Supplementary comments

- Concerning the reflecting photointerruptor:
  The reflecting photointerruptor consists of an infrared diode and a phototransistor. It detects originals by use of pulse modulation.



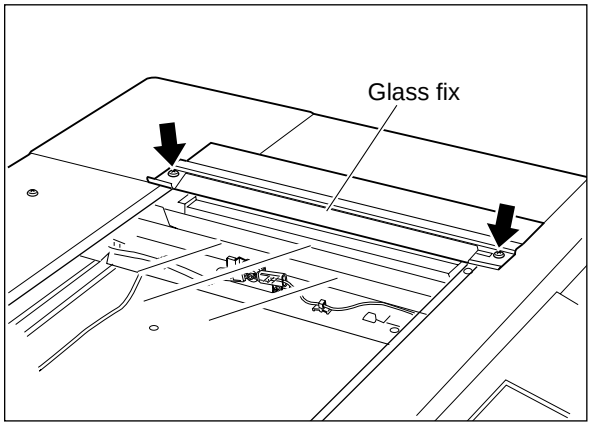
The light emitting diode (LED) is driven by pulses with a period of 130 msec. If a signal which has the same characteristics is received by the phototransistor, an original is determined to be present. Pulse modulation is performed within the reflecting photointerruptor.

7.8 Disassembly and Replacement

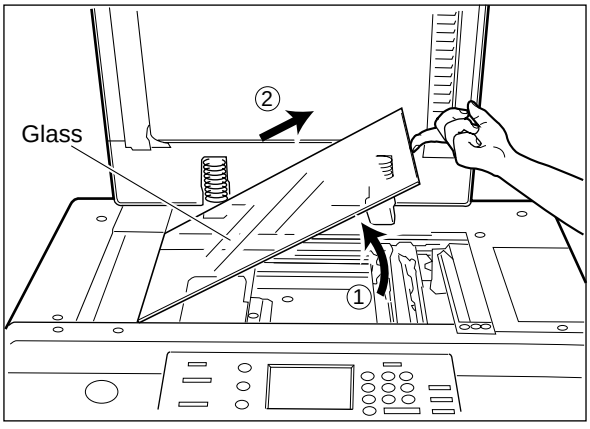
[A] Original glass

(1) Remove the 2 screws and glass holder.

Note: During assembly, feed the mylar sheet under the original glass.



(2) Tilt the original glass up at an angle (①), and remove in the direction of the arrow (②).

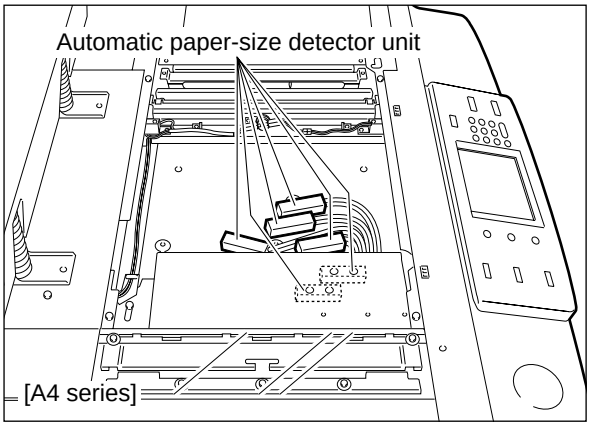


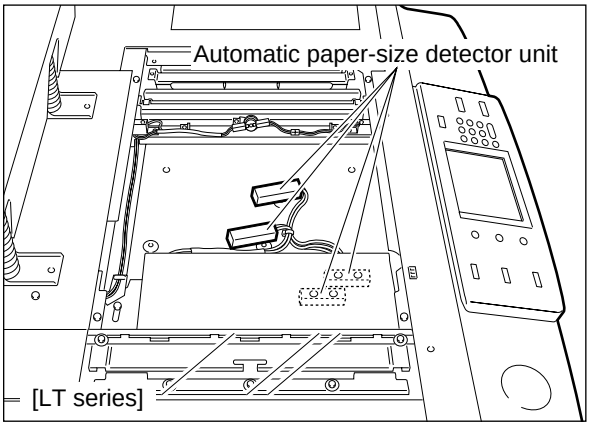
[B] Automatic paper size detector

(1) Remove the original glass, and move the carriage to the feed side.

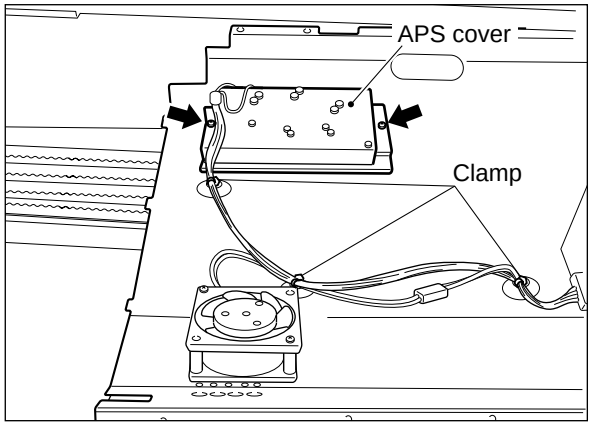
(2) Remove the original width indicator unit.

(3) Remove the lens cover (11 screws, 1 connector).





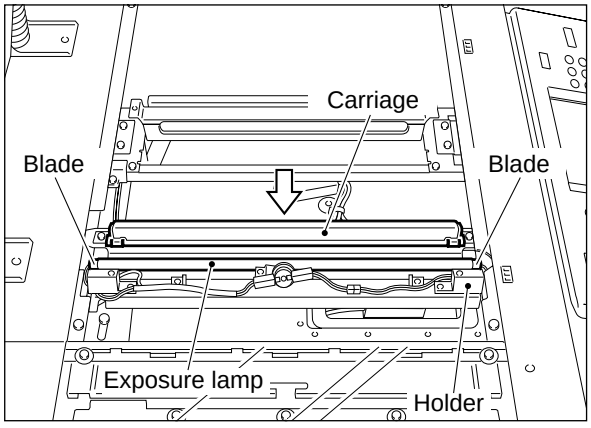
(4) Remove the APS cover (2 screws).
(5) Remove the screw, disconnect the connector and remove the harness from the 3 clamps (base side). Then remove the automatic paper size detector.
A4 series : 6 pcs.
LT series : 4 pcs.

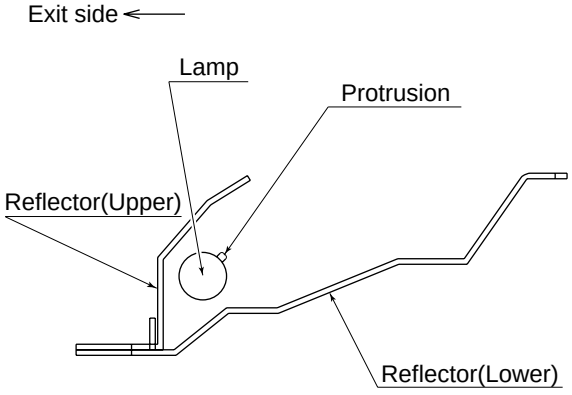


[C] Exposure lamp

(1) Move the carriage to the center.
(2) Remove the reflector (Upper) (2 screws).
(3) Loosen the front side screw fixing the holder.
(4) Remove the exposure lamp from the blade.

Note: When installing the exposure lamp on the holder, face the projection of the lamp opposite to the reflector. Do not touch the glass surface of the exposure lamp with your bare hand.

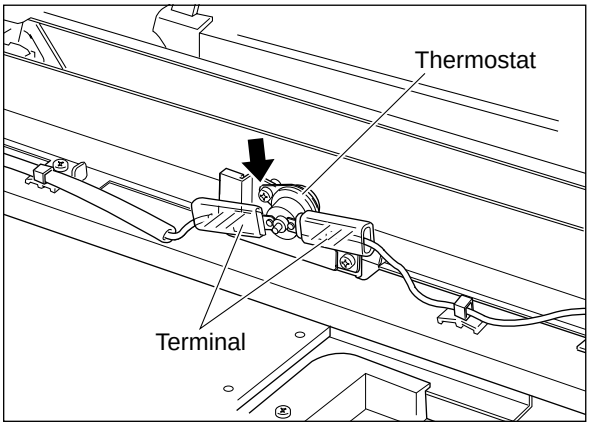




[D] Thermostat

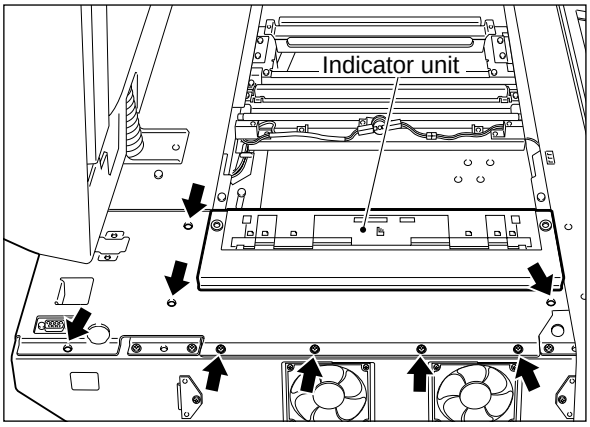
(1) Remove the screw and draw out the thermostat from the carriage.
(2) Release the harness from the terminal, and remove the thermostat.

Note: If the thermostat has been used once, it should be replaced with a new one, because it is designed basically for one-time use only. Do not push the reset pin to reuse a thermostat that has been operated once.

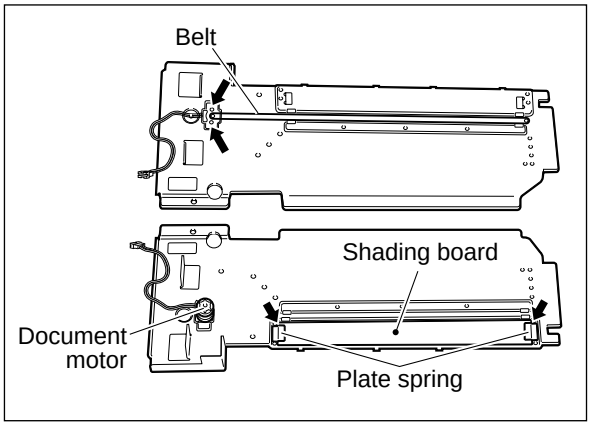


[E] Copy area indicator unit

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Remove the top left cover.
(3) Disconnect the connector from the relay harness.
(4) Remove the 8 screws fixing the indicator unit, and then remove the indicator unit.

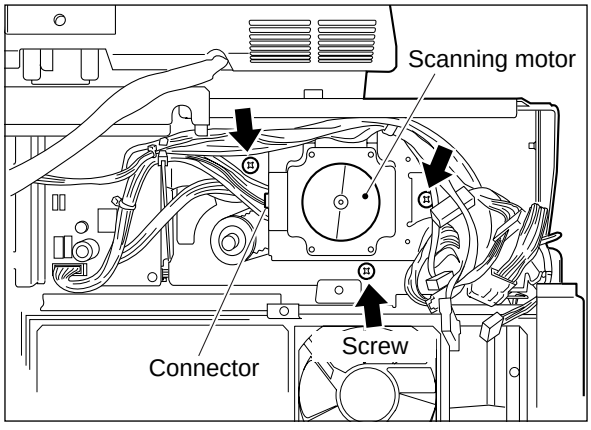


(5) When removing the document motor, remove the 2 screws.
(6) When removing the belt, remove the 2 screws and the cover first.
(7) When removing the shooting plate board, remove the 2 screws, leaf springs and glass first.

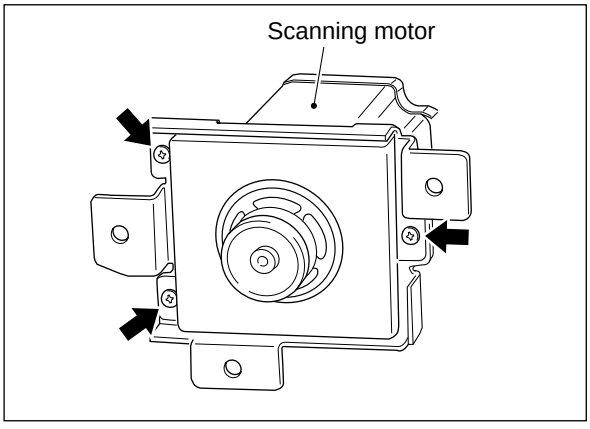


[F] Scanning motor

(1) Disconnect the connector.
(2) Remove the 2 screws and stepped screw, then the scanning motor bracket.

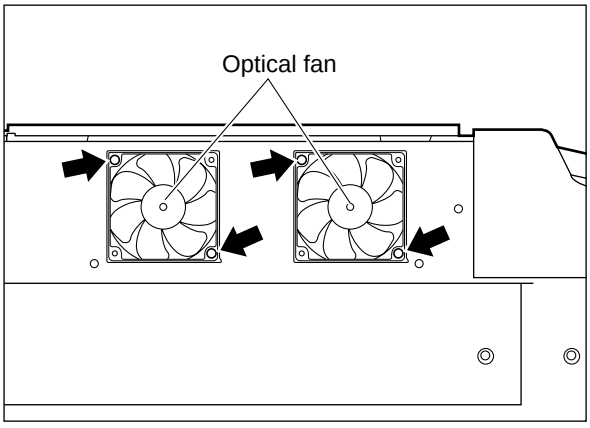


(3) Remove the 3 screws and then the scanning motor.



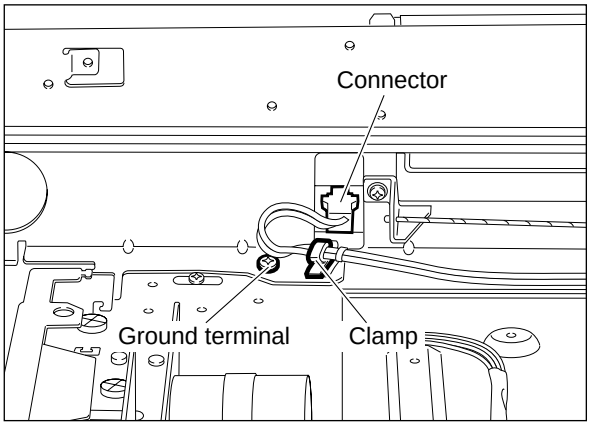
[G] Optical fan

(1) Remove the top left cover.
(2) Remove the indicator unit, and disconnect the 2 connectors.
(3) Remove each of the 2 screws and the fan.

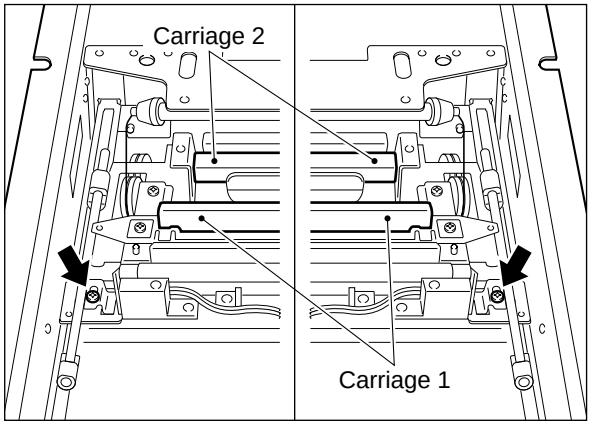


[H] Carriage 1

(1) Remove the original glass.
(2) Remove the blindfold cover on the control panel and top rear cover.
(3) Disconnect the power supply cable from the clamp, disconnect the connector, and remove the earth terminal (1 screw).

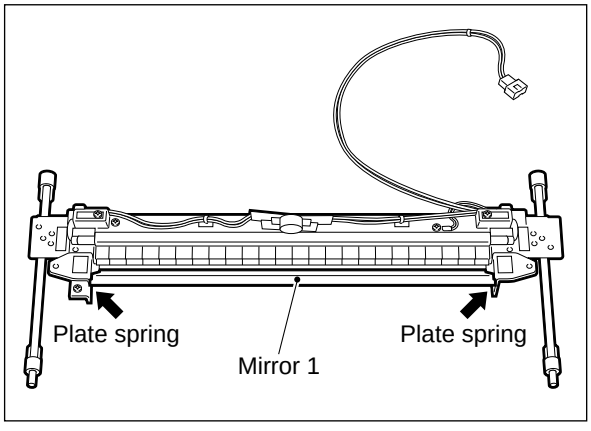


(4) Move the carriage to the feed side.
(5) Remove each screw fixing carriage-1 on the front and rear.
(6) Move carriage-1 to the center, tilt the entire carriage-1 using the notch on the frame, and draw out upwards to remove.



[I] Mirror 1

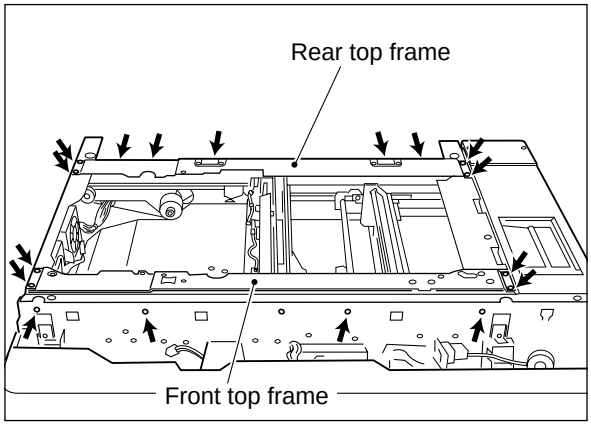
(1) Remove carriage-1.
(2) Remove the 2 leaf springs fixing mirror 1.



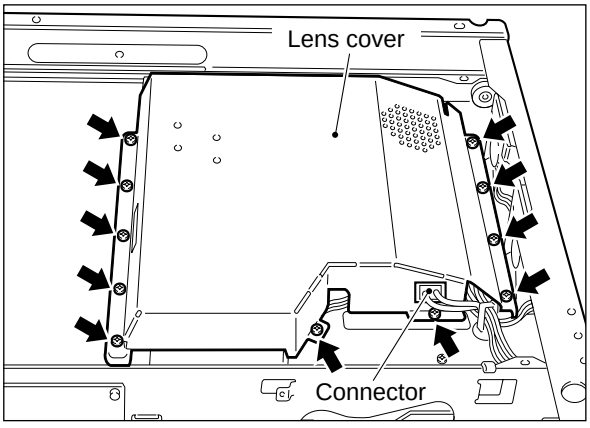
[J] Carriage 2 and carriage drive wire

(1) Remove the original glass, top rear cover, top left cover, top right cover, control panel, PC board, 2 ADF brackets and top rear frame (9 screws).

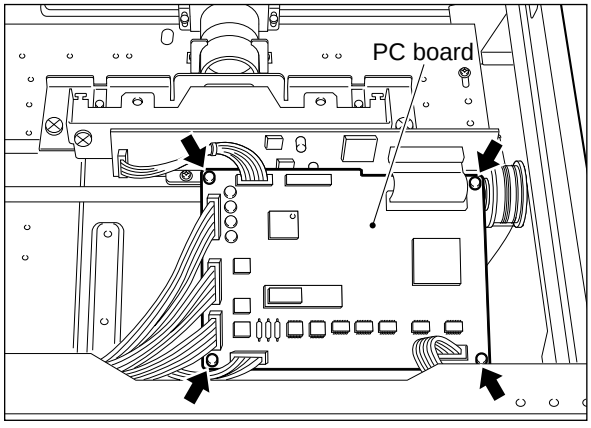
(2) Remove the top front frame (8 screws).



(3) Remove the 11 screws, 1 connector and the lens cover.



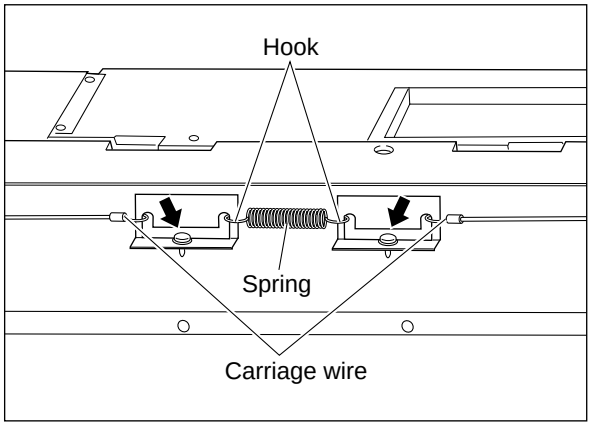
(4) Remove the 4 screws, and disconnect the 7 connectors. Then, remove the scanner control PC board (SLG board).



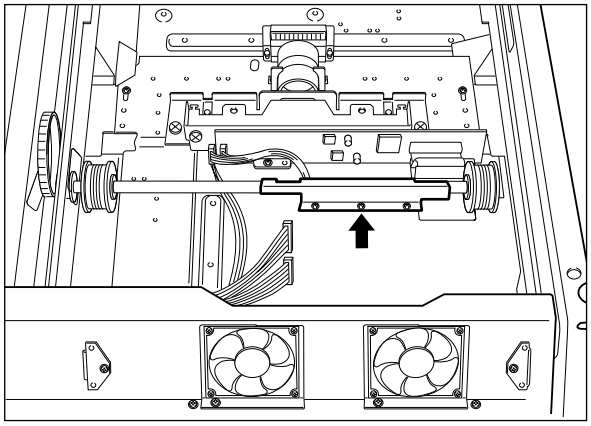
(5) Loosen the wire tension bracket, and remove the spring.

(6) Remove carriage-2.

Note: When assembling carriage-2, adjustment is necessary.

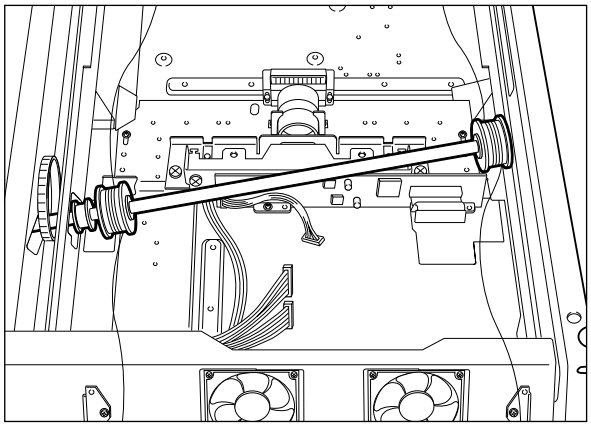


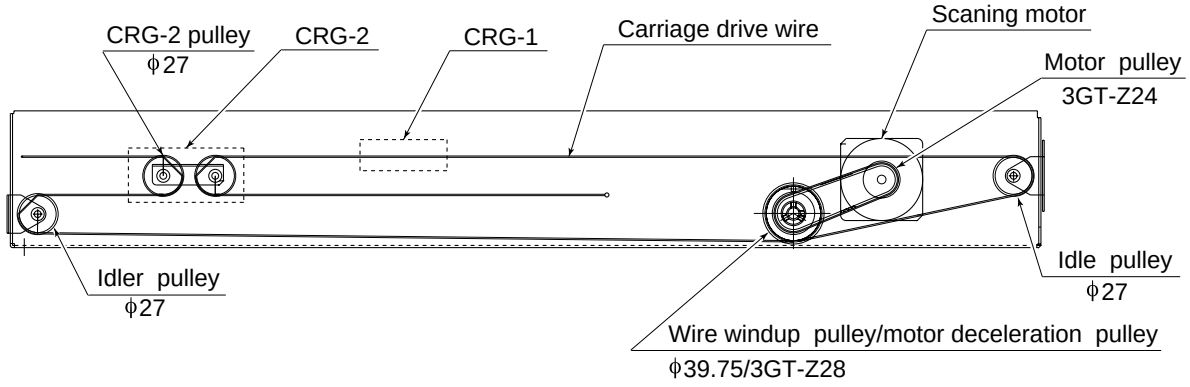
(7) Remove the shaft cover (1 screw). **(only on TWD, ASD, MJD destination models)**



(8) Remove the shaft and pulley assembly (1 stop ring), and remove the wire from the pulley.

Notes: 1. When attaching the wire, make sure that the wire is hooked on as shown in the figure below.
2. When attaching the wire, refer to the Service Handbook.
3. When attaching carriage-1, carriage-2 and the wire, adjustment is necessary.

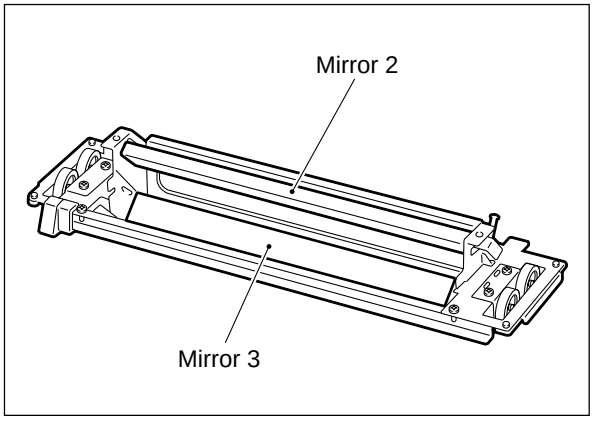




[K] Mirrors 2 and 3

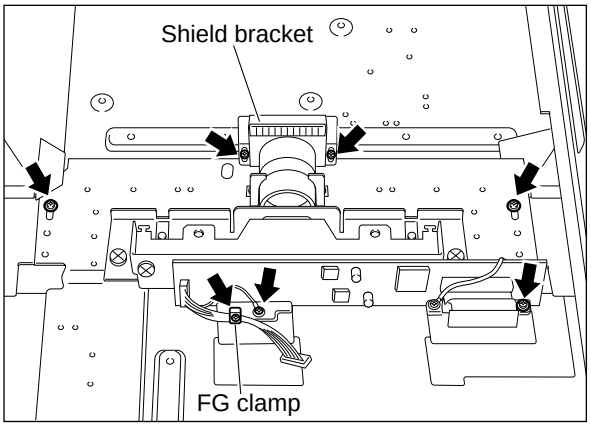
(1) Remove carriage-2.

(2) Remove each of the 2 leaf springs.

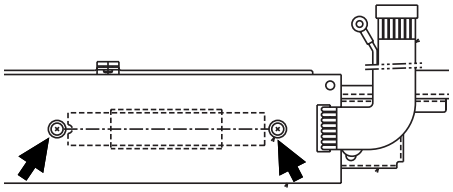


[L] Lens unit

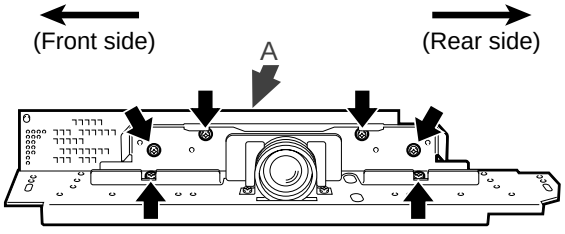
(1) Remove the damp heater.
(2) Remove the shield bracket (2 screws).
(3) Remove the 5 screws, and disconnect the 2 connectors.
(4) Draw out the lens unit upwards.



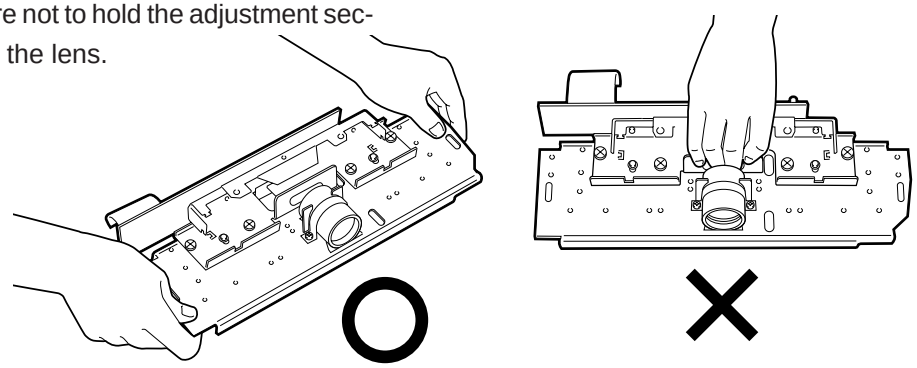
Notes: 1: When replacing the lens unit, do not touch the fixing screw (arrow in the figure: 8 points).



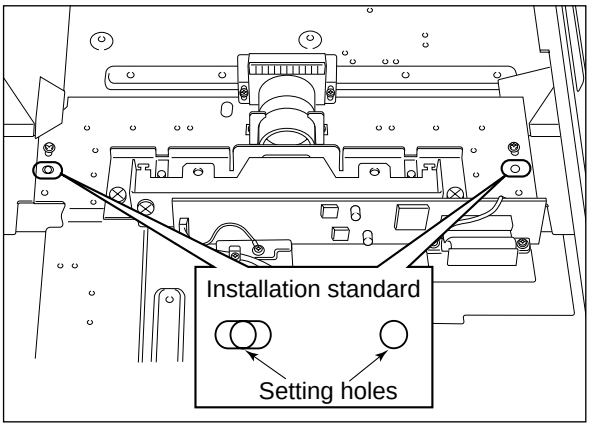
• Pay attention to the two screws (see above figure) on the rear side (see in the figure A.)



2: Also, when handling the unit, take sufficient care not to hold the adjustment section and the lens.

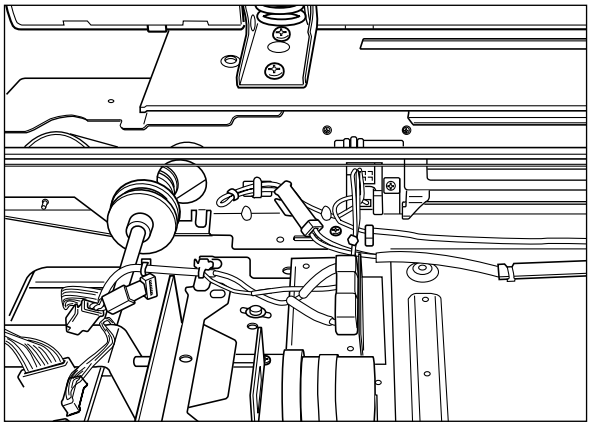


3: When installing the lens unit, lens scaling adjustment is necessary (Refer to the Service Handbook).

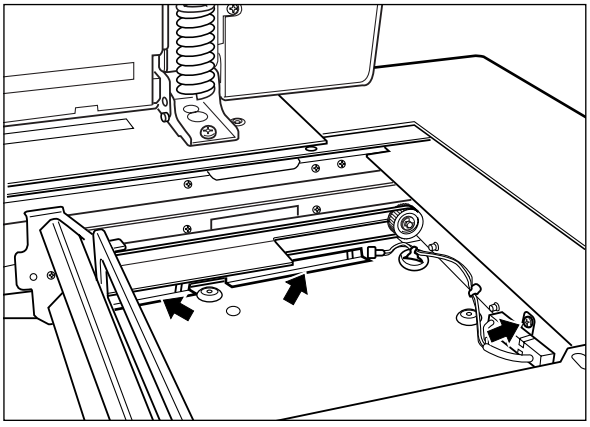


[M] Upper damp heater

(1) Remove the lens cover.
(2) Remove the 1 screw, disconnect the cable from the clamp, and disconnect the 2 relay connectors. Then, remove the upper damp heater.

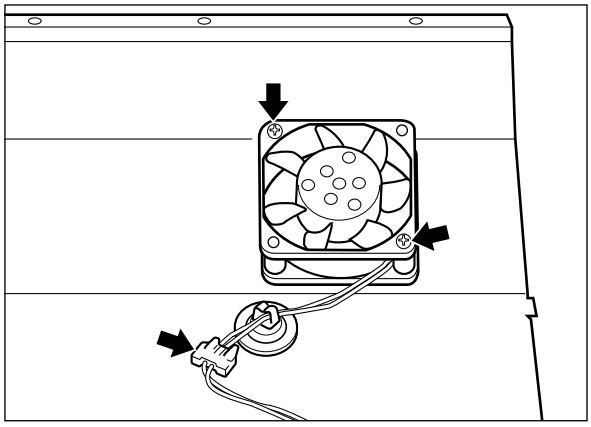


(3) Remove the screw fixing the damp heater for the mirror.
Remove the clamp fixing the cable.
(4) Remove the 2 screw fixing the cable bracket.
(5) Disconnect the connector, and remove the cable. Then, remove the damp heater unit.



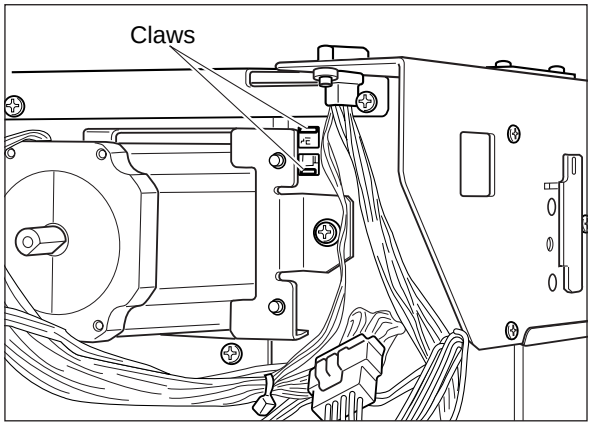
[N] SLG board cooling fan

(1) Remove the original glass and the lens cover.
(2) Remove the 2 screws and the harness from the clamp, and disconnect the connector connected to the APS harness from the lens cover to remove the fan.



[O] Home switch

(1) Remove the 2 claws fastening the home switch mounting section on the base to remove the home switch.



8. PRINTING

8.1 Function Outline

The laser optical system functions to irradiate the photosensitive drum with a laser beam producing a latent image. The printer controller circuit generates the laser beam. The Laser drive board converts the image signals to light emissions that are ultimately sent to the laser diode for irradiation.

The polygonal mirrors, the lenses, the reflective mirrors, as well as other optical elements, play a role in directing the laser beam to the photosensitive drum.

The unit should not be disassembled in the field, as they are susceptible to dust which would deteriorate the quality of its output.

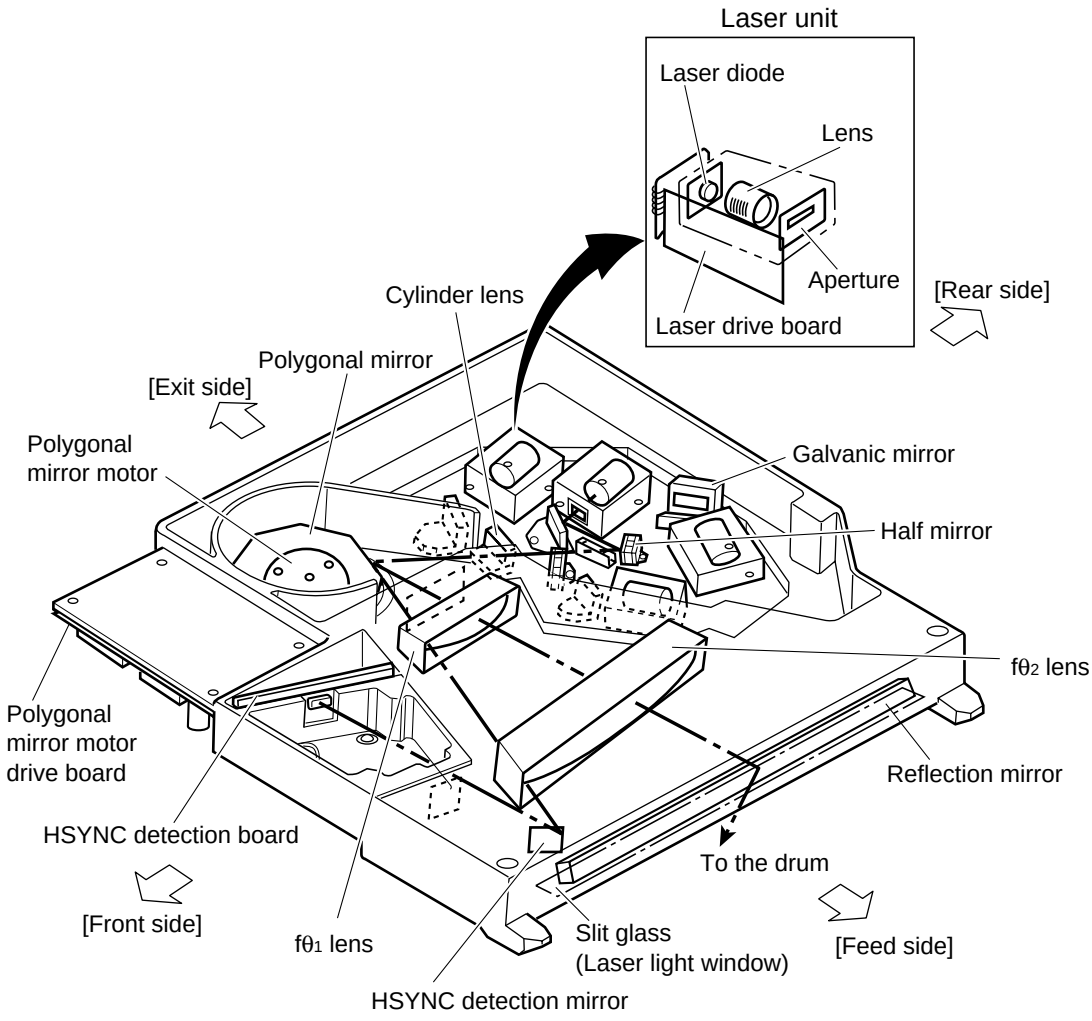


Fig. 8.1-1 Laser Scanning Overview

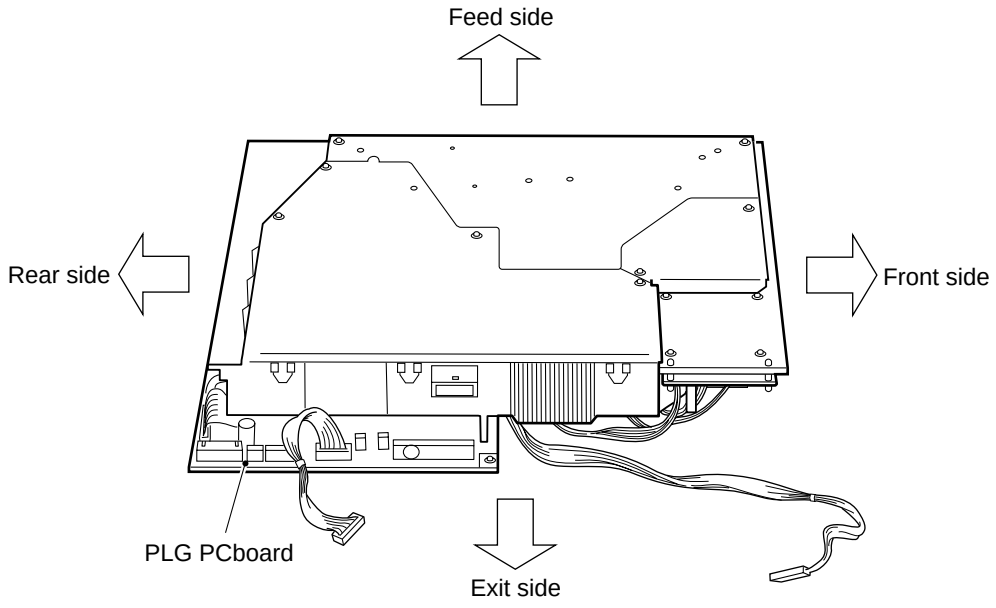


Fig. 8.1-2 Laser Optical Unit Overview

8.2 Structure

(1) Laser Unit

The laser unit comprises a laser diode, laser drive board, finite lens and aperture.

① Laser diode and laser drive board

The laser diode controls emission of laser beams based on the laser control (ON/OFF) signals from the laser drive board.

② Finite lens

The finite lens focus the laser beam on the surface of the photosensitive drum.

③ Aperture

The aperture regulates the shape of the laser beam at the laser beam irradiation position.

④ LASER SAFETY

The beam of the semiconductor laser is itself extremely weak (about 120 mW), but focusing the parallel rays results in an increase in energy to which extended exposure is hazardous.

The laser optical system of the digital plain paper copier is encased in metal which in turn is housed in the external cover. There is thus no risk of leaks during use, nor during normal servicing.

Note, however, extreme care must be exercised when servicing involves focusing the laser. Such operations are hazardous and must not be attempted unless you are specifically trained to work in this area.

The warning label shown below is attached on the left side of the upper inner cover.

>PS<

DANGER – LASER RADIATION WHEN OPTICAL UNIT OPEN OR DRUM UNIT REMOVED AND INTERLOCK DEFEATED. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.

VORSICHT – LASERSTRAHLUNG, WENN DIE ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET ODER DIE TROMMEL ENTFERNT UND DIE VERRIEGELUNG UNWIRKSAM GEMACHT WIRD. NICHT DIREKT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.

DANGER – RAYON LASER LORSQUE LE BLOC OPTIQUE EST OUVERT, LE TAMBOUR RETIRE ET LE VERROUILLAGE HORS D'USAGE. EVITER L'EXPOSITION DIRECTE AU RAYON.

[CAUTION]

- Do not insert tools that are highly reflective into the path of the laser beam.
- Remove all watches, rings, bracelets, etc.

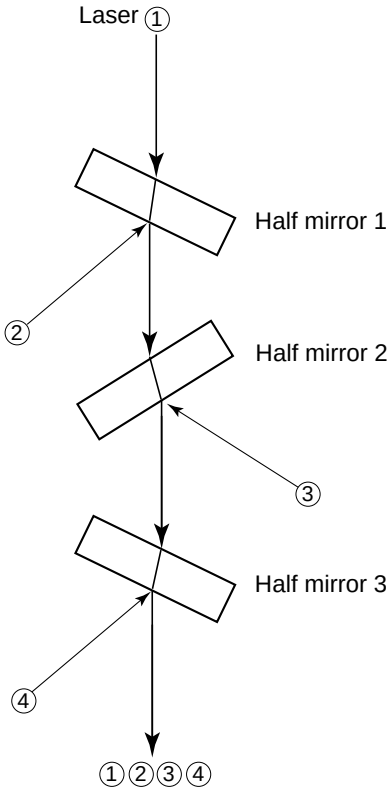
(2) Galvanomirror

Four laser units are mounted on this scanning unit, and 4-line scanning is possible by scanning of one plane of the polygonal mirror.

The galvanomirror controls the position of the laser beams in the secondary scanning direction so that optimum pitch (42.3 µm) between the four laser beams can be maintained at all times.

(3) Half mirror

Half mirrors are used for combining and aligning to separate optical axes the laser beams that are emitted from the four laser units. The transmissivity and reflectivity of each half mirror are designed so that the laser power is the same at the point that the four laser beams are combined.



(4) Polygonal Mirror Motor Unit

The polygonal mirror motor unit comprises a polygonal mirror and a polygonal mirror motor.

① Polygonal mirror motor

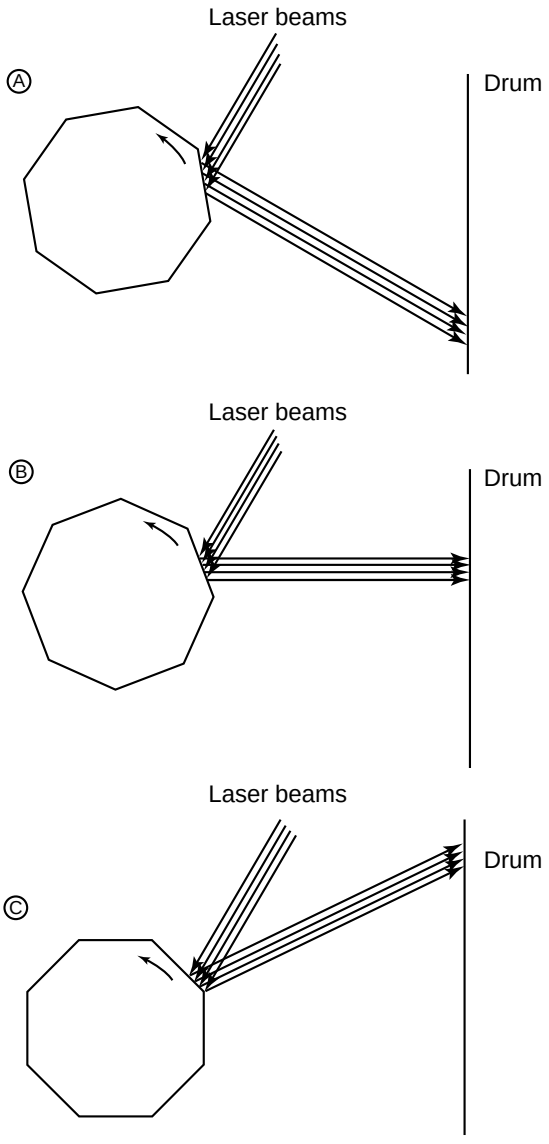
The polygonal mirror motor rotates the polygonal mirror at high speed as follows:

During standby: 18608.1 rpm

During copying (600 dpi): 18608.1 rpm

② Polygonal mirror

The laser beams emitted from the laser diodes are reflected by this mirror. As the polygonal mirror is rotated by the polygonal mirror motor, the direction of the reflected laser light moves in sync with mirror rotation. The direction of movement is the primary scanning direction of the image with four scans ending in one plane of the polygonal mirror as four lasers are mounted. As the polygonal mirror has eight planes, 32 scans are completed in one rotation of the polygonal mirror.



Four scans are completed by completion of steps Ⓐ to Ⓒ.

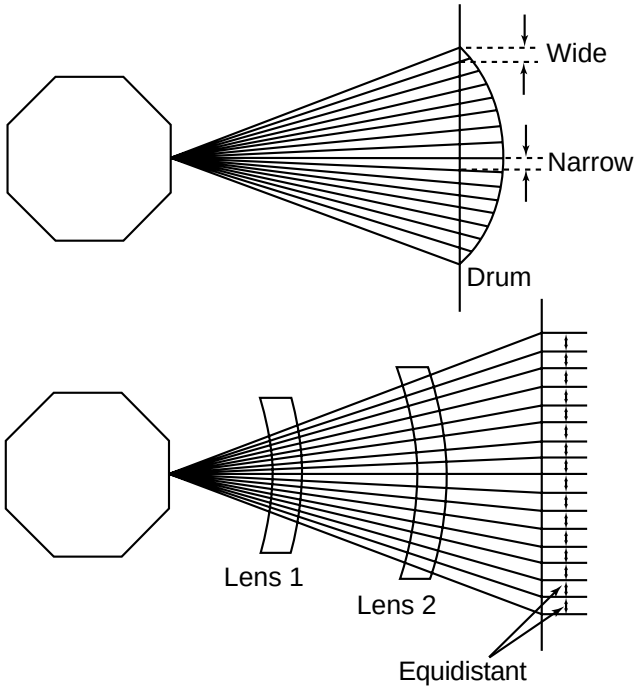
Four scans are carried out on one plane of the polygonal mirror. 32 scans can be carried out with one rotation of the polygonal mirror.

(5) fθ lens 1 and 2

These lenses perform the following compensations on the laser light reflected by the polygonal mirror.

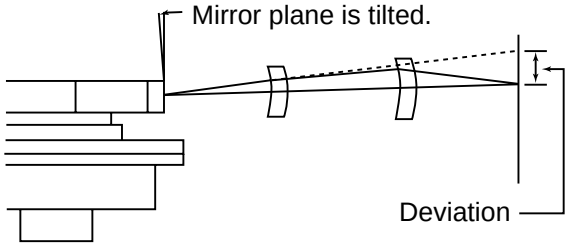
① Equidistant scanning

The laser light reflected on the polygonal mirror is scanned at the same angle as the polygonal mirror is rotated at the same speed. That is, when the scan is completed, the dot-pitch on the drum becomes the wide spaces at both edges and the narrow spaces in the center. So, in order to make the dot pitch equidistant, laser light is compensated so that it is scanned on the drum at equal speeds.



② Pyramidal error compensation

The reflecting plane of the polygonal mirror is tilted in either of two directions with respect to the perfect vertical. Deviation of the laser light (with respect to the perfect horizontal) caused by this reflected plane's pyramidal error is compensated.



③ Laser beam sectional shape

The sectional shape of the laser beam on the drum is compensated.

(6) HSYNC detection PC board

After the laser beams are scanned by any reflecting plane of the polygonal mirror, they are reflected by the HSYNC detection mirror to become incident to the PIN diode on the HSYNC detection PC board. The primary scanning synchronizing signal is formed by detection of these laser beams. The pitch (42.3 μm) between the four laser beams and the laser beam power are detected on the drum surface.

(7) Laser drive board

This drive board has the following functions:

① APC control function (for compensating unevenness in the laser intensity caused by temperature)

② Laser ON/OFF generating function

③ Function for generating synchronizing signals in the primary scanning direction

(8) Reflection mirror

The mirror reflects and guides laser light reflected by the polygonal mirror onto the drum.

(9) Slit glass

The slit glass is located at the position where the laser beam is output from the laser unit to prevent dust inside the laser unit.

8.3 Laser Diode

The laser used in this copier is an AlGaInPtype semiconductor laser. This laser outputs in the single-horizontal mode, and its oscillation wavelength is about 685 nm. This semiconductor laser is powered by a +5VDC power supply, and its optical output is controlled to about 2.5 mW. Output of a PIN diode for monitoring light output built into the semiconductor laser is used for controlling this.

The semiconductor laser has the optical forward-output current, and monitors the current characteristics shown in the figure on the right. Emission of light is started when the forward current reaches or becomes greater than the threshold current. The monitor current is disparate due to the characteristics of each of the semiconductor lasers. Optical output must be adjusted so that it is maintained at a constant value.

Also, as the optical output of the semiconductor laser drops when its temperature increases, APC is also required to maintain the optical output at a constant value. APC is also carried out on the bias current when the copier is not printing to improve the optical output rise time due to the temperature characteristics of the laser used in this copier.

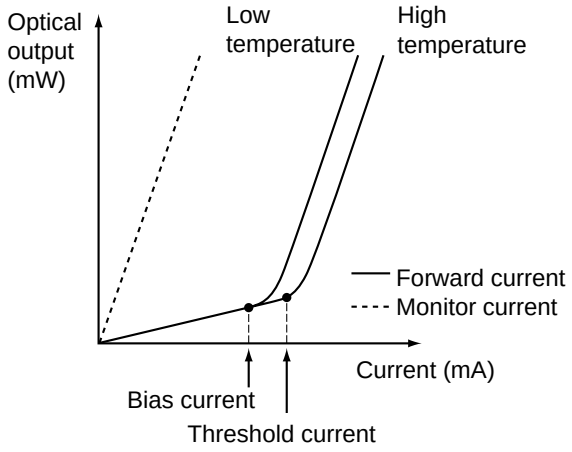


Fig. 8.3-1

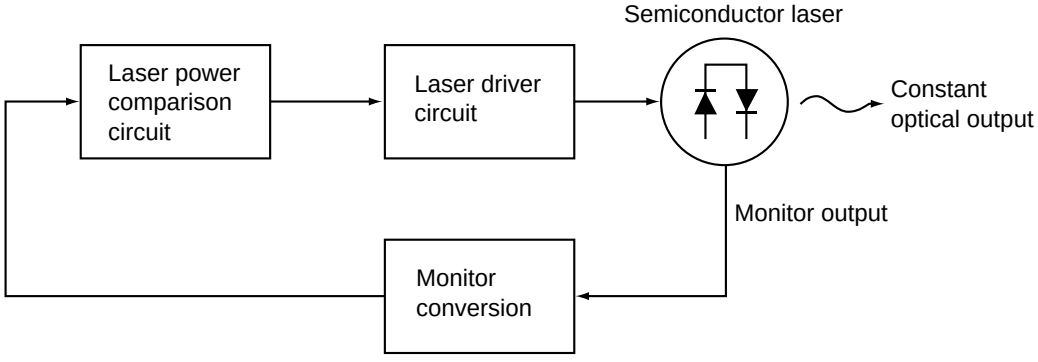


Fig. 8.3-2 Block diagram

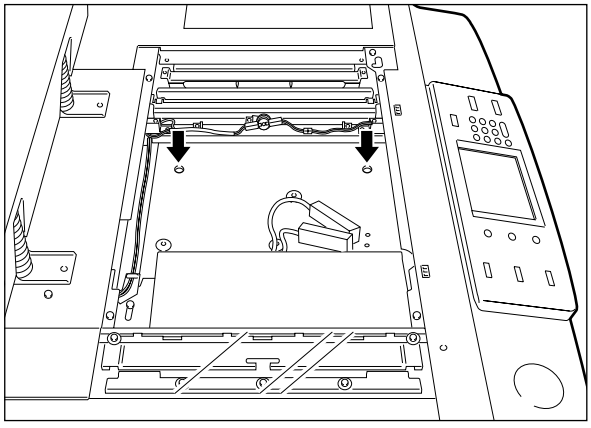
Fig. 8.3-2 shows a block diagram of the semiconductor laser control circuit. The monitor output from the semiconductor laser is controlled for each of the semiconductor lasers beforehand so that a constant voltage is maintained when the optical output is 2.5 mW. After conversion, the voltages are fed back to the laser power comparison circuit. Here, comparison of the laser power voltage set to the control circuit is carried out for every single scan. As a result, the laser driver circuit increases the forward current when laser power is insufficient. Alternately, the forward current is decreased when laser power is excessive so that the optical current is constant. Likewise, the bias current is controlled so that it is constant.

8.4 Disassembly and Replacement

[A] Laser light unit

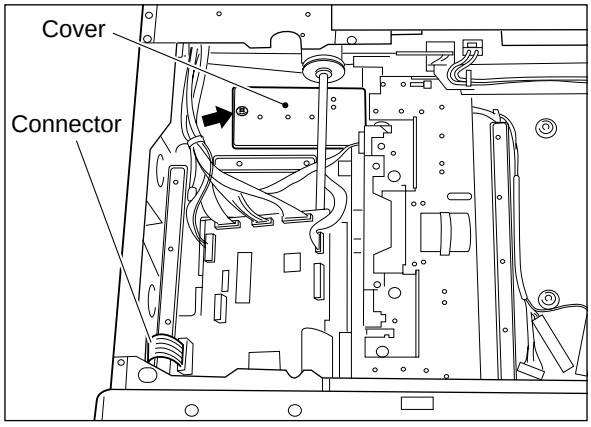
(1) Remove the FAX glass holder, original glass and left top cover.

(2) Slide the carriage to the feed side, and remove the 2 fastening screws on the laser unit from the panel holes.

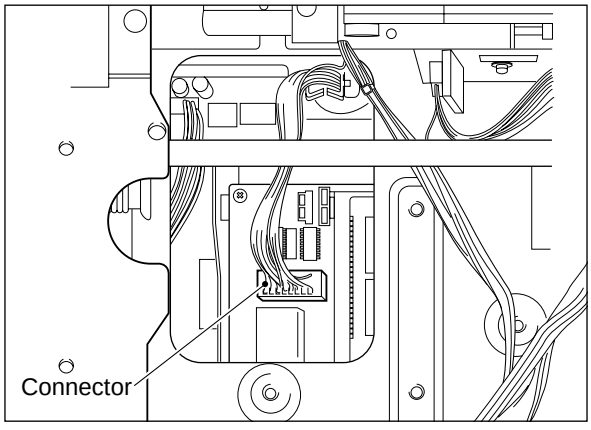


(3) Remove the indicator screws, and remove the scanner section lens cover after sliding the indicator.

(4) Disconnect the connector on the system board side of the harness connecting the scanner logic board and system board, and remove the cover on the rear side.

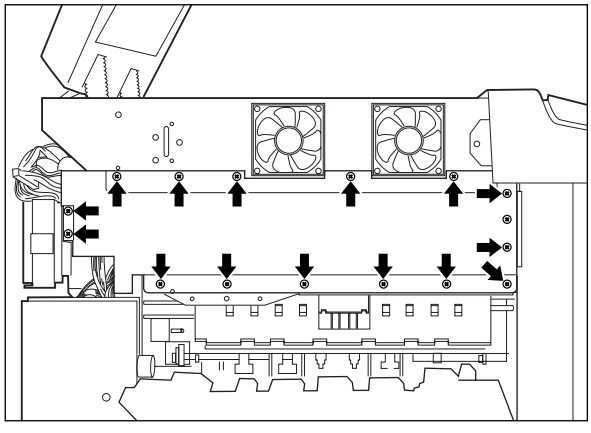


(5) Disconnect the connector on the system board side of the harness connecting the system board and PLG board.

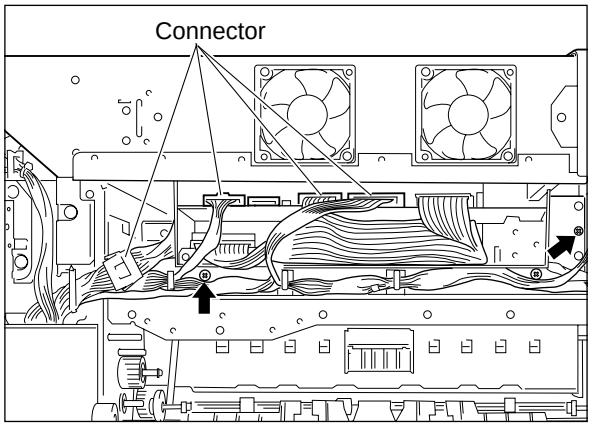


(6) Remove upper exit cover, and open the lower exit cover.

(7) Remove the slot cover on the inside of the upper exit cover (15 screws).

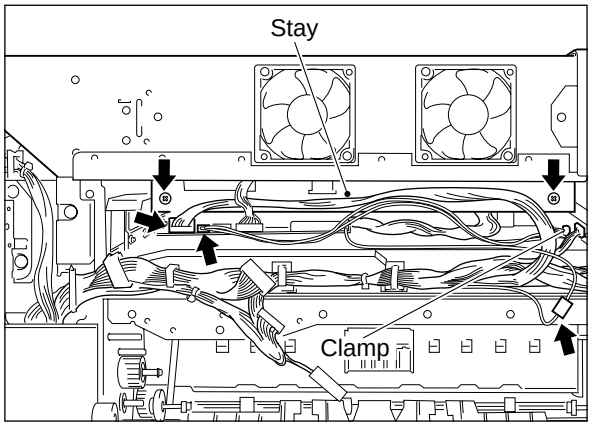


(8) Disconnect the 4 connectors from the system board, and remove the 2 screws to draw out the system electronics unit.



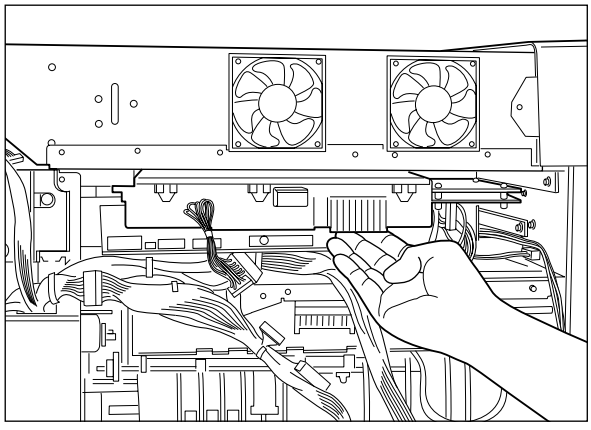
(9) Disconnect the 2 connectors on the PLG board and realy connector of the harness from the PLG board and remove the harness from the clamp.

(10) Remove the unit positioning stay (2 screws).



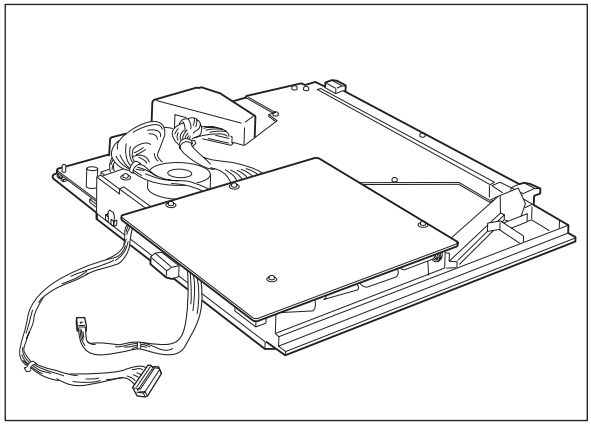
(11) Draw out the laser unit along the rail paying attention to where you are holding it.

Note: Before you draw out the laser unit, make sure that the connectors in step (10) are disconnected.



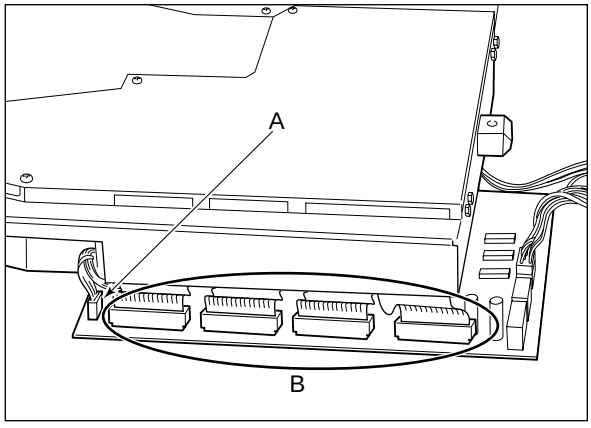
Notes: 1. Temporarily place the laser unit that you removed with the motor side facing up so that the laser unit is not subjected to a load.

2. Take care not to dirty the slit glass of the laser unit with fingerprints or other marks.



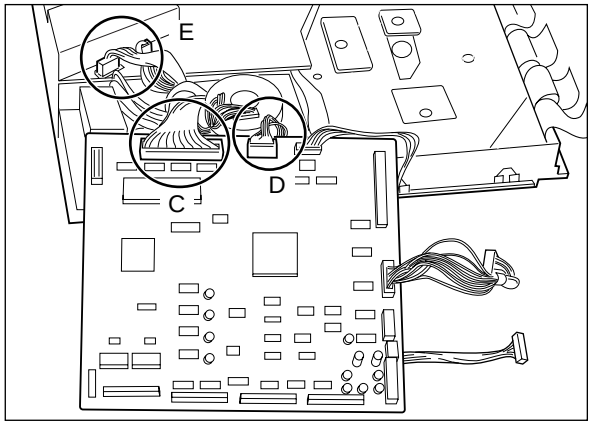
[B] PLG board

(1) Disconnect the 4 connectors at section A (WH-PLG-GLV) and section B (WH-PLG-LDR1 to 4-300).



(2) Turn the laser unit over to its motor side, remove the fixing screw on the PLG board, and disconnect the connectors at section C (WH-PLG-SNS1-300) and section D (WH-PLG-POL).

Note: During this operation, prevent the connector at section A from becoming disconnected.



9. PAPER FEED SYSTEM

9.1 General

9.1.1 Functions

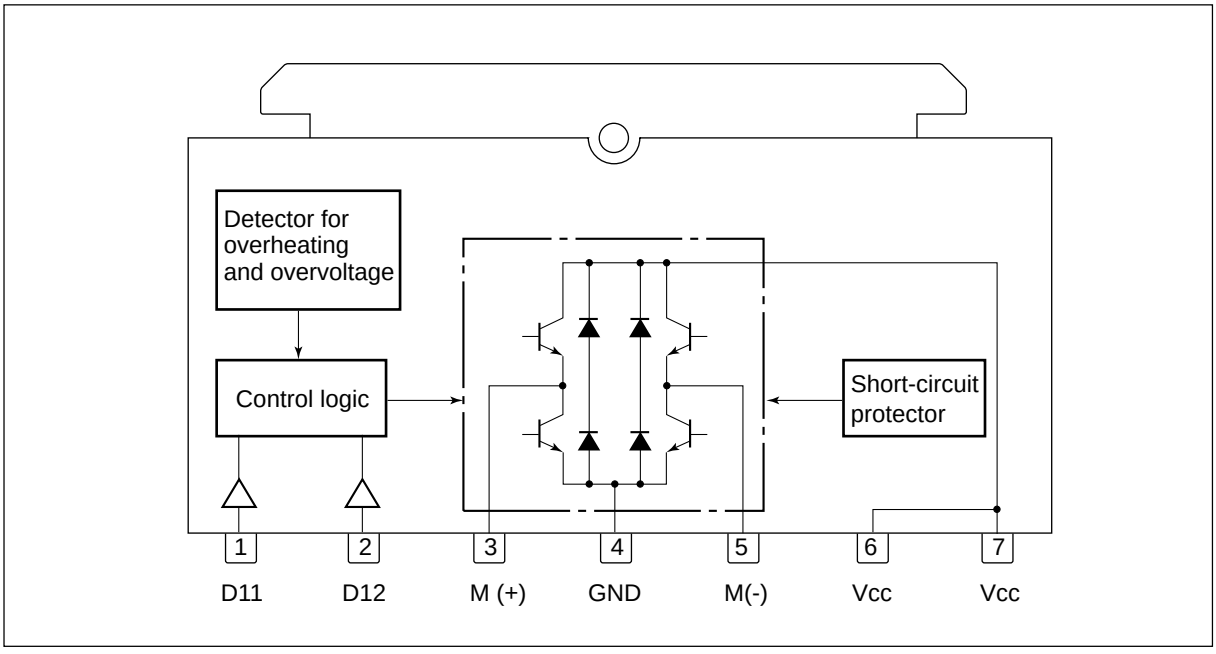
This unit feeds paper which is set in the LCF, the cassette or the manual feed tray to the transfer position. The paper feed section is mainly comprises an aligning section, large capacity feeder (LCF) and paper feed pedestal (PFP).

9.1.2 Motor drive circuit

■ **Brush motor drive circuit**

- Feed motor (M32) (FED-MOT) : Driven by IC39 (LGC PC board: TA8428K)
- Tray motor (M30) (TRAY-MOT) : Driven by IC37 (LGC PC board: TA8429H)
- Main cleaning motor (M11) (CLN-MOT) : Driven by IC58 (LGC PC board: TA8428K)
- Belt cam motor (M26) (TRB-CAM-MOT) : Driven by IC2 (LGC PC board: TA8428K)

The block diagram of TA8428K is shown below.

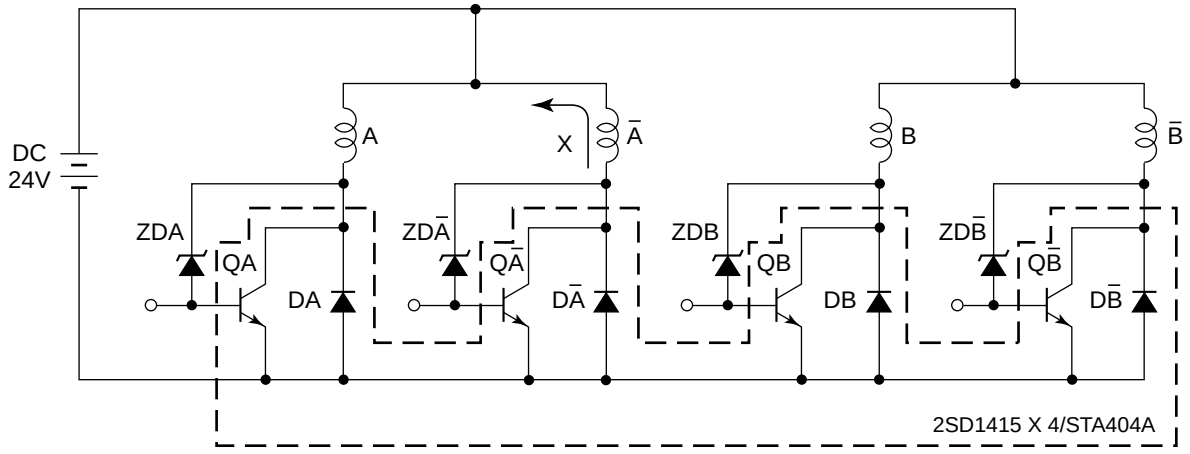


DI1 and DI2 are input terminals for the signals from the microcomputer.
In the control logic section, forward and backward rotation of the motor is controlled (ON and OFF) based on the signals from the microcomputer.

Input		Output		Remarks
DI1	DI2	M(+)	M(-)	
H	H	L	L	Brake
L	H	L	H	CW
H	L	H	L	CCW
L	L	OFF (high impedance)		STOP

■ Pulse motor drive circuit (Constant voltage bipolar type)

Aligning motor (M17) (RGT-MOT) is driven by 2SD1415A of Q2 to Q5 on the logic PC board. The circuit is shown below.



Construction of motor drive

In the case of 2-phase excitation, AB, B$\bar{A}$, $\bar{A}\bar{B}$, and $\bar{B}$A will be successively excited. While transistors QA and QB are ON, current from the +24V stabilized power supply will flow into phases A and B.

Next, while QA is OFF and Q$\bar{A}$ is ON, the current which flowed through phase A will be cut off owing to the disappearance of a flow path. At this point, however, phases A and $\bar{A}$ will be inductively coupled, causing the current from the 24VDC power supply to be diverted through diode D$\bar{A}$ to phase $\bar{A}$, in the direction marked X. When the currnet flowing in this direction becomes zero, current will flow through Q$\bar{A}$ to excite phase $\bar{A}$.

At the instant when QA goes OFF, the current which flowed through phase A abruptly decreases, causing a high voltage to appear at the collector of QA. Because of Zener diode ZDA, however, the collector voltage is held at the Zener voltage, protecting transistor QA and diode DA.

9.1.3 Detection of the remaining amount of paper

■ **Paper-empty detection**

- When the LCF or the cassette has run out of paper, the LCF door is opened, or the cassette is removed, the “ADD PAPER” symbol lights on the display panel on the copier.

■ **Detection principle**

- When the cassette is selected and after the START button is depressed, the tray is lifted to the feed position and makes contact with the feed rollers. The Tray-Up Switch is directly connected to the feed roller assembly and thus it is actuated moments after the feed rollers make contact with the paper. After the completion of every paper-feed operation (per tray unit), the same unit is repositioned to the down position and is removed from the feed roller assembly and thus, from the Tray-Up Switch. The PFC measures the period of time that it takes the Tray-Up Switch of each cassette to be actuated (turned ON) for every time that it is used. It does this for every paper feeding operation. Obviously, the Paper Feed Control Circuit (PFC) acknowledges the differences in the duration of time it takes for the Tray-Up Switch to actuate during every print cycle and makes calculations based on time differences every time the tray is used. These calculations are translated into icons depicting one of five displays on the LCD panel. See illustrations below.

PFP cassette

N	Status	Display
N=0	Empty	
1≦N≦125	Paper remaining	
125<N≦250	Paper remaining	
250<N≦375	Paper remaining	
375<N	Paper remaining	

LCF

N	Status	Display
N=0	Empty	
1≦N≦500	Paper remaining	
500<N≦1000	Paper remaining	
1000<N≦2000	Paper remaining	
2000<N	Paper remaining	

9.2 Aligning Section

9.2.1 Introduction

The aligning section aligns the leading edge of paper fed from the LCF, PFP and manual feed tray, and transports the paper to the transfer position. This section comprises an aligning roller, paper stop switch and its drive mechanisms (aligning motor).

(1) Aligning roller

Paper fed from the feed roller is held in contact against the aligning roller, which is at rest, to align the leading edge. The upper and lower aligning rollers then rotate to transport paper to the transfer position.

The aligning rollers are brushed to prevent paper dust from adhering to them.

(2) Paper stop switch

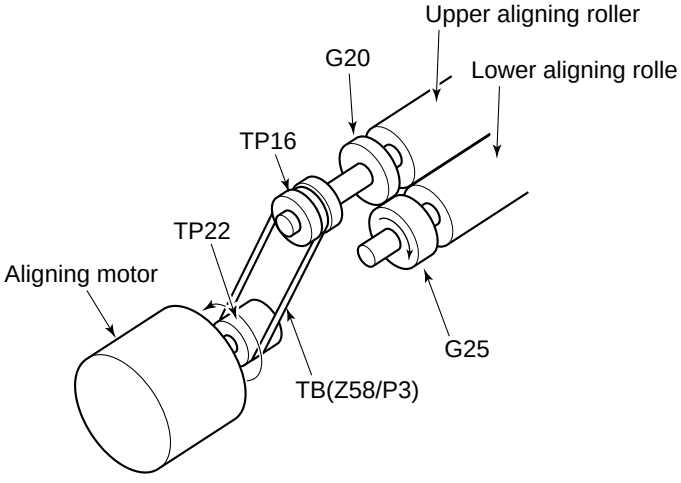
Detects that the leading edge of paper has arrived at the aligning roller.

It also detects that the trailing edge of paper has passed through the aligning roller.

In the former case, the copier detects that the aligning rollers have completed paper alignment.

The switch also uses paper jam detection.

9.2.2 Configuration and drive system



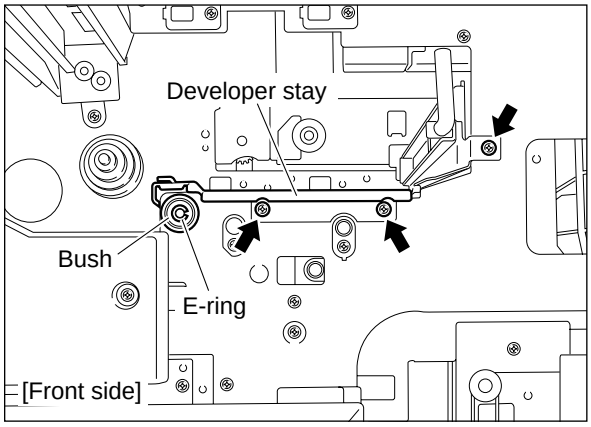
Notes

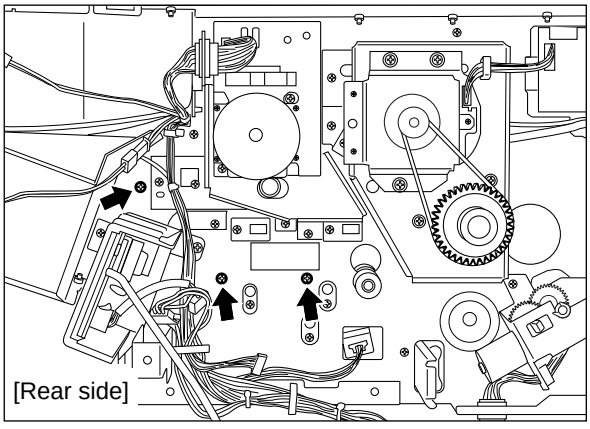
	: Forward rotation
	: Backward rotation
G	: Gear
TP	: Timing pulley
TB	: Timing belt
Z	: Number of teeth
P	: Pich (mm)

9.2.3 Disassembly and replacement

[A] Upper aligning roller

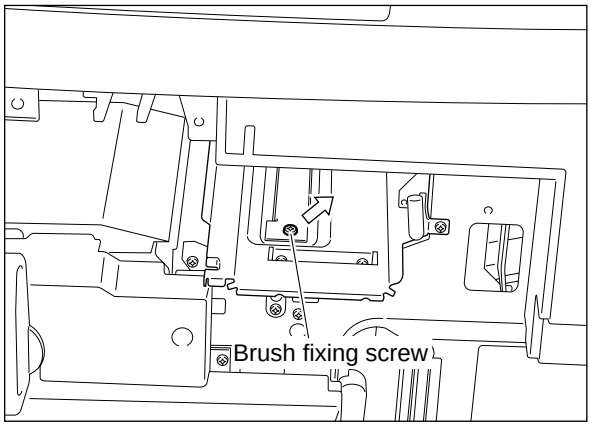
(1) Remove the aligning motor and developer stay front side and rear side 3 screws for each.
(2) Remove the front E-ring, bearing and bush.
(3) Slide the upper aligning to the rear, take off the rear bushing, and then remove the upper aligning roller.
(4) When replacing the roller, also remove the 2 set screws, 2 E-rings, pulley, bearing, bush, gear and pin.





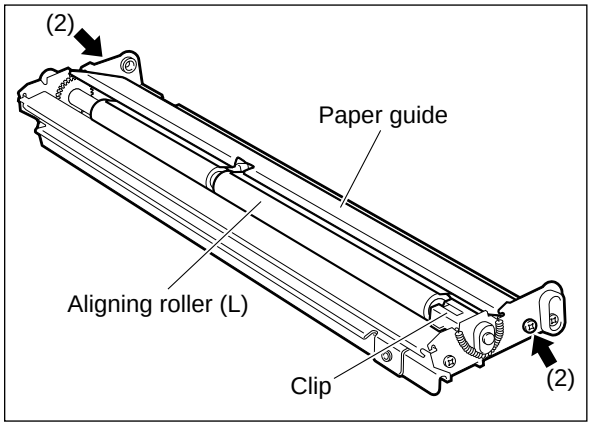
[B] Upper brush

(1) Remove the developer and one brush Fixing screw.
(2) Remove the upper brush in the direction of the arrow.



[C] Lower aligning roller

(1) Remove the aligning unit.
(2) Remove the paper guide (2 screws).
(3) Remove the spring hooked on the roller end. (2 screws).
(4) Remove the clip on the front side, and slide the roller together with the bush and bearing to the front side, draw out the rear side from the frame. Then, lift the roller upwards to remove.
(5) When replacing the roller, remove the gear and the pin.

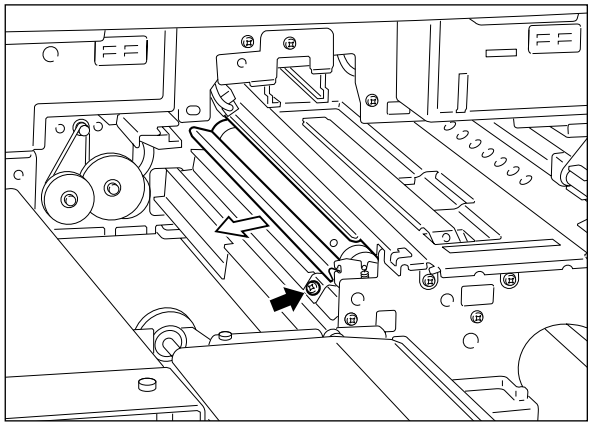


[D] Lower brush

(1) Remove the developer and the cleaner. After drawing out the transfer belt unit, remove the brush fixing screw.

(2) Remove the lower brush in the direction of the arrow.

Note: When assembling, insert the projection of the brush securely in the hole in the rear frame.

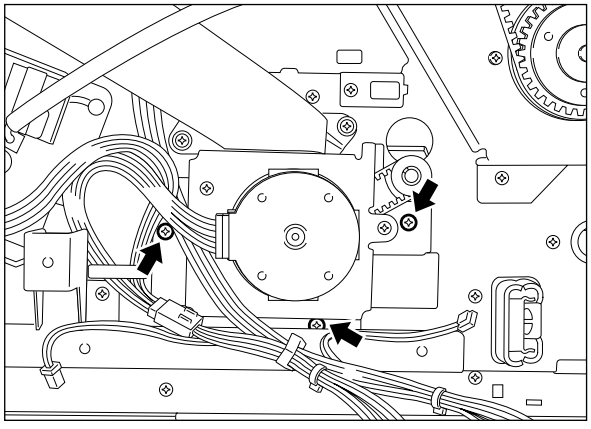


[E] Aligning motor

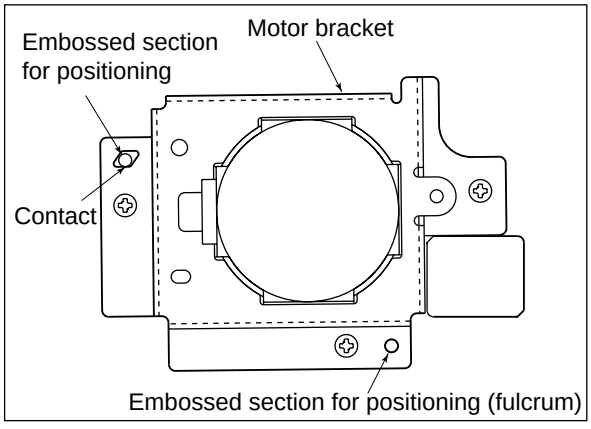
(1) Remove the flywheel.

(2) Remove the waste toner transport pipe unit.

(3) Remove the motor bracket (3 screws).

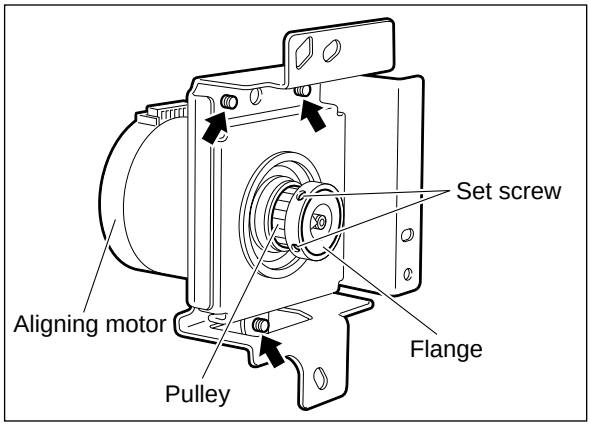


Note: When installing motor bracket, Make sure tat the motor bracket is fastened properly matching the embossed sections for positioning shown in the figure on the right.



(4) When replacing the motor, loosen the 2 set screws, remove the flange and pulley, and then the 3 screws.

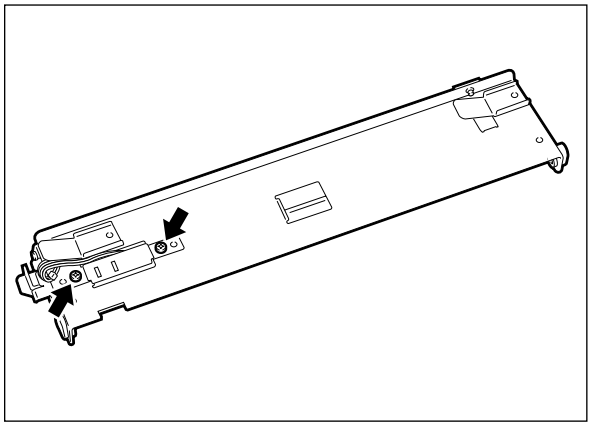
Note: When assembling, align the cut surface of the pulley with the one of the shaft.



[F] Paper-stop switch

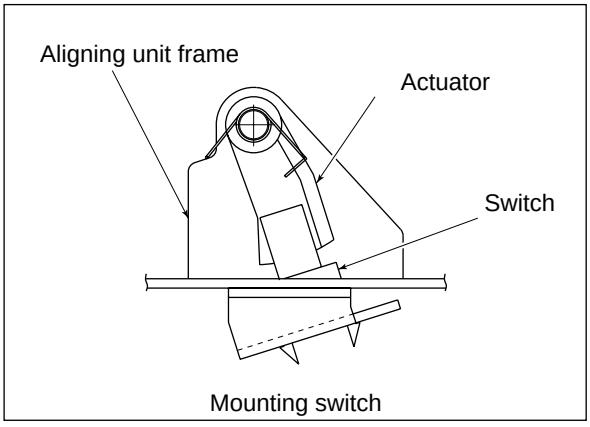
(1) Remove the aligning unit.

(2) Remove the 2 screws and the bracket fixing the paper stop switch.



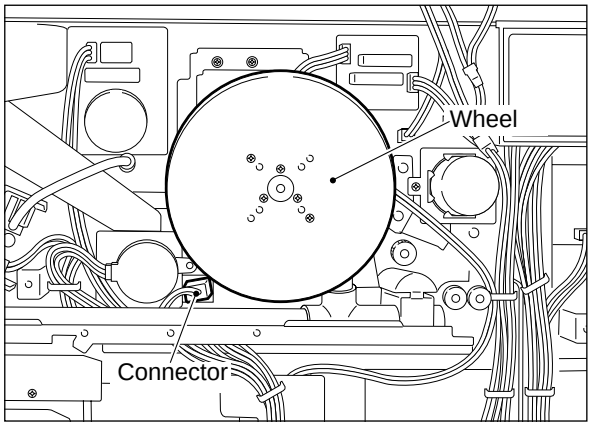
(3) Disconnect the connector, remove the two hooks, and then the paper-stop switch.

Note: When installing the switch bracket, install the switch bracket so that the positional relationship between the actuator and switch is as shown in the figure on the right.

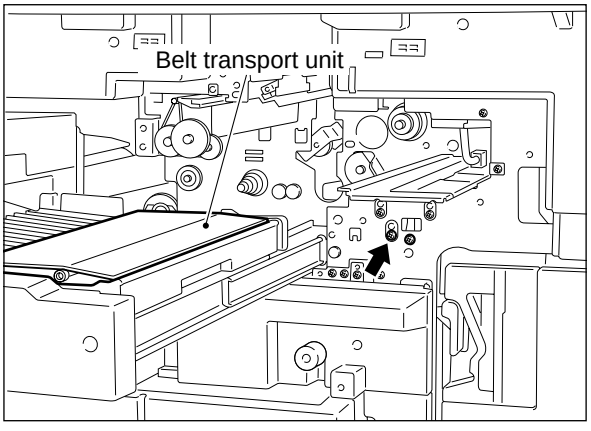


[G] Aligning unit

(1) Disconnect the connector on the rear side.

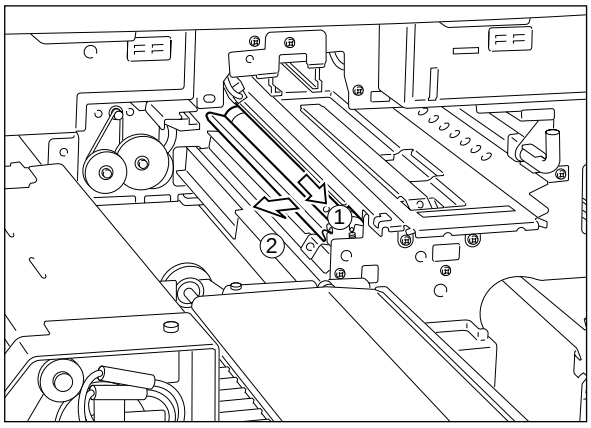


(2) Remove the developer and the cleaner, draw out the belt transport unit, and then remove the pin bracket (1 screw).



(3) Slide the aligning unit to the front side and remove in the direction of the arrow.

Note: When installing the aligning unit, prevent the two leaf springs from becoming bent.



9.3 Large Capacity Feeder (LCF)

9.3.1 Introduction

For making large volumes of copies, the large capacity feeder (LCF) is designed to stack about 4,000 sheets of copy paper.

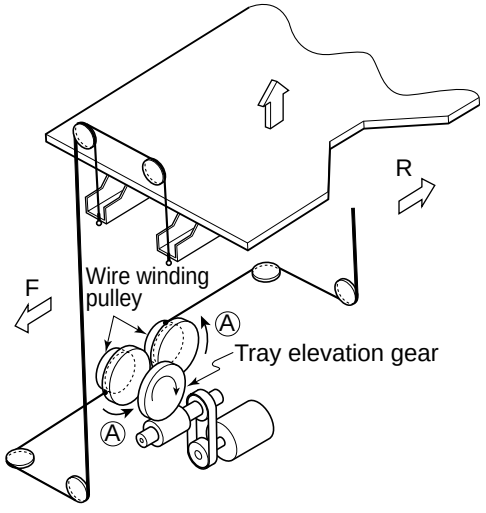
The LCF consists of the following three main parts:

(1) Tray section

① Elevator tray ..... The elevator tray is designed to transport the stacks of paper to the paper feed mechanism. The unit functions to keep the paper biased towards the feeding mechanism so that paper is always in contact with the feed rollers. When paper supply is exhausted, the tray will be lowered.

② Elevator mechanism ..... The wire on either side of the elevator tray are wound around (or unwound from around) the wire winding pulley by the tray motor drive to move the elevator tray up and down.

③ Switches ..... Switches detect at the bottom and top positions of the elevator tray and the presence of paper.



When the belt winding pulleys rotate counter clockwise (arrow Ⓐ), the elevator tray moves up using the principle of a tackle.

(2) Paper feeding section

This unit sends paper which is set in the LCF or the manual feed tray to the aligning section.The paper feed secton is mainly comprised of pick-up rollers, feed rollers, separation rollers, manual-feed switch, paper-empty switch, tray-up switch, paper-start switch and also their drive mechanism.

The drive mechanism has the feed motors for driving and the manual pick-up solenoid for up-and-down operation.

① Pick-up roller

This roller is for feeding paper out of the manual feed tray or LCF unit to the feed roller.

The manual pickup roller feeds paper vertically.

② Feed roller

This roller is opposite of the separation roller. It is responsible for feeding paper to the aligning roller.

③ Separation roller

This roller is responsible for allowing only one copy paper to pass through during a paper feeding process. When more than one sheet of paper is present at the feed roller area, the tendency for more than one paper to feed through. The separation roller reverse-rotates and that action pushes the paper that is below the sheet that is to be fed, backwards thus not allowing it to be fed. Only the top paper is fed through. The principle of co-efficient of friction is what allows the top sheet of paper to be fed and not the lower sheet.

The following explains the switches for detecting paper presence, height of the tray and paper feeding position to control the respective rollers ON and OFF.

④ Manual-feed switch

Detects if paper is set in the manual feed tray. If so, manual paper feeding takes priority over cassette paper feeding.

⑤ Paper-empty switch

This photointerruptor sensor detects paper in the LCF. If there is paper in the LCF, the actuator is lifted by the paper and the sensor detects the presence of paper.

⑥ Tray-up switch

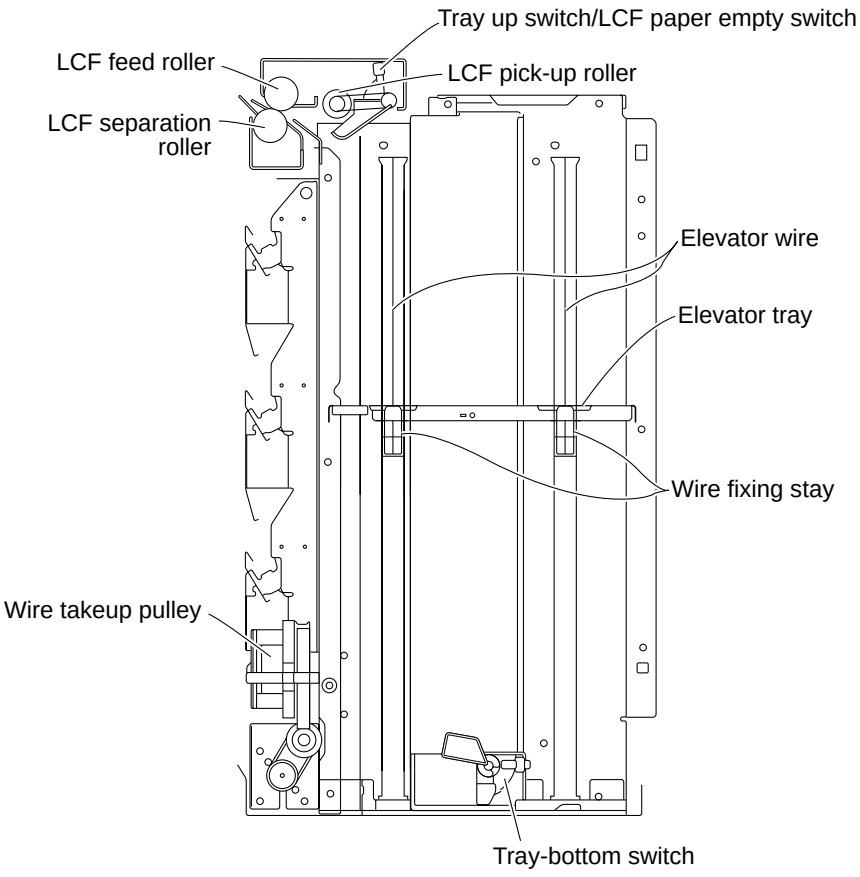
When the tray is lifted to allow the paper set in the LCF to contact with the LCF pick-up roller, the tray-up switch detects the height of the tray.

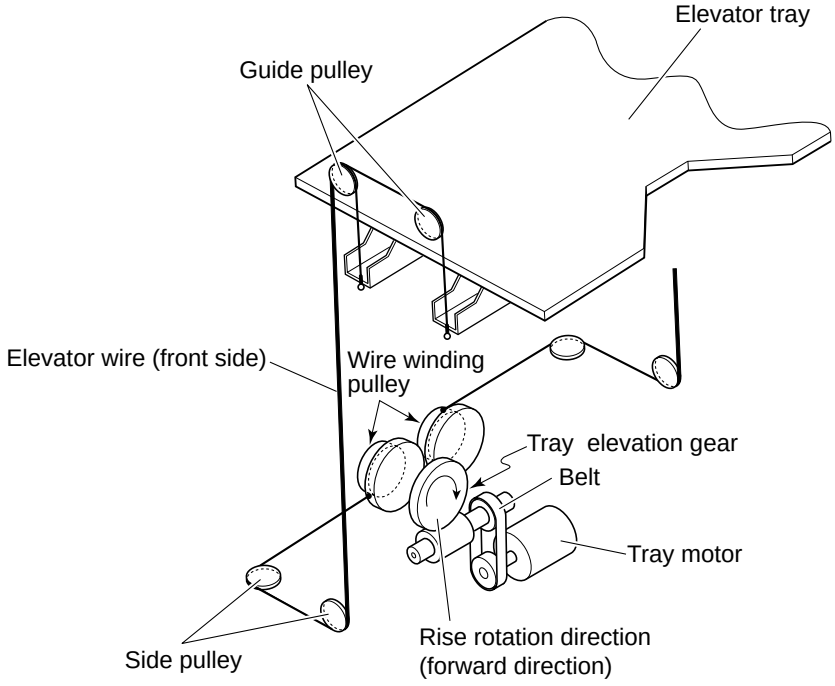
⑦ Paper-feed switch

Detects the leading/trailing edge of paper passing through the feed roller.
The switch is also used for paper jam detection.

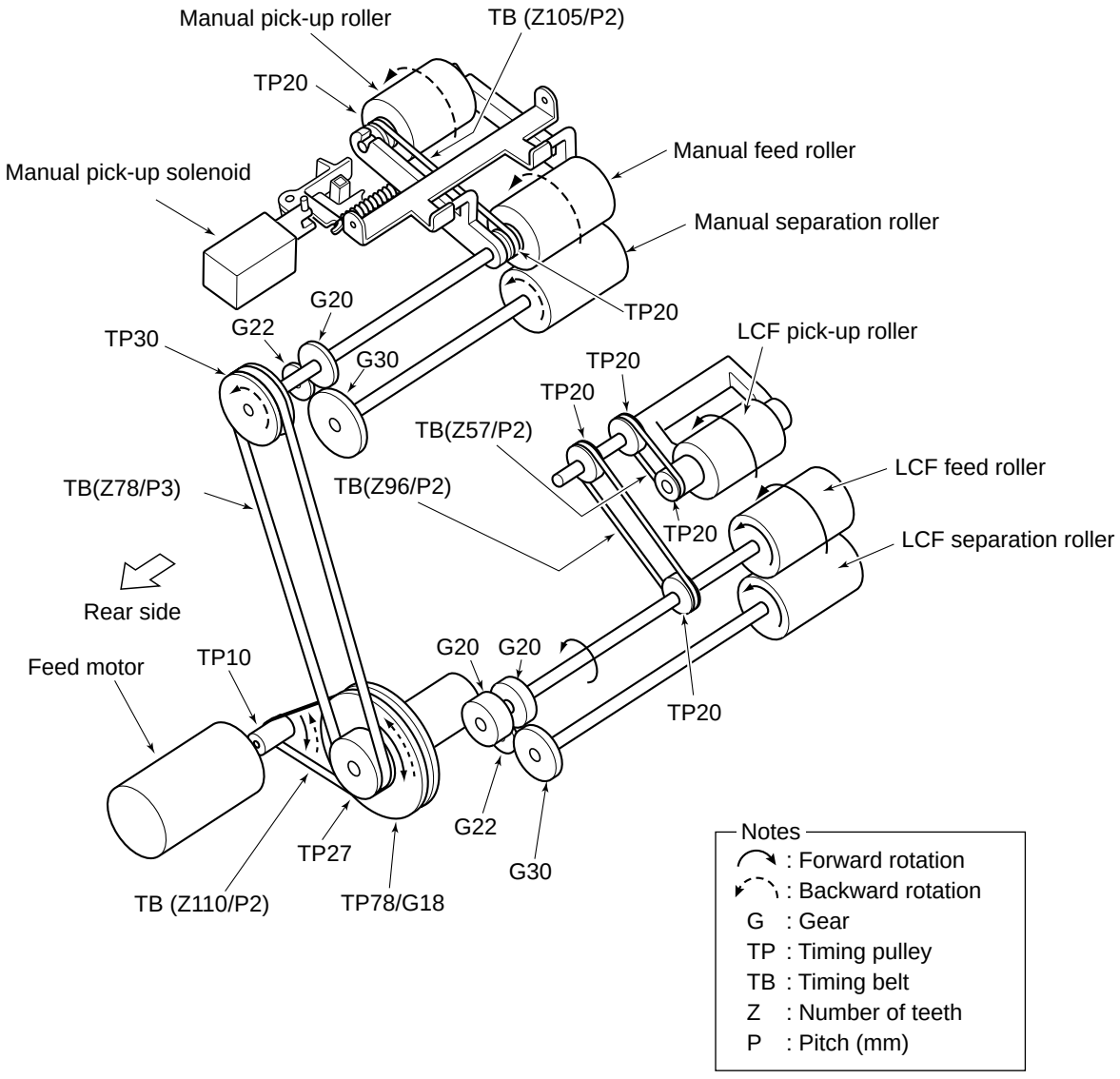
9.3.2 Construction and drive mechanism

(1) Tray section





(2) Paper feeding section



9.3.3 Description of operation

■ **Operation of elevator tray**

(1) When the LCF door is closed with the power ON, the tray motor rotates in a forward direction and the elevator tray rises.

(2) When the paper rises it pushes the LCF pick-up roller to which the tray switch and the LCF empty switch are connected. When this happens, the motor turns OFF.

(3) The LCF pick-up roller moves down 2 to 3 mm when 10 to 20 sheets are fed. When this happens, the tray-up switch is actuated and electrically turns on the motor that raises the tray up 2 to 3mm. This raises the paper up to the level where it feeds efficiently.

(4) When paper supply runs out in the LCF, the empty switch's actuator falls into a hole in the tray's platform. When this happens, the motor is energized and is made to rotate in the direction that allows the paper tray to lower. Simultaneously, the LCD panel displays the ADD PAPER symbol. The tray motor stops when the LCF bottom switch is actuated.

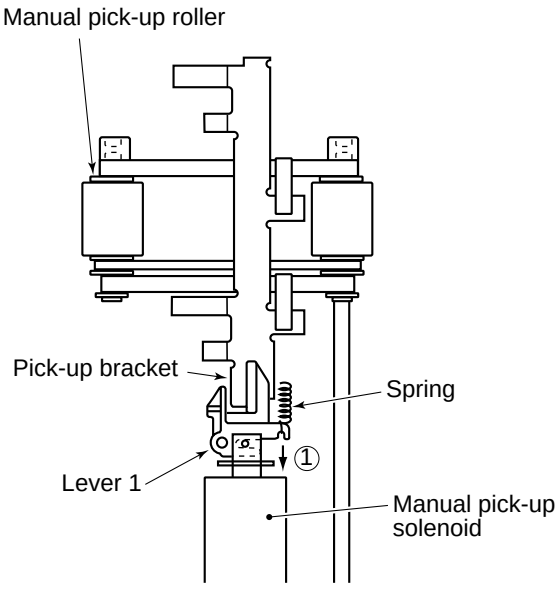
(5) When the tray is loaded with paper, and the door closed, the motor turns ON and drives the paper tray upward until it reaches the paper feed mechanism which turns the motor OFF.

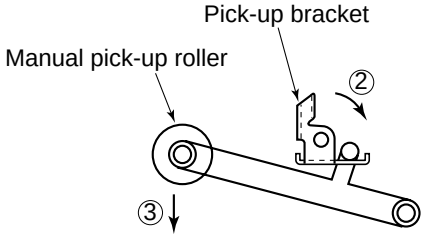
Note: The other time the motor rotates in the direction to move the tray down is when the TRAY DOWN key is depressed. Opening the door and then closing it allows the motor to energize and raise the tray.

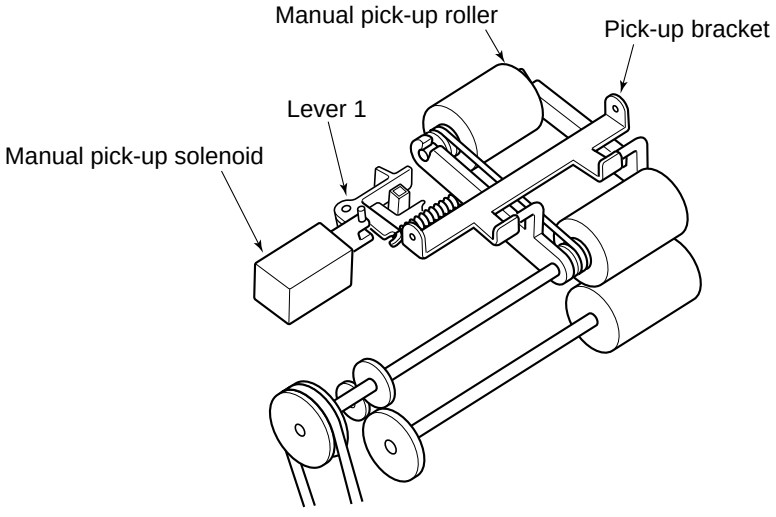
■ **Up-and-down movement of manual pick-up roller**

When the manual pick-up solenoid is energized, the pick-up bracket is lowered and allows the Manual pick-up roller to also lower.

When the manual pick-up solenoid is de-energized, the pick-up bracket is raised by the action of the solenoid's spring that pulls back the lever and thus,the pick-up roller.



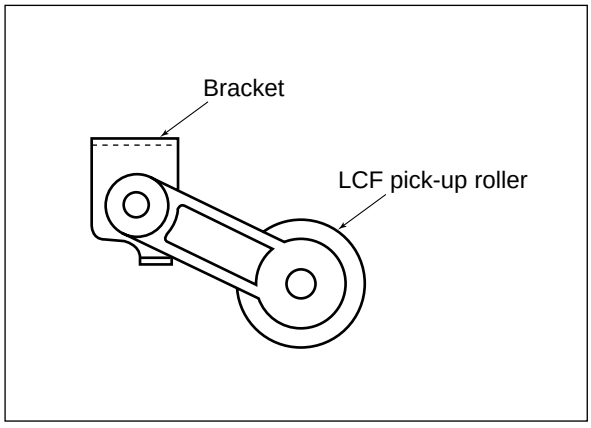




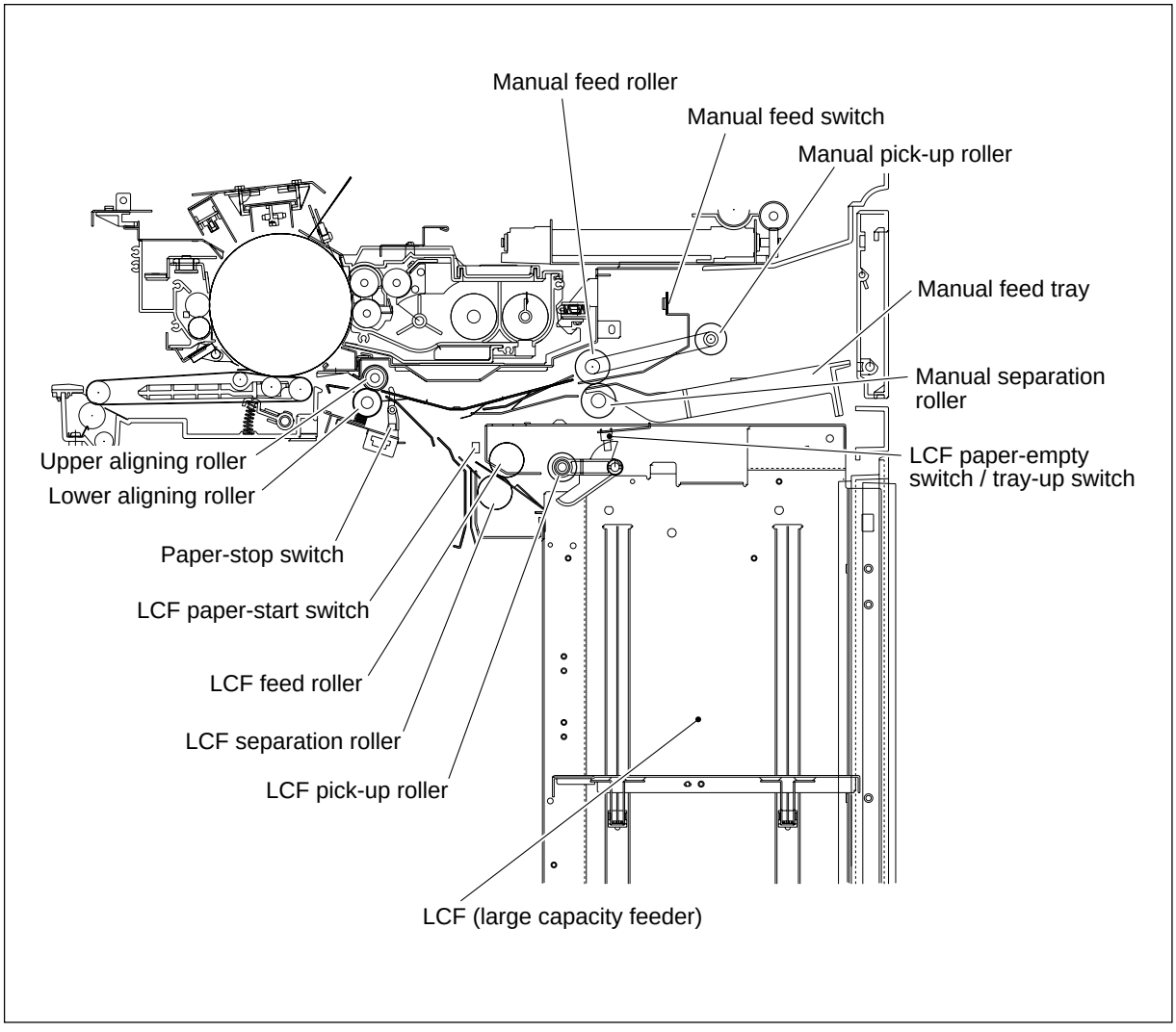
■ LCF pick-up roller

The LCF pickup roller remains lowered due to the force of gravity. The lower limit is fixed by the bracket.

The tray height for the LCF is controlled by the tray-up switch.



■ Paper feed operation (manual feed, LCF feed)



(1) Manual feed

- The manual feed switch detects the presence of paper in the manual feed tray.
- The manual pick-up solenoid is turned ON and the manual pick-up roller is lowered.
- The feed motor revolves in a backward* direction and the manual pick-up roller, manual feed roller, and manual separation roller rotate, and paper feeding is started.
- The manual pick-up solenoid is turned OFF, the manual pick-up roller rises, the paper presses the paper-stop switch and is aligned at the aligning rollers.
- The feed motor stops, the aligning motor turns, and the paper is transported to the transfer process.

(2) LCF feed

- When the LCF is installed, the LCF pick-up roller remains in the lowered position.
- The feed motor revolves in a forward* direction and the LCF pick-up roller, LCF feed roller, and LCF separation roller rotate, and paper feeding is started.
- The paper presses the paper-stop switch and is aligned at the aligning rollers.
- The feed motor stops, the aligning motor turns, and the paper is transported to the transfer process. In multicopying, the next sheet is fed to the paper-start switch by the feed motor and waits.

* Forward rotation: clockwise viewed from the rear.

** Backward rotation: counterclockwise viewed from the rear.

■ Paper separation function

Since the paper cassettes do not have separation claws, a pair of rollers (feed roller and separation roller) are used inside the machine, as shown in Fig. 9.3-1.

The separation roller is connected to its shaft through a spring joint torque limiter. The feed roller is rotated in the direction of the arrow (↺) at the same timing as the pick-up roller by the feed motor. The sepatation roller is driven in the direction of the arrow (↻) through the torque limiter. But when there is no paper or only one sheet between the rollers, the friction between the rollers or that between the sheet and the separation roller is large enough to force the separation roller in the direction of the arrow (↺), causing a slip in the torque limiter.

However, if multiple-sheet feeding occurs (Fig. 9.3-2), since the friction between the sheets is small, the lower sheet is forcibly separated from the upper sheet and is sent back in the direction of the arrow (⇨) by the separation roller. The Upper sheet is fed in the directino of the arrow (⇦) by the feed roller.

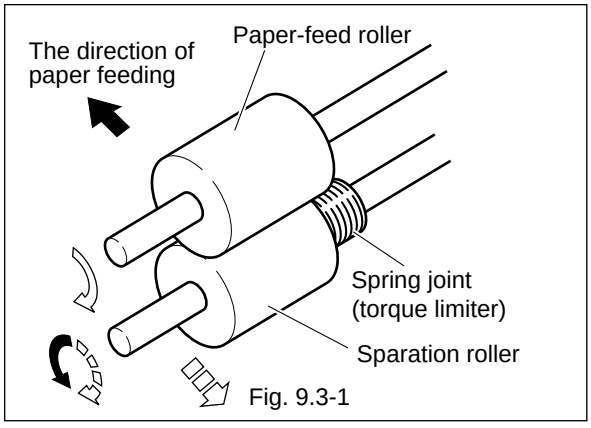


Fig. 9.3-1

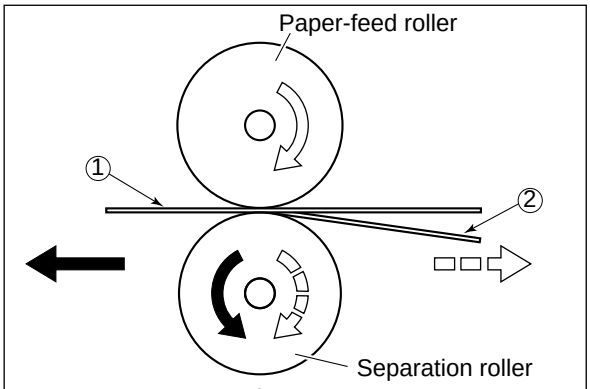


Fig. 9.3-2

Examples:

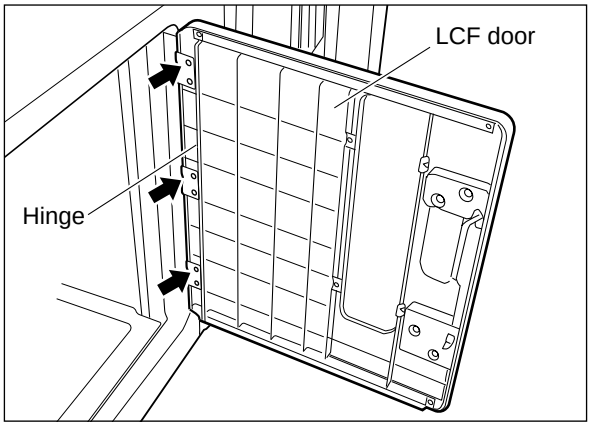
If only sheet of paper ① arrives at the separation roller, the force of the feed roller, which is greater than that of the separation roller, causes the separation roller to rotate in the (↺) direction, sending the paper on to the aligning rollers.

If two sheets of paper (① and ②) arrive at the separation roller, the force of the respective rollers is greater than the friction between the sheets of paper, and the top sheet ① is sent in the (⇦) direction by the feed roller while the bottom sheet ② is sent in the (⇨) direction by the separation roller.

9.3.4 Disassembly and replacement (LCF section)

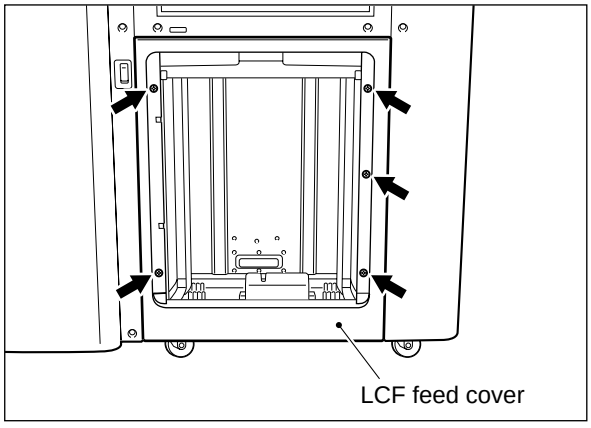
[A] LCF door

(1) Open the LCF door, take out the 3 screws holding the hinge, and remove the LCF door.



[B] LCF feed cover

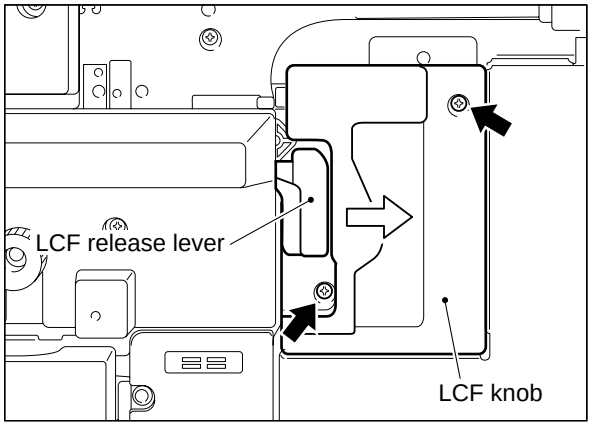
(1) Remove the LCF door.
(2) Remove the 5 screws.



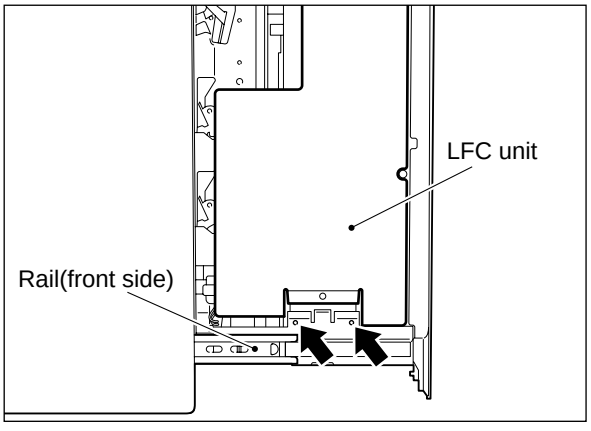
[C] LCF unit

(1) Open the right front cover and remove the LCF knob (2 screws).
(2) Pull the LCF release lever to move the LCF unit toward the arrow ⇨ in the figure.

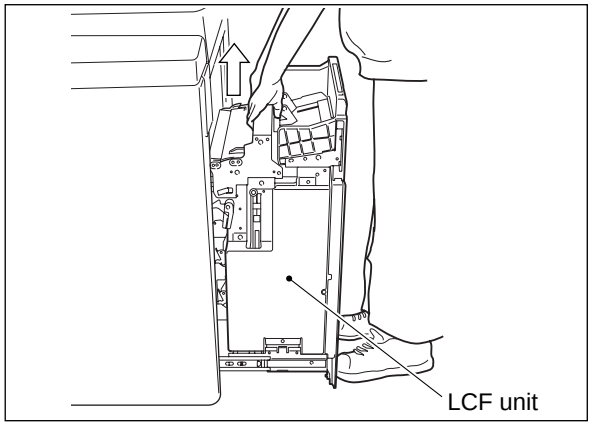
Note: Take care not to pinch your fingers.



(3) Remove the 2 screws each at the front and rear that fasten the LCF unit to the rails.

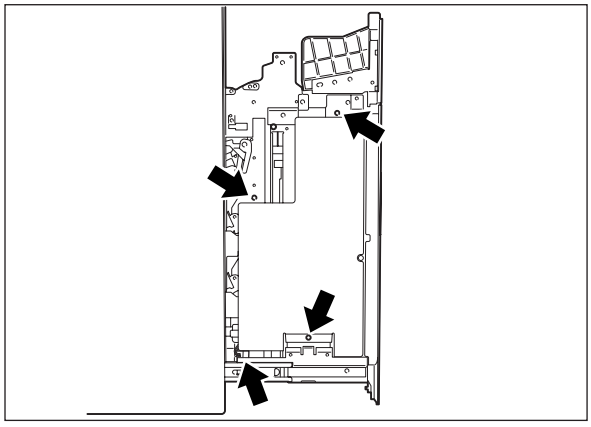


(4) Lift the LCF unit to remove it.



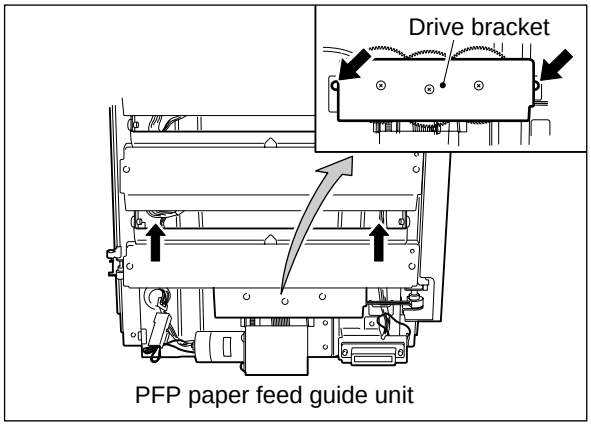
[D] LCF fornt cover

(1) Remove the 4 screws and then remove the LCF front cover.

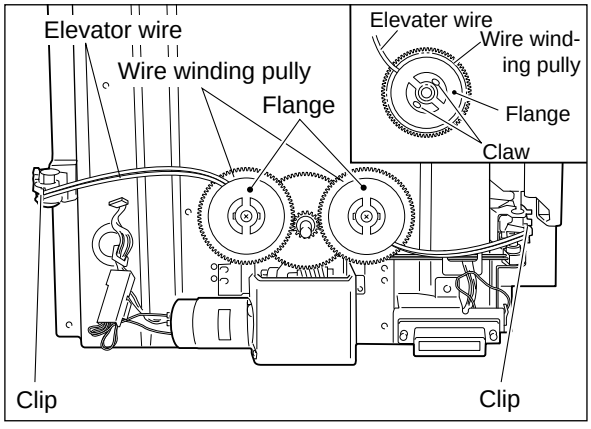


[E] Elevator wire

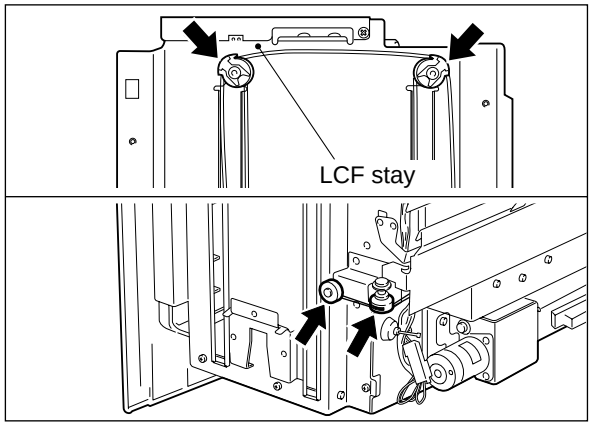
(1) Lower the elevator tray as for as possible, and turn the power switch OFF.
(2) Remove the LCF front cover.
(3) Remove the 2 screws and the lowest PFP paper feed guide.
(4) Remove the 2 screws and drive bracket.



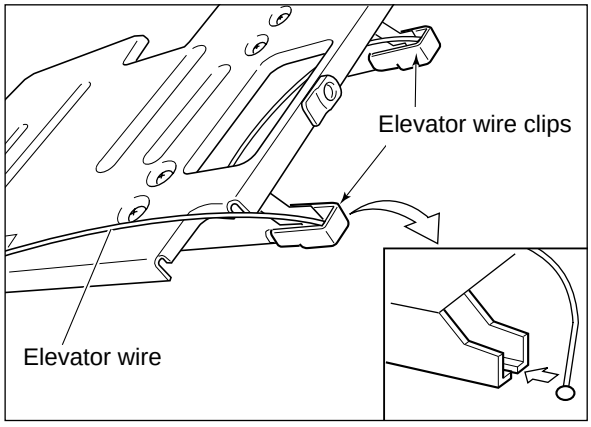
(5) Remove the wire winding pulleies (front and rear sides) from the LCF unit together with the flange.
(6) Remove the gear claw. You can now disassemble the gear and flange, and remove the elevator wire.



(7) Remove the 4 clips (front and rear) fastening the elevator wire.



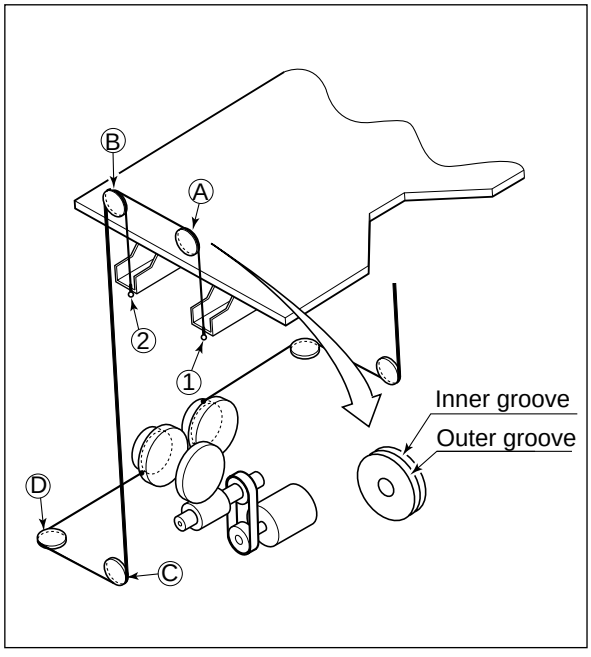
(8) Remove the 2 elevator wire clips each on the front and rear sides and the 4 elevator wires.



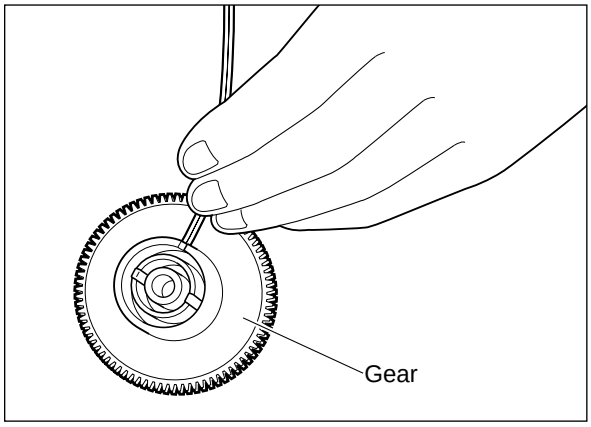
Notes: Precautions when installing the elevator wires

1. Judging the elevator wires
   The longer of the 2 elevator wires is ① (LCF door cover side), and the shorter is ② the (LCF paper feed side).
2. Taking up the elevator wires
   Take up the 2 elevator wires (①, ②) so that the following relationships are satisfied for each of the four pulleys (Ⓐ to Ⓓ):

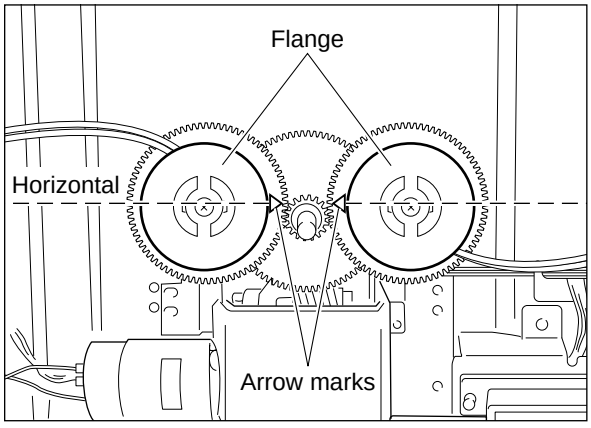
	Ⓐ	Ⓑ Ⓒ	Ⓓ
①	Inner side	Inner side	Lower side
②	—	Outer side	Upper side



3. Securing the elevator wire gears
   Insert elevator wire ① into the gear groove followed by elevator wire ②.



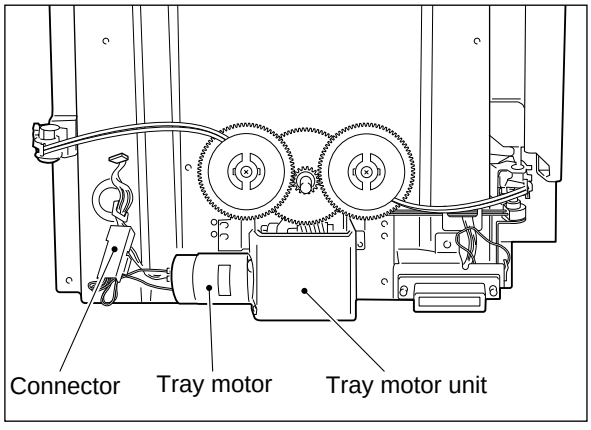
4. Installing the gears
   Install so that the line formed by joining the arrow marks is horizontal. If the arrow marks are out of alignment, this causes the elevator tray to be an angle.



[F] Tray motor

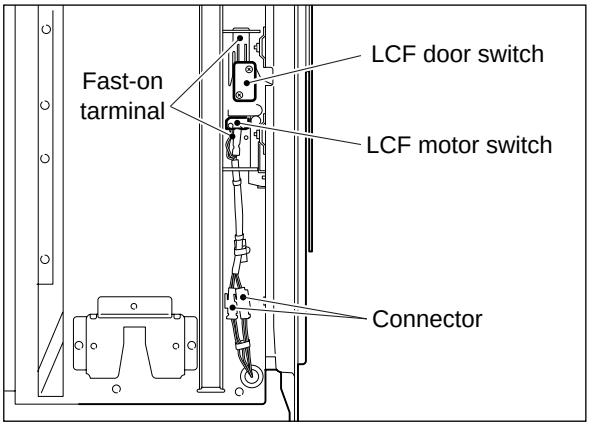
(1) Disconnect the connector, take out the 3 screws, and then remove the tray motor unit.
(2) Remove the 3 screws, and then take out tray motor.

Note: Always carry this out with the elevator tray lowered.
If the tray motor unit is removed while the tray is up, the tray is in danger of dropping.



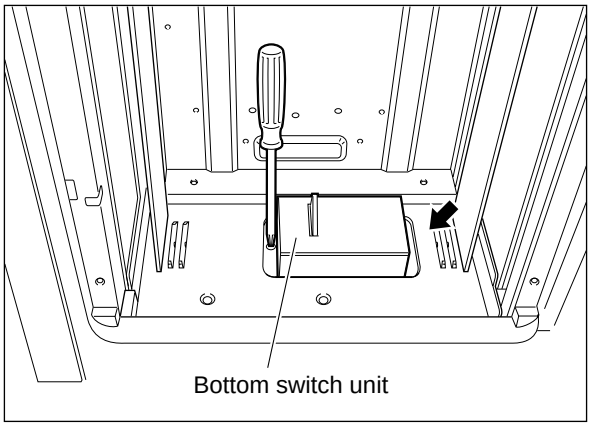
[G] LCF door switch/LCF motor switch

(1) Remove the LCF front cover.
(2) Remove the 2 connectors.
(3) Remove the 2 screws and the LCF door switch unit.
(4) Remove the screw, the cover bracket and the fast-on terminal.
(5) Remove the 2 screws and LCF door switch.
(6) Remove the 2 screws and LCF motor switch.

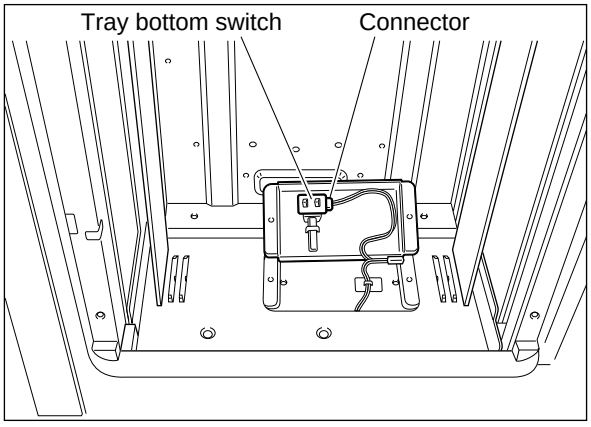


[H] Tray bottom switch

(1) Raise the elevator tray, and stop at the middle.
(2) Remove the 2 screws and the bottom switch unit.

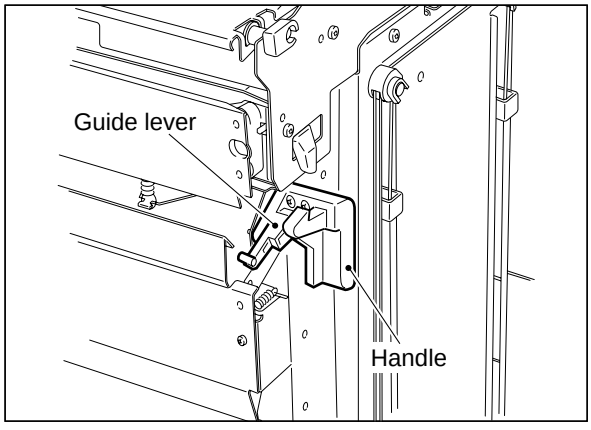


(3) Remove the and connector on the tray bottom switch from the tray bottom switch unit. You can now remove the switch.

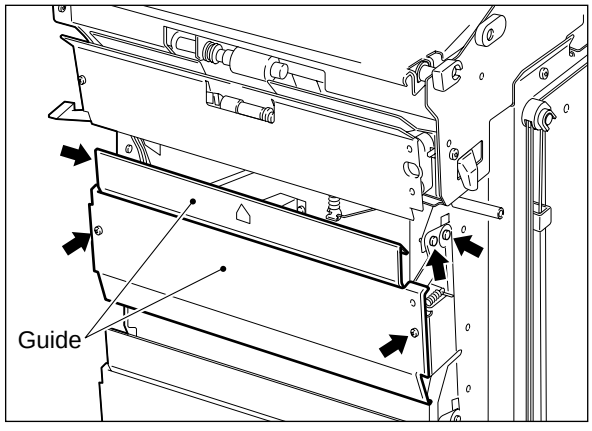


[I] LCF switch/PFP upper paper-stop switch

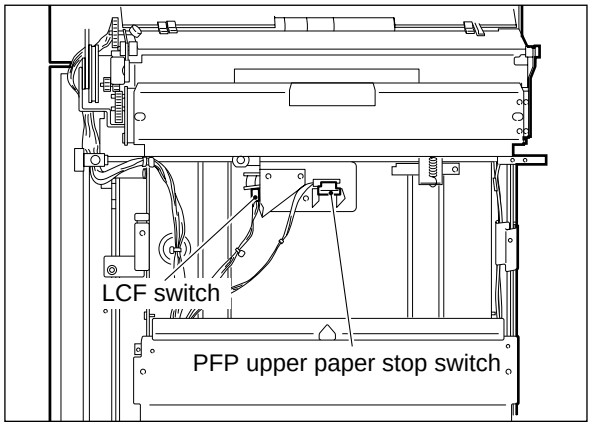
(1) Pull out the LCF unit.
(2) Remove the handle of front side and guide lever (1 screw for each).



(3) Take off the top screw of link, and then remove the 2 guides (2 screws for each).

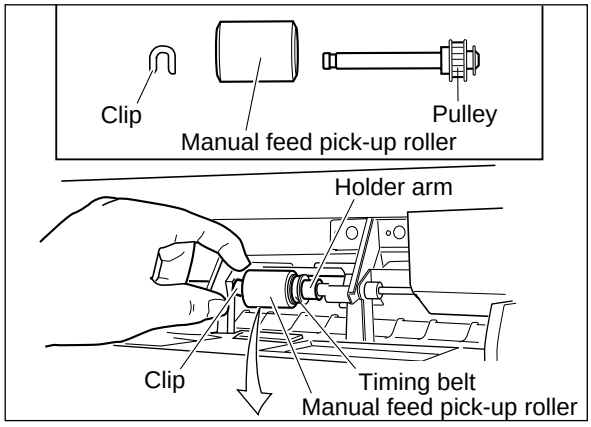


(4) Disconnect the connector, take out the 2 screws, and then remove the LCF switch bracket. Take out the 2 screws, and then remove LCF switch.
(5) Take out the 2 screws, and then remove the PFP upper paper-stop switch bracket. Disconnect the connector and take out the screw, and then remove PFP upper paper-stop switch.



[J] Manual pick-up roller

(1) Remove the clip and draw out the shaft from the holder arm by pressing down the manual pickup roller. Then remove the pickup roller.

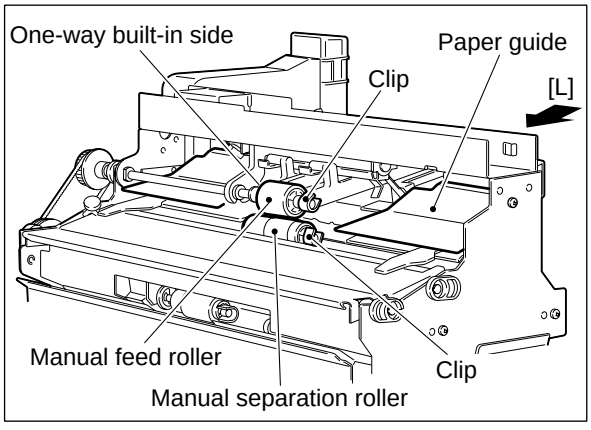


[K] Manual feed roller

(1) Draw out the LCF unit.
(2) Remove the clip of the manual pick-up roller.
(3) Take off the clip of the manual feed roller on the front, and then remove the manual feed roller from the holder arm with the shaft.

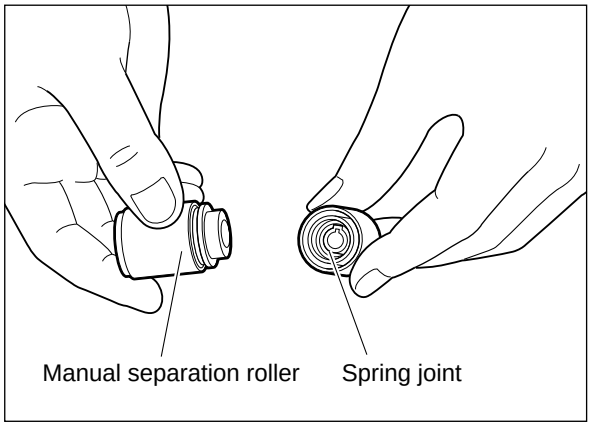
[L] Manal separatin roller

(1) Draw out the LCF unit.
(2) Remove the front paper guide (1 screw).
(3) Remove the clip and draw out the manual separation roller from the shaft.



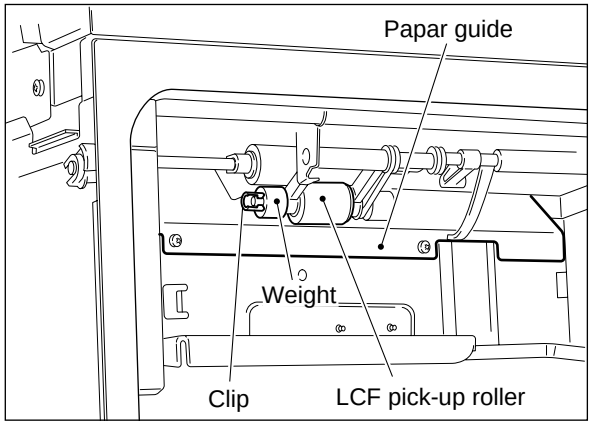
Notes: Observe the following when assembling the pick-up roller, feed roller, and separation roller:

1. Mount the timing belt securely on the pulleys.
2. Mount the timing belt in the correct position.
3. Clips are to engage securely into the grooves in the shafts.
4. Check that there is no oil, on the timing belt, pulley, or roller surfaces.



[M] LCF pick-up roller

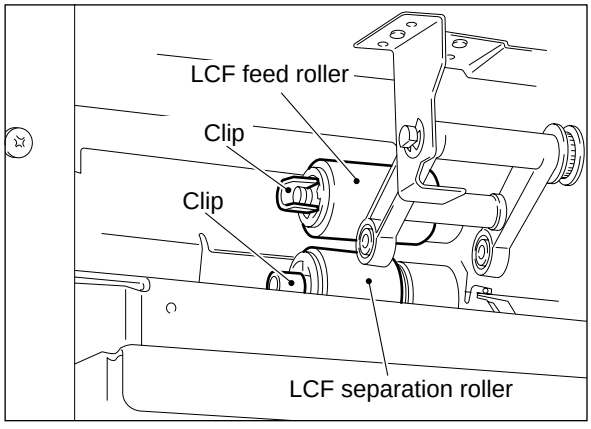
(1) Open the LCF door.
(2) Remove the clip and remove the weight from the front side.
(3) Slide the shaft and remove the pick-up roller.



[N] LCF feed roller

(1) Open the LCF door and remove the paper guide (2 screws).
(2) Remove the clip and draw out the LCF feed roller from the shaft.

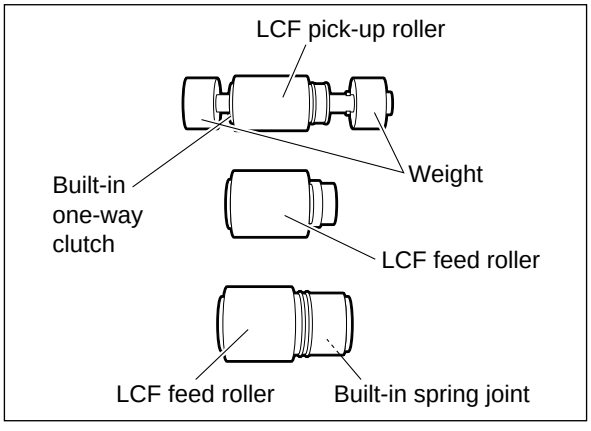
Note: The roller can be drawn out more easily from the shaft by pressing the separation roller shaft down.



[O] LCF separation roller

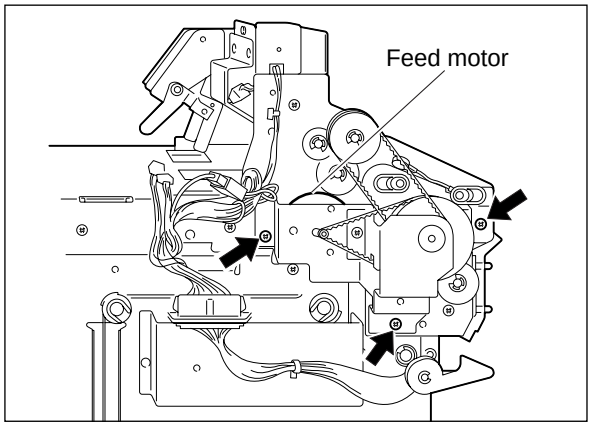
(1) Open the LCF door and remove the paper guide (2 screws).
(2) Remove the clip and take the LCF separation roller off the shaft.

Note: The roller can be drawn out more easily from the shaft by pressing the pick-up roller up, and pressing the separation roller shaft down.



[P] Feed motor

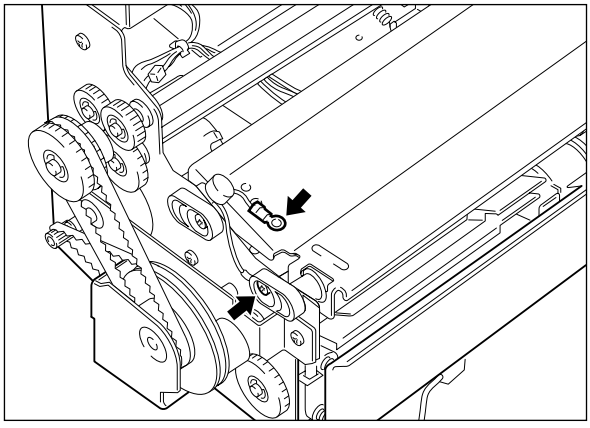
(1) Remove the LCF unit out and remove the manual feed tray.
(2) Disconnect the connector, remove the 3 screws and the timing belt from the pulley to remove the motor bracket.
(3) Remove the feed motor (3 screws).



[Q] Varistor

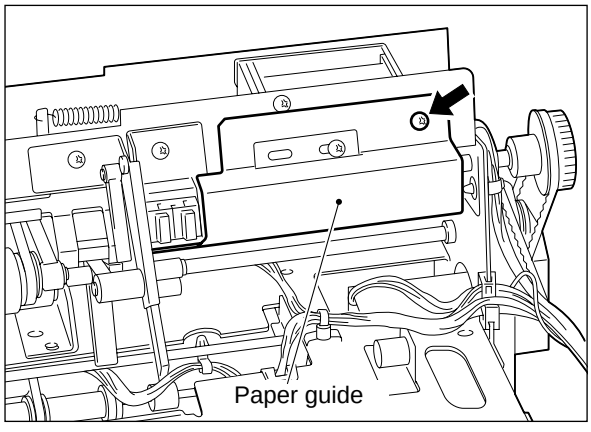
(1) Draw out the LCF unit and remove the varistor (2 screws).

Notes: 1. When assembling, attach the short lead directly to the paper guide.
2. Tighten the screws securely.



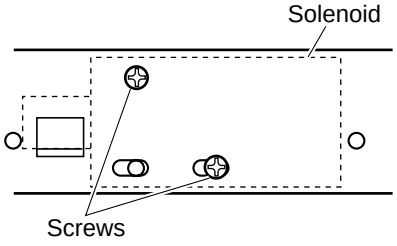
[R] Manual pick-up solenoid

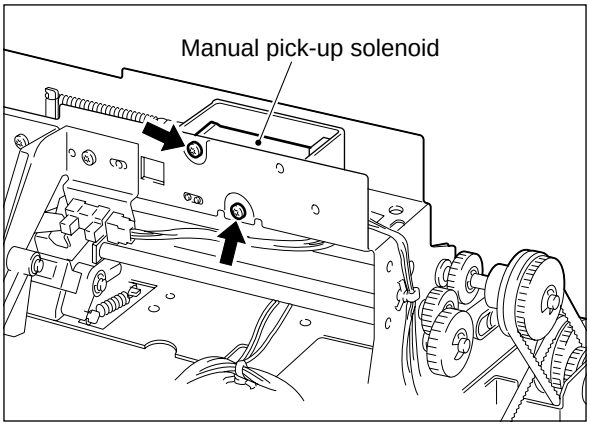
(1) Draw out the LCF unit.
(2) Remove the rear paper guide (1 screw).



(3) Disconnect the connector, take out the 2 screws, and then remove the manual pick-up solenoid.

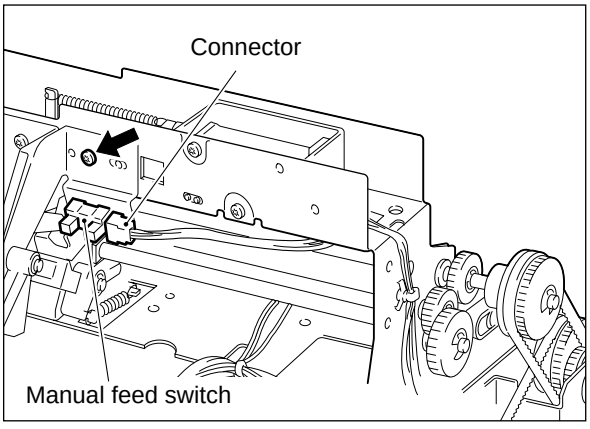
Note: When assembling, fasten the screws diagonally as shown below.





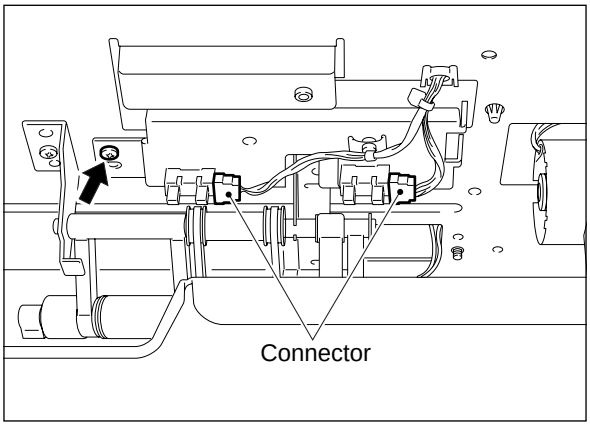
[S] Manual-feed switch

(1) Remove the paper guide.
(2) Disconnect the connector, take out the screw, and then remove the switch bracket.
(3) Release the 4 hooks from the switch bracket, and then remove the manual-feed switch.



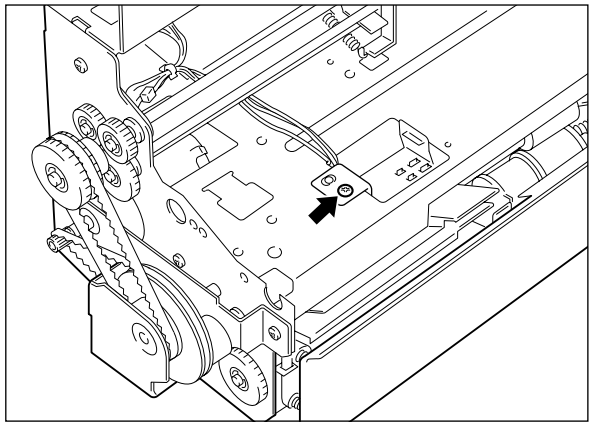
[T] LCF paper-empty switch/tray-up switch

(1) Open the LCF cover.
(2) Disconnect the 2 connectors, and remove the screw to remove the switch bracket.
(3) Unhook the 4 claws to remove the switches.



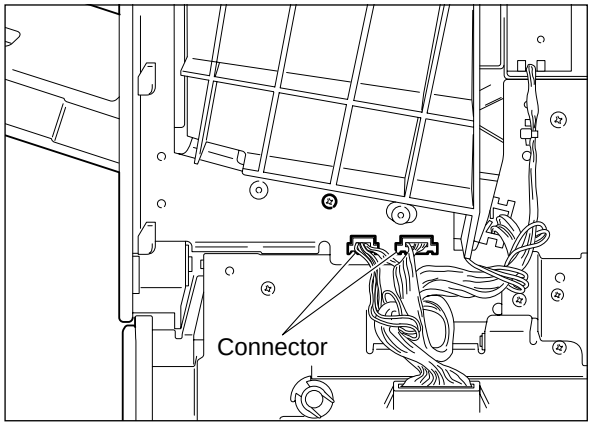
[U] LCF paper-start switch

(1) Draw out the LCF unit and remove the manual feed tray unit.
(2) Remove the paper guide (2 screws on the rear side).
(3) Remove the screw, disconnect the connector and remove the switch bracket.
(4) Unhook the 4 claws to remove the switches.

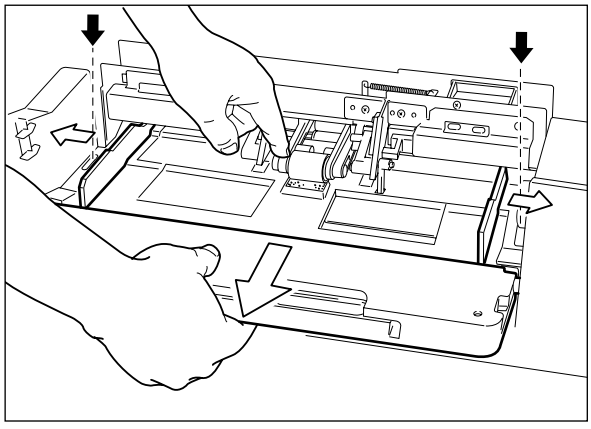


[V] Manual feed tray unit

(1) Draw out the LCF unit and disconnect the 2 connectors on the rear side.



(2) Remove the 2 screws fixing the manual feed tray unit.
(3) Bring the width guide towards the outside, and draw out the manual feed tray unit while pressing the manual pick-up roller down.



9.4 Paper Feed Pedestal (PFP)

9.4.1 Introduction

The paper feed pedestal (PFP) consists of three front-loading cassettes, which can feed paper independently.

The PFP consists of the following components.

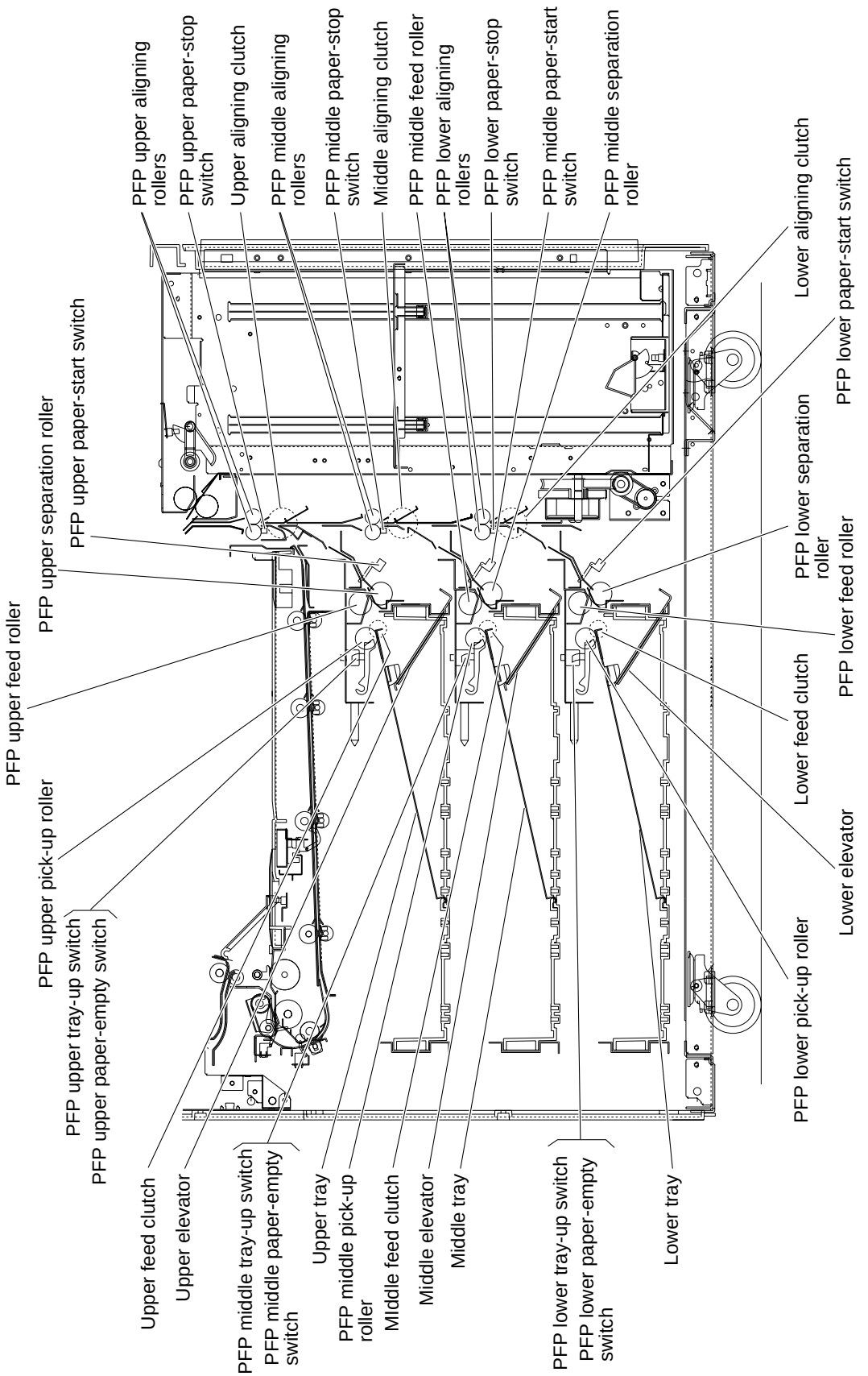
① Font-loading cassette ..... A cassette which allows paper to be loaded from the front.

② Elevator mechanism ..... The paper in the cassette is loaded on top of the tray. The tray motor can raise tray so that the top sheet of paper in the tray is in the pick-up position.

③ Paper feed mechanism ..... The paper feed mechanism consists of the pick-up roller, feed roller, separation roller and aligning roller which transport the paper from the cassette to the aligning roller in the copier.

④ Switch ..... Switches (sensors) detect whether the cassette is inserted, whether there is any paper, the tray height and the movement of paper on the paper feed path.

9.4.2 Component names



9.4.3 General operation

■ **Explanation of operation**

[A] From power-on to the ready state

(1) When the copier power is switched ON, power is also supplied to the PFP. At this time, the PFP tray motors (M27), (M28) and (M29) are turned ON in the CCW direction causing each tray to start to rise. When the rising trays switch on the PFP tray-up switches (S30), (S34) and (S38) (L→H), the PFP tray motors (M27), (M28) and (M29) stop and the trays no longer move. At this time, if the PFP paper-empty switches (S29), (S33) and (S37) are OFF (L), there is assumed to be no paper and the PFP tray motors (M27), (M28) and (M29) are switched ON in the CW direction, lowering the trays.
When the PFP paper-empty switches (S29), (S33) and (S37) aer ON (H), it is assumed that there is paper in the tray and the tray stays in the raised position for two seconds. If there is no copy request during this time, the tray is lowered.

(2) If the cassette is not inserted when the power is switched ON, the PFP tray motor for that level cannot be switched ON. When the cassette is inserted, the tray will rise and check for paper.

(3) If any of the PFP paper-stop switches (S27), (S31) or (S35) are ON when the power is switched ON (meaning that there is paper in the transprot mechanism), the copier goes into a jam state and does not operate until the paper removed.

[B] Ready state

(1) After the trays are checked for paper by the above tray movements, the copier goes into the ready state. In the ready state, the trays are left in the lowered position.

(2) If the cassette is removed and inserted while in the ready state, the tray movements are performed to check for paper.

[C] From copy start to copy completion

(1) When the PRINT key is pressed, the copier sets the CRUN (copier running) signal “H” and turns ON the developer motor (M16), drum motor (M12), heat roller motor (M18), etc. When the CRUN signal goes to “H”, the PFP turns ON the selected PFP tray motor (M27), (M28) or (M29) in the CCW direction and starts to raise the tray. 0.3 seconds after the CRUN signal goes to “H”, the pedestal motor (M31) is turned ON.

(2) When the rising tray turns ON the PFP tray-up switch (S30), (S34) or (S38), the tray stops. At this point the paper-ready signal PRDY is returned to the copier (L→H).

(3) The copier outputs the RQF (paper feed request) signal (L→H).

(4) When the PFP receives the RQF signal, it sets the PRDY signal to “L” (BUSY) and starts to feed paper.

(5) When the copier detects the PRDY signal state changing to Low, it assumes that the RQF signal was received, and resets RQF to Low.

(6) The paper is aligned initially by the PFP aligning roller and then is aligned again by the copier’s aligning roller.

(7) When the trailing edge of the paper passes the PFP paper-start switch (S28), (S32) or (S36), the next sheet of paper is ready to be fed so the PRDY signal is set to “H”.
If subsequent paper feeding is required, the copier sets the RQF signal to High. This is repeated for the required number of copies.

(8) For multiple copying, paper is fed so as to keep the distance between the sheets of paper constant. Consequently when the previous sheet of paper is being aligned by the copier's aligning roller, the next sheet is being fed into the transport mechanism by the PFP. When the preceding sheet is stopped, the next one is also stopped. When the preceding sheet restarts, the next one also restarts. This maintains a constant spacing between the sheets of paper.

(9) When copying is complete, the copier sets the CRUN signal to "L". When the CRUN signal goes to "L", the PFP turns OFF the pedestal motor (M31) and starts the PFP tray motor (M27), (M28) or (M29) in the CW direction to lower the tray.

Timing chart for feeding two A4 sheets of paper from the middle cassette

Timing chart for feeding two LT sheets of paper from the middle cassette

■ Abnormality detection

[A] Jam detection

(1) A paper misfeed in PFP is detected under the following conditions:
   ① When the PFP paper-start switch (S28), (S32) or (S36) does not come ON within 1.6 seconds of the shart of paper feeding.
   ② When the leading edge of the paper does not pass the PFP paper-stop switch within a constant time.

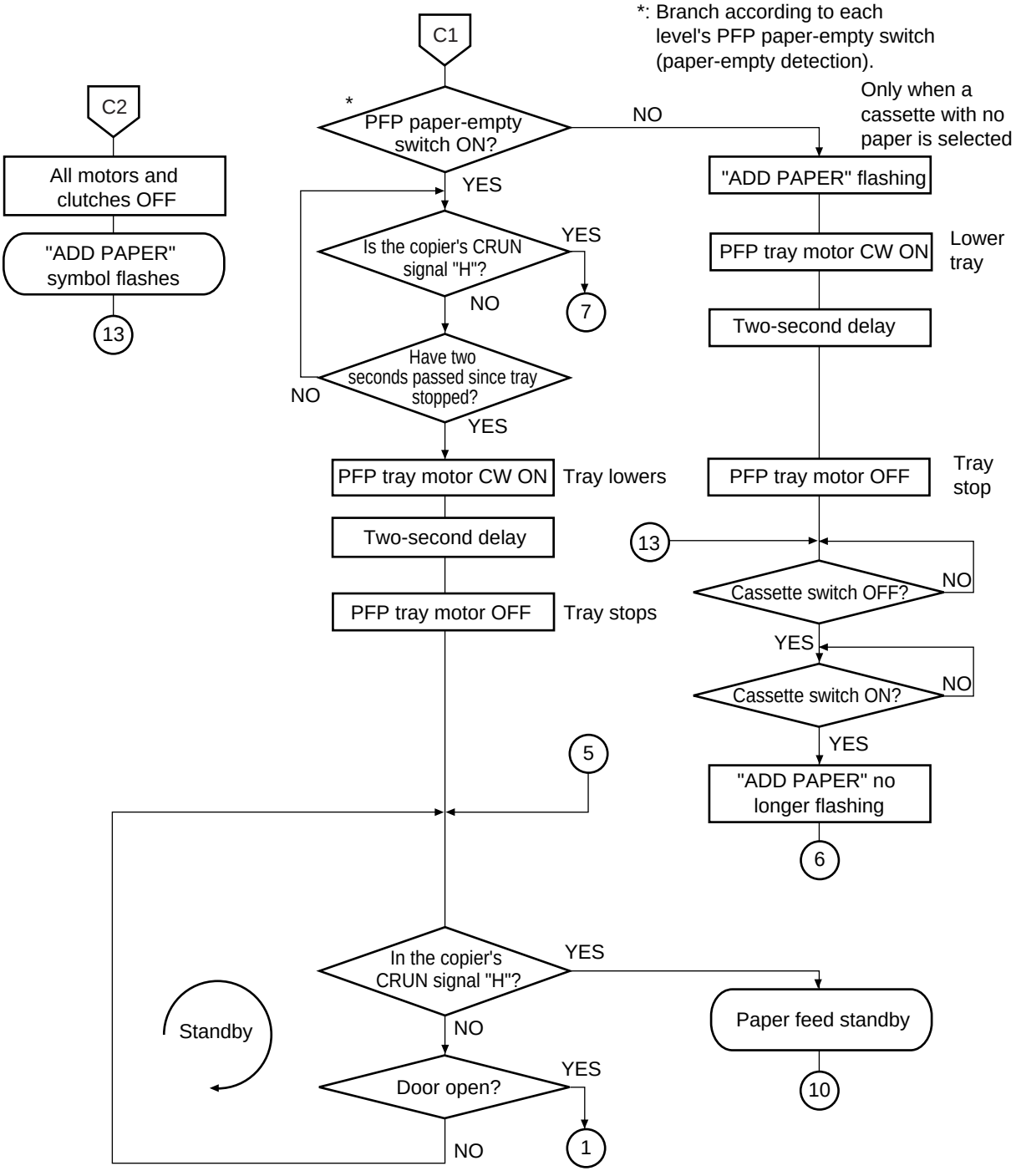
(2) To clear a jam, slide the LCF unit, remove all paper from the transport mechanism and then close the front cover. If any of the PFP paper-stop switches (S27), (S31) or (S35) are ON when the door is closed, it is assumed that there is still paper in the transport mechanism and the jam is not cleared.

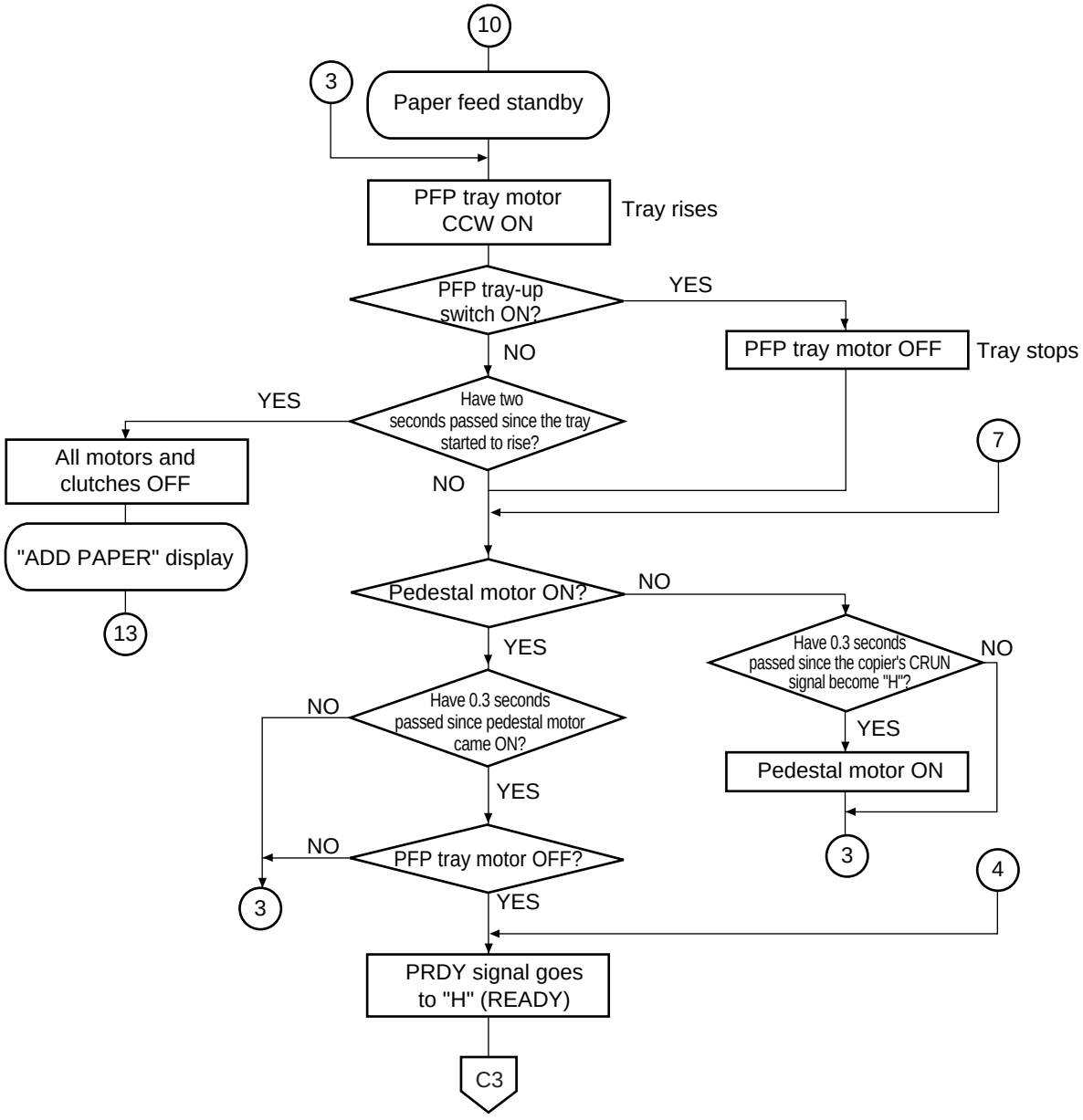
(3) When a jam occurs in the PFP during multiple copying, paper fed prior to the jammed paper will be copied normally.

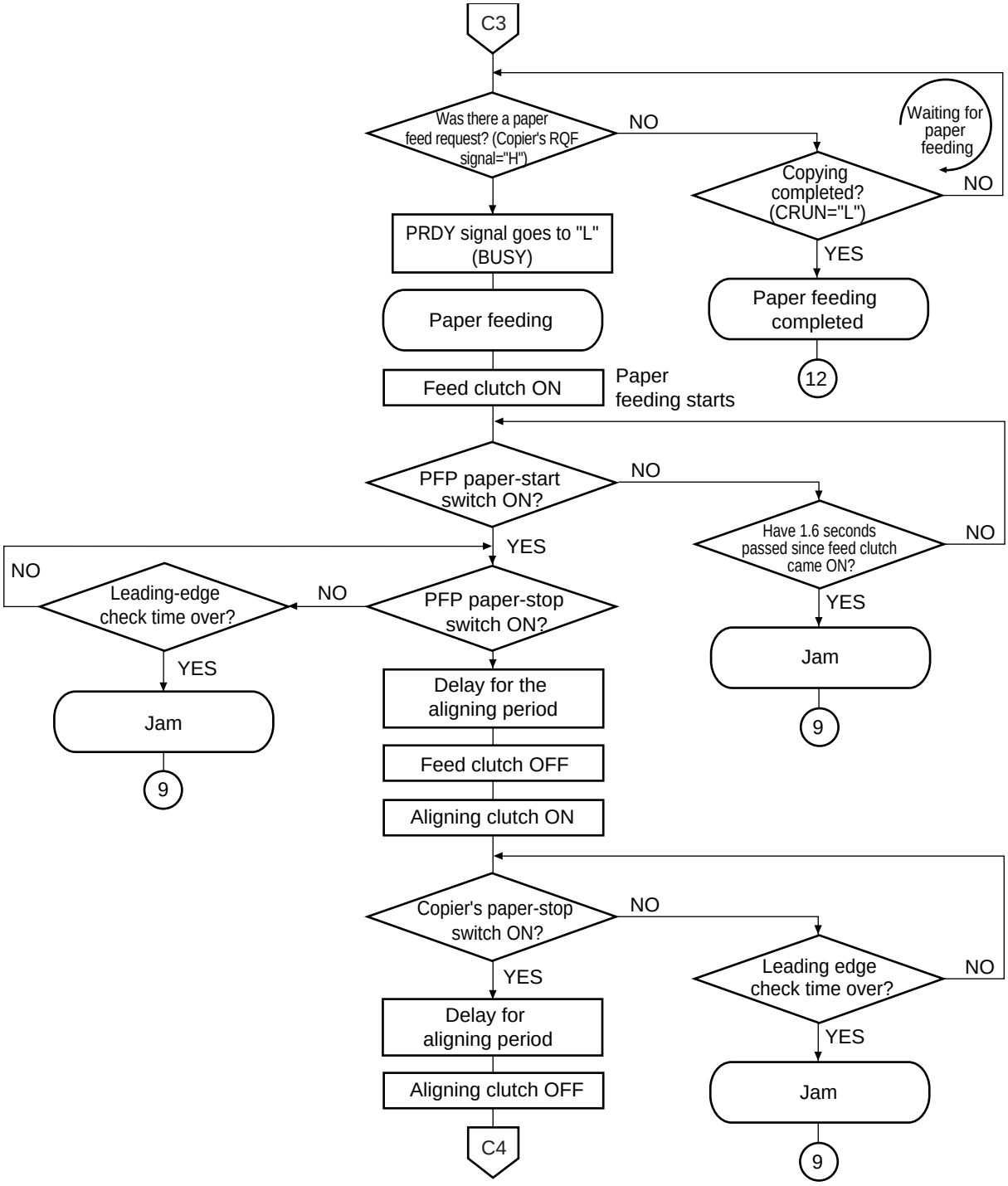
[B] Service call

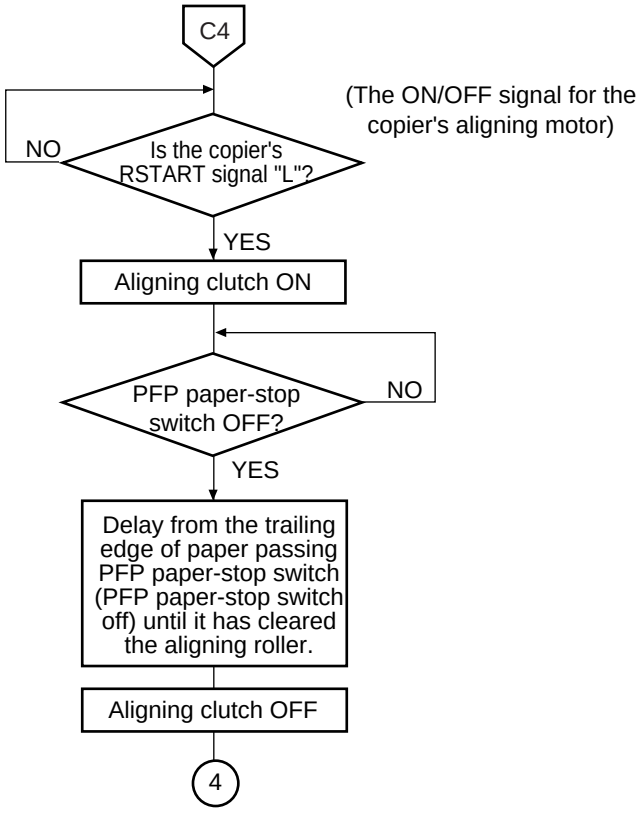
(1) If the PFP tray-up switch (S30), (S34) or (S38) does not come ON within two seconds of the tray's starting to rise at the following times: when the power is turned on, removing and inserting the cassette or starting to copy; then that cassette can no longer be used and "Add paper" will appear on the message display.

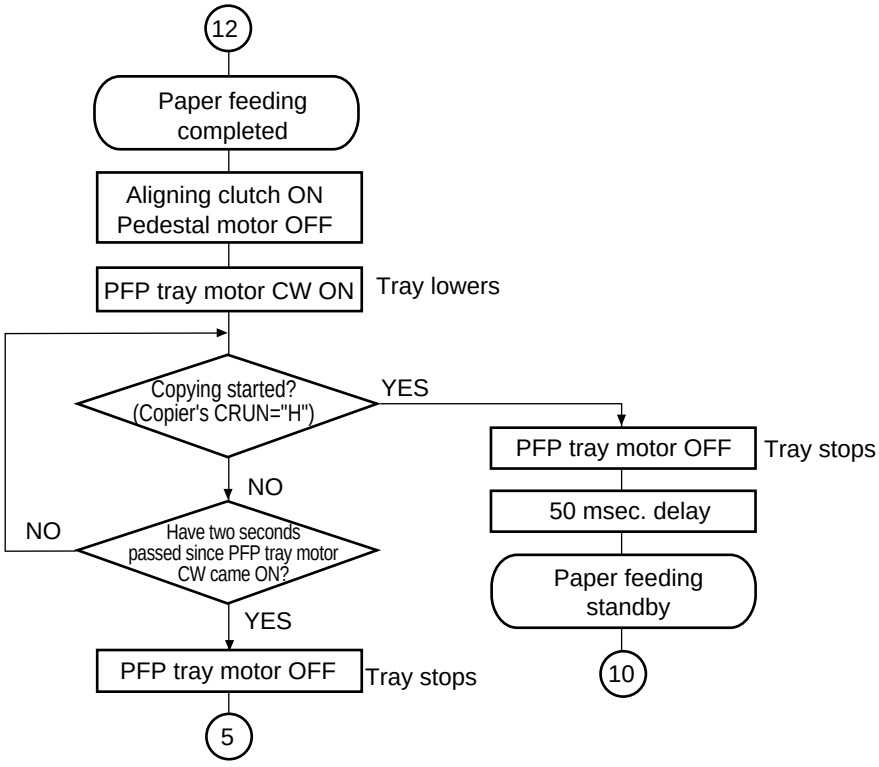
(2) In order to clear the above condition, the cassette must be removed and installed or the power must be switched OFF and ON (It will not be cleared by opening closing the door.).

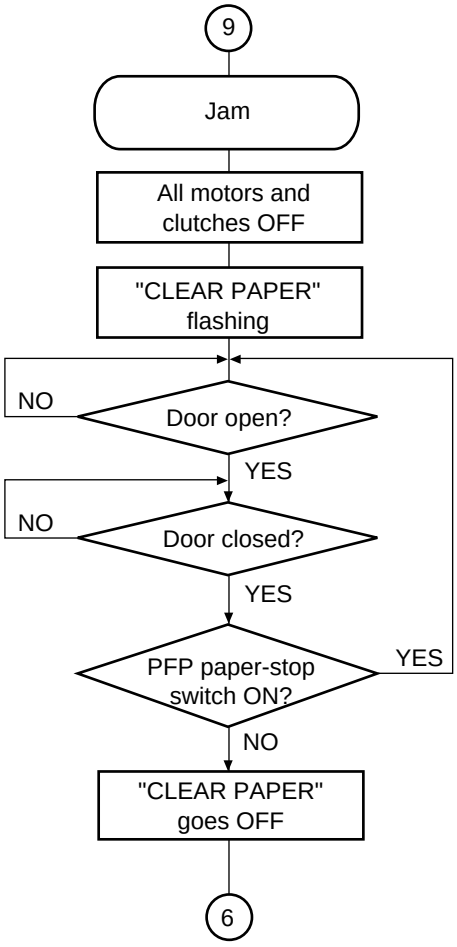

*: Branch according to each level's PFP paper-empty switch (paper-empty detection).
C1
C2
All motors and clutches OFF
"ADD PAPER" symbol flashes
13
*
PFP paper-empty switch ON?
NO
YES
Only when a cassette with no paper is selected
"ADD PAPER" flashing
Is the copier's CRUN signal "H"?
YES
NO
7
PFP tray motor CW ON
Lower tray
Two-second delay
Have two seconds passed since tray stopped?
NO
YES
PFP tray motor CW ON
Tray lowers
PFP tray motor OFF
Tray stop
Two-second delay
13
Cassette switch OFF?
NO
PFP tray motor OFF
Tray stops
YES
Cassette switch ON?
NO
YES
5
"ADD PAPER" no longer flashing
6
In the copier's CRUN signal "H"?
YES
Standby
NO
Paper feed standby
Door open?
YES
10
NO
1


10
3
Paper feed standby
PFP tray motor CCW ON
Tray rises
PFP tray-up switch ON?
YES
PFP tray motor OFF
Tray stops
NO
Have two seconds passed since the tray started to rise?
YES
All motors and clutches OFF
"ADD PAPER" display
13
NO
7
Pedestal motor ON?
NO
YES
Have 0.3 seconds passed since pedestal motor came ON?
NO
YES
PFP tray motor OFF?
NO
YES
3
Have 0.3 seconds passed since the copier's CRUN signal become "H"?
NO
YES
Pedestal motor ON
3
4
PRDY signal goes to "H" (READY)
C3


C3
Was there a paper feed request? (Copier's RQF signal="H")
NO
Waiting for paper feeding
Copying completed? (CRUN="L")
NO
YES
PRDY signal goes to "L" (BUSY)
Paper feeding
Paper feeding completed
12
Feed clutch ON
Paper feeding starts
PFP paper-start switch ON?
NO
Have 1.6 seconds passed since feed clutch came ON?
NO
YES
Jam
9
YES
NO
Leading-edge check time over?
NO
PFP paper-stop switch ON?
YES
Jam
9
Delay for the aligning period
Feed clutch OFF
Aligning clutch ON
Copier's paper-stop switch ON?
NO
Leading edge check time over?
NO
YES
Jam
9
YES
Delay for aligning period
Aligning clutch OFF
C4


C4
(The ON/OFF signal for the copier's aligning motor)
NO
Is the copier's RSTART signal "L"?
YES
Aligning clutch ON
PFP paper-stop switch OFF?
NO
YES
Delay from the trailing edge of paper passing PFP paper-stop switch (PFP paper-stop switch off) until it has cleared the aligning roller.
Aligning clutch OFF
4


12
Paper feeding completed
Aligning clutch ON
Pedestal motor OFF
PFP tray motor CW ON
Tray lowers
Copying started? (Copier's CRUN="H")
YES
NO
NO
Have two seconds passed since PFP tray motor CW came ON?
YES
PFP tray motor OFF
Tray stops
5
PFP tray motor OFF
Tray stops
50 msec. delay
Paper feeding standby
10


9
Jam
All motors and clutches OFF
"CLEAR PAPER" flashing
NO
Door open?
YES
NO
Door closed?
YES
PFP paper-stop switch ON?
YES
NO
"CLEAR PAPER" goes OFF
6

9.4.4 Configuration and drive system

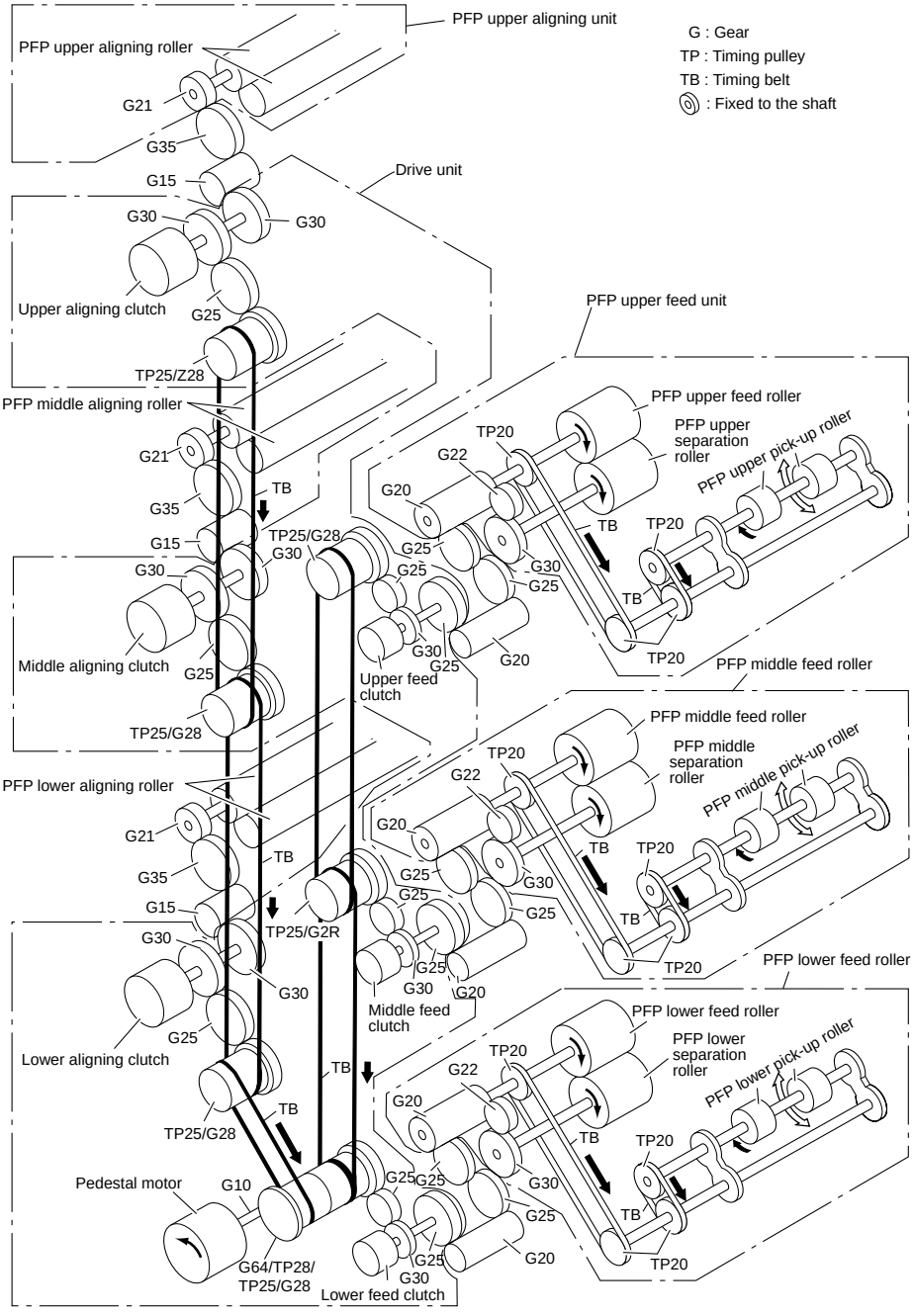
The paper feed pedestal (PFP) consists of the cassettes, pick-up rollers, feed rollers separation rollers, aligning rollers and their associated drive mechanisms.

- Feed motor system

  The PFP pick-up, PFP feed, PFP separation rollers in the cassettes and PFP aligning rollers are driven by the pedestal motor.

- Tray-up motor system

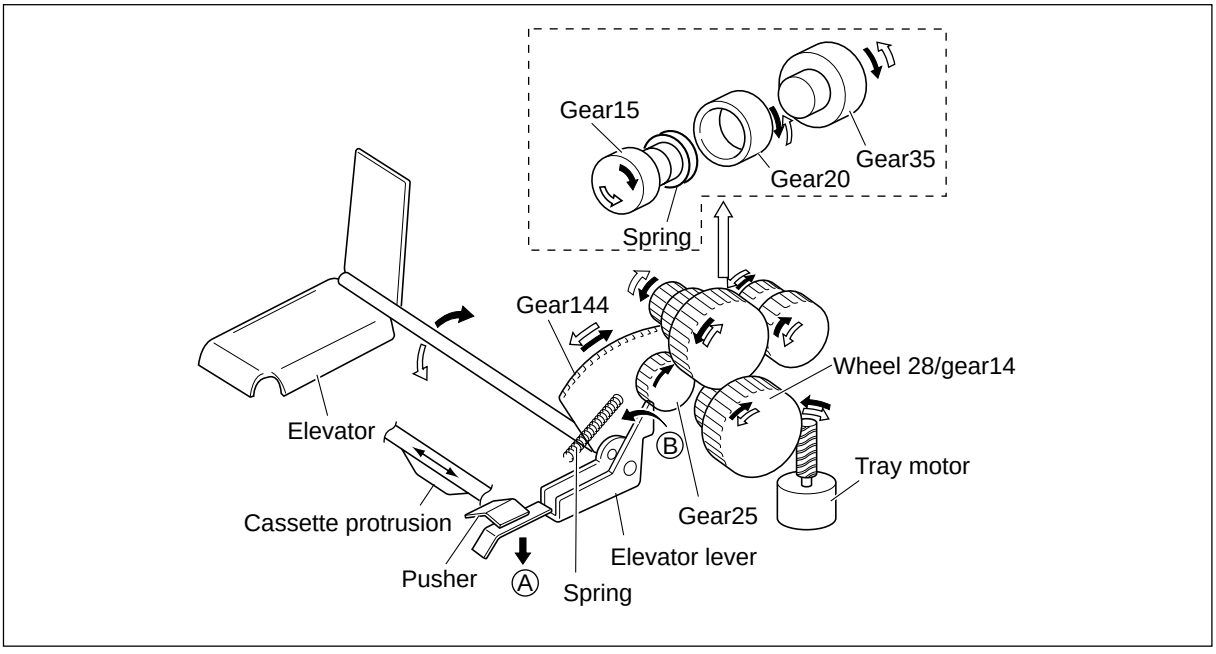
  Raises and lowers the trays.



9.4.5 Explanation of operation

■ Cassette tray up-and down operation

The previous paper feeding method was for the pick-up roller to lower itself on to the paper and feed at forward. With the paper feed pedestal, the paper-feed elevator mechanism raises the tray at the base of the cassette to the pick-up roller's paper feed position to feed paper.



Raising the tray

- The tray motor rotates in the direction of the arrow ( ).
- Worm wheel 28 rotates in the direction of the arrow ( ). Gear 14 is connected so it also rotates in the same direction.
- When gear 35 rotates in the direction of the arrow ( ) the spring tightens and gear 15 and 20 rotate in the same direction.
- Gear 144 rotates in the direction of the arrow ( ) raising the elevator via the shaft and pushing up the cassette tray.

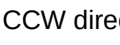
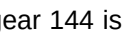
Lowering the tray

- The tray motor rotates in the direction of the arrow ( ).
- Worm wheel 28 and gear 14 rotate in the direction of the arrow ( ).
- Gears 35, 15 and 20 rotate in the direction of the arrow ( ).
- Gear 144 rotates in the direction of the arrow ( ), lowering the elevator via the shaft and lowering the cassette tray.

Lowering the tray when the cassette is removed

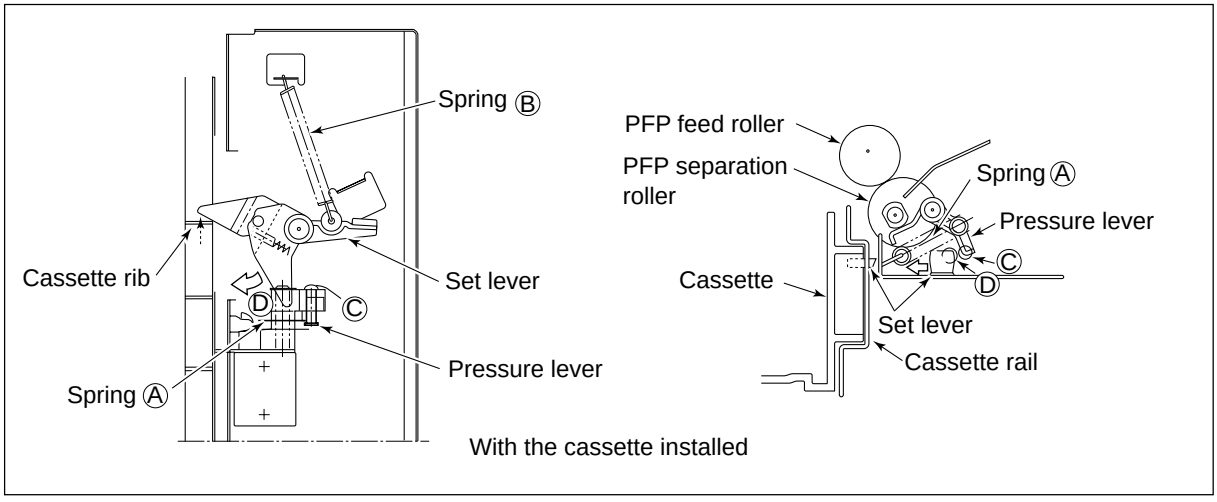
The tray is lowered as follows when the cassette is removed with the tray in the raised position:

- The protrusion on the front side of the cassette lowers the elevator lever pusher as the cassette is removed (arrow A).
- The gear at the tip of the elevator lever moves in a CCW direction (arrow B), engaging gear 25 which rotates in a CW direction.

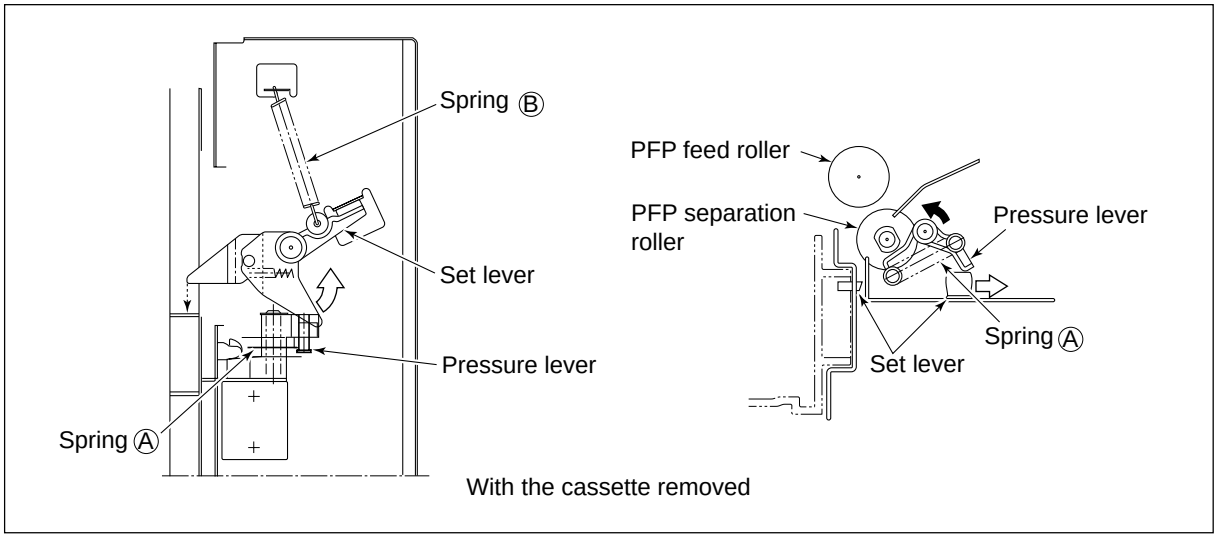
- When gear 20 rotates in a CCW direction (), the spring loosens and gear 15 becomes free.
- As gear 15 becomes free, gear 144 is pulled in a CCW direction () by its spring, lowering the elevator.

■ PFP feed roller and PFP separation roller release operation

The PFP feed roller and PFP separation roller have a releasing mechanism to enable jams to be cleared if a paper misfeed occurs with the leading edge of the paper not clear of the PFP feed roller. This releasing mechanism prevents the paper from ripping inside the copier which would otherwise happen if the cassette was removed to clear a jam with the paper held between the PFP feed roller and PFP separation roller.



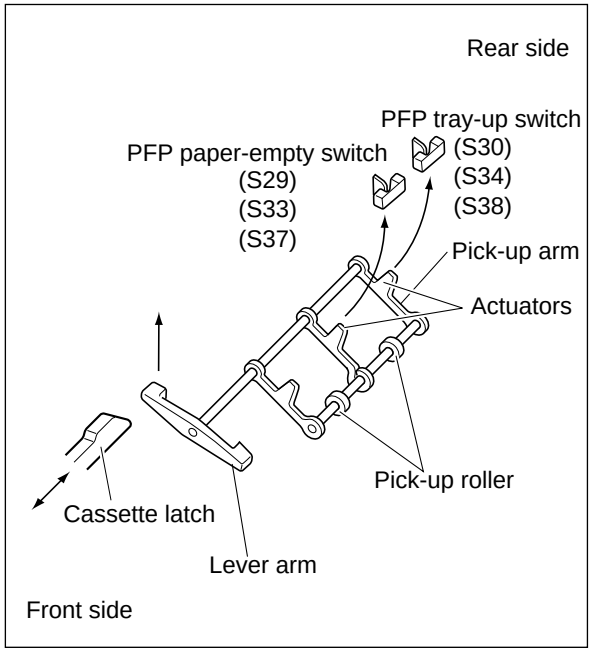
When the cassette is inserted, the PFP separation roller is pushed up against the PFP feed roller by the pressure lever connected to spring Ⓐ. At this time, the set lever is pushed by the cassette rib, and rotates in the ⇦ direction and is not in contact with the pressure lever.



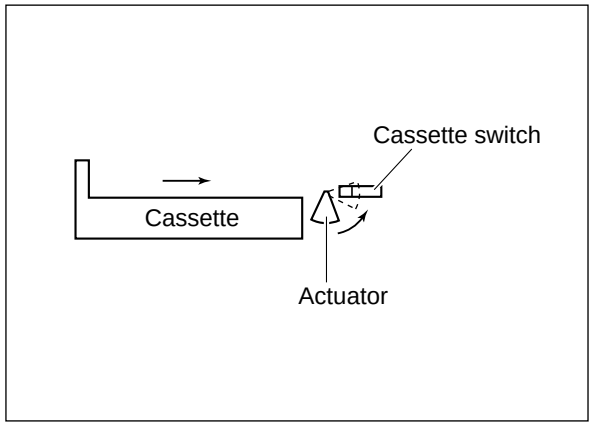
When the cassette is removed, the set lever is rotated in the ( ) direction by spring Ⓑ. Position Ⓓ of the set lever pushes up at position Ⓒ of the pressure lever, causing it to rotate in a CCW direction ( ), separating the PFP separation roller from the PFP feed roller.

■ **Cassette insertion operation**

When the cassette is inserted into the paper feed pedestal, the cassette latch pushes up the lever arm, lowering the PFP pick-up roller.
(The roller does not lower itself onto the paper in the cassette.)



The cassette switches on the rear side detect whether a cassette is inserted or not.



The PFP tray motor (M27), (M28) or (M29) turns ON and raises the cassette tray when the cassette switch detects that a cassette is installed. The paper on the tray contacts with the PFP pick-up roller, which pushes up the roller. When the pick-up arm is detected by the tray-up switch (S30), (S34) or (S38), the tray motor turns OFF and the tray stops. This position becomes the paper-feed position.
If there is paper on the tray, the actuator at the center of the PFP pick-up roller is also detected by the PFP paper-empty switch (S29), (S33) or (S37). If there is no paper on the tray, then the actuator enters the hole in the tray (only at the position of the actuator) and does not reach the PFP paper-empty switch detection position, indicating that there is no paper.

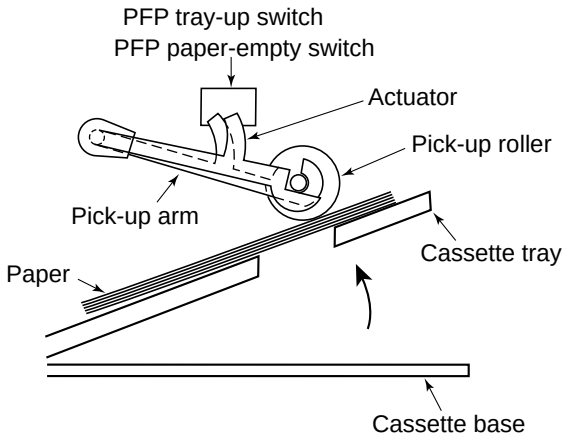


Fig 9.4-1 In the case where there is paper (the actuator is detected)

If no copy is started, the tray is lowered two seconds after the tray reaches the paper feed position.

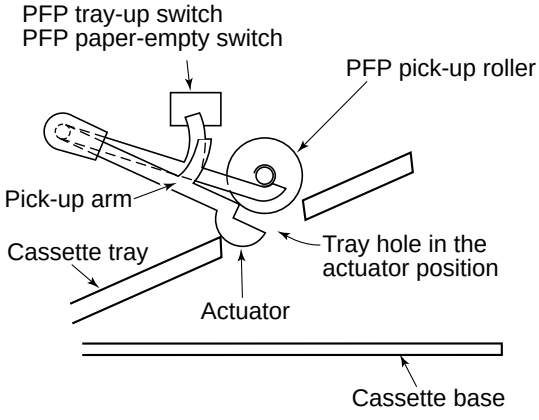


Fig 9.4-2 In the case where there isn't paper (the acutuator isn't detected)

■ Paper feed operation

When the PRINT key is pressed on the control panel:

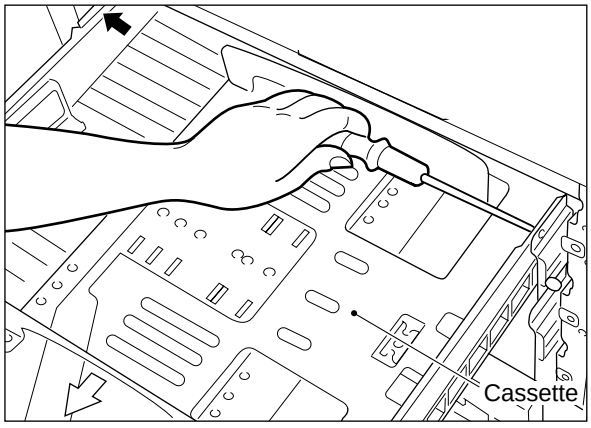
- The PFP tray motor (M27), (M28) or (M29) corresponding to the selected cassette rotates to CCW direction raising the cassette tray until the paper on the tray contacts the PFP pick-up roller. At this point the tray stops.
- The pedestal motor (M31) rotates, the feed clutch corresponding to the selected cassette comes ON and the pedestal motor (M31) drives the PFP pick-up, PFP feed and PFP separation rollers which start to feed paper from the cassette.
- The leading edge of the paper is detected by the PFP paper-start switch (S28), (S32) or (S36). If the PFP paper-stop switch (S27), (S31) or (S35) is ON, then the paper stops at this point. If the switch is OFF, the paper continues.
- When the leading edge of the paper is detected by the PFP paper-stop switch (S27), (S31) or (S35), it is aligned by the stationary PFP aligning roller.
- A fixed period of time after the PFP paper-stop switch (S27), (S31) or (S35) detects the leading edge of the paper, the feed clutch goes OFF and the PFP pick-up, PFP feed and PFP separation rollers stop. Aligning is complete.
- Next, the aligning clutch (CL7), (CL8) or (CL9) comes ON and the pedestal motor (M31) drives the PFP aligning roller to transport the paper to the copier.
- The paper is aligned again by the copier's aligning roller and transported to the copy process.

9.4.6 Disassembly and replacement

[A] Cassettes (upper, middle, and lower)

(1) Pull out the cassette, take out the 2 stopper screws, and then remove the cassette.

* Repeat the procedure for the upper, middle and lower cassettes.

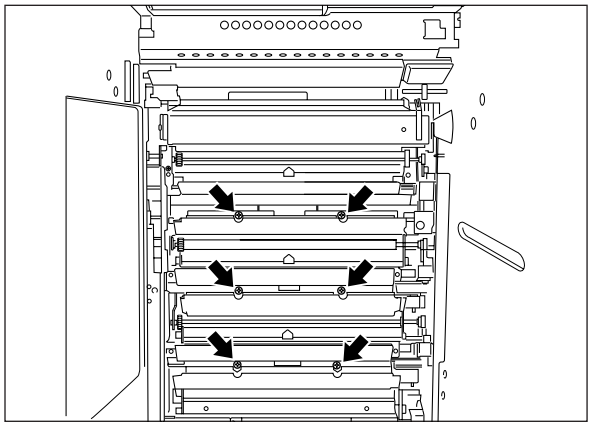


[B] PFP feed unit (upper, middle, and lower)

(1) Pull out the LCF unit.

(2) Slightly draw out the cassettes corresponding to the feed units of each of the top, middle and lower cassettes from a loaded state.

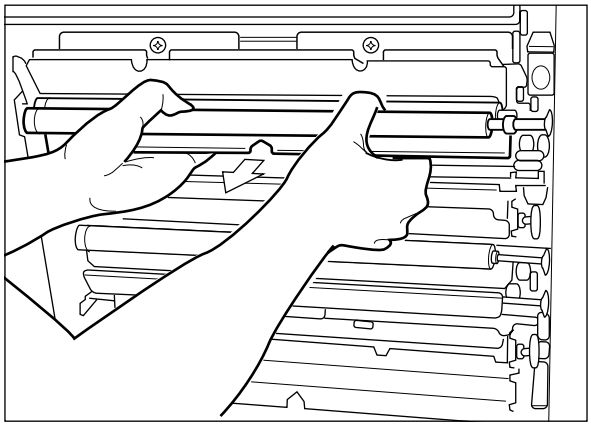
(3) Remove the 2 screws.



(4) Pull out the PFP feed unit.

Note: When installing, after installing the feed unit, put in the cassette.

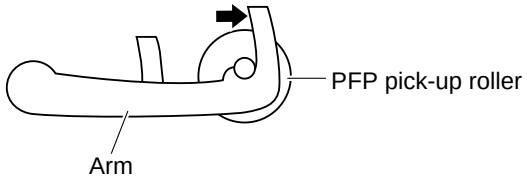
* There are three PFP feed units (upper, middle and lower), with identical units used for the upper and middle units.
The PFP aligning roller and PFP paper stop switch are not attached to the lower unit.

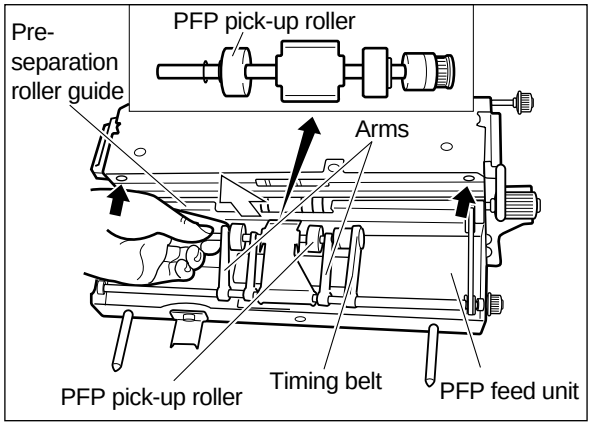


[C] PFP pick-up roller (upper, middle, and lower)

(1) Remove the PFP feed unit.

(2) Press the arm in the direction of allow (➡) to remove the PFP pick-up roller from the arm and then take off the PFP pick-up roller from the timing belt.

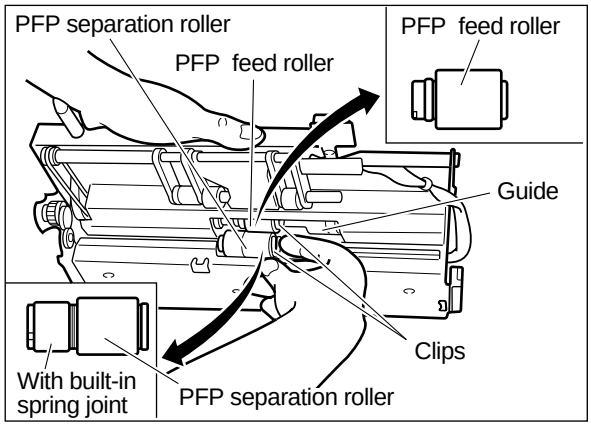




[D] PFP feed roller/PFP separation roller (upper, middle, and lower)

(1) Remove the pre-separation roller guide (2 screws). See Fig. [C].

(2) Take out the clips and then remove the rollers from the shafts.

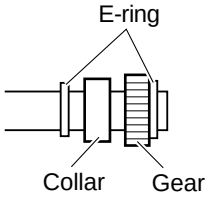


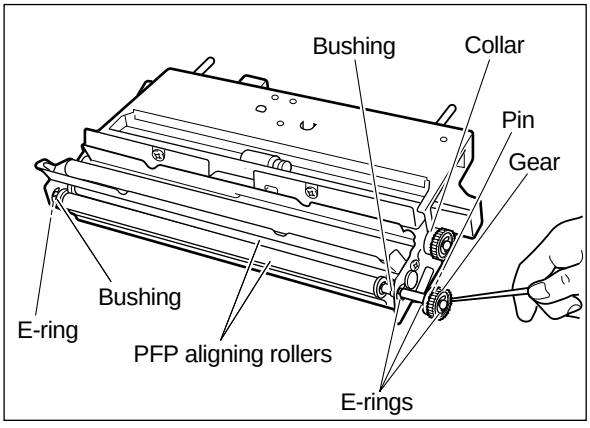
[E] PFP aligning roller (metallic roller) (upper, and middle)

(1) Remove the 3 E-rings, and the gear, pin, collar, and bushing.

(2) Remove the opposite E-ring and bushing.

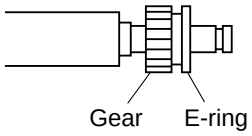
Note: When assembling, be sure to keep to the mounting direction of the gear and collar as shown below.

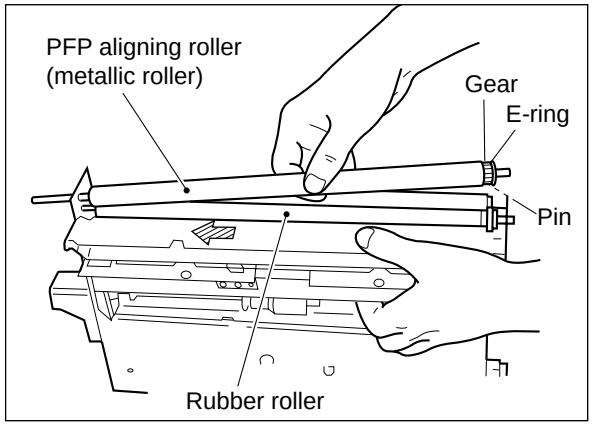




(3) Slide the whole roller in the direction of arrow A, lift out one shaft and then remove the metalic roller.
(4) When replacing the roller, remove the E-ring, gear, and pin.

Note: When assembling, be sure to keep to the mounting direction of the gear as shown below.

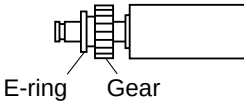


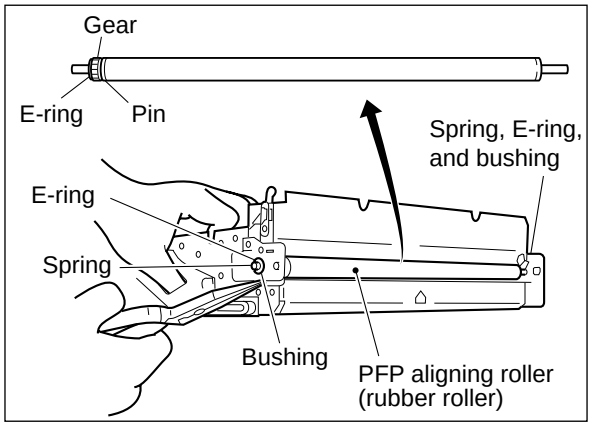


[F] PFP aligning roller (rubber roller) (upper and middle)

(1) Remove the metal roller.
(2) Remove the spring, E-ring, and bushing on each end.
(3) Remove the rubber roller.
(4) When replacing the rubber roller, remove the E-ring, gear and pin.

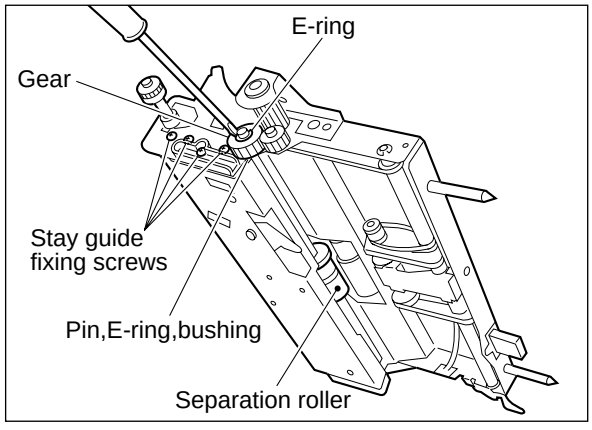
Notes: Precaution for assembling
1. Spring
Front : Yellow, Rear : black
2. Gear mounting direction





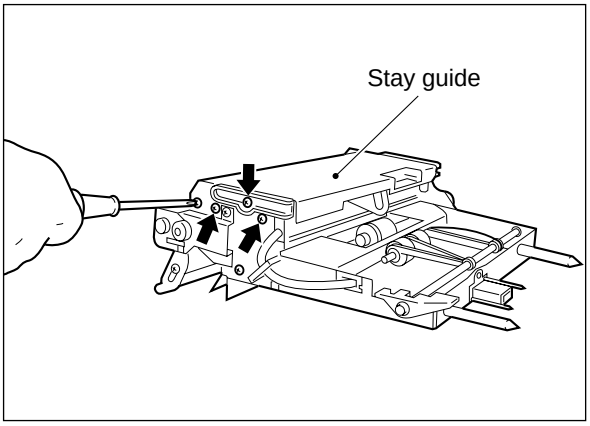
[G] PFP paper-stop switch (upper and middle)

(1) Remove the pre-separation roller guide. See Fig. [C].
(2) Take off the 2 E-rings, gear pin and bushing at the rear of the separation roller shaft.
(3) Pull out the separation roller with its shaft toward the front.

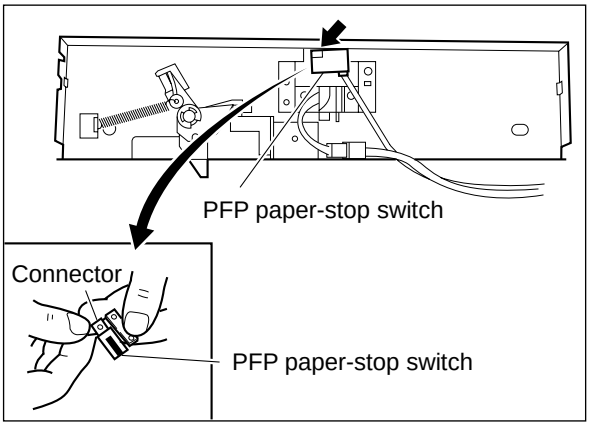


(4) Take out the 4 screws each at the front and rear and remove the stay guide.

Note: When removing the stay guide, pay attention to the harness fastening the guide.

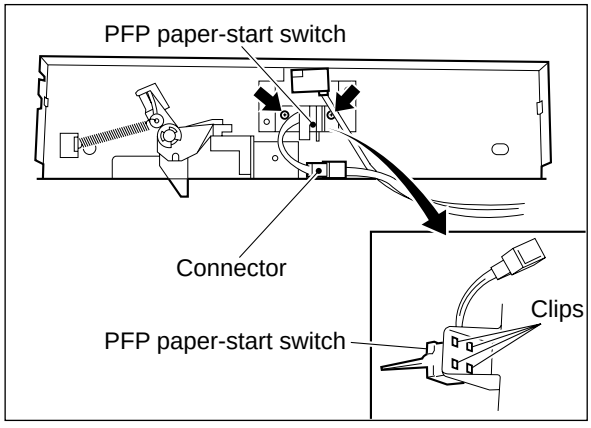


(5) Take out the screw, disconnect the connector and then remove the PFP paper-stop switch.



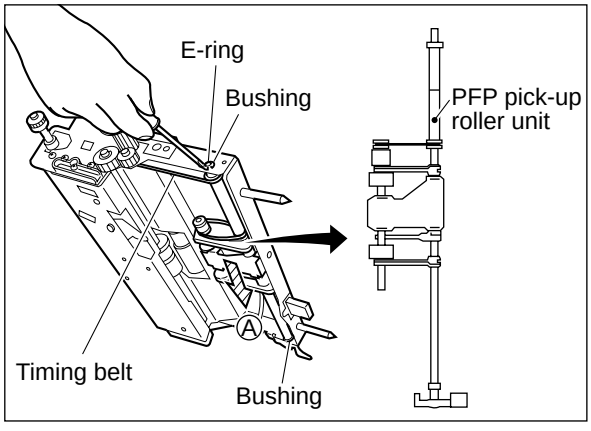
[H] PFP paper-start switch (upper, middle, and lower)

(1) Remove the stay guide.
(2) Disconnect the connector, take out the 2 screws and then remove the switch bracket.
(3) Release the 4 hooks from the bracket and then remove the PFP paper-start switch.

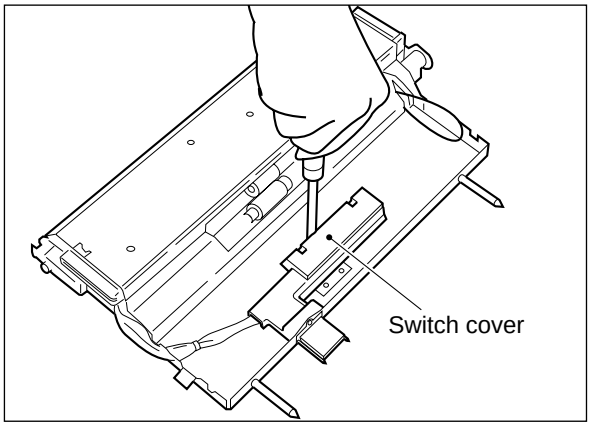


[I] PFP tray-up switch/PFP paper-empty switch (PWA-F-PEM-700) (upper, middle and lower)

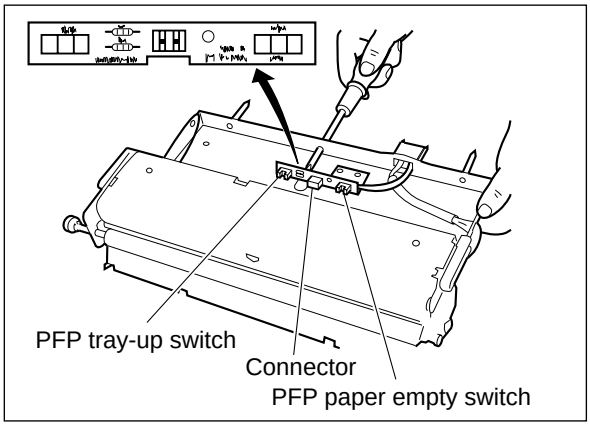
(1) Remove the PFP feed unit.
(2) Take out the E-ring and bushing, then slide the PFP pick-up roller unit in the direction of arrow Ⓐ, extract the bushing, take off the timing belt from the pulley and then remove the PFP pick-up roller unit.



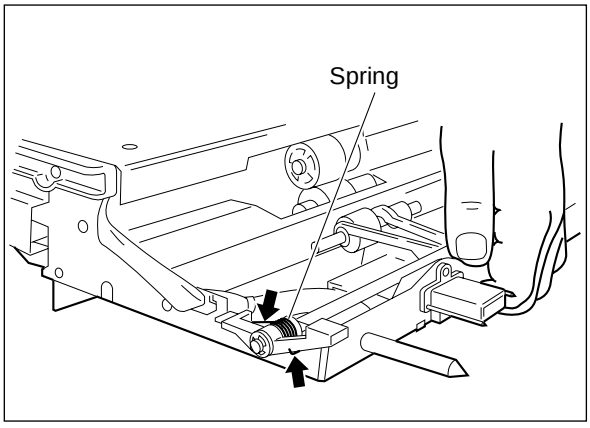
(3) Remove the switch cover (1 screw).



(4) Take out the screw, disconnect the connector and then remove PWA-F-PEM-700.



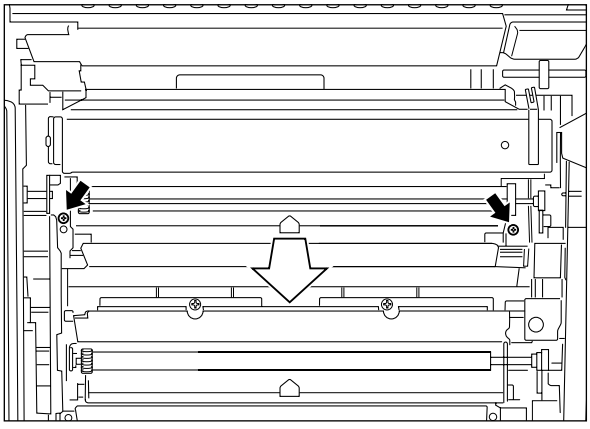
Note: When installing the PFP pick-up roller unit, remember to fit the spring in position.



[J] PFP upper aligning unit

(1) Pull out the LCF unit.

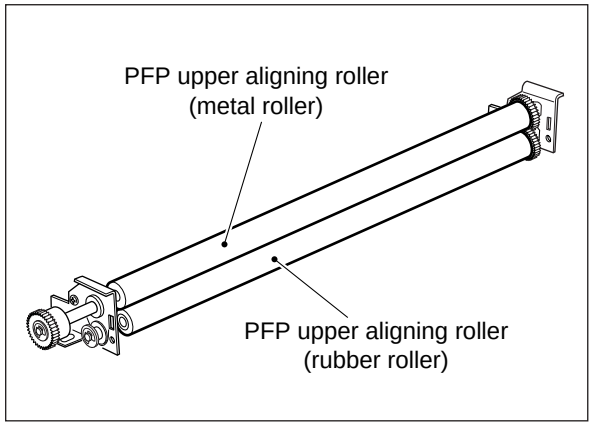
(2) Remove the 2 screws and pull the PFP upper aligning unit out to the paper feed side.

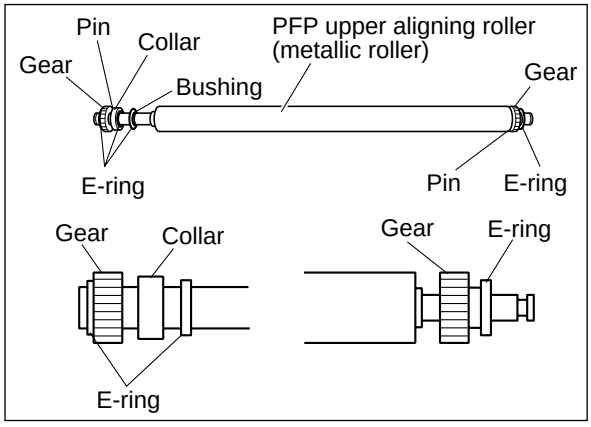


[K] PFP upper aligning roller (metallic roller)

(1) Remove the PFP upper aligning unit.
(2) Remove the 3 E-rings, gear, pin, collar and bush.
(3) Remove the E-ring and bush on the opposite end.

Note: When assembling, pay attention to the mounting direction of the gear and collar.



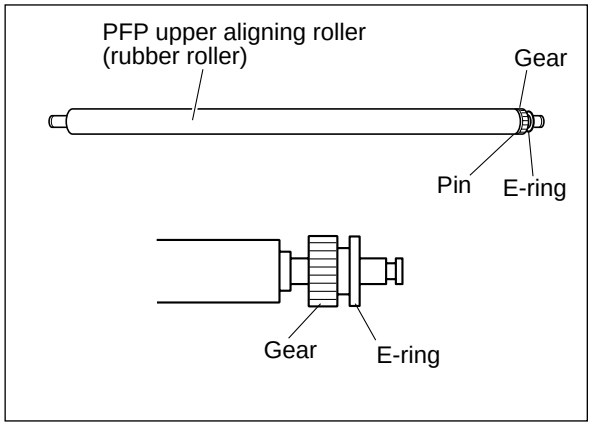


[L] PFP upper aligning roller (rubber roller)

(1) Remove the PFP upper aligning unit.
(2) Take out the spring, E-ring, and bushing on each end and then remove the rubber roller.
(3) When replacing the rubber roller, remove the E-ring, gear and pin.

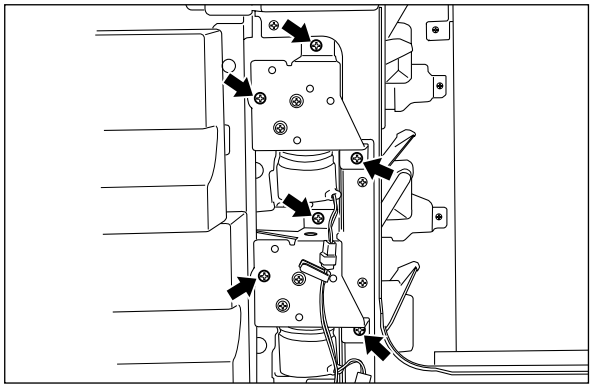
Notes: Precaution for assembling

1. Spring
   Front : Yellow, Rear : Black
2. Gear mounting direction

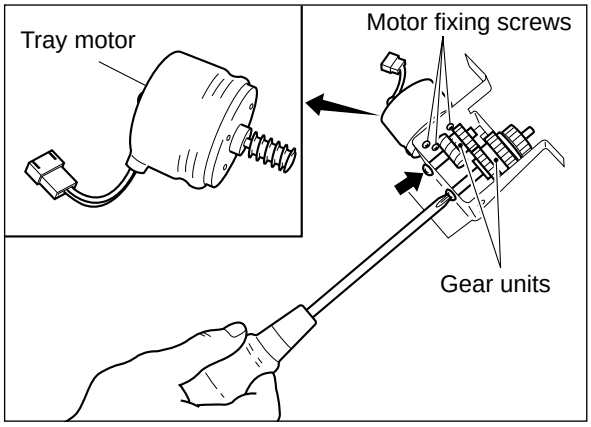


[M] PFP tray motor (upper, middle, and lower)

(1) Remove the PFP inner cover.
(2) Remove the harness from the harness clamp (unnecessary for the upper tray).
(3) Disconnect the connector.
(4) Remove the motor bracket (3 screws).

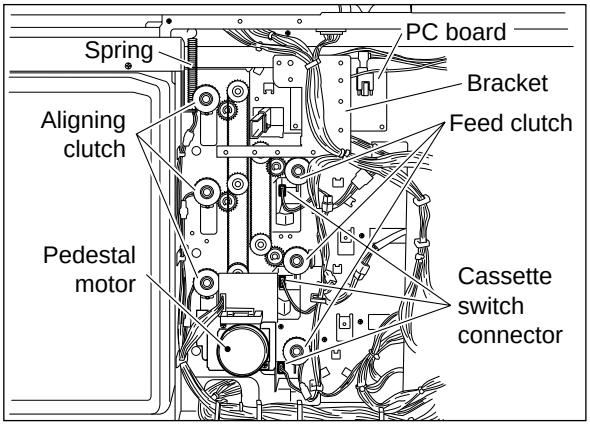


(5) Remove the 2 gear units (2 screws).
(6) Remove the PFP tray motor (3 screws).



[N] Feed clutch/aligning clutch (upper, middle and lower)

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the connector.
(3) Loosen the setscrew holding the clutch.



[O] Pedestal motor

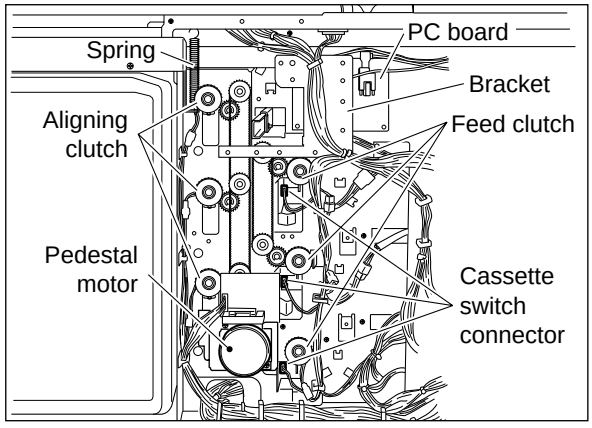
(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the connector and then remove the 2 screws.

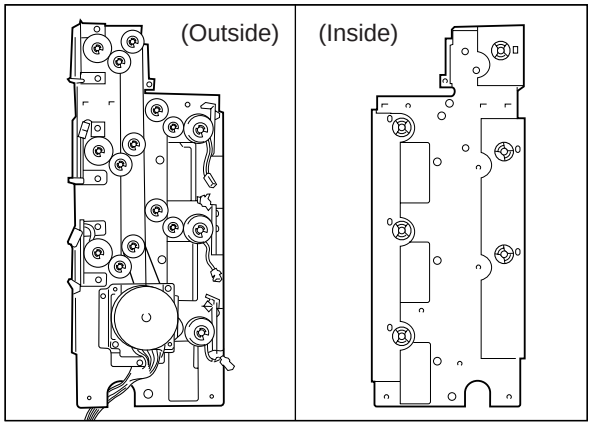
[P] Cassette switch (upper, middle, and lower)

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Unhook the 2 switch claws from the cassette rail, disconnect the connector, and then remove the cassette switch.

[Q] PFP drive unit

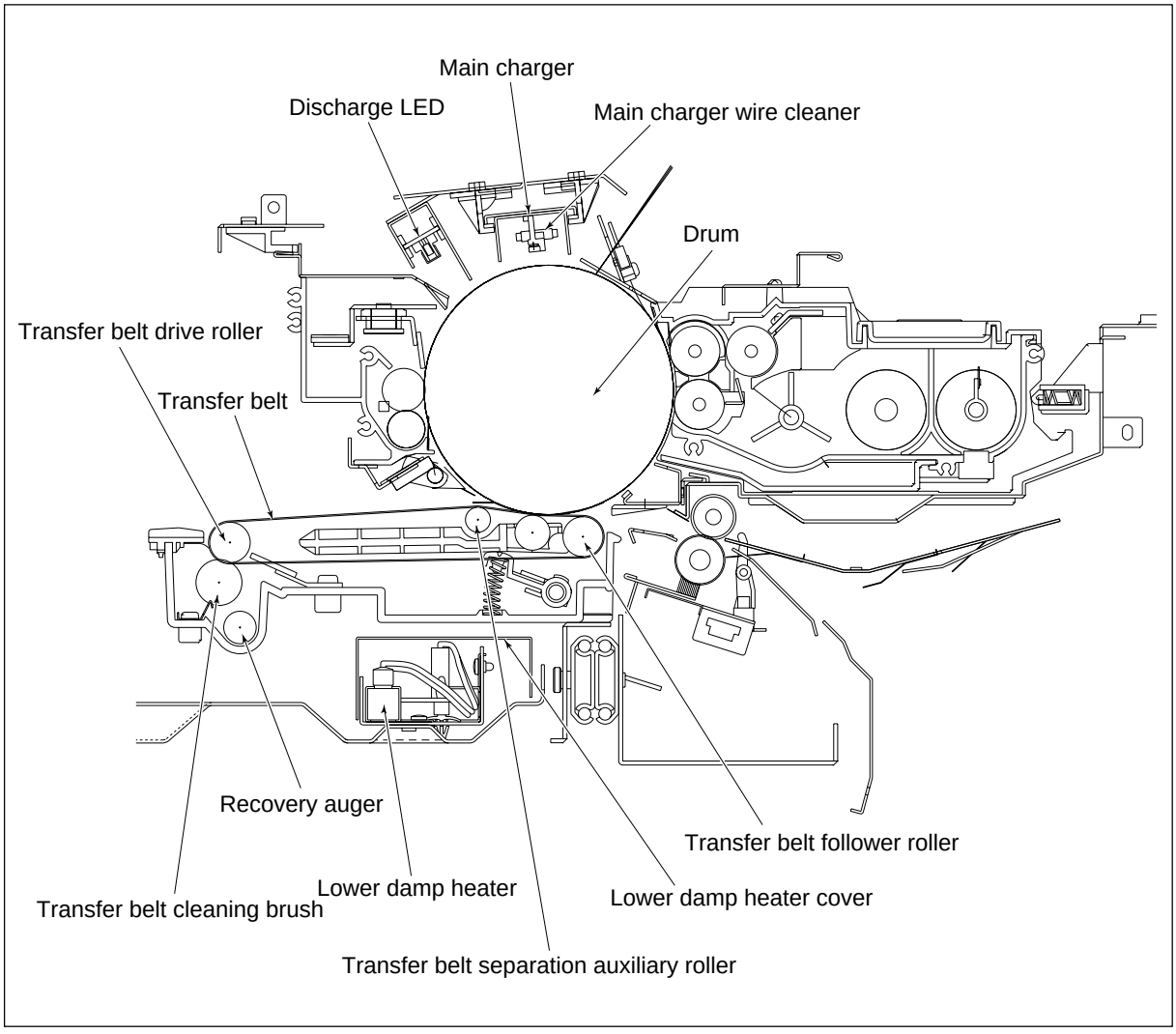
(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Remove the harness from the 2 harness clamps and then the bracket (2 screws).
(3) Remove the board (2 screws and 1 locking support).
(4) Remove the spring from the waste toner transport pipe.
(5) Disconnect the feed clutch, aligning clutch and cassette switch connectors (9 connectors).
(6) Disconnect the pedestal motor connector.
(7) Remove the harness from the 3 harness clamps.
(8) Remove the 8 screws, and draw out the PFP drive unit towards you to remove.





10. DRUM-RELATED SECTION

10.1 Construction



In this section, the drum-related parts including the drum are described. Construction of the parts is as follows:

- Drum
- Main charger
- Ozone filter unit—Slot exhaust, exhaust fan motor
- Discharge LED

10.2 Functions

(1) Drum

The drum comprises a drum-shaped, Aluminum base coated with an organic photosensitive element (photoconductor) film. The principle of “Photoconductivity” indicates that insulating properties of the material are evidenced in the dark. Likewise, its conductive properties are evidenced in the presence of light.

(2) Main Charger

The main charger is configured by stretching a special wire between two insulation blocks provided at both ends of a u-shaped metal bracket. When high voltage is applied to this charger wire, the air around the wire is ionized (electrostatically charged). The ionized air is attracted to the drum’s surface. This phenomenon is referred to as “corona discharge.” In the dark, the surface of the drum is negatively (minus) charged using the principle of corona discharge.

(3) Charger wire cleaner

The charger wire cleaner moves backwards and forwards to clean the charger wire after the power is turned ON and after more than 2000 continuous copies have been made since the door switch is turned ON or from the previous cleaning operation.

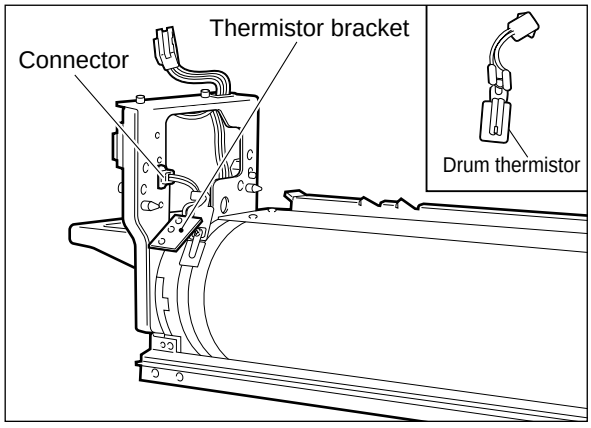
(4) Discharge LED

“Discharge” refers to the process of reducing or eliminating the electrostatic charge left on the photosensitive element after the charging and the transfer processes. The function of the discharge LED is to lower the electrical resistance of the photosensitive surface that was left over after the exposure and transfer processes. The LED device is a light source. The LED has two effects, a cleaning effect and “pre-exposure” effect. The cleaning effect neutralizes and eliminates the residual charge on the surface of the photosensitive element while the pre-exposure effect maintains a fixed photosensitive surface potential before the charging process is again initiated.

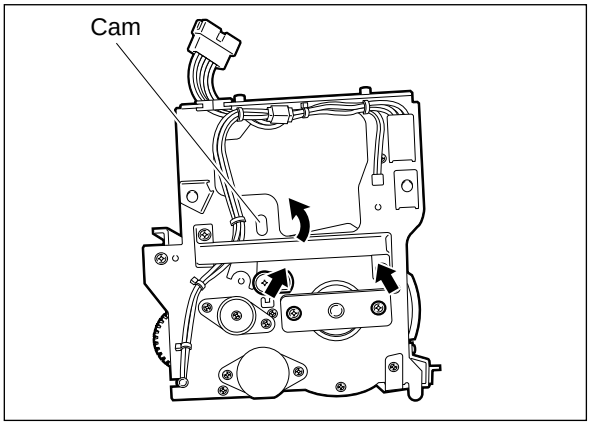
10.3 Disassembly and Replacement

[A] Drum

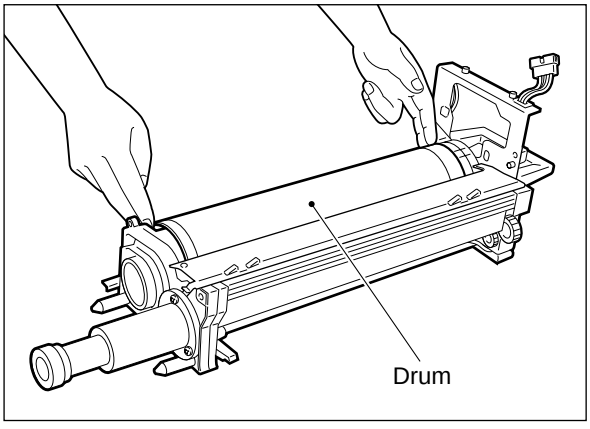
(1) Remove the cleaner unit (Refer to 13.3 [A].).
(2) Disconnect the connector from the drum thermistor.
(3) Remove the thermistor bracket (1 screw).



(4) Rotate the cam until it locks.
(5) Remove the 2 drum shaft fixing screws.
(6) Draw out the drum shaft from the front side.

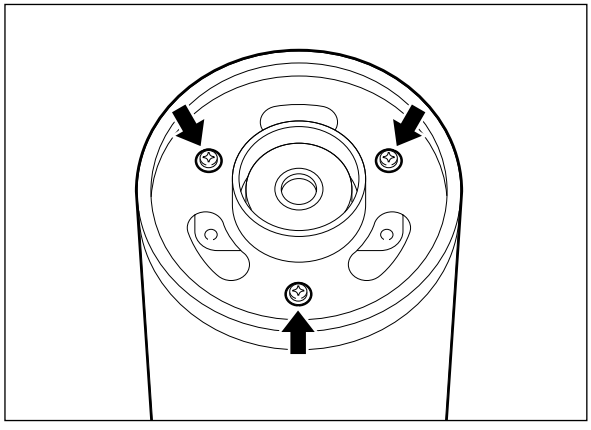


(7) Remove the drum by lifting it up.

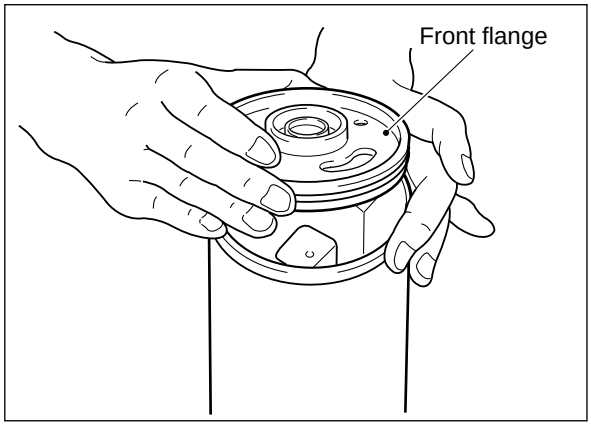


[B] How to replace the drum

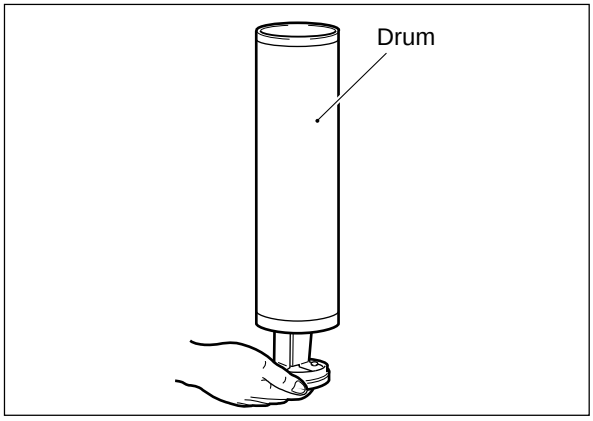
(1) Remove the drum.
(2) Remove the 3 screws.



(3) Remove the front flange.



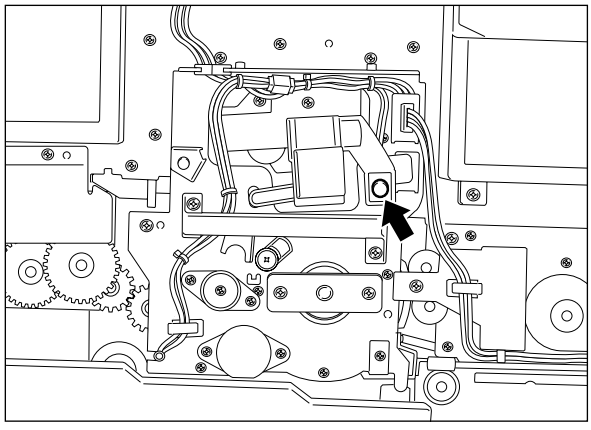
(4) Draw out the drum upwards.



[C] Main charger

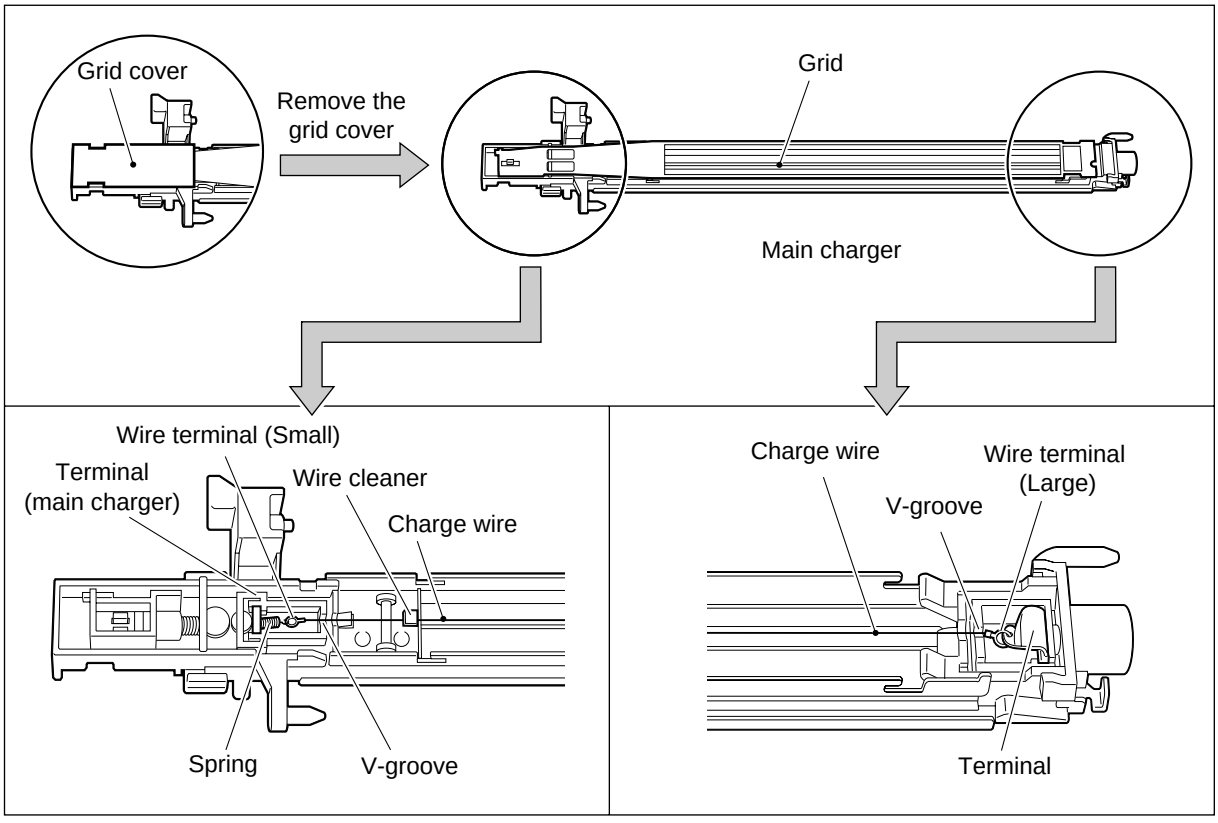
(1) Remove the middle inner cover.

(2) Remove the screw, and draw out the main charger to the front side.



[D] Charger wire

- Main charger: 398mm long, 0.06mm dia., tungsten oxide wire

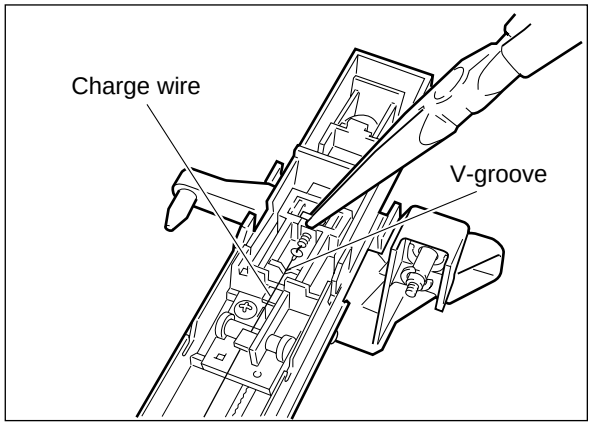


(1) Remove the grid cover, grid and terminal cover, and then remove the charger wire from the main charger.

Installation Precautions

1. The charger wire must be inserted into the V grooves at both the front and the rear.
2. Do not allow the charger wire to be twisted.

3. Do not touch the charger wire directly with your hands or fingers.

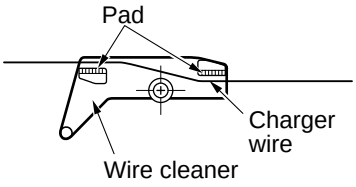


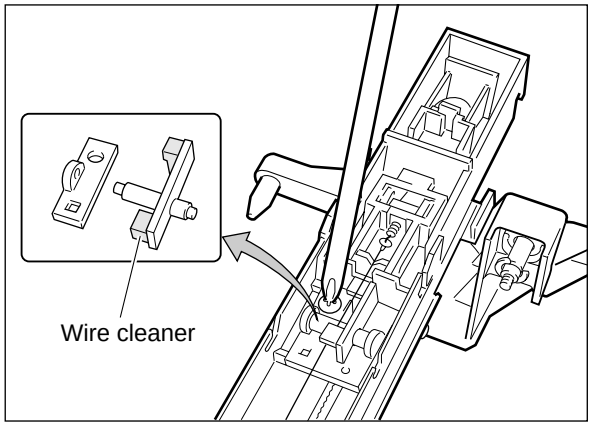
[E] Transfer charger wire cleaner

(1) Remove the main charger wire.

(2) Remove the wire cleaner (1 screw).

Note: During assembly, make sure that the charger wire passes through the pads.

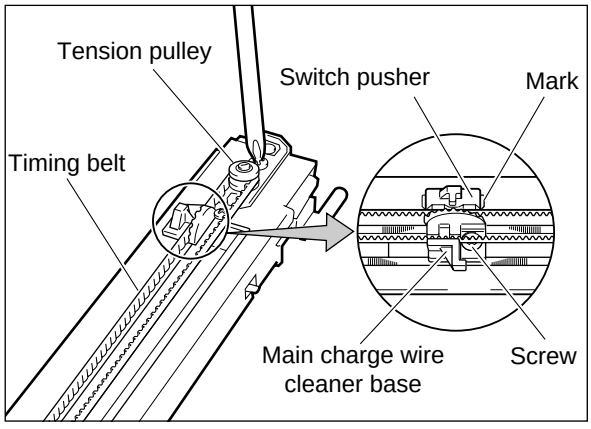




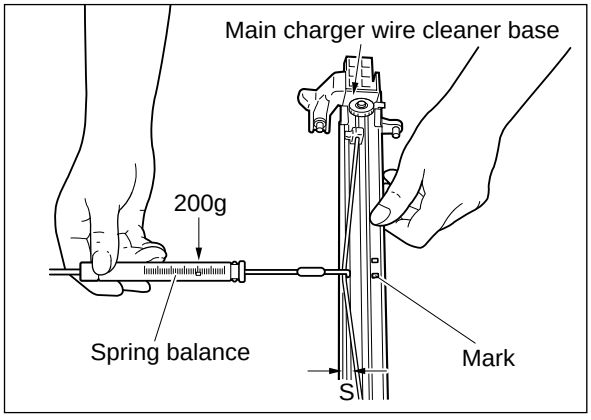
[F] Main charger timing belt

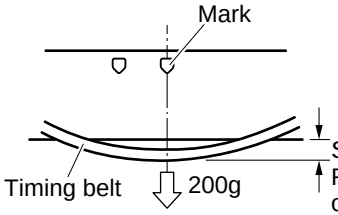
(1) Loosen the screw securing the tension pulley to remove the timing belt.

Notes: 1. When assembling the timing belt, secure the timing belt with the end faces of the main charger wire cleaner base and switch pusher aligned with the center of the mark.



2. During assembly, the tension of the timing belt must be adjusted as follows:
   - Tighten the screw securing the tension pulley so that the timing belt is pulled by 4 to 5 mm when a force of 200g is applied at the mark.

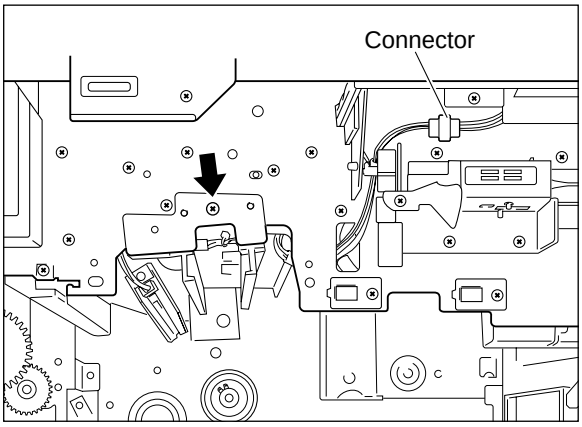




S = 4 to 5mm
Rear side of belt from outside of plate bending outer side

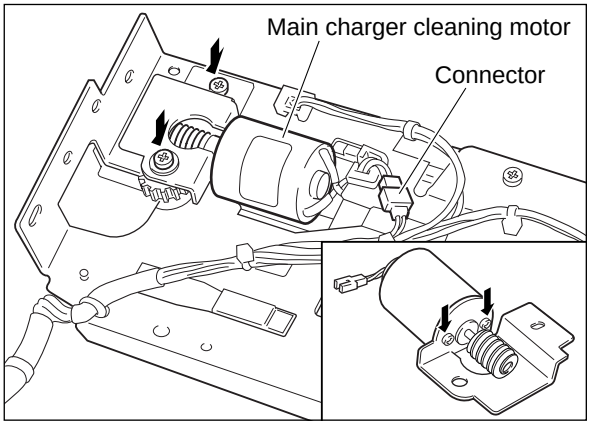
[G] Main charger guide unit

(1) Remove the center inner cover and the right inner cover.
(2) Remove the main charger and cleaner.
(3) Disconnect the connector, remove the screw and remove the main charger guide unit.

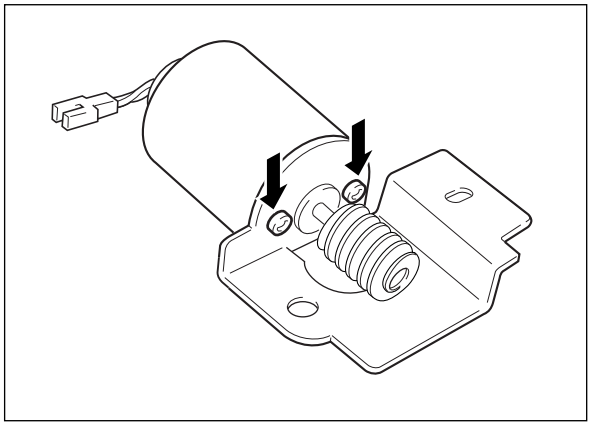


[H] Main charger cleaning motor

(1) Remove the main charger guide unit.
(2) Remove the connector, and remove the charger cleaning motor unit (2 screws).



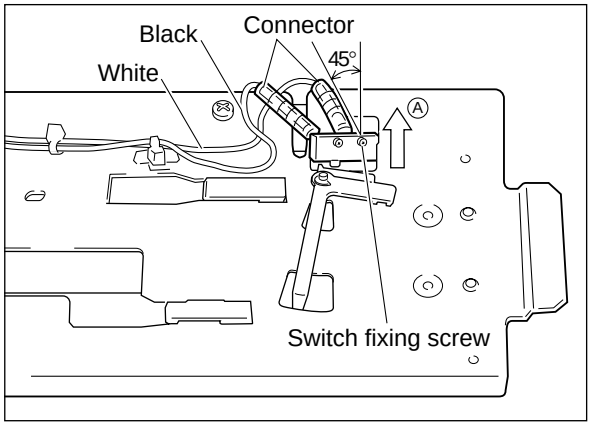
(3) Remove the motor (2 screws).



[I] Main charger cleaning switch

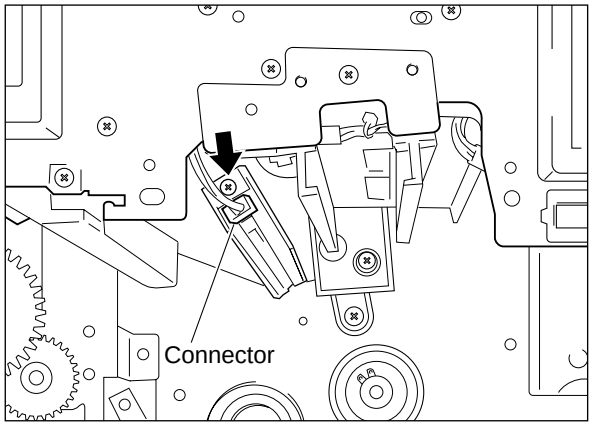
(1) Disconnect the 2 connectors, and remove the screw.

Note: When installing the switch, press in the direction of arrow Ⓐ and secure.
Also insert the harness into the terminals paying attention to the color, and bend the terminals to an angle of 45°.



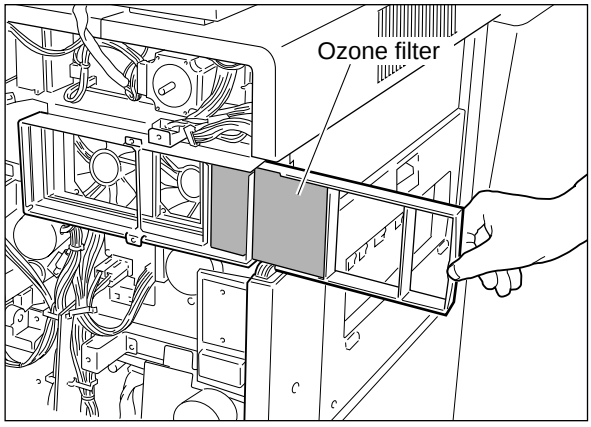
[J] Discharge LED

(1) Remove the stopper bracket (1 screw), and disconnect the connector.
(2) Draw out the discharge LED.

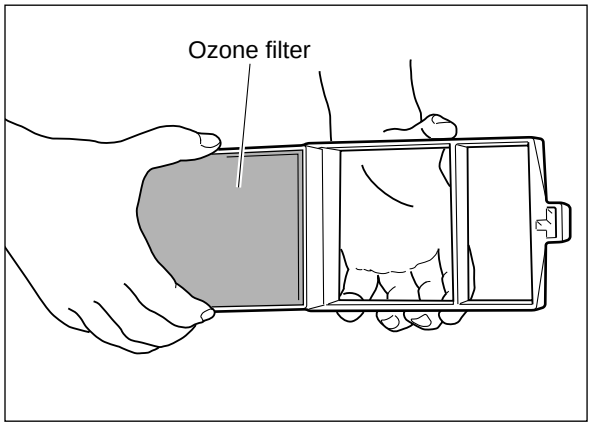


[K] Ozone filter

(1) Remove the upper exit cover.
(2) Unlock the claw lock, turn the knob and draw out the ozone filter.

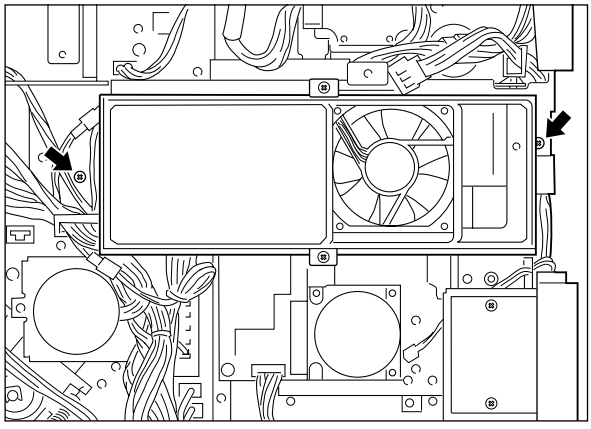


(3) Remove the ozone filter from its holder.



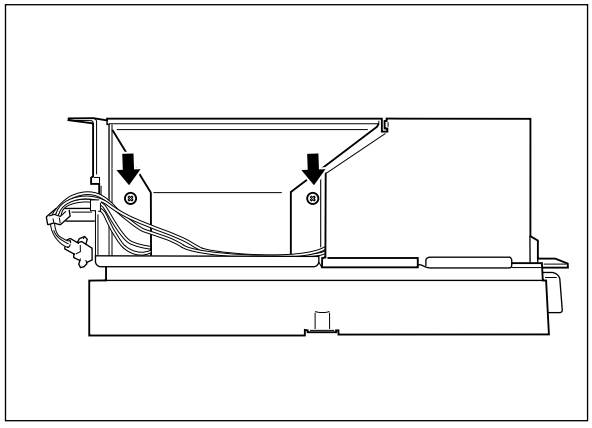
[L] Ozone filter unit

(1) Disconnect the 2 connectors, remove the 2 screws, and remove the ozone filter unit.

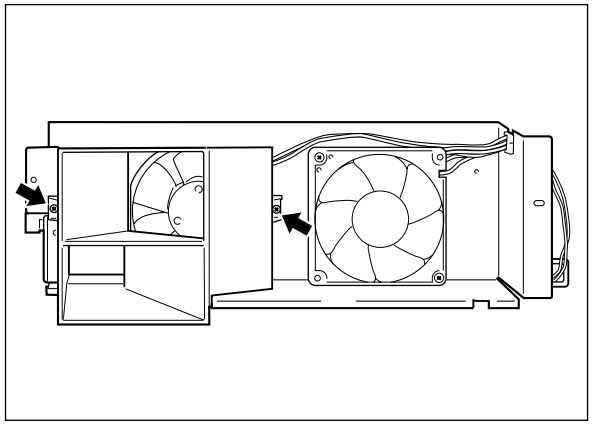


[M] Slot exhaust fan motor/exit fan motor

(1) Remove the exhaust fan duct (2 screws).

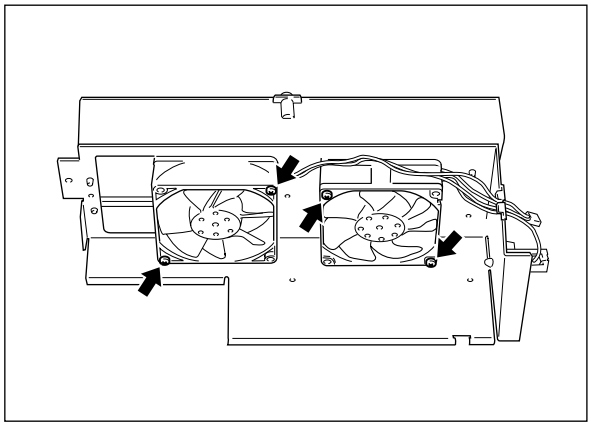


(2) Remove the slot exhaust fan duct (2 screws).



(3) Remove each of the 2 screws.

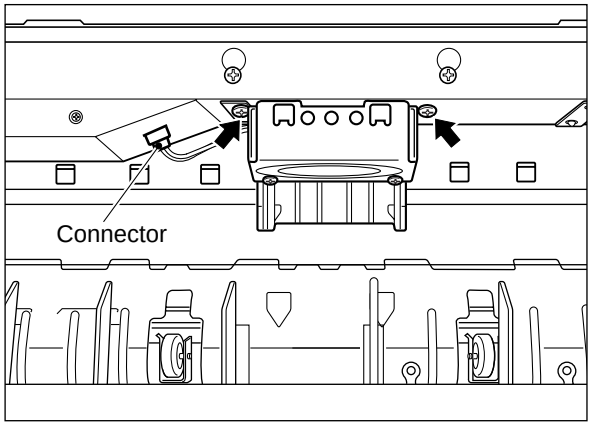
Note: When installing the slot exhaust fan motor and the exit fan motor, install in the direction shown in the figure.



[N] Reversal Fan Motor

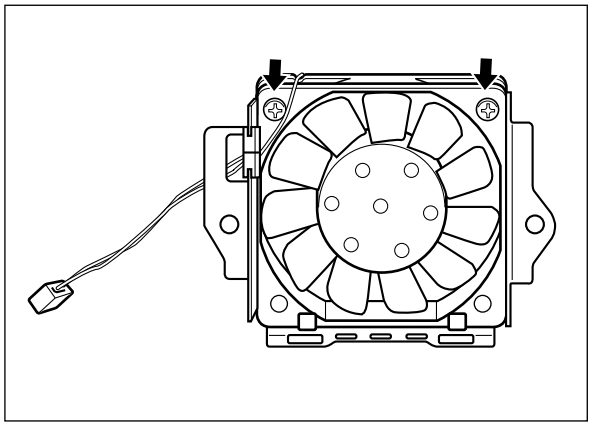
(1) Open the exit door and draw out the ADU unit.

(2) Remove the reversal fan motor bracket (2 screws, connector).



(3) Remove the reversal fan motor from the bracket (2 screws).

Note: Attach the reversal fan motor in the direction shown in the figure.



11. TRANSFER/TRANSPORT UNIT

11.1 Construction

This section describes the belt transport unit excluding the fuser unit.

Belt transport unit

- Transfer belt unit
  - Transfer belt support/power supply mechanism
    - High-voltage transformer
  - Transfer belt cleaning mechanism
- Transport guide
- Belt transport unit lock/unlock mechanism
- Lower damp heater unit

Copier rear frame

- Transfer belt drive mechanism
- Transfer belt contact/release mechanism
- Belt transport unit simple lock mechanism

11.2 Description of Operation

① While the copier is ready, the transfer belt stands by at a position separated from the photosensitive drum.

② When printing is started, the transfer belt is controlled to rise, and is held in contact against the photosensitive drum.

③ Voltage from the high-voltage transformer unit is applied to the transfer belt via the power supply roller.

④ As the surface of the transfer belt is electrified by a plus voltage by dielectric polarization, the paper is held in contact by static electricity, and the processes of transfer, separation, and paper transport can be carried out continuously.

⑤ After printing ends, the transfer belt is separated from the photosensitive drum and stands by again.

Figure 1 shows a sectional view of the belt transport unit.

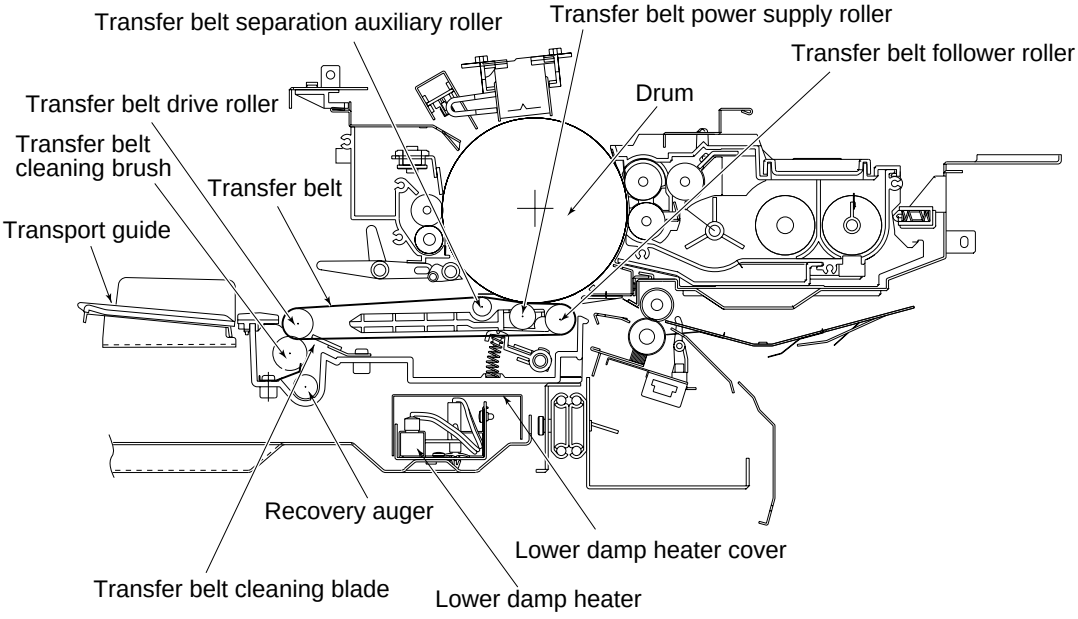


Fig. 1 Belt transport unit sectional view

11.3 Functions

(1) Transfer belt unit

The transfer belt is coated with a high-precision flat rubber belt and has electrical resistance. The transfer belt unit is divided into a belt support/power supply section and a cleaning mechanism. The belt support/power supply section supports the belt and rotates to supply power, and the cleaning mechanism scrapes of toner from the belt surface.

(2) Transfer belt support/power supply mechanism

As shown in Figure 1, the transfer belt is supported by four rollers. Voltage having a polarity opposite to that of the toner on the photosensitive drum is applied to the power supply roller. The current flowing to the transfer belt is controlled to a constant current of 50 µA. (Though the applied voltage changes as current is constant, the voltage change is normally within the range +3 to +5 kV.) A voltage probe is required for measurement. To prevent danger, do not use a digital voltmeter.

(3) Transfer belt cleaning mechanism

The cleaning mechanism has two functions, a function for scraping off residual toner from the belt surface by the cleaning blade, cleaning brush and recovery auger, and a function for bringing the transfer belt into contact with and separating it from the drum.

(4) Cleaning blade

After the paper is separated, remove any paper scraps and foreign objects remaining on the belt surface.

(5) Cleaning brush

Removes residual paper scraps and foreign matter from the belt surface after the paper is separated. The brush is made to electroconductive for electrostatically cleaning the toner. A voltage opposite to that of the toner is applied to the toner. The current flowing to the brush is controlled to a constant current of 5 µA. (Though the applied voltage changes as current is constant, the voltage change is normally within the range +300 to +700V.) A voltage probe is required for measurement. To prevent danger, do not use a digital voltmeter.

(6) Recovery auger

Feeds scraped off residual toner to the waste toner transport auger section.

(7) Transport guide

Guides paper that is held in contact by static electricity to the fuser unit. This guide is made of material that prevents electrification caused by friction with the paper.

(8) Belt transport unit lock/unlock mechanism

The belt transport unit is locked inside the copier. It is structured in such a way that it is locked when a paper jam is cleared, and can be drawn out towards you.

The belt transport unit has a function for separating the transfer belt from the drum and a function for preventing erroneous operation of the handle when it is drawn out.

- When the handle is rotated left when viewed from the front, the belt transport unit can be drawn out horizontally.
- When the belt transport unit is inserted into the copier, and the handle is rotated right when viewed from the front, the unit is located to the vertical position.
- If the belt transport unit is not completely inserted into the copier, the handle cannot be rotated from the horizontal position.

(9) Lower damp heater (for preventing condensation)

The damp heater is located under the transfer belt, and is powered when the main power switch is turned OFF.

Standard accessories: TWD, SAD, ASD, AUD

Options: Other than the above

(10) Transfer belt drive unit

Drive is transferred from the transfer belt motor, travels via the timing belt and the relay gears, and is transmitted to the transfer belt drive gear to rotate the drive roller. Drive is transmitted to the belt transport unit via a gear having a planetary joint.

(11) Transfer belt contact/release mechanism

This mechanism has a function for separating the transfer belt from the drum when a jam occurs, and a function for bringing the transfer belt into contact with the photosensitive drum when copying is started.

- Rotation of the cam by drive transmitted by gear from the cam motor moves the lever on the rear side inside the transfer belt up and down.
- The transfer belt is brought into contact with and separated from the photosensitive drum by vertically operating this lever.
- The cam phases are controlled by two sensors.

(12) Belt transport unit simple lock mechanism

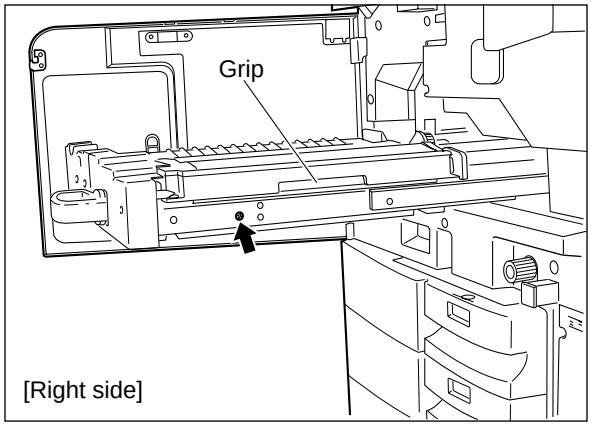
When the belt transport unit is inserted into the copier, this mechanism simply holds the belt transport unit before it is locked by rotation of the handle.

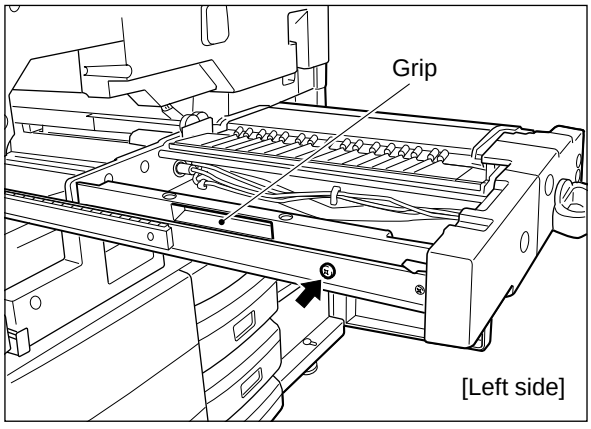
11.4 Display and Replacement

[A] Belt transport unit

(1) Rotate the handle to the left, and draw out the belt transport unit.
(2) Remove the fuser unit (1 screw) (When the lower damp heater is attached, disconnect the rear connector.).
(3) Remove the 2 stepped screws (blue).
(4) Lift up the belt transport unit holding it by both grips.

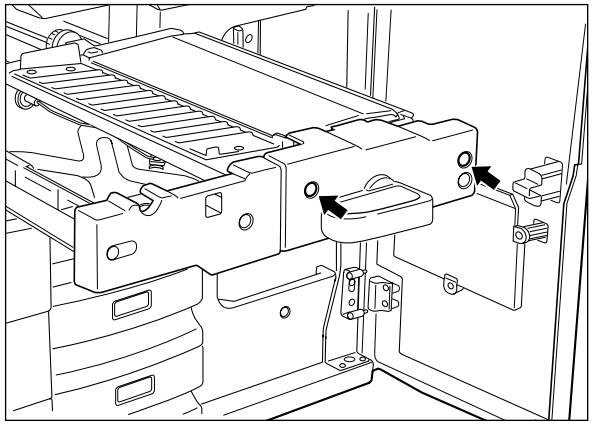
Note: When installing the belt transport unit on the slide rail, firmly insert the stepped pin on the slide rail into the notch on the belt transport unit.



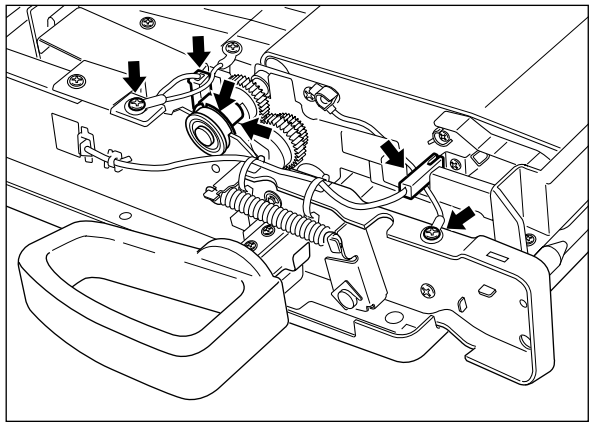


[B] Transfer belt unit

(1) Remove the inner cover (2 screws).

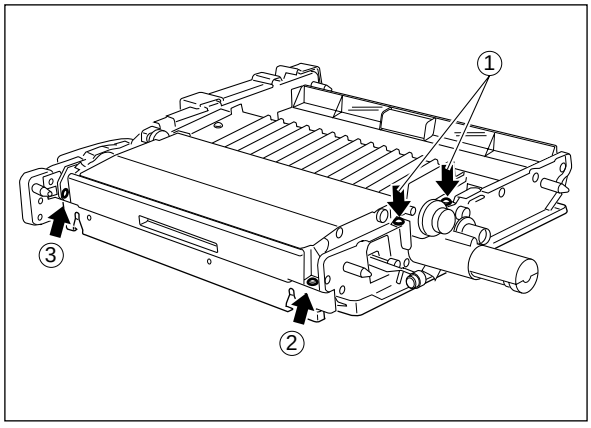


(2) Disconnect the transfer belt power supply connector, the cleaning brush power supply connector and the earth (2 screw).
(3) Remove the front clip, and slide the bearing.

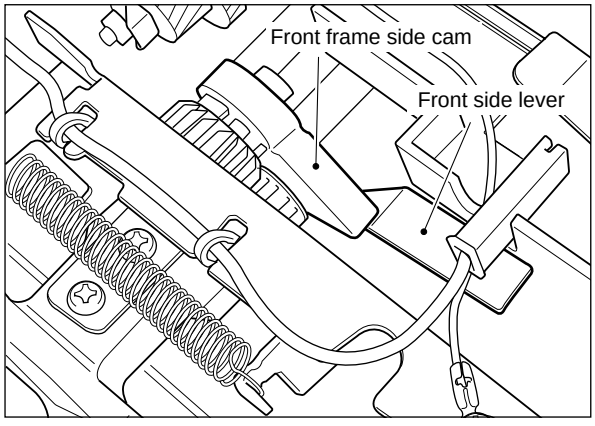


(4) Remove the 2 rear bearing bracket fastening screws and the 2 casing fastening screws.
(5) Draw out the transfer belt unit upwards on the front side.

Notes: 1. During assembly, fasten the screws in order ①, ② and ③.

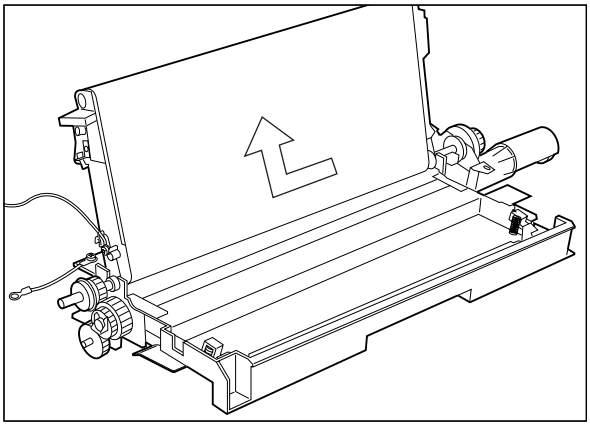


2. When assembling the transfer belt unit, make sure that the front lever of the transfer belt unit fits under the cam on the front frame.

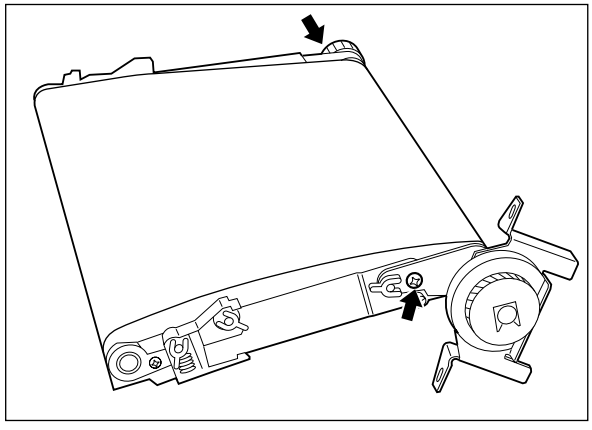


[C] Transfer belt

(1) Rotate the transfer belt support/power supply mechanism inside the transfer belt unit by 90°, and then draw out upwards.

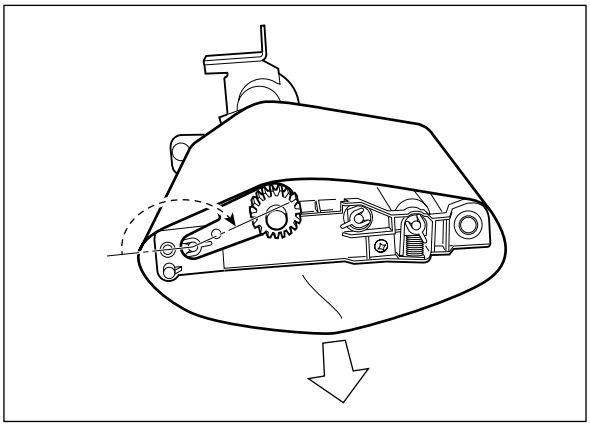


(2) Remove the 2 fastening screws from the drive roller support bracket.



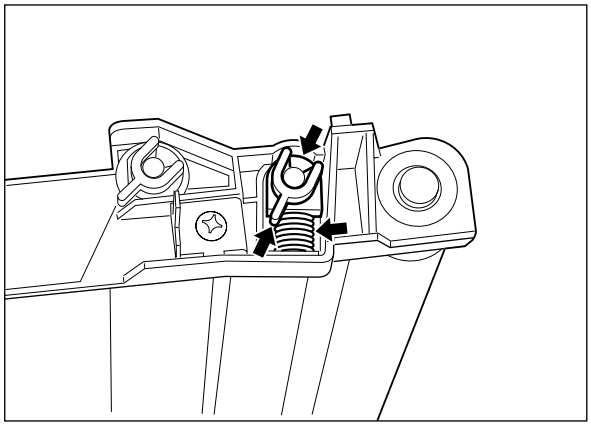
(3) Rotate the drive roller in the direction of the arrow in the diagram.
(4) Draw out the transfer belt.

Notes: 1. Attach the belt so that the belt travels along the center of the inside of the housing.
2. Do not touch the belt surface directly with your hands.
3. The drive roller support bracket fastening screw on the front side is also used for connecting the earth lead. Pay attention to the direction of the terminal.
4. When installing the transfer belt support/power supply section onto the cleaning section, take care to prevent the recovery mylar on the cleaning section from being turned over.



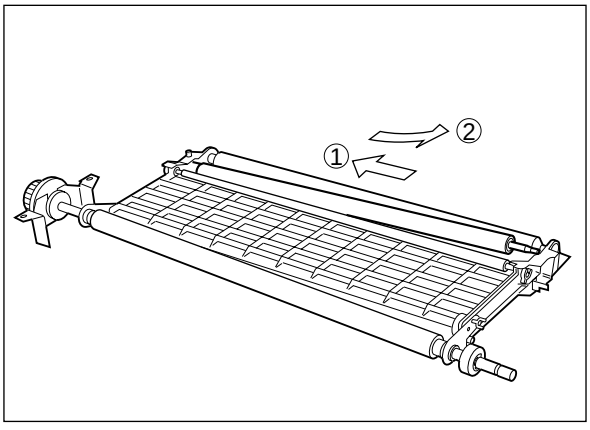
[D] Transfer belt power supply roller

(1) Remove the transfer belt.
(2) Remove the 2 stop rings on the power supply drive roller shaft.
(3) Remove the 2 holders and 2 springs.



(4) Draw out the power supply roller temporarily to the front, remove the rear side shaft, and replace the power supply roller.

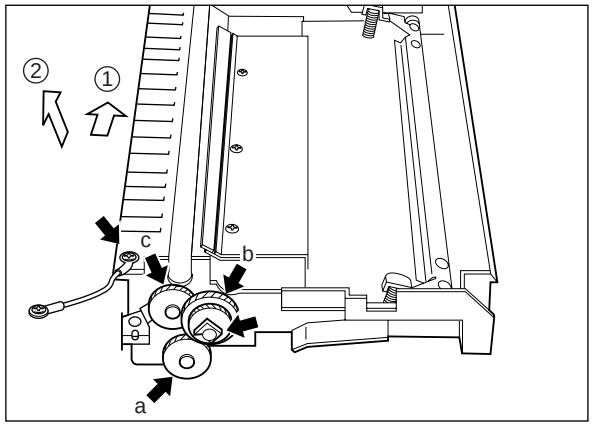
Notes: 1. When replacing the power supply roller, take care not to scratch or leave any knock marks on the roller surface.
2. Make sure that the two stop rings are firmly fitted in the groove.
3. Make sure that the spring is firmly fitted on the upper and lower projections.
4. After assembly, make sure that the power supply roller rotates smoothly, and moves vertically smoothly by the spring.
5. Do not touch the surface of the power supply roller directly with your hands.



[E] Brush

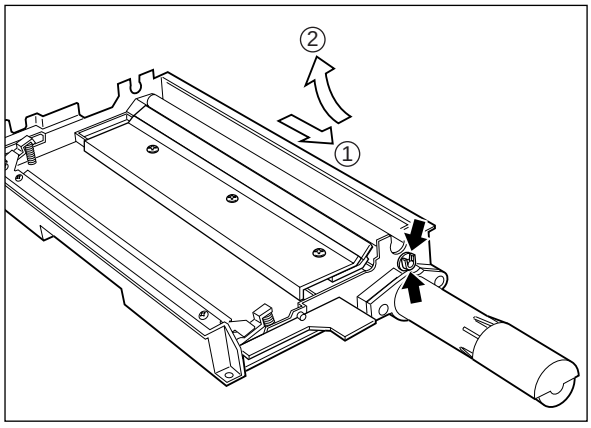
(1) Remove the transfer belt support/power supply mechanism from the transfer belt unit.
(2) Remove the short transport guide fastening screw, and slide the transport guide. Then, draw out the transport guide upwards.
(3) Remove the front stop ring and the 3 gears.

Note: a and c have claws. Remove in order a, b and then c.



(4) Remove the stop ring on the rear brush axis and pull out the bushing.
(5) Press the brush temporarily to the rear, rotate the shaft on the front side, and draw out the brush upwards to the front.

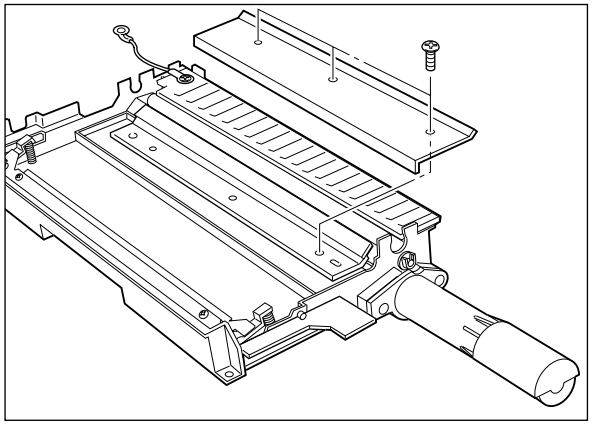
Notes: 1. When installing the gear, install so that the projection on the inner diameter of the gear shaft fits firmly into the groove on the shaft.
2. When the bush in the nozzle side comes off, securely install it with care of the direction.
3. Do not directly touch the surface of the brush with your hands.



[F] Cleaning blade

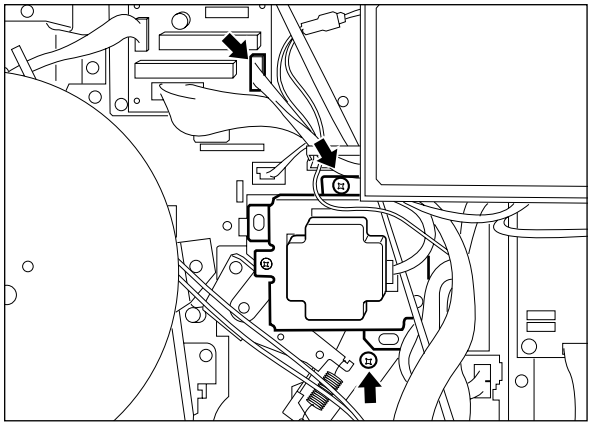
(1) Remove the transfer belt support and power supply mechanisms from the transfer belt unit.
(2) Remove the 3 screws, the reinforcing plate and remove the cleaning blade upwards.

Notes: 1. When assembling the cleaning blade, assemble so that the bosses on both side fit properly into the blade plate holes, and fasten by screws.
2. Do not directly touch the blade edge by hand. Also, do not allow hard objects to bump against the blade edge.



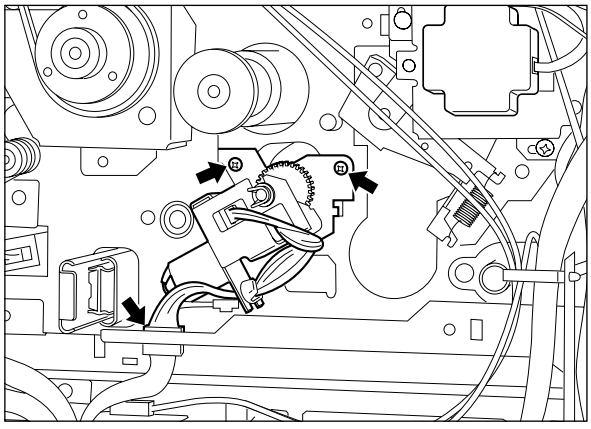
[G] Transfer belt drive unit

(1) Remove the main unit rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the connector from the transfer belt motor.
(3) Remove the 2 screws, and transfer belt drive unit.



[H] Transfer belt contact/separation cam drive unit

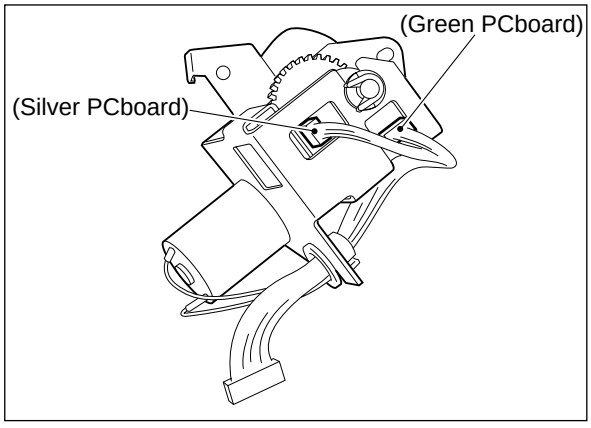
(1) Remove the main unit rear cover.
(2) Remove the flywheel (3 screws).
(3) Remove the toner transport auger unit (5 screws).
(4) Disconnect the harness connector for the cam motor and sensor.
(5) Remove the 2 screws, align the cam with the holes on the copier rear frame, and draw out the unit towards you.



[I] Transfer belt contact/separation sensor

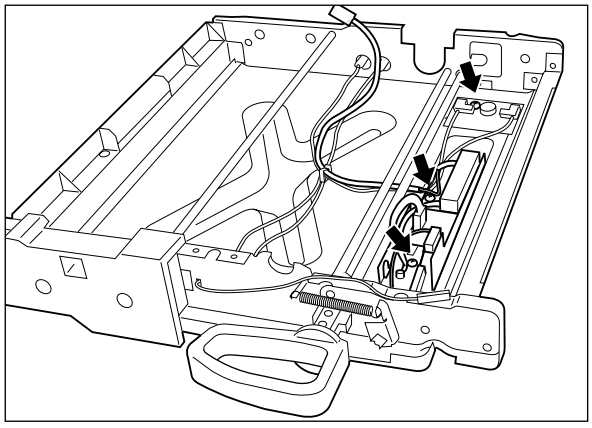
(1) Remove the transfer belt contact/separation cam drive unit.
(2) Disconnect the connector from each of the sensors.
(3) Remove the sensor pins from the bracket holes to remove the sensor.

Notes: 1. When replacing the sensor, pay attention to the type of sensor (color-coded on the PC board) and its mounting direction.
2. Make sure that sensor pins are firmly fitted into the bracket holes.
3. Do not forget to re-connect the connectors.

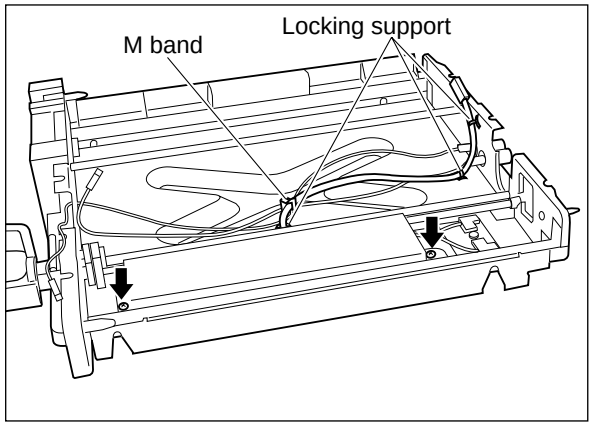


[J] Mounting the lower damp heater

(1) Remove the transfer belt unit.
(2) Remove the transport guide (1 screw).
(3) Attach the lower damp heater unit on the base of the belt transport unit (3 screws).

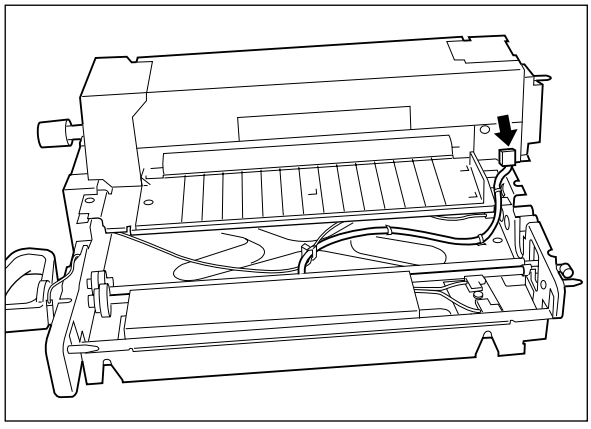


(4) Attach the lower damp heater cover (2 screws).
(5) Pass the damp heater harness through the M band on the belt transport unit, and attach locking supports (1 pc. to the rear frame and 2 pcs. to the base frame).



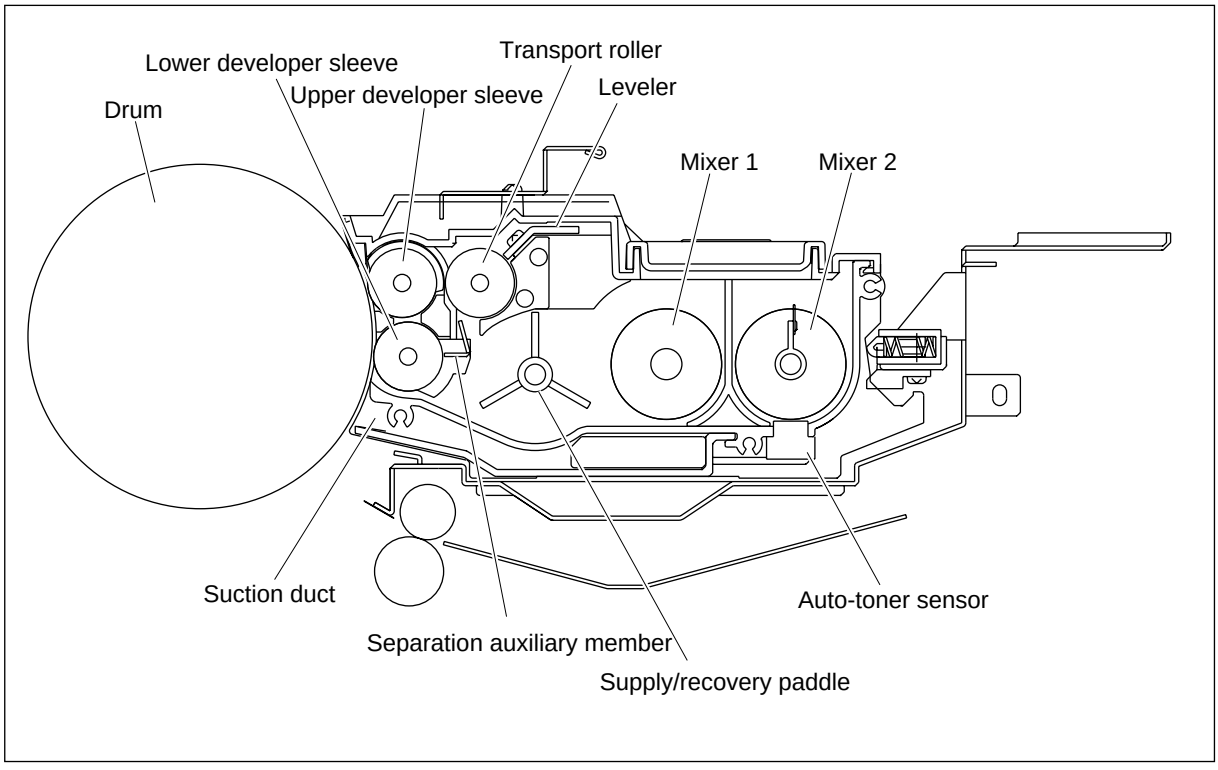
(6) Make sure that the damp heater connector is inserted into the rear side of the fuser unit.

Notes: 1. When installing the damp heater cover, prevent the harness from becoming nipped.
2. Before installing the lower damp heater unit, check the power voltage.

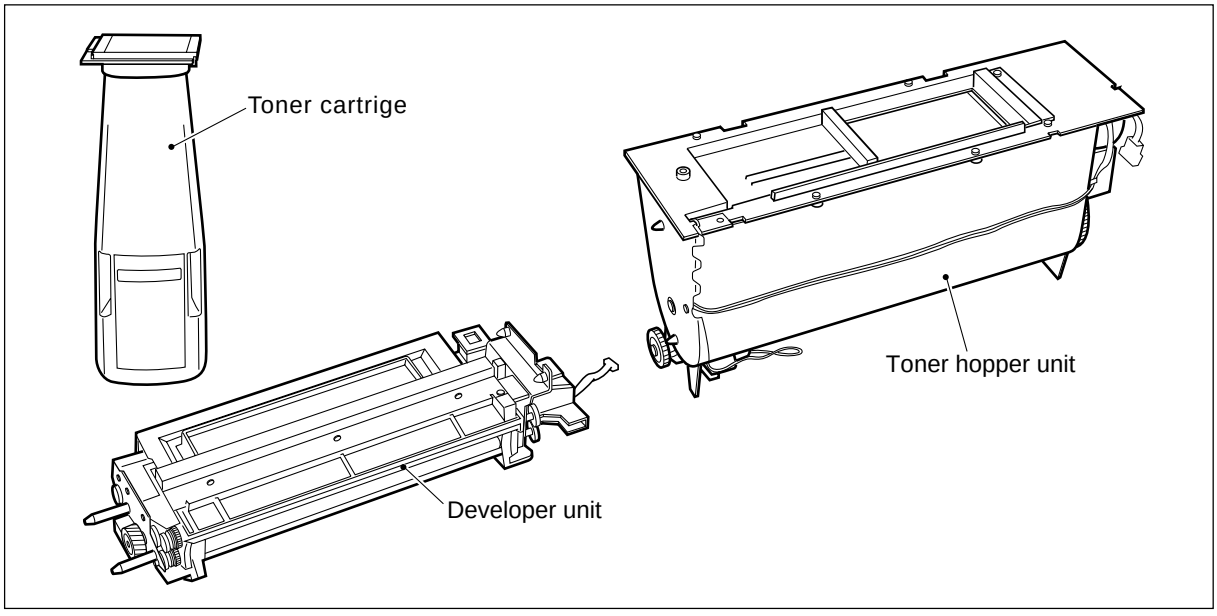


12. DEVELOPER UNIT

12.1 General Description



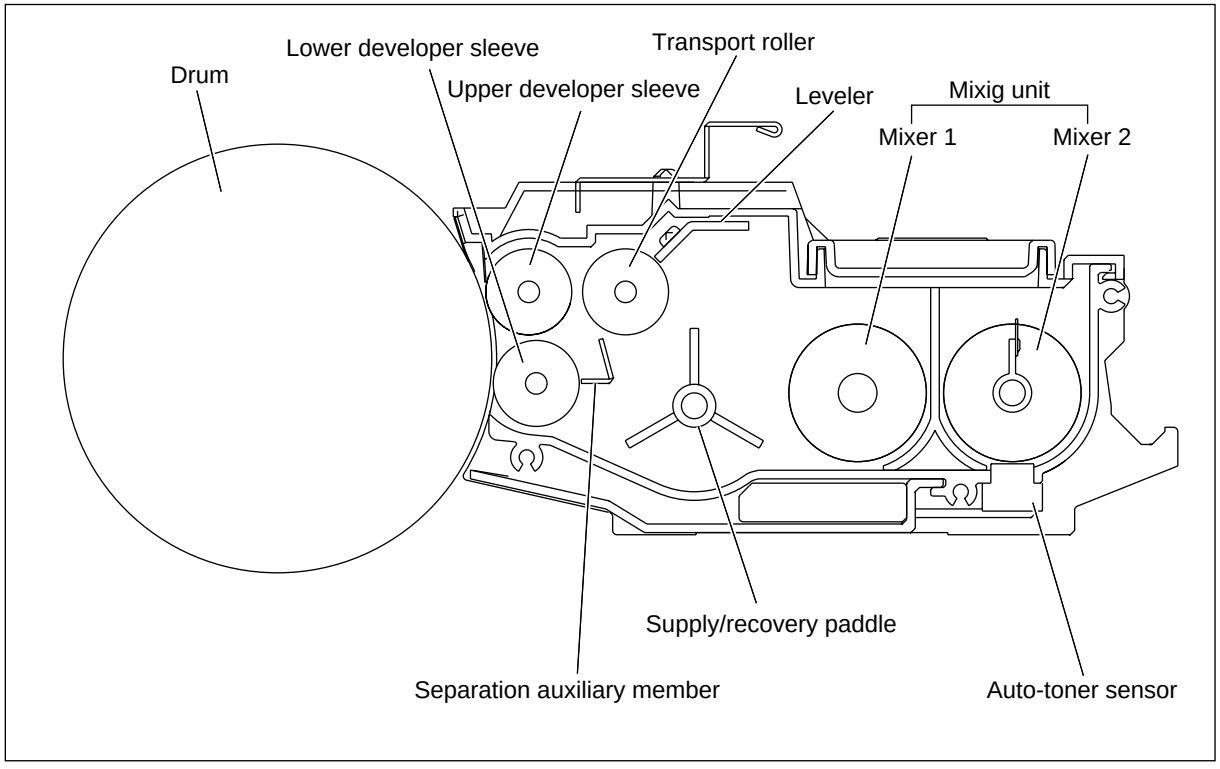
When a fine power (toner) that has a charge of the same polarity as the electrostatic latent image and color black (or other color) comes near the electrostatic latent image formed on the drum surface, the toner adheres to the image only by electrostatic force, causing the electrostatic latent image to be developed, resulting in a visible image being formed. This is the developing process performed in the developer unit.



12.2 Construction

12.2.1 Developer unit

The developer unit consists of the lower and upper developer sleeves (magnetic rollers), leveler, auto-toner sensor, supply/recovery paddle, separation auxiliary member, mixing unit, etc. The developer material is poured into the developer unit.



(1) Developer material

The developer material contains carrier and toner. The carrier is made of iron powder of about 65μ m in diameter, being a conductor. The toner is made of resin particles, about 9μ m in diameter. The toner has a weight ratio of about 5% of the developer material. Developer material deteriorates with use and must be replaced periodically.

(2) Mixing unit

When the carrier and toner are mixed, friction is generated, causing the carrier to have a positive (+) charge and the toner to have a minus (–) charge. The toner adheres to the drum surface as a result of electrostatic force.

(3) Supply/recovery paddle

This paddle supplies stirred developer material to the feed roller, and recovers developer material that has been separated by the lower developer sleeve and returns it to the stirring section.

(4) Lower and upper developer sleeves (magnetic rollers)/transport roller (magnetic roller)

These parts are made of aluminum, with magnets positioned inside them. By using the magnetic force, the developer material is attracted (because the carrier is made of iron powder), forming magnetic lines of force shaped like a brush. Further, the magnets are secured, and only the sleeves around them rotate. Through this rotation, the magnetic brush of the lower and upper developer sleeves sweeps the surface of the photosensitive drum, enabling development.

(5) Leveler

This regulates the amount of developer material transferred by the transport roller so that the magnetic brush correctly comes into contact with the surface of the photosensitive drum.

(6) Separation auxiliary member

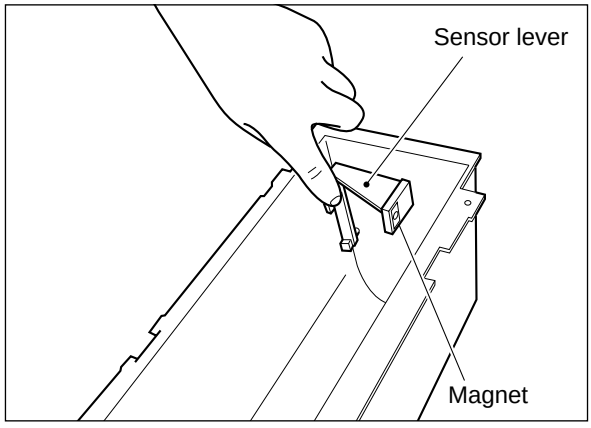
This member supports the task of separating the developer material on the lower developer sleeve.

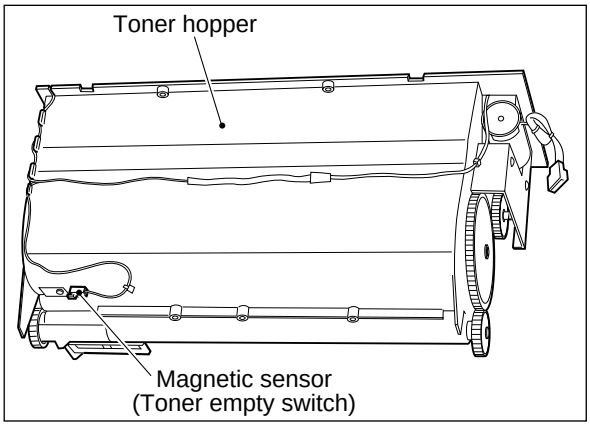
(7) Auto-toner sensor

For making good copies, it is necessary to keep the carrier and toner in the developer unit at a fixed ratio. The auto-toner sensor monitor the toner density in the developer material by operating a magnetic bridge circuit. When the toner density drops, a fixed amount of toner is added from the toner hopper.

12.2.2 Toner hopper unit

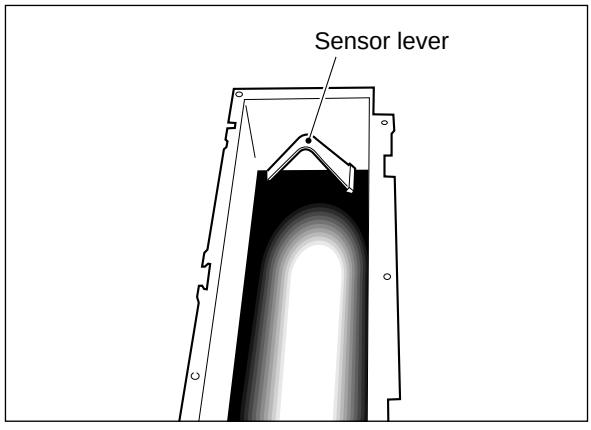
When there is little toner left in the toner hopper, this status is detected and the “ADD TONER” symbol flashes. The principle is as follows.

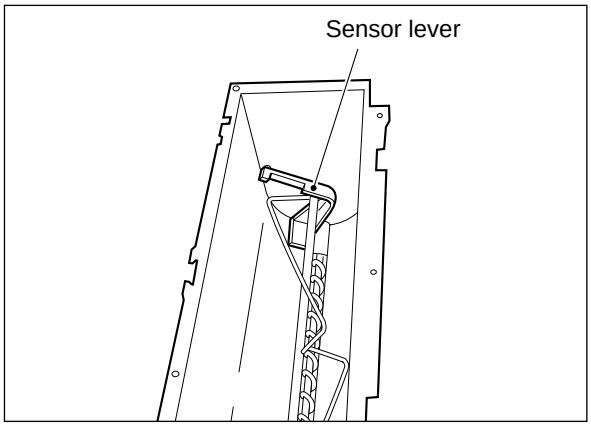




① As shown in the left figure above, there is a sensor lever on the inside of the toner hopper. The lever is fitted with a magnet.

② There is a magnetic sensor (toner-empty switch) on the outside of the toner hopper, such as when the amount of toner in the hopper drops, the sensor lever lowers, which is detected by the magnet sensor. The copier then requires toner to be added.

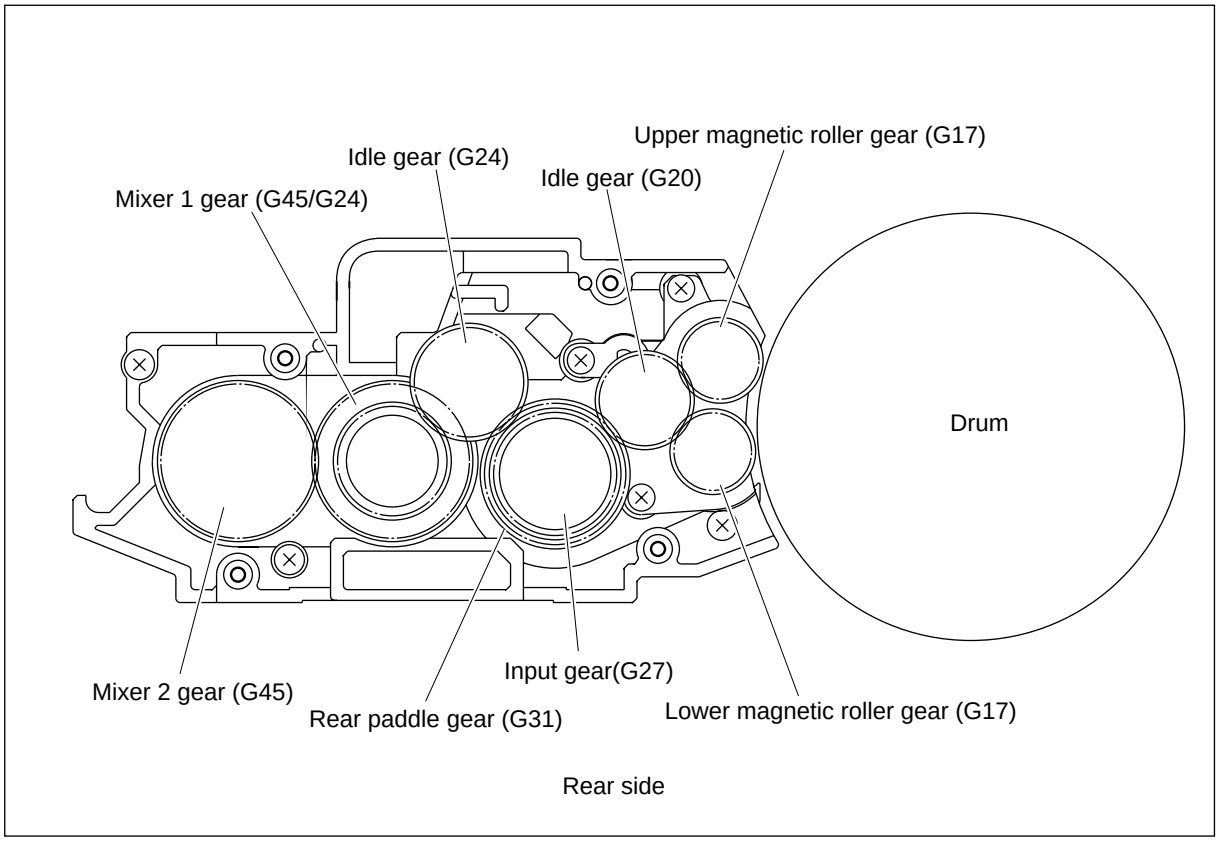


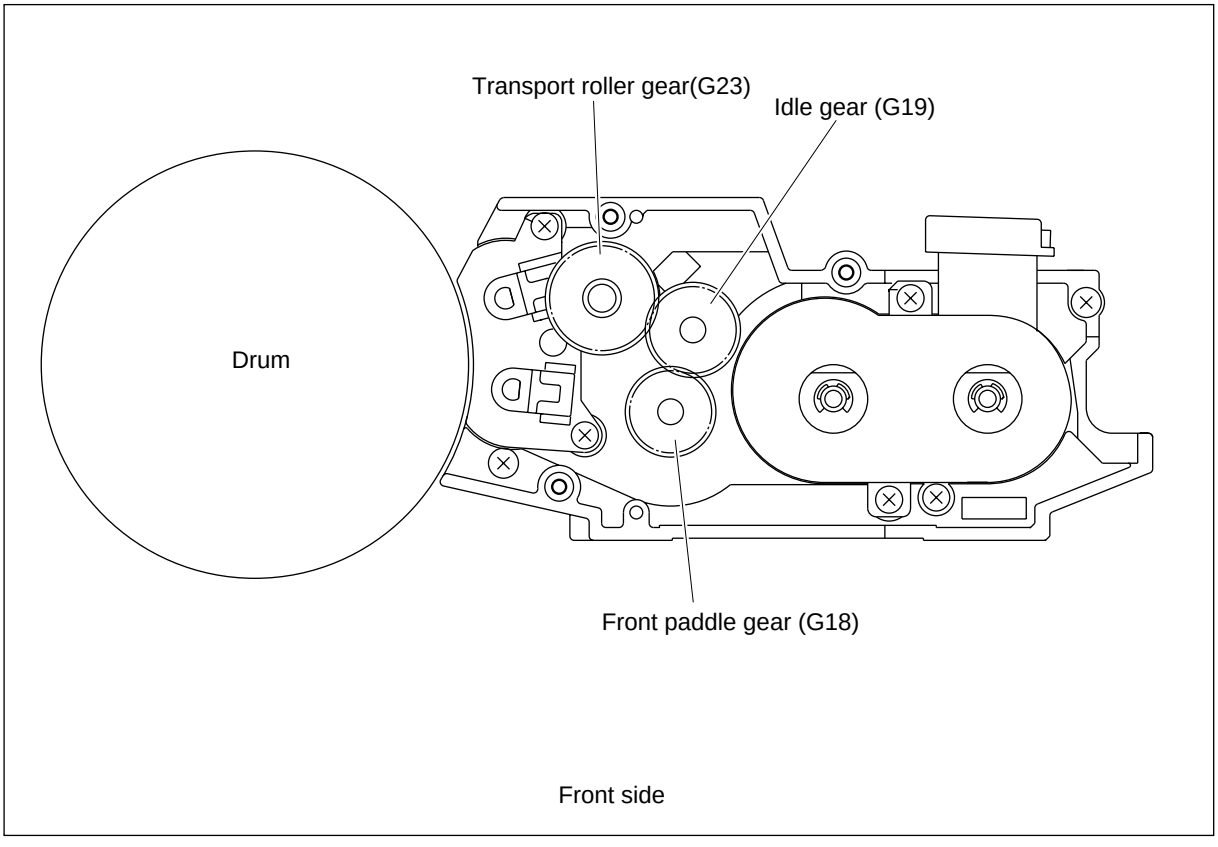


③ The left figure above shows the sensor lever lifted by the toner.

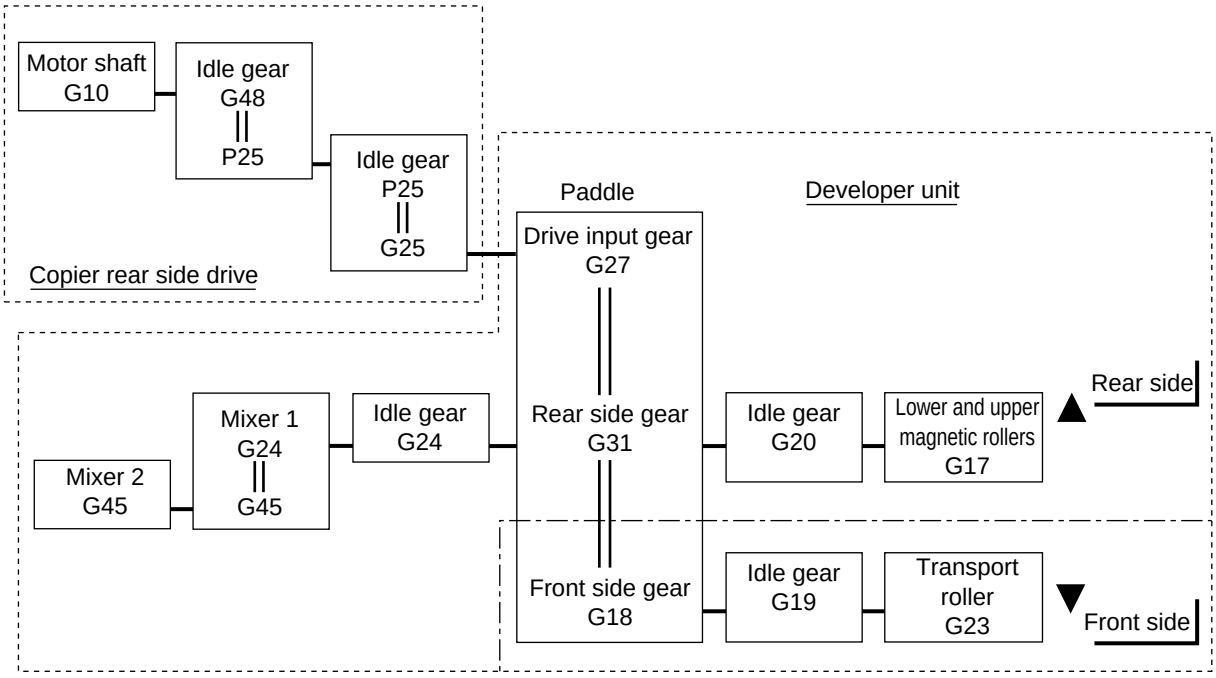
④ The right figure above shows the sensor lever down due to lack of toner and the magnetic sensor detecting the toner-empty state.

12.3 Developer Unit Drive





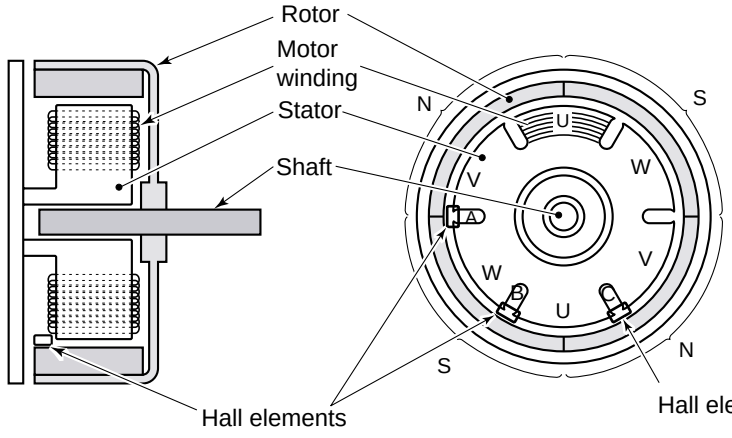
Developer Unit Drive



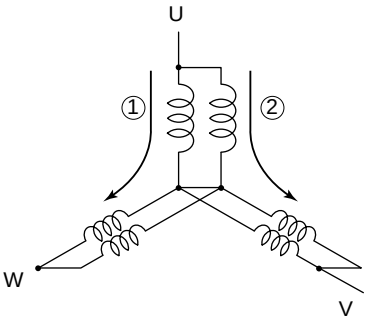
12.4 Motors

12.4.1 Developer motor (IC motor) drive

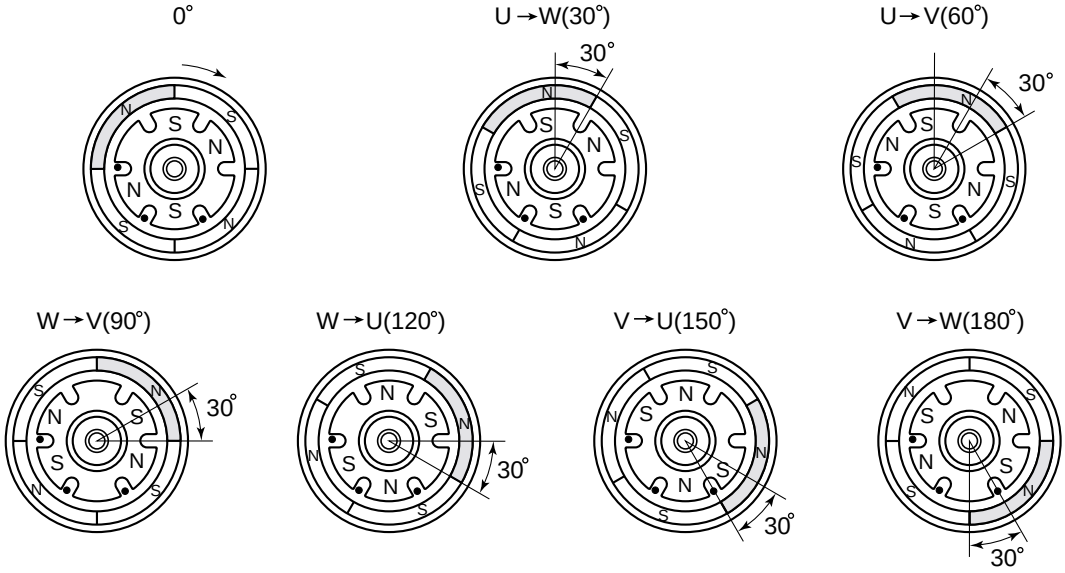
[A] IC motor

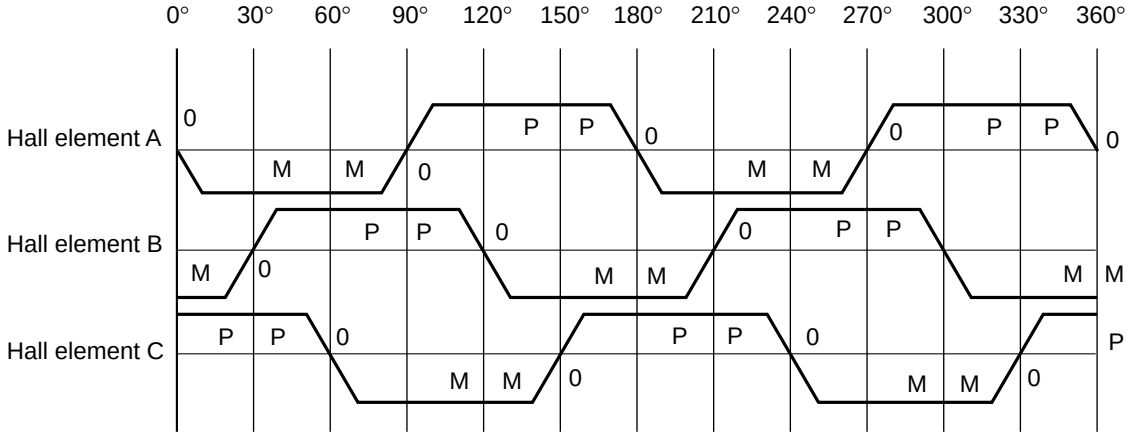


Structure of IC Motor



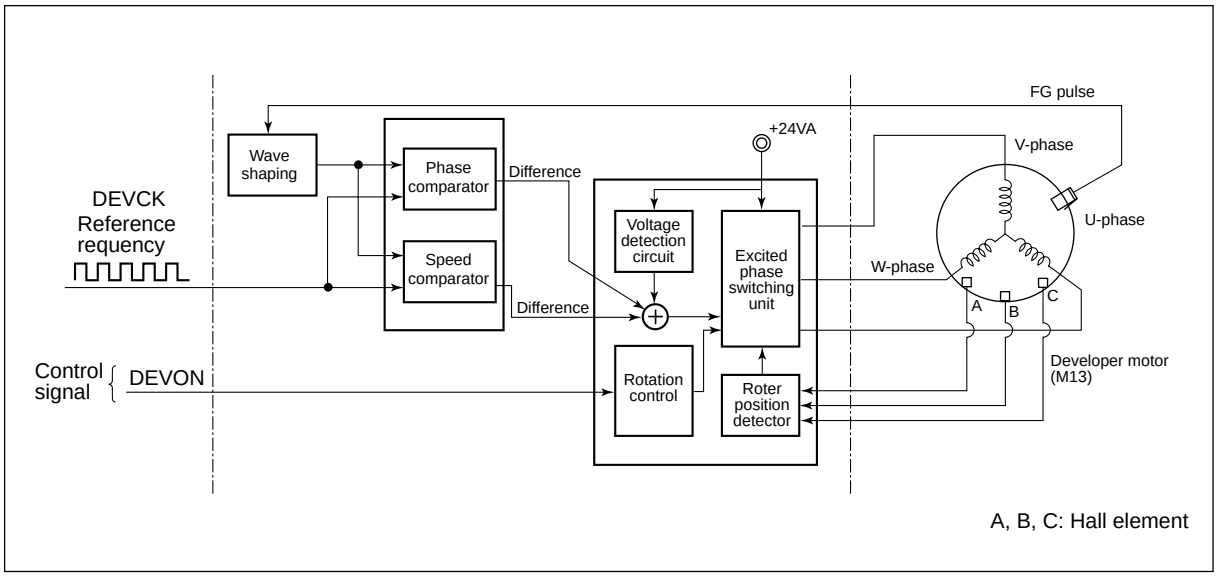
Equivalent Circuit of Motor Winding





Hall voltage

[B] Developer motor drive



(1) The LGC transmits control signals for the developer motor rotation (DEVON: motor rotation command).

(2) The excitation phase switching unit excites each phase on the developer motor. →Developer motor rotates.

(3) Hall elements A to C are used to detect the rotational position of the motor (or rotor).

(4) The excitation phase switching unit switches the excitation for each phase (By repeating steps (2) through (4) above, the motor keeps rotating.).

(5) The FG pulse is generated by the rotation of the developer motor.

(6) The phases and velocities of the FG pulse and the reference frequency from the LGC are compared, and the differences are added. Further to this are added the fluctuations in the power supply voltage (Signal generation).

(7) Changes the switching timing for the excitation phase switching unit to match the signal amount obtained in step (6).
That is, the FG pulse and reference frequency are controlled to be equal. →The developer motor rotates at a constant speed (Locked range state.).

(8) When the DEVON signal changes to “H” level, the developer motor stops.

[C] Control signals

(1) DEVCK signal (LGC→DEV-MOT:input)

This signal is a reference clock signal for the developer motor to rotate at a fixed speed. The frequency of the reference clock is 821.2Hz.

When the cycle of FG pulse deviation from the reference frequency is within ±6.25%, this state is specified as lock range (normal rotation). Also, at this time, the LED “LP1” light comes ON.

(2) DEVON signal (LGC→DEV-MOT: input)

This signal is the motor ON/OFF control signal. When it becomes “L” level, the motor rotates.

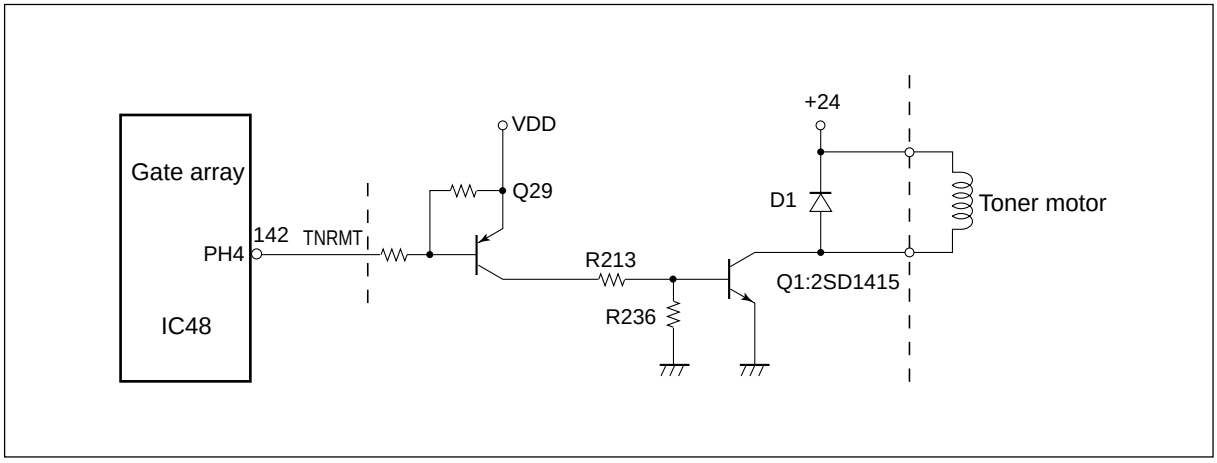
Signal level of motor circuit

Signal	“H” level	“L” level
DEVCK	Reference clock (821.2Hz)	
DEVON	Motor OFF	Motor ON

12.4.2 Brush motor (toner motor (M14)) drive circuit

The toner motor is provided to supply toner for the developer unit.

The toner motor is driven by transistor 2SD1415 (Q1 on the logic PC board), and its circuit is structured as follows.



The motor winding is connected to the +24V at its (+) side and to the collector of Q40 at its (–) side.

-When PH4 (TNRMT signal) of the gatearray becomes “L” level-

- Q29 is turned on → Q1 is turned on
- The +24V power supply supplies current to Q1 via the motor winding → the motor rotates

-When TNRMT signal becomes “H” level-

- Q29 is turned off → Q1 is tuned off
- The current which was flowing in the motor winding flows via the route of diode D1.

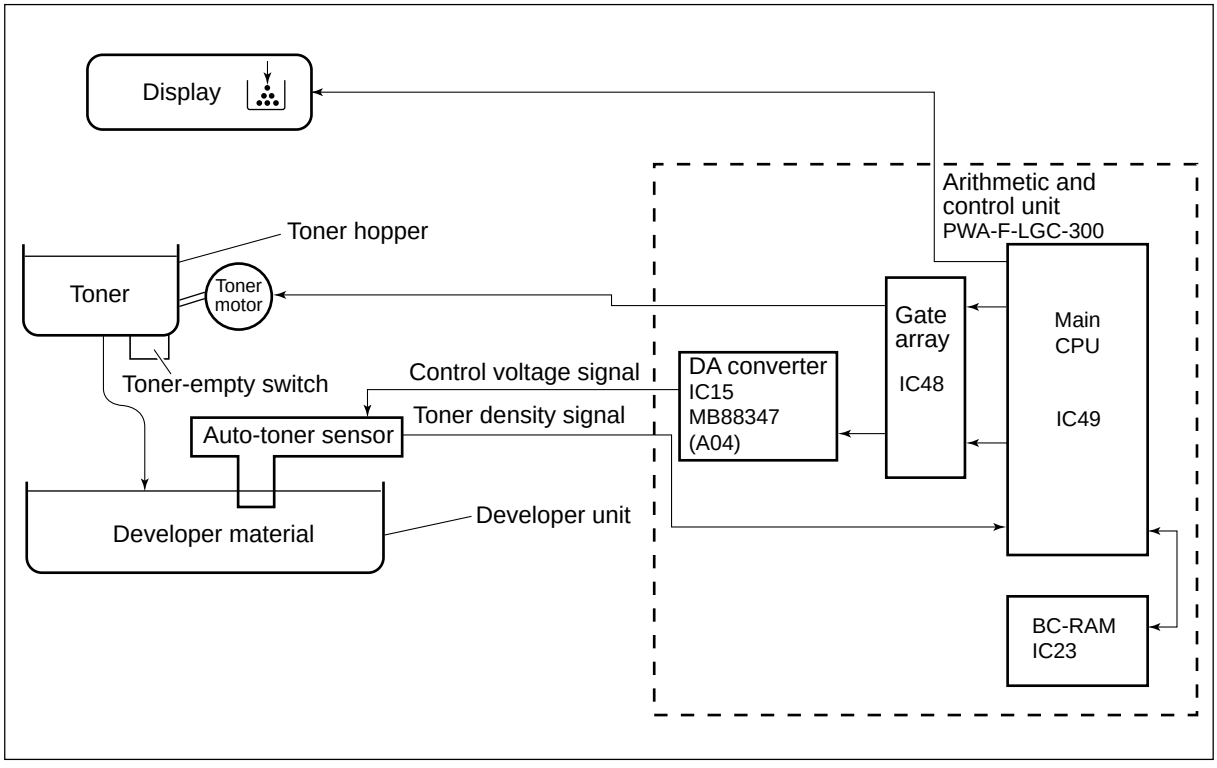
~ It decreases at the rate of the time constant determined by the inductance and resistance of the winding.

- The motor stops.

12.5 Auto-Toner Sensor Circuit

12.5.1 Brief description

- Functions of auto-toner circuit.
  - Detects the density of the toner in the developer material
  - ~ Density drops → toner supply.
  - Detects that the toner in the toner hopper has been used up (toner-empty).
- Configuration of auto-toner circuit.
  - Auto-toner sensor: Detects toner density.
  - Control section: Control to maintain the toner in the developer material at a constant specific density.
  - Toner motor: Replenishes the toner in the developer material.
  - Display unit: Displays the toner-empty status.



12.5.2 Operation of auto-toner sensor

(1) Functions of auto-toner sensor.

① Initialization function:

-When the copier is set up or when the developer material is replaced-

Automatic or semi-automatic adjustment is made so that the output of the auto-toner sensor (input value of the main CPU) will be 2.45 to 2.55V for the toner density of new developer material.

② Toner the density stabilization function:

-During the copying operation-

- Toner consumption→toner density decreases→detection that the auto-toner sensor output changes→toner motor drive→supply of toner to the developer unit from the toner hopper.
  ~ Maintains toner density at a constant level.

③ Toner-empty detection, release function:

- Detects toner-empty situation inside toner hopper
  ~ Drives toner motor→auto-toner sensor output is not changed→the toner density does not change→judges that there is no toner (toner empty).
- Release of toner-empty situation.
  ~ Toner supply→driving the toner motor→auto-toner sensor output changes→returning of toner density of normal value→toner-empty release.

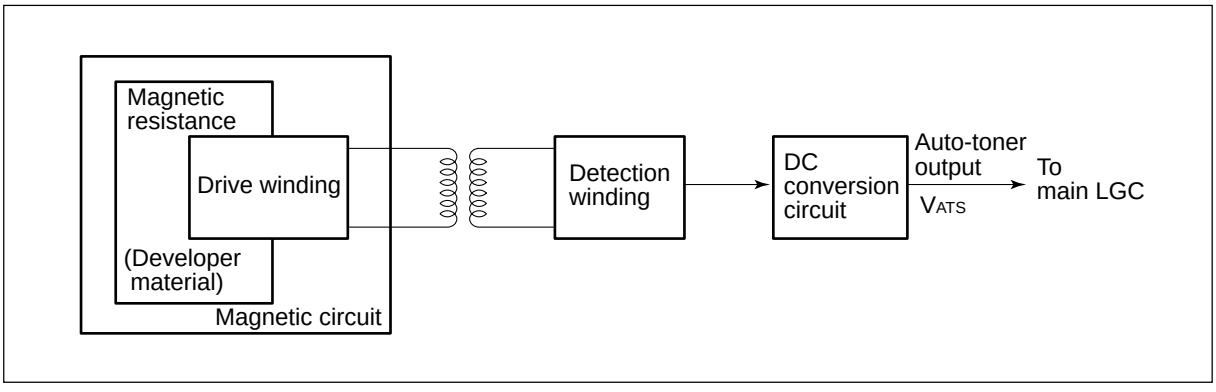
(2) Mechanism of auto-toner sensor.

The auto-toner sensor is composed of the following circuits.

- Drive winding: Magnetic head with a high-frequency magnetic field (primary side).
  Placed in developer material and forms magnetic circuit.
- Detection winding: Receives the changes in magnetic resistance of the developer material via a magnetic circuit (Secondary side).
- DC conversion circuit: Converts the high-frequency output from the detection winding to a DC signal.

  ↓

  Auto-toner output V_{ATS}



-When the toner density is low-

Iron powder (carrier) in the developer material ..... much
Toner in the developer material ..... little

→Magnetic resistance: small→detection output: large→auto-toner output V_{ATS}: large

-When the toner density is high-

Iron powder (carrier) in the developer material ..... little
Toner in the developer material ..... much

→Magnetic resistance: large→detection output: small→auto-toner output V_{ATS}: small

- DC voltage corresponding to toner density in the developer material = auto-toner output V_{ATS}

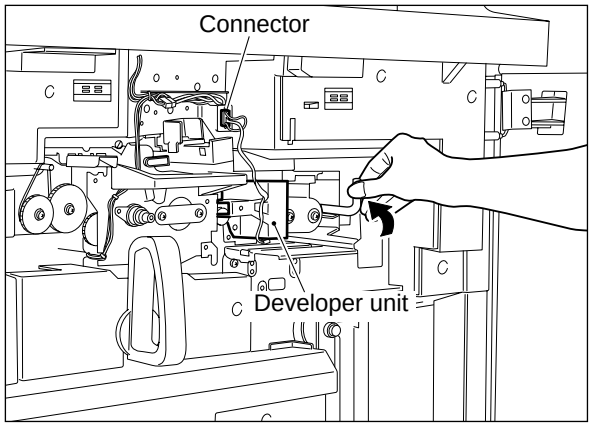
12.6 Disassembly and Replacement

[A] Developer unit

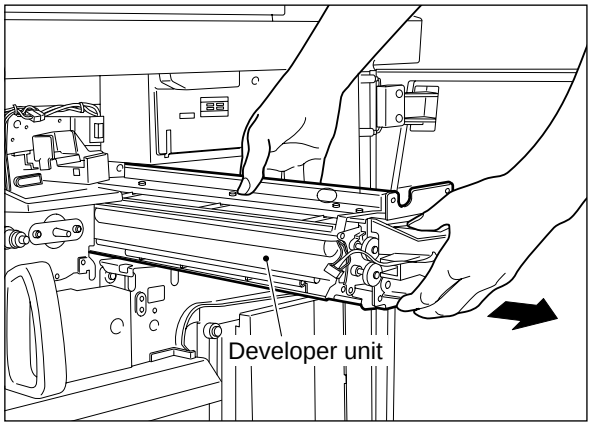
(1) Remove the upper inner cover.

(2) Turn the developer unit slide lever counterclockwise.

(3) Disconnect the 1 connector.



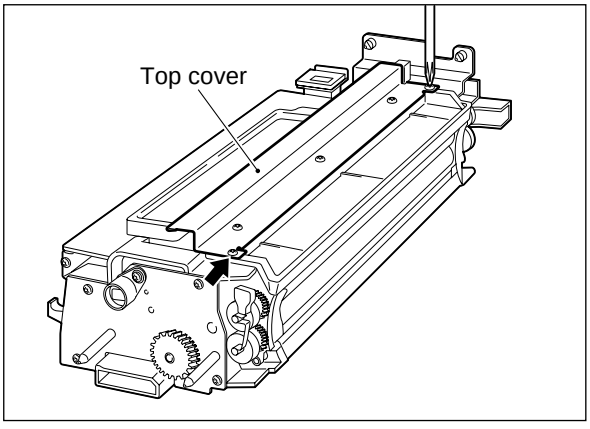
(4) Pull the developer unit toward the front.



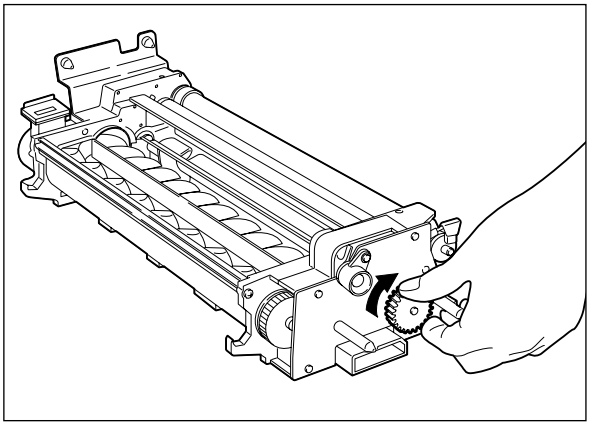
[B] Developer material

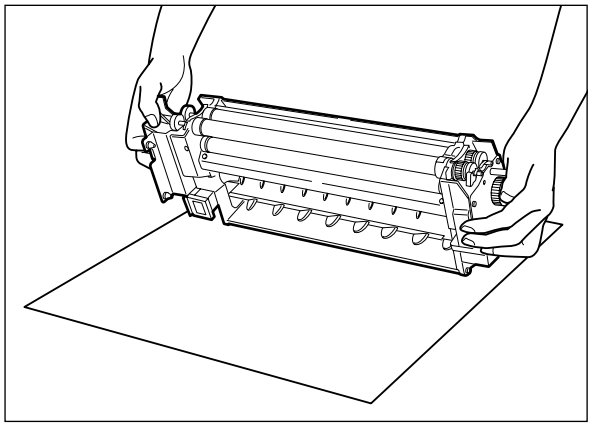
(1) Remove the developer unit.

(2) Remove the top cover (2 screws).

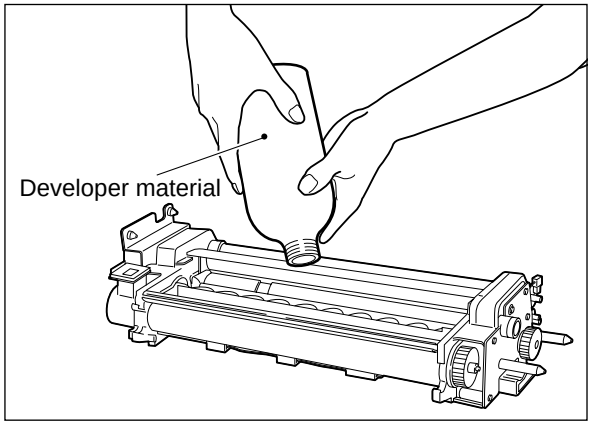


(3) Completely remove the old developer material while rotating the gear on the rear side plate.

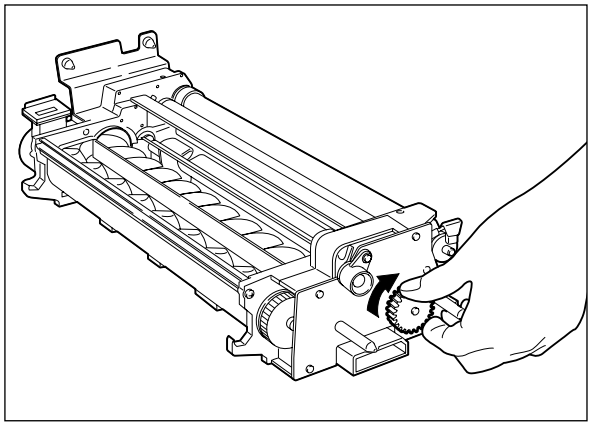




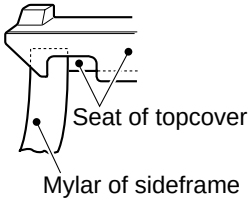
(4) Fill with new developer material.

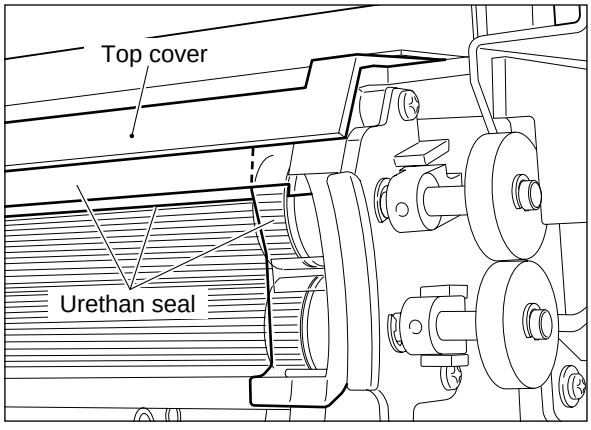


(5) Rotate the gear several times to distribute the developer material evenly.
(6) Install the top cover.



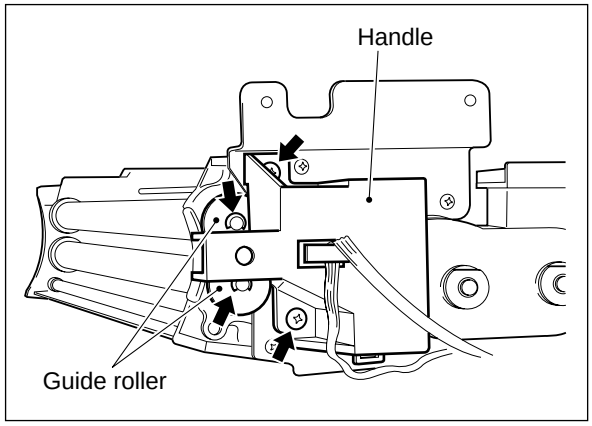
Note: When installing the top cover, position it securely on its hooks and be sure not catch the urethane seal.





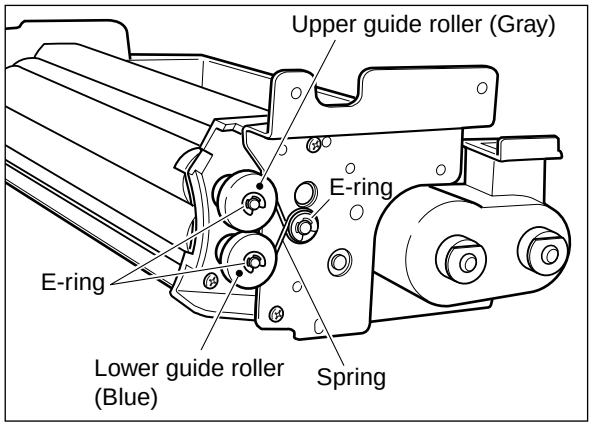
[C] Guide roller

(1) Remove the developer unit.
(2) Remove the developer unit handles (2 screws).

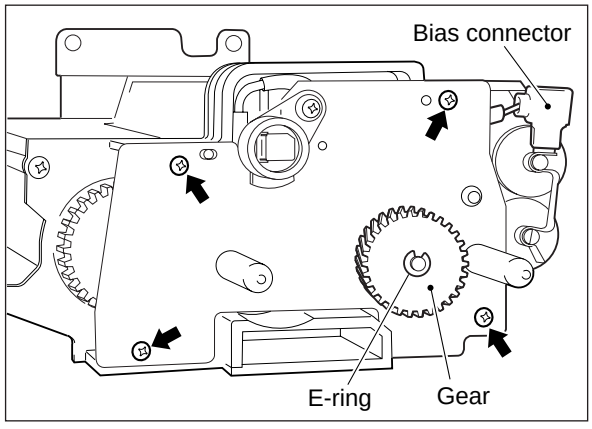


(3) Remove the E-ring and then the spring.
(4) Remove the 2 E-rings and both the front guide rollers from the magnetic roller shaft.

Note: Pay attention to the color of the rollers when assembling the upper and lower guide rollers.

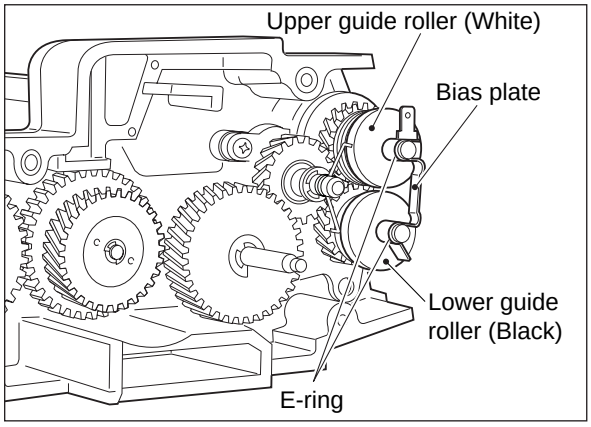


(5) Remove the E-ring and then the gear.
(6) Remove the rear side plate (4 screws) and then disconnect the bias connector.



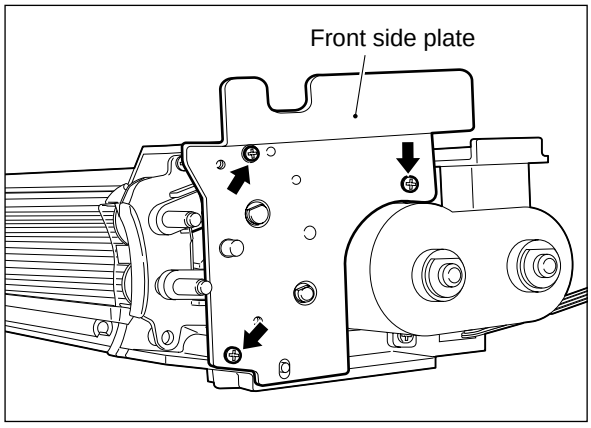
(7) Remove the 2 E-rings and bias plate.
(8) Remove the spring and the 2 rear guide rollers from the magnetic roller shaft.

Note: Pay attention to the color of the rollers when assembling the upper and lower guide rollers.

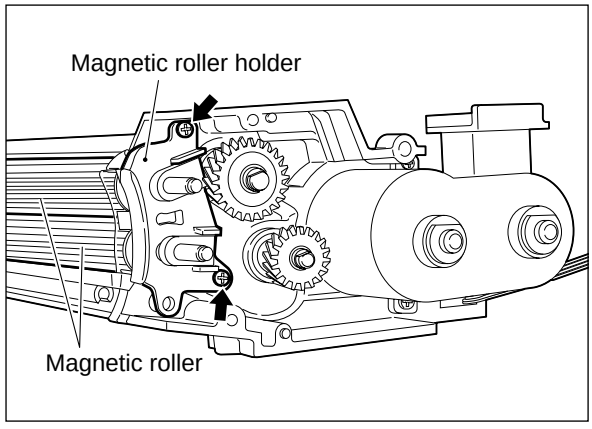


[D] Developer magnetic roller

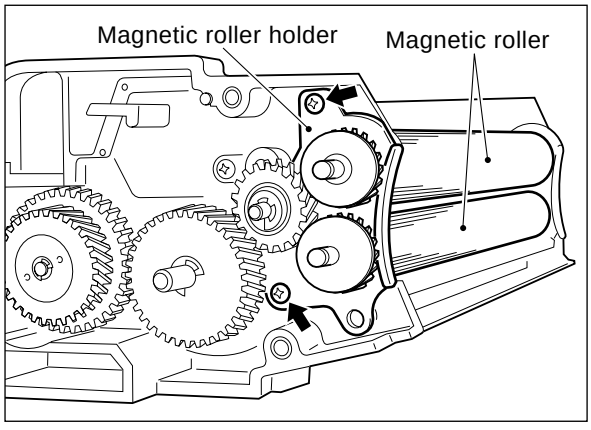
(1) Remove the developer material.
(2) Remove the E-ring and then the spring.
(3) Remove the front guide rollers.
(4) Remove the front side plate (3 screws).



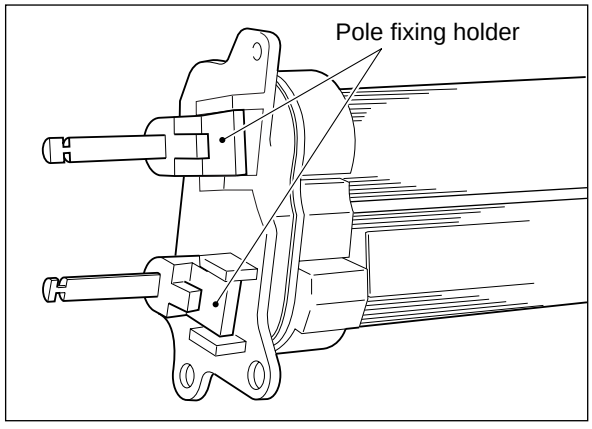
(5) Remove the 2 fixing screws on the front magnetic roller holder.
(6) Remove the rear side plate (4 screws).



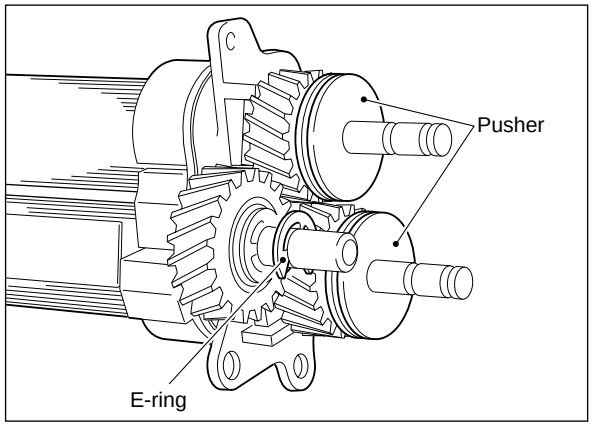
(7) Remove the 2 fixing screws on the rear magnetic roller holder.
(8) Remove the entire upper and lower roller sub unit from the developer.



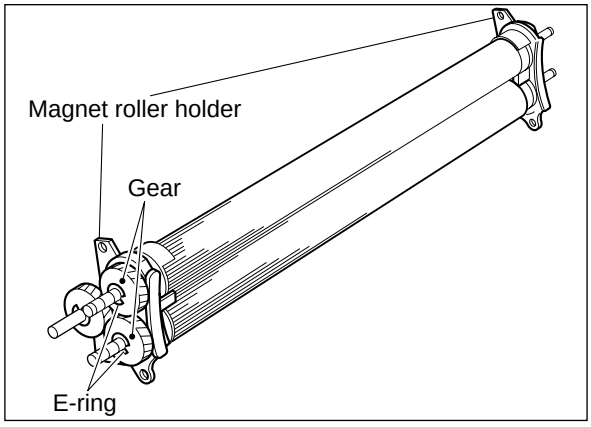
(9) Remove the 2 pole fixing holders and the 2 E-rings on the inside.



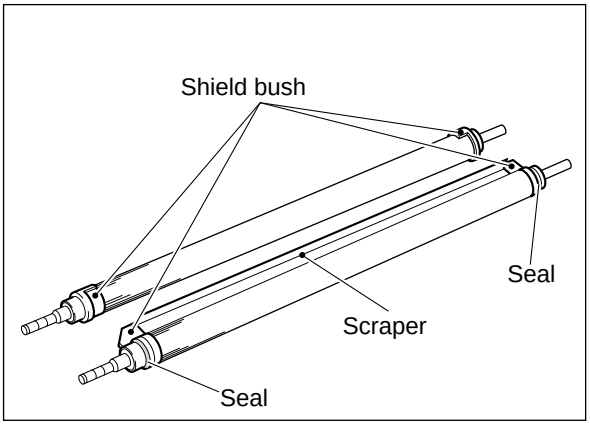
(10) Remove the 2 pushers.



(11) Remove the 2 E-rings and 2 gears.
(12) Remove the magnetic roller holders from the front and the rear sides.

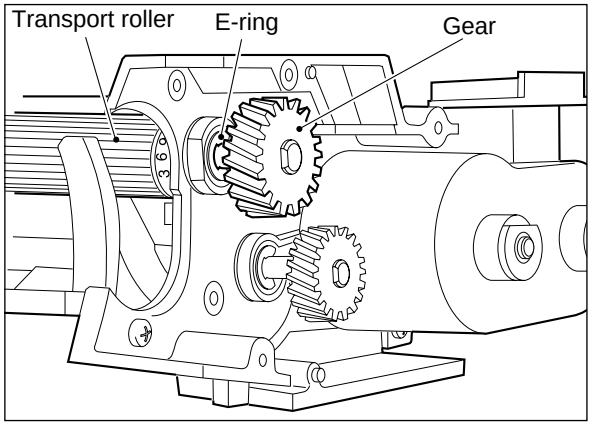


(13) Remove the 2 seals the 4 shield bushes on both ends of the developer roller, scraper, and the upper and lower magnetic rollers.

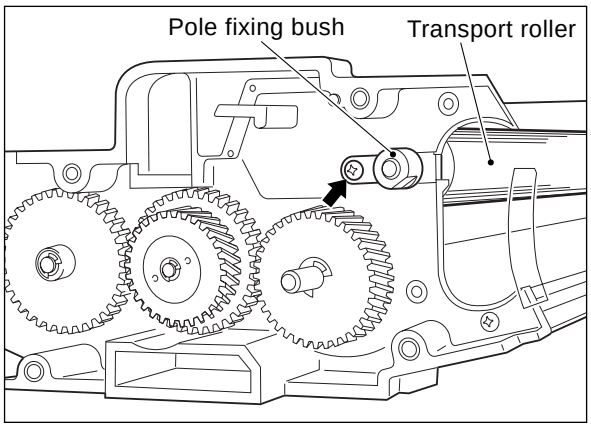


[E] Transport magnetic roller

(1) Remove the upper and lower developer roller sub unit.
(2) Remove the front gear and the E-ring.

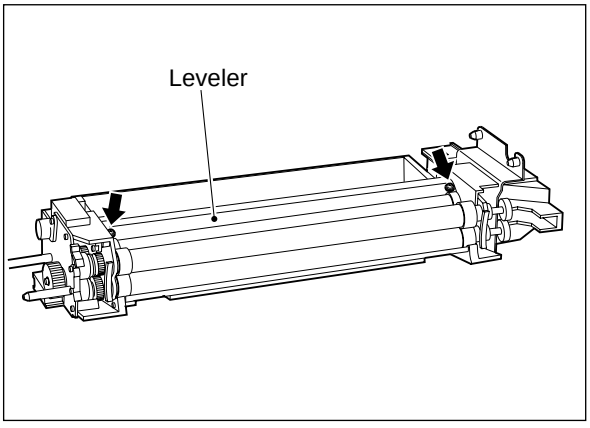


(3) Remove rear side screw, and then the transport roller and pole fixing bush.
(4) Remove the front side bearing and transport roller.

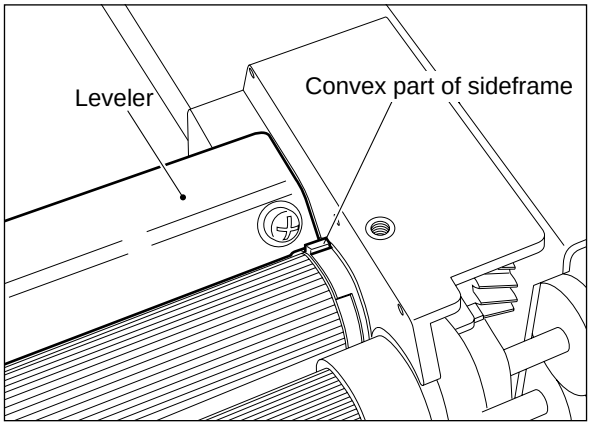


[F] Leveler

(1) Remove the top cover.
(2) Remove the 2 screws and then the leveler.

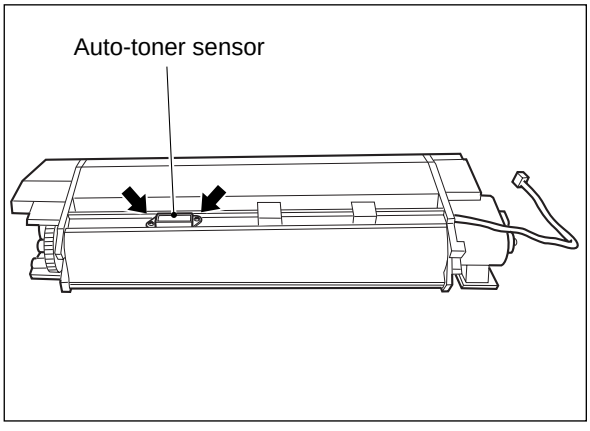


Note: When installing the leveler, both ends of the leveller must be contacting the protrusions on the front and rear side frames (2 screws).



[G] Auto-toner sensor

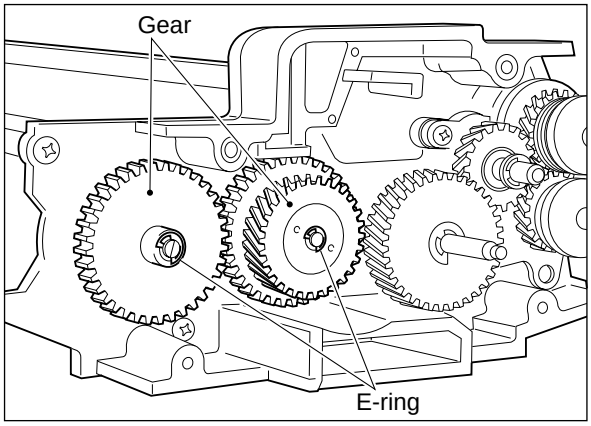
(1) Remove developer material.
(2) Remove the auto-toner sensor (2 screws).



[H] Oil seal (mixer section)

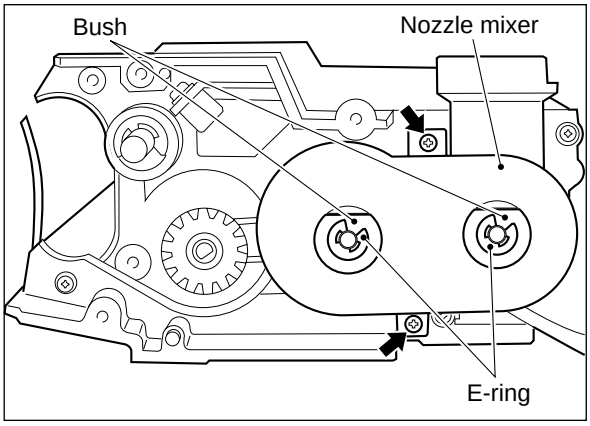
(1) Remove the rear side plate.

(2) Remove the 2 E-rings and 2 gears.

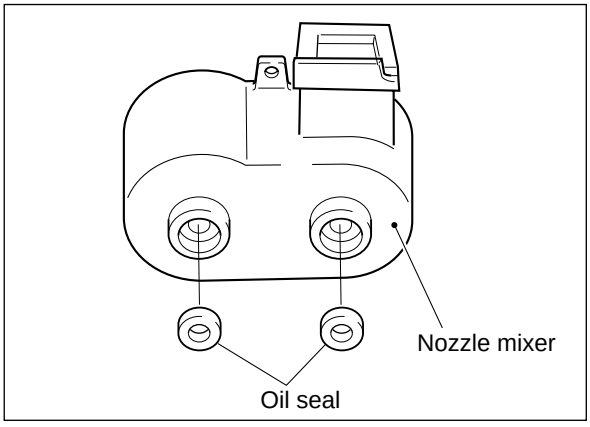


(3) Remove the 2 screws and draw out the nozzle mixer.

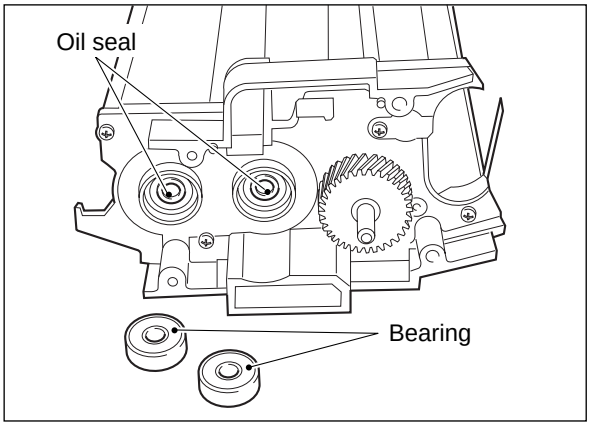
(4) Remove the 2 E-rings and 2 bushes.



(5) Remove the 2 oil seals from the nozzle mixer with the C-ring pliers.

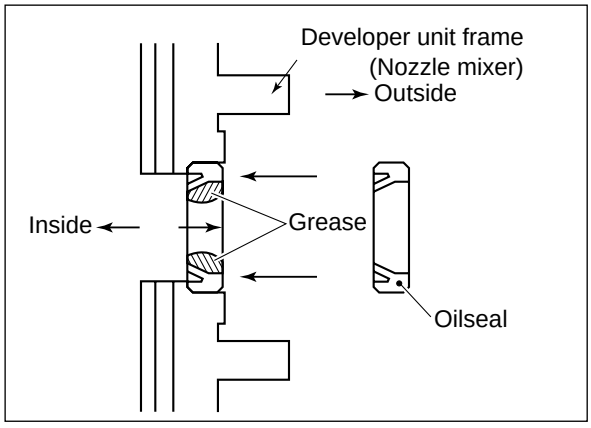


(6) After removing the 2 bearings with the C-ring pliers, remove the 2 oil seals.



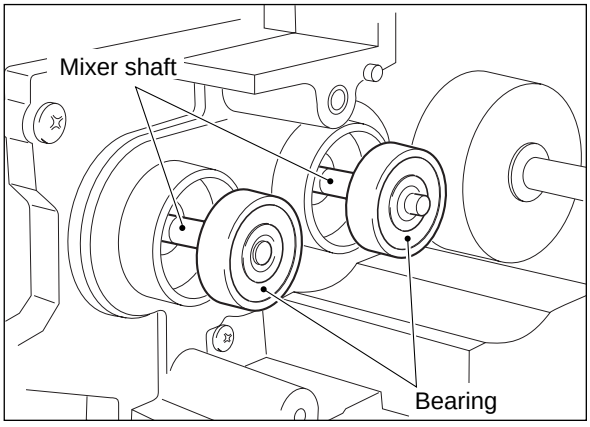
Notes: Assembling the oil seal

1. Push the new oil seal in parallel to the mounting holes of the developer frame (or the nozzle mixer).
   * Pay attention to the direction that the oil seal is assembled (See figure on right).
2. Apply a uniform coating of grease to the inside surface of the oil seal.
   - Amount: 2 large drops
   - Grease: Alvania No.2
3. Wipe off any surplus grease that oozes out from inside.



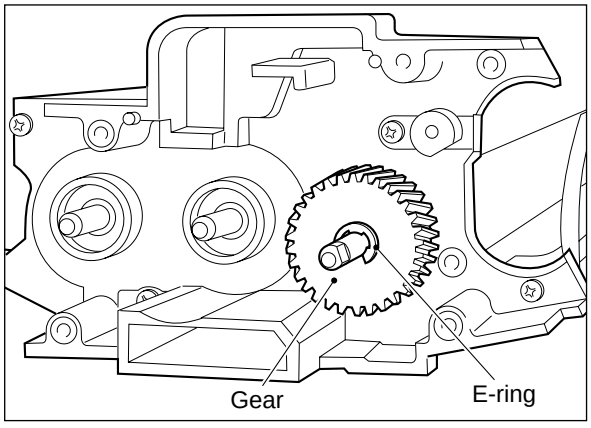
Note: Assembling the bearing

Coat the entire periphery of the mixer shaft with grease (Alvania No.2) and assemble the bearing.

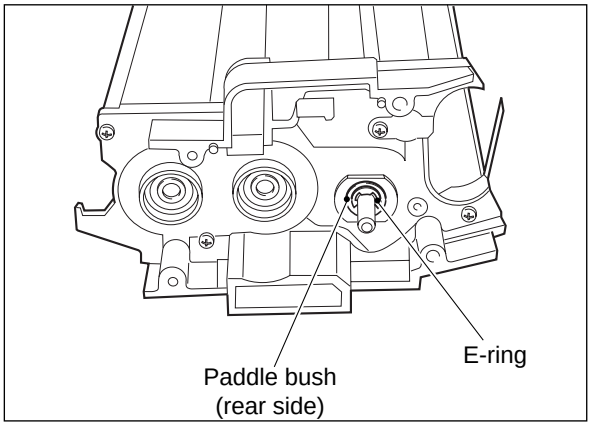


[I] Oil seal (paddle section)

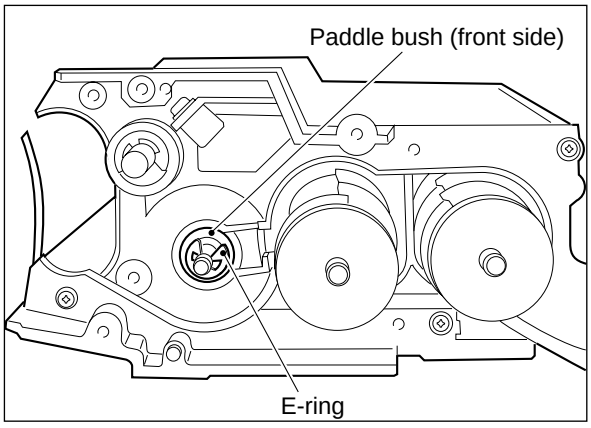
(1) Remove the front side plate, rear side plate and nozzle mixer.
(2) Remove the E-ring, and then the gear and parallel pin.



(3) Remove the E-ring and then the rear paddle bush.
(4) Remove the gear and then the E-ring.

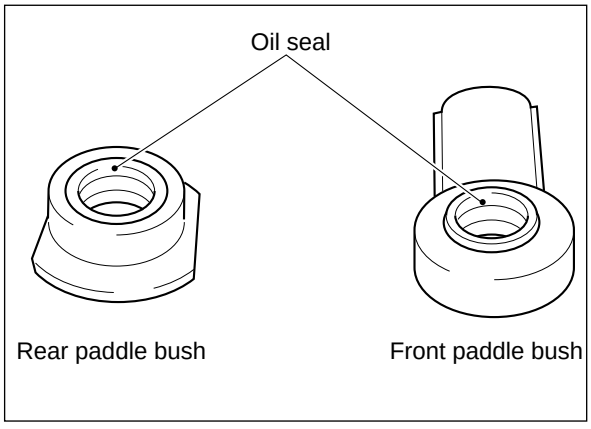


(5) Remove the front paddle bush.



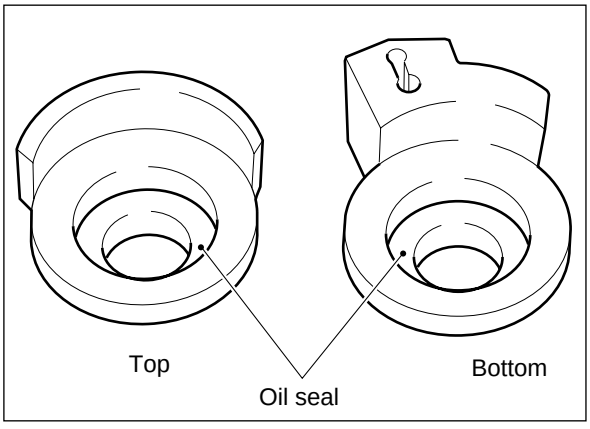
(6) Remove each of the oil seals pressure-fitted into the paddle bushes on the front and rear sides.

Note: The oil seal installation follows the description in previous item [H].



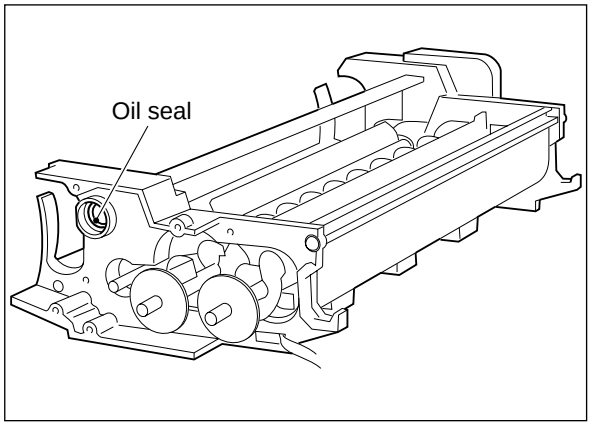
[J] Oil seal (upper/lower developer rollers and transport roller)

(1) Remove the 2 sealed bushes on the rear side from the upper and lower developer rollers.
(2) Remove each of the oil seals pressure-fitted into the sealed bushes on the front and rear sides.
(3) Remove the transport roller.



(4) Remove the oil pressure-fitted into the front side frame.

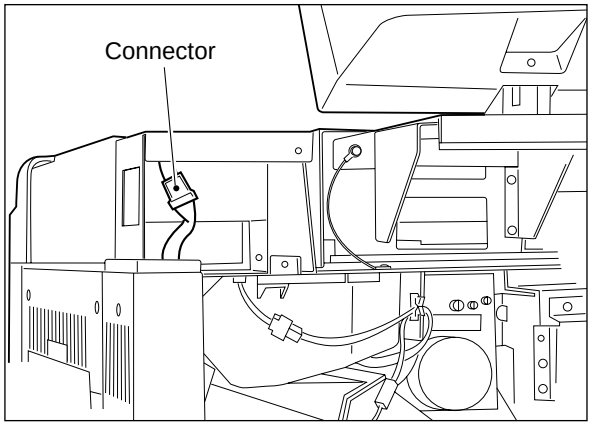
Note: The oil seal installation follows the description in previous item [H].



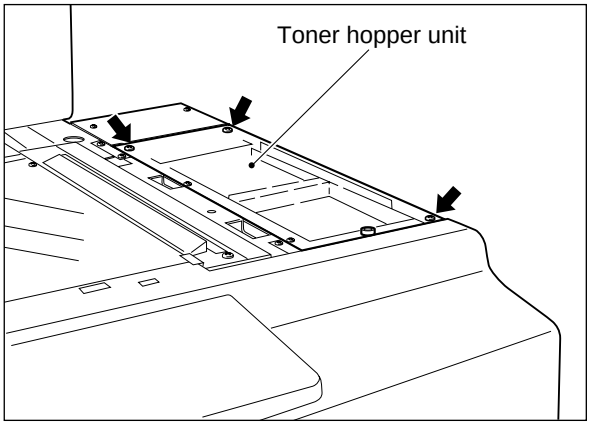
[K] Toner hopper unit

(1) Remove the rear cover and right top cover.

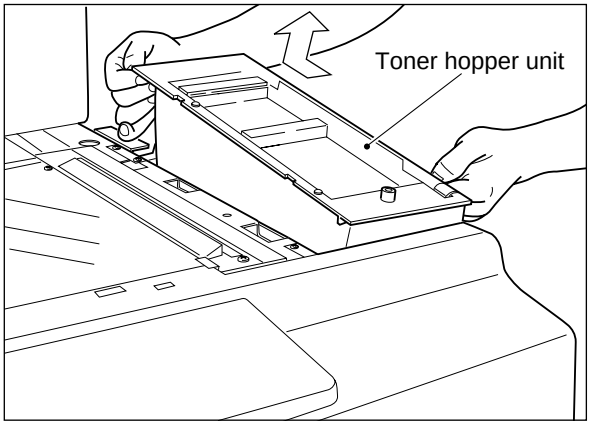
(2) Disconnect the connector.



(3) Remove the 3 screws.

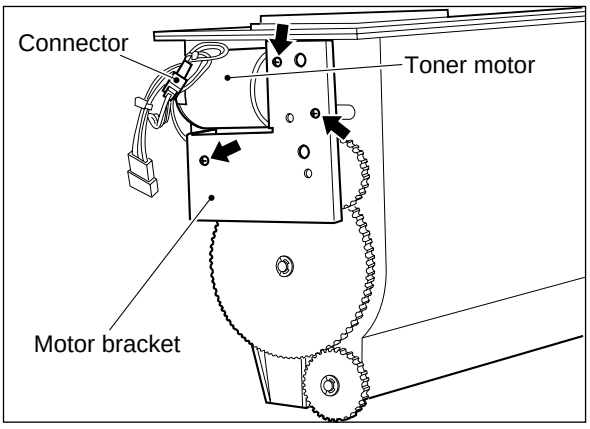


(4) Press the toner hopper unit towards the rear side to release the hooks, and then lift the rear side up at an angle to remove.

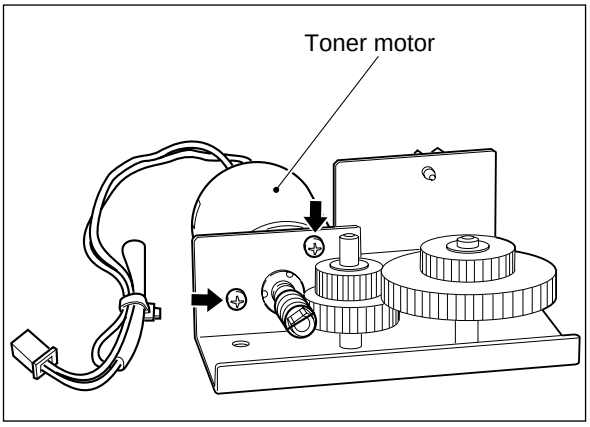


[L] Toner motor

(1) Remove the toner hopper unit.
(2) Disconnect the toner motor connector.
(3) Remove the motor bracket (3 screws).

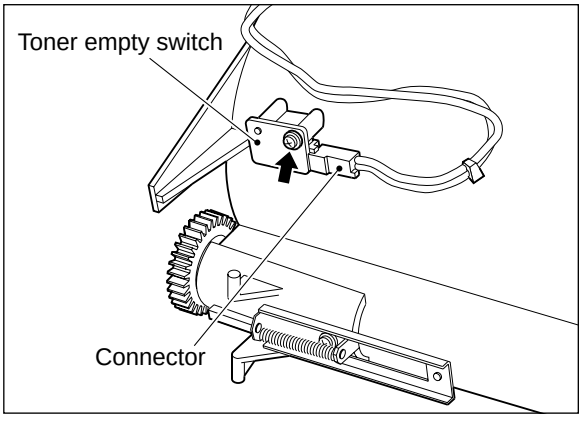


(4) Remove the toner motor (2 screws).



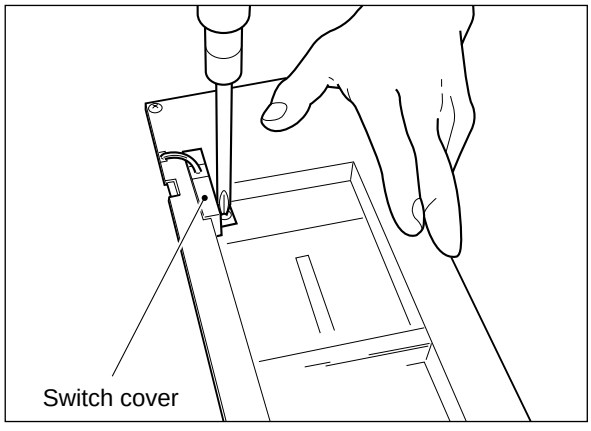
[M] Toner-empty switch

(1) Remove the toner hopper unit.
(2) Take out the screw, disconnect the connector, and remove the toner-empty switch.

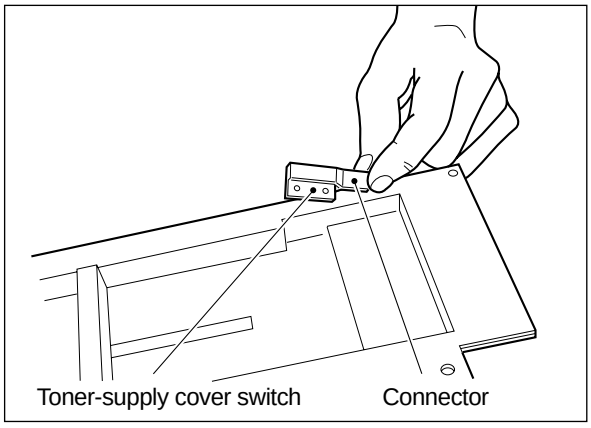


[N] Toner-supply cover switch

(1) Remove the switch cover (1 screw).

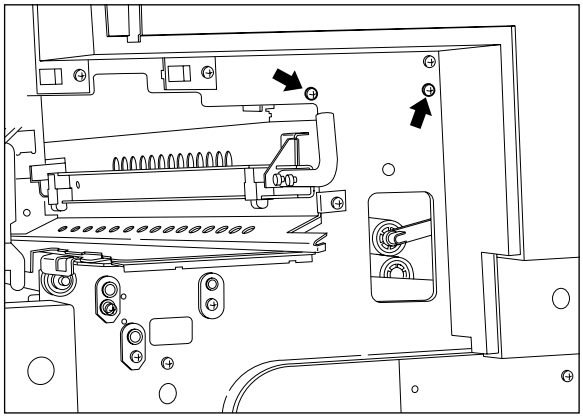


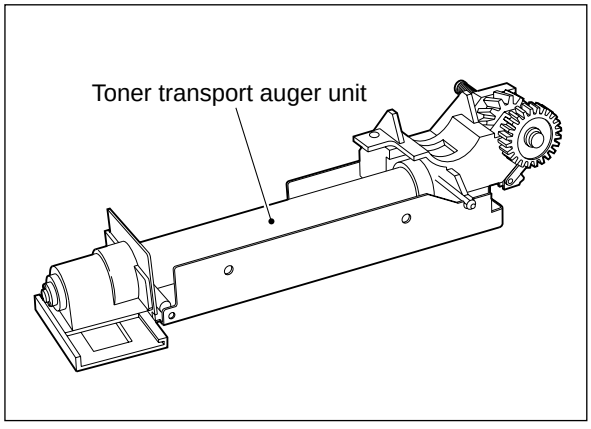
(2) Disconnect the connector and remove the toner-supply cover switch.



[O] Toner-transport auger unit

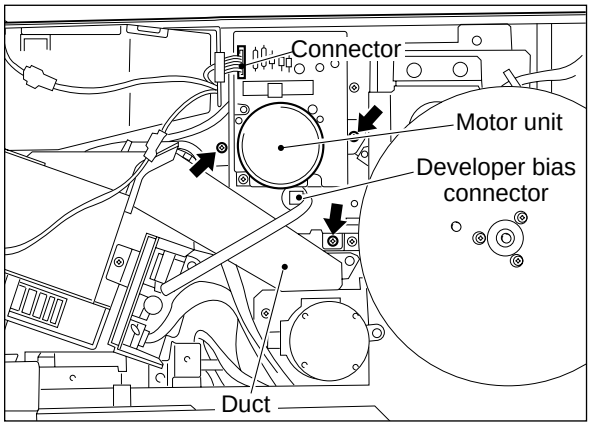
(1) Remove the upper feed cover.
(2) Remove the developer unit.
(3) Remove the toner hopper unit.
(4) Draw out the large capacity feeder.
(5) Remove the 2 screws.



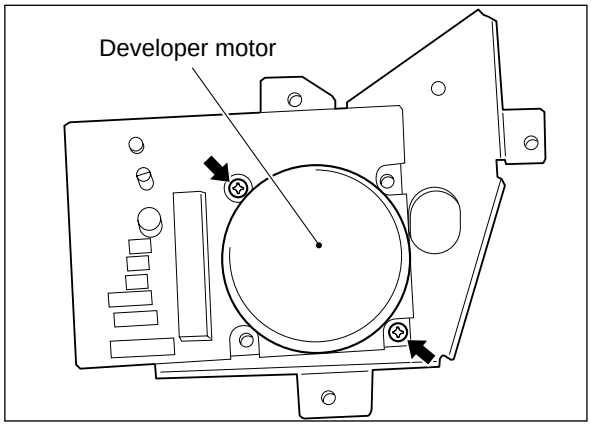


[P] Developer motor

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the developer bias connector and remove the duct (2 screws).
(3) Remove the motor unit (3 screws).

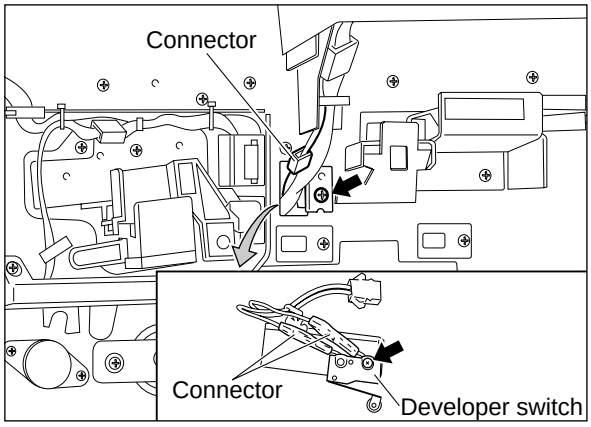


(4) Remove the developer motor (2 screws).



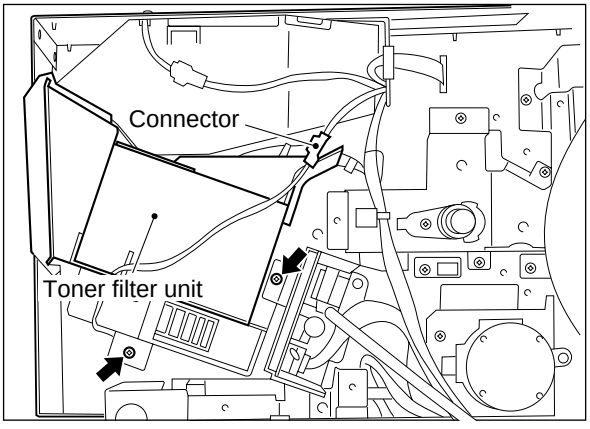
[Q] Developer switch

(1) Remove the right inner cover and the developer unit.
(2) Disconnect the connector and take off the harness from the harness clamp.
(3) Remove the switch bracket (1 screw).
(4) Disconnect the 2 connectors, and unscrew the screw and then remove the switch.



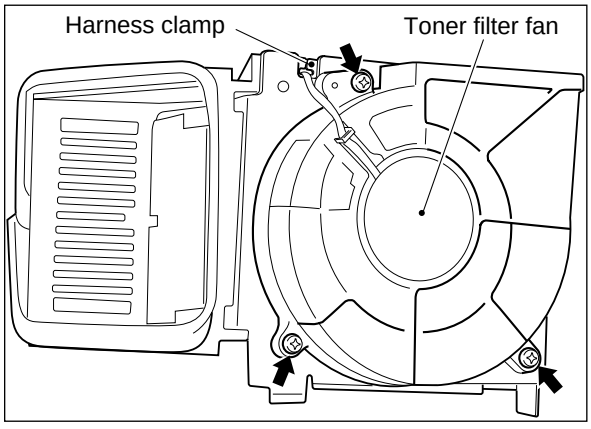
[R] Toner filter unit

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Remove the 2 screws, and disconnect the connector, and then remove the toner filter unit.



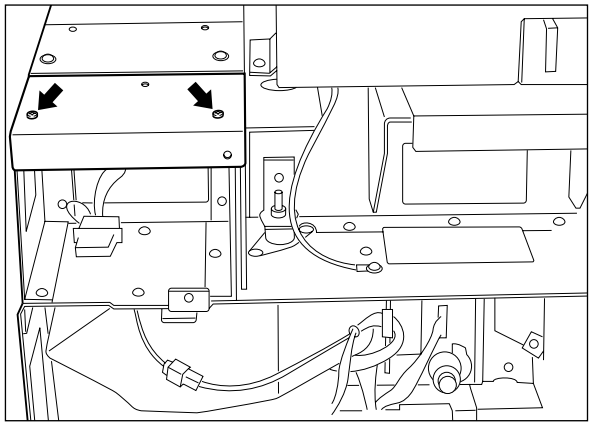
(3) Remove the 3 screws, the harness from the harness clamp, and then the toner filter fan.

Note: After installing the toner filter unit, make sure that the duct is properly overlapping the toner filter unit seal. (If there is a clearance between the duct and seals, toner may be blown out and dirty the inside of the copier.)

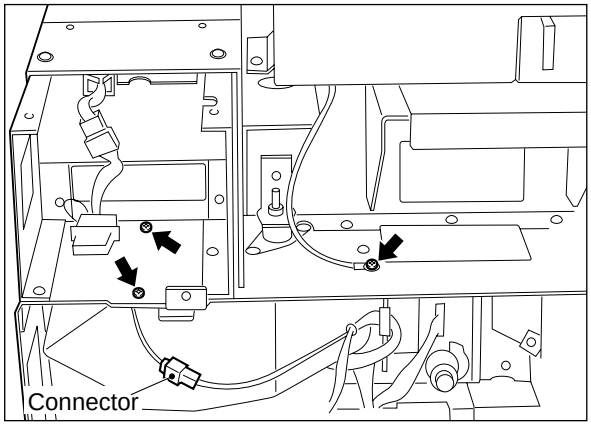


[S] Laser fan unit

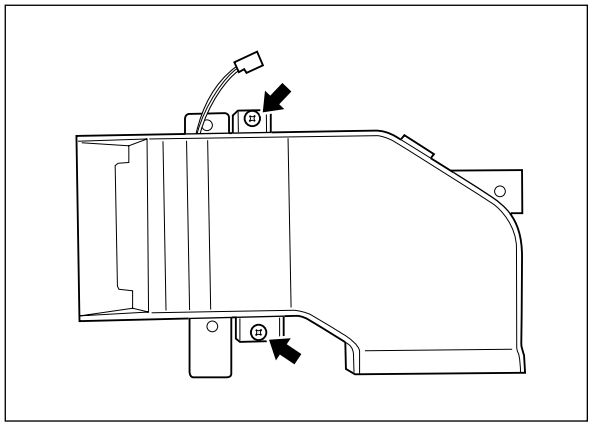
(1) Remove the cover behind the hopper (2 screws).



(2) Remove the 3 screws and disconnect the connector.

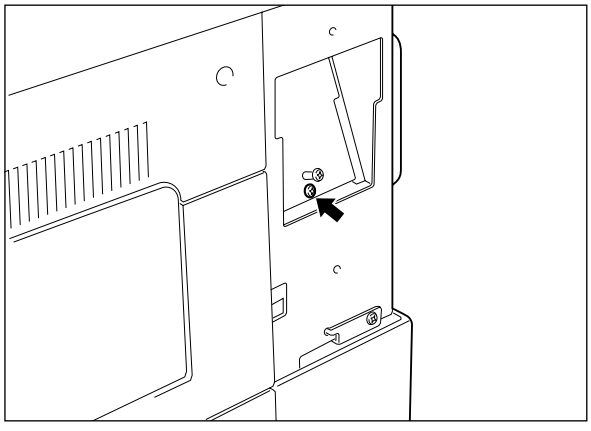


(3) Remove the 2 screws and the panel cover.
(4) Draw out the fan.

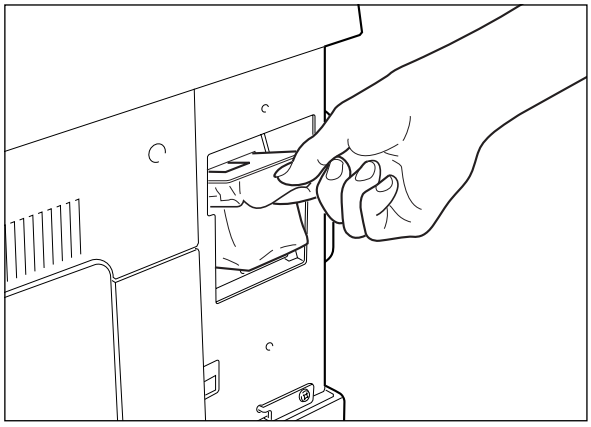


[T] Replacing toner filter

(1) Remove the feed cover.
(2) Remove the screw and the filter cover.



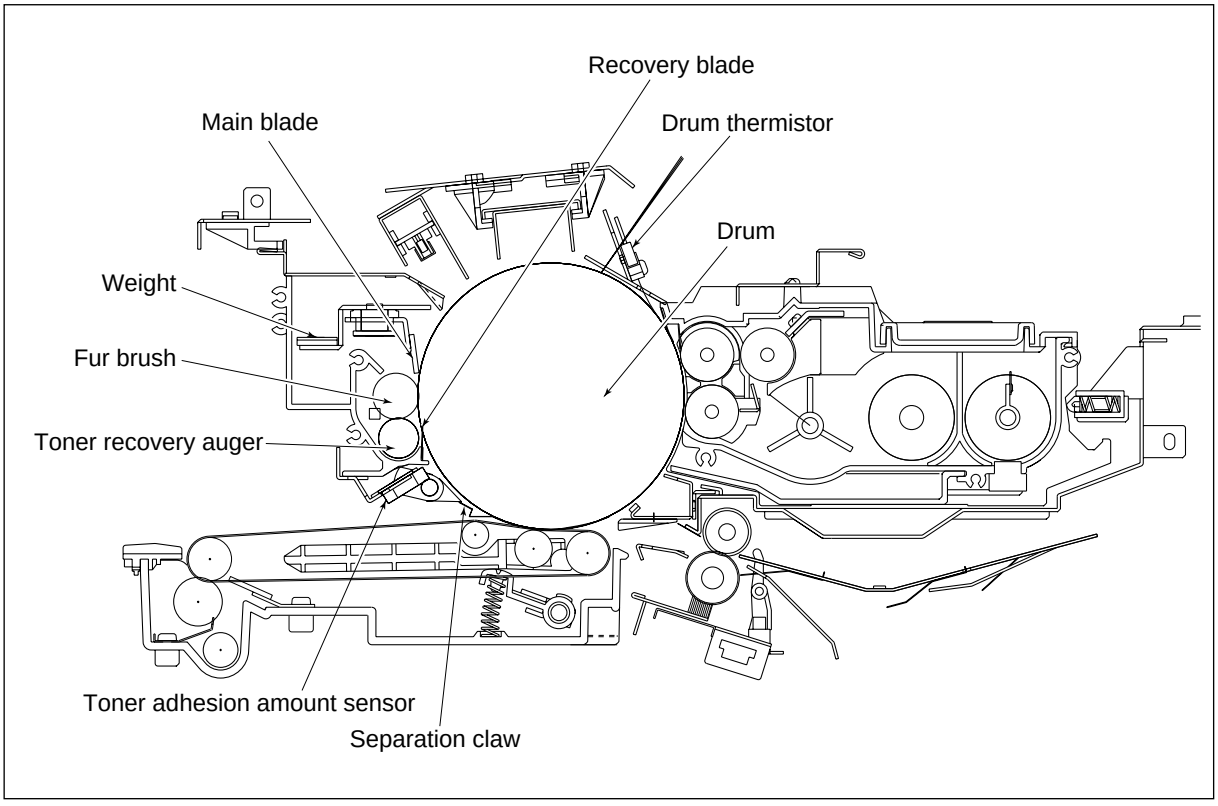
(3) Draw out the toner filter.

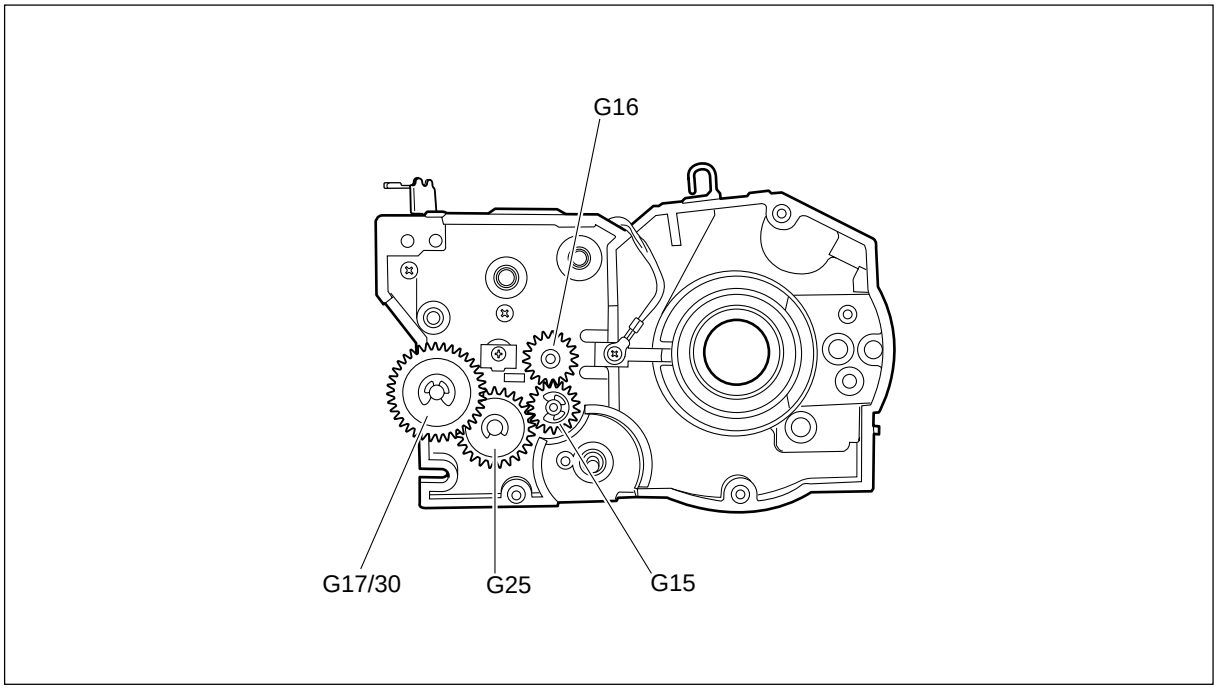


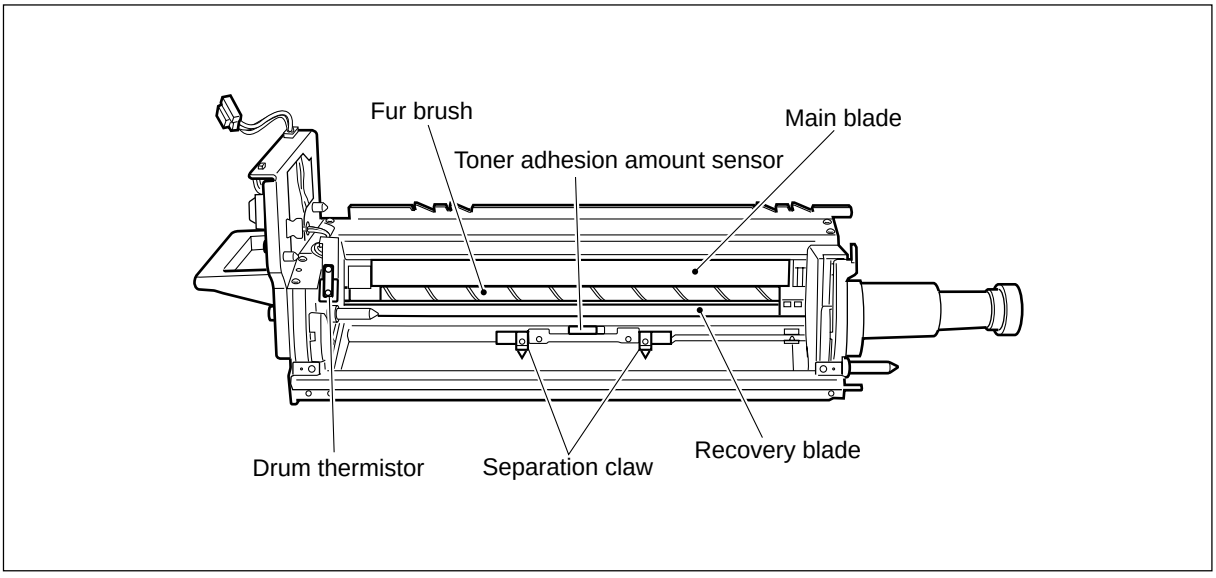
13. CLEANER UNIT

13.1 Construction

The cleaner unit consists of a driver section, cleaning section, waste toner carry section, fur brush, toner adhesion amount sensor, separation claw, toner full switch and toner bag.







13.2 Description of Functions

(1) Main blade

Scrapes off residual toner on the drum surface. The blade is pushed against the drum at a constant pressure by a weight. The main blade is separated from the drum by manually turning the lever.

(2) Recovery blade

Catches the toner after it is scraped off by the main blade.

(3) Toner recovery auger

Carries scraped residual toner to the toner bag via the waste toner carry auger unit.

(4) Toner bag

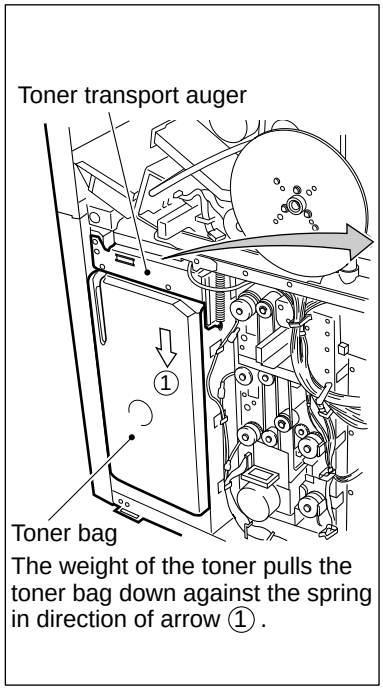
Toner scraped off by the main blade is carried by the toner recovery auger, and recovered to the toner bag via the waste toner carry auger unit.

(5) Toner full switch

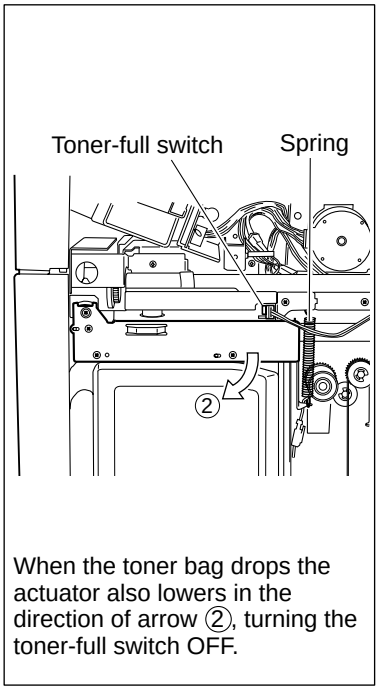
When the toner bag becomes full of recovered toner, its weight causes both the toner bag and actuator to drop, and the toggle switch to be turned OFF.

(6) Separation claw

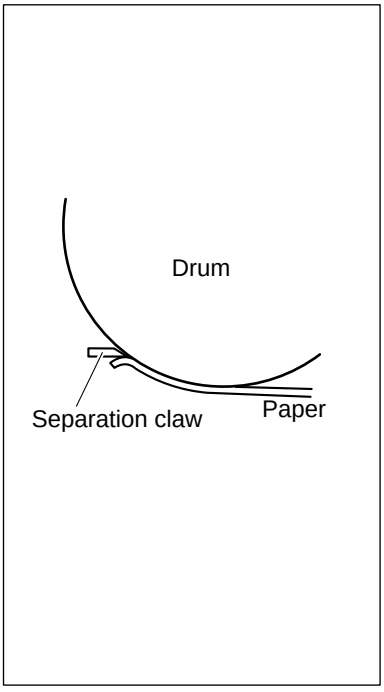
To separate paper that could not be separated by the transport belt, the separation claw is pressed against the drum by the separation claw solenoid only when the leading edge of the paper passes through.



The weight of the toner pulls the toner bag down against the spring in direction of arrow ① .



When the toner bag drops the actuator also lowers in the direction of arrow ②, turning the toner-full switch OFF.



(7) Toner adhesion amount sensor

Measures the relative reflectivity of the toner image on the drum to maintain the image density at an appropriate value.

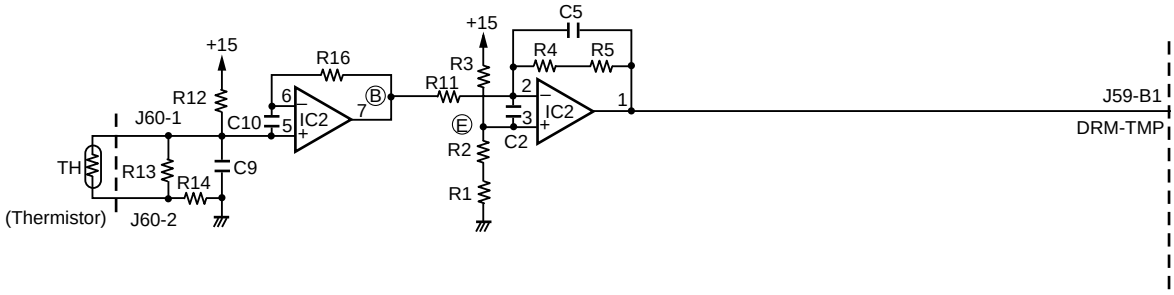
(8) Drum thermistor

The charge on the drum surface varies greatly depending on the drum surface temperature. For this reason, the temperature of the drum surface is detected to control the drum surface charge to a constant value.

(9) Fur brush

Removes paper dust and foreign matter remaining on the drum surface after separation of the transfer paper, reduces blade wear, lengths the blade life, and improves image reliability.

13.3 Drum Temperature Detection Circuit



Drum Temperature Detection Circuit

(1) Temperature sensor

In this detection circuit, the voltage obtained by R12, thermistor, R13 and R14 passes through the operation amplifier IC2 to be taken as input voltage Ⓑ. Input voltage Ⓑ is applied to pin No.2 of operation amplifier IC2, and is output as the temperature signal to the microcomputer and as the main charger control signal.

(2) High-voltage transformer for the main charger control output unit

Input voltage Ⓑ connected to pin No.2 of operation amplifier IC2 via R11 is compared with reference voltage Ⓔ that is applied by the divided voltage of R3, R2 and R1, amplified and is output from output terminal pin No.8. This output voltage is input to the A/D converter of the microcomputer to control the temperature of the high-voltage transformer for the main charger.

13.4 Control for Maintaining Image Quality Using a Toner Adhesion Amount Sensor

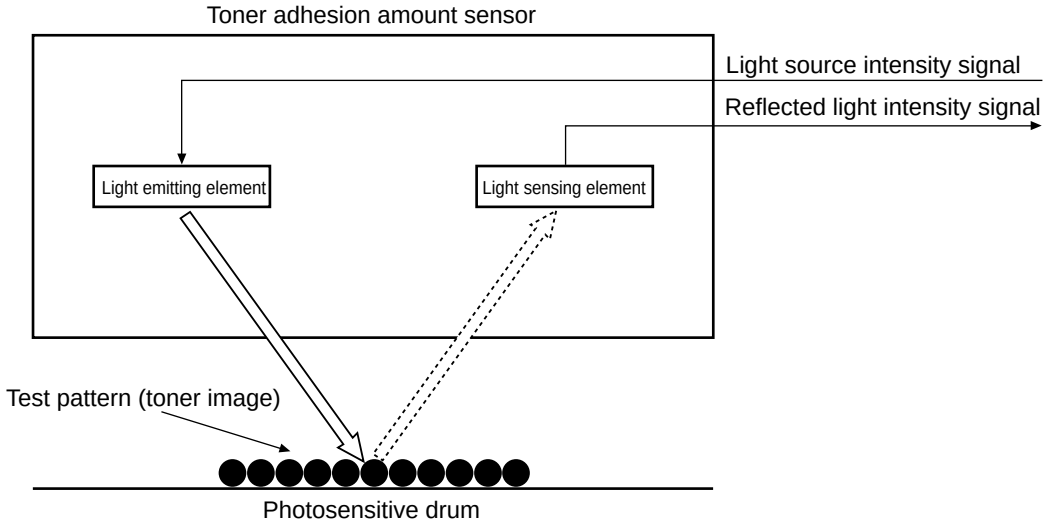
13.4.1 Outline

The toner adhesion amount sensor performs the following functions:

- Controls the image formation conditions to an optimum state so that image density and line width can be maintained under varying environments and throughout the service life of the machine.
- Detects the density of the test pattern developed on the drum.
- Changes the image formation conditions based upon the detection results to minimize changes in density caused by changes in the operating environment.

13.4.2 Principle of sensor operation

- Toner adhesion amount sensor: This sensor emits light onto the drum and onto the toner image (test pattern) developed on the drum, and outputs a voltage corresponding to the reflected light intensity.
- Toner adhesion amount: The relative reflectivity is calculated from the reflected light intensity obtained by the toner adhesion amount sensor. This is referred to here as the “toner adhesion amount.”



13.4.3 Outline of control

Start of Control (Control is executed during the pre-run after the power is turned ON.)

↓

[1] The reference image formation conditions are set.

↓

[2] The sensor light source is adjusted.

↓ ← [6]

[3] The test pattern is exposed.

↓

[4] The value of the toner adhesion amount sensor is read.

↓

[5] The result is judged.

(Control judges whether or not the toner adhesion amount of the test pattern is within the permissible range.)

When the result is judged as GOOD.

→ [7] End of Control

(The determined image formation conditions are reflected in subsequent copies.)

When the result is judged as NG (No Good).

↓

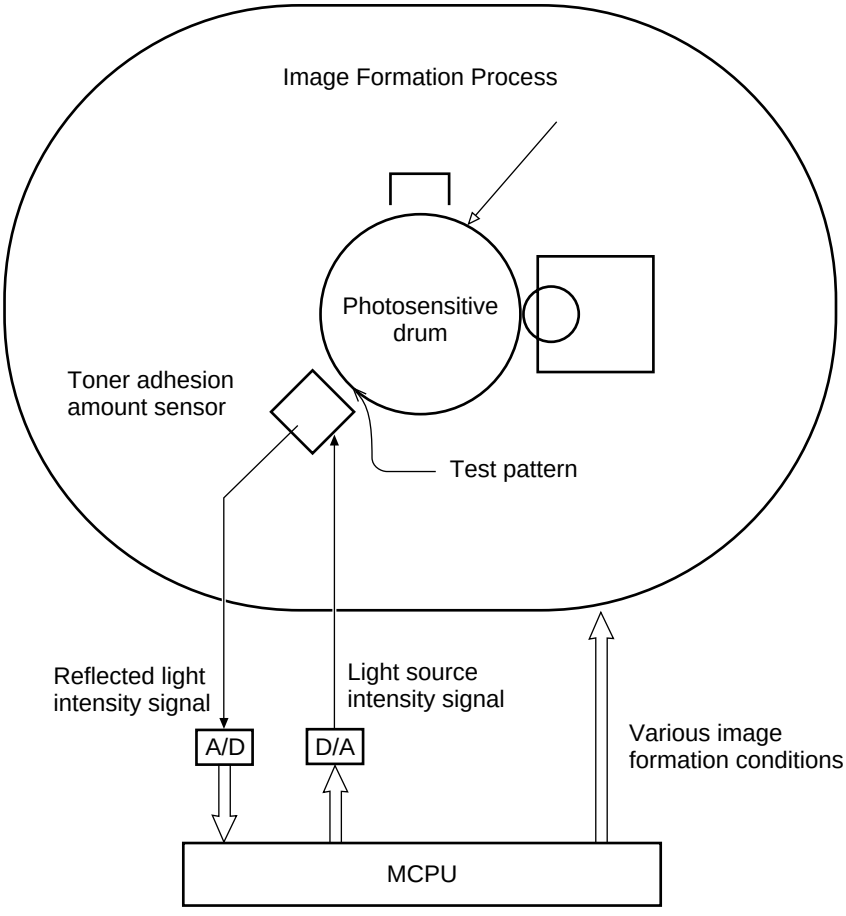
[6] The image formation conditions are changed.

↓

Return to [3]

13.4.4 Configuration

- Toner adhesion amount sensor
  Emits light corresponding to the light intensity control voltage onto the drum, and outputs a voltage corresponding to the reflected light intensity of the drum or the toner image on the drum.
- D/A converter
  Outputs the light source intensity control voltage.
- Laser optical system
  Exposes the test pattern for forming the toner image.
- A/D converter
  Converts the voltage values output from the sensor to digital values before they are read.
- Image formation system
  Executes the charging, exposure and developing processes.
- MCPU
  Executes steps [1] to [7] described in 13.4.3.

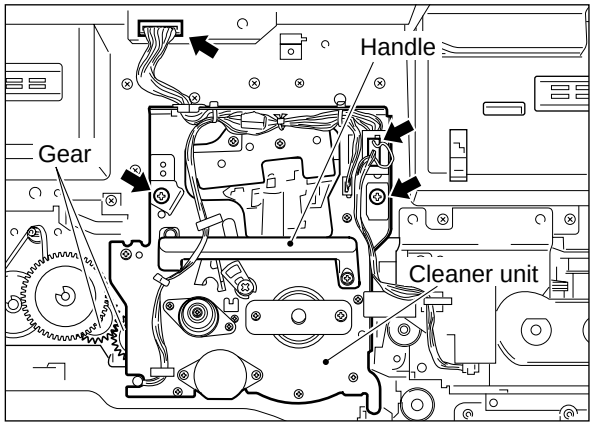


13.5 Disassembly and Replacement

[A] Cleaner unit

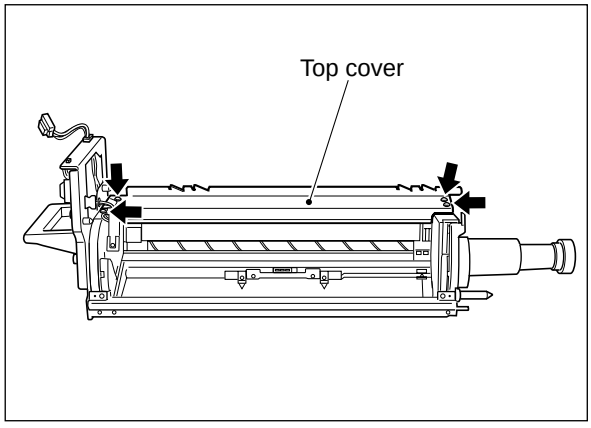
(1) Remove the main charger and the developer unit.
(2) Disconnect the 2 connectors, and remove the 2 screws.
(3) Draw out the cleaner unit by holding the handle.

Notes: 1. The cleaner unit is heavy. Take care not to drop it.
2. When installing the cleaner unit, make sure that the cleaning unit gear is engaged with the gear on the rear of the toner auger motor pulley before you secure it.

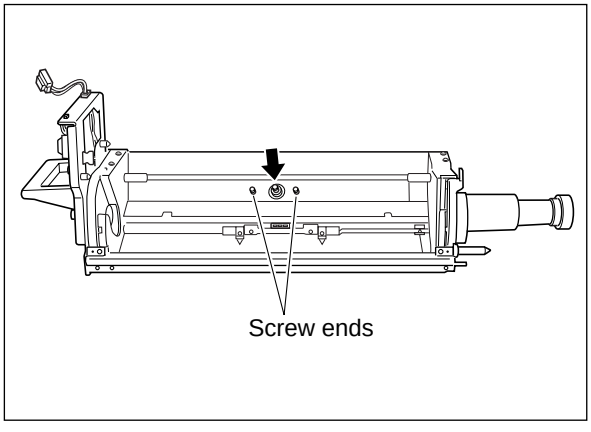


[B] Main blade

(1) Remove the drum.
(2) Remove the top cover (4 screws).

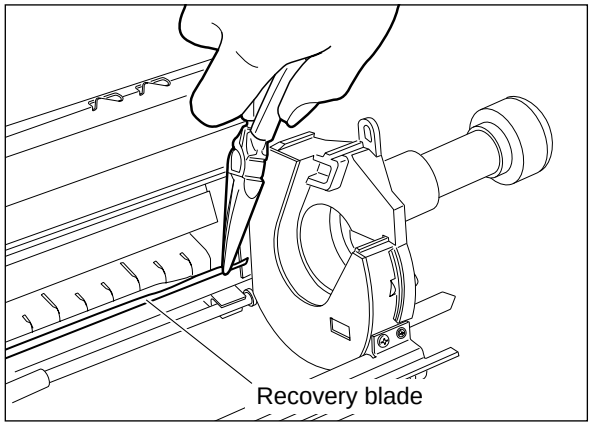


(3) Holding the bracket turn the main blade over.
(4) Remove the screw.
(5) Hold the ends of the 2 screws, remove the main blade.



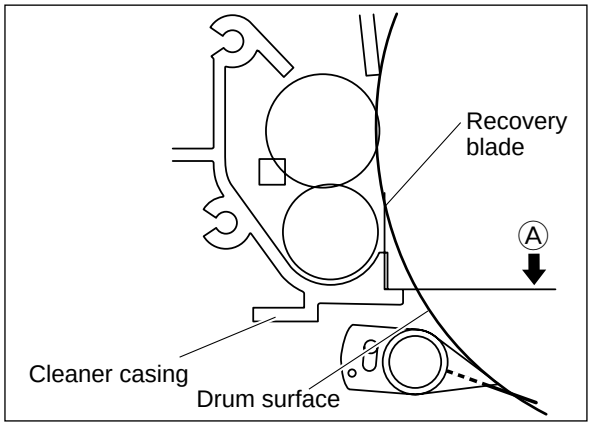
[C] Recovery blade

(1) Remove the recovery blade.



Notes: 1. The recovery blade is secured by double-sided adhesive tape. Make sure that the tape is completely removed before securing the new blade.

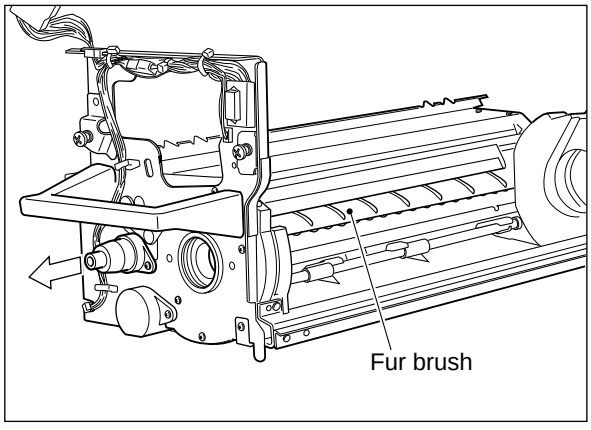
2. When installing the recovery blade, press the edge of the recovery blade against the stepped section of the cleaner frame, and fix at point Ⓐ making sure that there is no gap.



[D] Fur brush

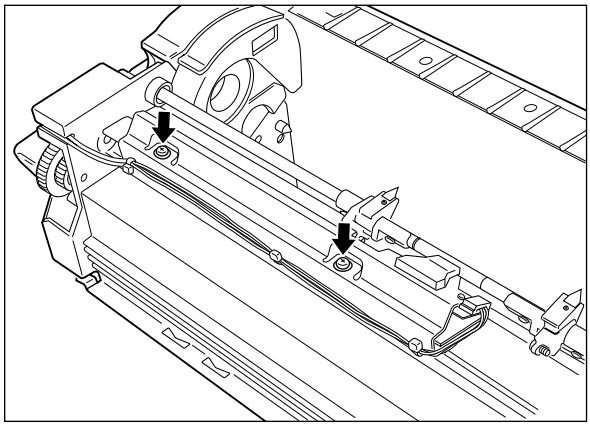
(1) Draw out the support shaft knob of the fur brush in the direction of the arrow to set the fur brush to a free state.

(2) Remove the fur brush from the cleaner body.

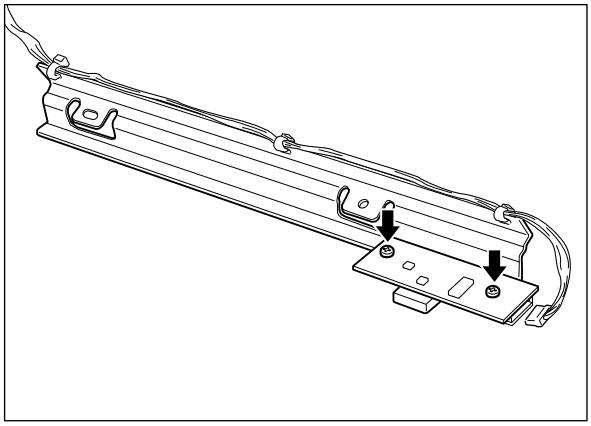


[E] Toner adhesion amount sensor

(1) Remove the sensor mounting bracket (2 screws).

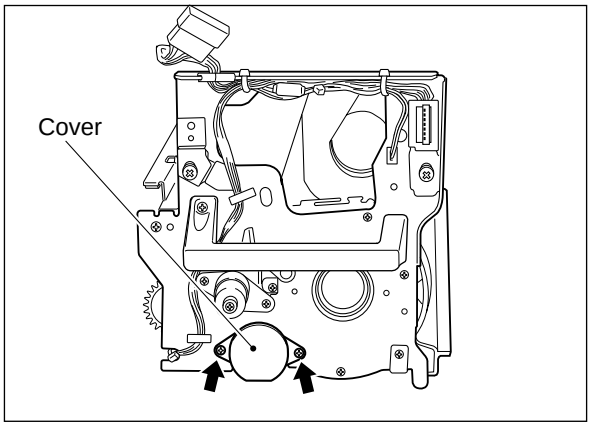


(2) Disconnect the sensor connector, and remove the 2 mounting screws.

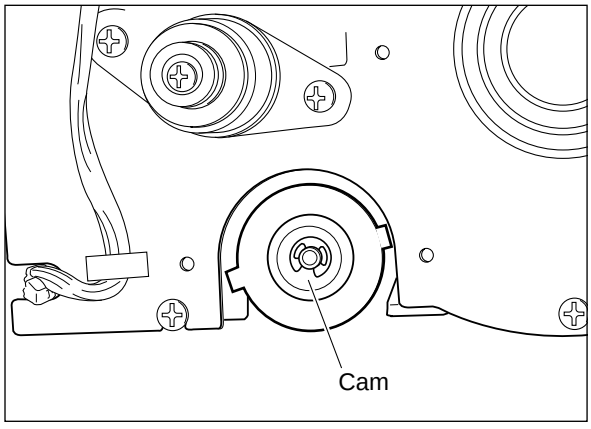


[F] Separation claw

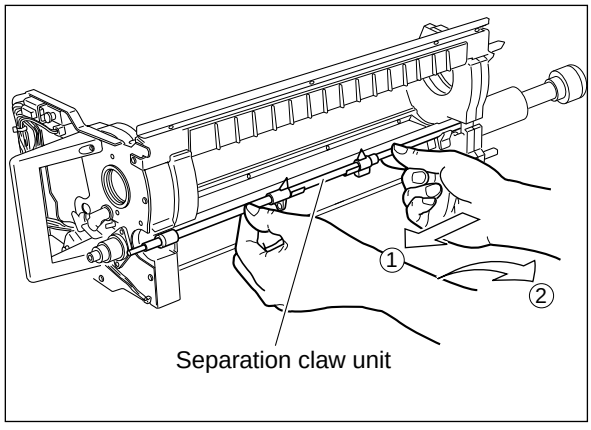
(1) Remove the cover (2 screws).



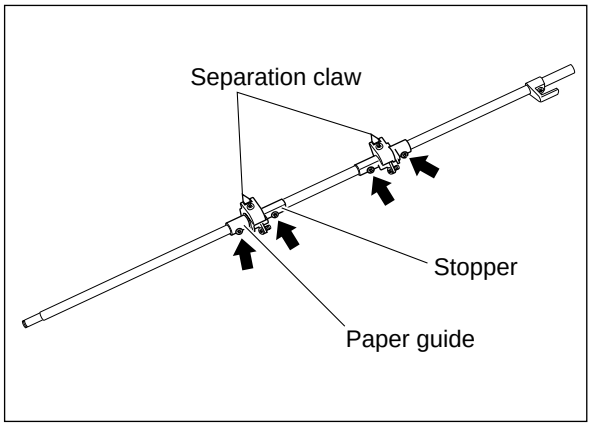
(2) Remove the E-ring, and remove the cam.



(3) Slide the separation claw unit to the front side to draw it out from the bushing on the rear side, and draw out the unit to the rear.

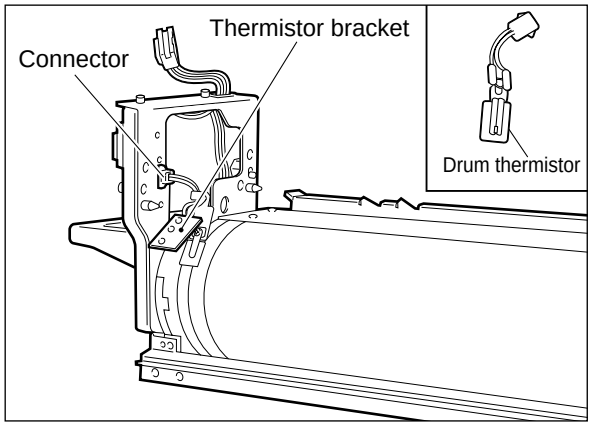


(4) Remove the 3 screws, and draw out the 2 separation claws from the shaft together with the stopper and paper guide.



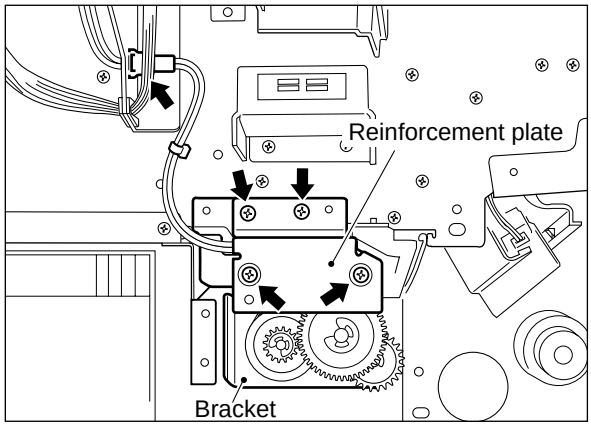
[G] Drum thermistor

(1) Disconnect the connector, and remove the screw.
(2) Cut the bundling band.

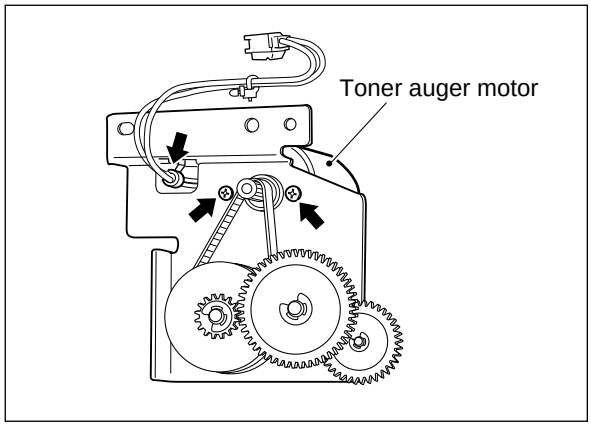


[H] Toner auger motor

(1) Remove the cleaner unit.
(2) Remove the left inner cover.
(3) Remove the 4 screws securing the bracket and the reinforcement plate, disconnect the connector and bundling band. The motor can be removed as an individual unit.

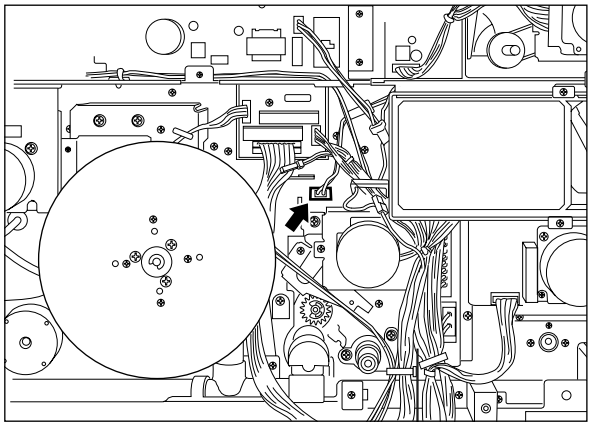


(4) Remove the toner auger motor (2 screws and bundling band).



[I] Scraper solenoid unit

(1) Remove the rear cover, and disconnect the connector.

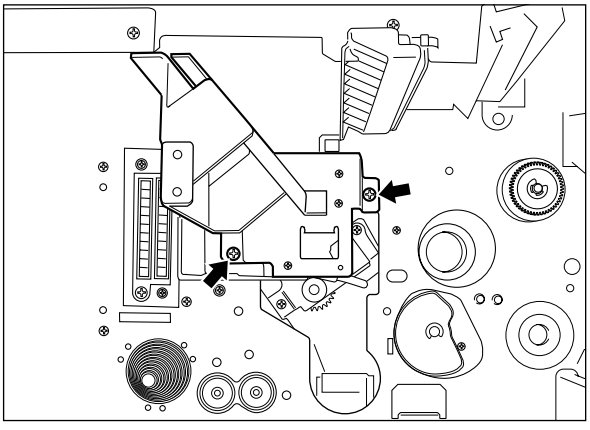


(2) Remove the carry belt unit.

Note: Take care not to scratch the transfer belt.

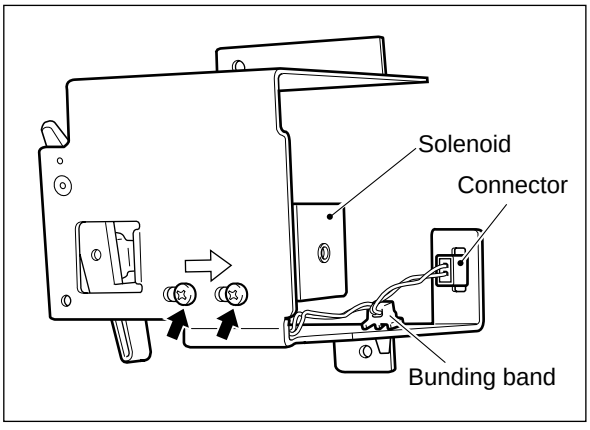
(3) Remove the toner auger motor.

(4) The solenoid unit can be removed when the 2 unit mounting screws on the rear frame are removed from the front side.



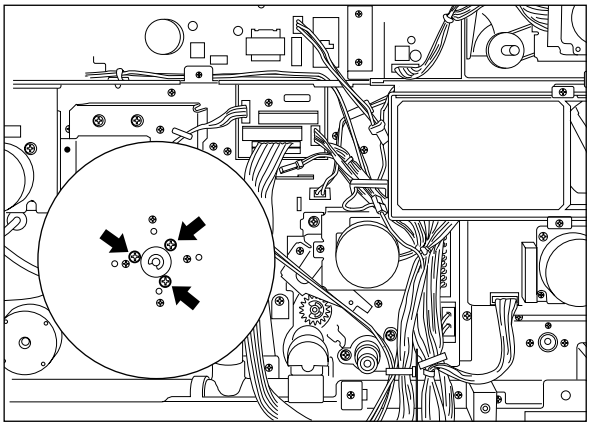
(5) Remove the separation claw solenoid (2 screws, connect, bundling band).

Note: During assembly, move the separation claw solenoid in the direction of the arrow, and secure.



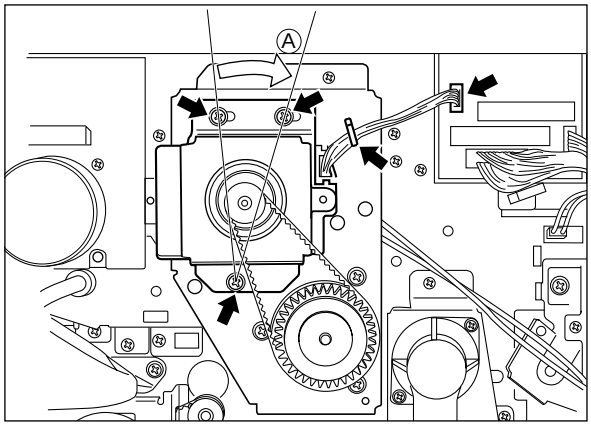
[J] Drum motor

(1) Remove the flywheel (3 screws).



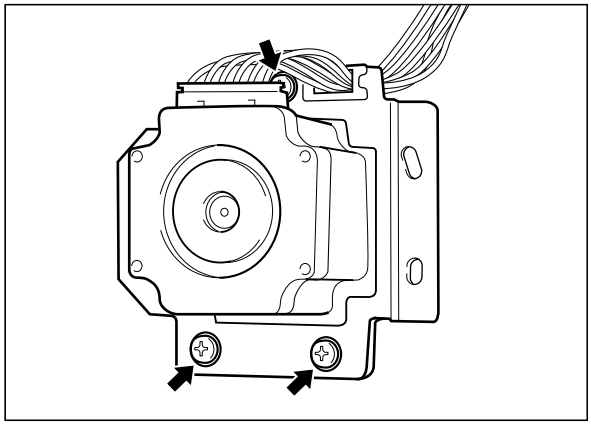
(2) Remove the motor bracket (3 screws, connector) and remove the harness from the clamp.

Note: When installing the motor bracket, press in clockwise (direction of arrow Ⓐ) and secure.



(3) When replacing the motor, remove the 3 screws and remove the harness from the edge saddle.

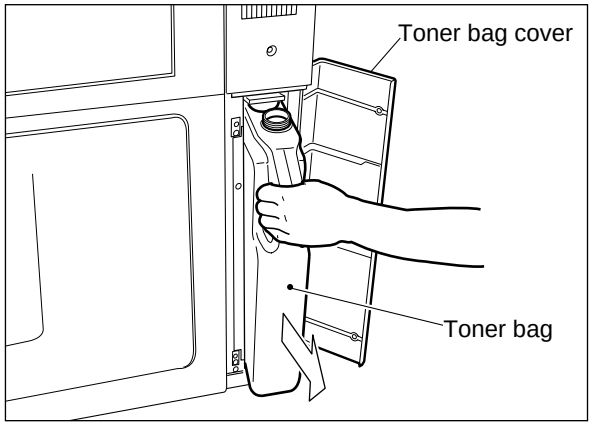
Note: When installing the motor, pay attention to the position of the harness with respect to the metal plate.



[K] Toner bag

(1) Remove the 2 coin screws and open the toner bag.

(2) Draw out the toner bag.

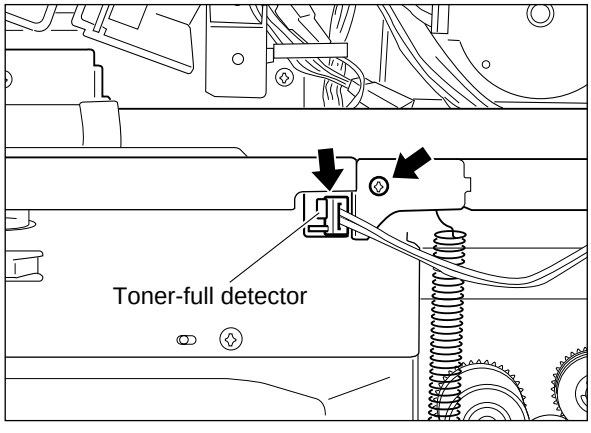


[L] Toner-full detector

(1) Remove the toner bag.

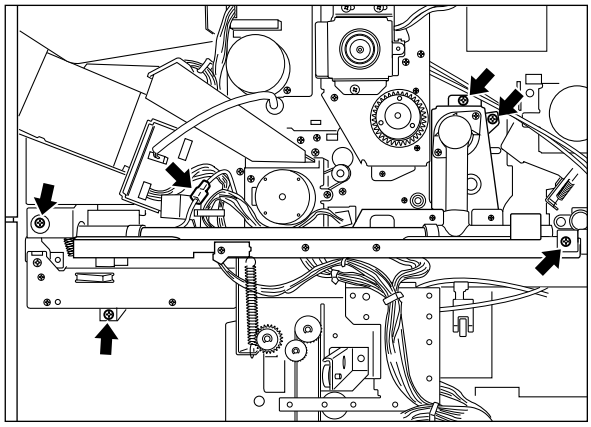
(2) Disconnect the toner-full detector connector.

(3) Remove the screw on the bracket securing the toner-full detector.



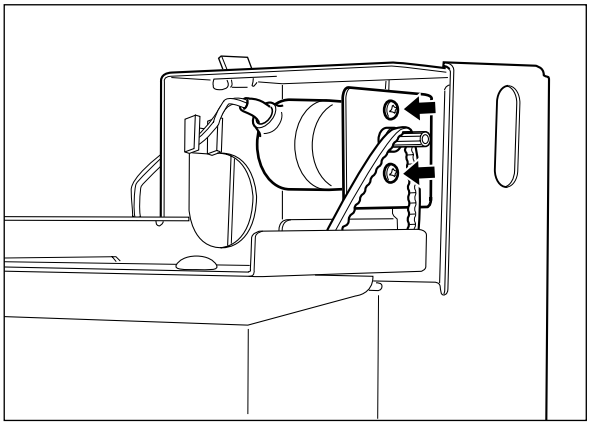
[M] Toner transport auger unit

(1) Remove the 5 screws securing the toner transport auger unit.
(2) Disconnect the transport auger motor.



[N] Toner transport motor

(1) Remove the toner transport motor (2 screws).



Note: Adjustment of the main blade, recovery blade and fur brush cleaner unit is not necessary.

14. FUSER UNIT

14.1 General Description

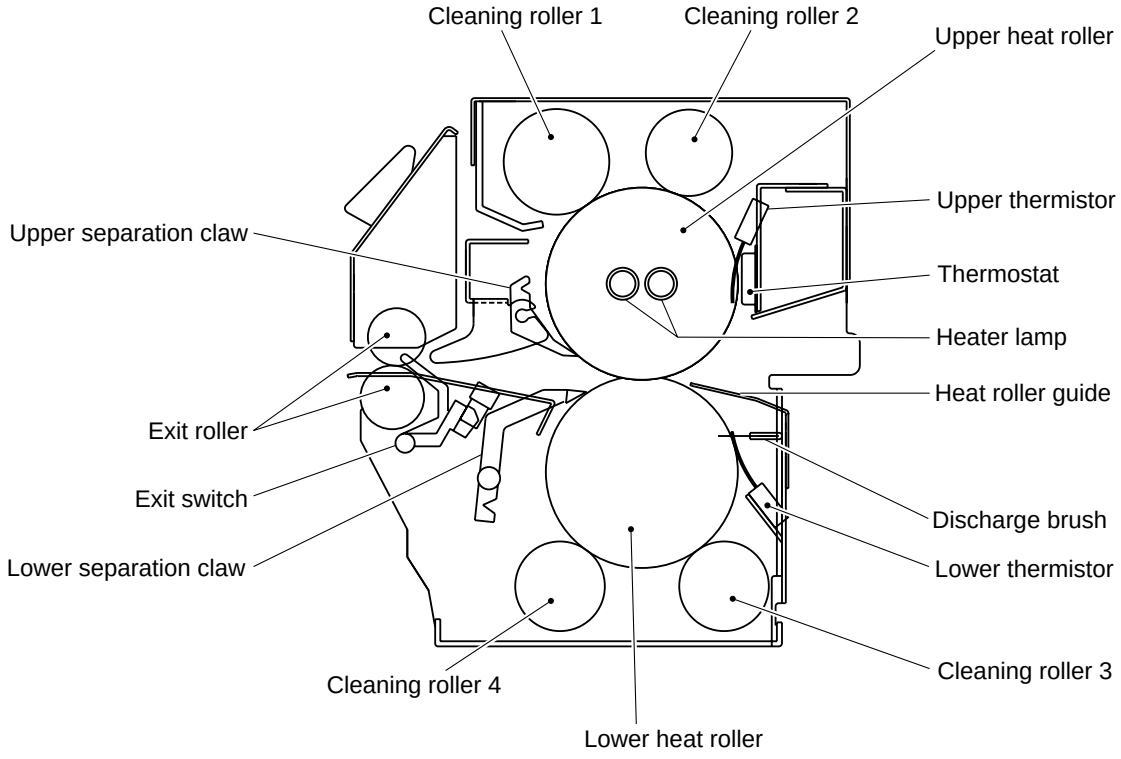


Fig. 14.1-1

Heat and pressure are applied to fuse the toner to the paper, which is separated from the drum after the transfer process. After fusing, the paper exits onto the copy receiving tray through the paper-exit unit. The fuser unit comprises the heater lamps, upper heat roller, lower heat roller separation claws, cleaning roller 1, 2, 3, 4, thermistor, thermostat, exit rollers, and exit switch, etc.

14.2 Description of Operation

(1) Fuser

Heat and pressure are applied to the transfer paper that is separated and transported on top of the drum to fuse the toner.

The upper and lower heat rollers are rotated by drive from the heat roller motor at a constant pressure applied by spring force. The upper heat roller has two built-in heater lamps and rotates by motor drive. The built-in heater lamps do not rotate. The upper and lower heat rollers are pressurized by spring force at all times.

After fusing is completed, the transfer paper is separated smoothly from the upper and lower heat rollers by the separation claw. In the temperature sensing section, the temperature of the upper and lower heat rollers is controlled by a thermistor. If the temperature becomes abnormally hot, the power to the heater lamps is cut by a thermostat.

14.3 Functions

(1) Heater lamp

Two halogen lamps are provided inside the upper heat roller to heat the upper heat roller. The heater lamp stays fixed even when the upper heat roller is rotating.

(2) Upper heat roller

The upper heat roller is made of aluminum having comparatively good heat conducting properties. It is heated by the heater lamps. The upper heat roller is held in contact with the above-mentioned lower heat roller. Fusing is carried out by passing the transfer paper through the section where these two heat rollers contact each other so that the toner image on the paper faces the upper heat roller. In other words, the toner is melted by the heat of the upper and lower heat rollers, and the heat transfer efficiency is improved by the pressure of the lower heat roller so that the toner soaks in between the fibers of the paper.

To prevent adhesion of toner onto the rollers (phenomenon called “offset”) and to facilitate separation of toner from the upper heat roller, the surface of the upper heat roller is coated with Teflon.

(3) Lower heat roller

The lower heat roller is made of rubber to facilitate pressurization of the upper heat roller. The lower heat roller is pressed against the upper heat roller by springs.

(4) Separation claw

The upper and lower separation claws separate paper affixed to the upper and lower heat rollers.

(5) Cleaning roller 2

A cleaning roller 2 is attached so as to contact the upper heat roller to clean the toner that has stuck to the upper heat roller during the fusing process. This roller contains silicon oil that transfer to the surface of the heat roller by the heat of the heat roller and so on. This makes it easier to clean the toner on the heat roller.

(6) Cleaning roller 1

A cleaning roller 1 for the upper heat roller is attached so as to contact the upper heat roller to remove toner and paper scraps that have stuck to the upper heat roller during the fusing process. This cleaning roller 1 does not contain silicon oil.

(7) Cleaning roller 3

A cleaning roller 3 is attached so as to contact the press roller to remove the toner and paper scraps that have stuck to the press roller during the fusing process. This roller contains silicon oil that transfer to the surface of the press roller by the heat of the press roller and so on. This makes it easier to clean the toner and paper scraps on the press roller.

(8) Cleaning roller 4

A cleaning roller 4 is attached so as to contact the lower heat roller to remove the toner and paper scraps that have stuck to the lower heat roller during the fusing process.

(9) Exit roller

After the paper is separated by the separation claw, the paper is output to the copy tray by the exit roller of the fuser and the exit roller of the reversal unit.

(10) Exit switch

This switch detects arrival of the leading edge or trailing edge of the transfer paper at the exit roller of the fuser. It is used for detecting paper jams in the fuser output section.

(11) Upper heat roller No.1 thermistor (center section)

The thermistor detects the temperature of the heat rollers so that it is maintained within a fixed temperature width (actually, about 190°C) higher than the lower limit (defective fusing temperature) and the upper limit (toner burning temperature). In other words, the thermistor controls the temperature so that the heater lamps turn ON when the heat rollers are lower than the temperature setting, and turn OFF when they are above the temperature setting.

(12) Upper heat roller No.2 thermistor (end section)

The temperature distribution of the upper heat roller sometimes differs greatly at the center section and end section in the lengthwise direction depending on the printing conditions. The No.2 thermistor detects the temperature at the end section. This thermistor controls the temperature so that the heater lamp turns OFF when either of the values detected by the No.1 or No.2 thermistor exceeds the temperature setting.

(13) Lower heat roller thermistor

The thermistor detects the temperature so that the lower heat roller stays at around 115°C while the copier is standing by for printing. If the lower heat roller falls below the temperature setting limit, the upper and lower heat rollers are rotated at a speed of about 25% of high speed.

(14) Thermostat

The thermostat cuts power to the heater lamps if the upper heat roller become abnormally hot as a result of thermistor malfunction, for example. The thermostat on this copier is for preventing abnormal operation. When the thermostat detects an abnormality, the thermostat must be replaced together with the other damaged parts in the fuser.

14.4 Heater Control Circuit

14.4.1 Temperature detection unit

To maintain the heat roller temperature, this unit detects the heat-roller temperature by thermistor-1, and then performs heater lamp ON/OFF control.

- The thermistor is an electrical element whose resistance decreases as its detected temperature increases. If the thermistor is open-circuited, the control circuit erroneously determines that the fuser temperature is extremely low and continues to energize the heater lamp. As a result, the fuser temperature rises abnormally high, possibly activating the thermostat provided for safety purposes. The CPU works to detect the breakage of the thermistor and prevents the condition mentioned above.
  The following abnormalities are detected:

(1) Abnormal detection during warming up
  25 sec. after the power has been turned ON, if the thermistor output voltage does not exceed 0.078 V, CALL SERVICE (C41) is displayed.

(2) Abnormal detection during stand-by/copying
  If the thermistor output voltage decreases to and remains at 0.078 V or lower for 500 msec. or more, CALL SERVICE (C43) is displayed.

(3) Thermistor status counter control
  - For improved fuser-unit safety, the CPU works as follows: After a C41 error occurs two times in succession, even when the power is turned ON, the heater will not come ON and the C41 error will be immediately displayed.
    However, with “1” or less stored in the Thermistor status counter, if the copier becomes ready correctly, the Thermistor status counter clears to “0”.
  - After CALL SERVICE (C41 – C45) has occurred and the thermistor, heater lamp, etc. have been repaired (or replaced), if turning ON the power switch does not cause the heater to energize resulting in an error, check the Thermistor status counter (08-code 400) and reset it to “0”.
    Surface temperature of heat roller: 200°C (Thermistor resistance value: about 0.8 kΩ)

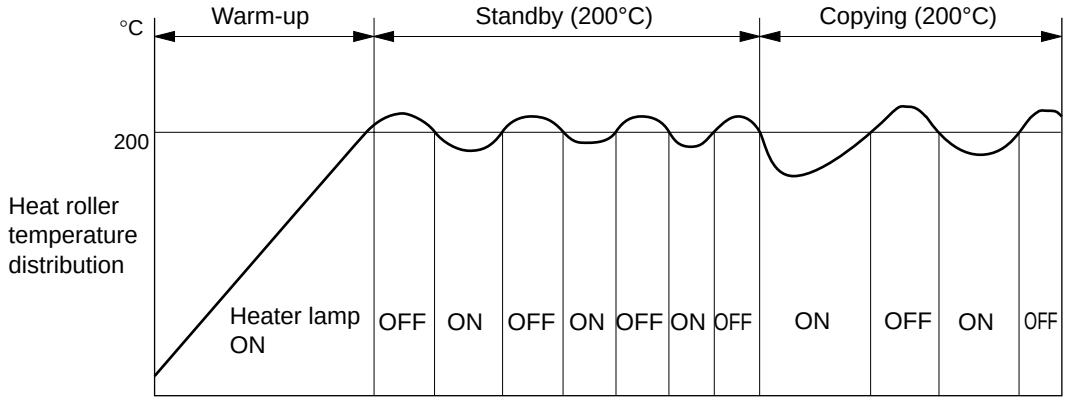
Reference

1. A value other than 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 is never written in the Thermistor status counter.
   - At the power on, if the heater is not turned ON and the copier goes into C41 CALL SERVICE, check the Thermistor status counter to see if it is 2 or more. If it is 2 or more, be sure to check the thermistor and heater lamp, and after repair, reset the Thermistor status counter (08-code 400) to 0 and then turn ON the power switch.
   - If the value of the Thermistor status counter is more than 10 (11, for example), it may be possible that BC-RAM or the data in it have been destroyed by charger leaking, etc. In this case, check the guide bias, high-voltage transformers, charger wires, etc. for any defects. Also, all the data inside BC-RAM need to be rechecked.

2. Relationship between the output voltage and the fusing temperature.
   - 200°C corresponds to approx. 2.5V and 0.25 V corresponds to approx. 40°C.

3. Relationship between heat roller surface temperature and thermistor-1 resistance.

Temperature	Thermistor resistance	Heater lamp state
Less than 200°C	More than 0.8 kΩ	ON
200°C	0.8 kΩ	Maintains previous status
More than 200°C	Less than 0.8 kΩ	OFF



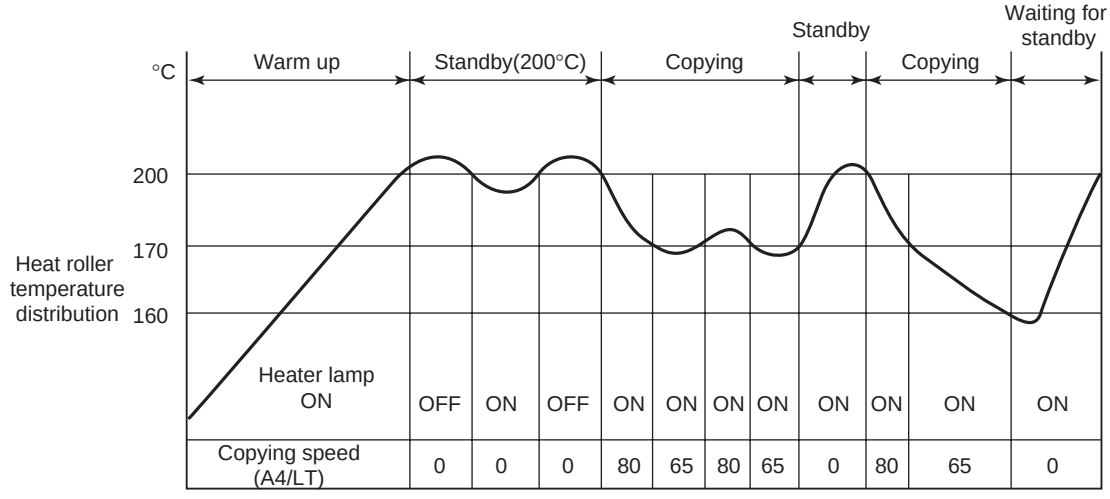
4. Temperature control at heat roller ends
   During multicopying, the temperature at each end (no paper-contact area) of the heat roller normally tends to rise higher than the controlled temperature of the paper-contact area. Therefore, the circuit is so devised that if the temperature in the no paper-contact area rises to 240°C, the second thermistor detects this, causing the heater to be turned OFF immediately regardless of the temperature in the paper-contact area.

Reference (supplement)

The following fusing control mode is available only for 8070.

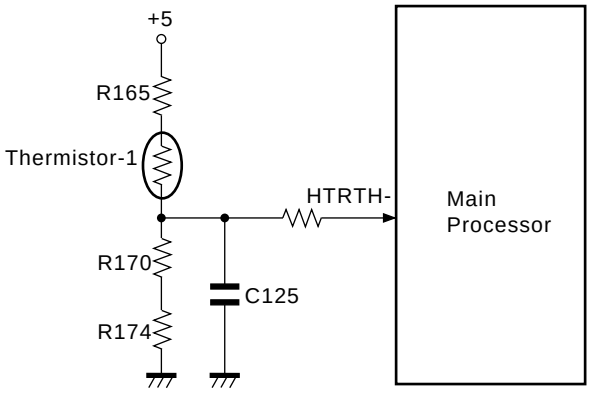
- Relationship between the upper heat roller surface temperature and the fusing control mode.

Temperature	Fusing control status
More than 200°C	Heater lamp OFF
From 170°C to 200°C	Lamp ON, normal copying speed
From 160°C to 170°C	Copying speed is slower and the copying is continuous.
Less than 160°C	Copying discontinues and waiting for standby to resume copying.



14.4.2 Detection of thermistor burnout

* Since thermistor burnout detection circuits of the thermistor-1 and -2 are common, it is explained with the thermistor-1.



- The input voltage is obtained by voltage dividing R165, thermistor, R170 and R174.
- The surface temperature of the heat roller changes.
  → The thermistor resistance value changes
  → The input voltage also changes
- The main processor detects an abnormality
  → thermistor broken

14.4.3 Control for abnormal heater condition

When something abnormal occurs in the heater turn-ON circuit, such as a shorted triac, it may become incapable of ON/OFF control. In this case, the microcomputer detects abnormal temperatures through the first and second thermistors, determines the corresponding error codes and counter values, and causes the main power to switch OFF to protect the fuser unit.

(1) Temperature detection

The following abnormal temperatures are detected by the respective thermistors:

First thermistor: 230°C

Second thermistor: 270°C

(2) Error codes

"C44" : Displayed when keys C + 8 are pressed simultaneously at the time of Call Service.

Counter value "9": Displayed when you input "400" in the setting mode.

(3) Machine condition

After de-energizing all outputs (heater lamp, exposure lamp, control-panel displays, motors, etc.), the microcomputer causes the main power to switch OFF.

(4) Corrective action

After the error code and counter value in (2) have been determined, abnormal temperature detection in (1) continues. So, if the main switch is turned ON immediately, it will be turned OFF again as long as the temperature on the heater surface remains above the abnormal detection temperatures of thermistors. Thereafter, this will be repeated. So, after waiting for the heater surface temperature to drop, turn ON the main switch and you can check the counter value before the main switch is turned OFF again. After confirming that an abnormal heater condition has occurred, repair the problem and then clear code 400 of the setting mode with "0". After that, you can bring the copier into its normal operating condition.

14.5 Heat-Roller Motor Drive

14.5.1 Outline of operation

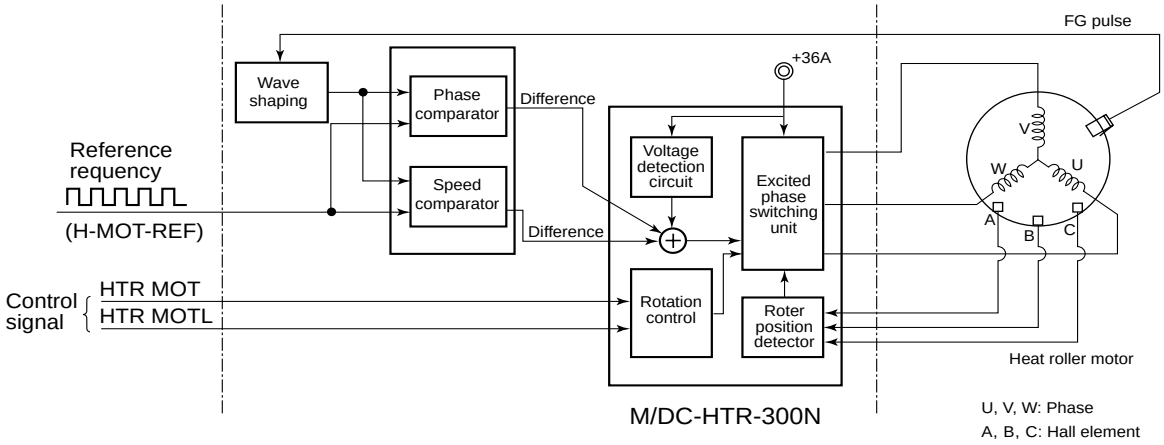


Fig. 14.5-1

(1) The LGC transmits control signals for the heat-roller motor rotation (HTRMOT:Motor rotation command).

(2) The excited phase switching unit excites each phase on the heat roller motor → Heat roller motor rotates.

(3) Hall elements A to C are used to detect the rotation position of the motor (or rotor).

(4) The excited phase switching unit switches the excitation for each phase (By repeating steps (2) through (4) above, the motor keeps rotating.).

(5) An FG pulse is generated by the rotation of the heat roller motor.

(6) The phases and velocities of the FG pulse and the reference frequency from the SUB are compared, and the differences are added up. In addition to this are added the fluctuations in the supply voltage (Signal generation).

(7) The switching timing for the excited phase switching unit is changed to match the signal obtained in step (6).
That is, control ensures that the FG pulse and reference frequency are equal. → The heat roller motor runs at a constant speed (Locked range state.).

(8) When the HTRMOT signal changes to “H” level, the heat roller motor stops.

(9) During standby, the HTRMOTL level changes to “L” if the temperature of the lower heat roller drops below the reference temperature, and the heat roller motor rotates at low speed.

14.5.2 Control signals

(1) HMOT-REF signal (LGC → MOT:Input)

This signal is a reference clock signal for the heat roller motor to rotate at a fixed speed. The frequency of the reference clock is 1247.6Hz.

(2) HTRMOTL signal (LGC → MOT:Input)

This signal switches low-speed heat-roller motor rotation ON/OFF. When the signal is “L”, the heat roller rotates at a low speed.

(3) HTRMOT-ON signal (LGC → MOT:Input)

This signal is the heat-roller motor ON/OFF control signal. When the signal changes to “L”, the heat roller motor is turned ON.

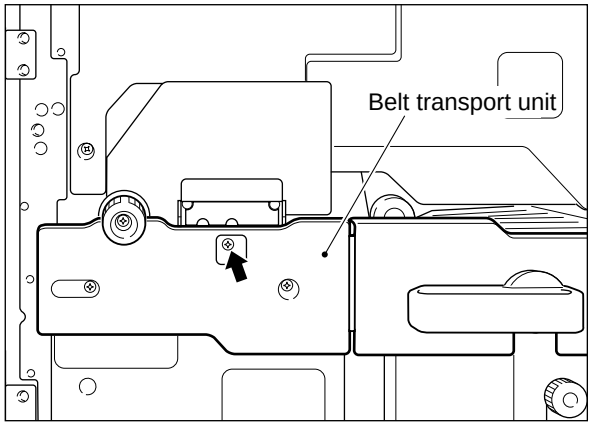
Signal level of motor circuit

Signal	“H” level	“L” level
HMOT-REF	Reference clock (1247.6Hz)	
HTRMOTL	Motor OFF	Motor low-speed ON
HTRMOT	Motor OFF	Motor ON

14.6 Disassembly and Replacement

[A] Fuser unit

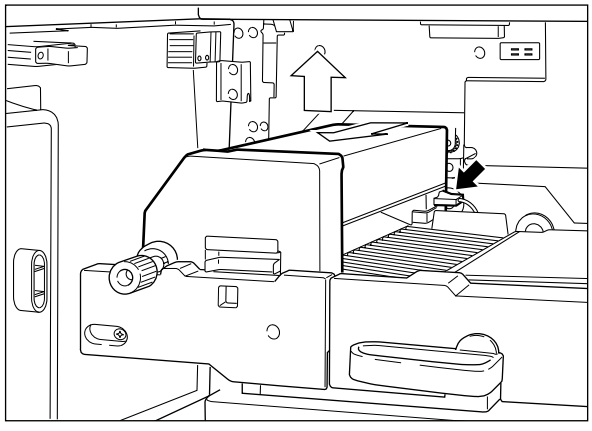
(1) Draw out the belt transport unit.
(2) Remove the screw.



(3) Disconnect the connector from the rear side of the fuser unit (115V/230V).
(4) Draw out the fuser unit to the front by about 6 mm, and lift up horizontally to remove.

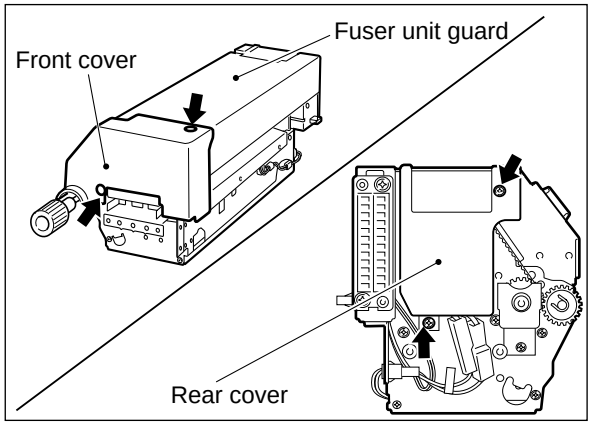
Note: The fuser unit must be held by holding the handles on the front and rear sides.

* Replacement of parts on the fuser section is described assuming that the fuser unit has been removed.

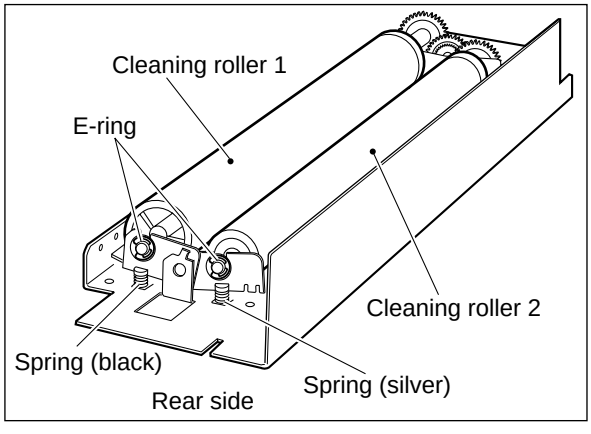


[B] Cleaning roller 1, 2

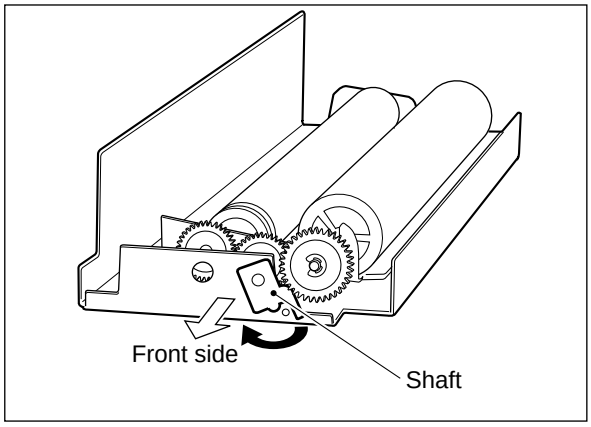
(1) Remove the fuser front cover and the rear cover (2 screws).
(2) Remove the fuser unit guard (3 screws).

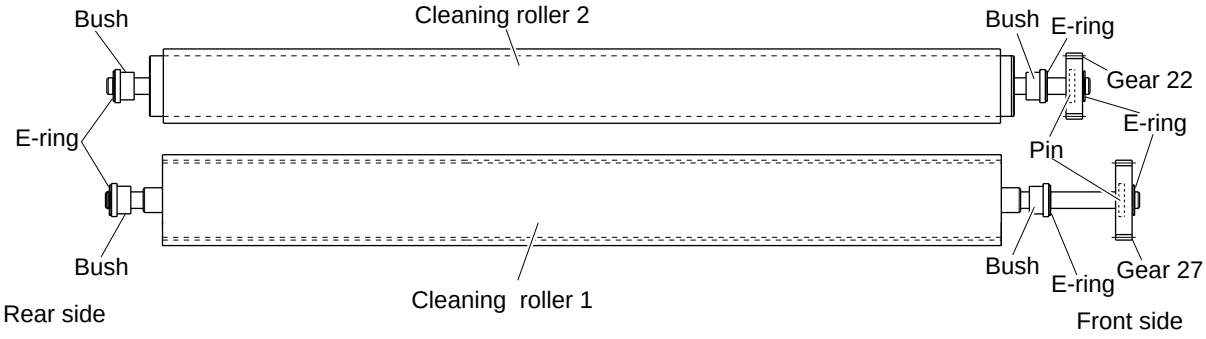


(3) Remove one rear E-ring each.



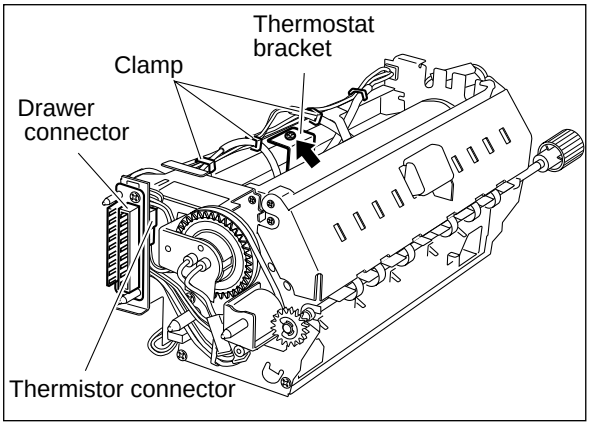
(4) Remove the shaft and 3-stage gear.
(5) Remove the cleaning roller 1 and the cleaning roller 2.



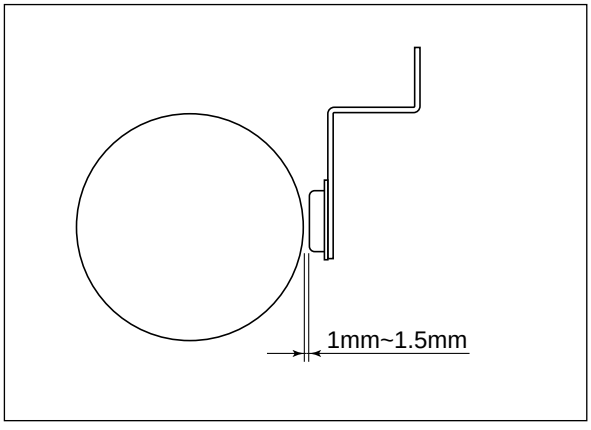


[C] Upper thermistor and thermostat

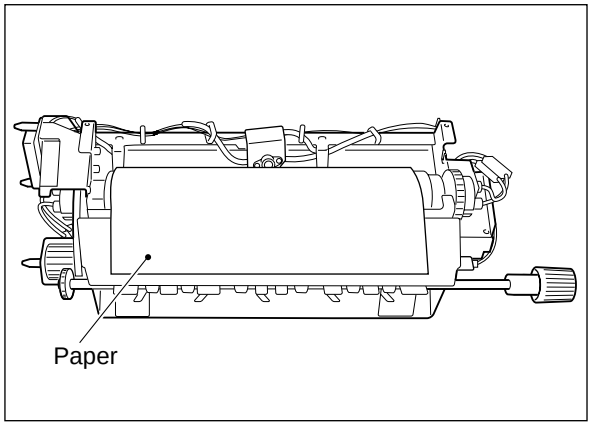
(1) Remove the front cover, rear cover and fuser unit guard.
(2) Remove the drawer connector bracket (1 screw).
(3) Disconnect the thermistor connector, and remove the 3 harness clamps.
(4) Remove the 2 upper thermistor brackets (1 screw for each).
(5) Remove the thermostat bracket (1 screw).
(6) Remove the thermostat (2 screws).



Notes: 1. When assembling, make sure that the thermostat is attached as shown in the figure on the right.

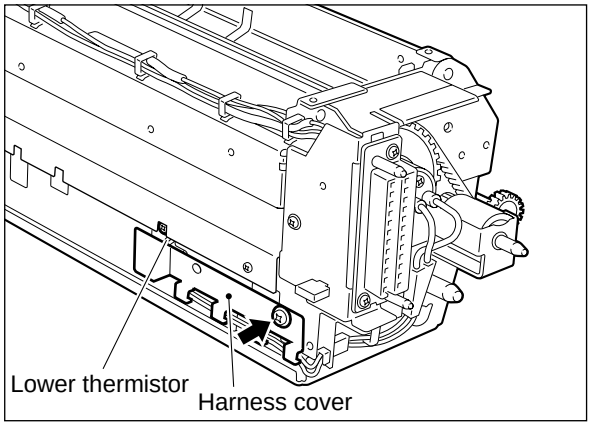


2. When removing the 2 upper thermistors and thermostats, prevent the heat rollers from becoming scratched (Wind paper onto the heat rollers as shown in the figure on the right.).



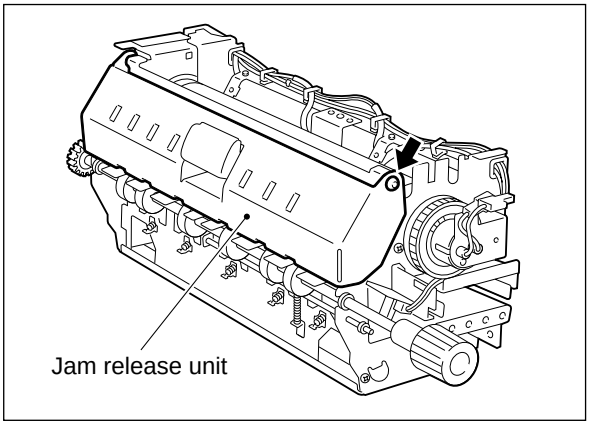
[D] Lower thermistor

(1) Remove the harness cover (1 screw).
(2) Remove the lower thermistor (1 screw).

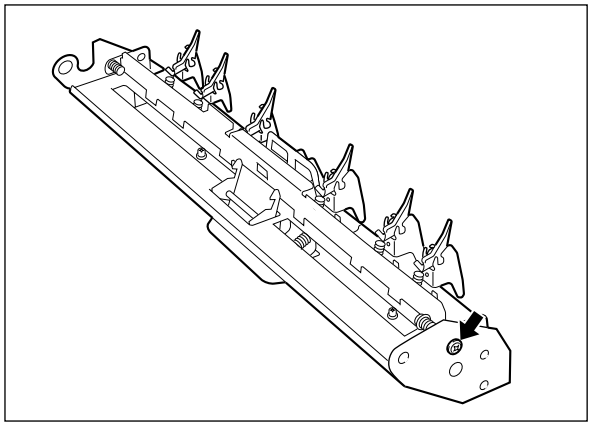


[E] Upper separation claw

(1) Remove the jam release unit (1 screw on the front side).

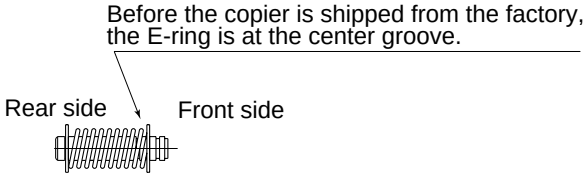


(2) Remove the upper separation claw unit (1 screw on the front side).



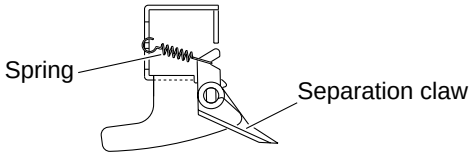
Notes: 1. When fixing screws onto the shaft, make sure that the D cut section of the shaft fits into the D cut hole on the bracket.

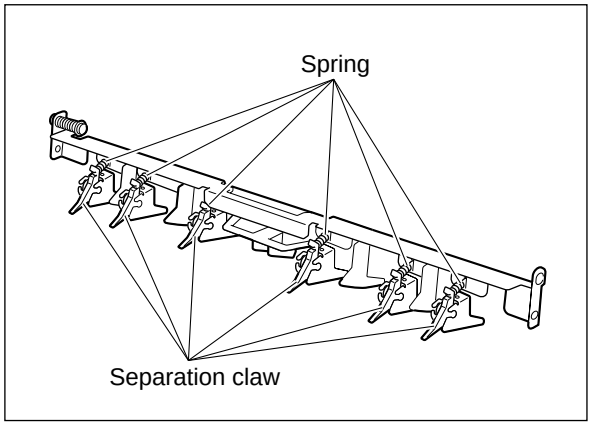
2. The separation claw positions can be moved 3 mm each to the front and rear by the position of the E-ring on the shaft (Before the copier is shipped from the factory, the E-ring is at the center groove.).



(3) Remove the spring and upper separation claw.

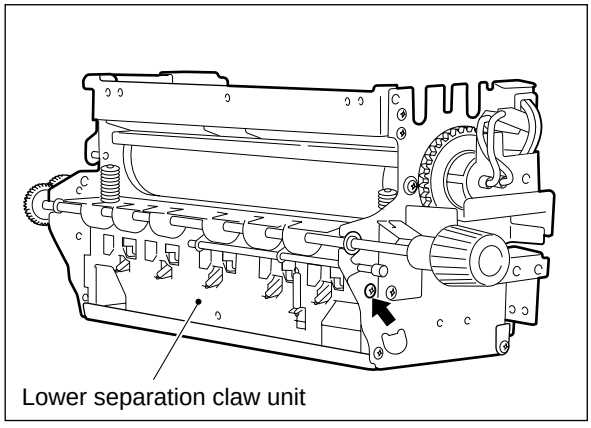
Note: The spring is attached in the direction shown in the following figure.



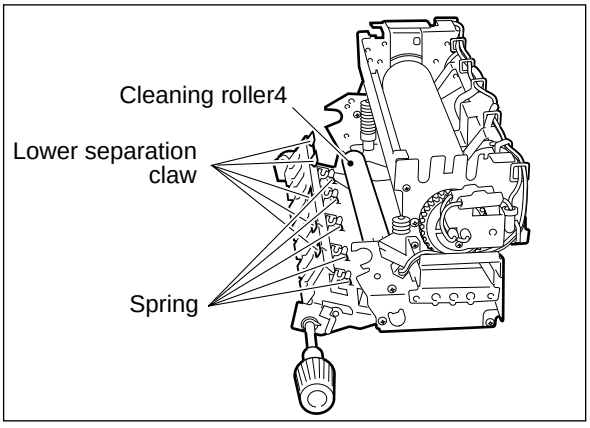


[F] Lower separation claw/cleaning roller 4

(1) Remove 1 screw for each from the front and rear sides, and open the lower separation claw unit.

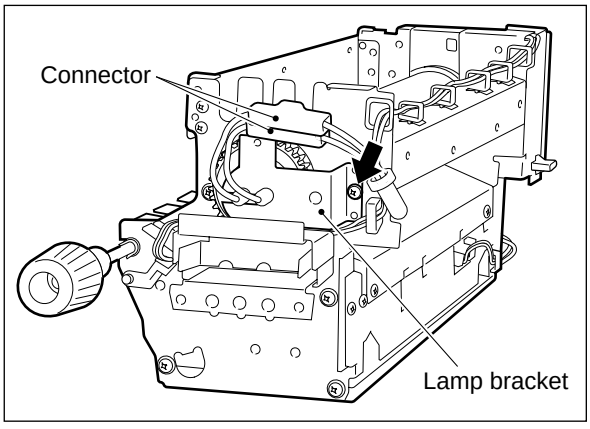


(2) Remove the spring and lower separation claw.
(3) Cleaning roller 4 opens together with the lower separation claw unit. Cleaning roller 4 is attached to the lower separation claw unit via bushes and springs.

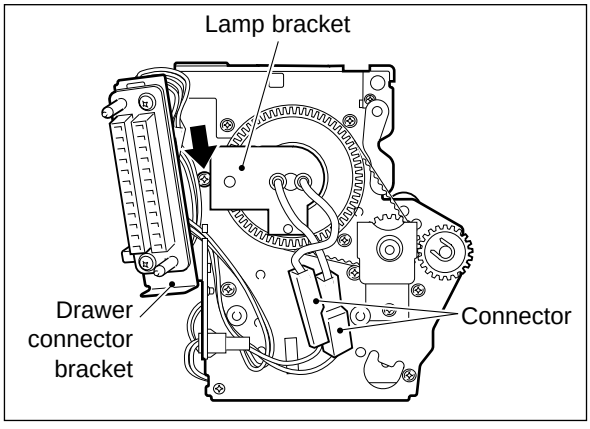


[G] 2 heater lamps

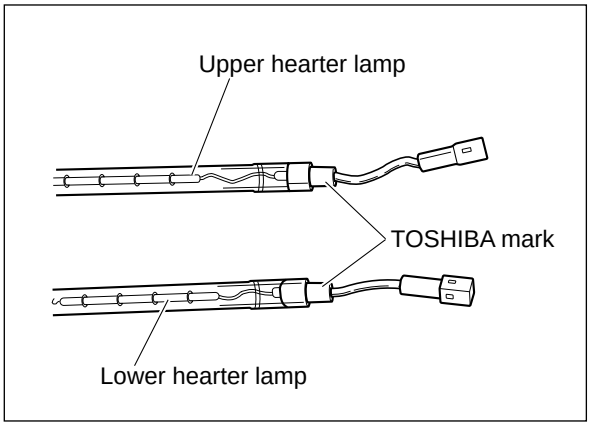
(1) Remove the front lamp bracket (1 screw).
(2) Disconnect the 2 connectors from the front heater lamp.



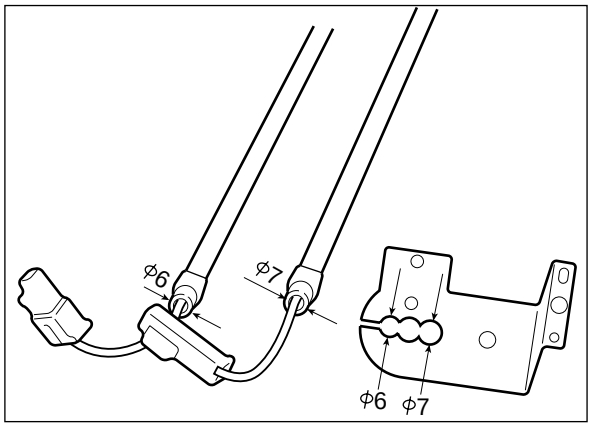
(3) Remove the drawer connector bracket (1 screw).
(4) Remove the rear lamp bracket (1 screw).
(5) Disconnect the 2 connectors from the rear heater lamp.
(6) Draw out the 2 heater lamps.



Notes: 1. When attaching the 2 heater lamps, make sure that they are attached with the TOSHIBA marks facing the front.

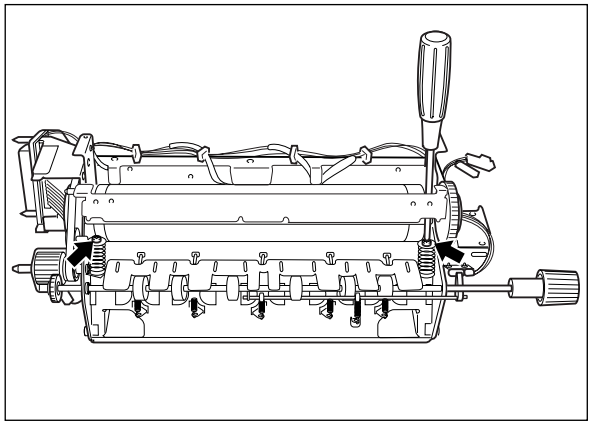


2. The wattage of the 2 lamps is different. Make sure that the lamp having the correct wattage is attached by aligning the lamp with the holes on the heater lamp bracket.
3. Do not directly touch the glass sections of the lamps, and leave fingerprints or other marks.

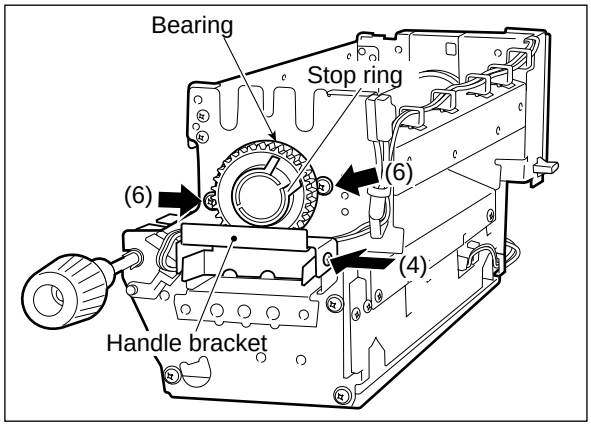


[H] Upper/lower heat roller and cleaning roller 3

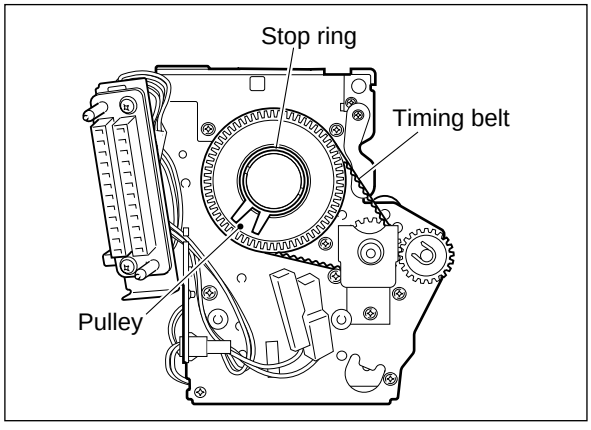
(1) Remove the fuser unit guard and jam processing unit.
(2) Draw out the 2 heater lamps.
(3) Completely loosen the 2 screws fixing the pressure springs.



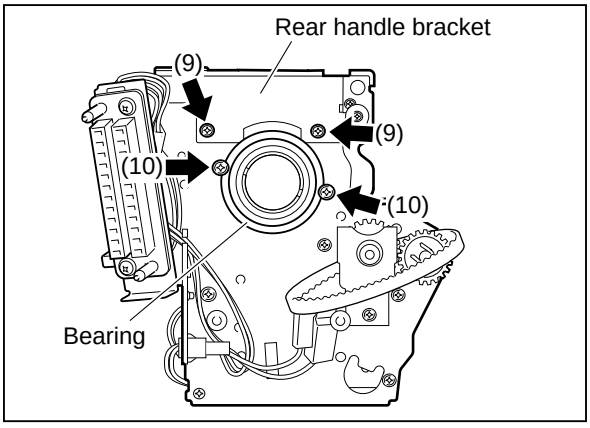
(4) Remove the front handle bracket (1 screw).
(5) Remove the front stop ring and gear.
(6) Remove the 2 front screws and take out the bearing.



(7) Remove the timing belt.
(8) Remove the rear stop ring and take out the pulley.

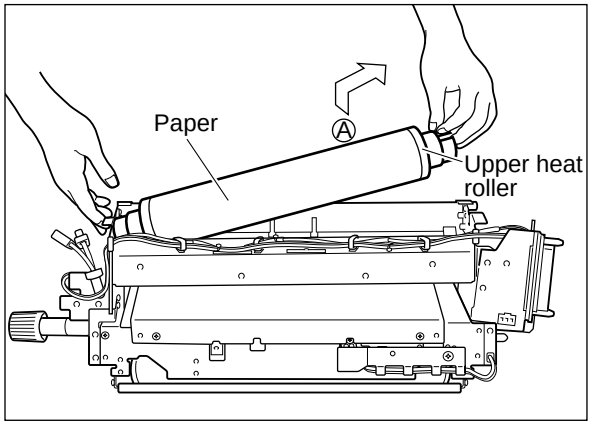


(9) Remove the rear handle bracket (2 screws).
(10) Remove the 2 rear screws and take out the bearing.

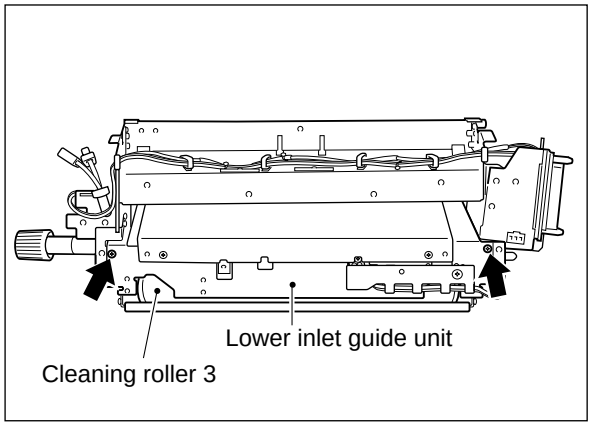


(11) Slide the upper heat roller to remove as shown the arrow Ⓐ.

Notes: 1. Take care not to deform the lead spring on the upper thermistor.
2. Wind paper onto the heat roller taking care not to scratch the heat roller.

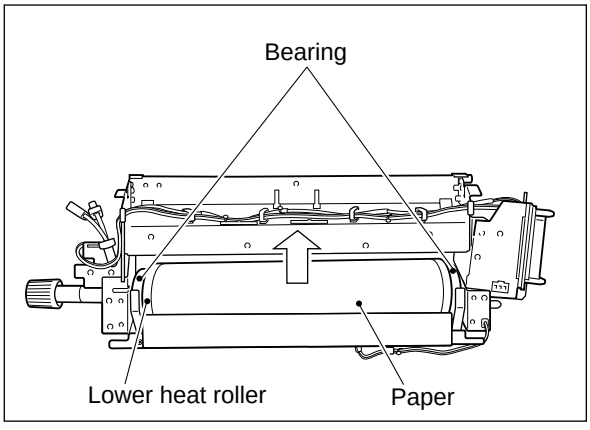


(12) Open the lower separation claw unit (2 screws).
(13) Open the lower inlet guide unit (2 screws).
(14) The cleaning roller 3 opens together with the lower inlet guide. The cleaning roller 3 is attached to the lower inlet guide unit via the spring.



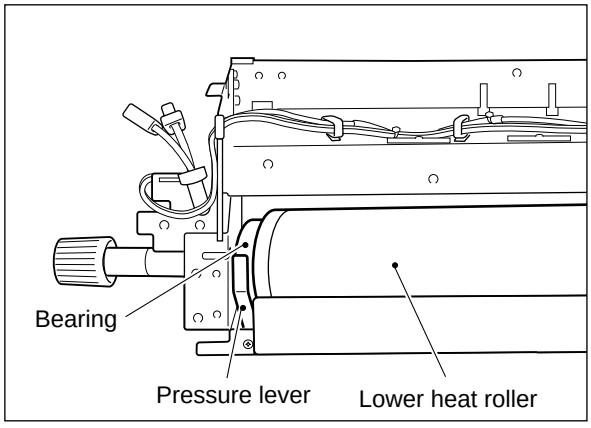
(15) Remove the lower heat roller with the bearing.

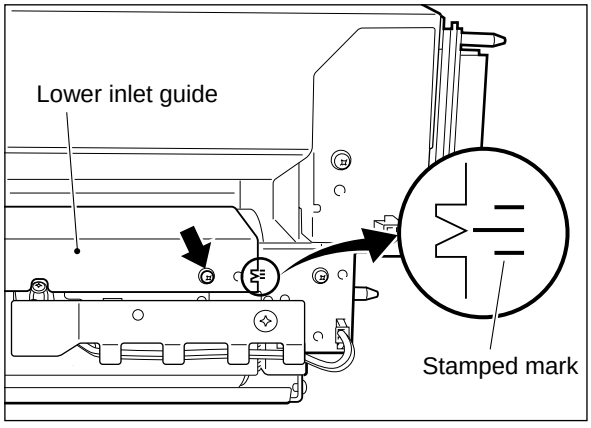
Note: Wind paper onto the lower heat roller taking care not to scratch the lower heat roller. Wind paper onto the lower heat roller in the same way when installing the lower heat roller.



Notes: Precautions during Replacement

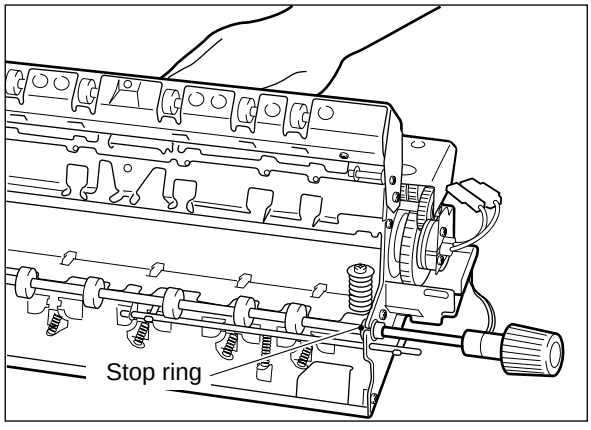
1. Make sure on the front and rear sides that the bearing of the lower heat roller fits into the pressure lever.
2. Take care not to bump and scratch the surface of the heat roller against the bracket or other parts.
3. Take care not to scratch the thermistor.
4. Make sure that the screws of the pressure springs are firmly fastened (2 locations). When thin paper is frequently used, and paper frequently wrinkles, loosen these screws to adjust.
5. If paper jams occur frequently in the fuser or paper frequently wrinkles, make adjustments referenced to the markings lower inlet guide on the 2 screws.



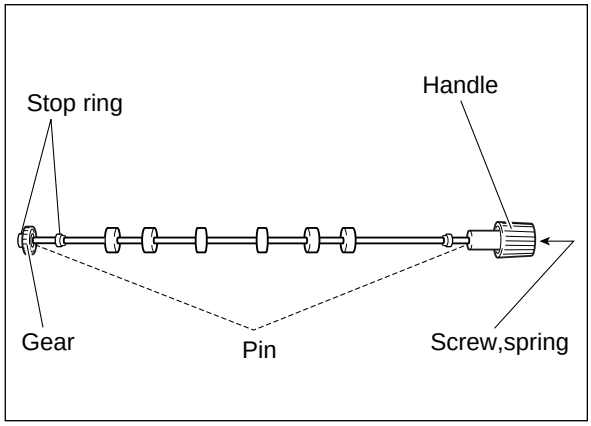


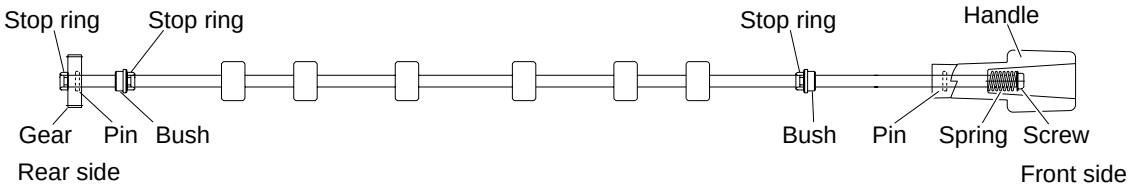
[I] Exit roller

(1) Remove the front and rear stop ring, then remove the exit roller.



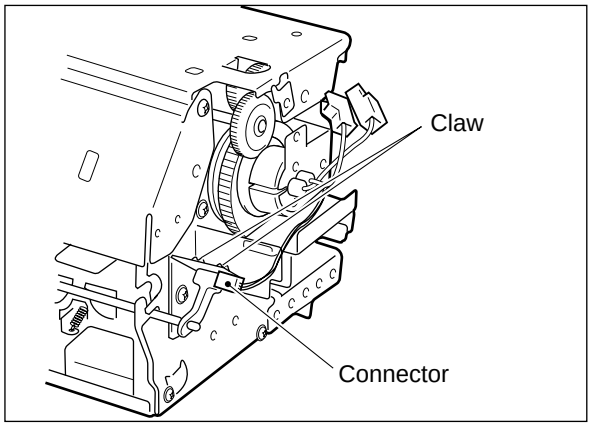
(2) Remove the 2 stop rings, screw, handle, gear and 2 pins. Then draw out the shaft to replace the exit roller.





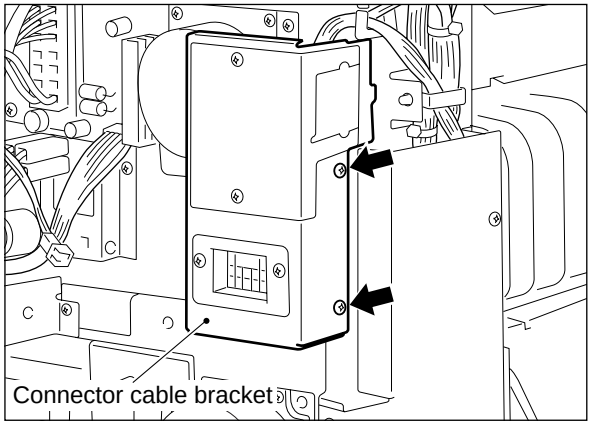
[J] Exit switch

(1) Remove the front cover (2 screws).
(2) Disconnect the connector.
(3) Release the claw from the bracket, and remove the exit switch.

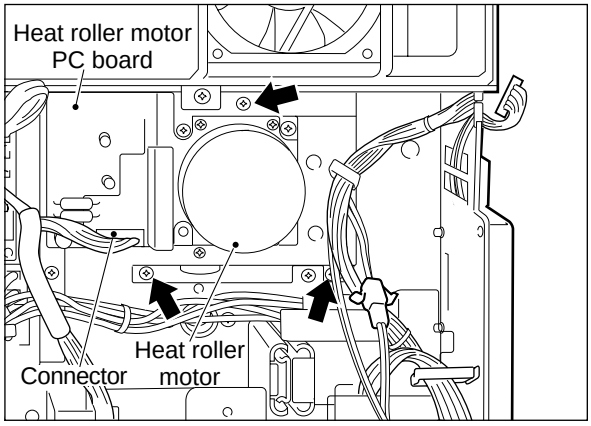


[K] Heat roller motor

(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Remove the rear side cover.
(3) Remove the connector cable bracket (2 screws).

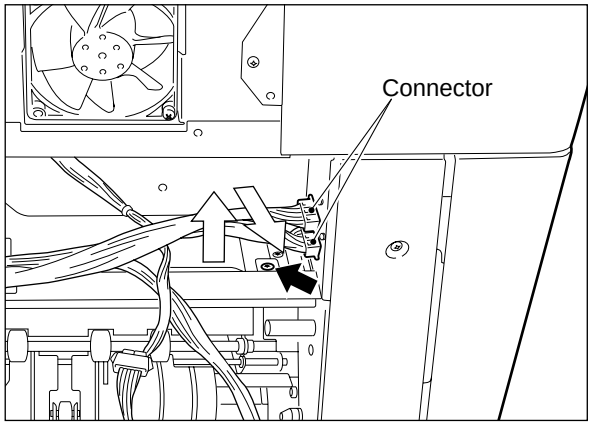


(4) Disconnect the connector from the heat roller motor PC board.
(5) Remove the motor (3 screws).

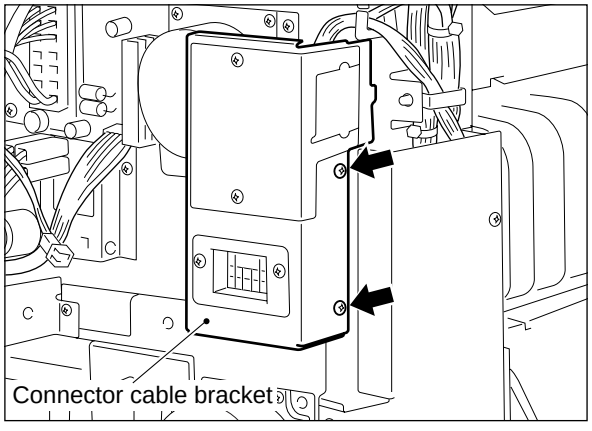


[L] Heater fan motor

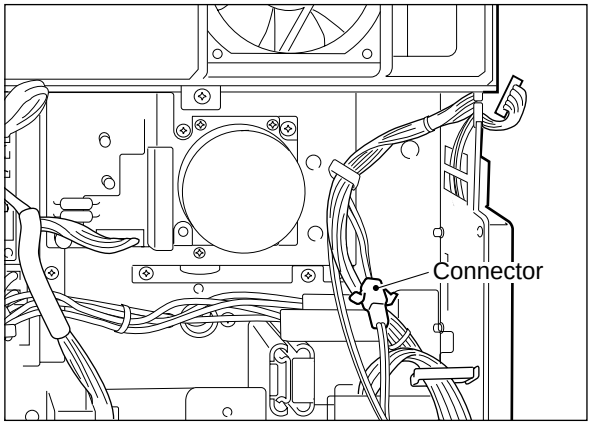
(1) Remove the system electronics unit.
(2) Remove the screw and disconnect the 2 connectors, and then remove the heater fan duct in the direction of the arrow.



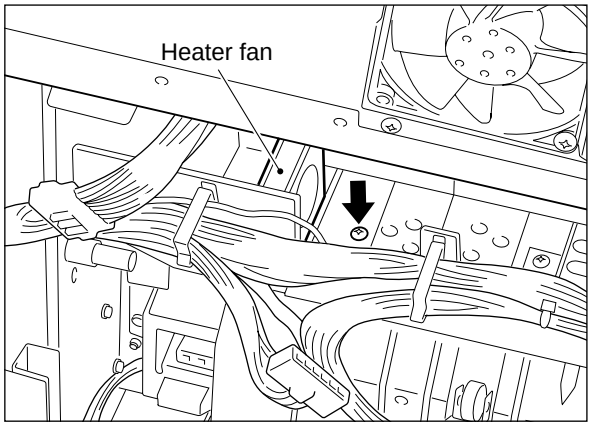
(3) Remove the rear side cover.
(4) Remove the connector cable bracket (2 screws).



(5) Disconnect the motor connector.

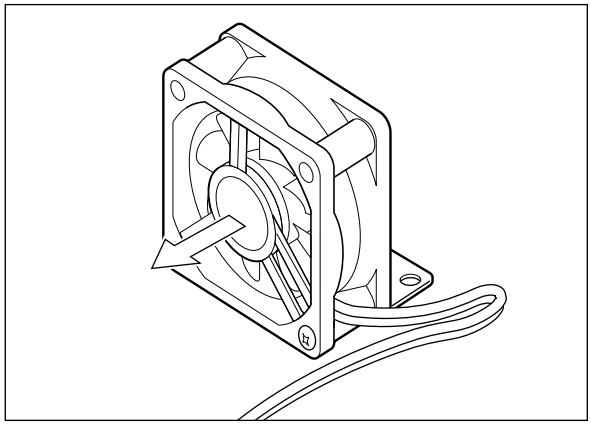


(6) Remove the motor bracket (1 screw).



(7) Remove the heater fan motor from the bracket (2 screws).

Note: When assembling, the direction of the arrow on the blow out side of the heater fan motor must be as shown in the figure on the right.

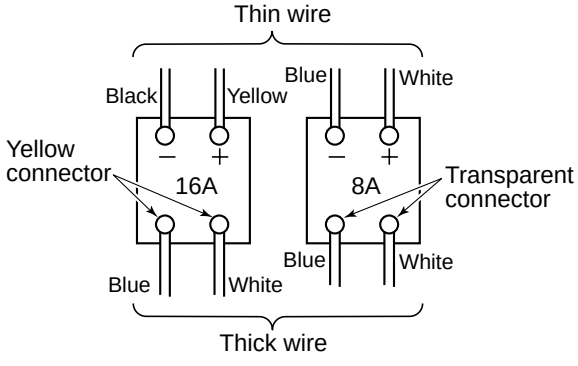


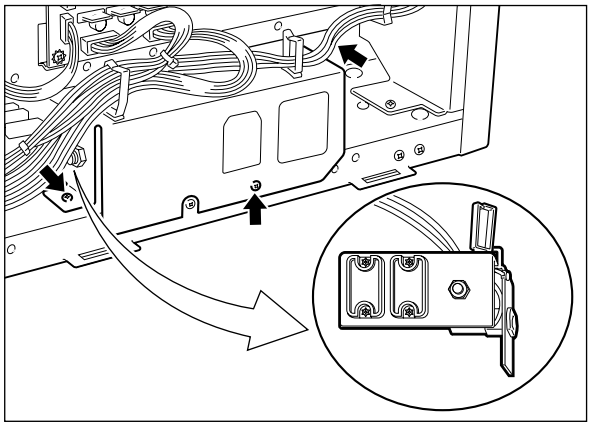
[M] SSR for the upper heater lamp

(1) Remove the protective cover (3 screws).

(2) Disconnect the 4 connectors, and remove each of the 2 screws to remove the SSR.

Note: Wiring is as follows.





15. AUTOMATIC DUPLEXING UNIT (ADU)

15.1 Introduction

The Automatic Duplexing Unit (ADU) is a device for automatically making copies on both the front and rear sides of paper. The ADU also has a stack function that allows up to 60 copies to be made on both sides of the paper in a single operation. In other words, the stack function operates to make copies on the rear side for the number of sets specified when making multiple sets of copies, and stacking these sets. Up to 60 sheets can be stacked. Double-sided copying is completed by making the next copy on the rear side of the paper by re-feeding the stacked copies for the specified number of copies.
As the ADU uses the FIFO (First In First Out) system, it is structured to re-feed copy paper from the bottom side. The exit section is provided with a reversal mechanism for offsetting the order of double-sided copying depending on the double-sided copy mode (for example, when the one-sided and double-sided mode are selected for odd-numbered originals without the number of originals specified) using the ADF.

The ADU comprises the following mechanisms:

(1) ADU/exit switching gate
This gate is for guiding paper output from the fuser to the ADU.
During one-sided copying, and after double-sided copying is completed, the movement of this gate guides copy paper to the copy tray.

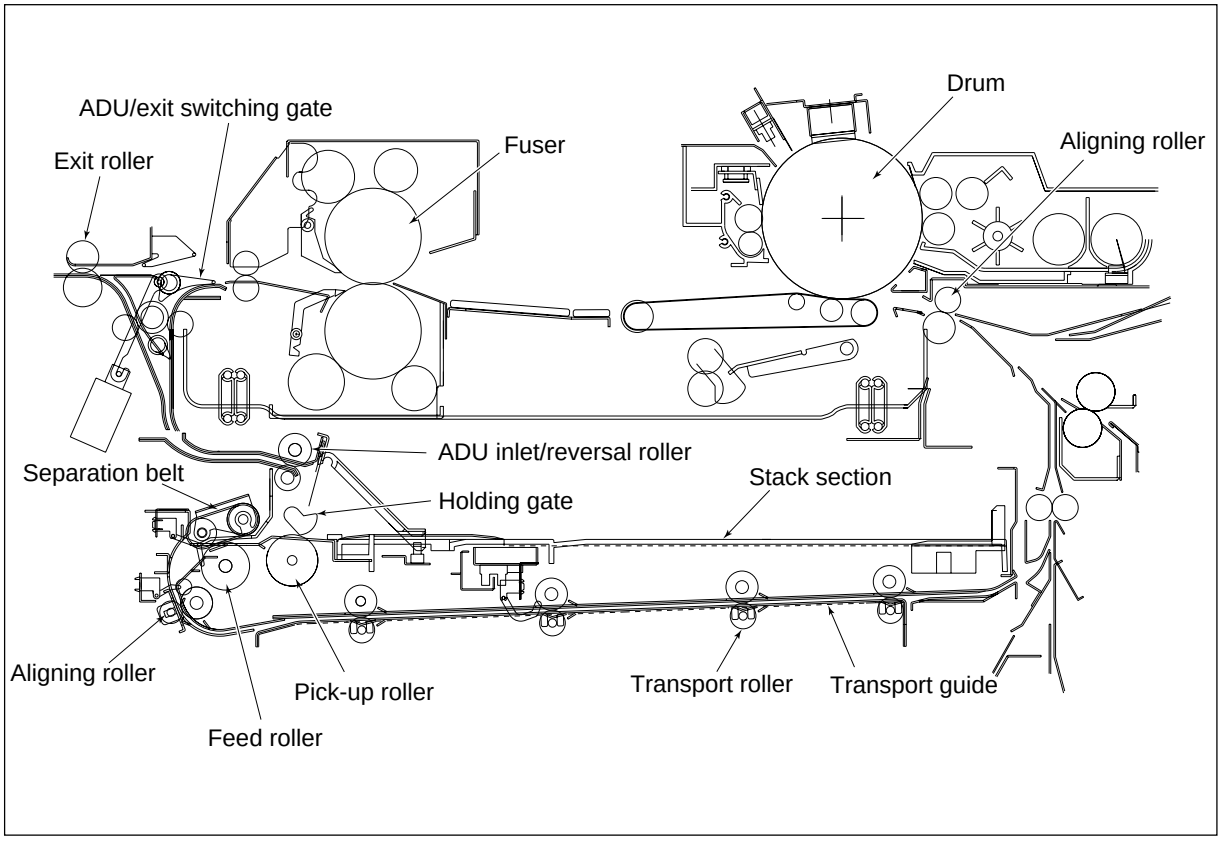
(2) ADU inlet/reversal roller
This roller is for guiding the paper to the stack section from the gate. During the reversal exit operation, it guides the copy paper again to the stack section. Reversal of this roller turns the paper over, and guides the paper to the copy tray from the exit section.

(3) Stack section
This is where paper is stacked. This section is provided with guides for aligning the leading and trailing edges, and left and right sides of the paper.

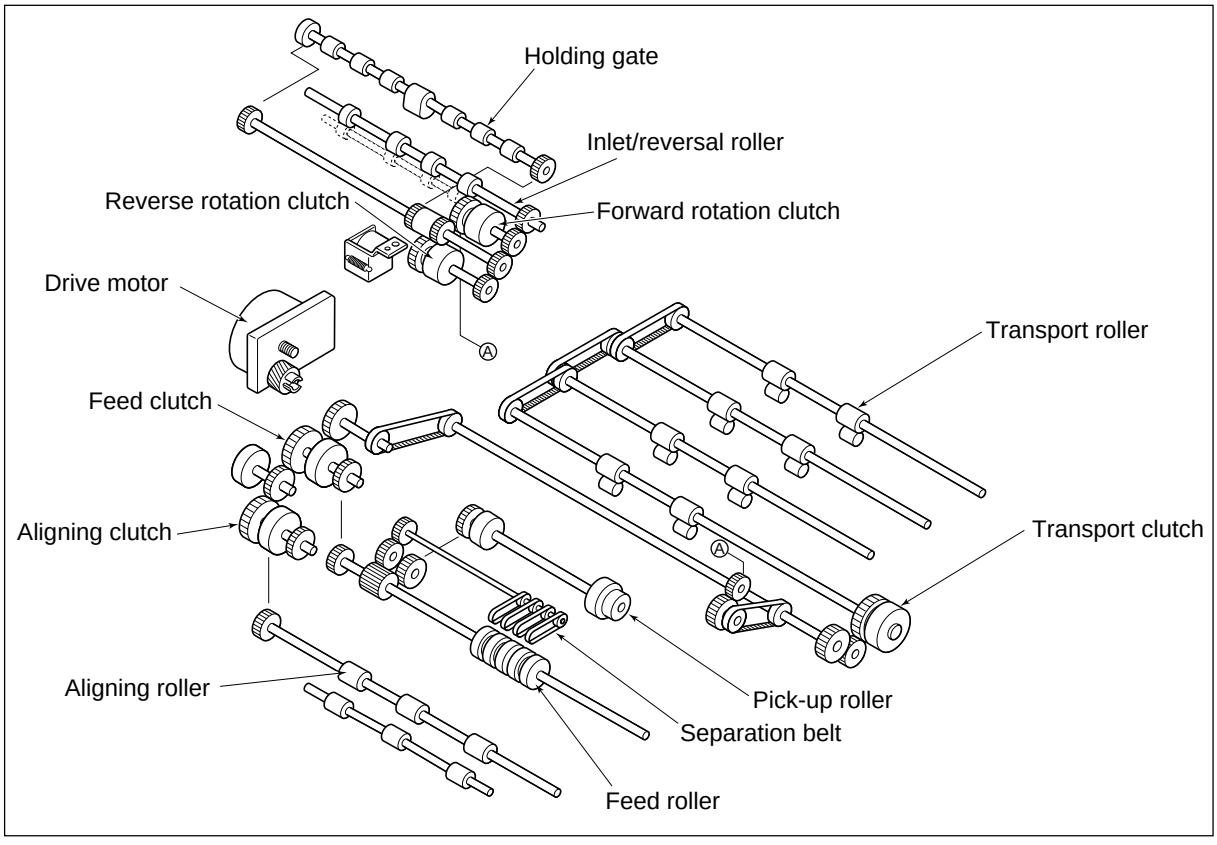
(4) Holding gate section
This section functions to hold stacked paper for re-feeding, and to receive paper to be stacked. Rotation of this gate re-feeds paper while simultaneously stacking paper.

(5) Re-feed section
This feed mechanism is for guiding paper on the stack section again to the copier. It comprises a pick-up roller, feed roller, separation belt, aligning roller and other parts.

(6) Transport section
This section comprises a transport roller and transport guide for guiding re-fed paper to the feed section on this copier.


Drum
ADU/exit switching gate
Aligning roller
Exit roller
Fuser
ADU inlet/reversal roller
Separation belt
Stack section
Holding gate
Aligning roller
Pick-up roller
Transport roller
Transport guide
Feed roller

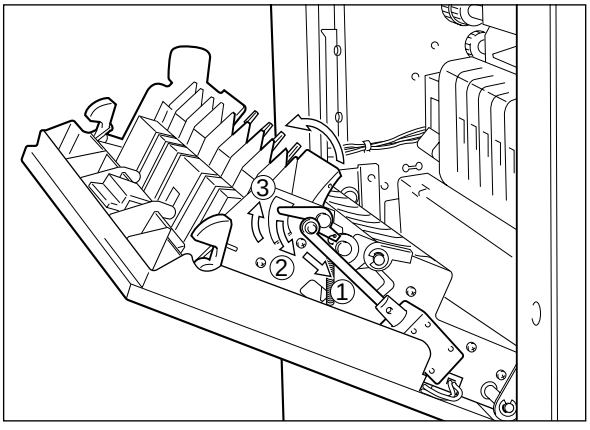
15.2 Drive



15.2.1 ADU/exit switching gate drive

When the gate solenoid turns ON, the link is pulled (arrow ①), the arm rotates (arrow ②), the gate opens, and the copied paper is transported to the ADU stack section.

When the gate solenoid turns OFF, the arm returns to its original position (arrow ③) by spring force, and the copied paper is output.



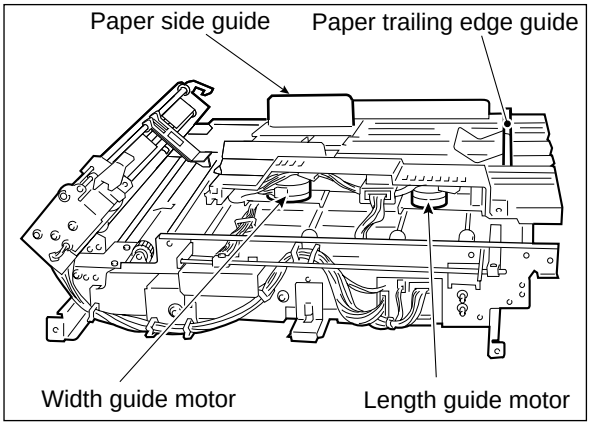
15.2.2 Stack guide drive

(1) Paper side guide

The width guide motor operates in accordance with the size of the selected paper to move the paper side guide to the specified position. With each five sheets of paper stacked on the stack section, the width guide motor moves the side guide to the left and right to align the paper.

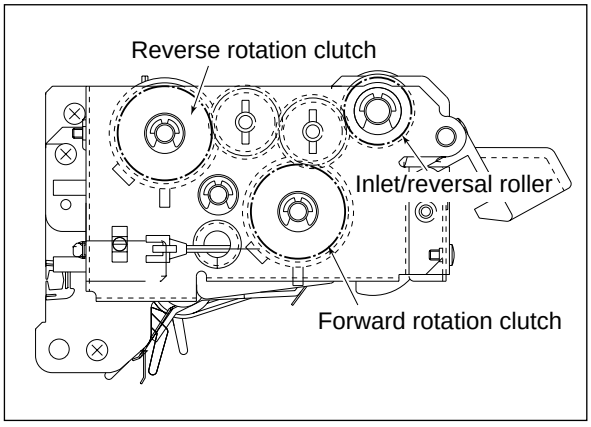
(2) Paper trailing edge guide

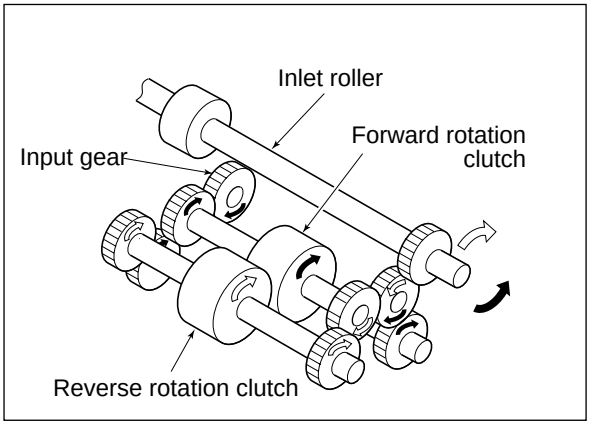
The length guide motor operates in accordance with the size of the selected paper to move the paper trailing edge guide to the specified position.



15.2.3 ADU inlet/reversal roller drive

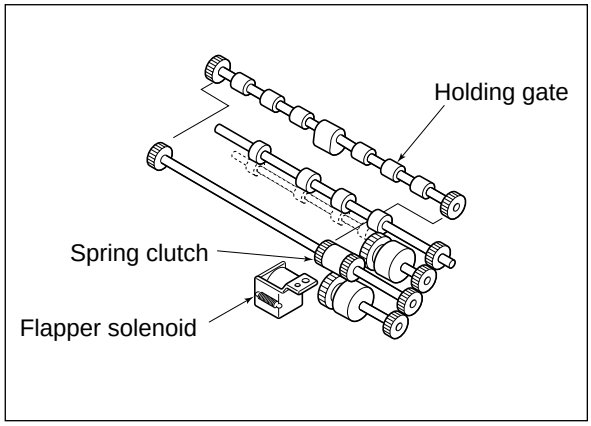
When the forward rotation clutch turns ON, the inlet roller rotates in the direction (forward rotation) for feeding paper to the stack section of the ADU. When the reverse rotation clutch turns ON, the inlet roller rotates in the direction (reverse direction) for turning the paper over.





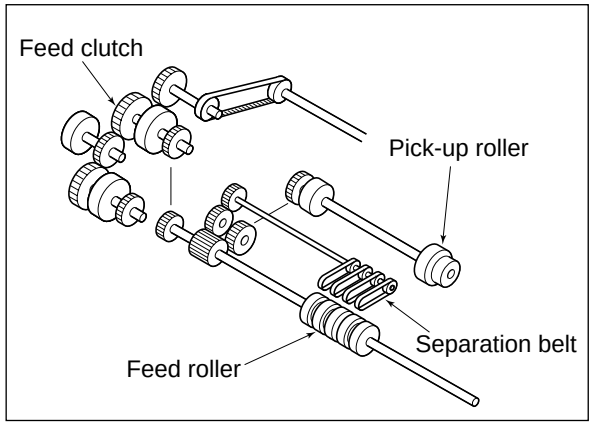
15.2.4 Holding gate drive

When the flapper solenoid turns ON, the projection on the spring clutch becomes disconnected and rotates. When the flapper solenoid turns OFF, the projection on the spring clutch stopped by the flapper solenoid to stop rotation.



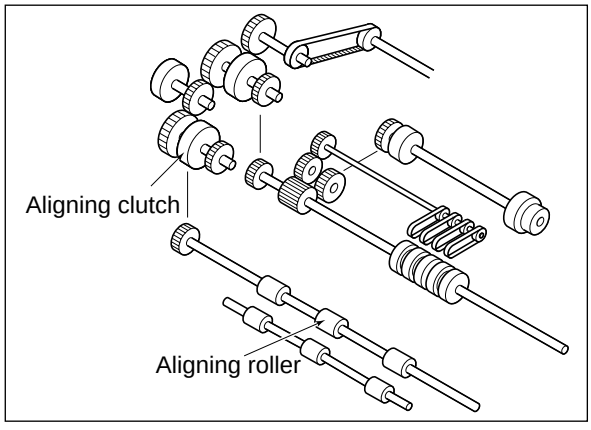
15.2.5 ADU pick-up roller, ADU feed roller and ADU separation belt drive

- When the ADU feed clutch turns ON, the ADU feed roller and ADU pick-up roller rotates.
- The ADU separation belt rotates by the gear on the ADU feed roller in the direction opposite (reverse direction) to that of the ADU feed roller.



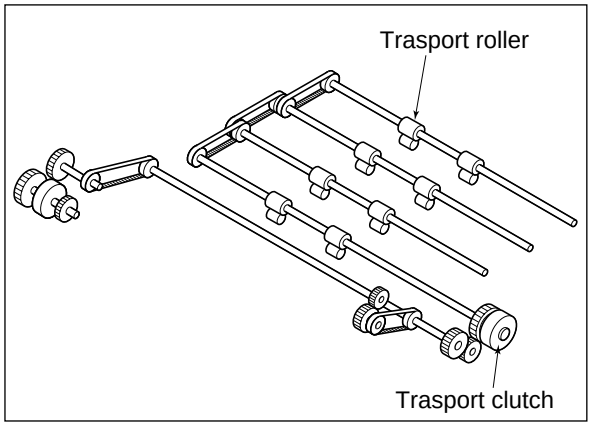
15.2.6 ADU aligning roller drive

When the ADU aligning clutch turns ON, the ADU aligning roller rotates.



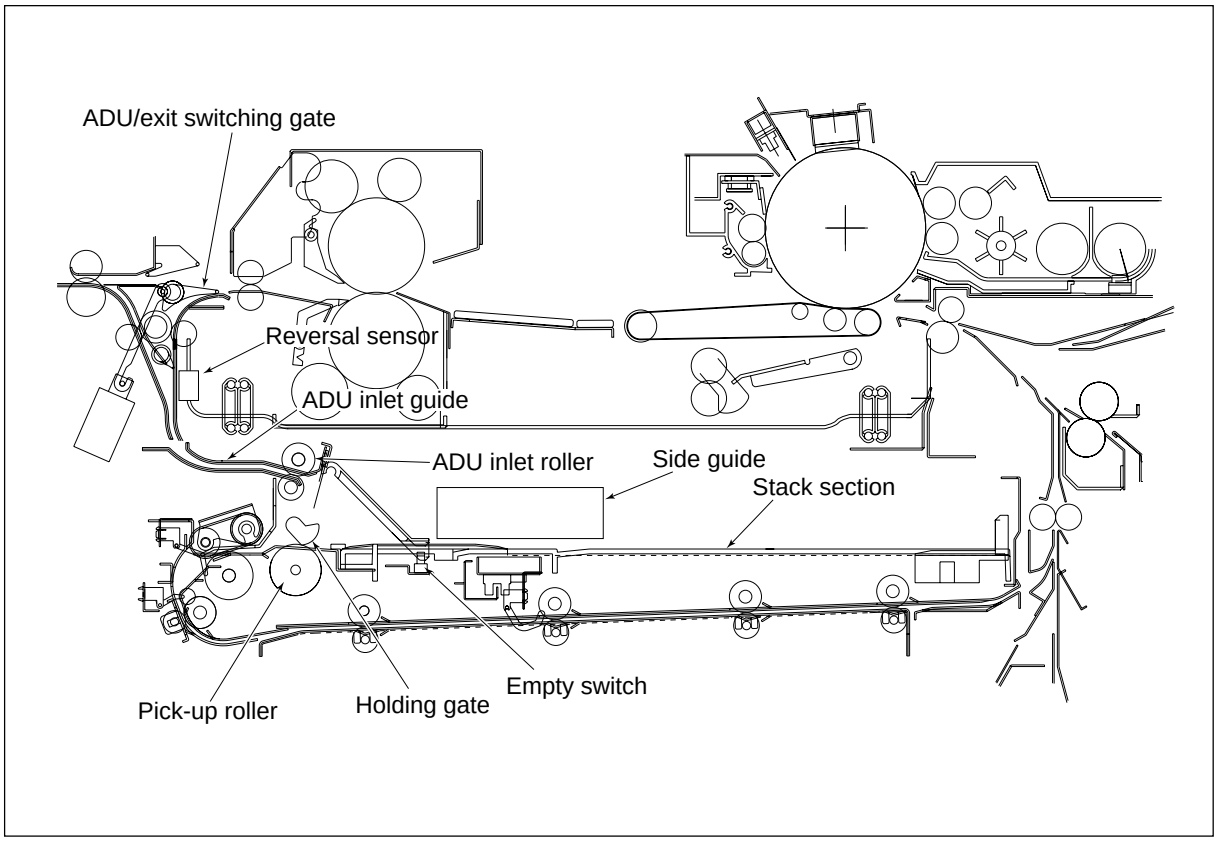
15.2.7 ADU transport roller drive

When the ADU transport clutch is turn ON, the ADU transport roller rotates.



15.3 Description of Operation

15.3.1 Paper stack operation

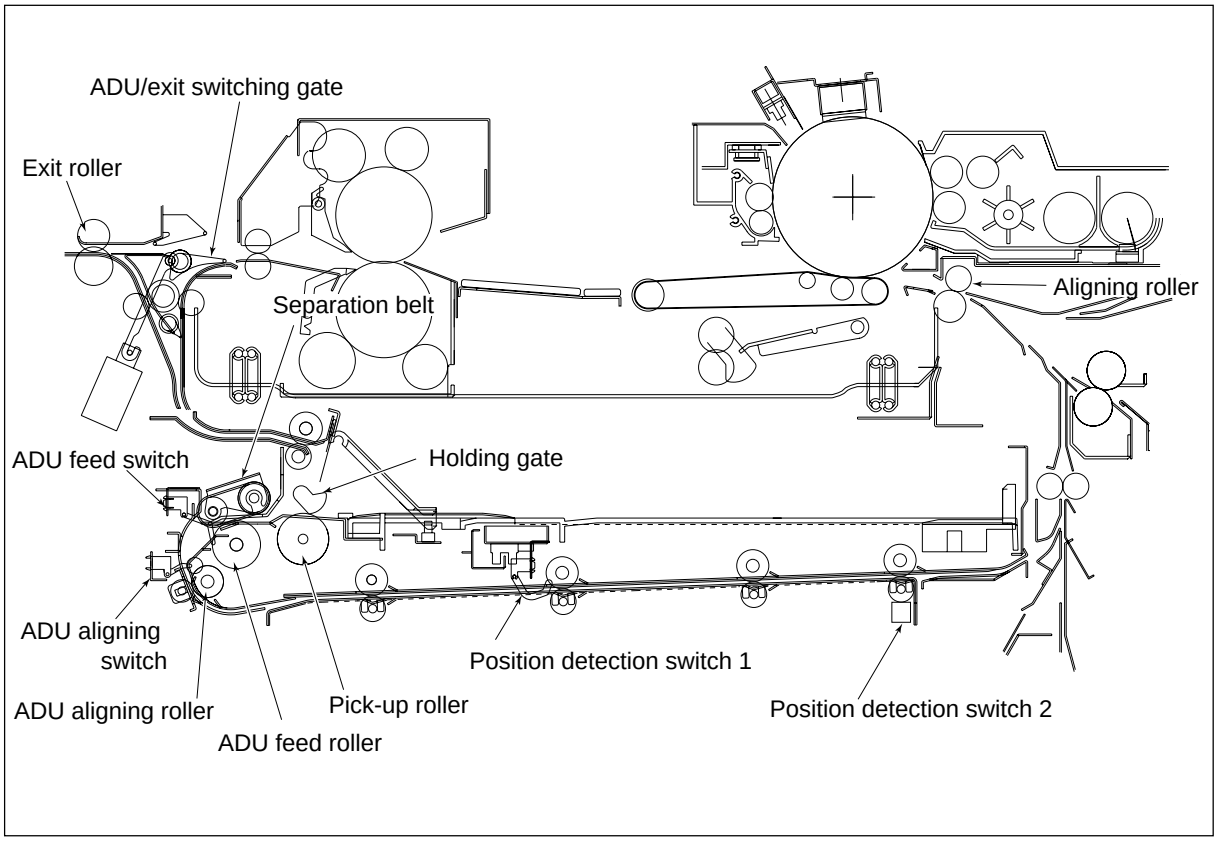


When the double-sided copy mode is selected on the copier's control panel, and the COPY button is pressed, the paper side guides and paper trailing end guide on the ADU stack section move to the positions corresponding to the selected paper size by respective motor drive. At the same time, the ADU/exit switching gate moves to the paper stack position by the gate solenoid.
The copied paper is fed inside the ADU inlet guide by the ADU/exit switching gate. During this operation, the paper is detected by the reversal sensor, and ADU drive motor operates, the inlet roller rotates by the ADU inlet roller forward rotation clutch, and the paper is fed further into the stack section.
When the paper enters the stack section, it is temporarily stacked on the holding gate receiving section, and the paper is stacked between the pick-up roller and the holding gate as the holding gate rotates. At the stack section, the paper is stacked with the copied side facing down. This operation is repeated until the specified number of sheets of paper are stacked.

When paper stacking is started, the paper side guides open to make a gap of 1 mm on both sides of the paper and are set at this position. Each time that five sheets of paper are stacked continuously during stacking, the side guides align the sides of the paper.

The ADU empty switch is for detecting whether or not paper is on the stack section.

15.3.2 Duplex copy (re-feed) operation

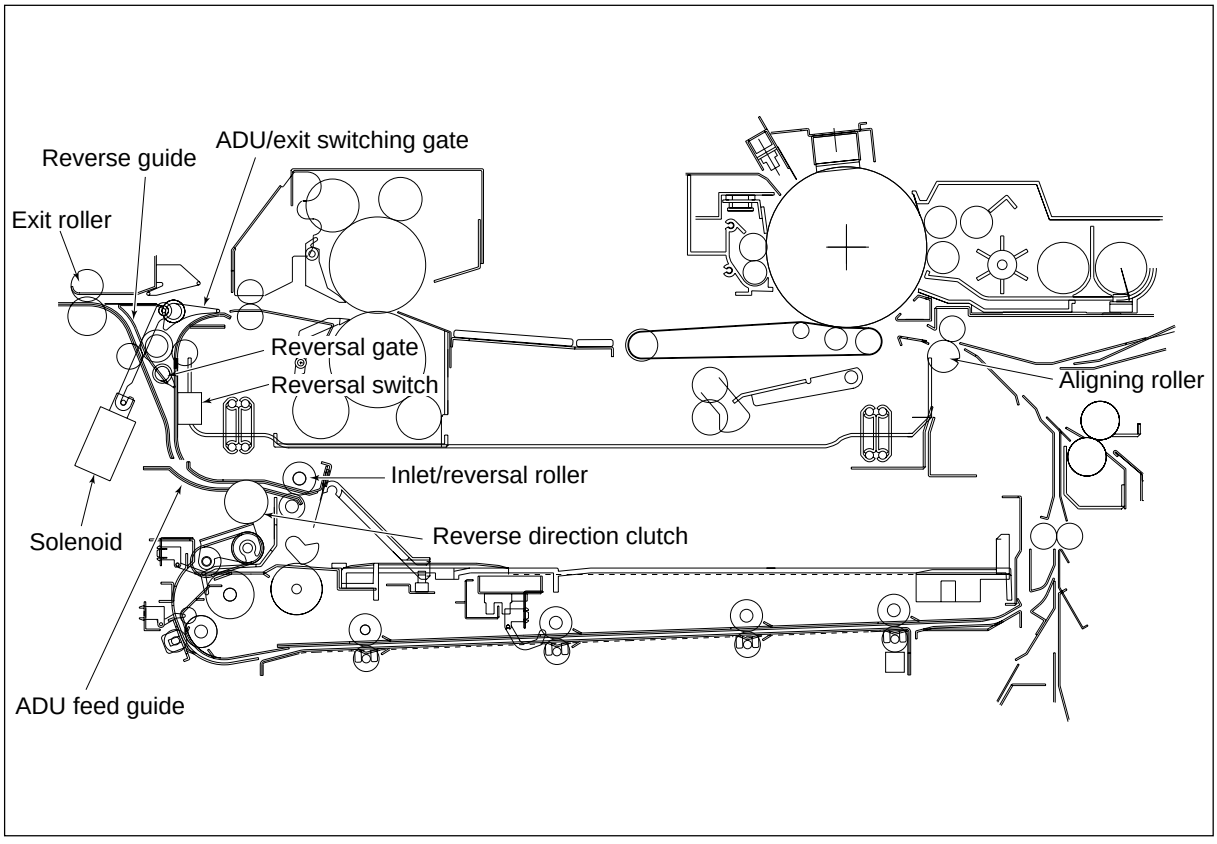


When the first sheet of paper is stacked, the pick-up roller located on the bottom side of the stack section rotates by the ADU feed clutch to feed paper out to the ADU feed roller section. If two or more sheets are fed out during this operation, the ADU separation belt rotates in the reverse direction to draw the upper sheet(s) back onto the stack section. The ADU feed roller and ADU separation belt are driven by the ADU feed clutch.
The holding gate also rotates at the same time as the pick-up roller, and functions to hold the paper on the stack section. After the paper is fed out, it passes through the ADU aligning roller, is detected by the position detector switch located in the transport section, and stops temporarily at the transport section (initial alignment operation).

When paper stacking ends, the paper that has been initially aligned is fed to and aligned by the aligning roller of the copier, and copies are made on the side opposite to the initially copied side. Paper that has been copied on both sides passes over the ADU/exit switching gate that is already positioned in the exit direction, and is output to the copy tray by the exit roller.
The paper on the stack section is fed successively from the bottom side. This operation is repeated until all stacked paper is copied.

1) The ADU feed switch detects the leading and trailing edges of the paper passing through the ADU feed roller. It is also used for detecting paper jams.
2) The ADU aligning switch detects the leading and trailing edges of the paper passing through the ADU aligning roller. It is also used for detecting paper jams.
3) The ADU position detection switch 1 and ADU position detection switch 2 switch detect the leading and trailing edges of the paper passing through the ADU transport roller. They are also used for detecting paper jams.

15.3.3 Reversal exit operation



In the double-sided copy mode, the reversal exit operation is carried out when the second side is output if the following conditions are met:

Conditions: The 1st of several copies of two or more odd-numbered originals made in the one-sided and double-sided modes using the ADF. Or, when one copy is made.

By the reversal exit operation, the double-sided copy sheets are detected by the body aligning switch when the sheets arrive at the aligning roller on the copier, and the ADU/exit switching gate are positioned in the direction of the paper stack section by solenoid. Next, the double-sided copy sheets are fed inside the ADU inlet guide by During this operation, the leading edge of the paper is detected by the reversal switch, and the inlet/reversal roller rotates in the forward direction to transfer the paper to the ADU stack section.

When the paper passes through the reversal gate, and the trailing edge of the paper passes the reversal switch, the inlet/reversal roller rotates in the reverse direction by the reverse direction clutch, and the paper is guided to the reversal guide section by the reversal gate. After the paper is guided to the reversal guide section, it is output to the copy tray by the exit roller.

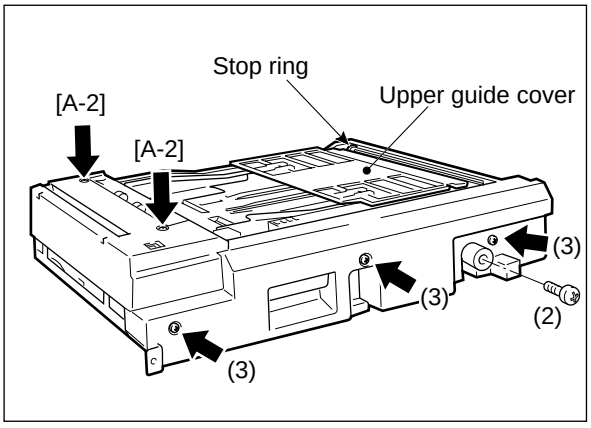
1) The reversal switch detects the leading and trailing edges of the paper passing through the reversal gate. It is also used for detecting paper jams.

15.4 Disassembly and Replacement

[A] Removing the ADU covers

[A-1] Removing the ADU front cover

(1) Draw out the ADU from the copier.
(2) Remove the screw fixing the rotation knob, and then remove the rotation knob.
(3) Remove the 3 screws fixing the ADU front cover.
(4) Remove the upper guide cover fastened by the stop ring.

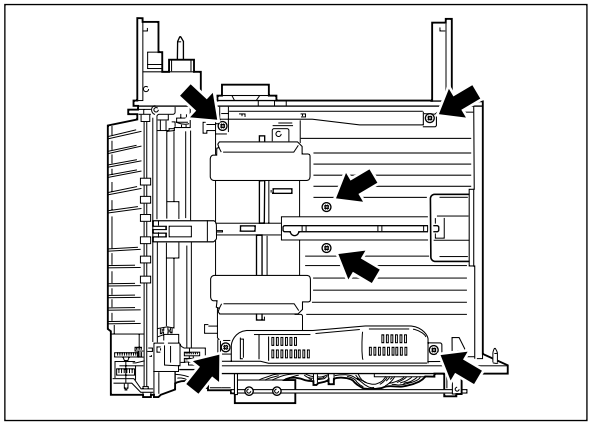


[A-2] Removing the ADU feed cover

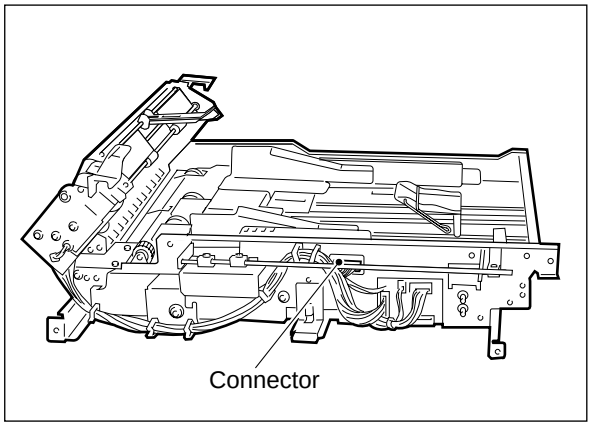
(1) Remove the 2 screws fixing the ADU feed cover.

[B] Stack guide unit

(1) Remove the 6 screws fixing the stack guide unit.



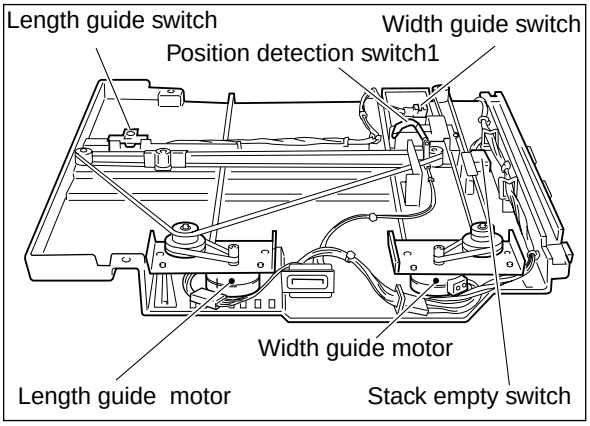
(2) Disconnect the connector.
(3) Remove the stack guide unit.



[C] Width guide motor and width guide switch

(1) Remove the stack guide unit.
(2) Disconnect the connector, and remove the 2 screws.
(3) Remove the 2 screws fixing the width guide motor to remove the width guide motor.
(4) Disconnect the connector, and release the switch claw from the bracket to remove the width guide switch.

Note: The position of the width guide switch is adjusted before the copier is shipped from the factory. Do not remove the adjustment screw.



[D] Length guide motor and length guide switch

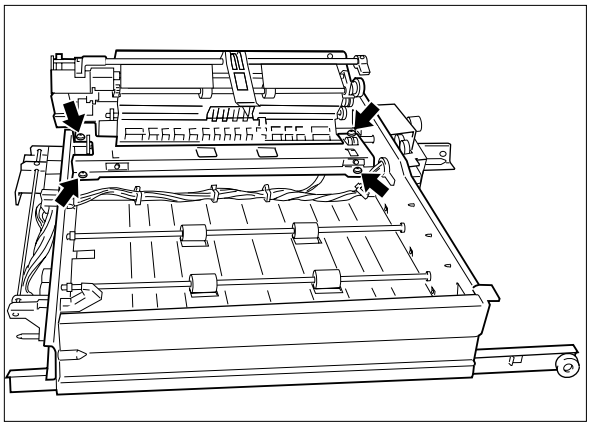
(1) Remove the stack guide unit.
(2) Disconnect the connector and remove the 2 screws.
(3) Remove the 2 screws fixing the length guide motor and then remove the length guide motor.
(4) Disconnect the connector, and release the switch claw from the bracket to remove the length guide switch.

[E] Stack empty switch, position detection switch 1

(1) Remove the stack guide unit.
(2) Disconnect the connector, and release the switch claw from the bracket to remove the stack empty switch.
(3) Disconnect the connector, and release the switch claw from the bracket to remove the position detection switch 1.

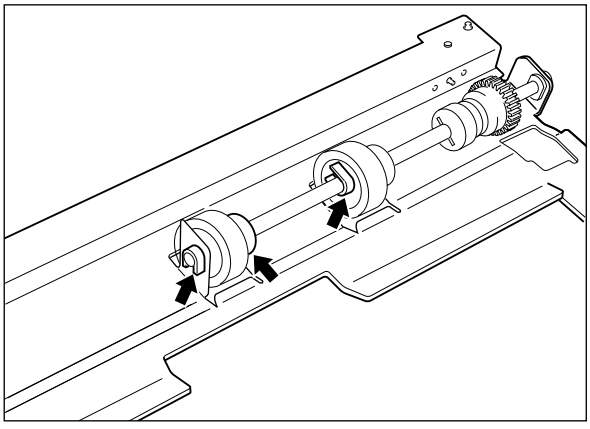
[F] Pick-up roller guide unit

(1) Remove the stack guide unit.
(2) Remove the 4 screws fixing the pick-up roller guide to remove the pick-up roller guide.



[G] Pick-up roller

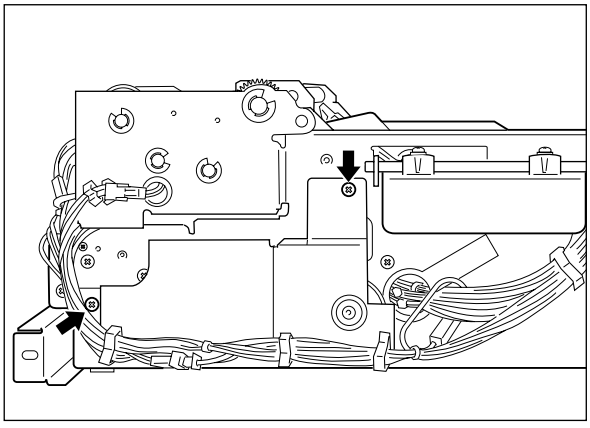
(1) Remove the pick-up roller guide unit.
(2) Remove the 3 clips fixing the pick-up roller, clutch and pick-up roller.



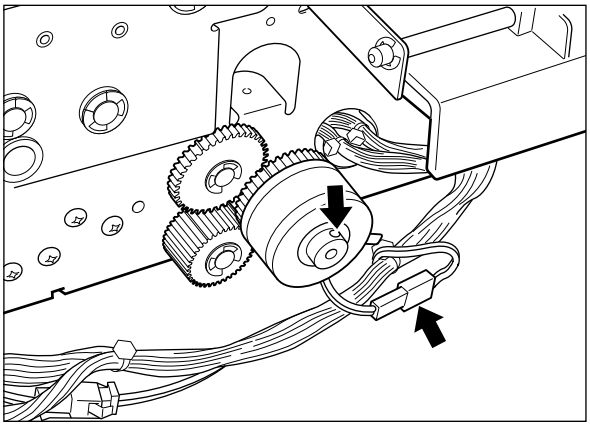
[H] Transport clutch

(1) Remove the ADU front cover.
(2) Remove the stack guide unit.
(3) Remove the pick-up roller guide unit.
(4) Remove the 2 screws fixing the clutch guide and then the clutch guide.

Note: When returning the clutch guide to its original position, make sure that the protrusion on the clutch is fitted into the notch on the clutch guide.

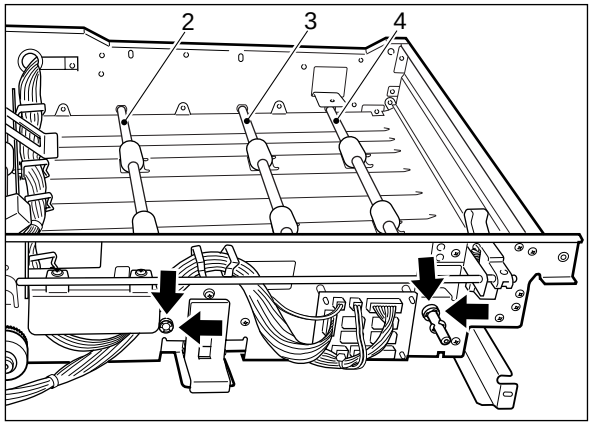


(5) Remove the set screw fixing the transport clutch and disconnect the connector. Then remove the transport clutch.

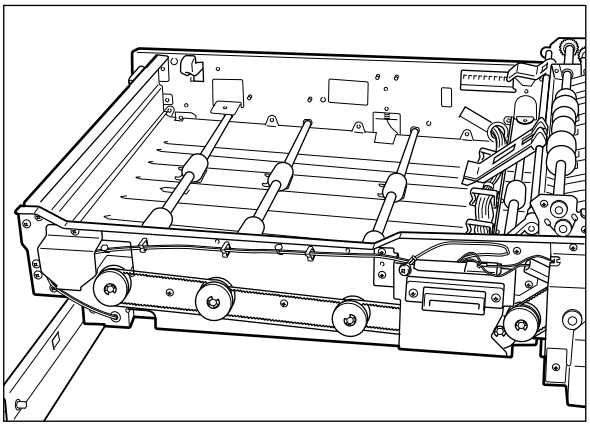


[I] Transport roller 2, 3, 4

(1) Remove the PC board.
(2) Remove the front E-ring and bush.

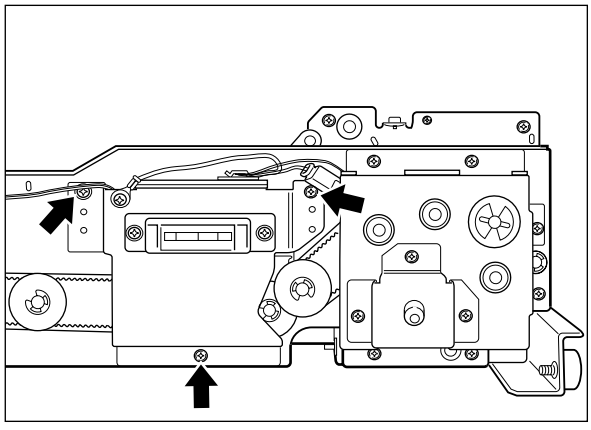


(3) Remove the rear E-ring, pulley pin and belt.
(4) Remove the E-ring and bush and then the transport roller. The transport roller 2 and 3 are same parts.



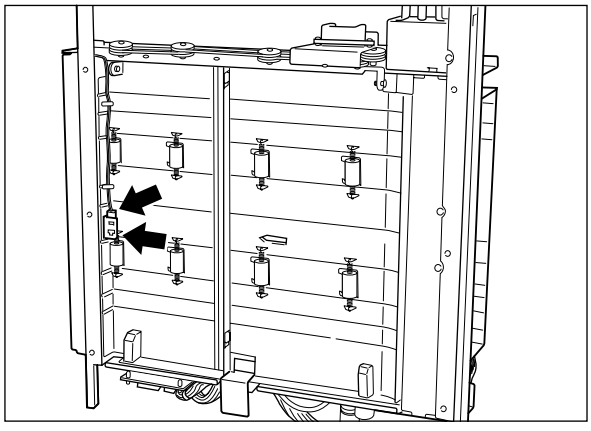
[J] Transport roller 1

(1) Remove the front clutch guide and the transport clutch.
(2) Remove the front E-ring and bush.
(3) Remove the 3 screws fixing the rear connector bracket, and then remove the connector bracket.
(4) Remove the rear E-ring, pulley pin and belt.
(5) Remove the E-ring and bush, and then the transport roller. The transport roller 1 and 4 are same parts.



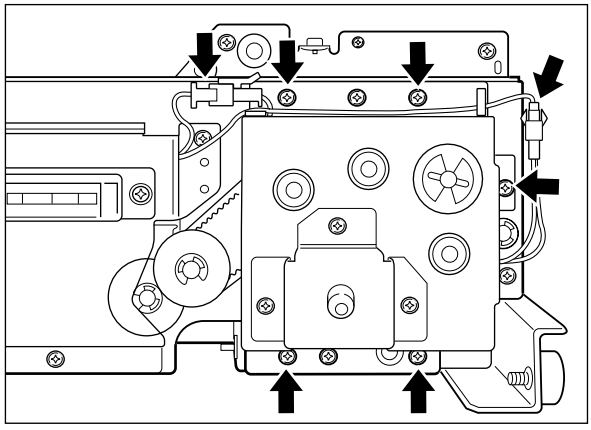
[K] Transport switch 2

(1) Turn the ADU unit cover.
(2) Disconnect the connector, and release the switch claw from the bracket to remove transport switch 2.



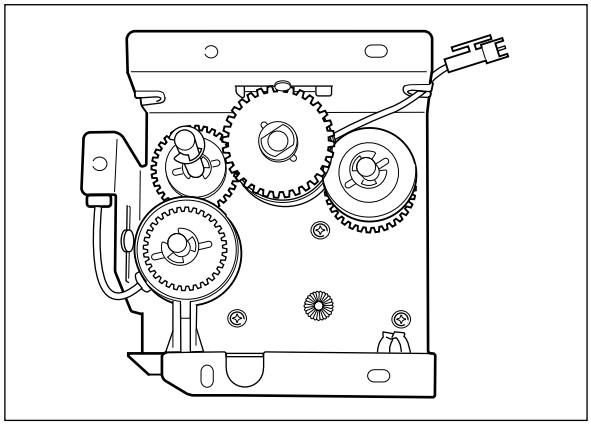
[L] ADU drive unit

(1) Disconnect the 2 connectors.
(2) Remove the 5 screws fixing the ADU drive unit and then the ADU drive unit.



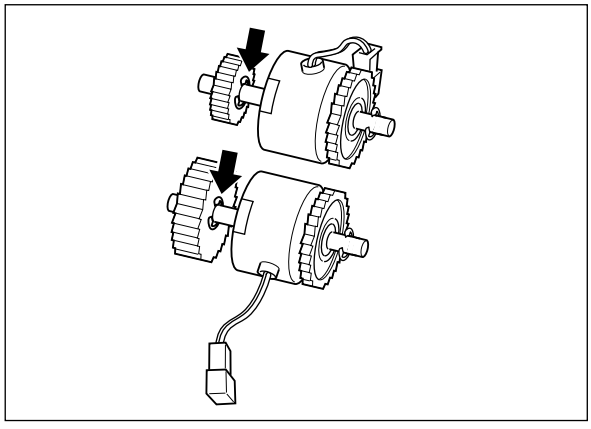
[M] Feed clutch and aligning clutch

(1) Remove the ADU drive unit.
(2) Remove the bracket (2 screws).
(3) Remove the 4 bushes.



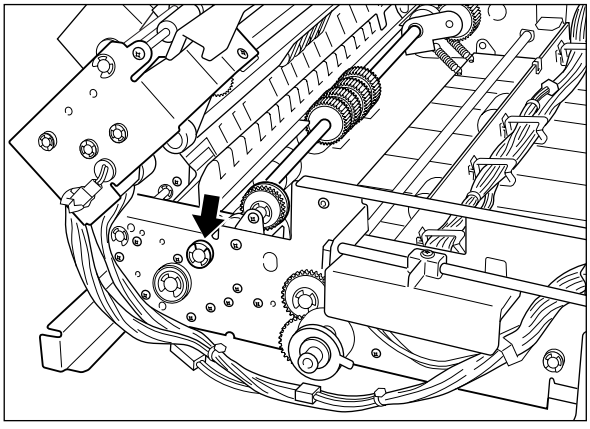
(4) Remove the E-ring, gear and pin.
(5) Remove the feed clutch and the 2 set screws fixing the aligning clutch. Then, remove the feed clutch and aligning clutch.

Note: The gear on the feed clutch side is Z32, and the hear on the aligning clutch side is Z22.

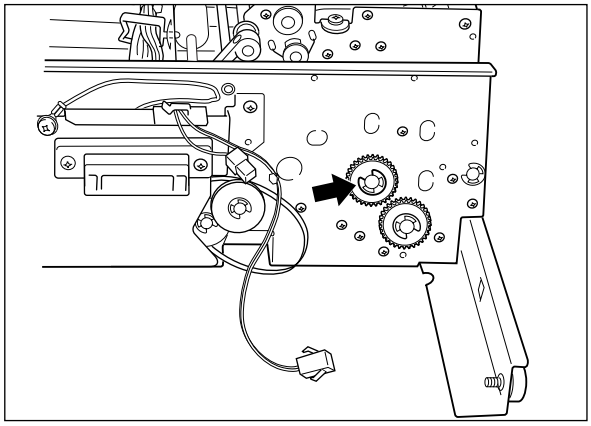


[N] Feed roller

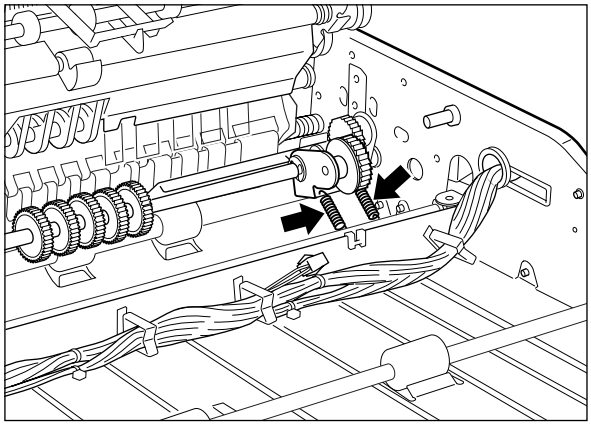
(1) Remove the ADU front cover.
(2) Remove the stack guide unit.
(3) Remove the pick-up roller guide unit.
(4) Remove the ADU drive unit.
(5) Remove the transport clutch guide.
(6) Remove the front E-ring and bush.



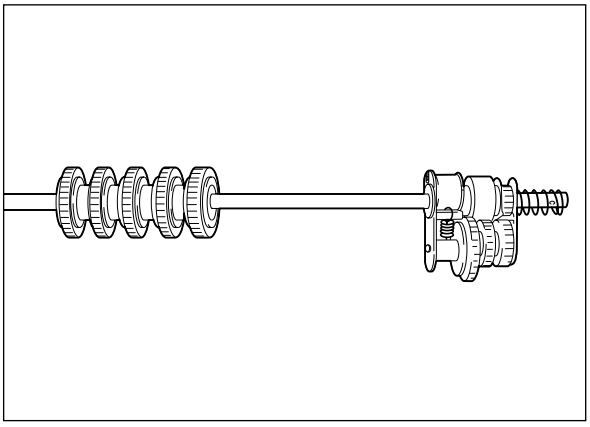
(7) Remove the rear E-ring, gear (black) and pin.
(8) Remove the E-ring and bearing.



(9) Remove the spring from the transport guide.

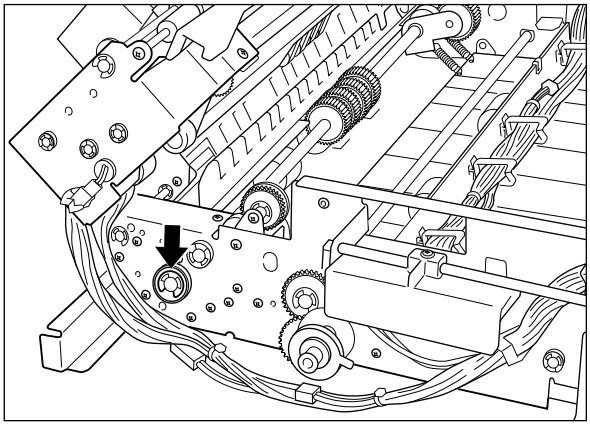


(10) Slide the feed roller to the rear to remove.
(11) Remove the spring and separation belt gear drive unit.
(12) Remove the E-ring, pick-up gear drive unit and pin.

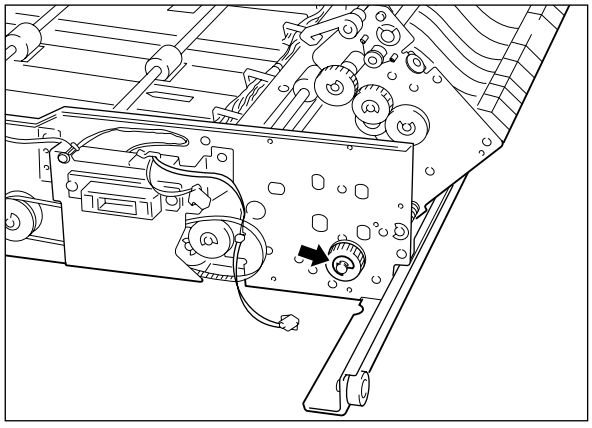


[O] Aligning roller

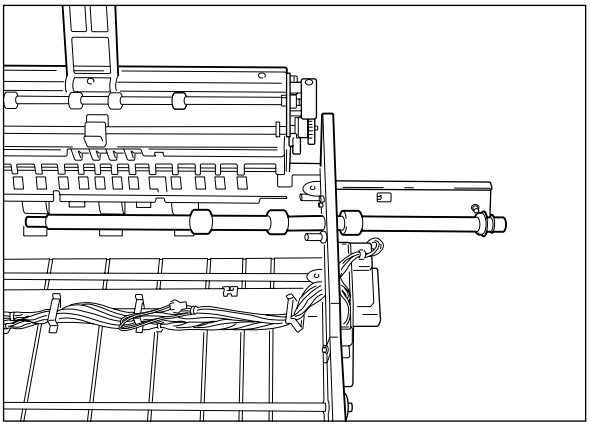
(1) Remove the ADU front cover.
(2) Remove the stack guide unit.
(3) Remove the pick-up roller guide unit.
(4) Remove the ADU drive unit.
(5) Remove the transport clutch guide.
(6) Remove the front E-ring and bearing.



(7) Remove the rear E-ring, gear (white) and pin.
(8) Remove the E-ring and bearing.



(9) Slide the aligning roller to the rear to remove.

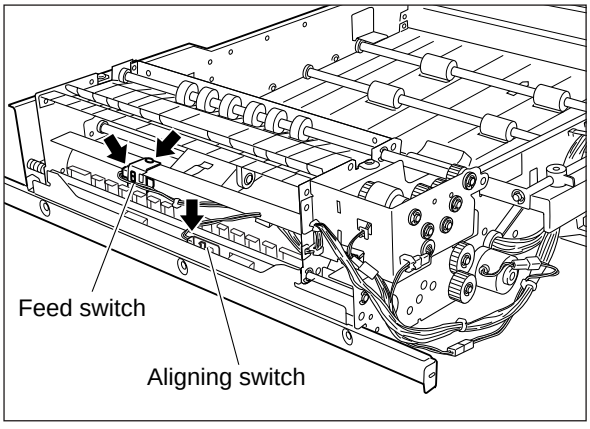


[P] Feed switch

(1) Remove the ADU feed cover.
(2) Remove the screw fixing the feed switch bracket.
(3) Disconnect the connector, and release the switch claw from the bracket to remove the feed switch.

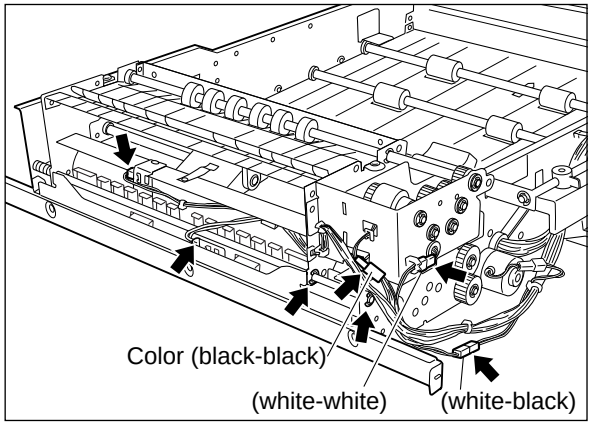
[Q] Aligning switch

(1) Remove the ADU feed cover.
(2) Disconnect the connector, and release the switch claw from the bracket to remove the aligning switch.

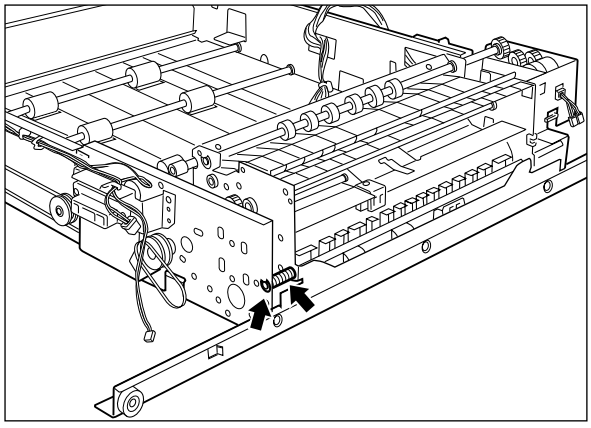


[R] ADU feed unit

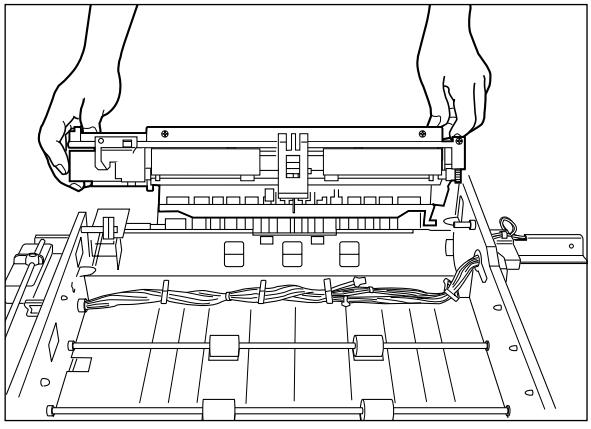
(1) Remove the ADU front cover.
(2) Remove the ADU feed cover.
(3) Remove the transport clutch holder.
(4) Disconnect the 5 connectors, and release the harness from the feed unit.
(5) Remove the 2 E-ring from the front side of the fulcrum shaft fixing the ADU feed unit.



(6) Remove the rear E-ring.
(7) Remove the rear spring.
(8) Draw out the fulcrum shaft to the front.

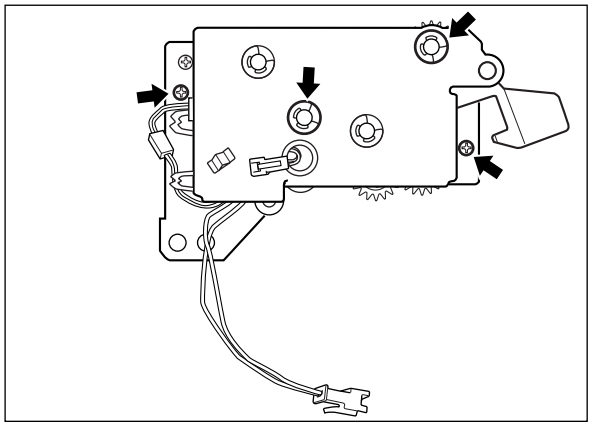


(9) Remove the feeder unit by lifting it upwards.

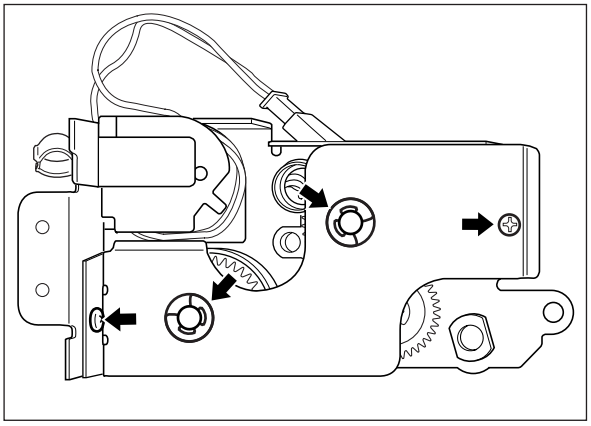


[S] Forward rotation clutch and reverse rotation clutch

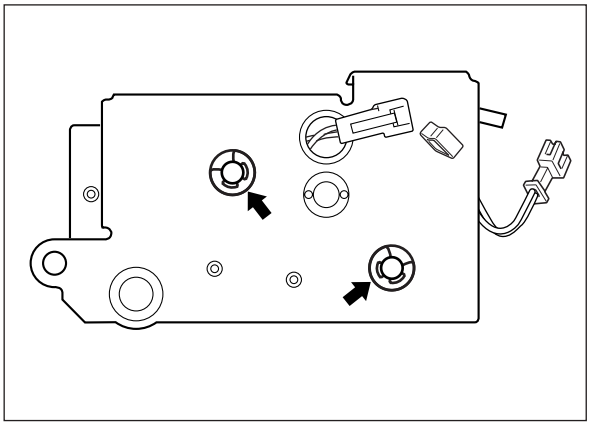
(1) Remove the ADU feed unit.
(2) Remove the 2 E-rings, 2 screws and then the feed drive unit.



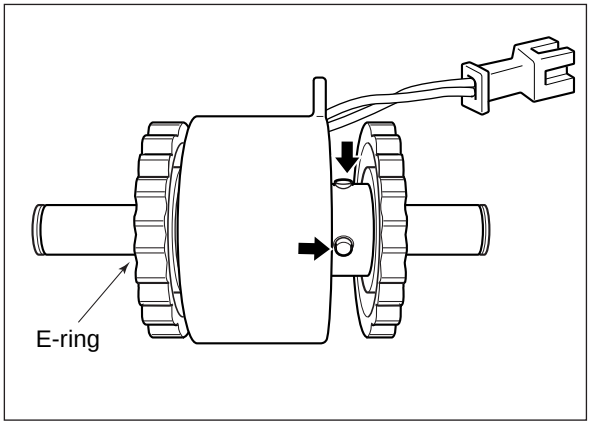
(3) Remove the 2 E-rings, 2 screws and bracket.



(4) Remove the 2 E-rings and bush.

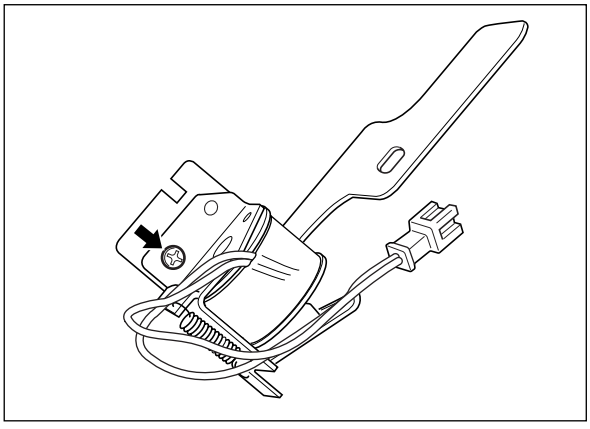


(5) Remove each of the 2 set screws fixing the forward rotation clutch and reverse rotation clutch, and then remove forward rotation clutch and reverse rotation clutch.



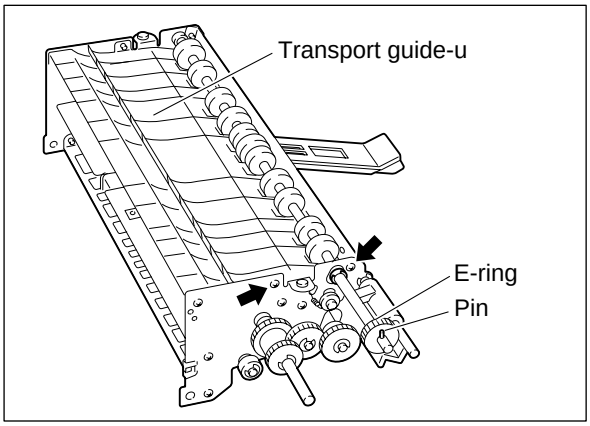
[T] Holding gate solenoid

(1) Remove the ADU feed unit.
(2) Remove the feed drive unit.
(3) Remove the screw fixing the holding gate solenoid to remove the holding gate solenoid.

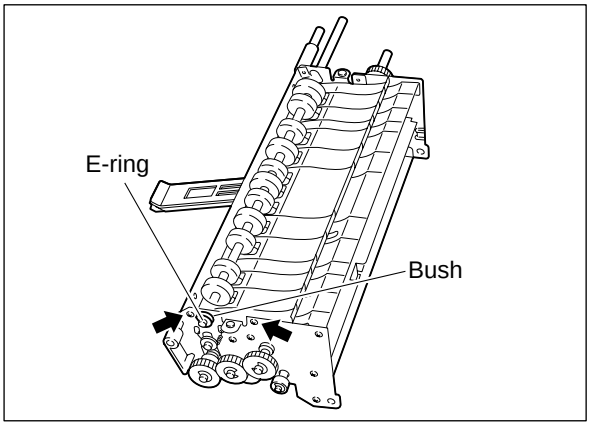


[U] inlet/reversal roller (rubber roller, plastic roller)

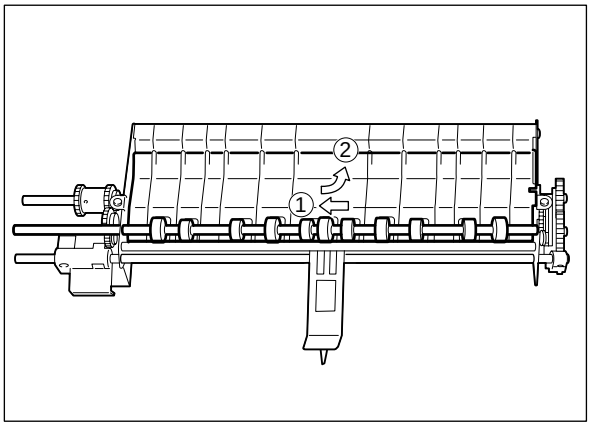
(1) Remove the ADU feed unit.
(2) Remove the feed drive unit.
(3) Remove the E-ring, gear and pin.
(4) Remove 2 screws for the transport guide-u.



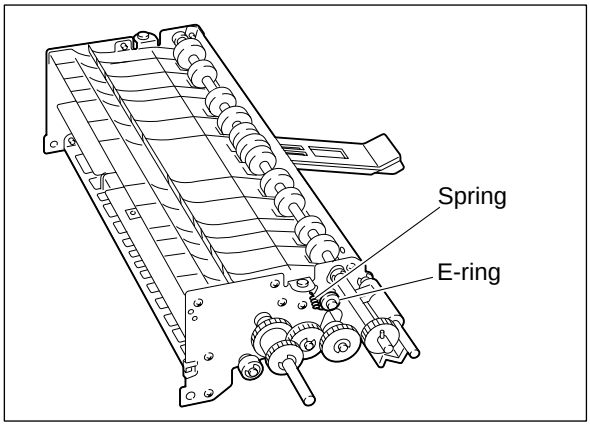
(5) Remove the rear E-ring, and take out the bush.
(6) Remove the transport guide-u (2 screws).



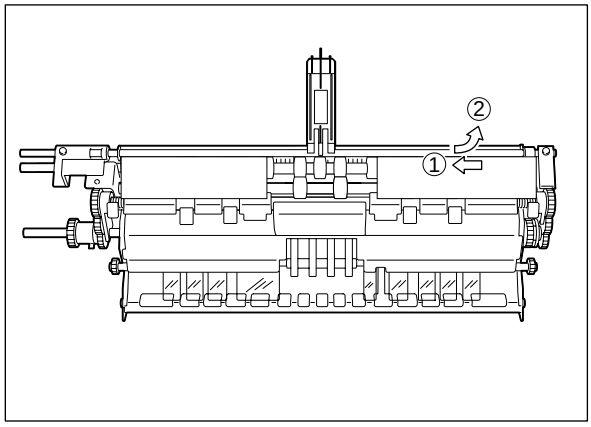
(7) Slide the inlet/reversal roller (rubber roller) to the front to remove.



(8) Remove the front springs and rear springs (2 each).
(9) Remove the front E-ring, and take out the bush.
(10) Remove the rear E-ring, and take out the bush.

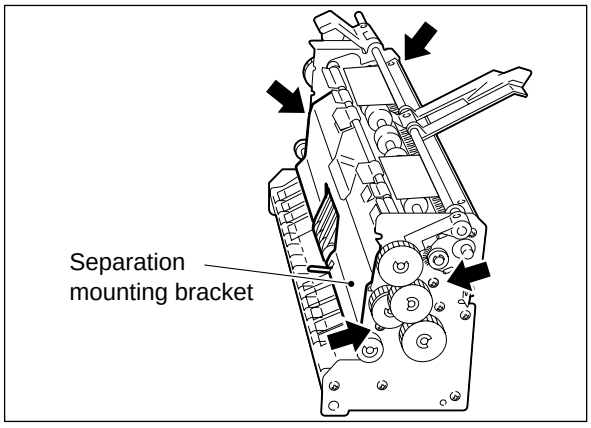


(11) Slide the inlet/reversal roller (plastic roller) to the front, and take it out.

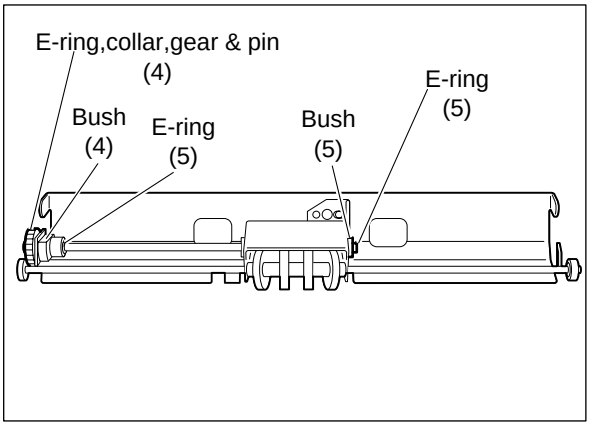


[V] Separation belt

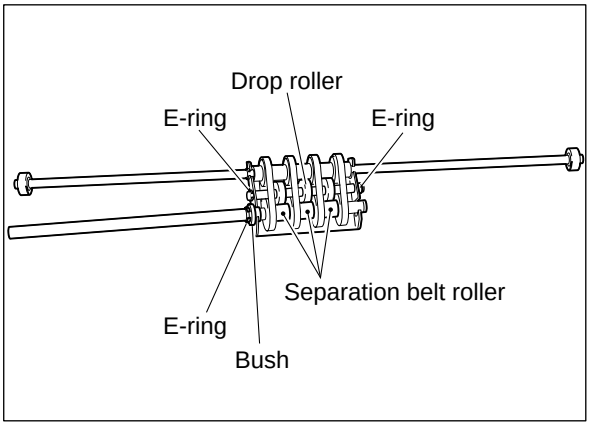
(1) Remove the ADU unit.
(2) Remove the feed drive unit.
(3) Remove the 4 screws fixing separation mounting bracket, and then the separation mounting bracket.



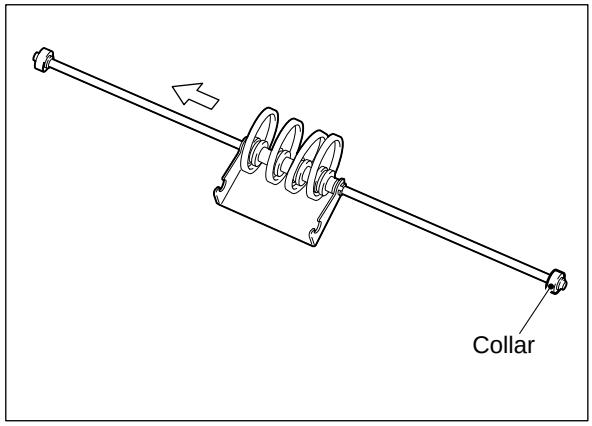
(4) Remove the E-ring, collar, gear, pin and bush.
(5) Remove the 2 E-rings, bush and bracket.



(6) Remove the E-ring, slide the bush from the bracket and then remove the separation belt roller. Remove the 2 E-rings, and remove the drop roller.

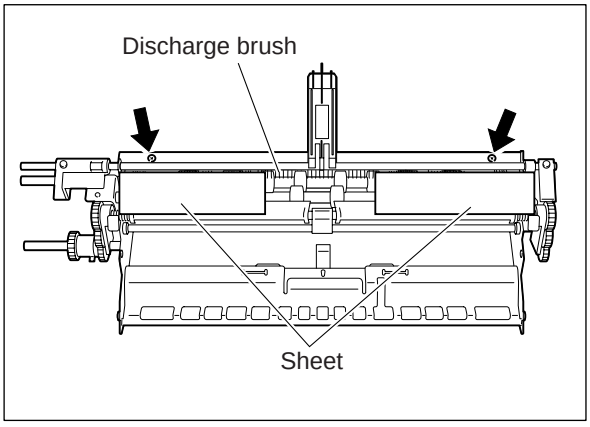


(7) Remove the 3 E-rings and collar.
(8) Draw out the shaft to the rear side.
(9) Replace the 4 separation belts.



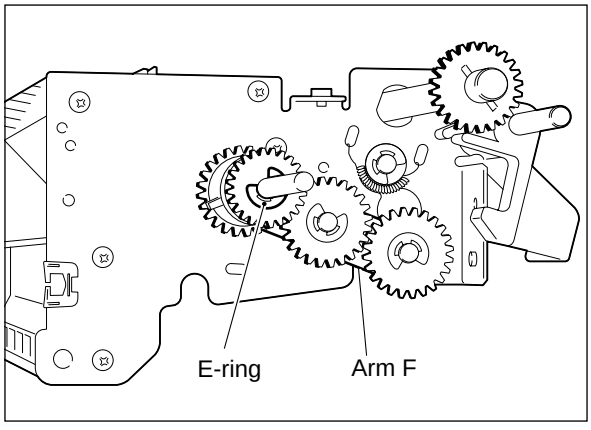
[W] Pre-stack discharge brush

(1) Remove the ADU feed cover.
(2) Remove the 2 screws fixing the pre-stack discharge brush and then the pre-stack discharge brush.



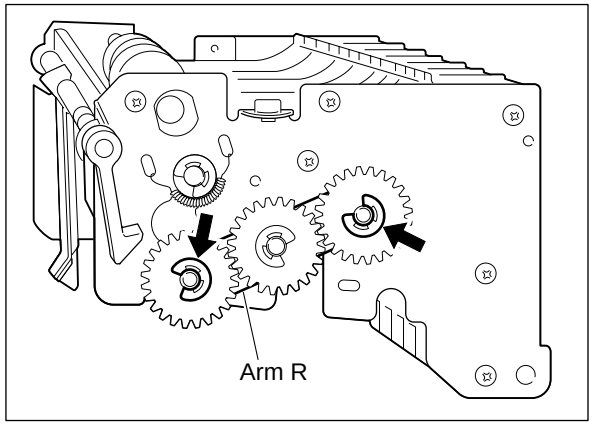
[X] Holding gate

(1) Remove the ADU feed unit.
(2) Remove the feed drive unit.
(3) Remove the E-ring and clutch unit.
(4) Remove the 2 front E-rings, each of the 2 gears and pins.
(5) Draw out arm F to the front side.

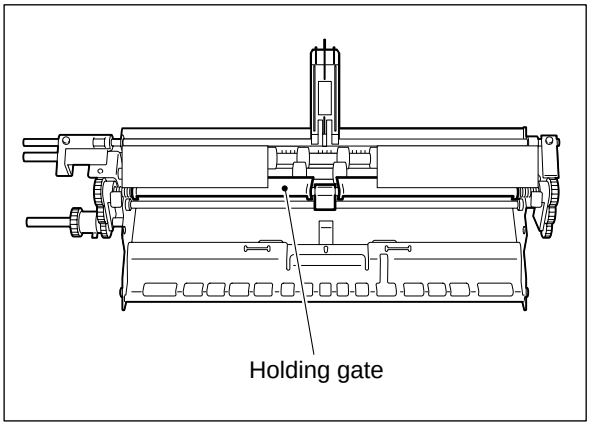


(6) Remove the 2 rear E-rings, each of the 2 gears and pins.
(7) Draw out arm R to the rear side.

Note: For reassembling, refer to the service handbook 1.15.2 “Holding gate position adjustment”.



(8) Slide the holding gate to the front and remove it.

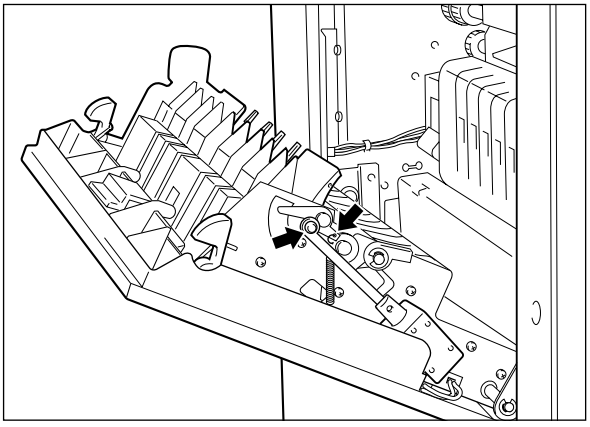


[Y] ADU/exit switching gate

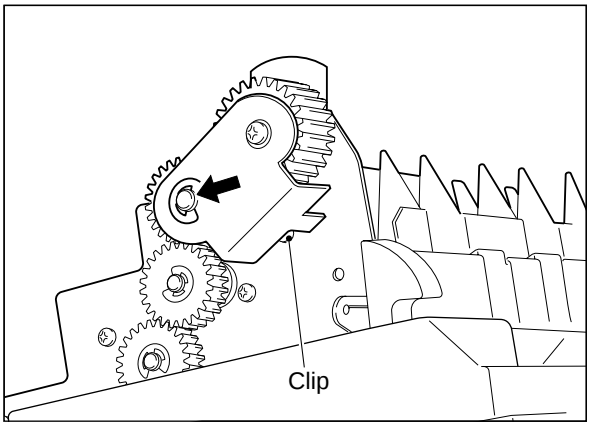
(1) Open the exit unit.

(2) Remove the spring from the arm, and the screw fixing the link to the arm.

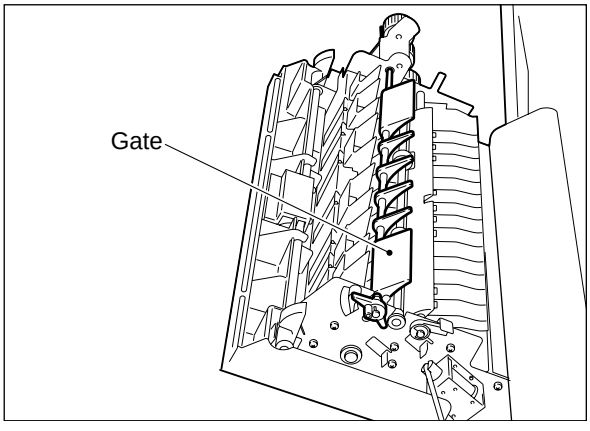
Note: When assembling, take care not to tighten the screw fixing the link to the arm too tight.



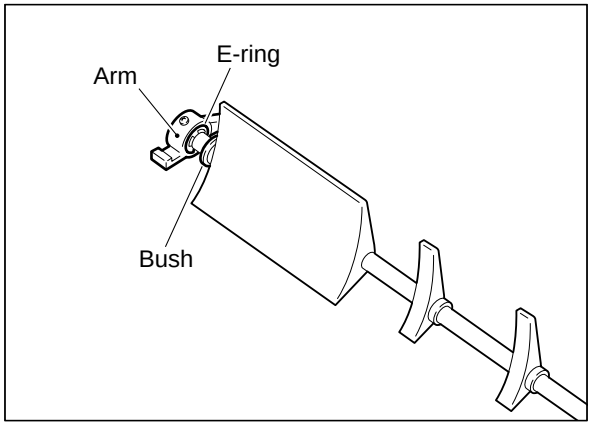
(3) Remove the rear clip and bush.



(4) Slide the ADU/exit switching gate to the front and remove it.

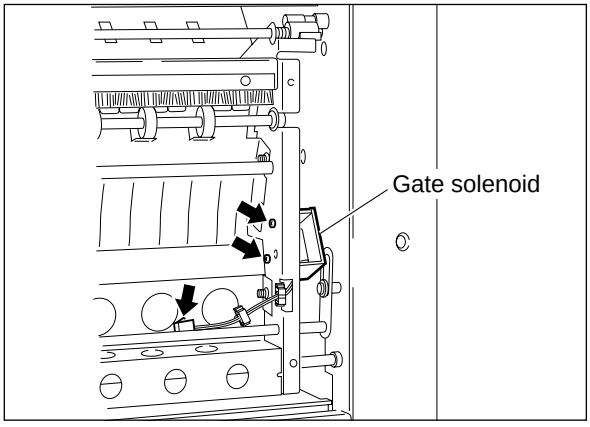


(5) Remove the E-ring, arm, pin and bush from the removed ADU/exit switching gate, and replace the gate.



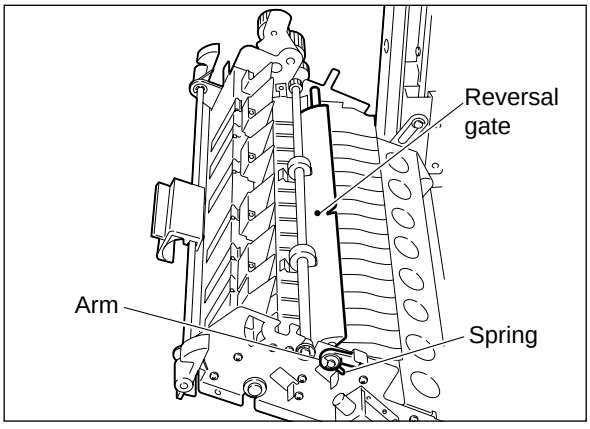
[Z] Gate solenoid

(1) Remove the 4 screws fixing the exit cover, and then remove the exit cover.
(2) Remove the screw fixing the link to the gate arm.
(3) Disconnect the connector, and remove the 2 screws fixing the gate solenoid. Then remove the gate solenoid.



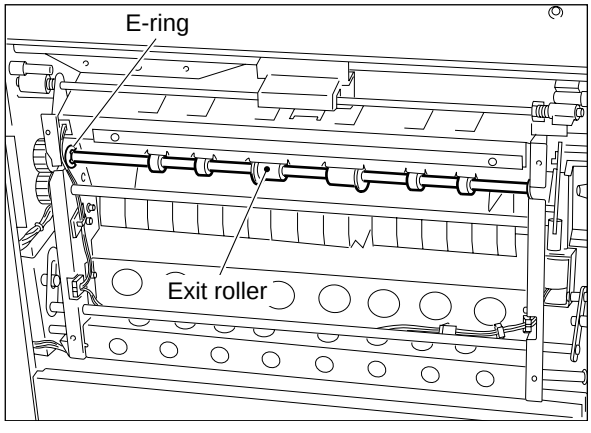
[AA] Reversal gate

(1) Open the exit unit.
(2) Remove the E-ring fixing the reversal gate. Then remove the arm, spring and bush.
(3) Slide the reversal gate to the rear and remove it.



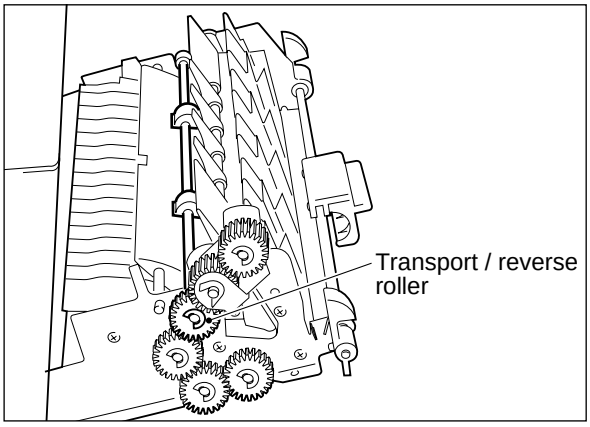
[AB] Exit roller

(1) Remove the exit cover.
(2) Remove the rear E-ring, and slide the bearing to the inside of the frame.
(3) Slide the exit roller to the rear and remove the bearing from the frame, and then take out the exit roller.



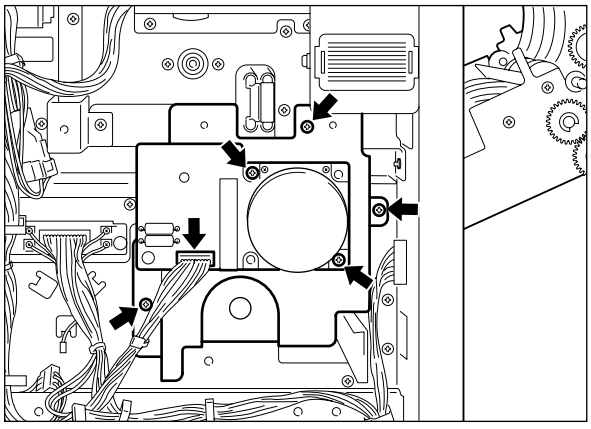
[AC] Transport (reversal) roller

(1) Open the exit unit.
(2) Remove the rear E-ring, gear, pin and bush.
(3) Remove the E-ring, slide the transport (reversal) roller to the front, remove the bush from the frame, and then take out the transport (reversal) roller.
(4) Remove the E-ring from the transport (reversal) roller and bush, and replace the transport (reversal) roller.



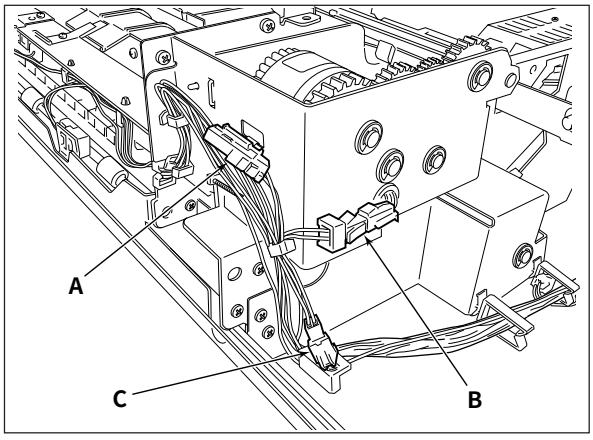
[AD] ADU drive motor

(1) Remove the main unit rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the connector.
(3) Remove the 3 screws fixing the drive motor bracket and then the drive motor bracket.
(4) Remove the 2 screws fixing the ADU drive motor and then the ADU drive motor.



Assembly of clutch and solenoid connector

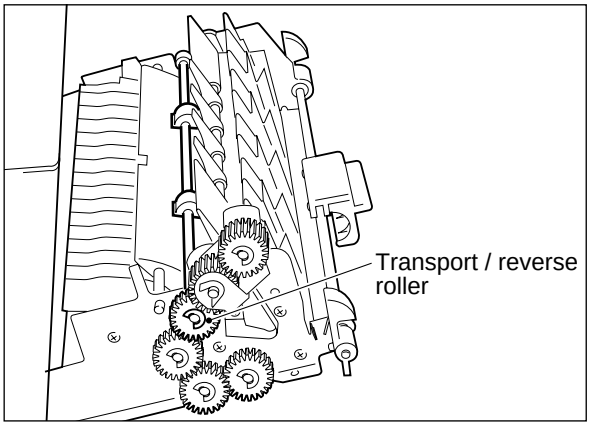
As the clutch and solenoid connector have the same shape, it is possible that they may contact with each other. Using the following figure and list, carry out the assembly after checking the color of each connector and harness.



Connected Point	Connector Color	Harness Color	Connector Color	Harness Color
A	Black	Black	Black	Black
			Harness for reverse clutch	
B	White	White	Black	Black
			Harness for forward clutch	
C	White	Brown	White	Black
	Harness for solenoid			

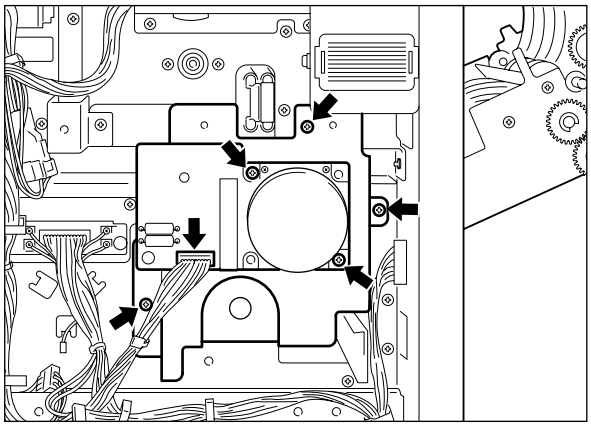
[AC] Transport (reversal) roller

(1) Open the exit unit.
(2) Remove the rear E-ring, gear, pin and bush.
(3) Remove the E-ring, slide the transport (reversal) roller to the front, remove the bush from the frame, and then take out the transport (reversal) roller.
(4) Remove the E-ring from the transport (reversal) roller and bush, and replace the transport (reversal) roller.



[AD] ADU drive motor

(1) Remove the main unit rear cover.
(2) Disconnect the connector.
(3) Remove the 3 screws fixing the drive motor bracket and then the drive motor bracket.
(4) Remove the 2 screws fixing the ADU drive motor and then the ADU drive motor.



16. AUTOMATING DOCUMENT FEEDER (ADF)

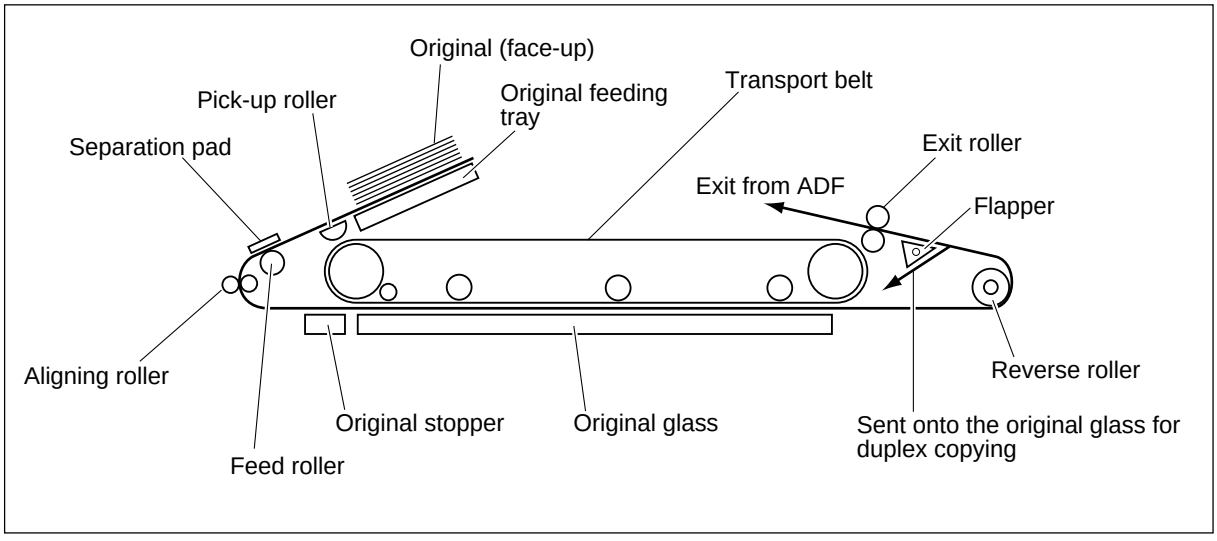
16.1 Outline

The ADF (Automatic Document Feeder) automatically feeds sheet originals onto the original glass, and outputs them to the tray after they have been copied. The figure below shows the configuration of the ADF.

① Original feed section ..... This mechanism feeds originals one at a time onto the original glass. It comprises a pickup roller, feed roller, separation pad, aligning roller and other parts.

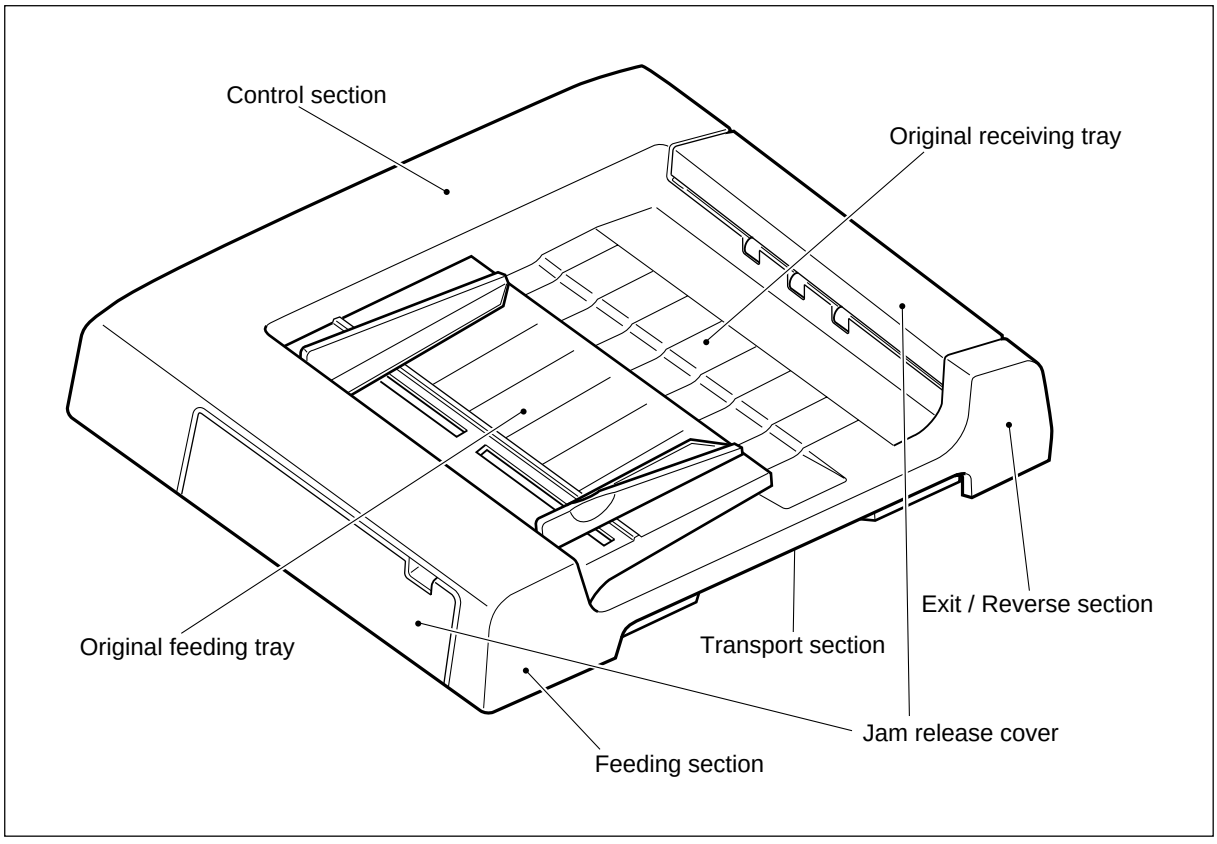
② Original transport section ..... This section transports originals after they exit the original glass. It comprises a transport belt and rollers for driving the transport belt.

③ Original exit/reversal section ..... This section outputs originals onto the exit tray after copying is completed. When making copies in the double-sided mode, the original is guided to the reversal section where it is turned over. The original is then fed to the original glass again. The original exit/reversal section comprises an exit roller, flapper, reversal roller and other parts.



16.2 Construction

16.2.1 ADF construction

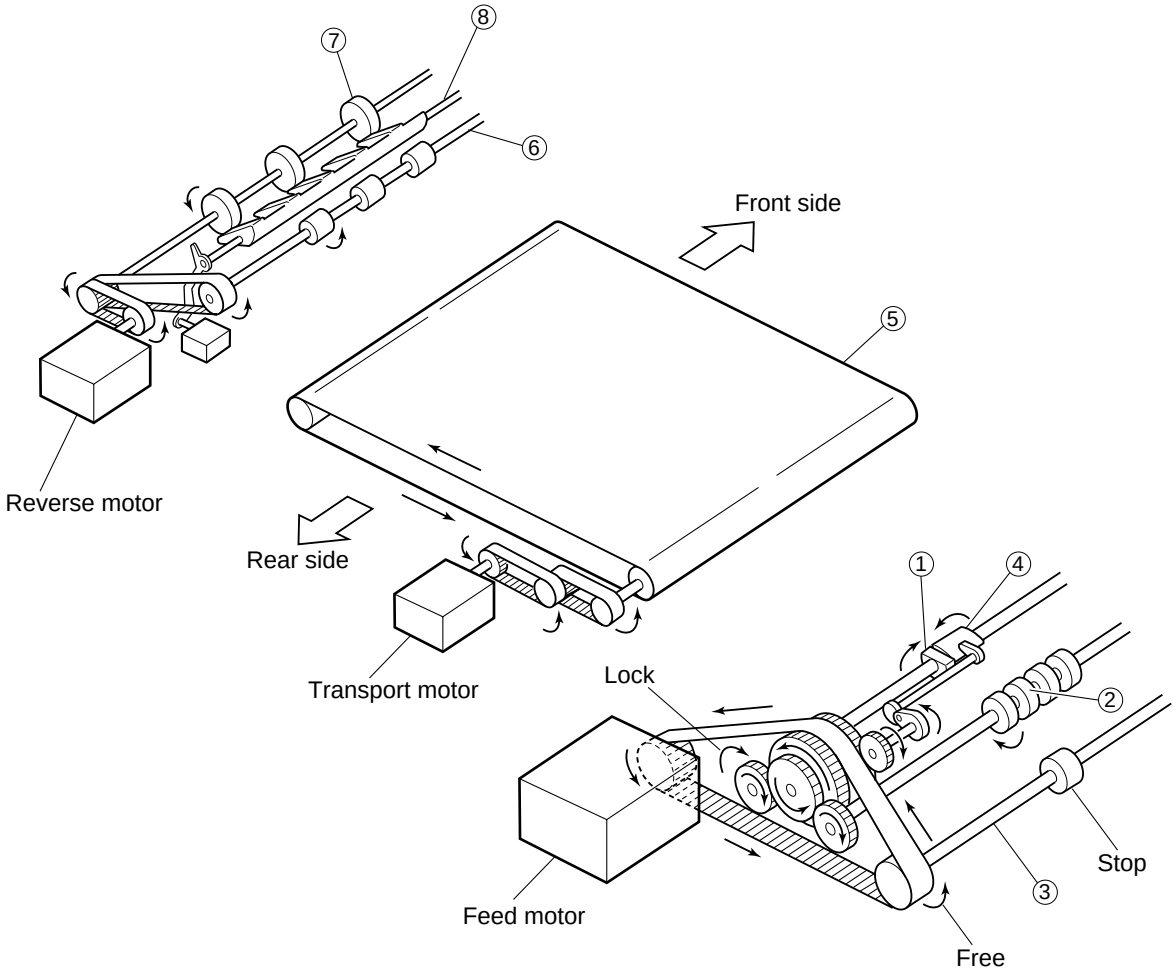


Document feeder unit consists of feeding section (includes the original feeding tray), transport section, reverse (includes exit) section and control section.

	Mechanical part	Electrical part
Feeding section	• Jam release cover • ADF pick up roller • ADF feed roller • ADF separation pad • ADF aligning roller	• ADF feed motor • ADF aligning sensor • ADF timing sensor • ADF empty sensor • ADF size sensor • ADF feed cover switch
Transport section	• Belt drive roller • Transport belt • Belt retainer roller	• ADF transport motor • ADF open switch • ADF fan motor
Reverse section	• Jam release cover • ADF reverse roller • ADF reverse flapper • ADF exit roller	• ADF reverse motor • ADF reverse solenoide • Exit sensor • ADF exit cover sensor
Control section		• PC board

16.2.2 Drive mechanism

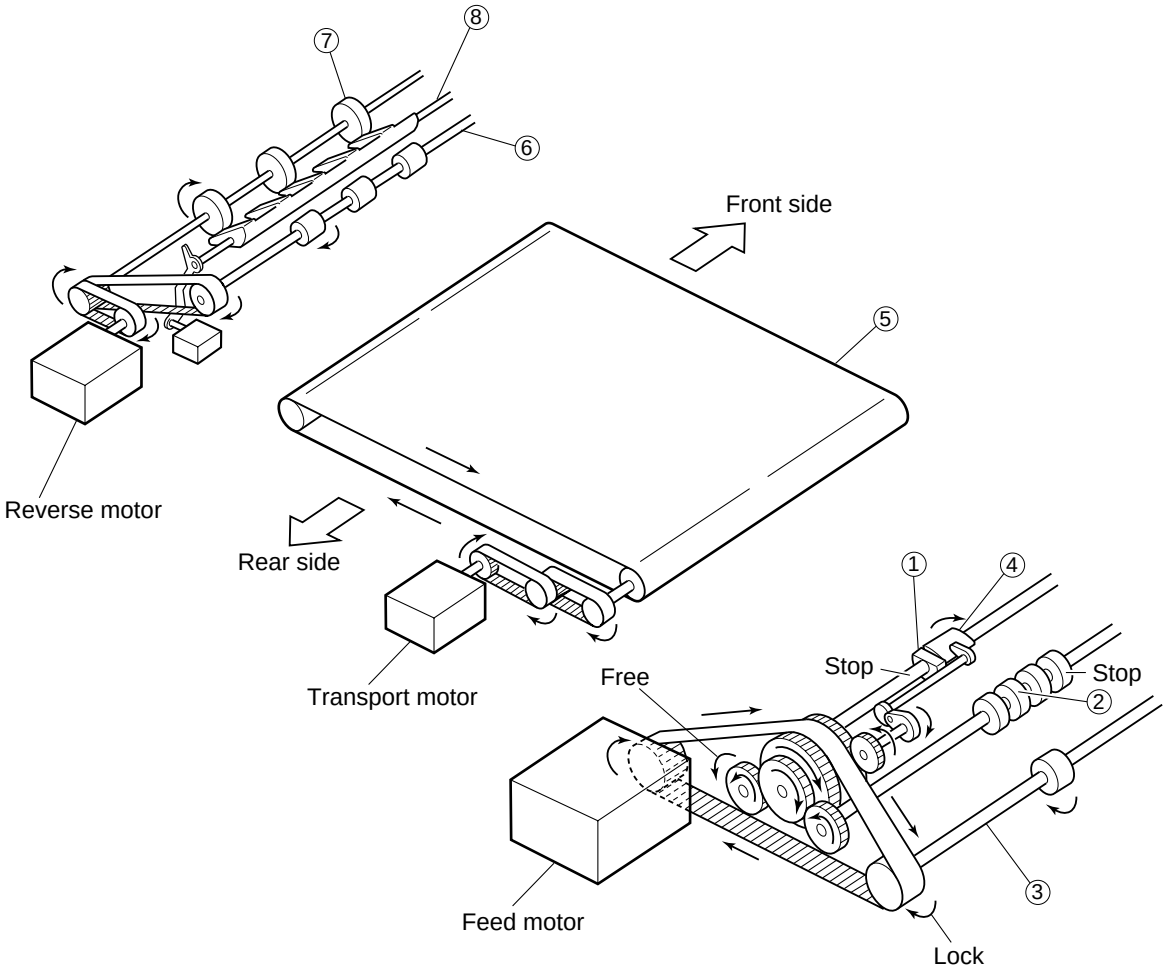
(1) Drive motor rotates CW (Front view)



① Pick-up roller rotates CCW.
② Feed roller rotates CCW.
③ Aligning roller stops.
④ Weight goes down.
⑤ Transport belt rotates CW.
⑥ Exit roller rotates CW.
⑦ Reverse roller rotates CW.

* ⑧ Flapper goes up at the duplexing mode and the following conditions.
  I. The solenoid turns ON when trailing edge of the first original is passed the timing sensor.
  II. The solenoid turns ON when transport of the original is restarted after reversal of the original is stopped.
  III. The solenoid turns ON when transport of the second original is restarted after the first original is exited and transport of the second original is stopped on the glass.

(2) Drive motor rotates CCW (Front view)

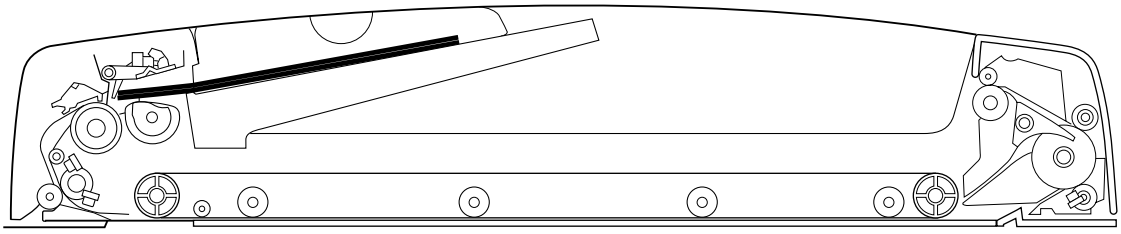


① Pick-up roller stops.
② Feed roller stops.
③ Aligning roller rotates CCW.
④ Weight goes up.
⑤ Transport belt rotates CCW.
⑥ Exit roller rotates CCW.
⑦ Reverse roller rotates CCW.

16.3 Description of Operations

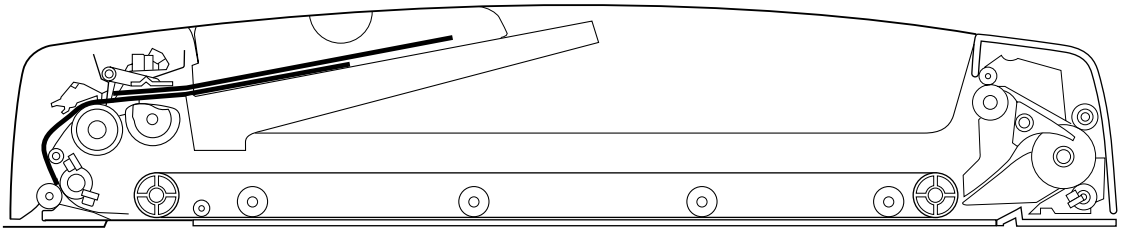
16.3.1 Description of operation

(1) Setting the original



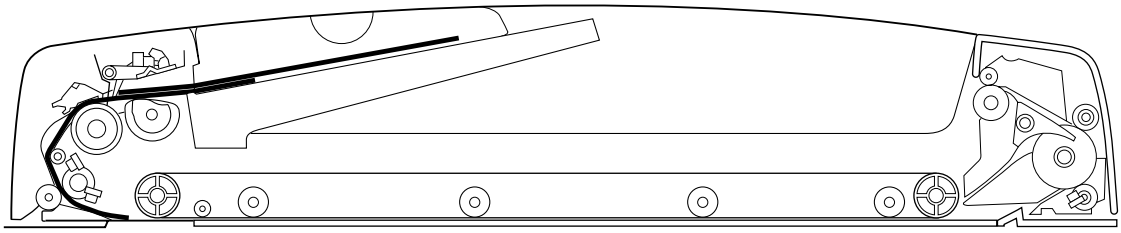
The original is set on the tray, and the empty sensor turns ON.
The empty sensor detects that the original is set, and the original set signal is set.

(2) Start of feed to aligning



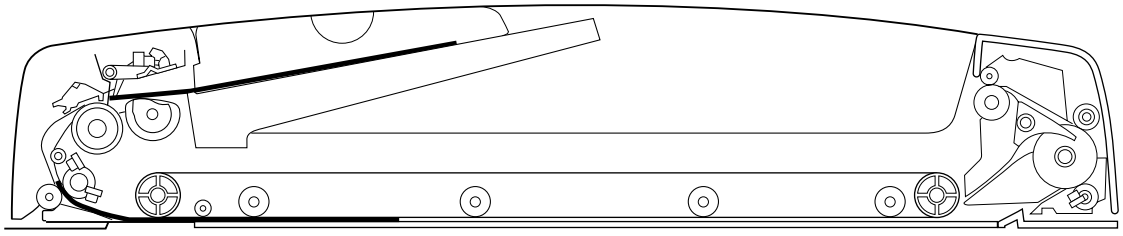
When the feed signal is received from the copier, the DF operation in progress signal is set. Then, the feed motor starts operating in the reverse direction, the feed roller is rotated, the weight plate is lowered, and initial alignment is started.
At the same time, the transport motor and reversal motor start to operate in the forward direction, the transport belt and reversal roller rotate, and the dummy exit operation is started.
After the alignment sensor detects the leading edge of the original, the original is transported for a specified number of pulses, and the leading edge of the original arrives and is aligned at the aligning roller. The feed motor then stops.

(3) Restart to end of initial alignment



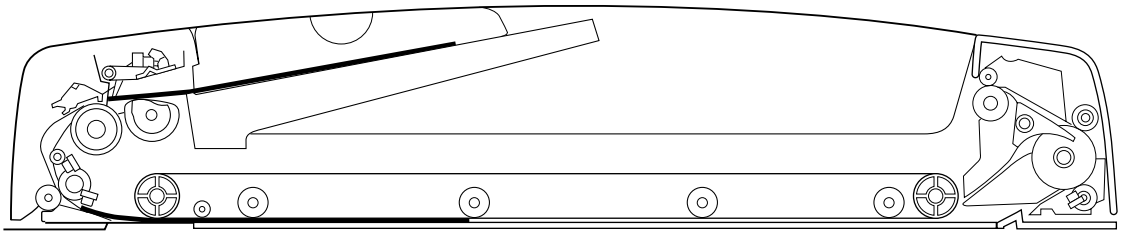
The feed motor starts to operate in the forward direction to rotate the aligning roller, transport of the original is started, and the initial alignment operation is restarted.
After the timing sensor detects the leading edge of the original, the original is transported by a specified number of pulses. At the point that the original arrives at the initial alignment standby position, the feed motor stops, and the initial alignment operation is completed.
At this time, forward rotation of the feed motor causes the weight plate to rise. At the point that initial alignment operation is completed, the status of the width sensor is checked and stored to memory.
The transport motor and reversal motor stop at the point when they have been driven by a specified number of pulses, and exit operation is completed. However, note, that if the original exit operation was in progress at this time, dummy exit operation is completed at the point when the exit operation of this original is completed.

(4) Start of original transport to aligning sensor OFF (detection of scan size)



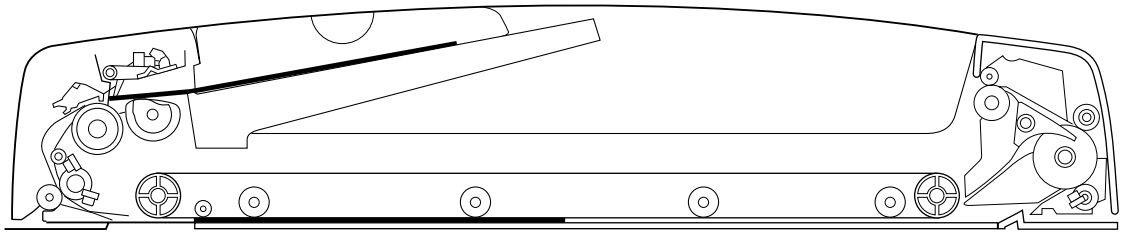
After completion of dummy exit, the feed motor and transport motor start to operate in the forward direction, and the aligning roller and transport belt rotate to start transport of the original standing by at the initial alignment position to the exposure position. At this time, detection of the scan size is started. From the second original onwards, the reversal motor also starts to rotate in the forward direction at the same time to start exit operation.
The number of pulses from start of transport of the original at the initial alignment position to when the trailing edge of the original passes the aligning sensor is counted to detect the length of the original.
The stop notice signal is set at the set timing of the stop notice signal.
At the point that the aligning sensor detects the trailing edge of the original, the DF operation in progress signal is reset, detection of the scan size is completed, and the original size is determined also by the state of the width sensor that was stored to memory at completion of initial alignment. If the original is a non-standard size, or the original size differs from that of the previously fed original, the original size data is sent to the copier.

(5) Aligning sensor OFF to timing sensor OFF



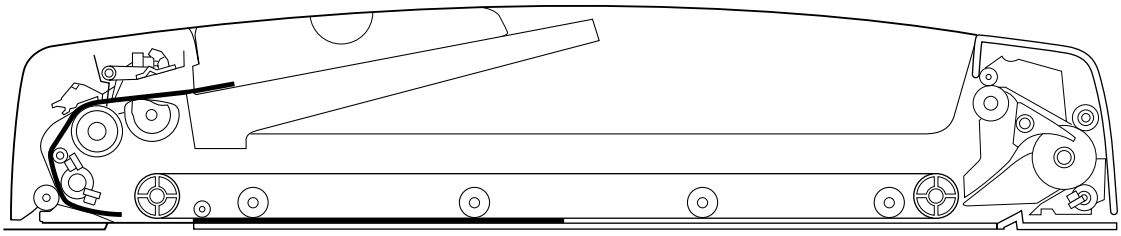
At the point when the timing sensor turns OFF and the trailing edge of the original is detected, the feed motor stops.
The number of drive pulses until the feed motor stops is set.

(6) Setting the original at the exposure position (completion of feed)



The original stops signal is set by the set timing of the original stop signal.
After the timing sensor detects the trailing edge of the original, the original is transported for a specified number of pulses. At the point when the original arrives at the exposure position, the feed motor stops, the original is set at the exposure position, and feed is completed.

(7) Start of initial alignment of next original to completion of initial alignment



When there is an original on the tray at the point when feed is completed, the initial alignment signal is set, the feed motor starts to operate in the reverse direction, and initial alignment of the next original is started.

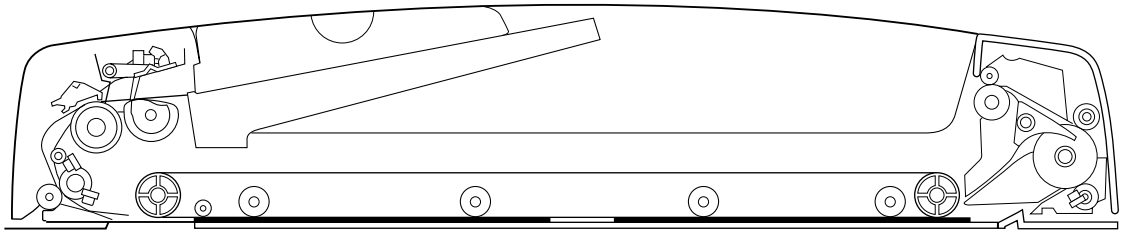
If there is no original on the tray, operation from (8) is started.

The same processes as (2) and (3) are carried out, initial alignment of the next original is completed, and the original stands by.

* When initial alignment is carried out on the 2nd original onwards, the dummy exit operation is not carried out.

If an original is in the process of being output, the next original waits for completion of the exit operation.

(8) Start of feed to setting the original at the exposure position (completion of feed)



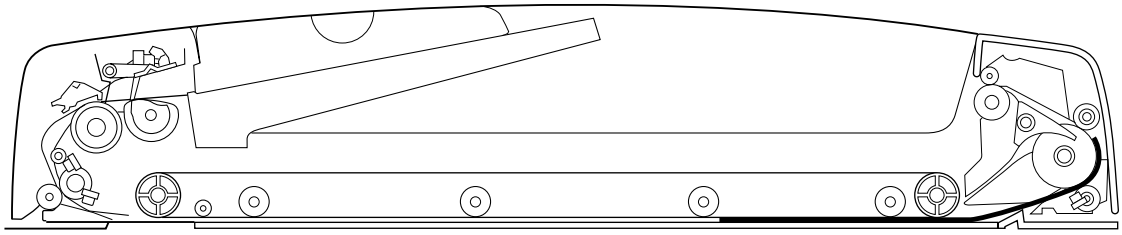
When the feed signal is received, the initial alignment signal is reset, feed of the original standing by at the initial alignment position is started, the same processes from (4) to (8) are carried out, and the original is set at the exposure position. When the exit signal is received during feed of the 2nd original onwards, the DF operation in progress signal is set. Then, the reversal motor starts to operate in the forward direction to rotate the reversal roller, and the exit operation is started to output the original.

Exposed originals are transported to the exit section side. If the original transported to the exit section can be drawn out and output, they are drawn out and output from the platen top during exposure of the original.

If there is an original on the tray when feed is completed, initial alignment of the next original is started.

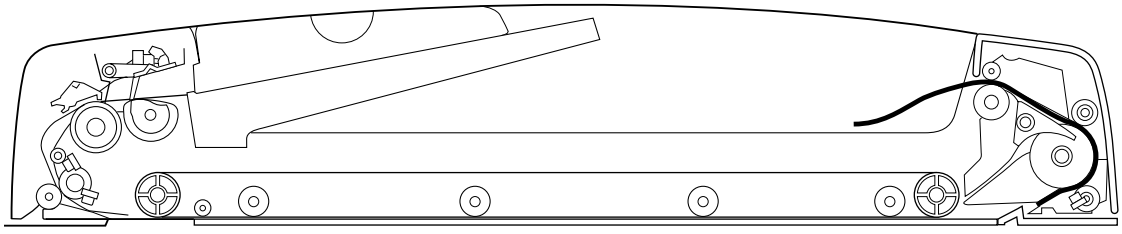
* This operation is repeated until all originals on the tray are fed.

(9) Start of original feed and exit to exit sensor ON



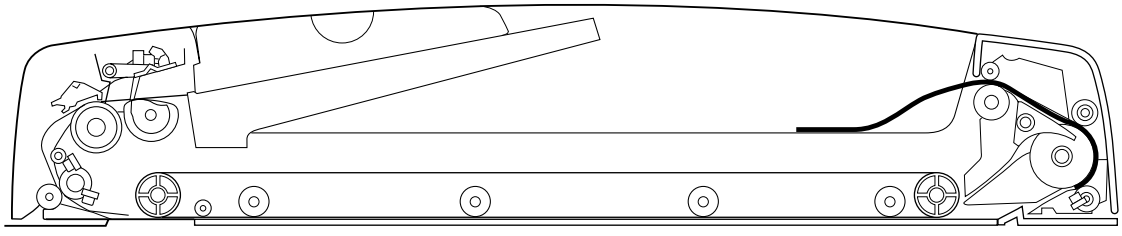
When the original is output, the number of drive pulses up start of exit deceleration is set at the point when the exit sensor turns ON. When the output original is nipped by the exit roller by a specified amount or more when setting of the original to be fed is completed, the original is drawn out and output as it is. If the output original has not been nipped by the specified amount or more, the original is not drawn out and output. In this case, output of this original is carried out when the next original is fed.

(10) Start of exit deceleration



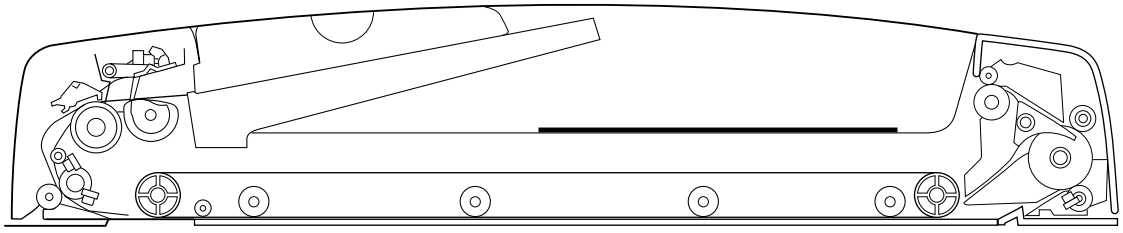
At the point when the number of drive pulses up to start of exit deceleration set in (9) has been counted, deceleration of the reversal motor is started, and the original is output at low speed.

(11) Turn guide sensor OFF



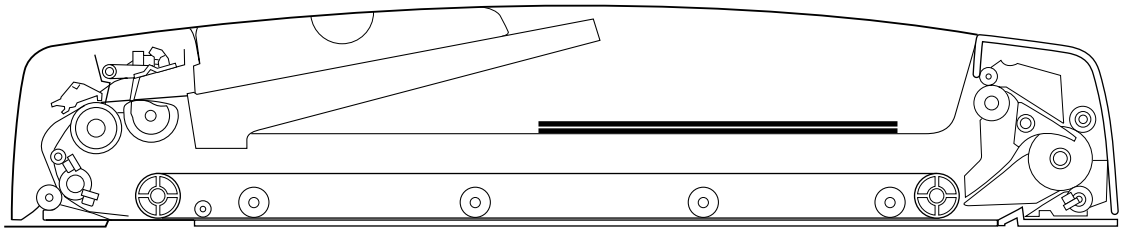
At the point when the exit sensor turns OFF, the number of pulses up to reversal motor stop is set.

(12) Completion of exit



At the point when the original is completely output onto the exit tray, the reversal motor stops, and exit is completed.

(13) Start of exit of final original to completion of exit

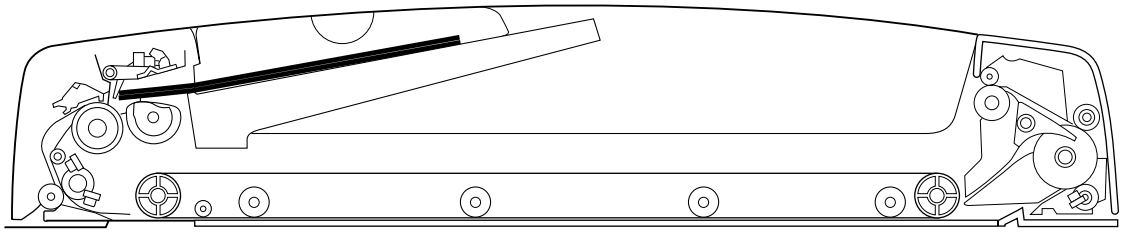


When the exit signal is received during exit of the final original, the DF operation in progress signal is set. Then, the transport motor and reversal motor start to operate in the forward direction, the transport belt and reversal roller rotate to start exit operation, and the original on the original glass is transported to the exit section. At the point when the exit sensor turns ON, the number of drive pulses up to start of exit deceleration is set. At the point when the number of pulses is counted up, deceleration of the transport motor and reversal motor is started, and the original is output at low speed. At the point when all originals in the DF have been output, the transport motor and reversal motor stop, exit is completed, the DF operation in progress signal is reset, and feed operation is completed.

* During step feed, 2 originals are output continuously.

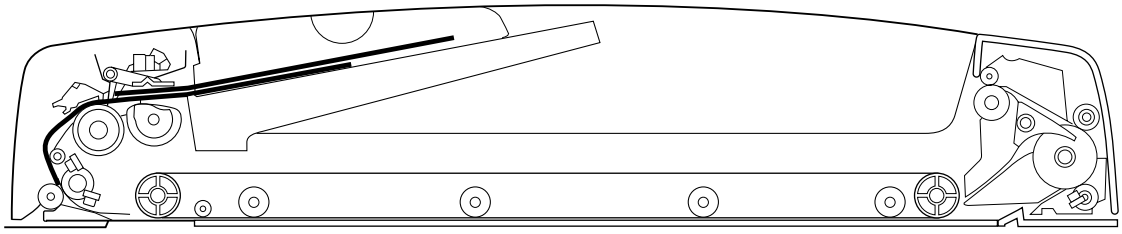
16.3.2 Double-sided feed operation

(1) Setting the original



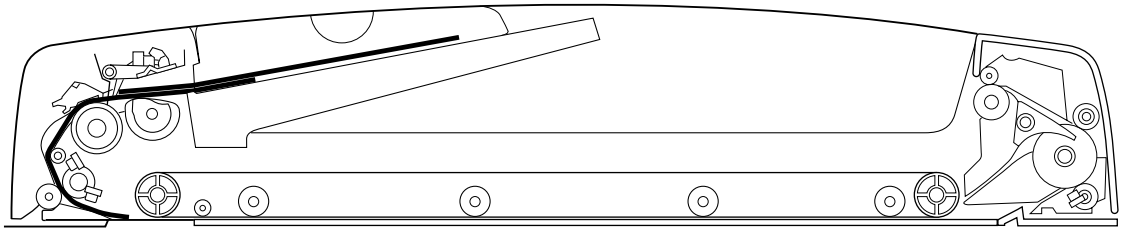
The original is set on the tray, the empty sensor turns ON, setting of the original is detected, and the original set signal is set.

(2) Start of feed to aligning



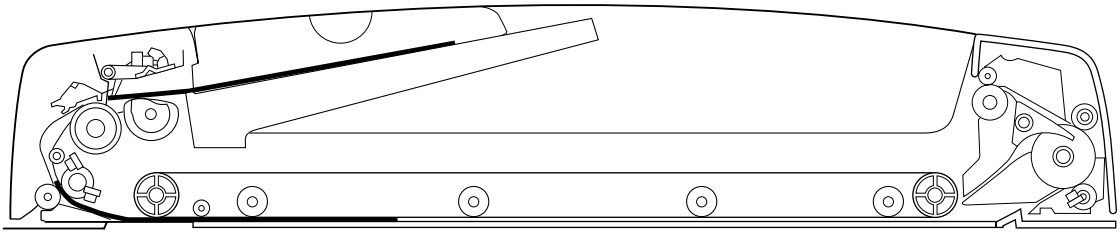
When the feed signal is received from the copier, the DF operation in progress signal is set. Then, the feed motor rotates in the reverse direction to rotate the feed roller, lower the weight plate and start initial alignment operation. After the aligning sensor turns ON and the leading edge of the original is detected, the original is transported for a specified number of pulses, and the leading edge of the original arrives and is aligned at the aligning roller. The feed motor then stops. At the same time, the transport motor and reversal motor start to operate in the forward direction to rotate the transport belt and reversal roller and start the dummy exit operation.

(3) Restart of initial alignment to completion of initial alignment



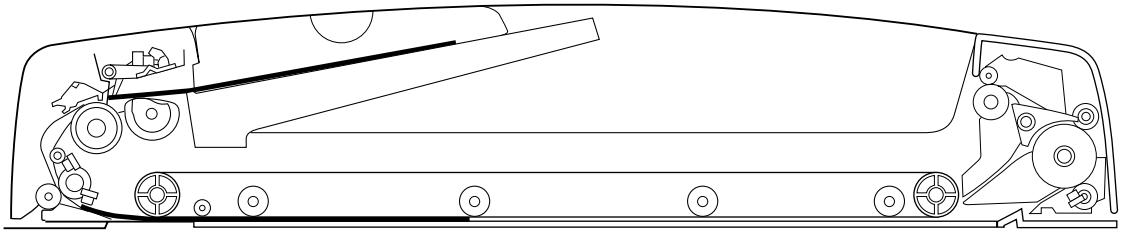
The feed motor starts to operate in the forward direction to rotate the aligning roller. Transport of the original starts, and the initial alignment operation is restarted. After the timing sensor turns ON, and the leading edge of the original is detected, the original is transport for a specified number of pulses, and the feed motor stops and the initial alignment operation is completed at the point when the original arrives at the initial alignment standby position. At this time, forward rotation of the feed motor causes the weight plate to lower. At the point that initial alignment operation is completed, the status of the width sensor is checked and stored to memory. After initial alignment operation is completed, the transport motor and reversal motor stop at the point when they have been driven by a specified number of pulses, and exit operation is completed. However, note, that if the original exit operation was in progress at this time, dummy exit operation is completed at the point when the exit operation of this original is completed.

(4) Start of original transport to aligning sensor OFF (detection of scan size)



After completion of dummy exit, the feed motor and transport motor start to operate in the forward direction, and the aligning roller and transport belt rotate to start transport of the original standing by at the initial alignment position to the exposure position. From the 2nd original onwards, the reversal motor also starts to rotate in the forward direction at the same time to start exit operation. The number of pulses from start of transport of the original at the initial alignment position to when the trailing edge of the original passes the aligning sensor is counted to detect the length of the original. At the same time, the original size is determined also by the state of the width sensor that was stored to memory at completion of initial alignment. If the original is a non-standard size, or the original size differs from that of the previously fed original, the original size data is sent to the copier.

(5) Aligning sensor OFF to timing sensor OFF

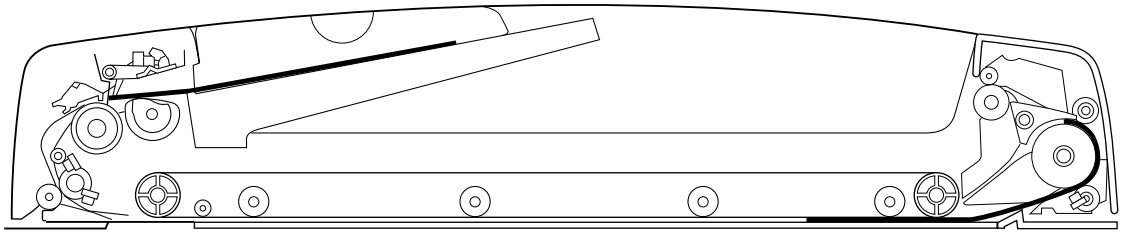


The feed motor stops at the point when the timing sensor turns OFF and the trailing edge of the original is detected. If exit operation is not carried out simultaneously or has already completed at this time, the reversal motor starts to rotate in the forward direction simultaneously to rotate the reversal roller. At the same time, the flapper solenoid turns ON to switch the reversal flapper over to the reversal side.

When the exit operation is in progress, the transport stops after being driven for a specified number of pulses. The original being feed pauses before the reversal section, and stands by for exit operation to complete.

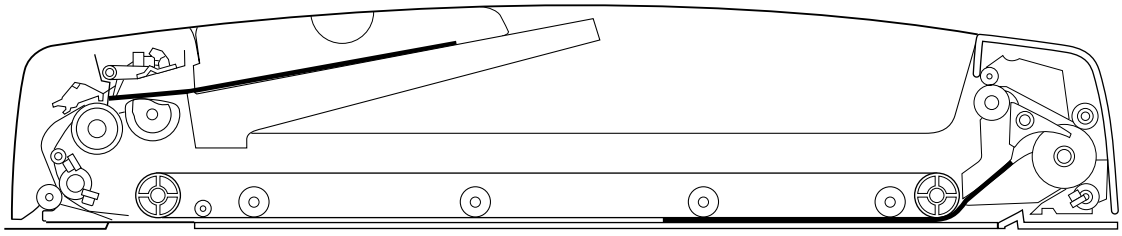
After the exit sensor turns ON and the leading edge of the original is detected, the original is transported for a specified number of pulses.

(6) Completion of forward rotation transport



At the point where the leading edge of the original is nipped by the reversal roller lower passage roller by a specified amount or more, the transport motor and the reversal motor stop.

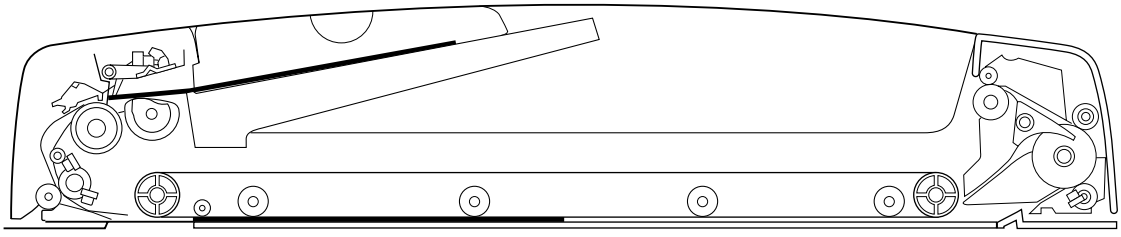
(7) Start of reversal to flapper solenoid OFF



After forward rotation transport is completed, the transport motor starts to rotate in the reverse direction and the reversal motor starts to rotate in the forward direction to rotate the transport belt and reversal roller to start reversal of the original. The original passes along the reversal path and is transported onto the original glass. The DF operation in progress signal is reset at the reset timing of the DF operation in progress signal. The stop notice signal is set at the set timing of the stop notice signal. The original top side/rear side signal is set or reset at the point when the exit sensor detects the trailing edge of the original. The original stop signal is set at the set timing of the original stop signal.

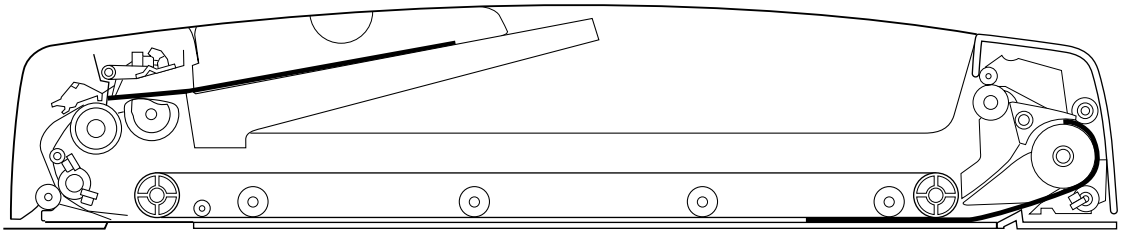
At the point when the trailing edge of the original has passed the reversal flapper, the flapper solenoid turns OFF, and the reversal flapper is switched to the exit side.

(8) Setting the original at the exposure position (completion of No.1 side feed)



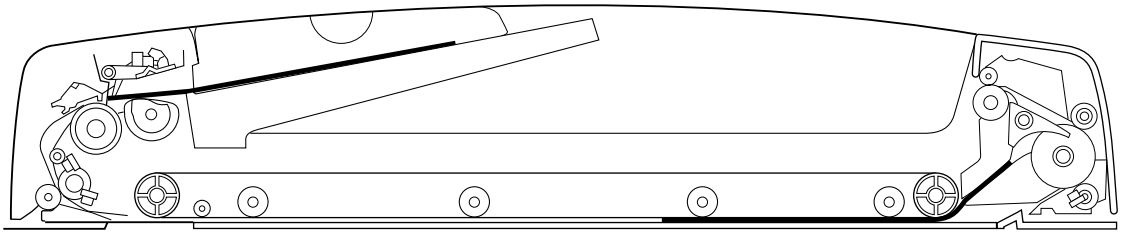
The original is transported by a specified number of pulses after reversal starts. At the point where the original arrives at the exposure position, the transport motor and reversal motor stop, and feed is completed. The original is stopped in contact with the original stopper, and the rear side of the original is set.

(9) Start of feed to completion of forward rotation transport



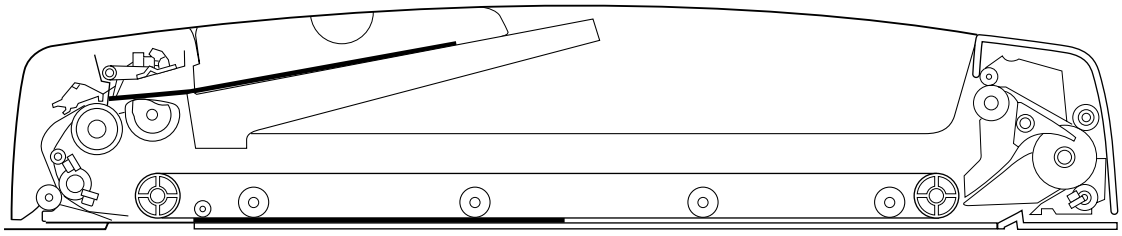
When the feed signal is received, and the DF operation in progress signal is set, the reversal feed of the original that is set at the exposure position is started. First of all, the transport motor and reversal motor start operating in the forward direction to rotate the transport belt and reversal roller. At the same time, the flapper solenoid turns ON to switch the reversal flapper to the reversal side, and the original is transported to the reversal section. After the exit sensor turns ON, the original is transported for a specified number of pulses. At the point where the leading edge of the original is nipped by the reversal roller lower passage roller by a specified amount or more, the transport motor and the reversal motor stop.

(10) Start of reversal to flapper solenoid OFF



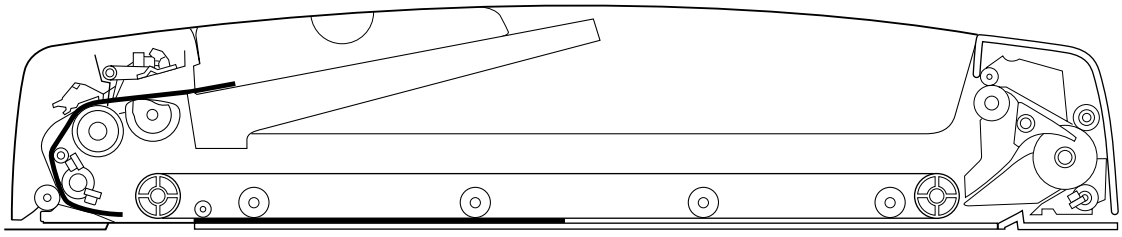
After forward rotation transport is completed, the transport motor starts to rotate in the reverse direction, and the reversal motor starts to rotate in the forward direction to rotate the transport belt and reversal roller to start reversal of the original. The original passes along the reversal path and is transported onto the original glass. At the point when the trailing edge of the original has passed the reversal flapper, the flapper solenoid turns OFF, and the reversal flapper is switched to the exit side.

(11) Setting the original at the exposure position (completion of No.2 side feed)



The original is transported by a specified number of pulses after reversal starts. At the point where the original arrives at the exposure position, the transport motor and reversal motor stop, and feed is completed. The original is stopped in contact with the original stopper, and the rear side of the original is set.

(12) Start of initial alignment to completion of initial alignment

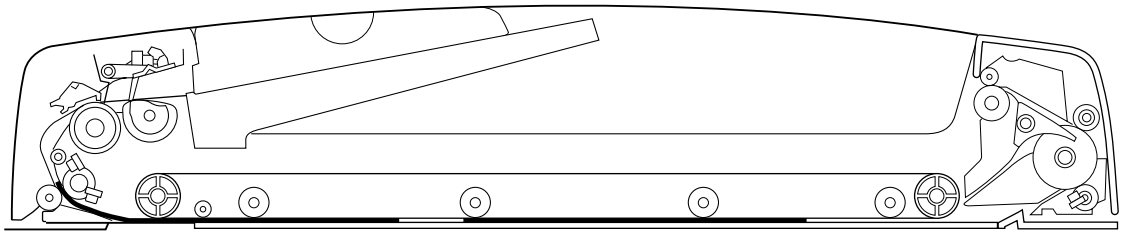


When there is an original on the tray at the point when feed is completed, the initial alignment signal is set, and initial alignment of the next original is started. The same processes as (2) and (3) are carried out, initial alignment of the next original is completed, and the original stands by.

* When initial alignment is carried out on the 2nd original onwards, the dummy exit operation is not carried out.

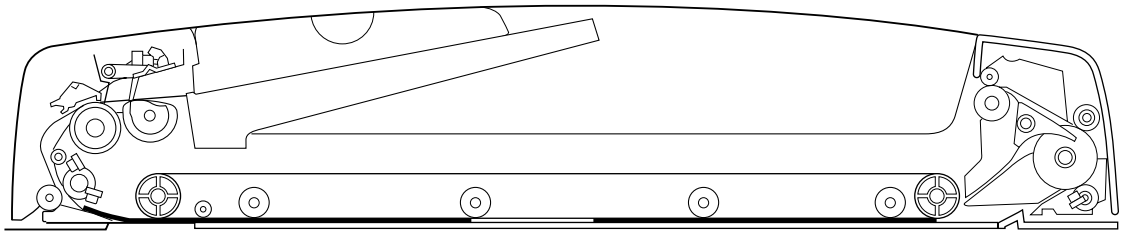
If there is no original on the tray, operation from (21) is started.

(13) Start of feed to aligning sensor OFF



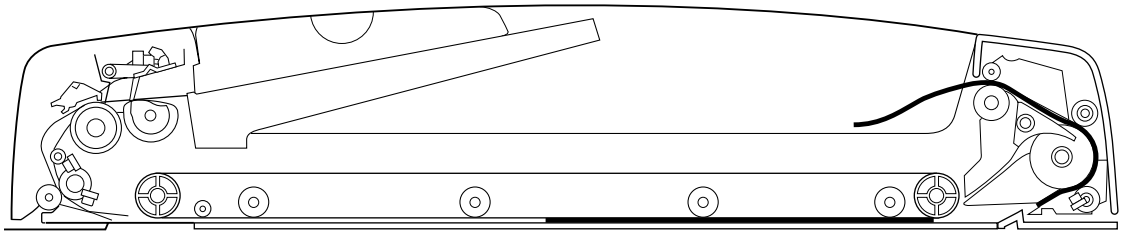
When the feed signal is received, the feed motor, transport motor and reversal motor start to operate in the forward direction to rotate the aligning roller, transport belt and reversal roller. Feed of the original standing by at the initial alignment position and exit of the original set at the exposure position are carried out simultaneously. In the same way as (4), the original size is detected at the point when the trailing edge of the original has passed the aligning sensor.

(14) Aligning sensor OFF to timing sensor OFF



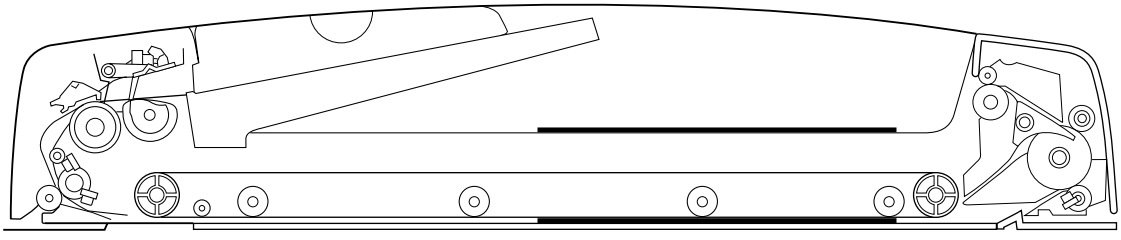
The feed motor stops at the point when the timing sensor turns OFF. When the 2nd original onwards is being fed, exit of exposed originals is carried out at the same time, and the original being fed must be made to stand by before the reversal section until exit is completed. For this reason, the number of drive pulses up to feed motor stop is set at the point when the timing sensor turns OFF to stop the original being fed before the reversal section.

(15) Timing sensor OFF to pause of forward rotation transport



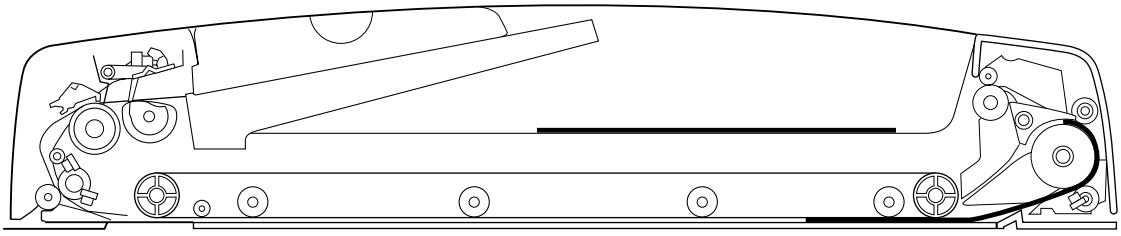
After the timing sensor turns OFF, the original is transport for a specified number of pulses, and the feed motor stops at the point when the original being fed arrives at the specified position before the reversal section. The original stands by until exit of the output original is completed. The number of drive pulses up to start of exit deceleration is set at the point when the turn guide sensor turns ON by the leading edge of the output original, deceleration of the reversal motor is started at the point when the timer has counted the number of pulses, and the original is output at low speed.

(16) Completion of exit



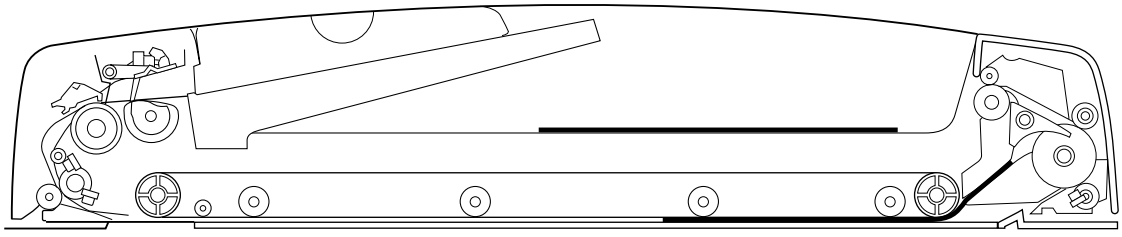
At the point when the original is completely output onto the exit tray, the reversal motor stops, and exit is completed.

(17) Restart of forward rotation transport to completion of forward rotation transport



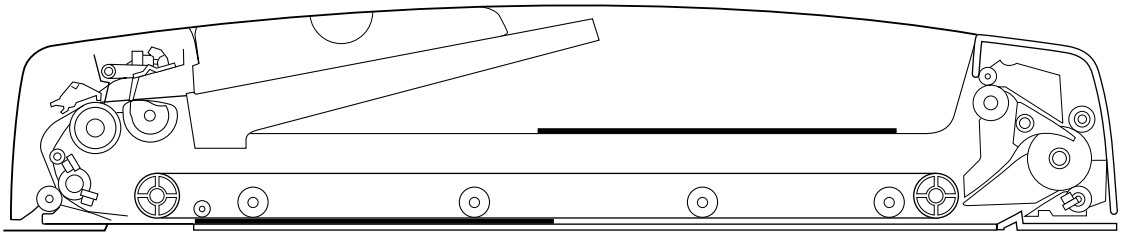
After exit of the output original is completed, forward rotation transport of the original standing by before the reversal section is restarted. The transport motor and reversal motor start to rotate in the forward direction to rotate the transport belt and reversal roller. At the same time, the flapper solenoid turns ON to switch the reversal flapper to the reversal side. After the exit sensor turns ON, the original is transported for a specified number of pulses. At the point where the leading edge of the original is nipped by the reversal roller lower passage roller by a specified amount or more, the transport motor and the reversal motor stop.

(18) Start of reversal to flapper solenoid OFF



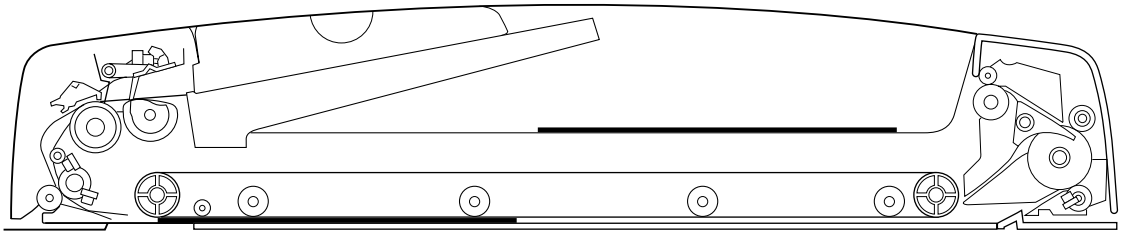
After forward rotation transport is completed, the transport motor starts to rotate in the reverse direction, and the reversal motor starts to rotate in the forward direction to rotate the transport belt and reversal roller to start reversal of the original. The original passes along the reversal path and is transported onto the original glass. At the point when the trailing edge of the original has passed the reversal flapper, the flapper solenoid turns OFF, and the reversal flapper is switched to the exit side.

(19) Setting the original at the exposure position (completion of No.1 side feed)



The original is transported by a specified number of pulses after reversal starts. At the point where the original arrives at the exposure position, the transport motor and reversal motor stop, and feed is completed. The original is stopped in contact with the original stopper, and the rear side of the original is set.

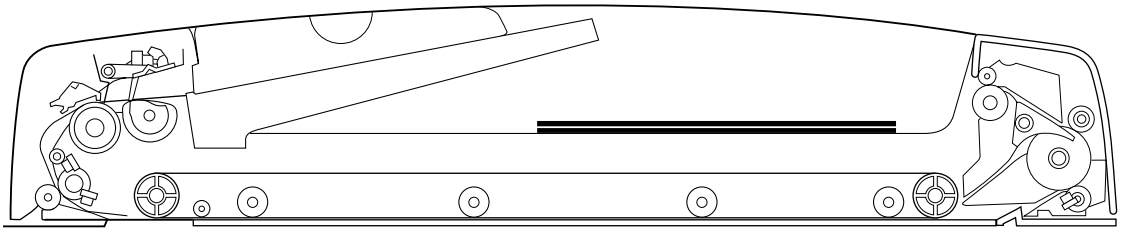
(20) Setting the original at the exposure position (completion of No.2 side feed)



The same processes from (9) to (11) are carried out, and the top side of the original is set at the exposure position. If there is an original on the tray when feed is completed, initial alignment of the next original is started.

* From here on, operation is repeated until all of the originals on the tray are fed.

(21) Start of exit of final original to completion of exit



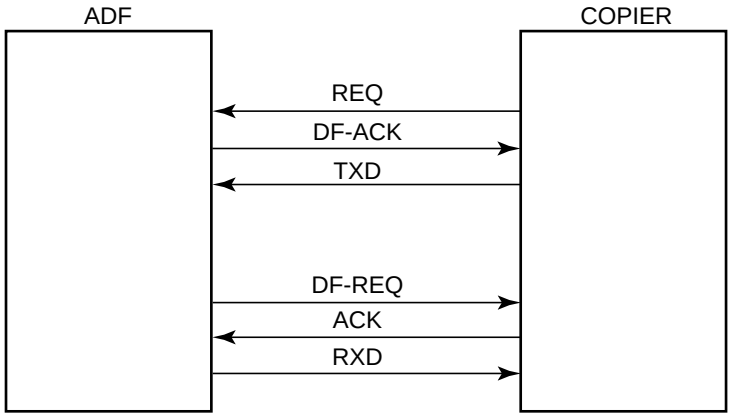
When the exit signal is received during exit of the final original, the DF operation in progress signal is set. Then, the transport motor and reversal motor start to operate in the forward direction, the transport belt and reversal roller rotate to start exit operation, and the original on the original glass is transported to the exit section. At the point when the exit sensor turns ON, the number of drive pulses up to start of exit deceleration is set. At the point when the number of pulses is counted up, deceleration of the transport motor and reversal motor is started, and the original is output at low speed. At the point when all originals in the DF have been output, the transport motor and reversal motor stop, exit is completed, the DF operation in progress signal is reset, and feed operation is completed.

16.4 Description of Interface Signals

The following 6 lines are used for sending and receiving signals between the copier and the ADF:

REQ ..... Communications request signal (copier to ADF)
DF-REQ ..... Communications request signal (ADF to copier)
DF-ACK ..... Communications request answer signal (copier to ADF)
ACK ..... Communications request answer signal (ADF to copier)
TXD ..... Data sent from the copier to the ADF
RXD ..... Data sent from the ADF to the copier

Data communications (RXD, TXD) between the copier and the ADF is carried out by serial communications. So, you cannot check whether or not signals are being sent or received correctly in the field using a multimeter.



16.5 Detection of Paper Jam

16.5.1 Feed section jams

[1] Aligning sensor non-arrival jam

1) Up to aligning sensor ON from start of feed from the tray in the one-sided and double-sided modes
   The number of pulses equivalent to 15X the distance from the original set position to the aligning sensor ON position is set as the jam pulse.
   This is set when feed from the tray is started.

[2] Timing sensor non-arrival jam

1) Up to timing sensor from start of transport after aligning in the one-sided and double-sided modes
   The number of pulses equivalent to 4X the distance from the aligning roller nip position to the timing sensor ON position is set as the jam pulse.
   This is set when transport by the aligning roller after original aligning is started.

[3] Aligning sensor accumulation jam

1) Up to aligning sensor OFF after start of transport from the initial alignment position in the one-sided and double-sided modes
   The number of pulses equivalent to twice the distance from the aligning sensor to the trailing edge of the original when the longest original (LD) is standing by at the initial alignment position is set as the jam pulse.
   This is set when transport from the initial alignment position is started.

[4] Timing sensor accumulation jam

1) Up to timing sensor OFF from aligning sensor OFF
   The number of pulses equivalent to twice the distance from the aligning OFF position to the timing sensor OFF position is set as the jam pulse.

16.5.2 Transport section jams

[1] Turn guide sensor non-arrival jam

1) From timing sensor OFF to exit sensor ON when making the first copy (in all modes)
   The number of pulses equivalent to twice the distance from the leading edge position of the original at the point when the trailing edge of the original has passed the timing sensor to the exit sensor ON position when the shortest original (personal check) has been fed is set as the jam pulse.
   This is set at the point when the trailing edge of the original has passed the timing sensor when the first copy is made.
2) From exit sensor OFF for the output original to exit sensor ON for the next original in the one-sided mode
   The number of pulses equivalent to twice the interval between originals when the shortest original (personal check) is being fed by normal feed in the one-sided mode is set as the jam pulse.
   This is set at the point when the trailing edge of the output original has passed the exit sensor in the one-sided mode.

3) From restart of No.1 side transport to exit sensor ON in the double-sided mode
   The number of pulses equivalent to twice the distance from the leading edge position of the original being fed when the original being fed is paused on the original glass and standing by for exit of the output original to be completed during No.1 side transport in the double-sided mode is set as the jam pulse.
   This is set when transport of the original being fed is restarted after exit of the output original is completed during transport of the No.1 side.
4) From start of No.2 side transport to exit sensor ON in the double-sided mode
   The number of pulses equivalent to twice the distance from the trailing edge position of the original to the exit sensor ON position when the shortest original (personal check) is set at the exposure position is set as the jam pulse.
   This is set when transport of the No.2 side is started.

16.5.3 Exit/Reversal jams

[1] Exit sensor accumulation jam

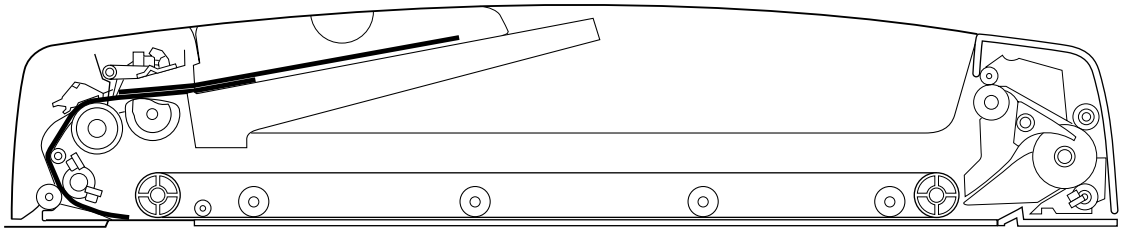
1) From exit sensor ON to exit sensor OFF at original exit
   The number of pulses equivalent to twice the length of the longest original (LD) is set as the jam pulse.
   This is set at the point when the trailing edge of the output original has arrived at the exit sensor during original exit.
2) From start of reversal operation to exit sensor OFF in the double-sided mode
   The number of pulses from start of reversal operation (reverse rotation of the transport belt) to completion of feed in the double-sided mode is set as the jam pulse.
   When the exit sensor turns ON at completion of feed in the double-sided mode, this is judged to be the exit sensor accumulation jam.
   In the double-sided mode, the motor is driven and is stopped by a specified number of pulses (number of feed pulses up to the original stopper position) after start of reversal operation (reverse rotation of the transport belt). Accordingly, in the same way as detection of other accumulation jams, the exit sensor accumulation jam pulse is set at the start of reversal operation (reverse rotation of the transport belt), and occurrence of an accumulation jam is judged by the timer counting up the jam pulse. If this method is adopted, the feed pulse count is counted and the motor stops before the jam pulse count is counted. So, the exit sensor accumulation jam does not occur even if originals accumulate at the exit sensor section.
   For this reason, when the exit sensor turns ON at completion of double-sided feed, the exit sensor accumulation jam is judged. This method is adopted to detect jams.

16.6 Detection of Original Size

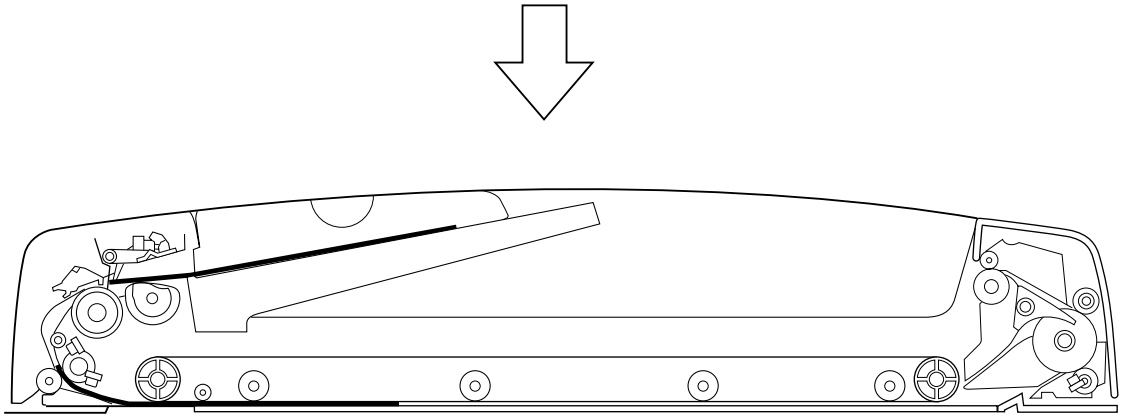
16.6.1 Original size detection method

The number of drive pulses of the feed motor from start of transport of the original standing by at the initial alignment position up to when the trailing edge of the original being fed passes the aligning sensor is counted to detect the original size in the feed direction. At the same time, the original size in the width direction is judged by the size width sensor.

As it is difficult to judge A4 horizontal and letter size horizontal (and also A3 and LD) by detection in the feed direction and width direction alone as described above, two sensors are provided to detect A4 horizontal and letter size horizontal.



① Start of transport of original standing by at the initial alignment position

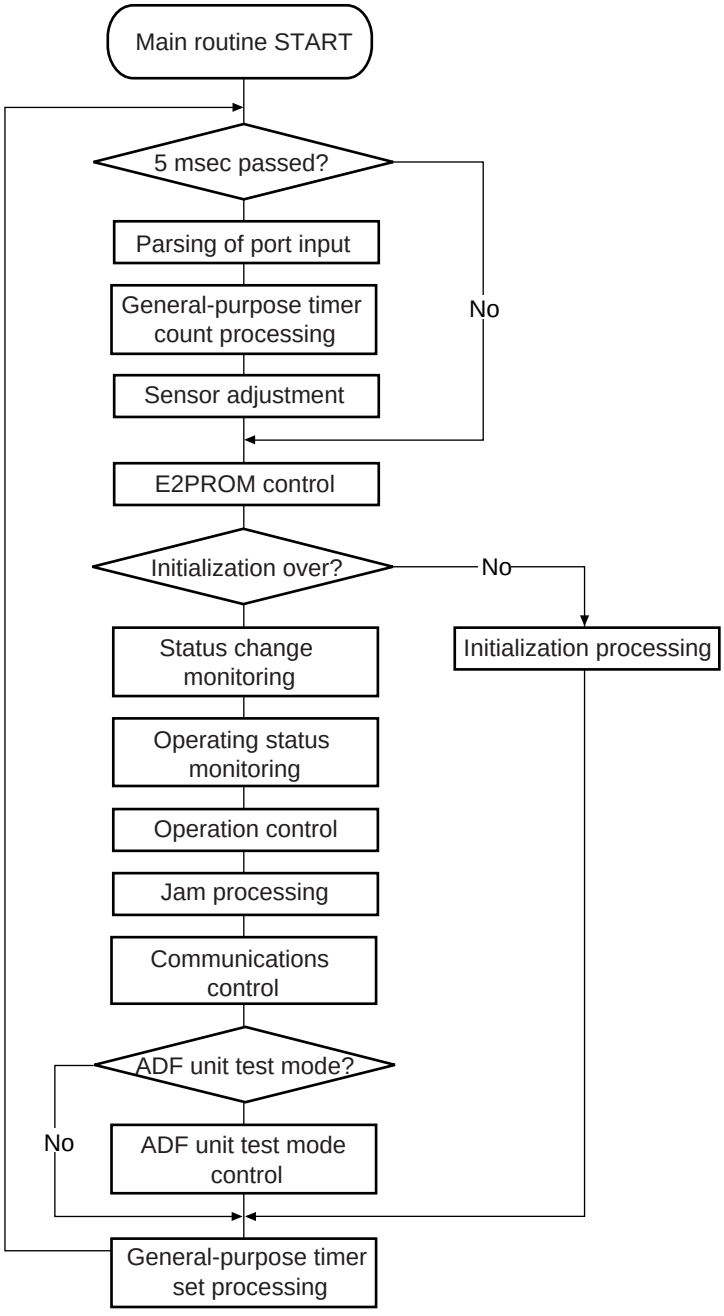


② Passage of the trailing edge of the fed original through the aligning sensor

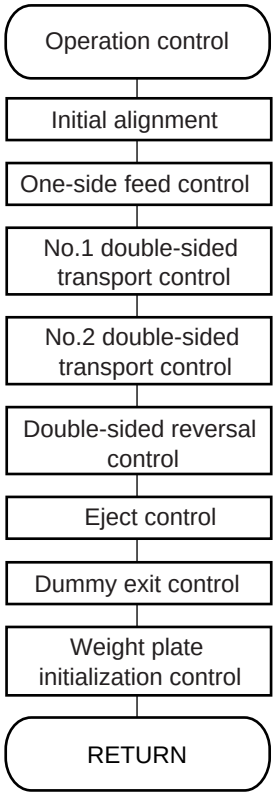
The number drive pulses output by the feed motor between ① and ② is counted to detect the size of the original in the feed direction.

16.7 Flow Charts

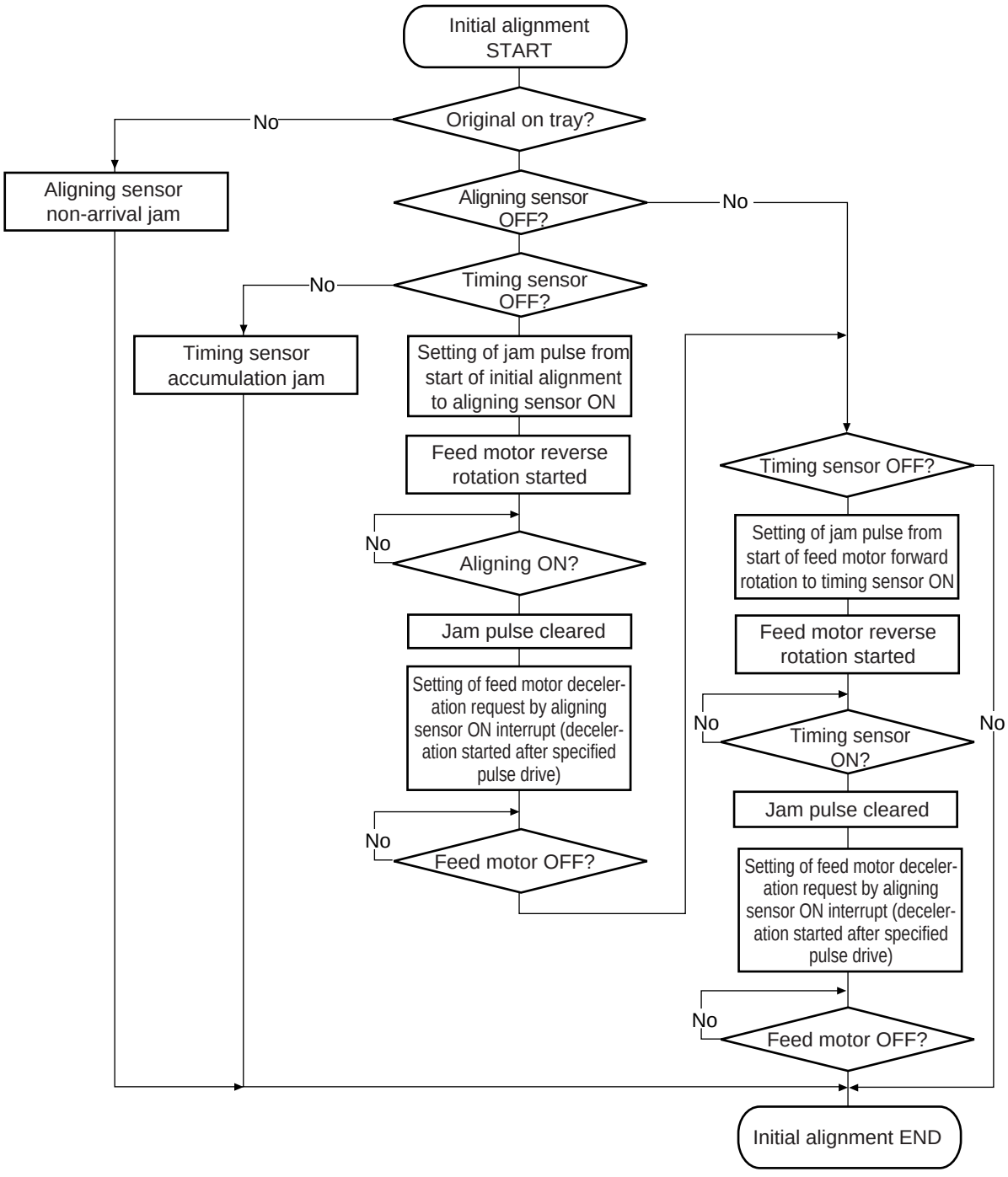
16.7.1 Main routine processing



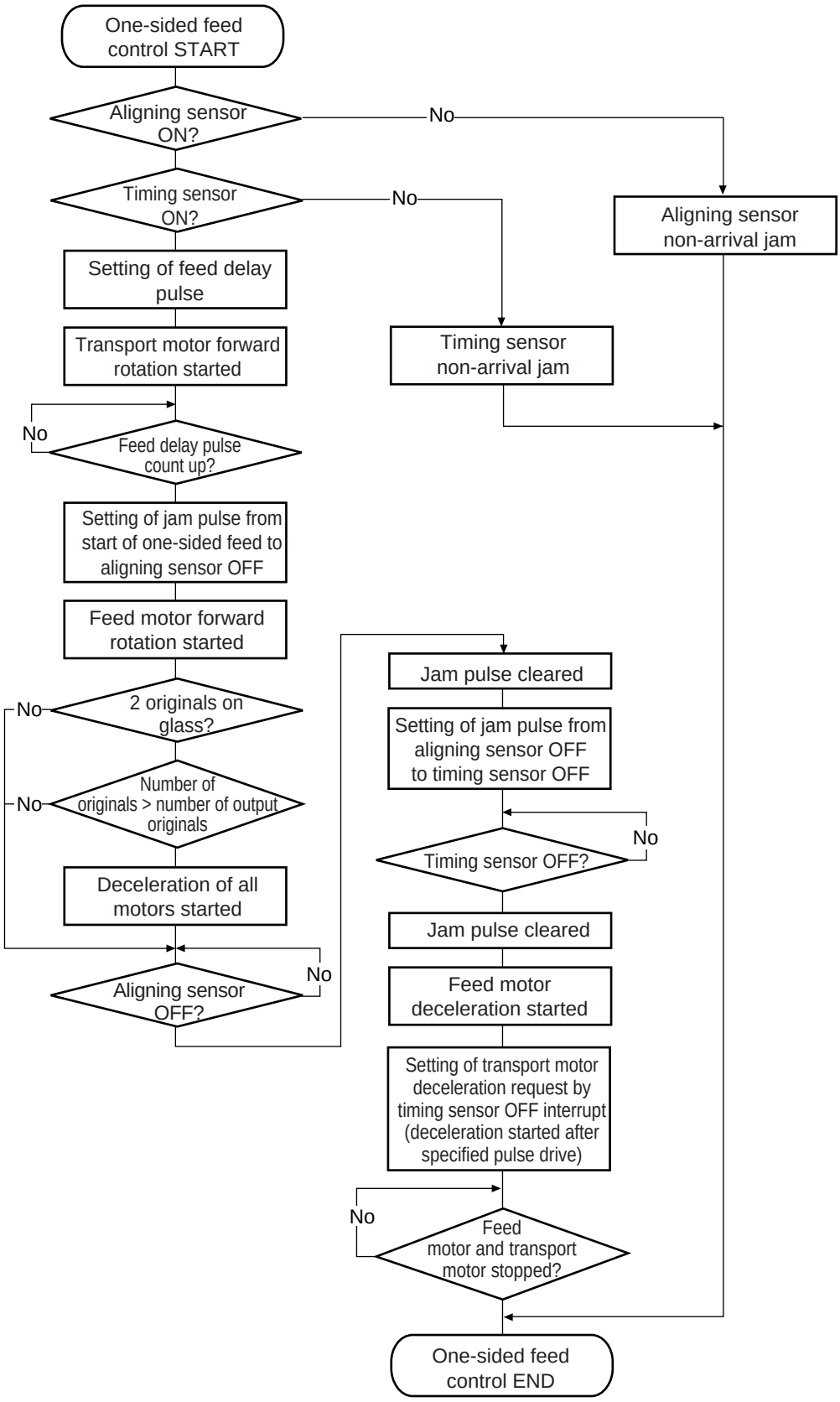
16.7.2 Operation control



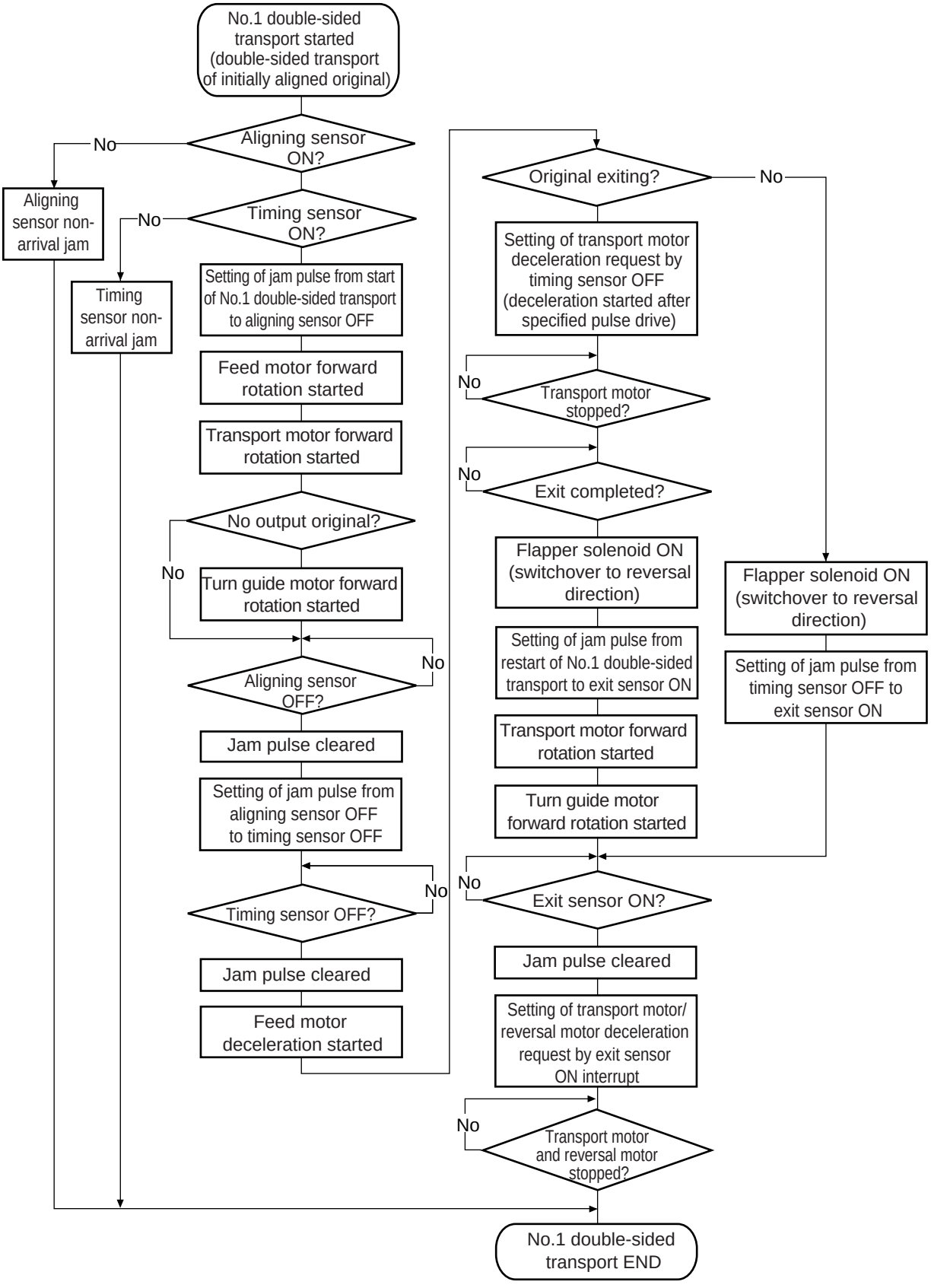
16.7.3 Initial alignment control


Initial alignment START
Original on tray?
No
Aligning sensor non-arrival jam
Aligning sensor OFF?
No
Timing sensor OFF?
No
Timing sensor accumulation jam
Setting of jam pulse from start of initial alignment to aligning sensor ON
Feed motor reverse rotation started
No
Aligning ON?
Jam pulse cleared
Setting of feed motor deceler-ation request by aligning sensor ON interrupt (deceler-ation started after specified pulse drive)
No
Feed motor OFF?
Timing sensor OFF?
Setting of jam pulse from start of feed motor forward rotation to timing sensor ON
Feed motor reverse rotation started
No
Timing sensor ON?
No
Jam pulse cleared
Setting of feed motor deceler-ation request by aligning sensor ON interrupt (deceler-ation started after specified pulse drive)
No
Feed motor OFF?
Initial alignment END

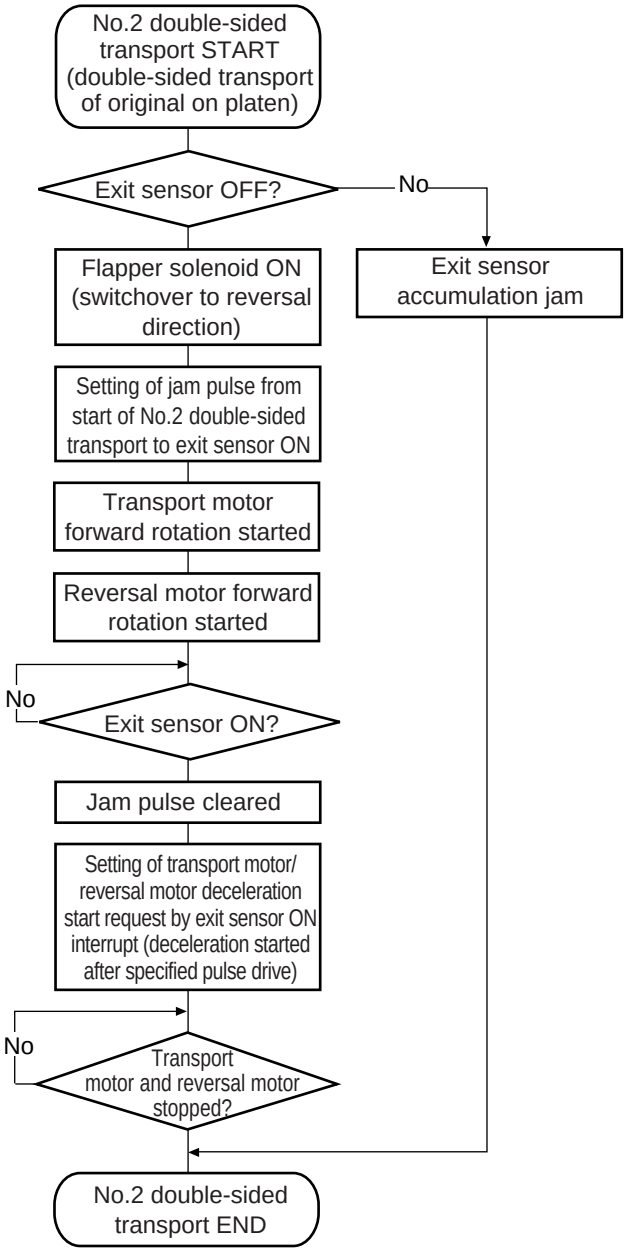
16.7.4 One-sided feed control


One-sided feed control START
Aligning sensor ON?
No
Timing sensor ON?
No
Aligning sensor non-arrival jam
Setting of feed delay pulse
Transport motor forward rotation started
Timing sensor non-arrival jam
No
Feed delay pulse count up?
Setting of jam pulse from start of one-sided feed to aligning sensor OFF
Feed motor forward rotation started
Jam pulse cleared
No
2 originals on glass?
Setting of jam pulse from aligning sensor OFF to timing sensor OFF
No
Number of originals > number of output originals
No
Timing sensor OFF?
Deceleration of all motors started
Jam pulse cleared
No
Aligning sensor OFF?
Feed motor deceleration started
Setting of transport motor deceleration request by timing sensor OFF interrupt (deceleration started after specified pulse drive)
No
Feed motor and transport motor stopped?
One-sided feed control END

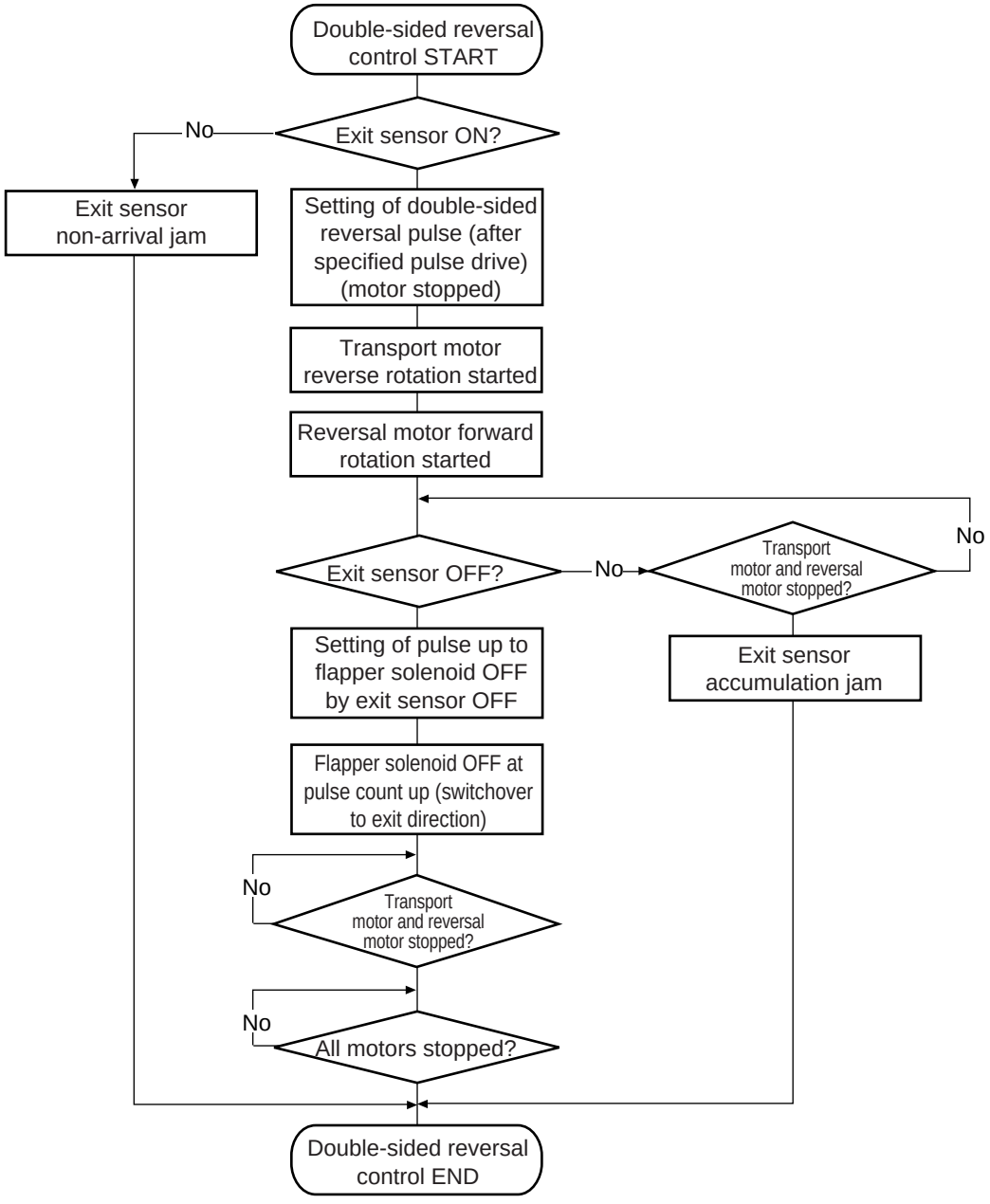
16.7.5 No.1 double-sided transport control (double-sided transport of initially aligned original)


No.1 double-sided transport started (double-sided transport of initially aligned original)
Aligning sensor ON?
No
Aligning sensor non-arrival jam
Timing sensor ON?
No
Timing sensor non-arrival jam
Setting of jam pulse from start of No.1 double-sided transport to aligning sensor OFF
Feed motor forward rotation started
Transport motor forward rotation started
No output original?
No
Turn guide motor forward rotation started
Aligning sensor OFF?
No
Jam pulse cleared
Setting of jam pulse from aligning sensor OFF to timing sensor OFF
Timing sensor OFF?
No
Jam pulse cleared
Feed motor deceleration started
Original exiting?
No
Setting of transport motor deceleration request by timing sensor OFF (deceleration started after specified pulse drive)
Transport motor stopped?
No
Exit completed?
No
Flapper solenoid ON (switchover to reversal direction)
Setting of jam pulse from restart of No.1 double-sided transport to exit sensor ON
Transport motor forward rotation started
Turn guide motor forward rotation started
Flapper solenoid ON (switchover to reversal direction)
Setting of jam pulse from timing sensor OFF to exit sensor ON
Exit sensor ON?
No
Jam pulse cleared
Setting of transport motor/ reversal motor deceleration request by exit sensor ON interrupt
Transport motor and reversal motor stopped?
No
No.1 double-sided transport END

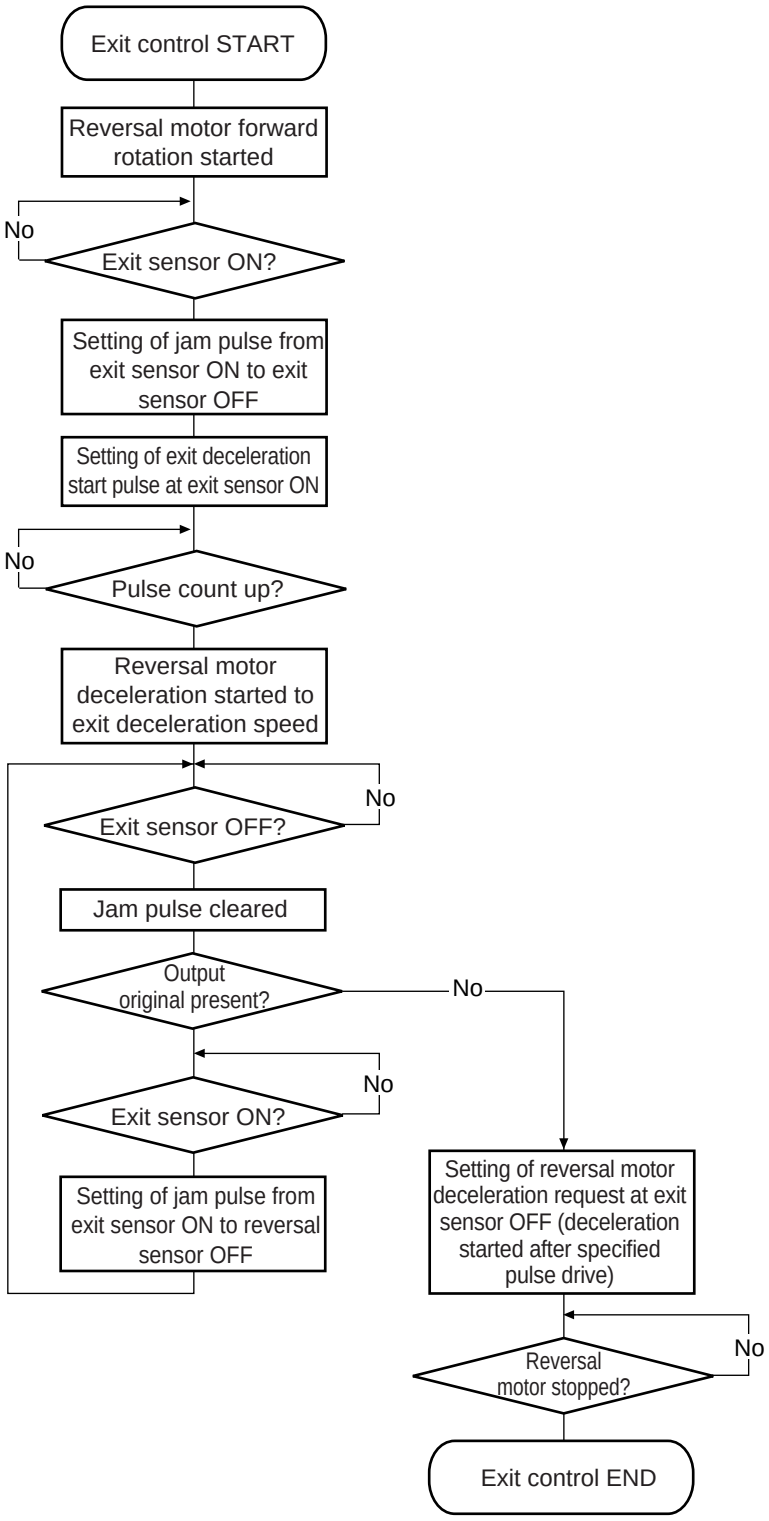
16.7.6 No.2 double-sided transport control (double-sided transport of original on platen)


No.2 double-sided transport START (double-sided transport of original on platen)
Exit sensor OFF?
No
Exit sensor accumulation jam
Flapper solenoid ON (switchover to reversal direction)
Setting of jam pulse from start of No.2 double-sided transport to exit sensor ON
Transport motor forward rotation started
Reversal motor forward rotation started
No
Exit sensor ON?
Jam pulse cleared
Setting of transport motor/ reversal motor deceleration start request by exit sensor ON interrupt (deceleration started after specified pulse drive)
No
Transport motor and reversal motor stopped?
No.2 double-sided transport END

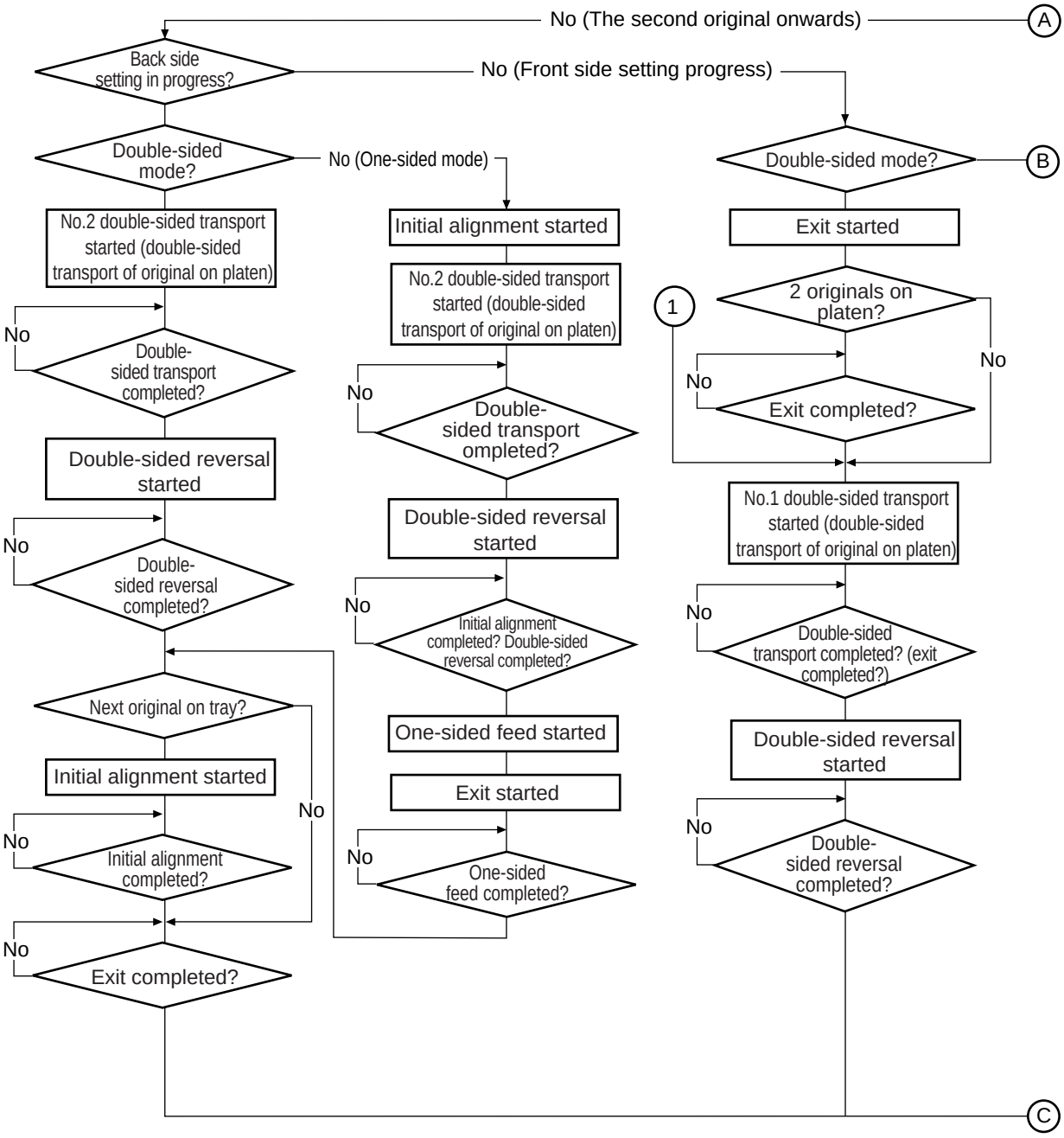
16.7.7 Double-sided reversal control

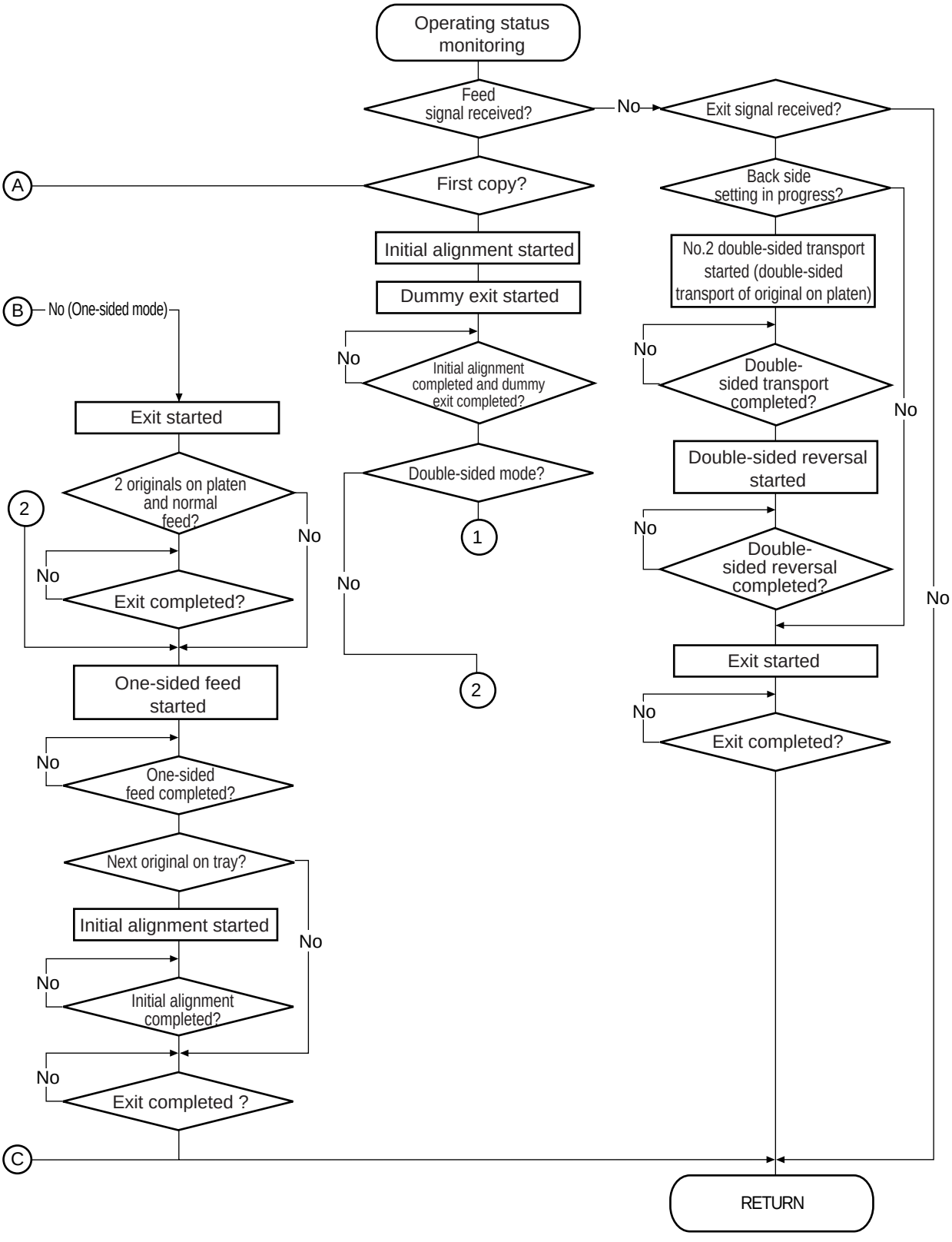

Double-sided reversal control START
Exit sensor ON?
No
Exit sensor non-arrival jam
Setting of double-sided reversal pulse (after specified pulse drive) (motor stopped)
Transport motor reverse rotation started
Reversal motor forward rotation started
Exit sensor OFF?
No
Transport motor and reversal motor stopped?
No
Exit sensor accumulation jam
Setting of pulse up to flapper solenoid OFF by exit sensor OFF
Flapper solenoid OFF at pulse count up (switchover to exit direction)
No
Transport motor and reversal motor stopped?
No
All motors stopped?
Double-sided reversal control END

16.7.8 Exit control


Exit control START
Reversal motor forward rotation started
No
Exit sensor ON?
Setting of jam pulse from exit sensor ON to exit sensor OFF
Setting of exit deceleration start pulse at exit sensor ON
No
Pulse count up?
Reversal motor deceleration started to exit deceleration speed
No
Exit sensor OFF?
Jam pulse cleared
Output original present?
No
No
Exit sensor ON?
Setting of jam pulse from exit sensor ON to reversal sensor OFF
Setting of reversal motor deceleration request at exit sensor OFF (deceleration started after specified pulse drive)
No
Reversal motor stopped?
Exit control END

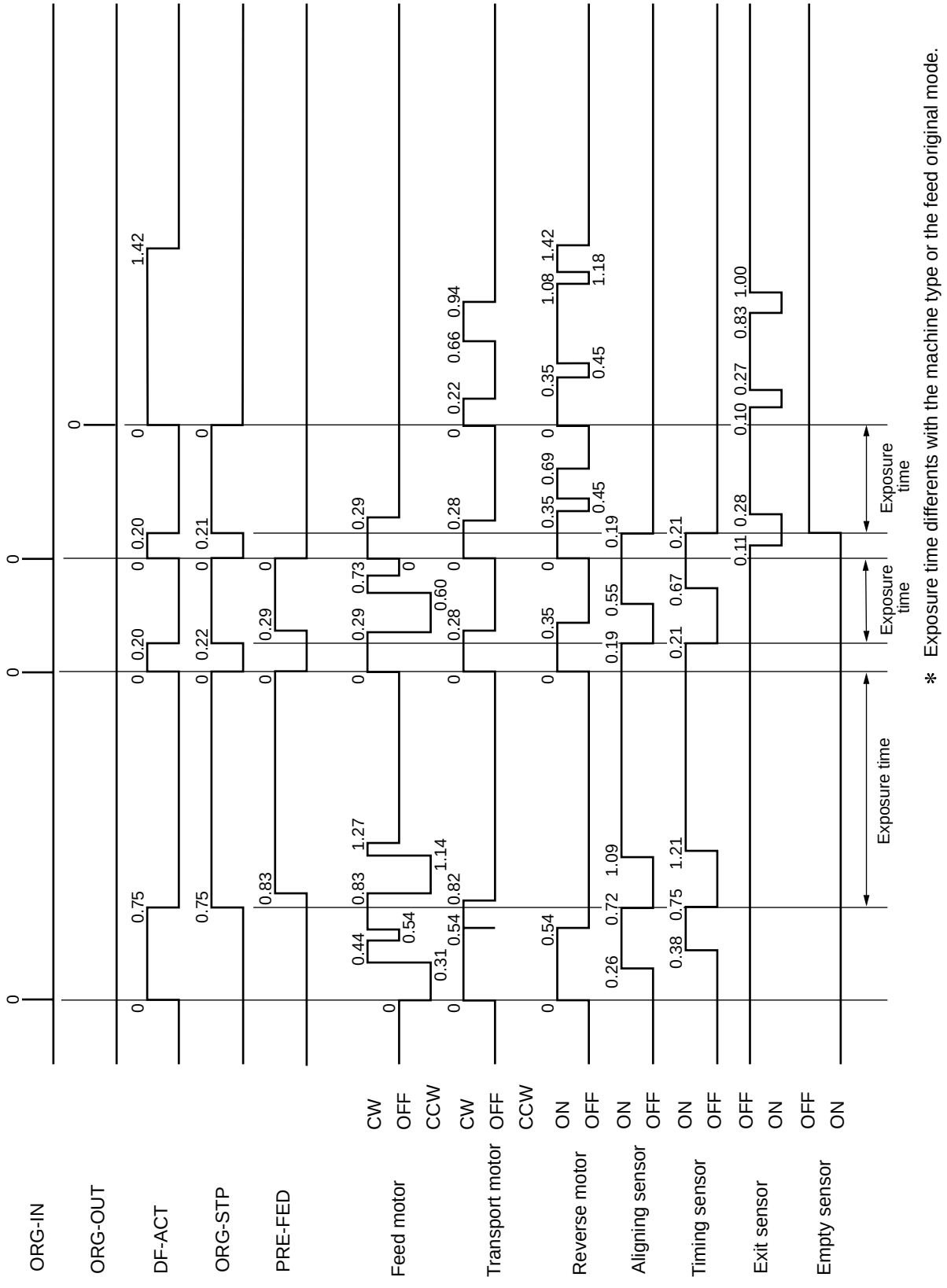
16.7.9 Operating status monitoring



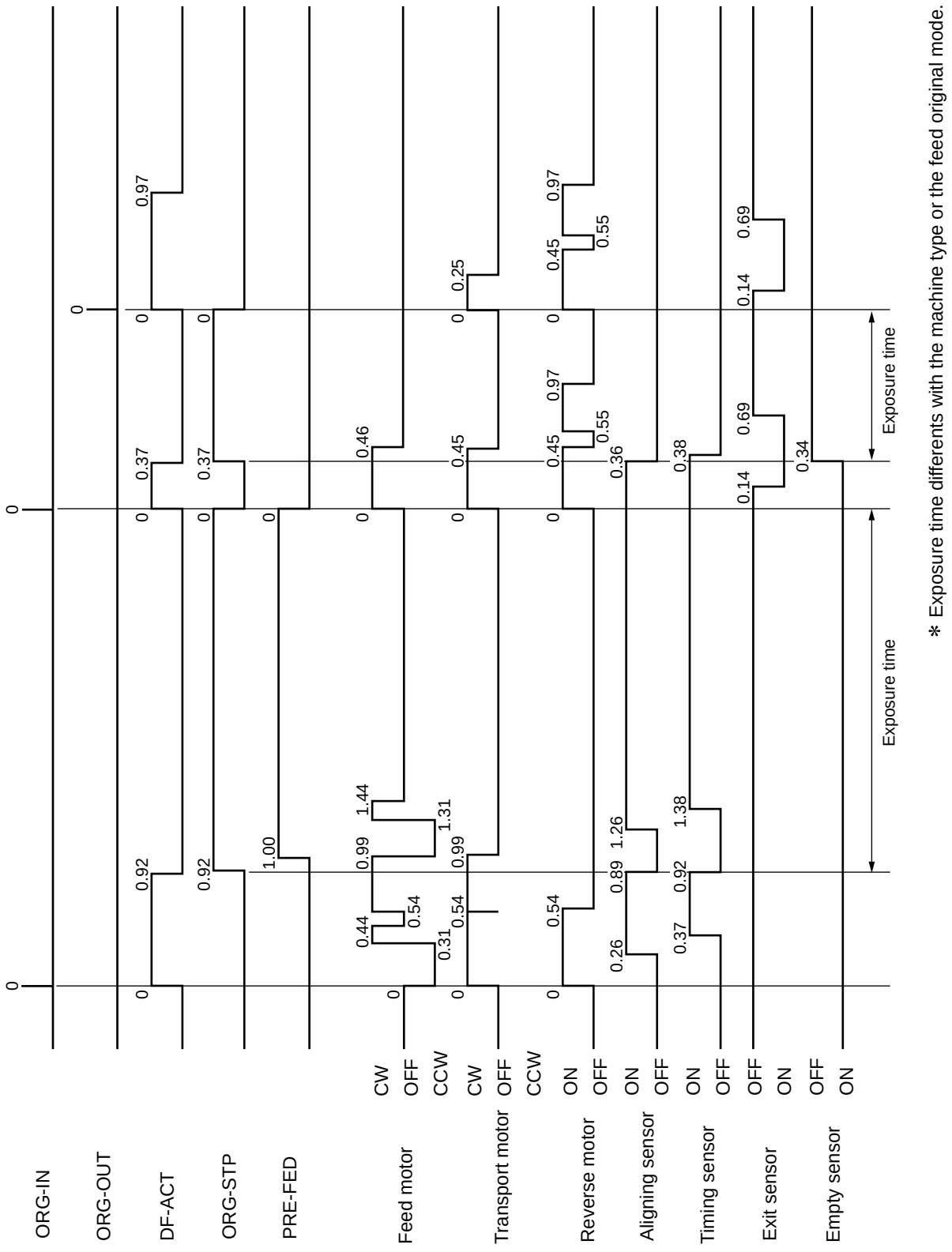

Operating status monitoring
Feed signal received?
No
Exit signal received?
A
First copy?
Back side setting in progress?
Initial alignment started
No.2 double-sided transport started (double-sided transport of original on platen)
Dummy exit started
B
No (One-sided mode)
No
Initial alignment completed and dummy exit completed?
No
Double-sided transport completed?
Exit started
Double-sided mode?
Double-sided reversal started
2
2 originals on platen and normal feed?
No
1
No
Double-sided reversal completed?
No
No
Exit completed?
No
Exit started
One-sided feed started
No
Exit completed?
No
One-sided feed completed?
Next original on tray?
Initial alignment started
No
No
Initial alignment completed?
No
Exit completed ?
C
RETURN

16.8 Timing Charts

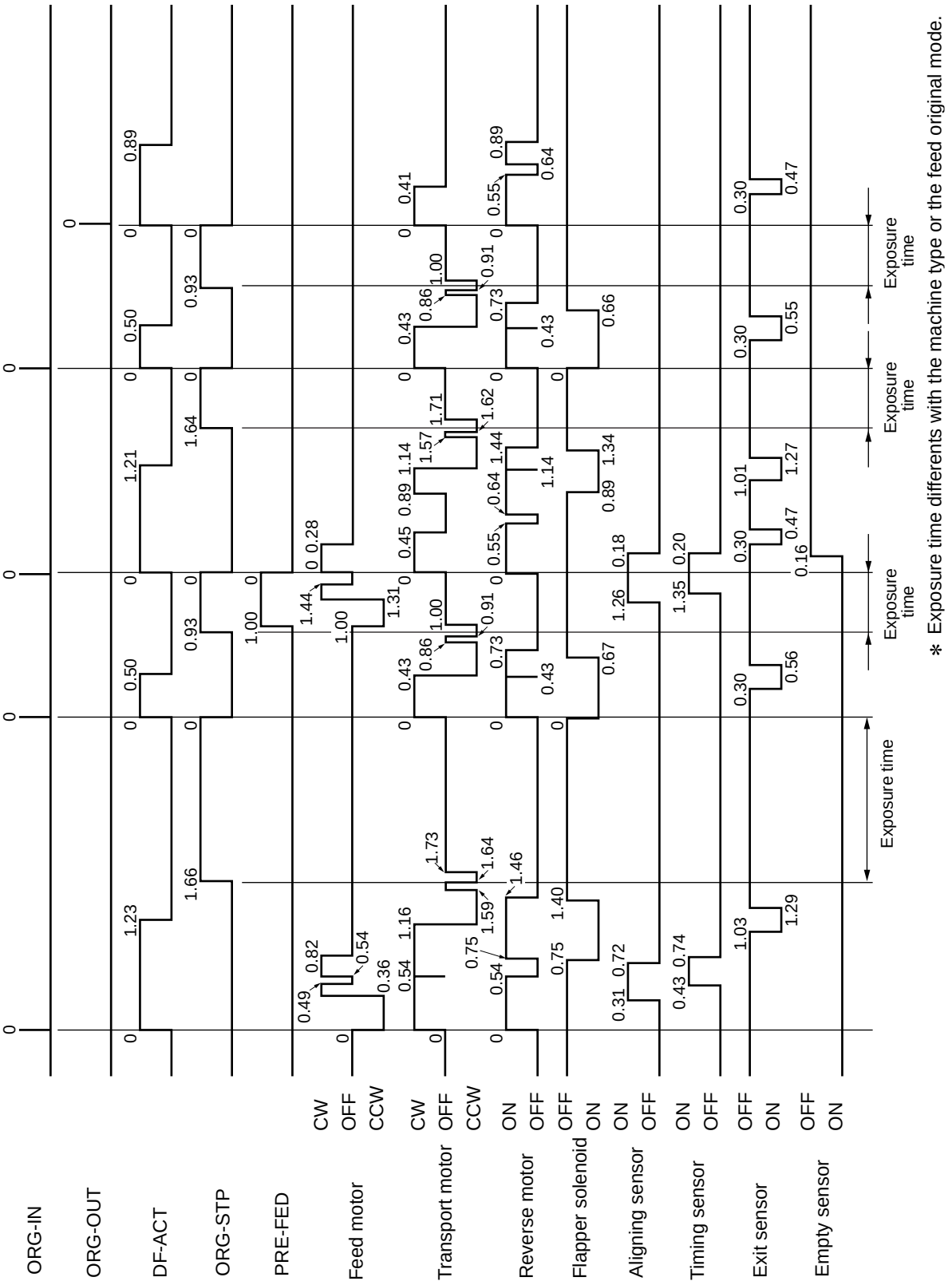
16.8.1 A4, 3 sheets, one-sided mode



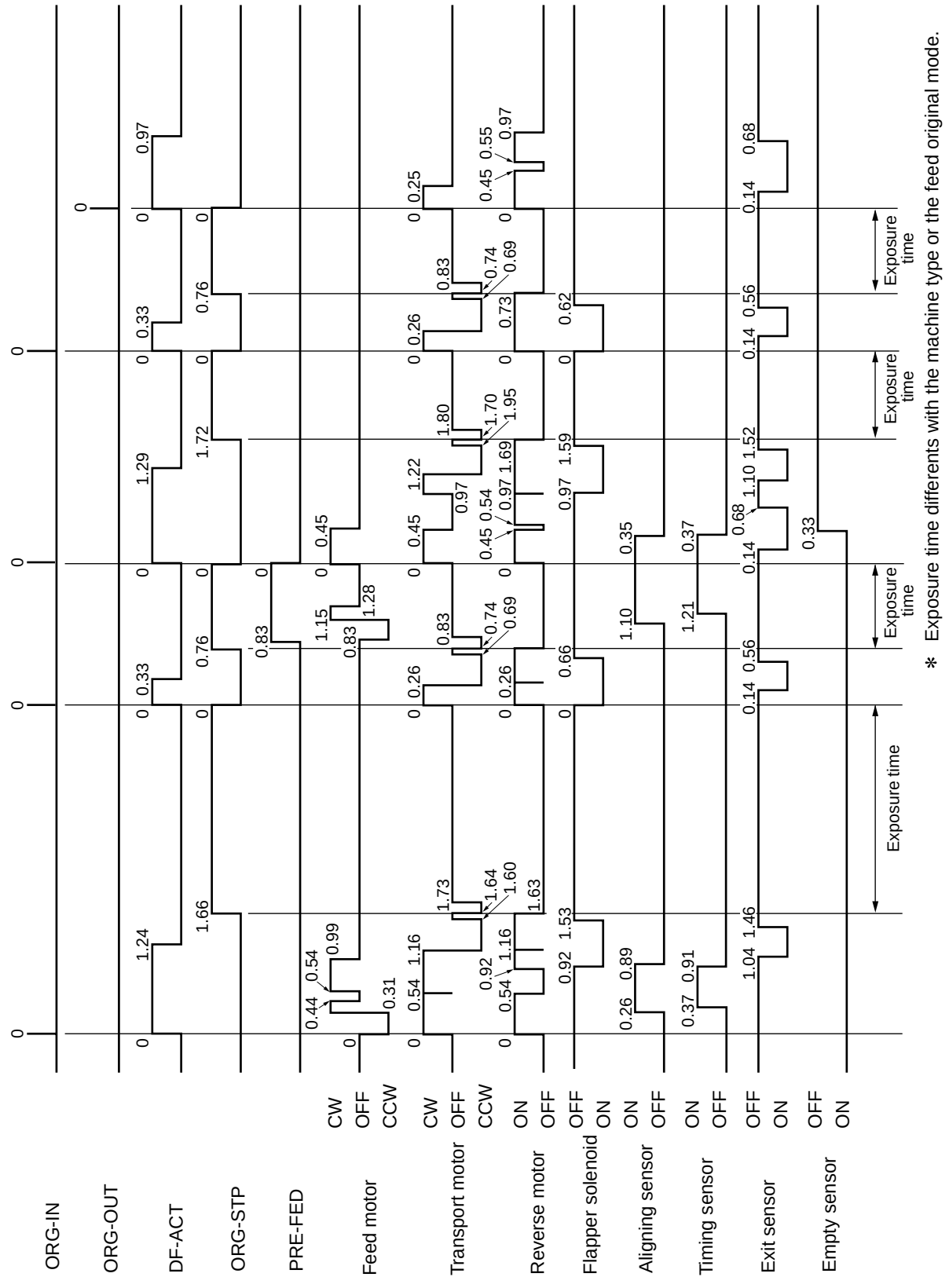
16.8.2 A3, 2 sheets, one-sided mode



16.8.3 A4, 2 sheets, double-sided mode



16.8.4 A3, 2 sheets, double-sided mode



16.9 Descriptions of Symbols, Layout of Electrical Parts and Signal Block Diagrams

16.9.1 Symbols

① Motors

Symbol	Code name	Function	Remarks
FMOT	FMOT (feed motor)	Drives pick-up roller, feed roller and aligning roller	Pulse motor
TMOT	TMOT (transport motor)	Drives transport belt	Pulse motor
RMOT	RMOT (reversal motor)	Drives reversal roller and exit roller	Pulse motor
FAN	ADF-FAN-MOT (ADF fan motor)	ADF PC board cooling	IC motor

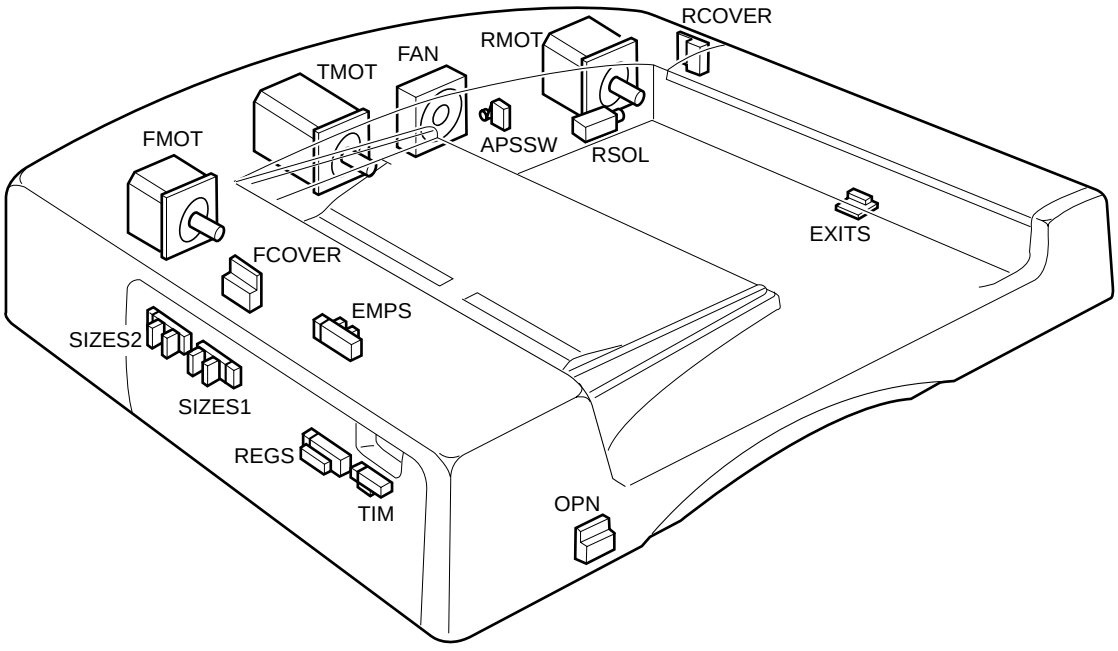
② Solenoid

Symbol	Code name	Function	Remarks
RSOL	RSOL (reversal solenoid)	Drives reversal flapper	DC solenoid

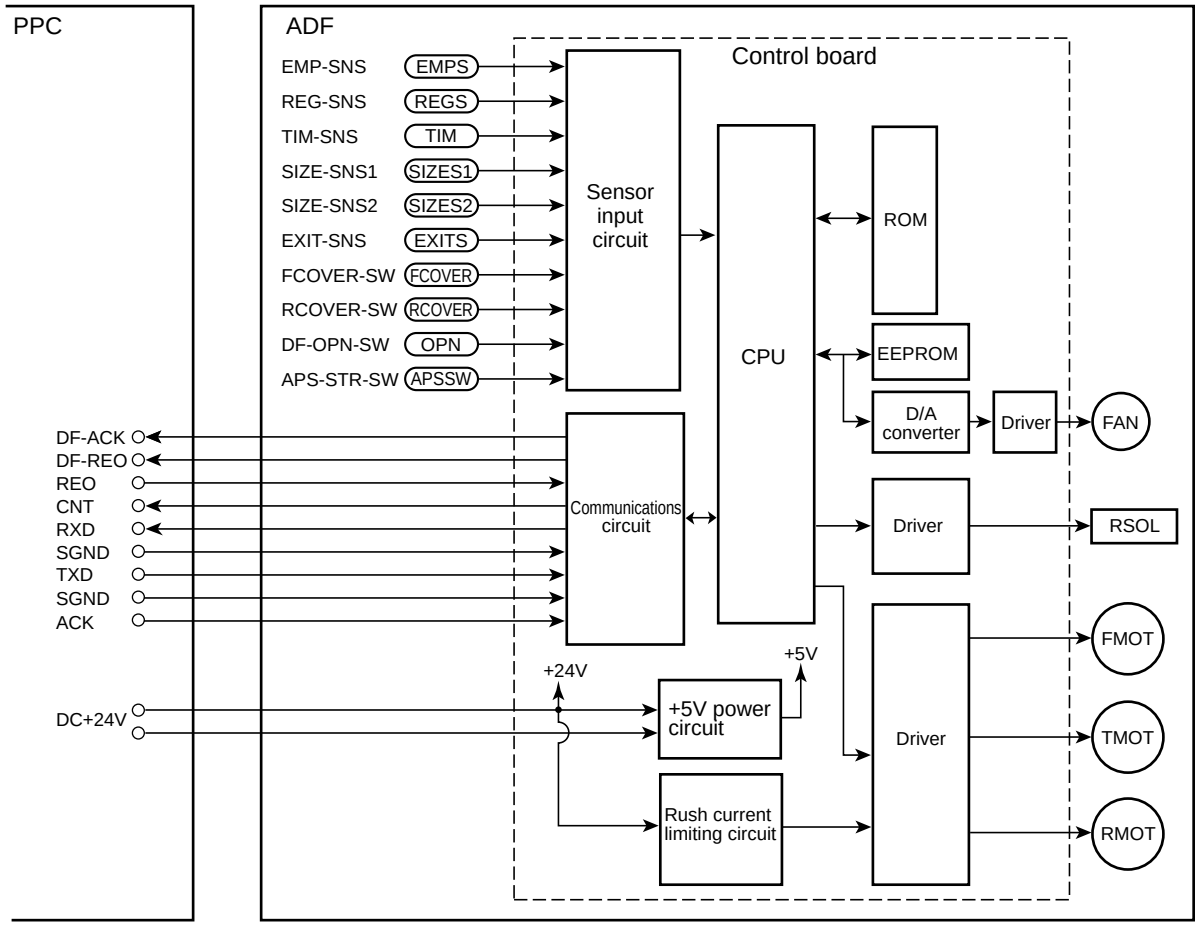
③ Sensors

Symbol	Code name	Function	Remarks
EMPS	EMP-SNS (empty sensor)	Detects the original on the original tray	Semiconductor optical sensor
REGS	REG-SNS (aligning sensor)	Detects the original for aligning	Semiconductor optical sensor
TIM	TIM-SNS (timing sensor)	Detects the initial alignment position of the original	Semiconductor optical sensor
SIZES1	SIZE-SNS1 (size sensor 1)	Original width sensor 1	Semiconductor optical sensor
SIZES2	SIZE-SNS2 (size sensor 2)	Original width sensor 2	Semiconductor optical sensor
EXITS	EXIT-SNS (exit sensor)	Detects originals in the exit/reversal section	Semiconductor optical sensor
OPN	DF-OPN-SW (ADF open/close switch)	Detects open/close of the ADF unit	Reed switch
FCOVER	FCOVER-SW (paper feed cover switch)	Detects open/close of the feed section	Reed switch
RCOVER	RCOVER-SW (exit cover switch)	Detects open/close in the exit/reversal section	Reed switch
APSSW	APS-STR-SW (APS start switch)	APS start switch	Microswitch

16.9.2 Electrical parts layout



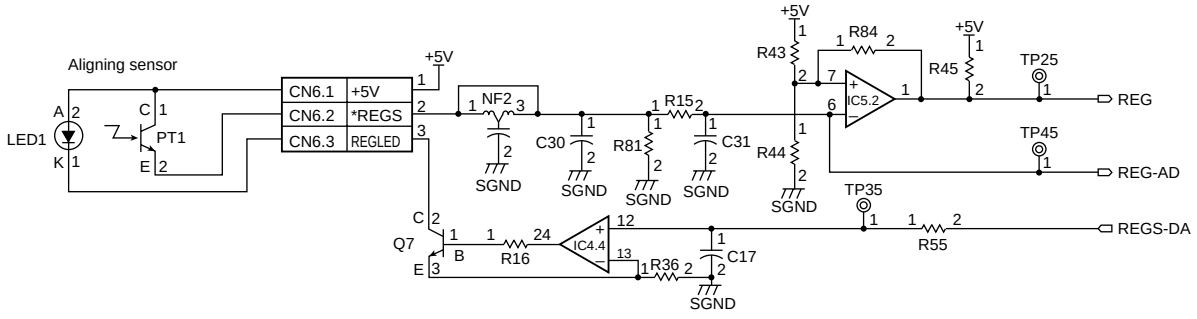
16.9.3 Signal block diagram



16.10 Description of Circuits

16.10.1 Aligning sensor, timing sensor and exit sensor circuit diagrams

This item describes the aligning sensor circuit. A description of the timing sensor and exit sensor circuits is omitted in this item as the aligning sensor, timing sensor and exit sensor share the same circuit configuration.



This aligning sensor circuit comprises two circuits, a voltage-current conversion circuit for adjusting the intensity of light emitted from the infra-red LEDs, and a voltage comparison circuit for comparing the output voltage of phototransistor (PTr) with the reference voltage and converting the output voltage to digital signals.

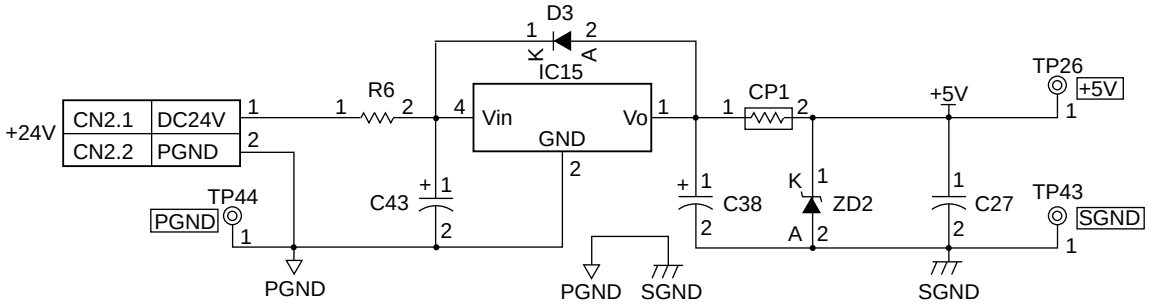
The aligning sensor is a mirror reflection-type sensor, and comprises a light-emitting sensor (infra-red LED) and light-receiving sensor (PTr) pair each having the same optical axis. A mirror is placed along an imaginary line extending from the optical axis of these sensors. When there is no original between the sensors and the mirror, the infra-red rays radiated from the LED are reflected into the PTr at high reflectance. Alternatively, when there is an original, the light radiated on the mirror and the light reflected from the mirror is broken by the original, markedly reducing the infra-red incident to the PTr.

When there is a large amount of light incident to the PTr (that is, there is no original), the photo-current flowing through the PTr increases, and the voltage of pin 6 of IC5 rises at the voltage drop by R81. The comparator on IC5 compares the signal voltage of pin 6 (reversal input terminal) with the reference voltage input to pin 7 (no reversal input terminal). If the voltage of pin 6 is higher, output (pin 1 of IC5) turns Low. Alternatively, if there is little amount of light incident to the PTr (that is, there is an original), the voltage of pin 6 of IC5 becomes low, and as a result, pin 1 of IC5 turns High. R15, C30 and C31 (NF2) in the circuit diagram are noise filters.

This circuit has an automatic sensitivity adjusting function for suppressing unevenness in sensor sensitivity. This function keeps the PTr voltage when there is no original at a constant level in all sensors , and absorbs unevenness in sensor sensitivity caused by the physical differences of the sensor elements. The PTr voltage is adjusted by varying the intensity of the infra-red light radiated from the LED.

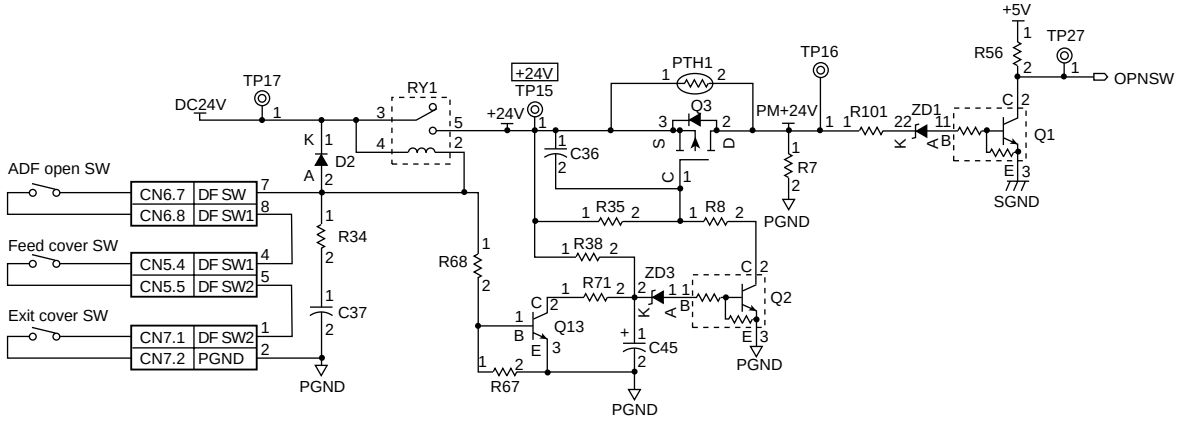
Automatic adjustment is executed when the sensor sensitivity adjustment is selected and when power is turned ON. By this adjustment, the PTr output voltage (analog value) is measured on the A/D input terminal of the CPU, and the output voltage of the D/A converter is varied to adjust the LED current in the voltage-current conversion circuit comprising IC4, R16 and Q7 so that the output voltage of PTr is the required voltage. The D/A output voltage values at this time are values unique to each of the sensor elements, and are stored to non-volatile memory EEPROM (IC11).

16.10.2 +5V power circuit diagram



This circuit generates the +5VDC voltage to be supplied to the CPU, logic IC and other components. +24VDC input from CN2 is converted to +5V by switching regulator IC15. ZD2, CP1 and D3 are used to protect IC15. Resistor R6 limits the input rush current to C43 when the power is turned ON.

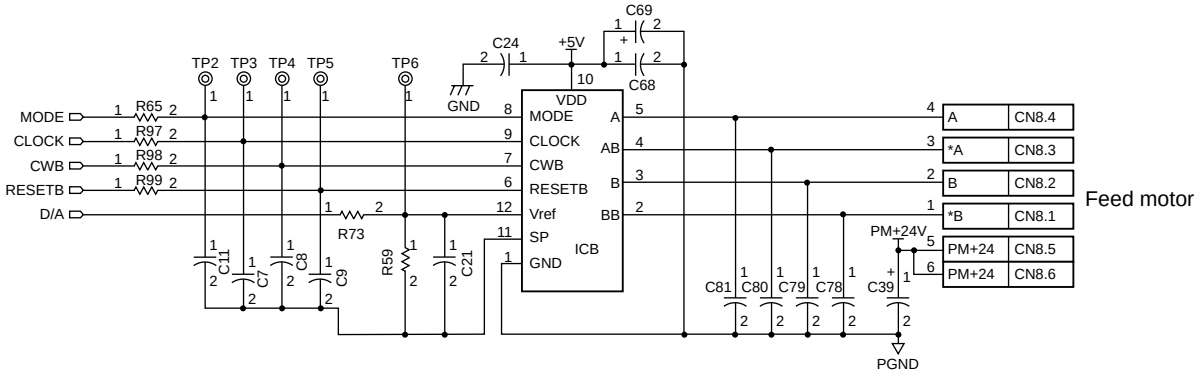
16.10.3 Rush current limiting circuit diagram



This circuit suppresses to a fixed value the inrush current flowing to current-generating capacitors C39, C40 and C41 that are included in the drive motor drive circuit. It comprises a posistor (PTH1) for limiting the current, and a FET (Q3) for allowing a current to flow during constant operation.
From the time that the ADF open/close switch, feed cover switch and exit cover switch up to the cathode voltage of ZD3 reaches the Zener voltage by the time constants of R38 and C45, base current is not supplied to Q2 to set Q2 to an OFF state, and Q3 turns OFF so that current flows through PTH1.
When the cathode voltage of ZD3 exceeds the Zener voltage after a delay provided by the time constants of R38 and C45, base current is supplied to Q2 to set Q2 to an ON state, and Q3 turns. This allows the current that was flowing through PTH1 to flow through Q3, and cancels the current limitation.
Discharge resistor R7 immediately extracts the load that accumulates in C39, C40 and C41 when one of the ADF open/close switch, feed cover switch and exit cover switch becomes open. The circuit comprising R67, R68, R71 and Q13 immediately extracts the load that accumulates in C45 when one of the ADF open/close switch, feed cover switch and exit cover switch becomes open, and limits the inrush current that flows when the cover is opened or closed momentarily.

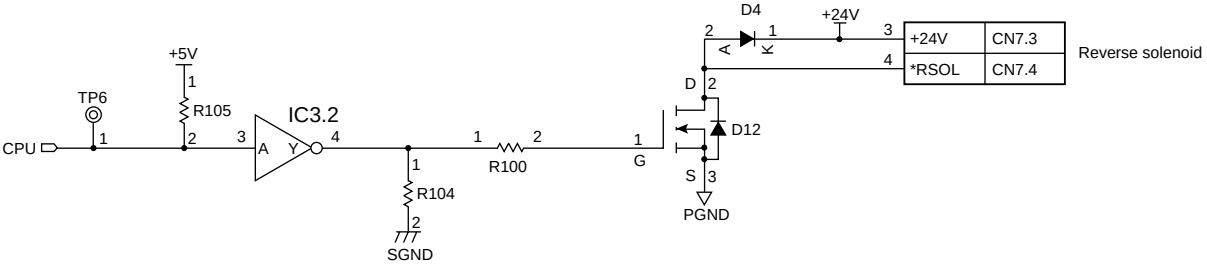
16.10.4 Pulse motor drive circuit

This item describes the feed motor drive circuit. As the feed motor, transport motor and reversal motor share the same circuit configuration, a description of the transport motor and reversal motor circuits is omitted in this item.



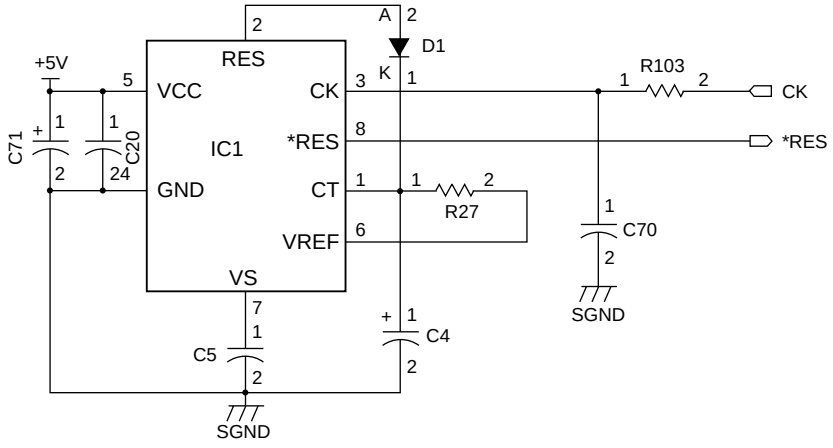
This circuit controls start/stop, direction of rotation and motor current of drive motor operation.
2 phase excitation/1-2 phase excitation can be selected by inputting the D/A converter output voltage (either of two values 00H or FFH) to pin 8 (MODE) of IC8. (On this document feeder, the feed and reversal motors are fixed to 1-2 phase excitation, and the transport motor is fixed to 2 phase excitation.)
The rotating speed of the motor and direction of rotation can be controlled by inputting the drive clock signal (CLOCK) and rotation direction signal (CWB). When the CPU sets the enable signal to Low, pin 6 (RESETB) of IC8 turns Low, all outputs of the drive IC are turned OFF regardless of the state of other signals.
The motor current value is set by dividing the D/A converter output voltage by R73 and R59 and inputting the resultant voltage to pin 12 (Vref) of IC8. The motor current value can be set to any value by varying the D/A converter output value.

16.10.5 Solenoid drive circuit



This circuit limits actuation and release of the reversal solenoid. When the CPU output port is Low level, pin 3 of IC3 turns Low and pin4 of IC3 turns High. Q12 then turns ON to actuate the solenoid. The solenoid drive signal is a PWM signal. When the solenoid starts to actuate, the solenoid actuates at its maximum torque at 100% duty. After actuation is completed, the duty ratio is reduced to hold actuation while heating of the solenoid is held in check.

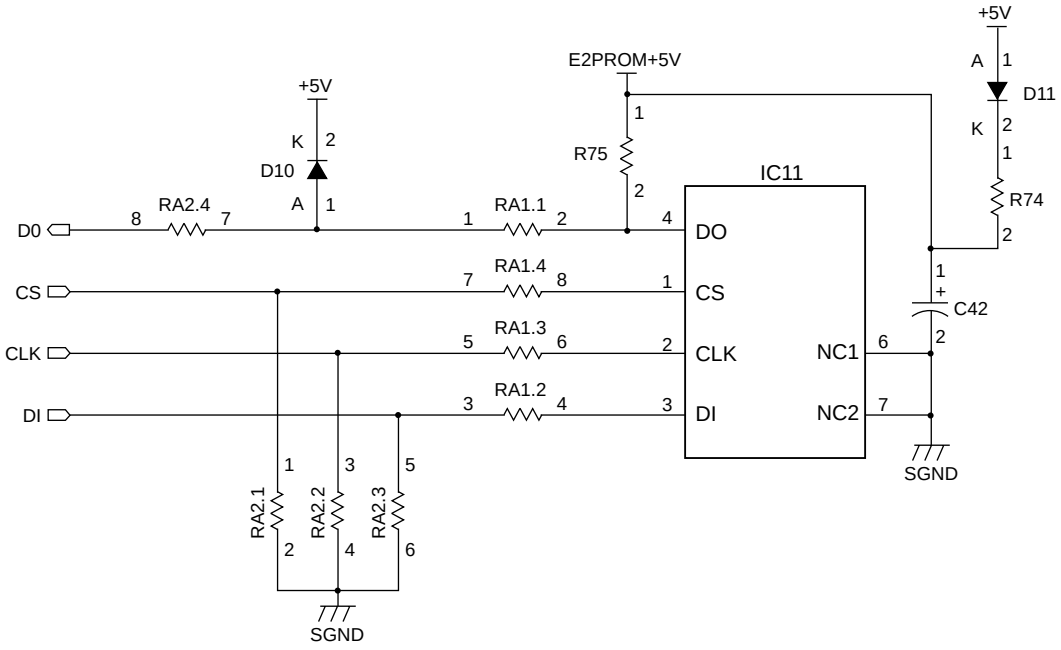
16.10.6 Reset circuit



This circuit generates the CPU reset signal when the power is turned ON, and when the power voltage is momentarily interrupted or low. It has a watchdog timer for diagnosing CPU system operation.
After the power is turned ON, pin 8 (*RES) of IC3 is normally High. However, when the power is turned OFF, or an error causes the +5V voltage to fall below 4.2V, pin 8 of IC3 turns Low to reset the CPU and stop system operation.
During normal operation, a fixed cycle clock is input to pin 3 (CK) of IC3 and IC3's built-in watchdog timer is cleared. If a system error prevents the clock from being input from the CPU, pin 8 of IC3 turns Low, to reset the CPU and stop system operation.
Resistor R27 is for stopping the watchdog timer, and is normally not mounted.

16.10.7 EEPROM circuit diagram

This circuit comprises an EEPROM for storing ADF data and other peripheral circuits.



IC11 is memory for storing the adjustment values of reflection-type sensors. Data transactions with the CPU are performed on a 4-lead type serial interface. Once data is stored, it is held in memory and does not disappear even when the power is turned OFF.

Pin 1 (CS) of IC11 is the chip select terminal, and is High when data transactions are in progress.

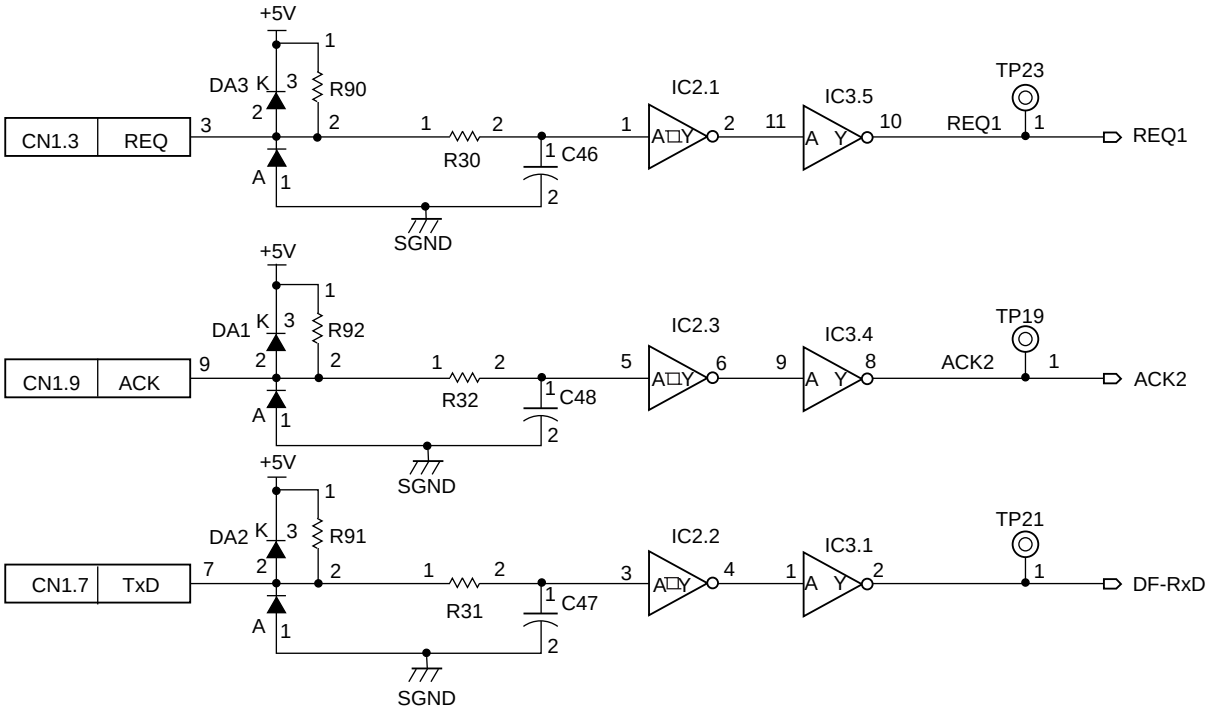
Pin 2 (CLK) of IC11 is the serial clock terminal, and is sent synchronized with the clock that is input to this terminal.

Pin 3 (DI) of IC11 is the serial data input terminal, and pin 4 (DO) is the serial data output terminal.

IC11 is powered by +5V from E2PROM. IC11 power is held by D11, R74 and C42 until writing of data is completed even if something causes the power voltage to fall during writing of data.

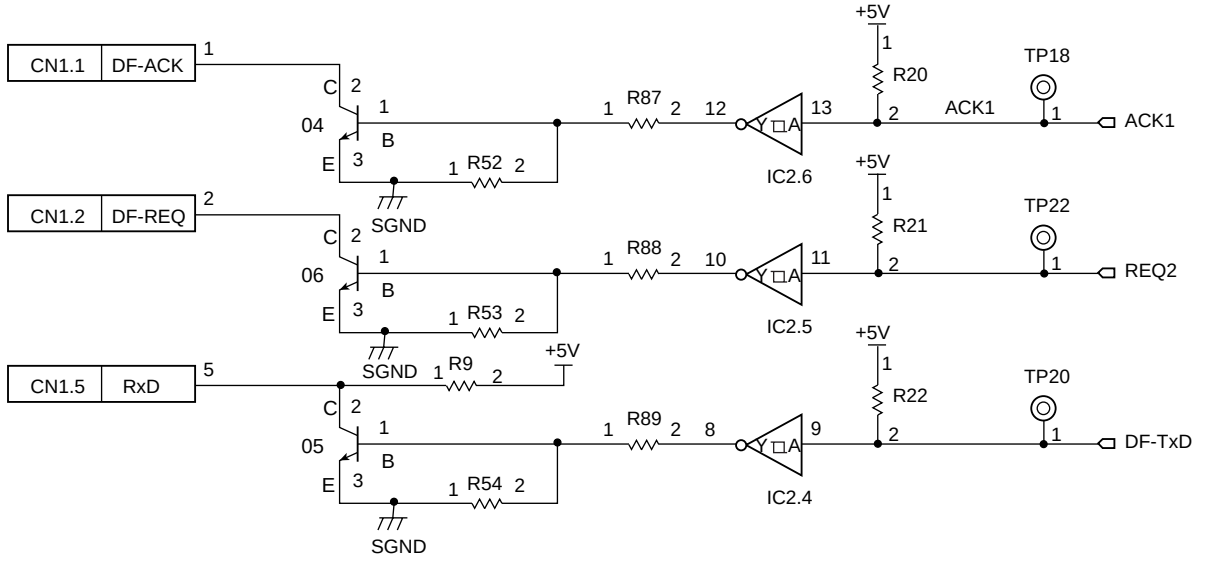
16.11 Description of I/O signals

16.11.1 REQ, ACK and TXD signals



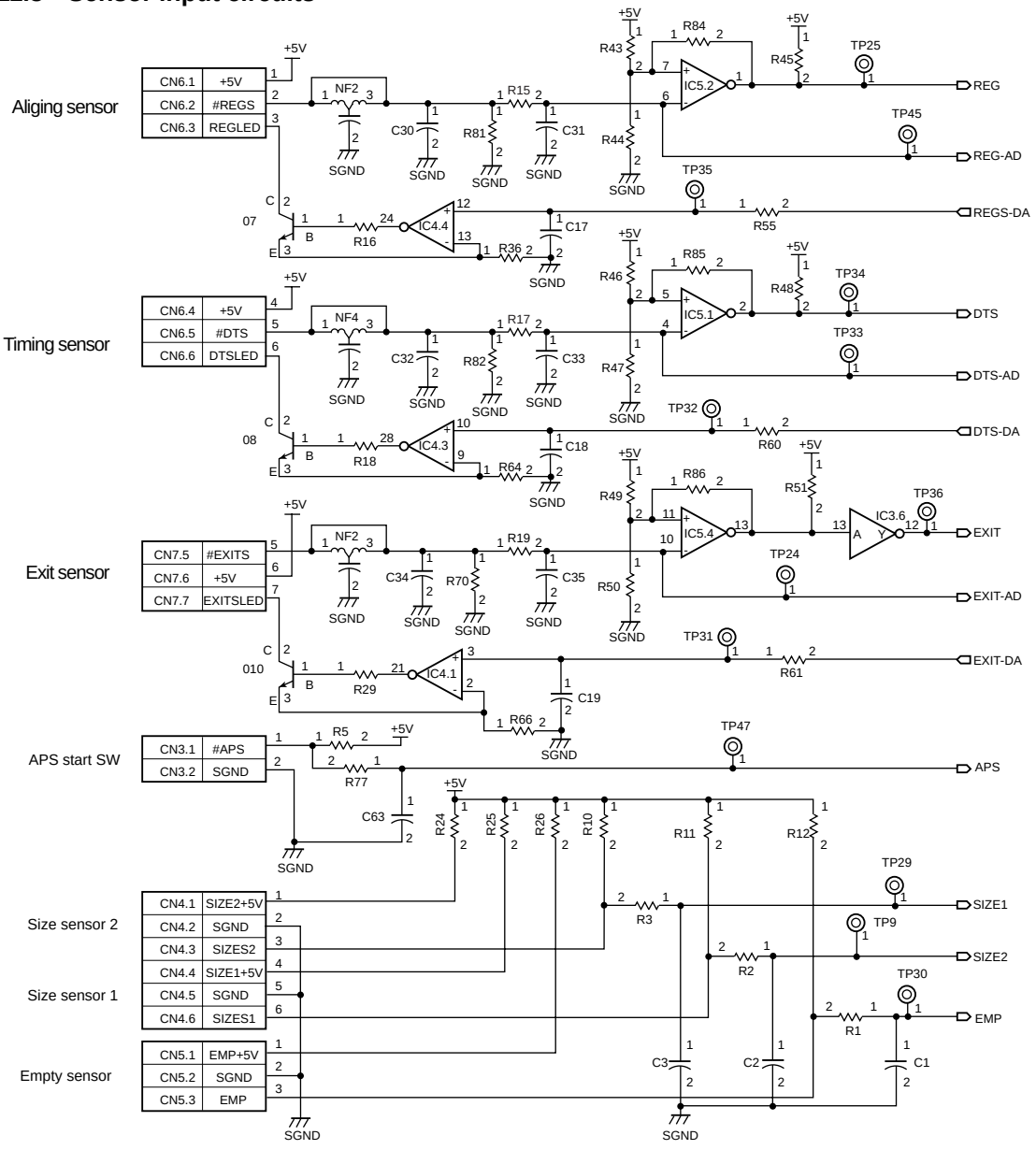
This input circuit is for communicating with the copier body. It is “1” at 5V and “0” at 0V. Logic at connector sections and the CPU input port is the same.

16.11.2 DF-ACK, DF-REQ and RXD signals



This output circuit is for communicating with the copier body. It is “1” at 5V and “0” at 0V. Logic at connector sections and the CPU output port is the same.

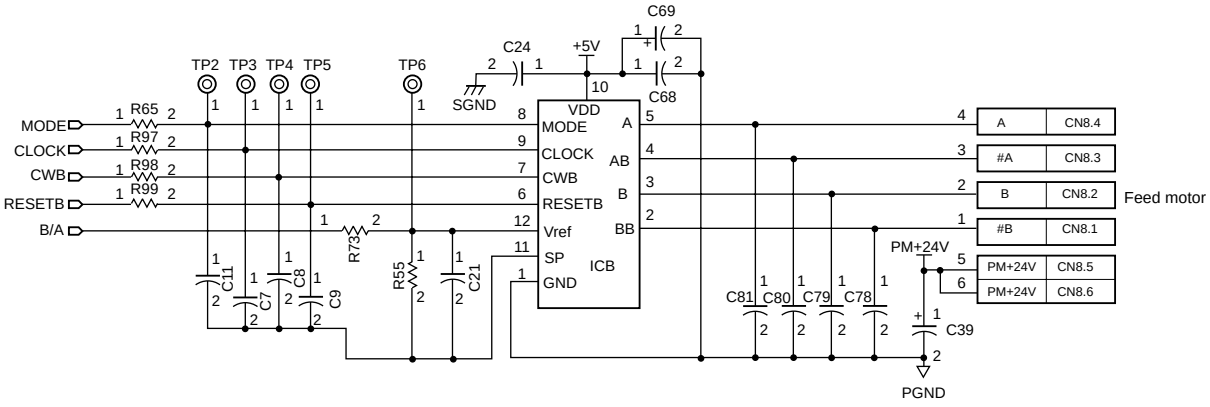
16.11.3 Sensor input circuits



This is the input circuit from the optical sensors. The following table shows the signal logic.

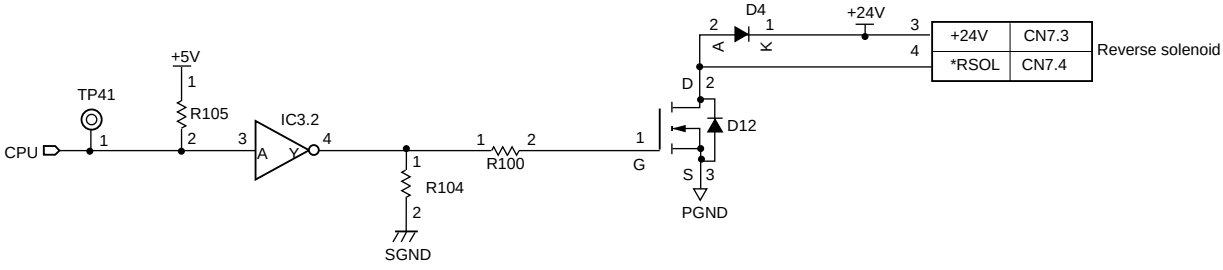
Sensor name	Connector section level 5V (“1”)	Connector section level 0V (“0”)
EMPS (empty sensor)	No original	With original
REGS (aligning sensor)	No original (connector section voltage 2.5V or more)	With original (connection section voltage 2.5V or less)
SIZES1 (size sensor 1)	With original	No original
SIZES2 (size sensor 2)	With original	No original
TIM (timing sensor)	No original (connector section voltage 2.5V or more)	With original (connection section voltage 2.5V or less)
EXITS (exit sensor)	No original (connector section voltage 2.5V or more)	With original (connection section voltage 2.5V or less)
APSSW (APS start switch)	ADF open	ADF closed

16.11.4 Pulse motor drive circuit diagram



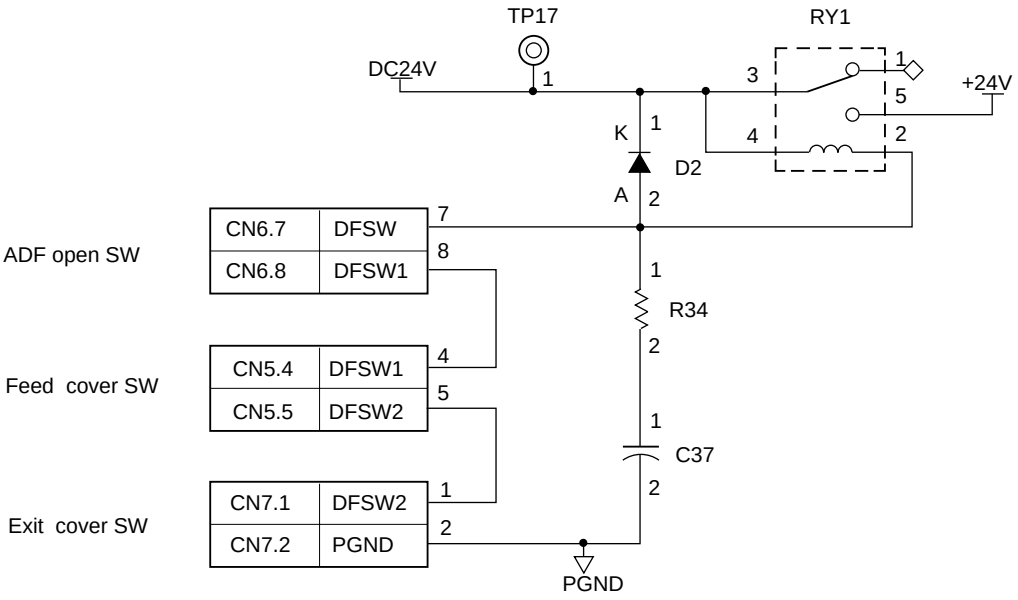
2 phase excitation/1-2 phase excitation can be selected by the excitation mode setting signal (MODE). (On this document feeder, the feed and reversal motors are fixed to 1-2 phase excitation, and the transport motor is fixed to 2 phase excitation.) The rotating speed of the motor and direction of rotation can be controlled by the drive clock signal (CLOCK) and rotation direction signal (CWB). When the reset signal (RESETB) turns Low, all outputs of the drive IC are turned OFF regardless of the state of other signals. The motor current value can be set by inputting the analog voltage to the current setting terminal (Vref).

16.11.5 Solenoid drive circuit diagram



When the CPU output port is Low level, Q12 turns ON to actuate the solenoid. The solenoid drive signal is a PWM signal. When the solenoid starts to actuate, the solenoid actuates at its maximum torque at 100% duty After actuation is completed, the duty ratio is reduced to hold actuation while heating of the solenoid is held in check.

16.11.6 Open switch input circuit diagram

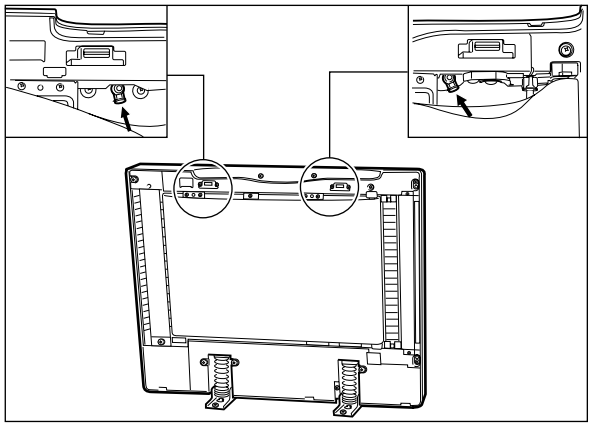


When all three reed switches turn ON, the relay coil is excited to supply +24V power to the drive circuit. The voltage of CN6 and CN7 becomes 0V when all three switches are ON. When one of the switches turns OFF, the voltage of CN6 and CN7 becomes 24V.

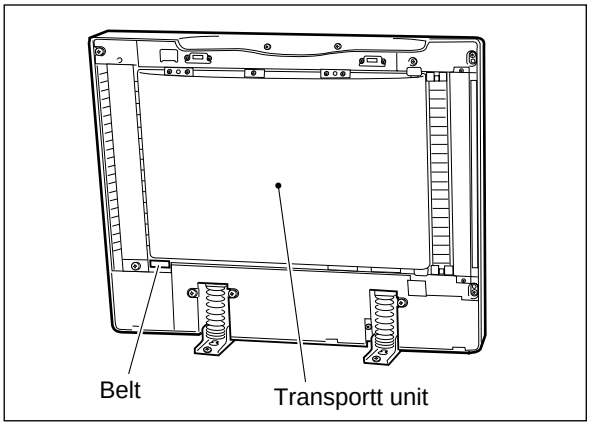
16.12 Disassembly and Replacement

[A] Transport unit

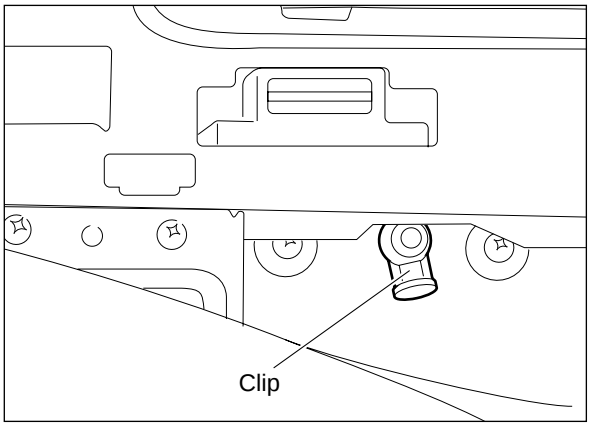
(1) Remove the 2 clips fastening the transport unit.



(2) Push down the top of the transport unit (front side), and remove the rear side from the belt drive section.



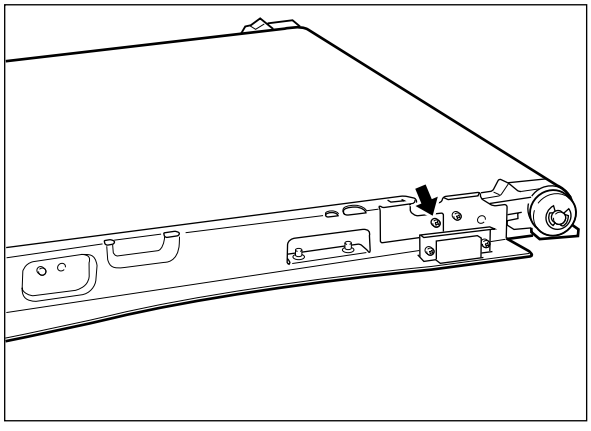
Note: During assembly, insert the clips and fix the transport unit at the position shown in the figure.



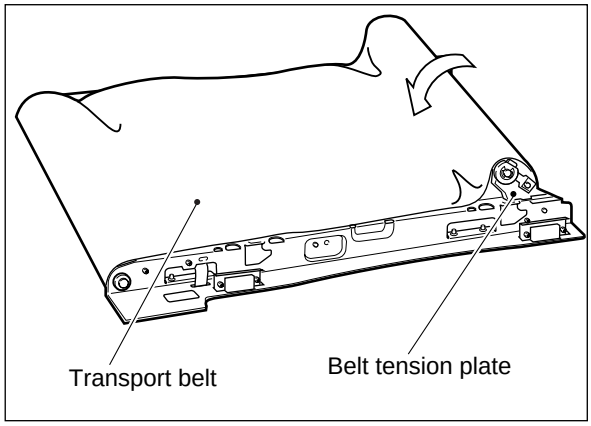
[B] Transport belt

(1) Remove the transport unit.

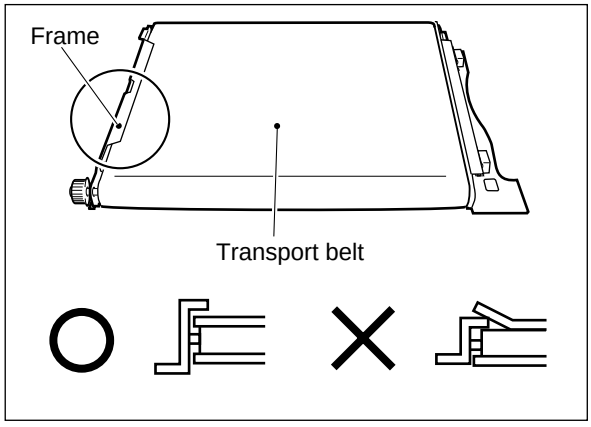
(2) Loosen the screw (front) fastening the belt tension plate.



(3) Rotate the belt tension plate to provide the transport belt with slack.
(4) Remove the transport belt from the front side (Magnet catch side).



Notes: 1. During assembly, make sure that the edges of the transport belt are at the inside of the transport unit side frame.
2. After assembly is completed, make sure that the belt is carried in the center and does not drift to either side.



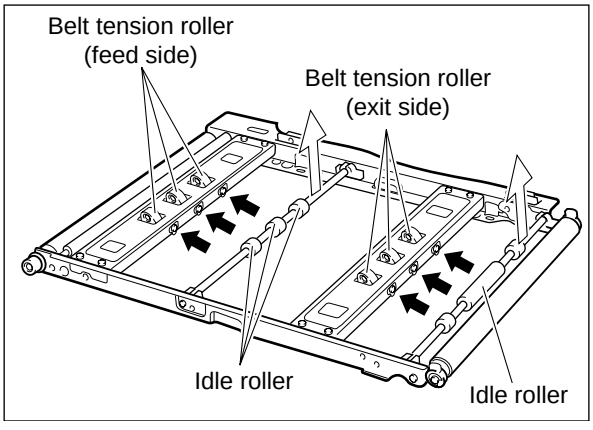
[C] Belt tension roller/brush

(1) Remove the transport belt.

Belt tension roller

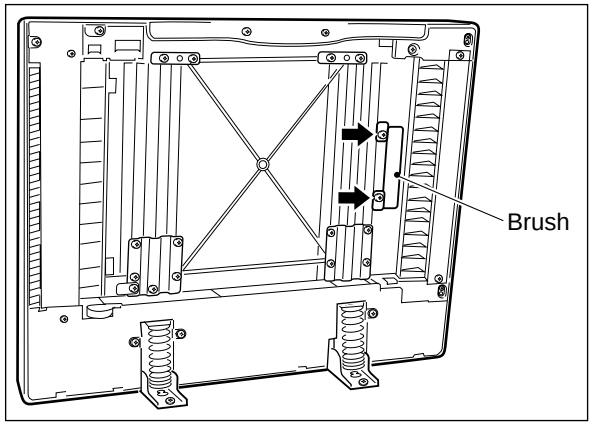
(1) Replace the feed-side belt tension roller after removing the feed-side drop roller.
Replace the exit-side belt tension roller with the belt tension plate brought down. (The drop roller need not be removed.)

Notes: 1. When the belt tension roller is replaced is replaced, do not remove the transport unit side frame. (Do not remove the side frame fixing screws except when replacing the side frame.)
2. The belt tension roller in the feed and exit side is different in the shape of the leaf spring at the central one and the end.
So, pay attention the shape difference at installation.



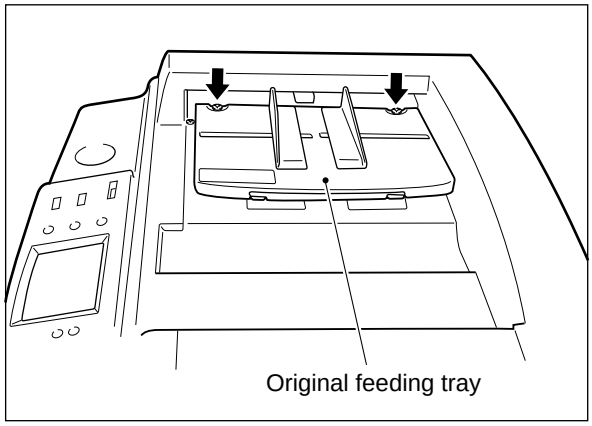
Brush

(1) Remove the 2 screws and brush fastening bracket.



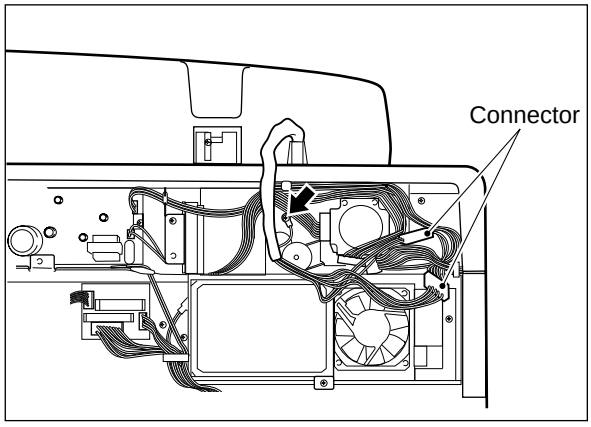
[D] Original feeding tray

(1) Loosen the two M4 screws, and slide the original feeding tray to the front to remove.

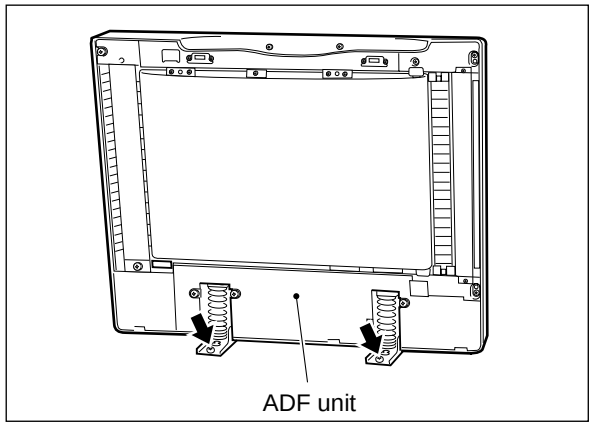


[E] Feed unit

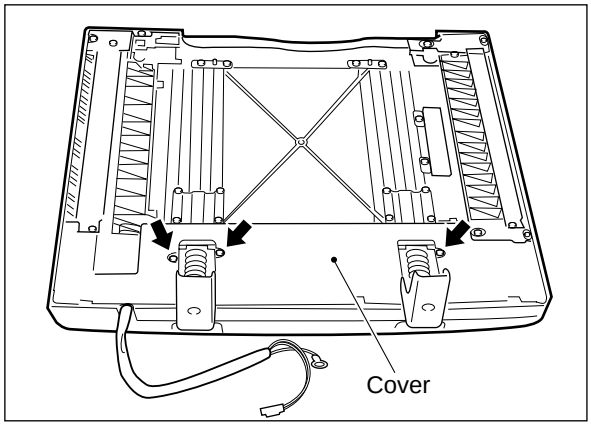
(1) Remove the original feeding tray.
(2) Remove the rear cover.
(3) Disconnect the 2 connectors and remove the earth lead (1 screw) and harness band.



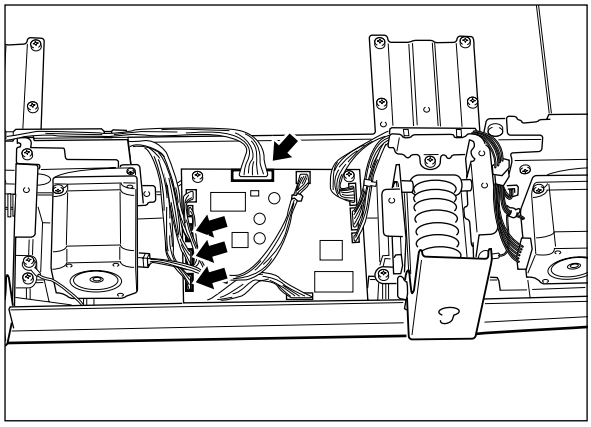
(4) Remove the 2 screws, and slide the ADF unit to the rear side and light up to remove.



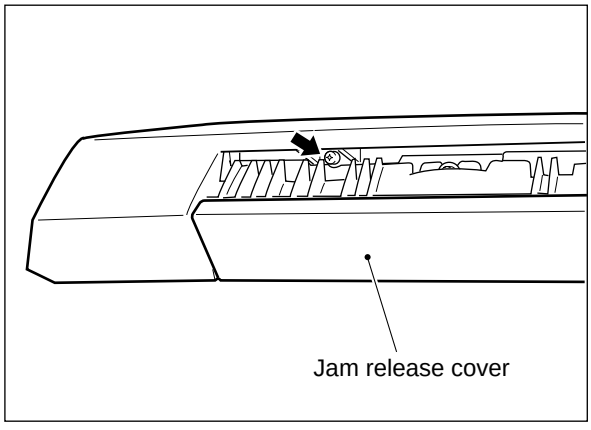
(5) Turn the entire unit over, and remove the cover (3 screws: M4 x 8).



(6) Disconnect the 4 connectors from the PC board.

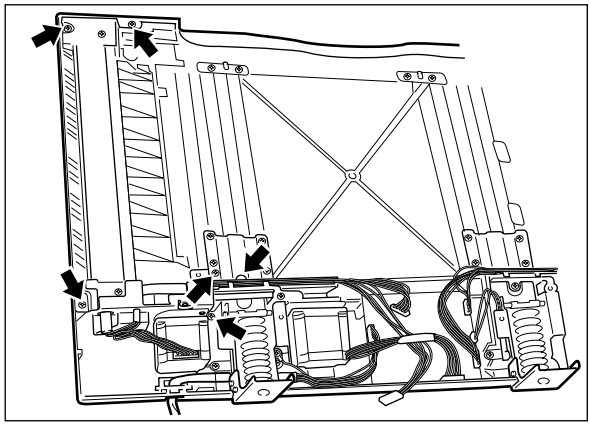


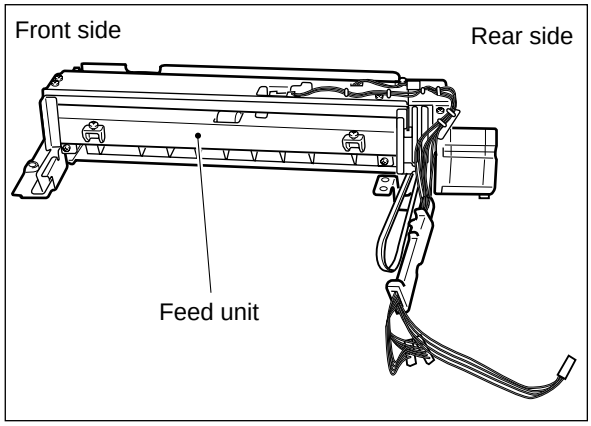
(7) Open the jam release cover, and loosen the screw.



(8) Remove the 6 screws and the feed unit.

Note:
- M4 x 12 ..... 4 pcs.
- M4 x 8 ..... 1 pc. Ⓐ
- M3 x 6 ..... 1 pc. Ⓑ (harness guide)

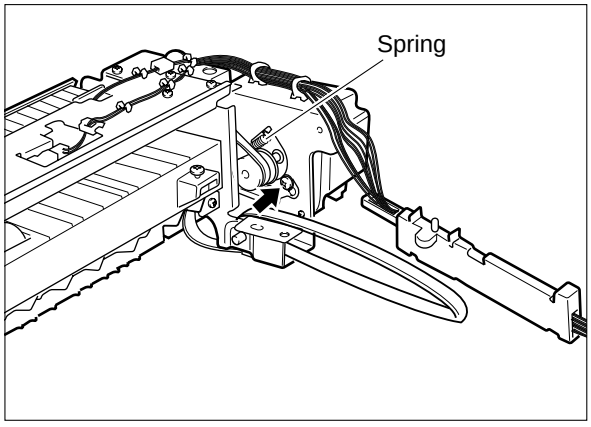




[F] Feed motor

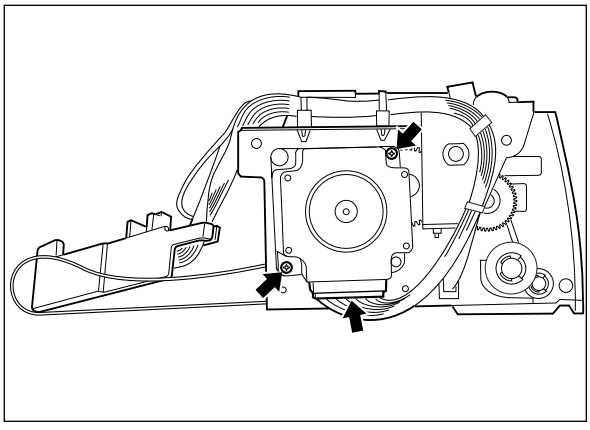
(1) Loosen the tensioner fixing screw from the timing belt.

Note: Do not remove the springs hanging on the belt tensioner.



(2) Remove the motor connector, and 2 motor fixing screws.

Note: During assembly, be sure to fasten the belt tensioner last of all.

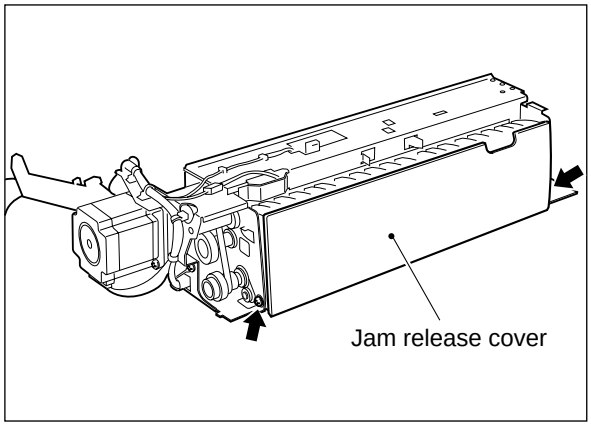


[G] Jam release cover

(1) Remove the feed unit.

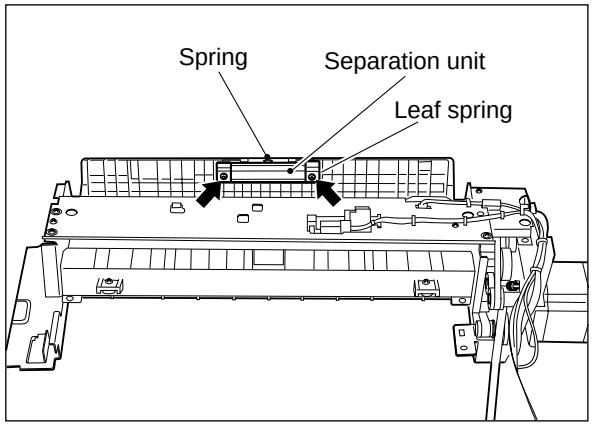
(2) Remove the jam release cover by removing the 2 screws (front and rear sides).

Note: To assemble, be sure to insert spring washers to fasten the jam release cover.



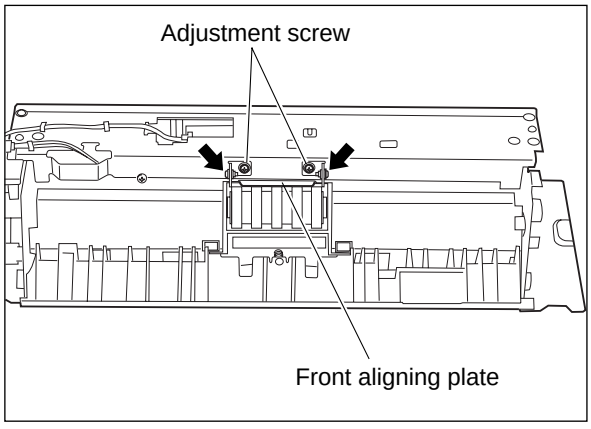
[H] Separation unit

(1) Open the jam release cover.
(2) Remove the 2 screws and leaf spring, then, remove the unit.
(3) Draw out the bracket holder making sure that the pressurizing springs do not become loose.



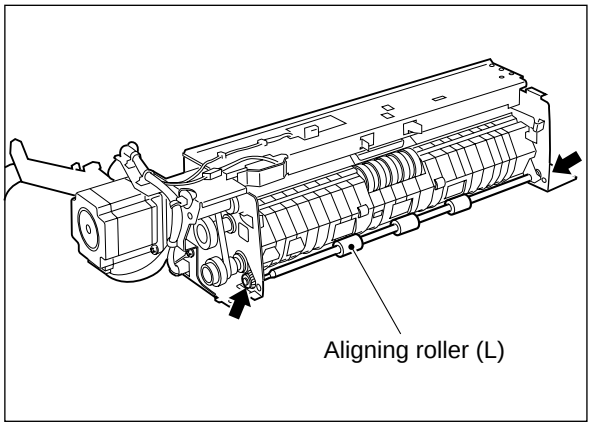
[I] Front aligning plate

(1) Remove the feed unit.
(2) Open the jam release cover.
(3) Remove the 2 screws.



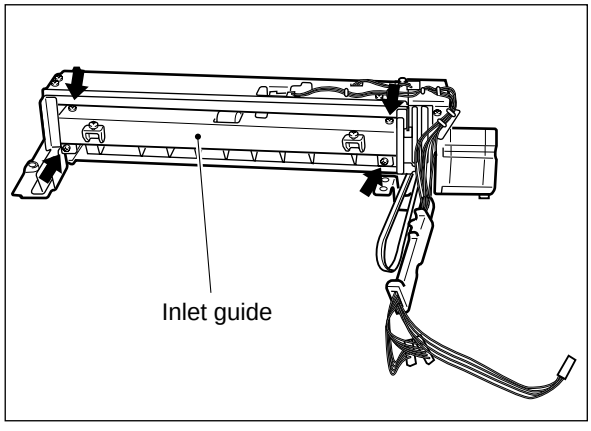
[J] Aligning roller (L)

(1) Remove the feed unit.
(2) Open the jam release cover.
(3) Remove each of the E-rings, bushes and coil springs from the front and rear sides.
(4) Slide the aligning roller (L) to draw out the roller.

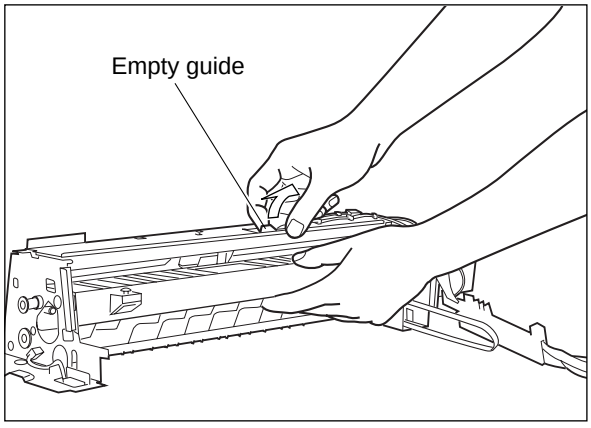


[K] Timing sensor and size sensor

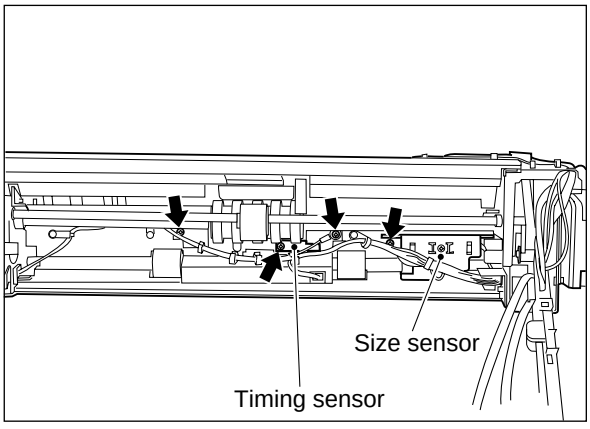
(1) Remove the feed unit.
(2) Remove the 4 screws.



(3) Draw out the inlet guide while pushing the empty sensor upwards.

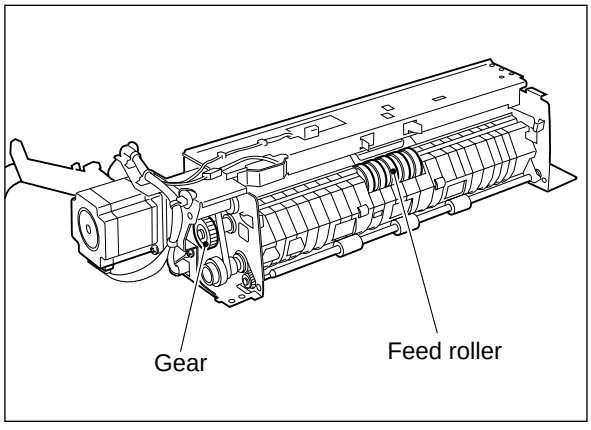


(4) Remove the 2 bracket fixing screws from the timing sensor and the bracket fixing screw from the size sensor, and disconnect the connectors from the sensors.



[L] Feed roller

(1) Remove the feed unit.
(2) Remove the inlet guide.
(3) Remove the E-ring, bush and spring from the front side.
(4) Remove the front-side plastic ring fastening the feed roller, and draw out the roller from the front frame opening.

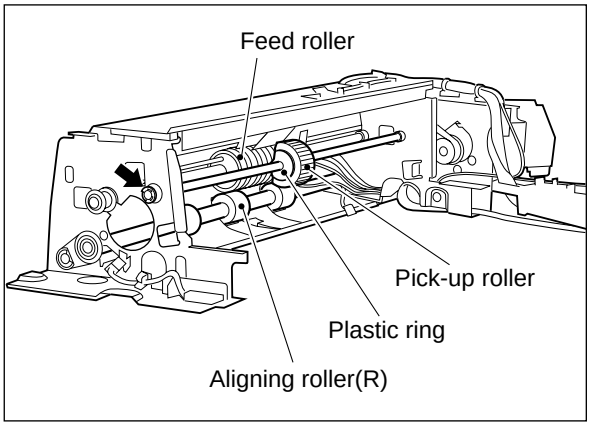


[M] Pick-up roller/aligning roller (R)

(1) Remove the feed unit.

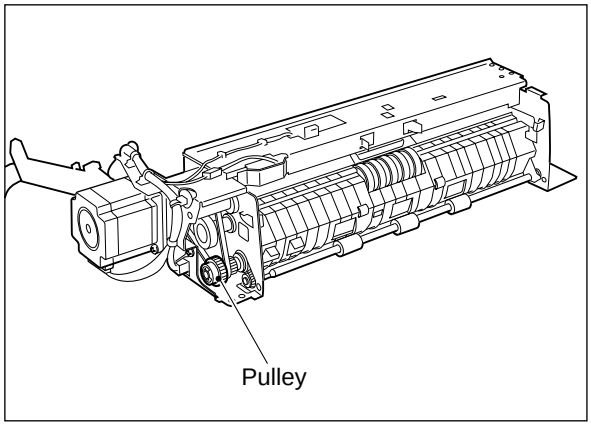
Pick-up roller

(2) Remove the inlet guide.
(3) Remove the front-side E-ring and bush.
(4) Remove the plastic ring fastening the roller, and draw out the roller.



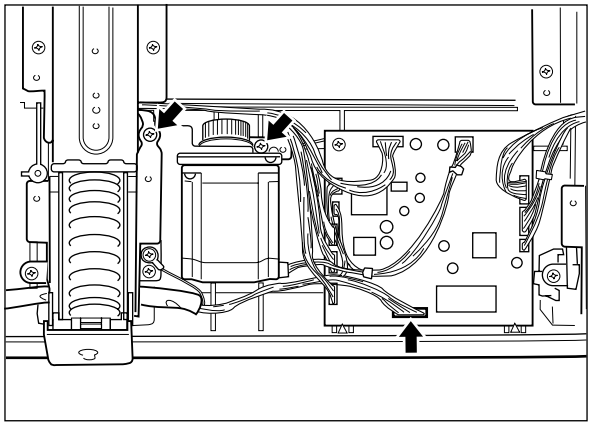
Aligning roller (R)

(2) Remove the inlet guide, and remove the timing sensor and size sensor.
(3) Remove the pulley from the drive section (1 E-ring).
(4) Remove the 2 E-rings from the frame inside, and draw out the roller.



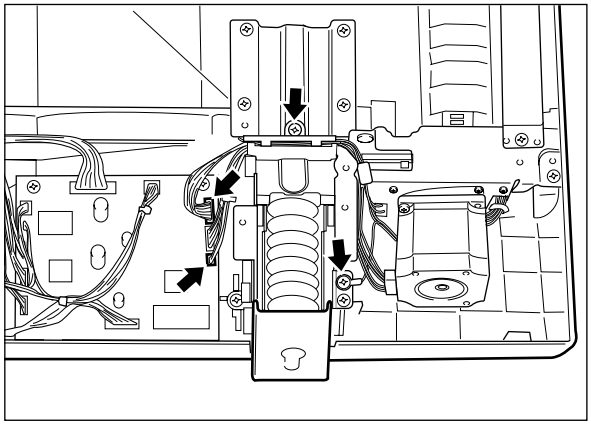
[N] Transport motor

(1) Remove the 2 screws and 1 connector.

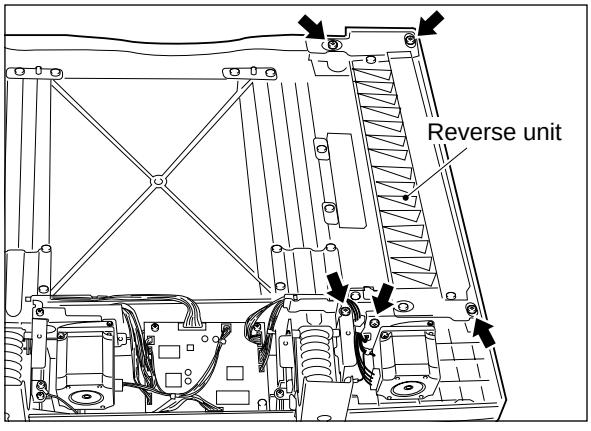


[O] Reversal unit

(1) Remove the ADF unit.
(2) Remove the transport unit and cover.
(3) Disconnect the 2 connectors from PC board.
(4) Remove the earth lead fastened to the hinge section.
(5) Remove the screw from the harness guide.

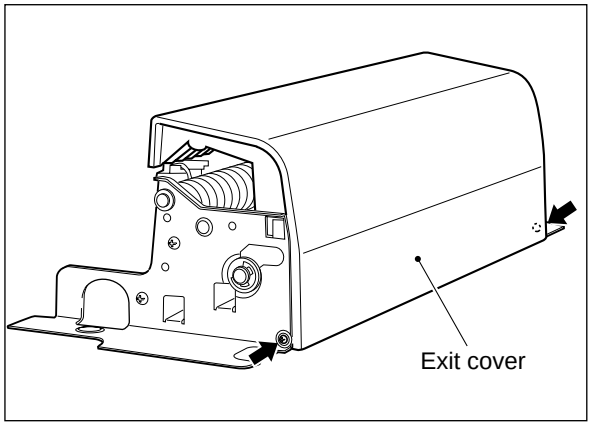


(6) Remove the 5 screws and the reversal unit.



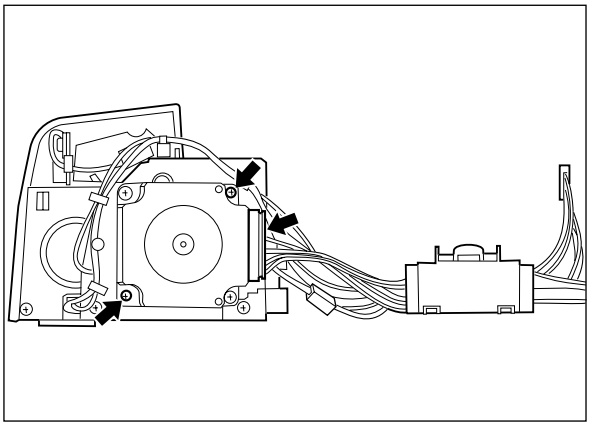
[P] Exit cover

(1) Remove the reversal unit.
(2) Remove the screws from the front and rear sides, and remove the cover.



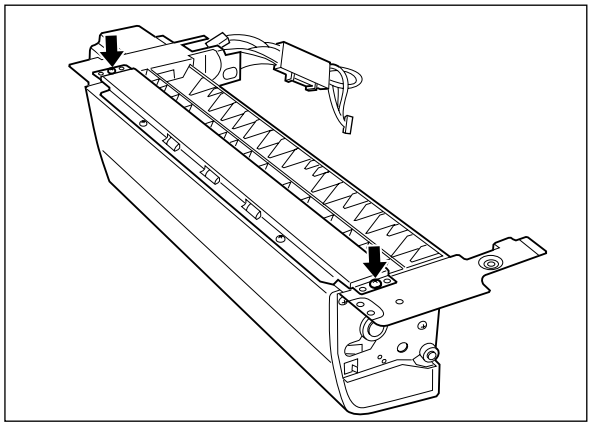
[Q] Reversal motor

Disconnect the connector and remove the 2 screws.

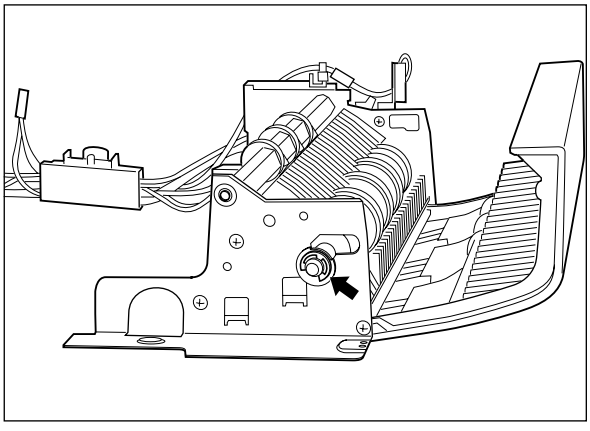


[R] Reversal roller

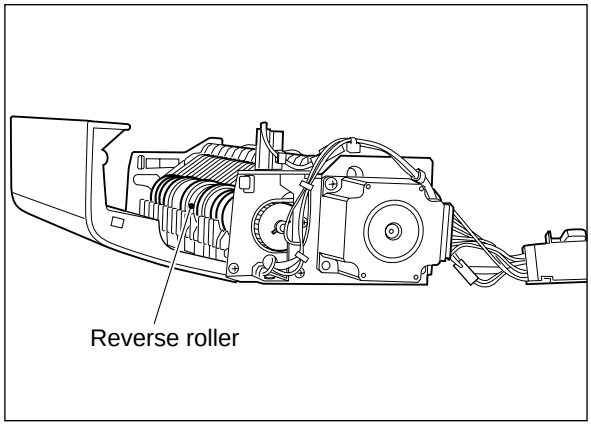
(1) Remove the reversal unit.
(2) Remove the stay (2 screws).



(3) Remove the E-rings from the front side.

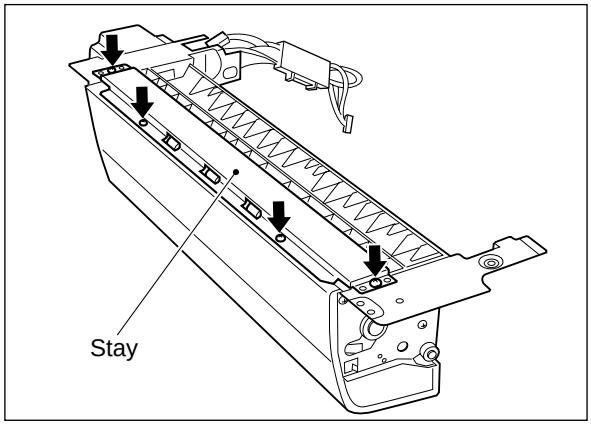


(4) Slide the reversal roller to the rear side, and remove the parallel pin.
(5) Draw out the reversal roller while tilting it on its side from beneath the unit.

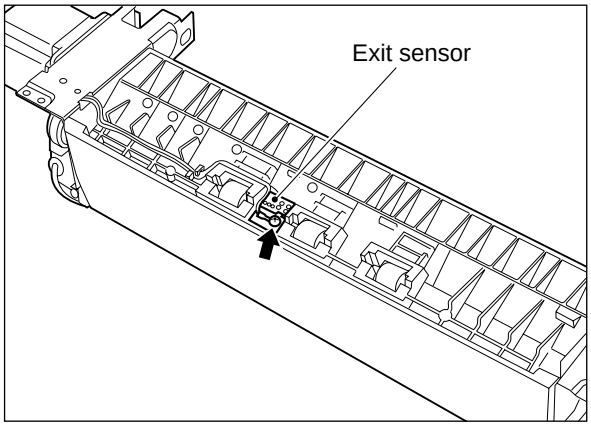


[S] Exit sensor

(1) Remove the stay (4 screws).

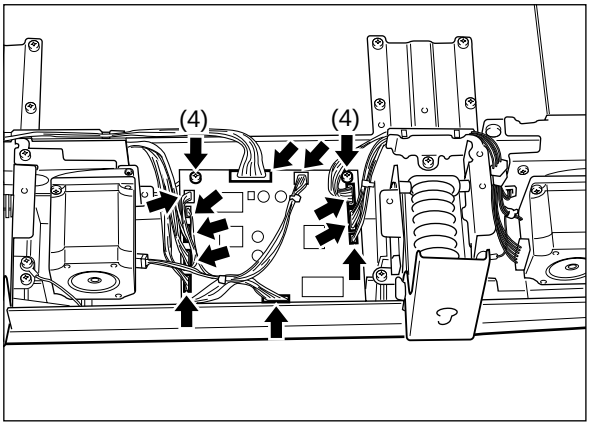


(2) Remove the sensor from the guide (1 screw).



[T] PC board

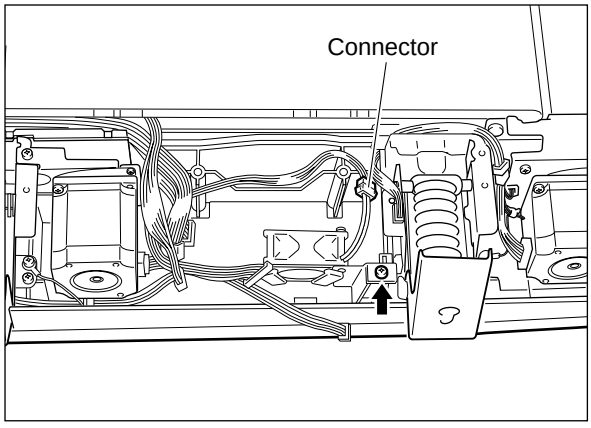
(1) Remove the ADF unit.
(2) Remove the cover.
(3) Disconnect the 11 connectors.
(4) Remove the 2 screws, and slide the PC board from the hooking section on the rear side to remove.



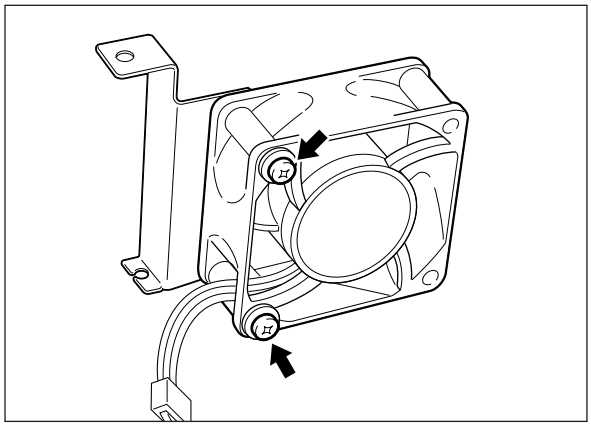
[U] ADF fan motor

(1) Remove the PC board.

(2) Disconnect the connector and remove the screw.



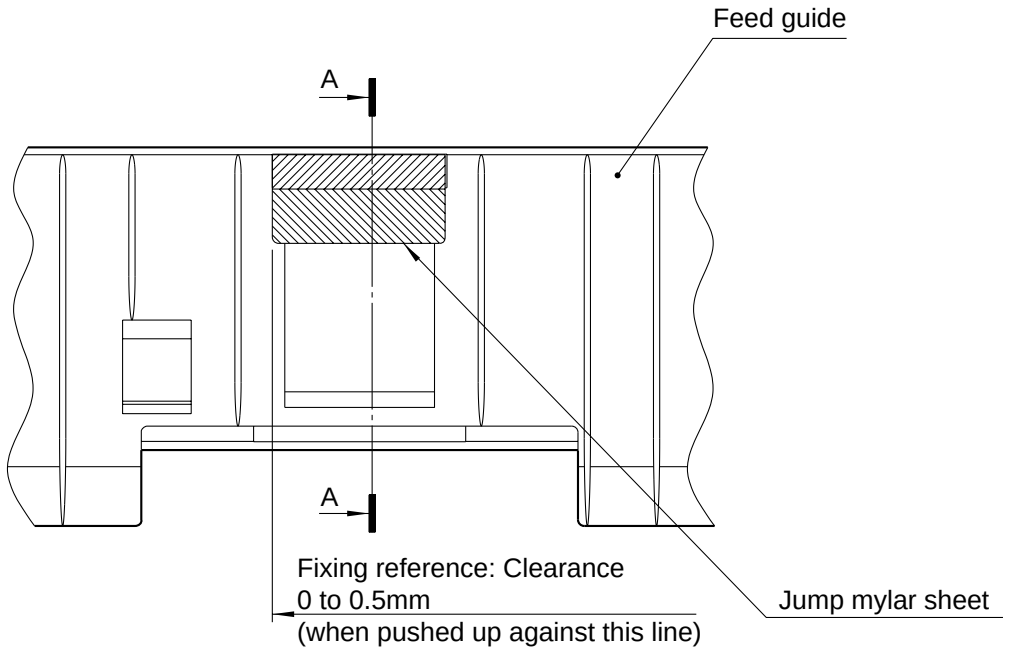
(3) Remove the 2 screws.

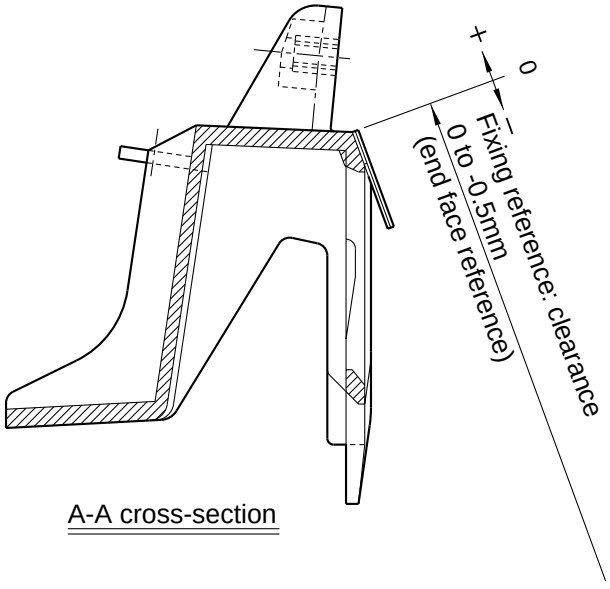


[V] Mylar sheet, etc.

When replacing damaged mylar sheets, fix the new mylar sheet according to the reference positions shown below. Before you fix a new mylar sheet, first clean the fixing position with alcohol. After fixing the mylar sheet make sure that it is not rising up and the ends of the sheet are not peeling up.

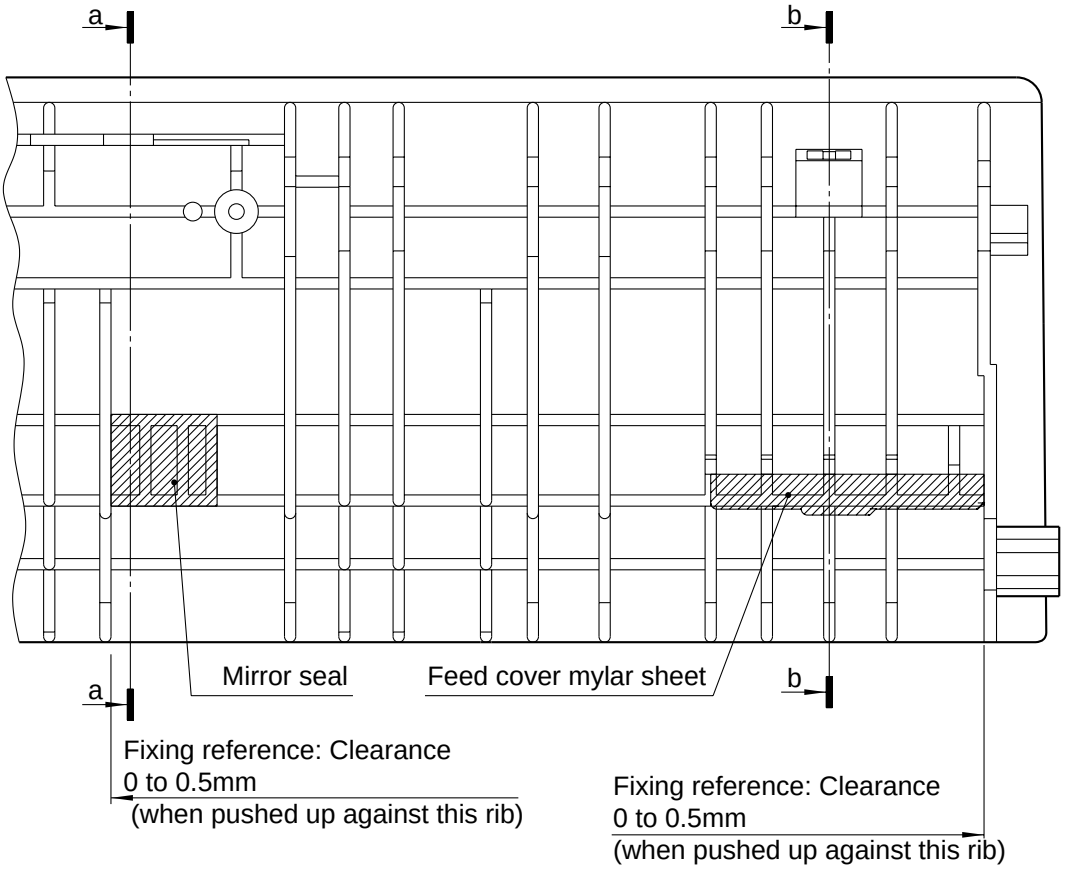
1. Jump mylar sheet (feed guide)

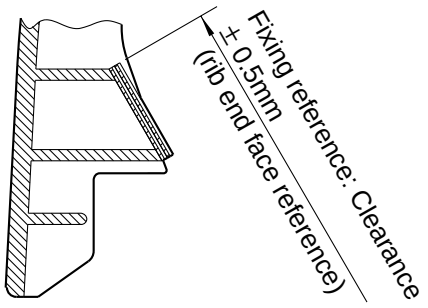




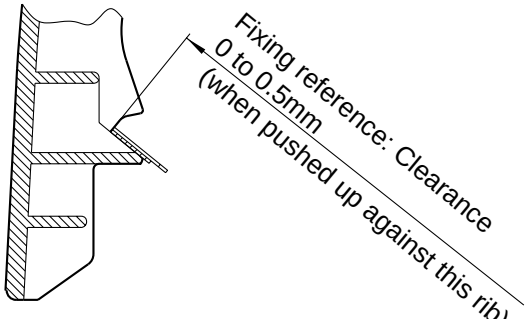
A-A cross-section

2. Mirror seal, feed cover mylar sheet
   * When fixing the mirror seal, do not scratch the mirror surface.



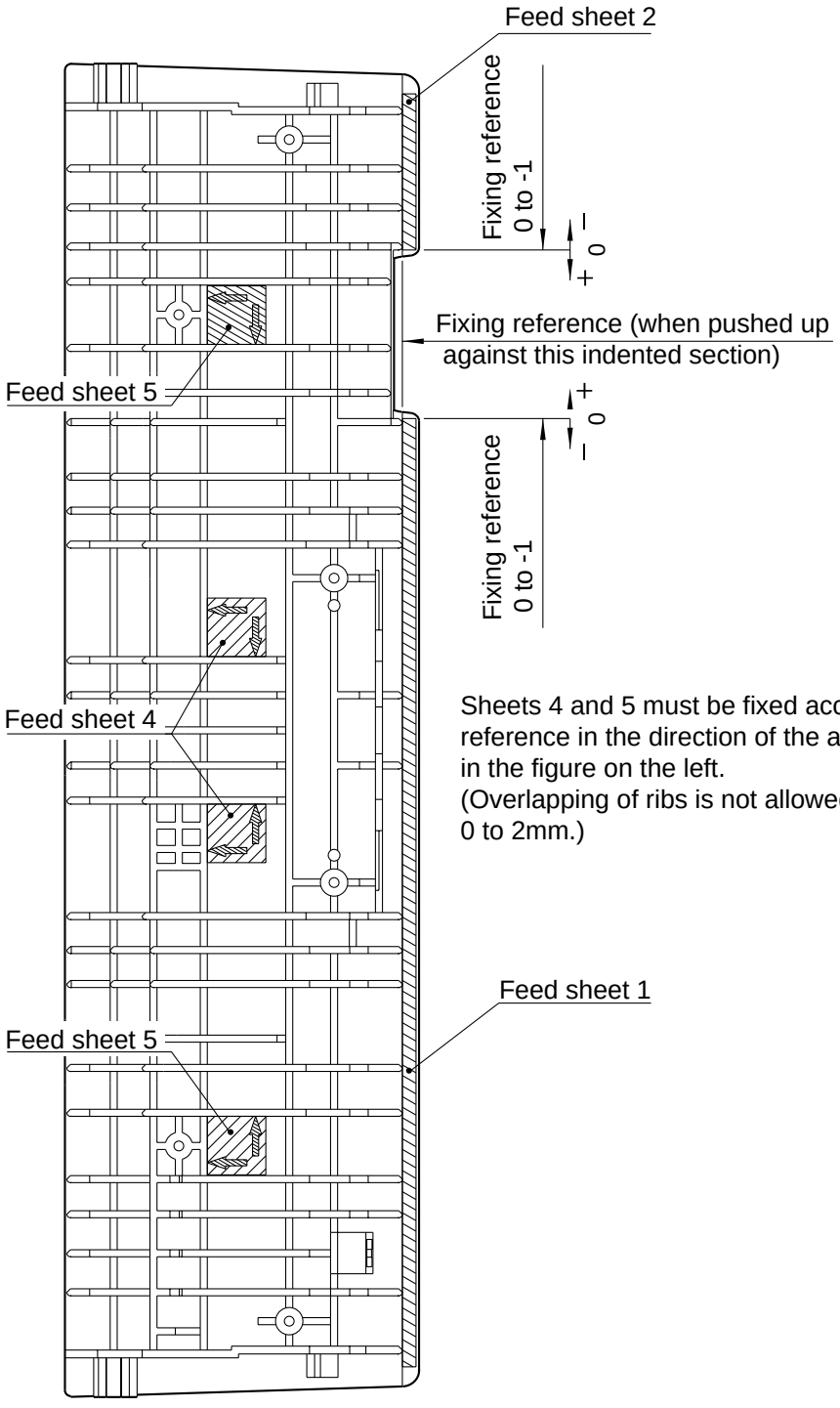


a-a cross-section



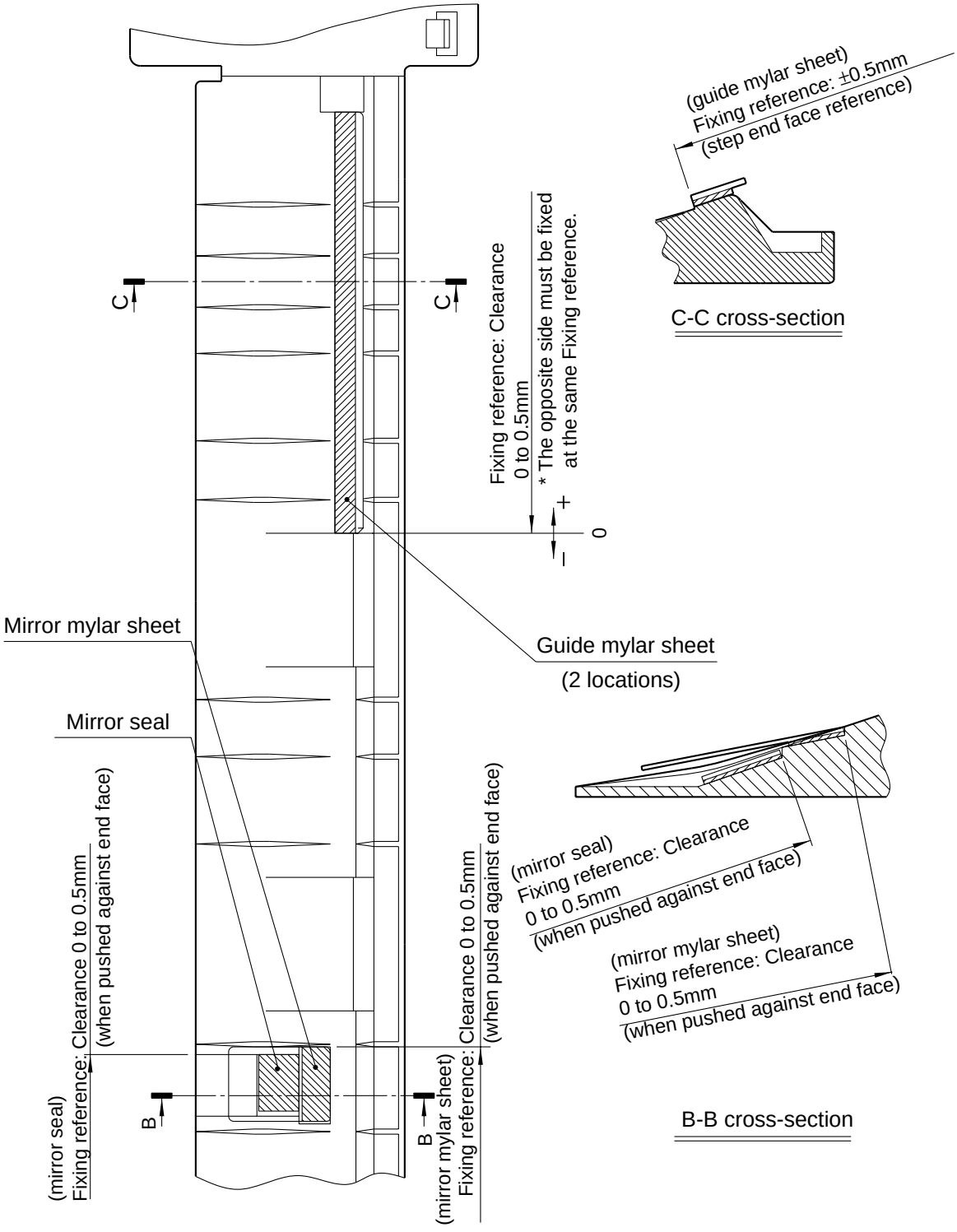
b-b cross-section

3. Feed sheets 1, 2, 4, 5

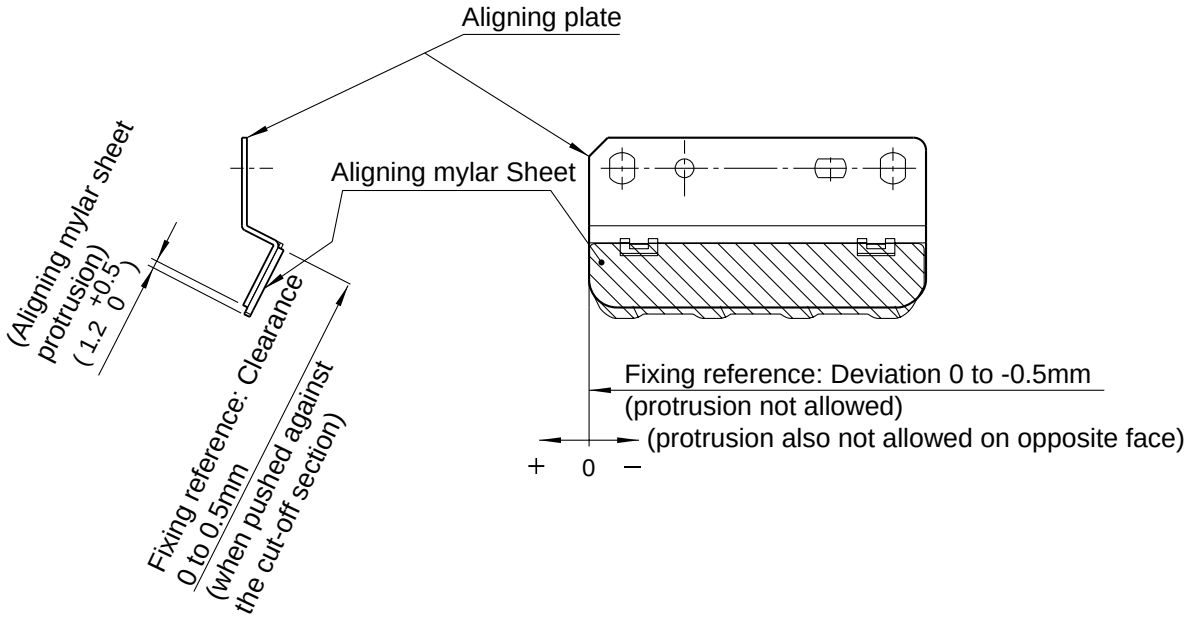


Sheets 4 and 5 must be fixed according to the rib contact reference in the direction of the arrows shown in the figure on the left.
(Overlapping of ribs is not allowed. Clearance must be 0 to 2mm.)

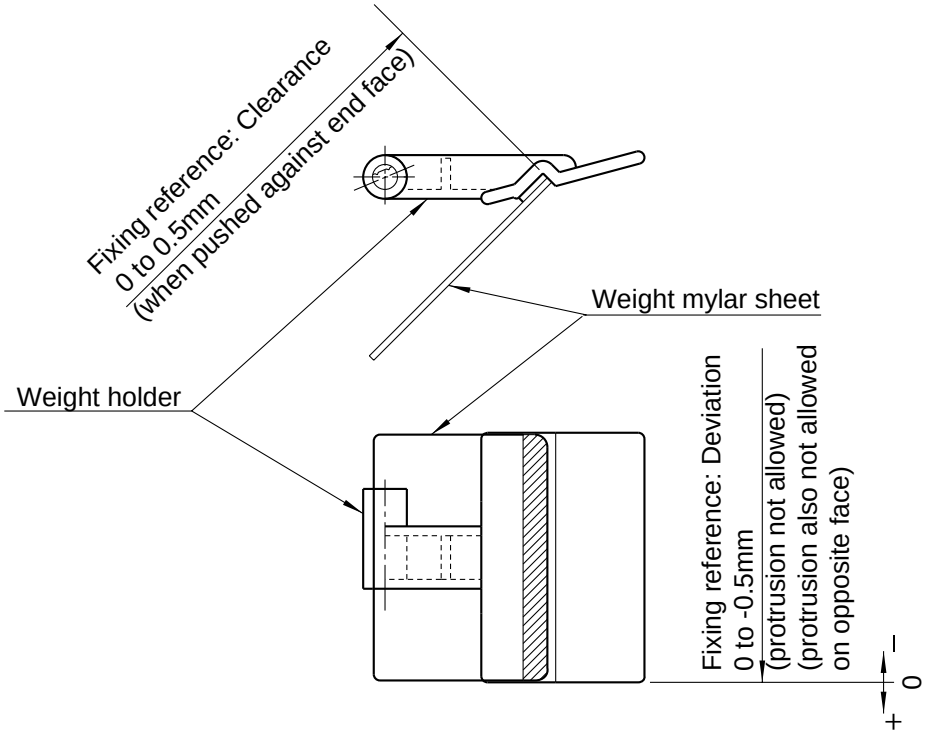
4. Guide mylar sheets, mirror seals, mirror mylar sheets
   * When fixing the mirror seal, do not scratch the mirror surface.



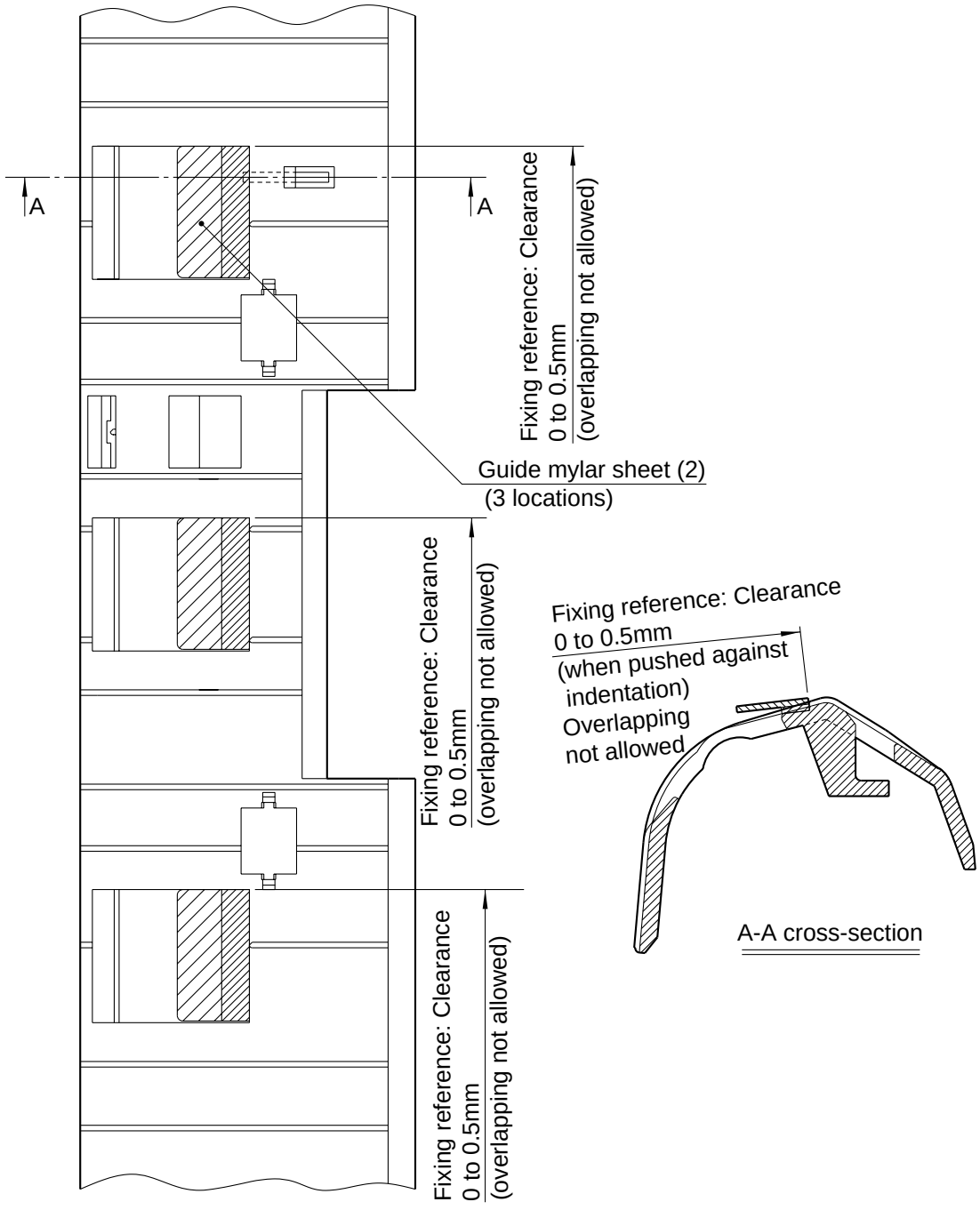
5. Aligning mylar sheet (aligning plate)


Aligning plate
Aligning mylar Sheet
(Aligning mylar sheet protrusion) (1.2 +0.5 0)
Fixing reference: Clearance 0 to 0.5mm (when pushed against the cut-off section)
Fixing reference: Deviation 0 to -0.5mm
(protrusion not allowed)
(protrusion also not allowed on opposite face)
+ 0 −

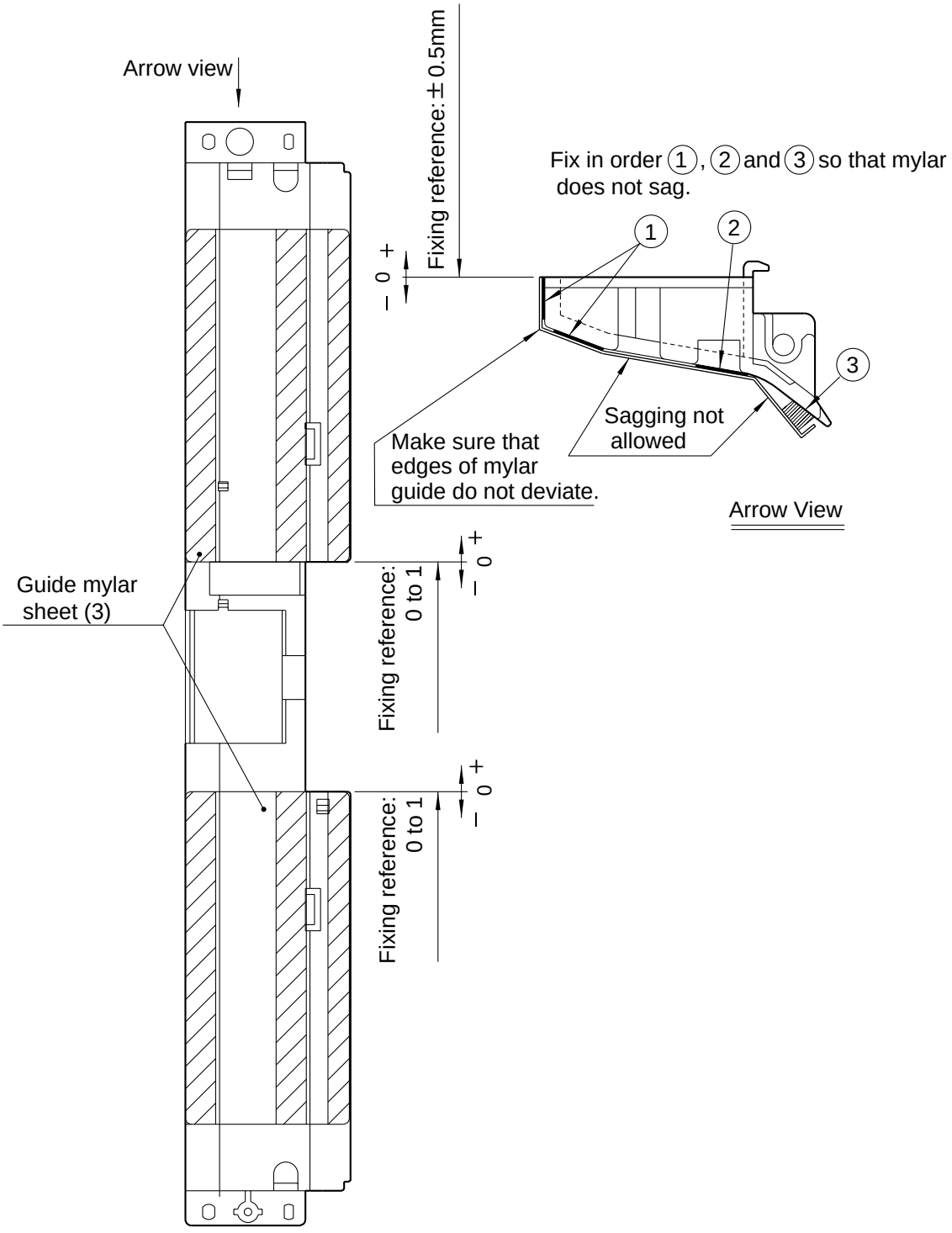
6. Weight mylar Sheet
(weight holder)


Fixing reference: Clearance 0 to 0.5mm (when pushed against end face)
Weight mylar sheet
Weight holder
Fixing reference: Deviation 0 to -0.5mm
(protrusion not allowed)
(protrusion also not allowed on opposite face)
− 0 +

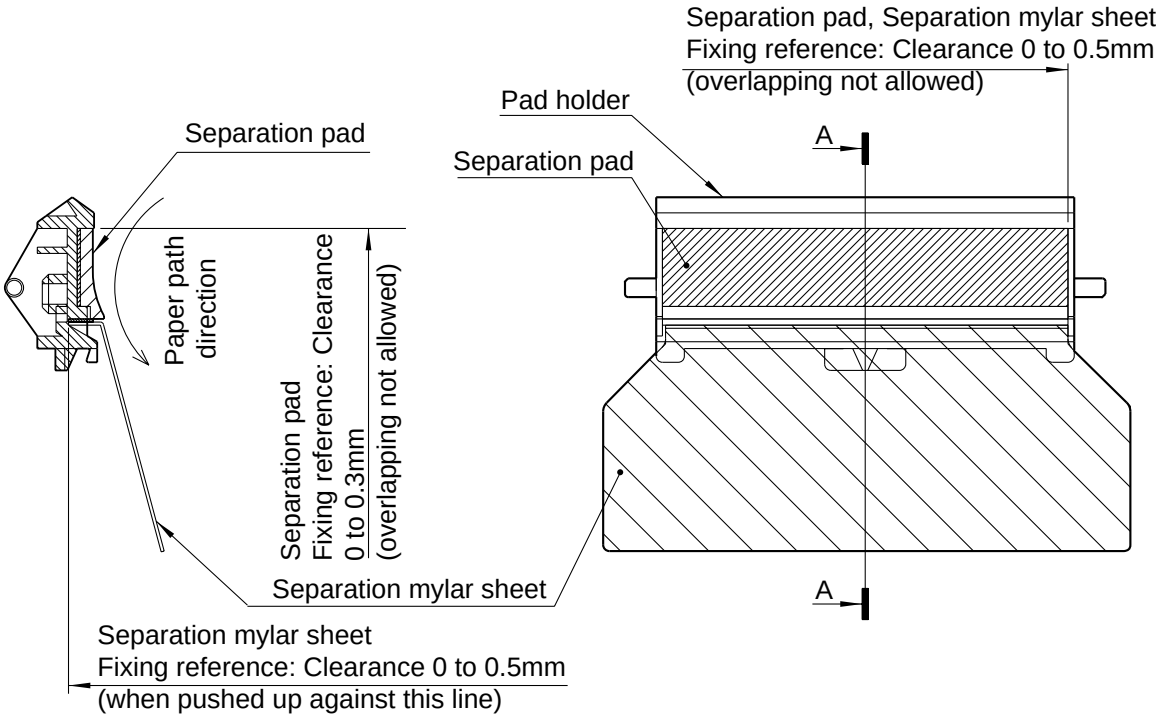
7. Guide mylar sheet (2)



8. Guide mylar sheet (3)


Arrow view
Fixing reference: ± 0.5mm
+ 0 −
Fix in order (1), (2) and (3) so that mylar does not sag.
1
2
3
Sagging not allowed
Make sure that edges of mylar guide do not deviate.
Arrow View
Guide mylar sheet (3)
Fixing reference: 0 to 1
+ 0 −
Fixing reference: 0 to 1
+ 0 −

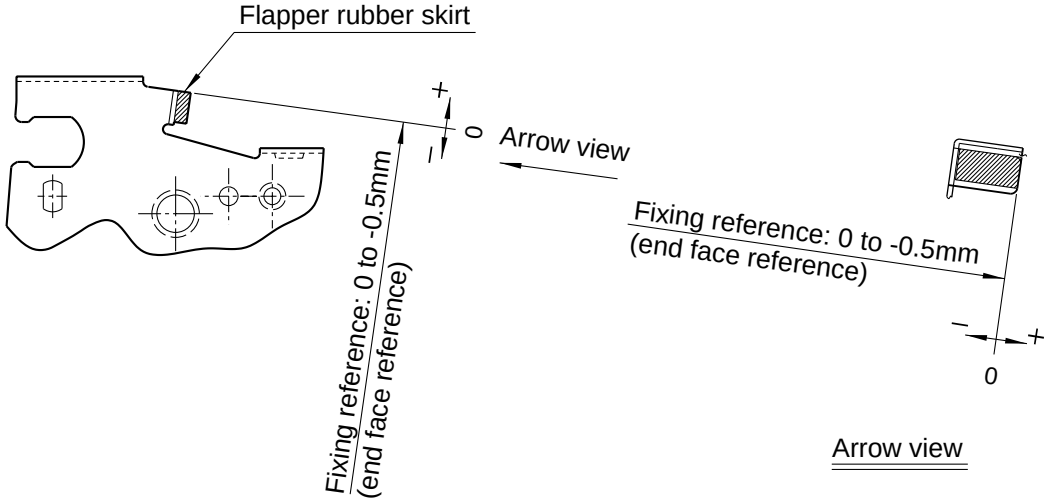
9. Separation pad, separation mylar sheet



A-A cross-section

* The paper path direction in the figure must be free from steps that may catch the paper.

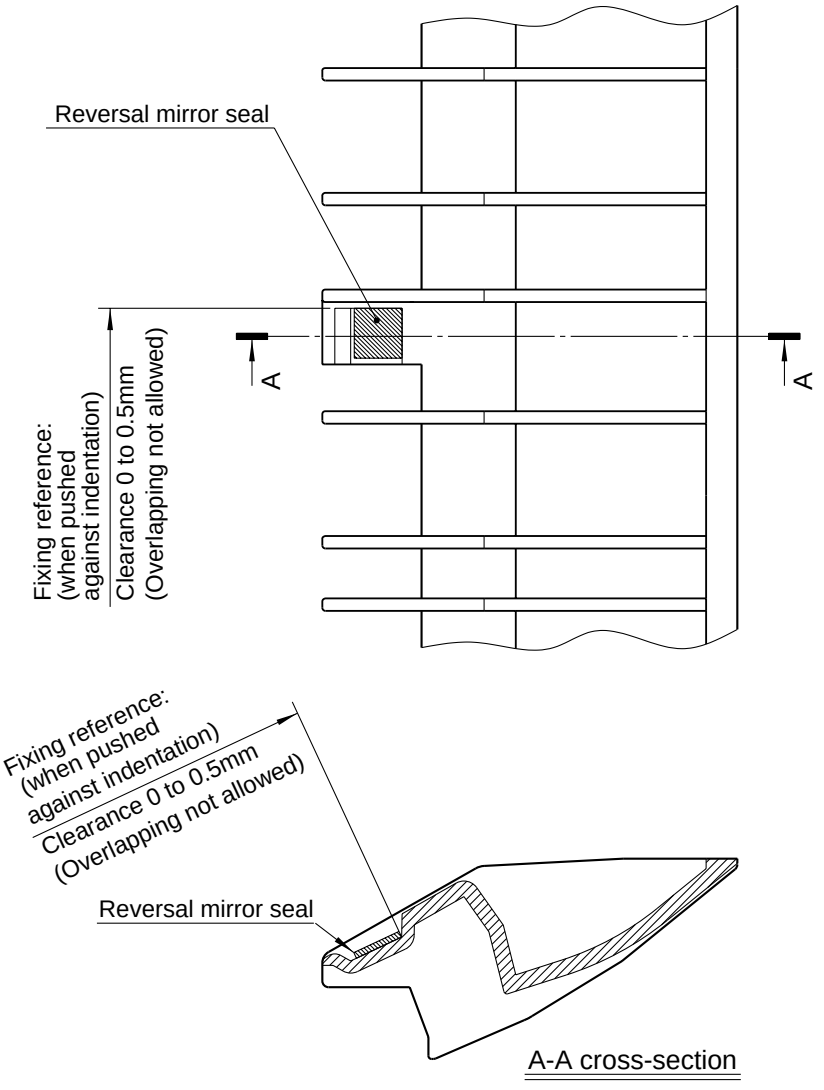
10. Flapper rubber skirt



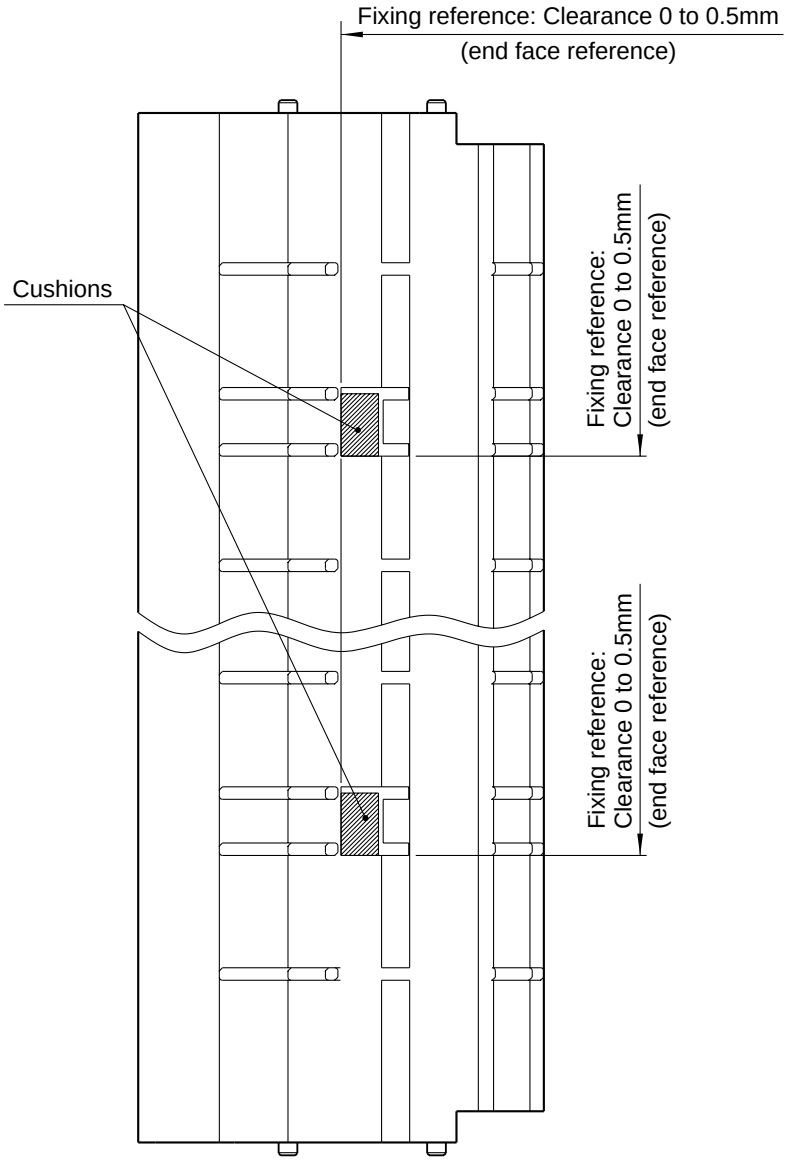
Arrow view

11. Reversal mirror seal

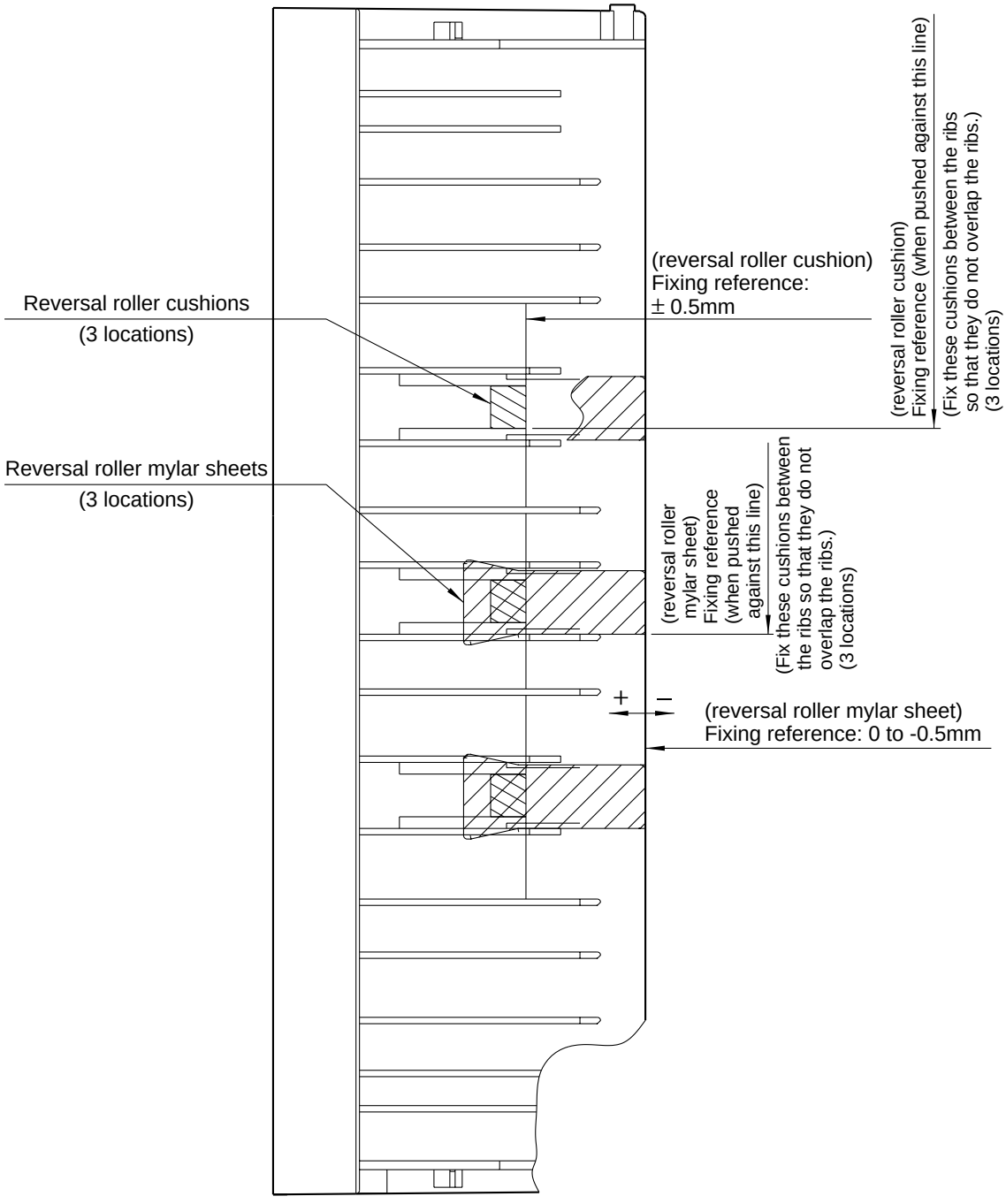
* When fixing the reversal mirror seal, do not scratch the mirror surface.



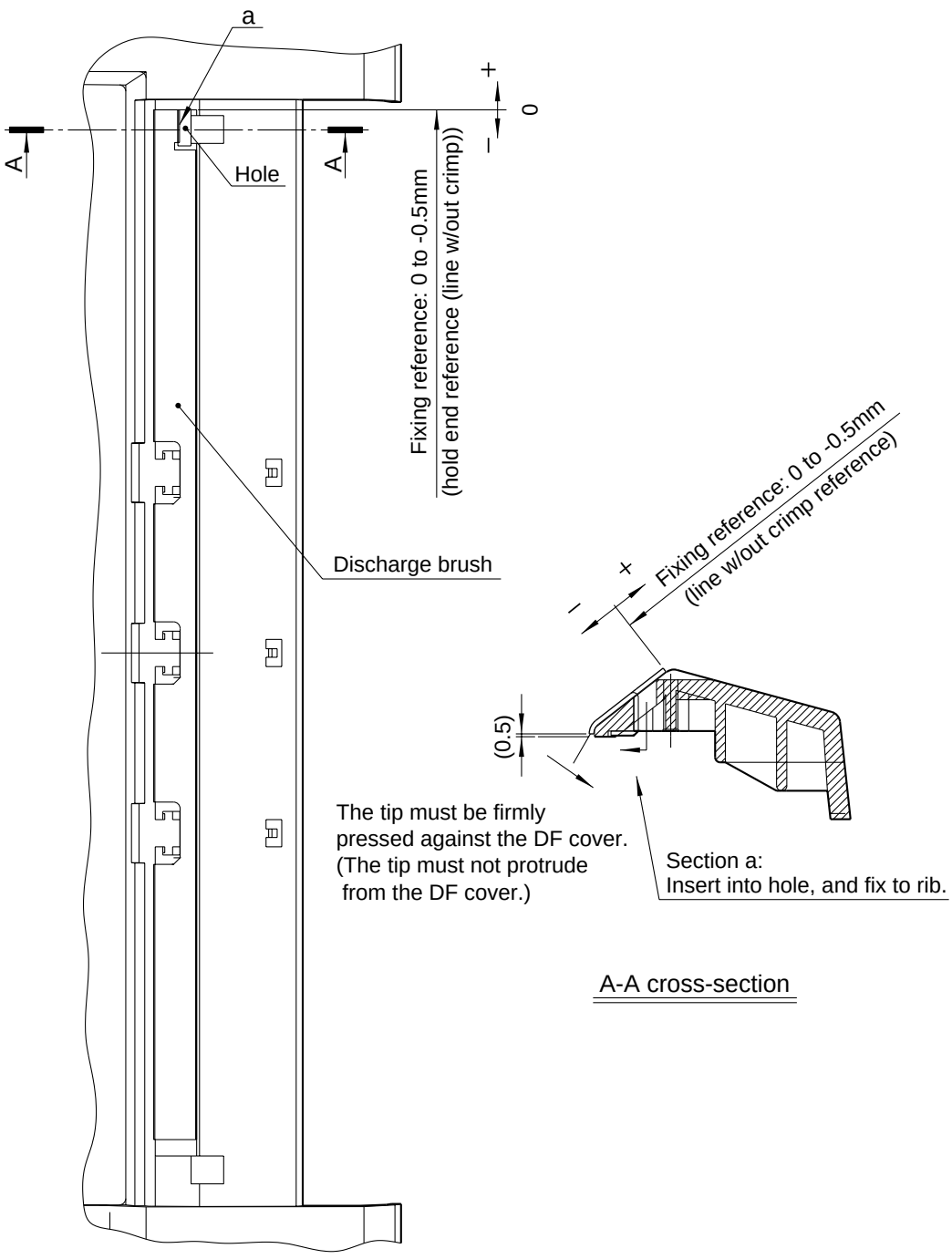
12. Cushions


Fixing reference: Clearance 0 to 0.5mm
(end face reference)
Cushions
Fixing reference:
Clearance 0 to 0.5mm
(end face reference)
Fixing reference:
Clearance 0 to 0.5mm
(end face reference)

13. Reversion roller cushions, reversal roller mylar sheets



14. Discharge brush

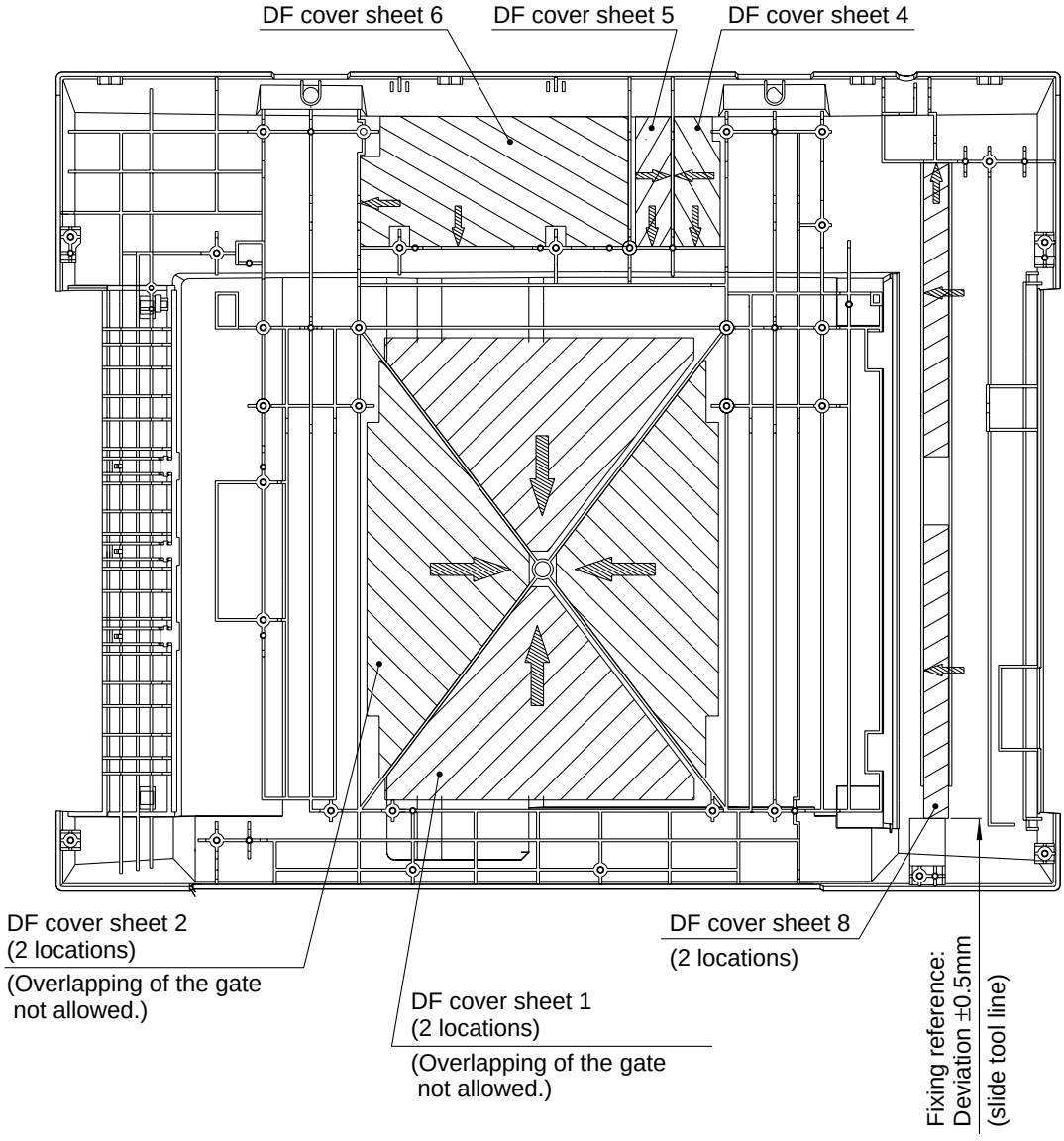


15. DF cover sheets 1, 2, 4, 5, 6 and 8

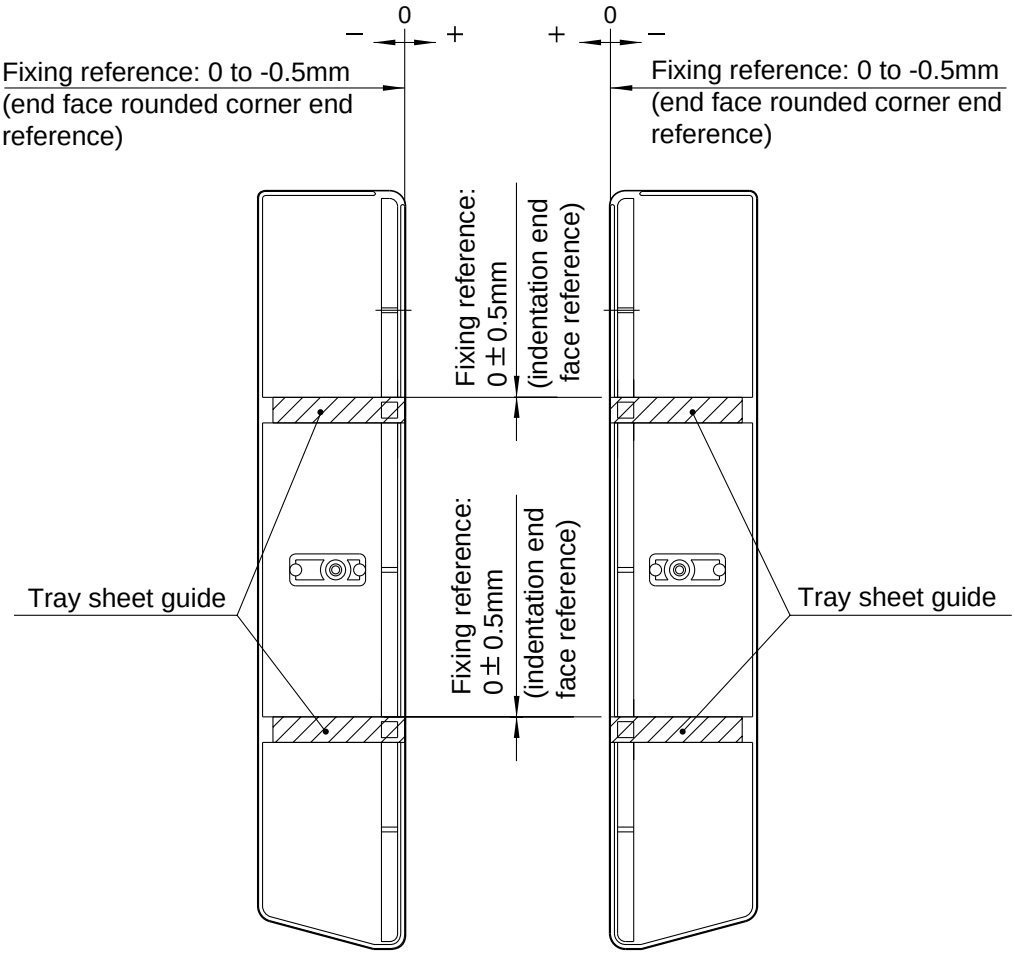
Each of the DF cover sheets must be fixed according to the rib contact reference in the direction of the arrows shown in the figure below.

(Overlapping of ribs is not allowed. Clearance must be 0 to 2mm.)

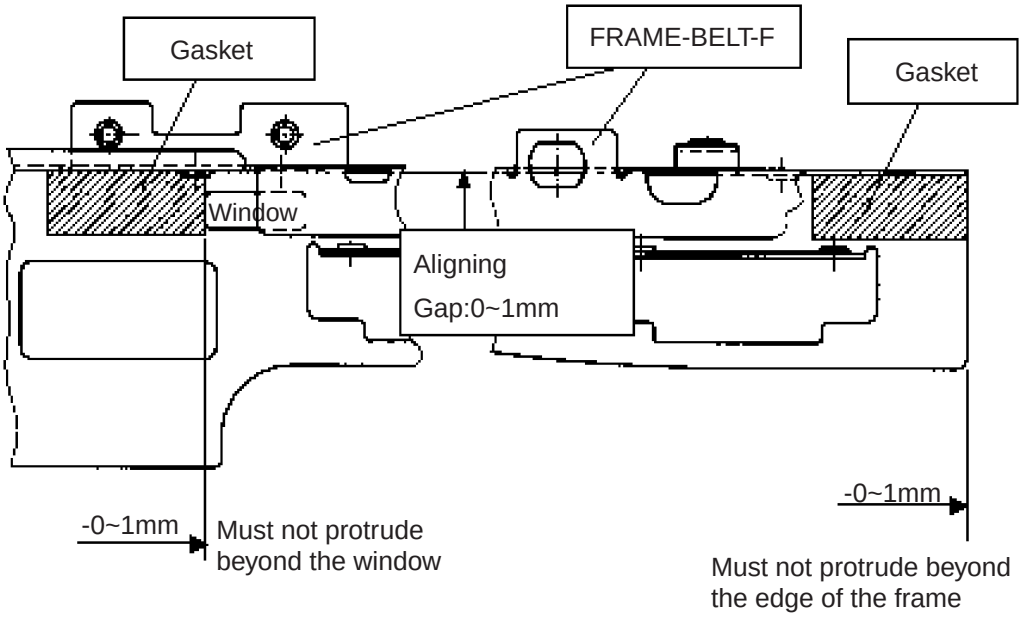
Firmly fix the DF cover sheets so that they do not rise up along the curve of the DF cover.



16. Tray sheet guides


0
0
Fixing reference: 0 to -0.5mm
(end face rounded corner end reference)
Fixing reference: 0 to -0.5mm
(end face rounded corner end reference)
Fixing reference: 0 ± 0.5mm
(indentation end face reference)
Fixing reference: 0 ± 0.5mm
(indentation end face reference)
Tray sheet guide
Tray sheet guide

17. Gasket (transfer belt unit)



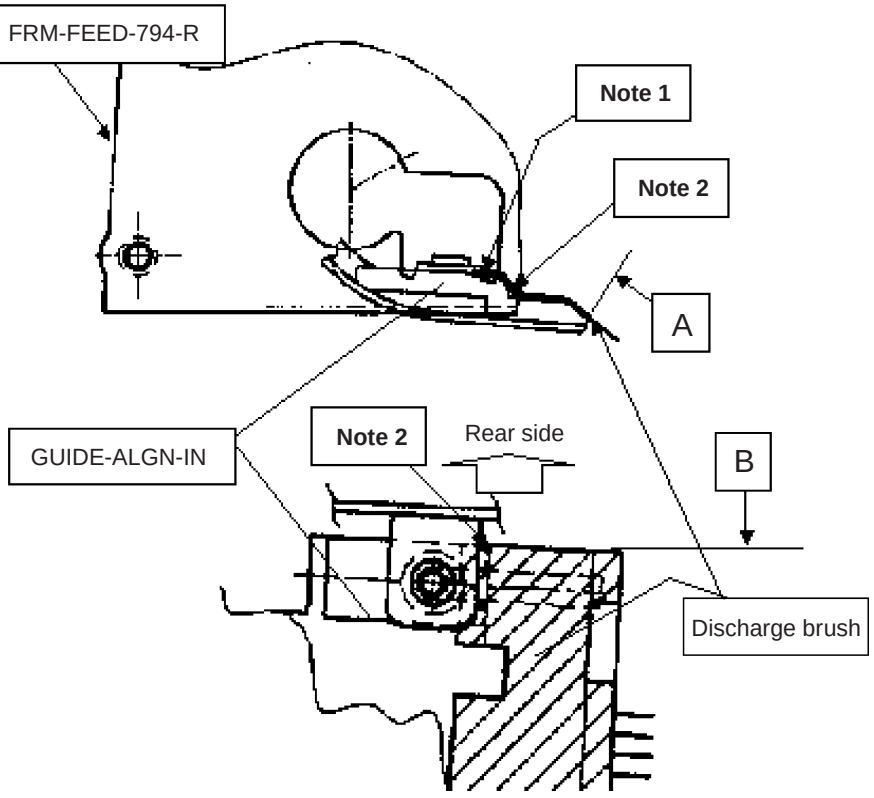
18. Discharge (Paper feeder area)

[Attaching Position]

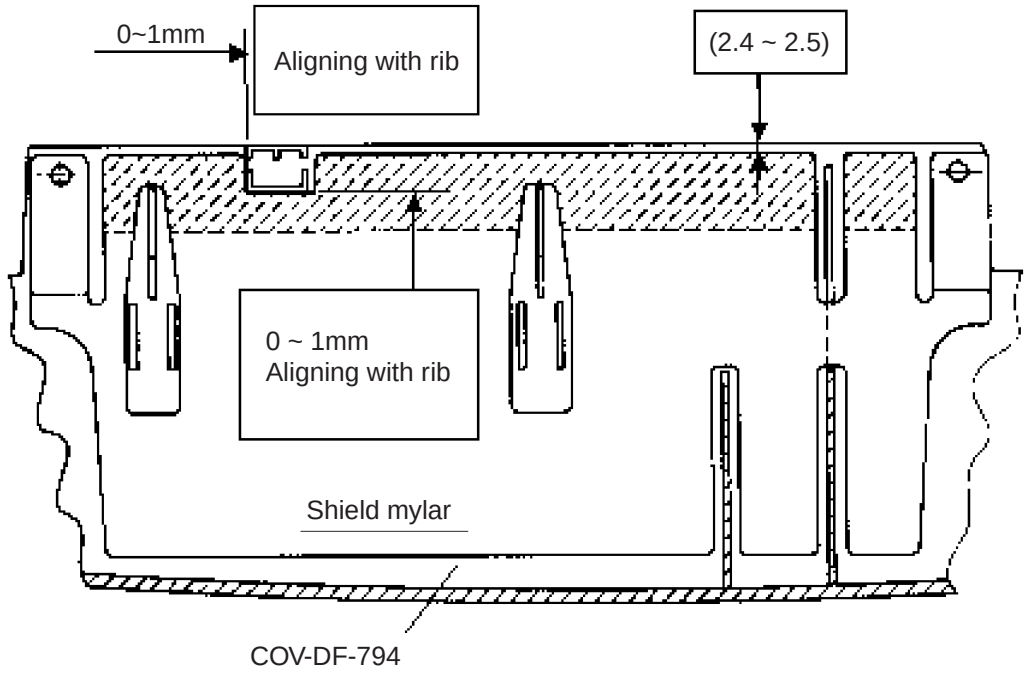
Attach it to the two edge positions in GUIDE-ALGN-IN (A and B below).

Note1. Insert the discharge brush between the FRM-FEED-794 and the GUIDE-ALGN-IN (rear side only).

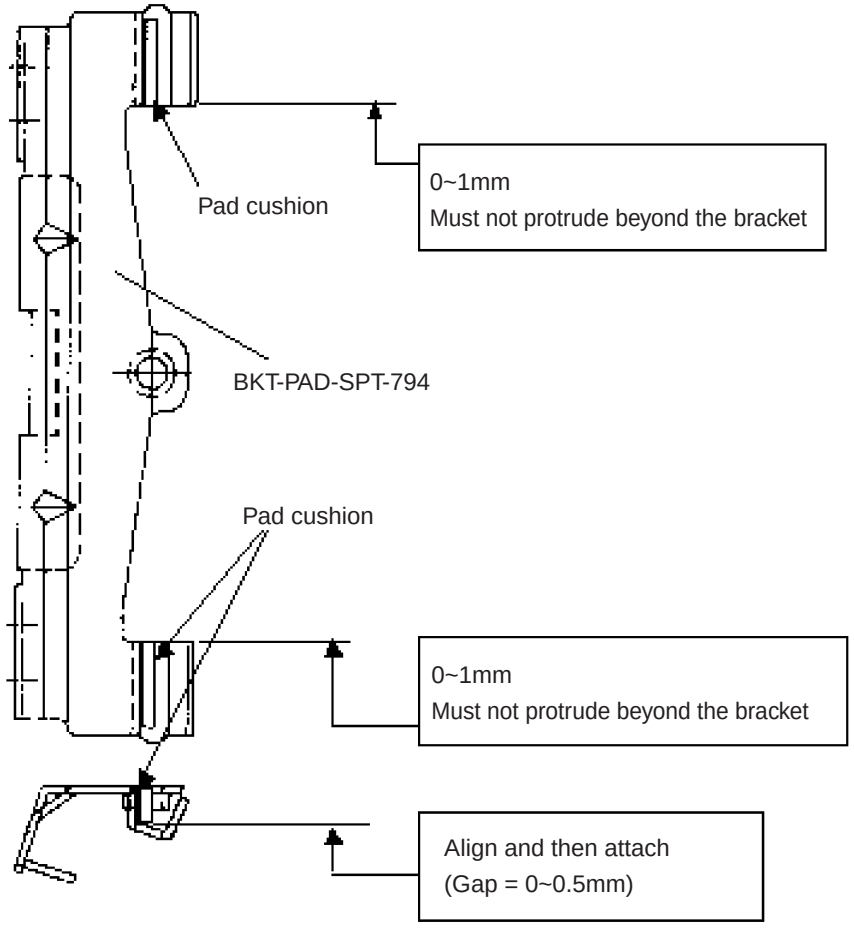
Note2. To perform correctly **Note 1**, be sure to make the discharge brush rise up from the GUIDE-ALGN-IN.



19. Shield mylar (DF cover)

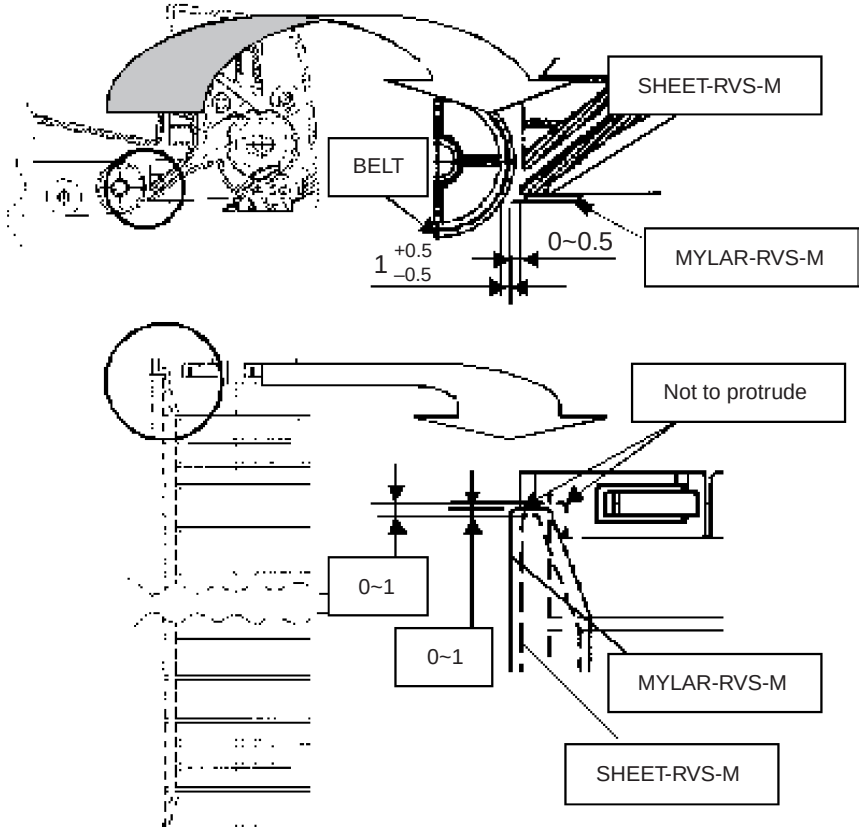


20. Pad cushion

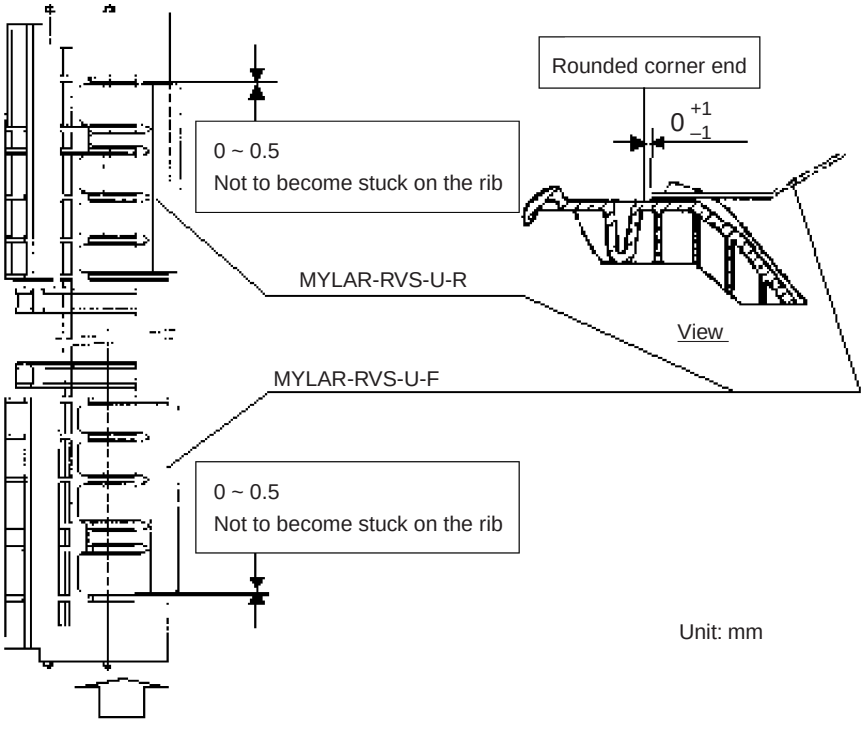


21. Reverse section entrance mylar

Unit: mm

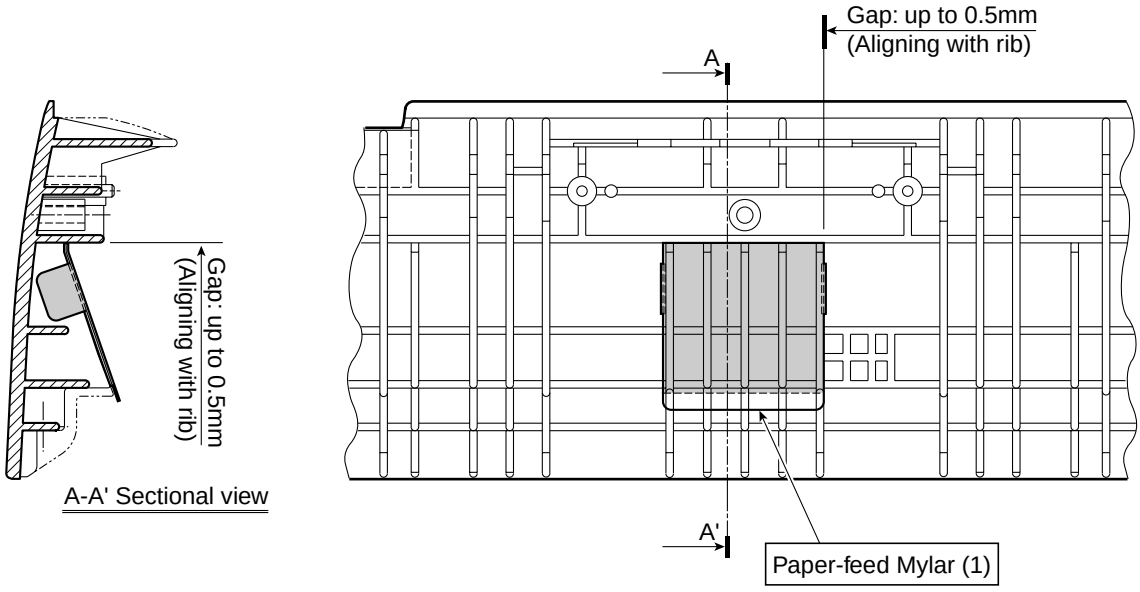


22. Reverse section side mylar

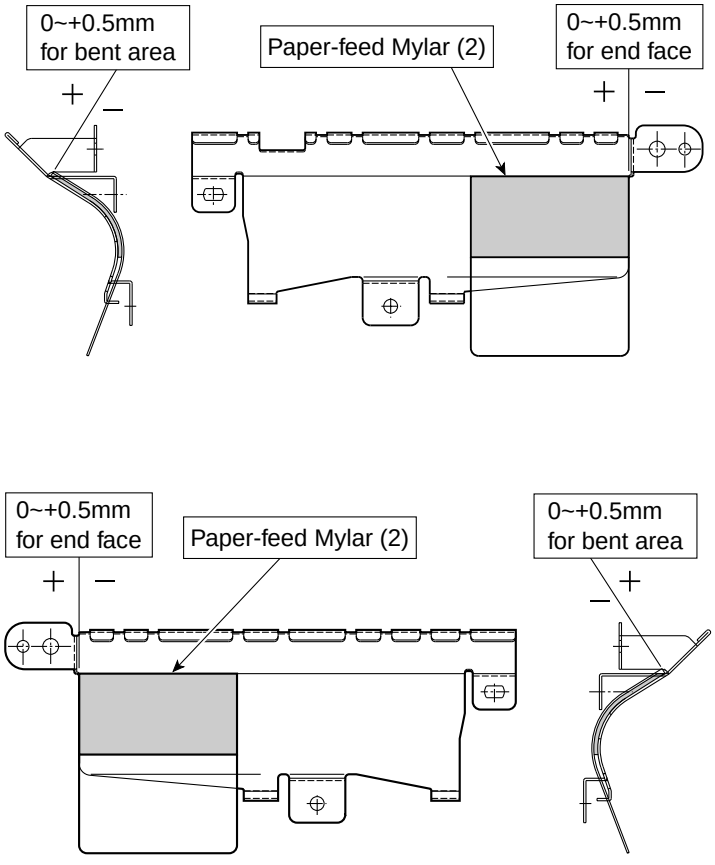


Unit: mm

23. Paper-feed mylar (1)

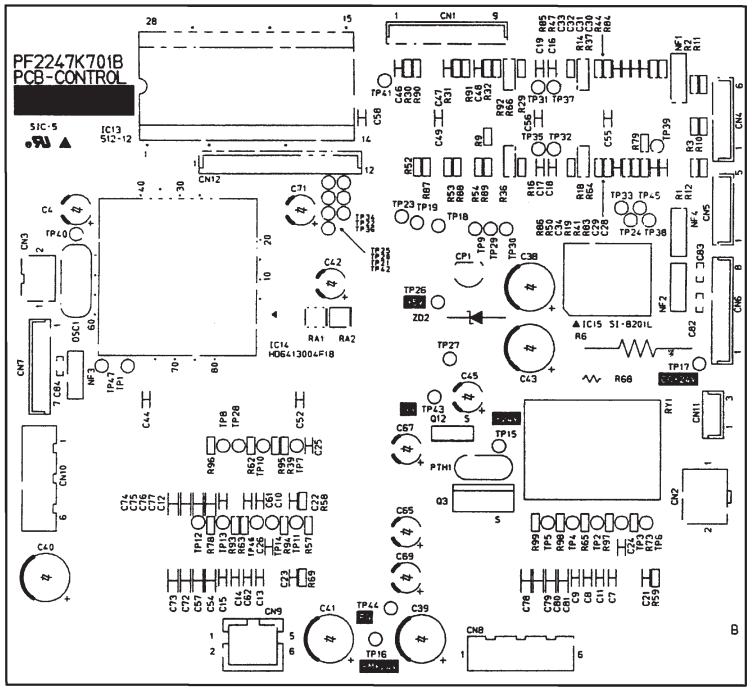


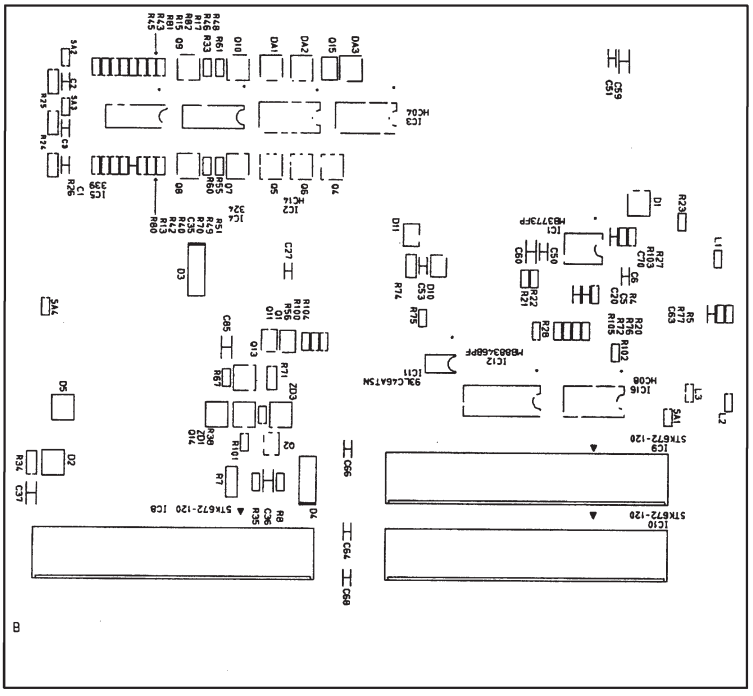
24. Paper-feed mylar (2)



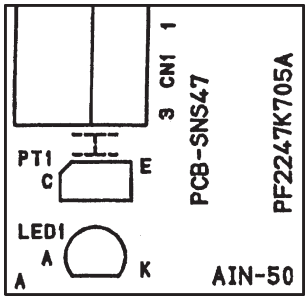
16.13 PC Board

(1) PWA-F-LGC-794





(2) PWA-F-SEN-794



17. POWER SUPPLY UNIT

17.1 Configuration

The power supply unit comprises an AC filter and isolated DC output circuit.

(1) AC filter

This filter removes external electrical noise, and prevents leakage of electrical noise generated within the machine to the outside.

(2) DC output circuit

DC output is divided into the following two lines:

① Main line : This power supply is used by the entire machine during image formation. 4 voltages (+3.35V, +5.1V, +12V, +24V) are output when the machine is started up by turning the power switch ON.

② Door switch line: This power supply passes via the door switch and is used by the entire machine during image formation. 3 voltages (+5.1V, +24V, +36V) are output when the machine is started up by turning the power switch ON and operation of the door switches (2 locations).

17.2 Operation of DC Output Circuit

(1) Start

When the main switch on the main unit is turned ON, the power on all lines starts up if the door is closed.

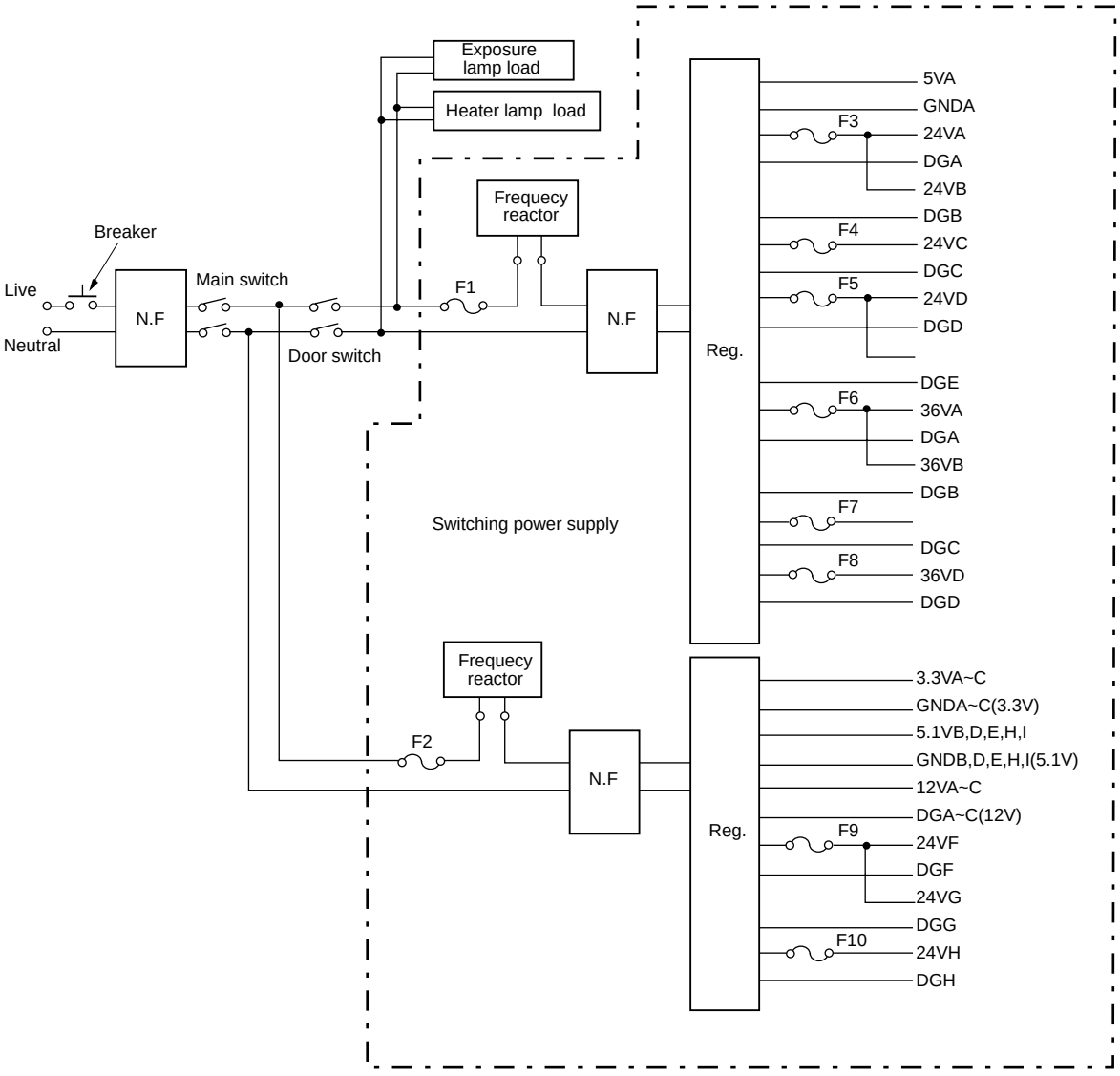
(2) Stop

When the main switch on the main unit is turned OFF, the power OFF signal (PWR-DN) signal is output after the momentary power failure guarantee time (20 ms or more) passes. The power voltage is dropped after the rated voltage is held for the minimum hold time (10 ms or more) after the power OFF signal is output.

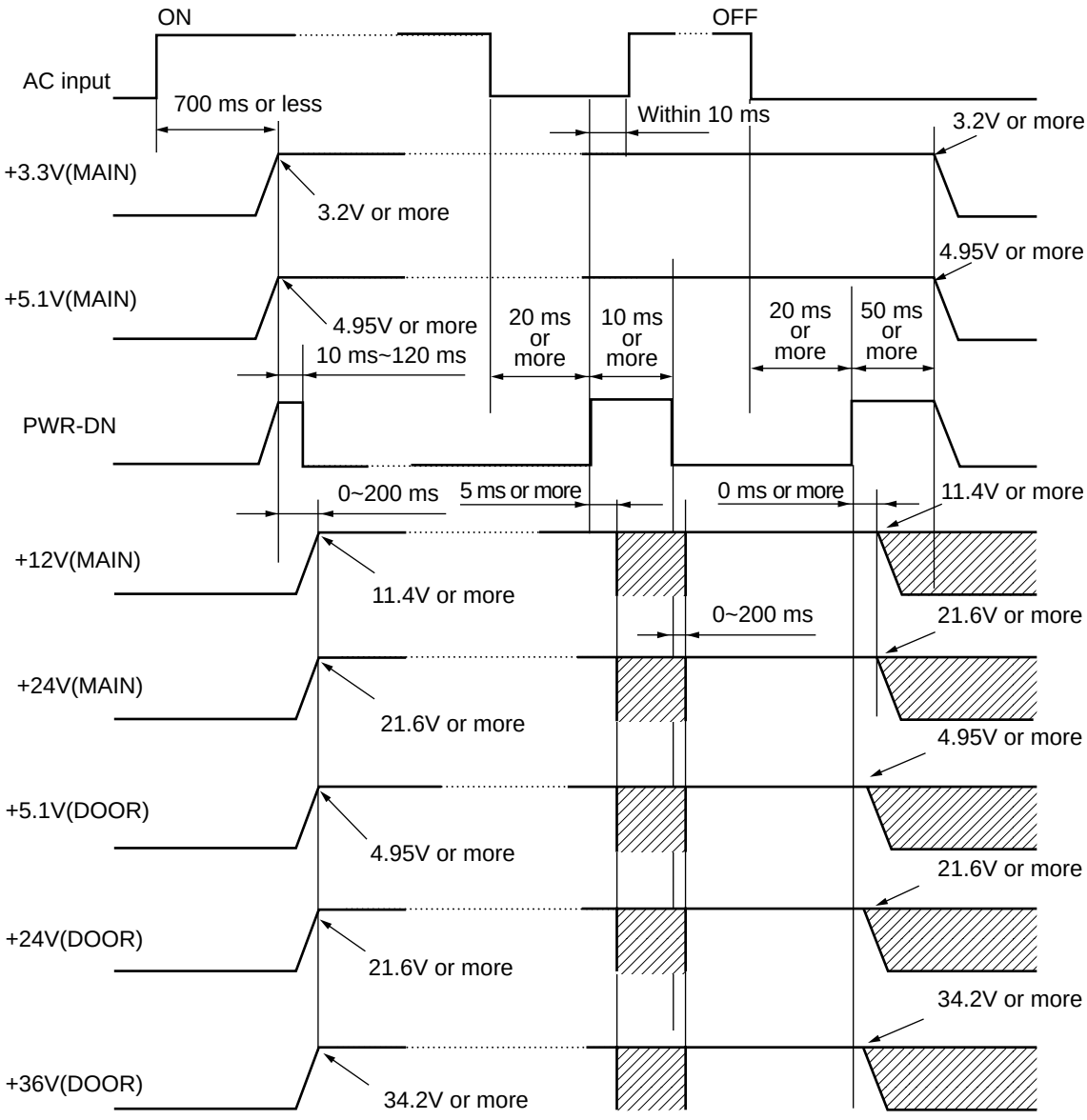
(3) Output protection

Each of the output lines has a built-in overcurrent protection circuit (fuse, internal protection circuit) and overvoltage protection. This prevents trouble such as damage to the secondary circuit or erroneous operation caused by overcurrent (e.g. shorting of the load) or overvoltage (e.g. shorting between different voltages) from occurring.

When the protection circuit has operated, remove the cause of circuit operation (e.g. short), and reset the circuit by turning the power OFF then ON again.

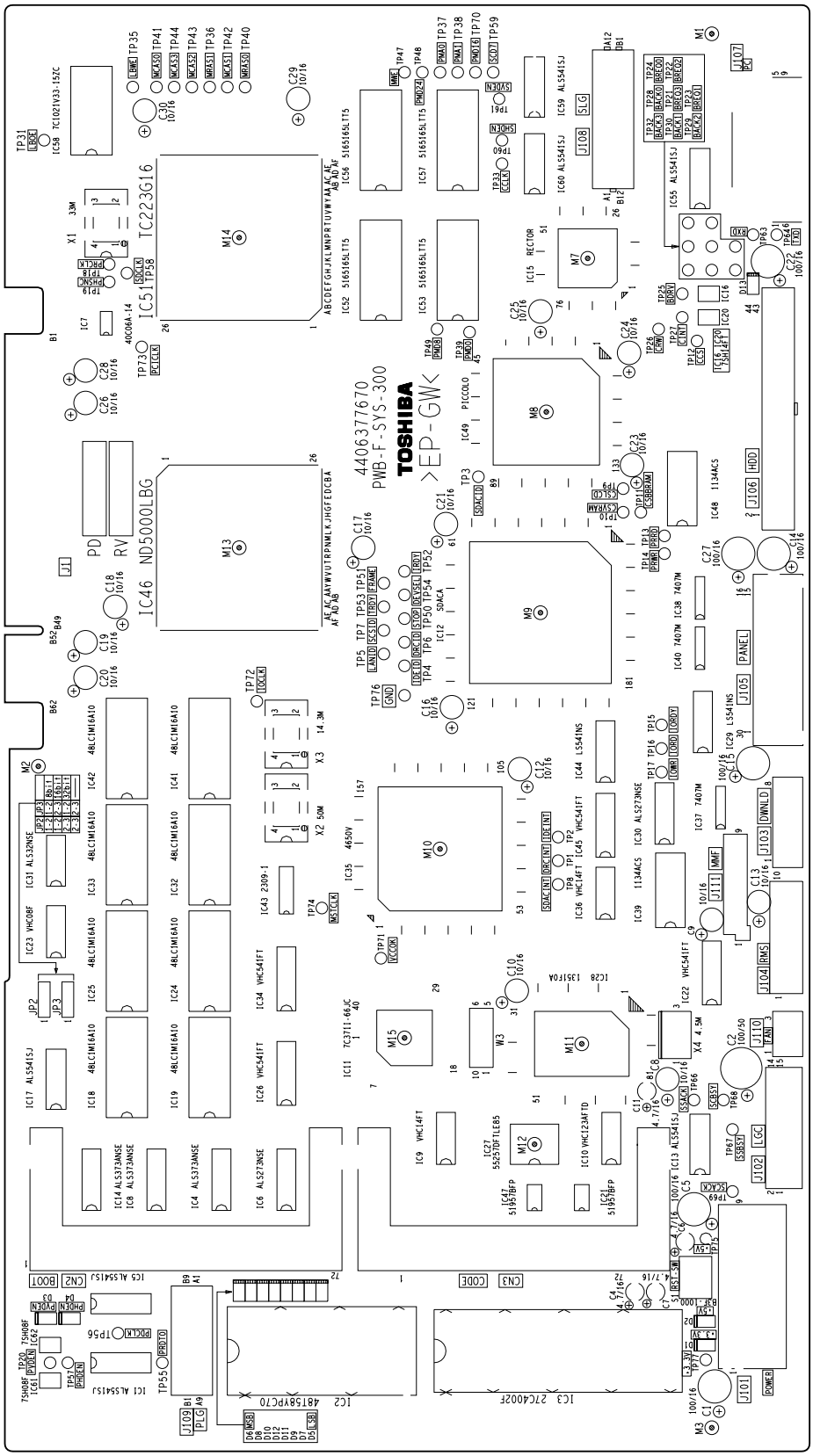

Exposure lamp load
Heater lamp load
Frequecy reactor
Breaker
Live
Neutral
N.F
Main switch
F1
N.F
Door switch
Reg.
5VA
GNDA
F3
24VA
DGA
24VB
DGB
F4
24VC
DGC
F5
24VD
DGD
DGE
F6
36VA
DGA
36VB
DGB
F7
DGC
F8
36VD
DGD
Switching power supply
Frequecy reactor
F2
N.F
Reg.
3.3VA~C
GNDA~C(3.3V)
5.1VB,D,E,H,I
GNDB,D,E,H,I(5.1V)
12VA~C
DGA~C(12V)
F9
24VF
DGF
24VG
DGG
F10
24VH
DGH

Power supply sequence

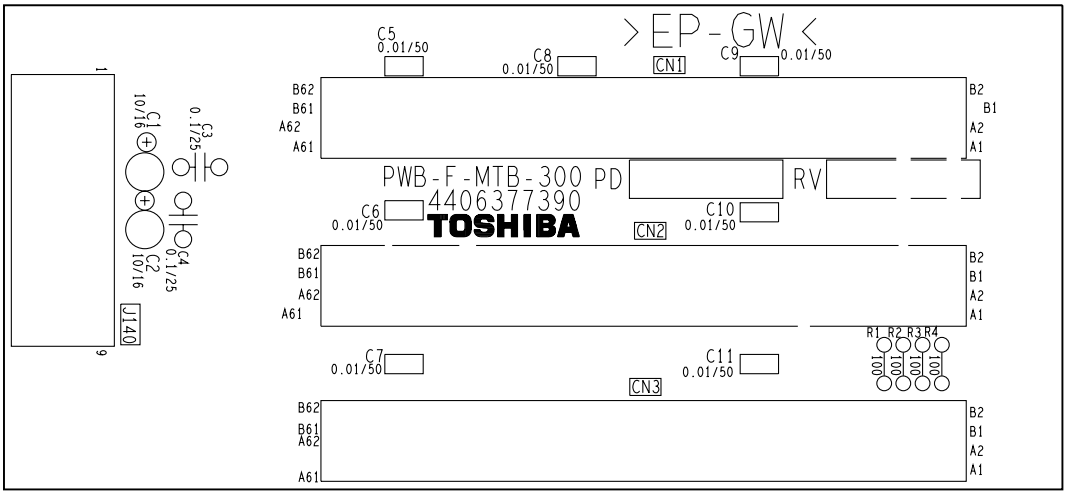


18. PC BOARD

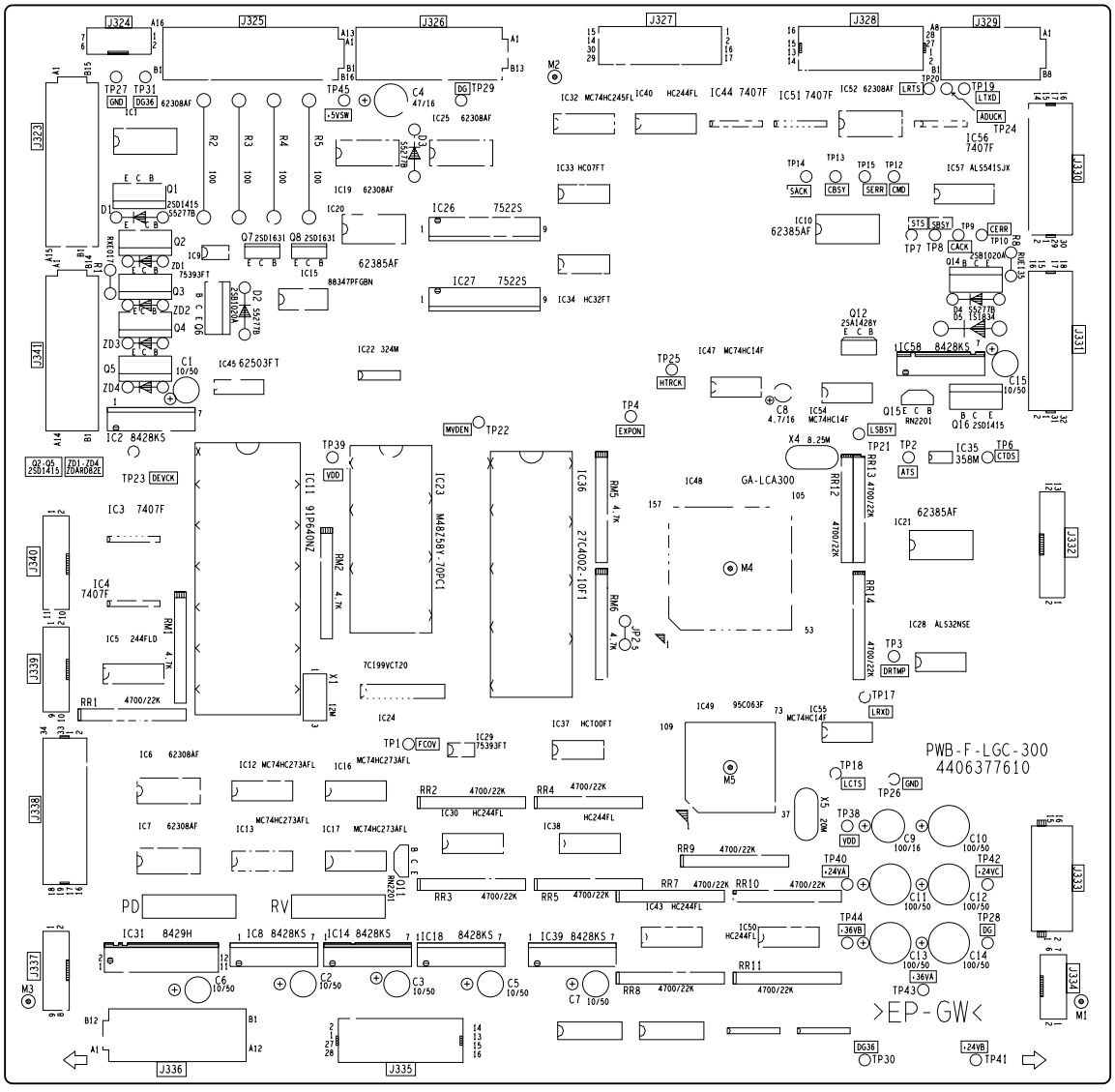
(1) PWA-F-SYS-300



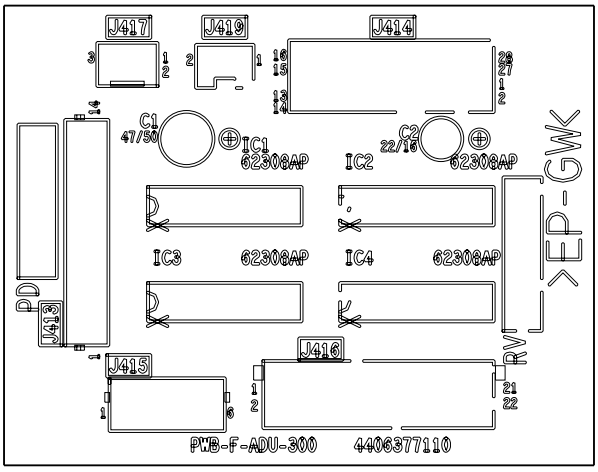
(2) PWA-F-MTB-300



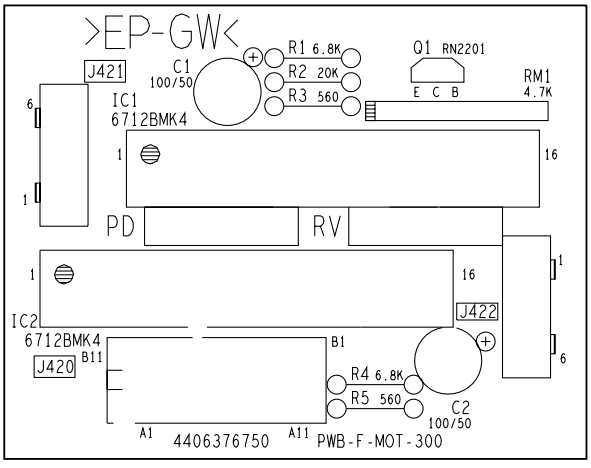
(3) PWA-F-LGC-300



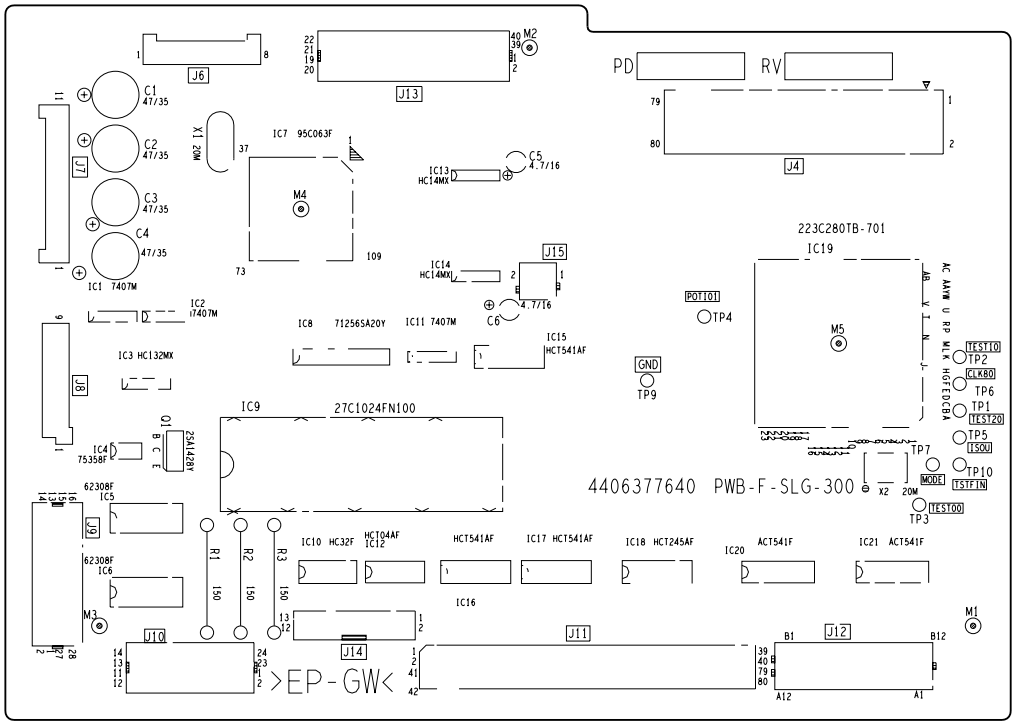
(4) PWA-F-ADU-300



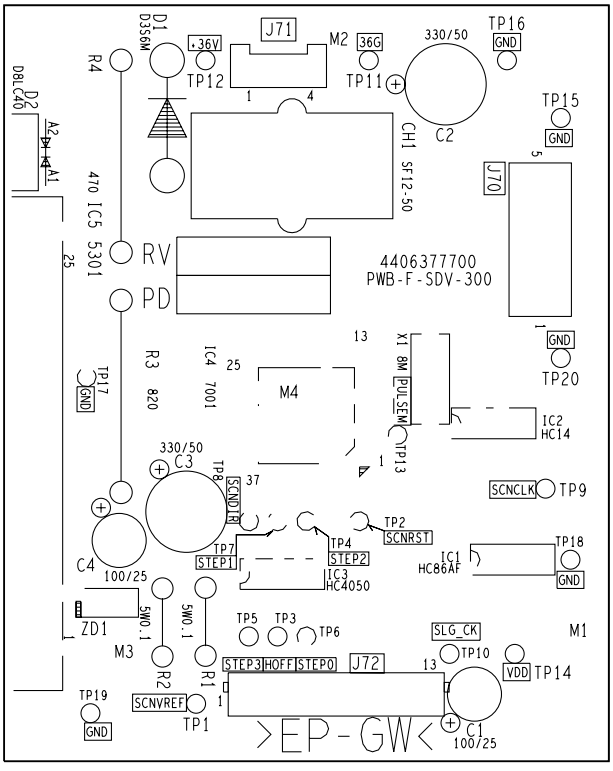
(5) PWA-F-MOT-300



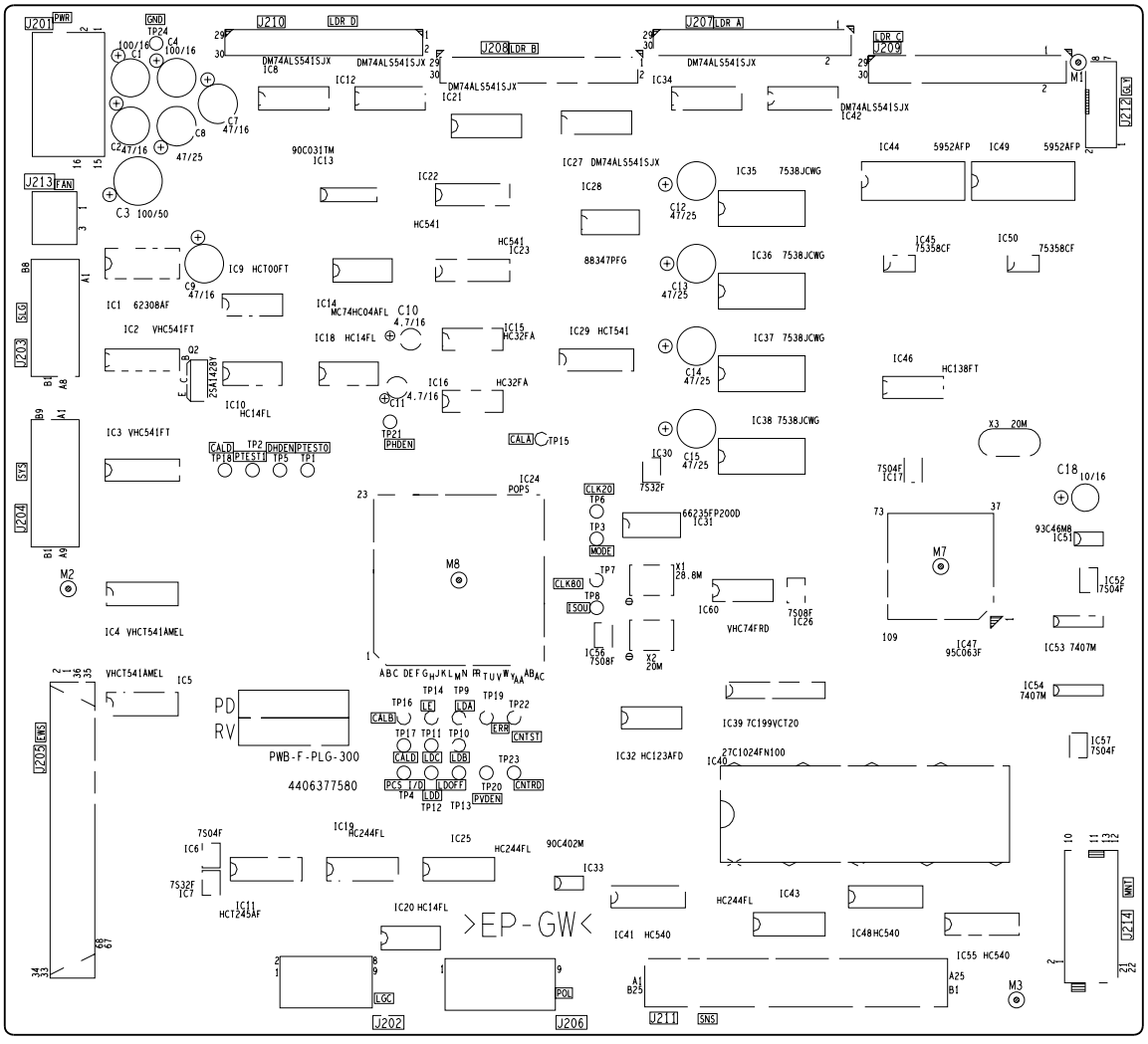
(6) PWA-F-SLG-300



(7) PWA-F-SDV-300



(8) PWA-F-PLG-300

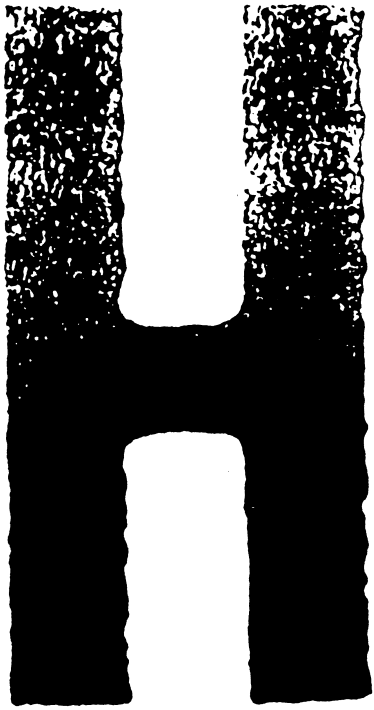


TOSHIBA

SERVICE HANDBOOK

DIGITAL PLAIN PAPER COPIER

8070/6570
5570/4580



File No. 31110001

Copyright 2000

TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION

GENERAL PRECAUTIONS REGARDING THE INSTALLATION AND SERVICE FOR THE COPIER 8070/6570/5570/(***)4580

The installation and service should be done by a qualified service technician.

1. Transportation/Installation

- When transporting/installing the copier, move it by the casters while lifting the stoppers.
  The copier is quite heavy and weighs approximately 250 kg (551 lb), therefore pay full attention when handling it.
- Be sure to use a dedicated outlet with AC 115V or 120V/20A (220V, 230V, 240V/10A) or more for its power source.
- The copier must be grounded for safety.
  Never ground it to a gas pipe or a water pipe.
- Select a suitable place for installation.
  Avoid excessive heat, high humidity, dust, vibration and direct sunlight.
- Also provide proper ventilation as the copier emits a slight amount of ozone.
- To insure adequate working space for the copying operation, keep a minimum clearance of 80 cm (32") on the left, 80 cm (32") on the right and 10 cm (4") in the rear.

2. Service of Machines

- Basically, be sure to turn the main switch off and unplug the power cord during service.
- Be sure not to touch high-temperature sections such as the exposure lamp, the fuser unit, the damp heater and their periphery.
- Be sure not to touch high-voltage sections such as the chargers, the transfer belt and the high-voltage transformer.
- Be sure not to touch rotating/operating sections such as gears, belts, pulleys, fan, etc.
- When servicing the machines with the main switch turned on, be sure not to touch live sections and rotating/operating sections. Avoid exposure to laser radiation.
- Use suitable measuring instruments and tools.
- Avoid exposure to laser radiation during servicing.
  - Avoid direct exposure to beam.
  - Do not insert tools, parts, etc. that are reflective into the path of the laser beam.
  - Remove all watches, rings, bracelets, etc. that are reflective.

3. Main Service Parts for Safety

- The breaker, door switch, fuse, thermostat, thermofuse, thermistor, etc. are particularly important for safety. Be sure to handle/install them properly.

4. Cautionary Labels

- During servicing, be sure to check the rating plate and the cautionary labels such as "Unplug the power cord during service", "Hot area", "Laser warning label" etc. to see if there is any dirt on their surface and whether they are properly stuck to the copier.

(***) Model 4580 is only for NAD, ASD and MJD.

5. **Disposition of Consumable Parts/Packing Materials**
   - Regarding the recovery and disposal of the copier, supplies, consumable parts and packing materials, it is recommended to follow the relevant local regulations or rules.

6. **When parts are disassembled, reassembly is basically the reverse of disassembly unless otherwise noted in this manual or other related documents. Be careful not to reassemble small parts such as screws, washers, pins, E-rings, toothed washers in the wrong places.**

7. **Basically, the machine should not be operated with any parts removed or disassembled.**

8. **Precautions Against Static Electricity**
   - The PC board must be stored in an anti-electrostatic bag and handled carefully using a wrist-band, because the ICs on it may become damaged due to static electricity.

   Caution: Before using the wrist band, pull out the power cord plug of the copier and make sure that there is no uninsulated charged objects in the vicinity.

Caution	:	Dispose of used RAM-IC's (including lithium battery) according to the manufacturer's instructions.
Vorsicht	:	Entsorgung des gebrauchten RAM-IC's (inklusive der Lithium Batterie) nach Angaben des Herstellers.

1. ADJUSTMENT

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE

3. PRECAUTIONS FOR STORING & HANDLING SUPPLIES

4. TROUBLESHOOTING

5. INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS FOR FIRMWARE UPDATE THROUGH PC

6. MANUAL FOR FIRMWARE DOWNLOAD

7. HARNESS WIRING DIAGRAMS

CONTENTS

1. ADJUSTMENT 1-1
1.1 Error Codes 1-1
1.2 Self-Diagnostic Modes 1-6
1.2.1 Input signal check (test mode 03) 1-8
1.2.2 Output signal check (test mode 03) 1-10
1.2.3 Test print mode (test mode 04) 1-13
1.2.4 Adjustment mode (05) 1-14
1.2.5 Setting mode (08) 1-25
1.2.6 How to register/change ID codes (access control mode) 1-33
1.3 Formatting the Hard Disk 1-34
1.4 Auto-Toner Sensor Adjustment 1-35
1.5 Print Image Adjustment 1-37
1.5.1 Adjustment of paper aligning value 1-39
1.5.2 Adjusting the printer section 1-40
1.5.3 Adjusting the scanner section 1-46
1.6 Image Density 1-52
1.7 Automatic Adjustment of Gamma correction 1-53
1.8 Sharpness (HPF) Adjustment 1-55
1.9 Data Correction 1-56
1.10 High-Voltage Adjustment 1-57
1.11 Installation of Carriage Drive Wire 1-62
1.11.1 Wire tension adjustment 1-62
1.11.2 Adjustment of carriage 1 and carriage 2 1-62
1.11.3 Carriage drive wire assembling 1-63
1.12 Lens Unit 1-65
1.12.1 Adjusting the lens magnification 1-66
1.13 Adjusting Horizontal Deviation Caused by Paper Feed 1-68
1.14 Changing the Paper Size 1-69
1.14.1 LCF paper sizes 1-69
1.14.2 PFP paper sizes 1-70
1.15 Adjustment of Duplexer 1-71
1.15.1 Adjustment of the Stack Guide Unit 1-71
1.15.2 Holding gate position adjustment 1-73
1.16 Adjusting the Thickness of the Magnetic Brush (leveler) 1-75
1.17 Adjusting the Gap between the Drum and Sleeve 1-75
1.18 Adjustment of Developer Polarity Position 1-75
1.19 Adjusting the Heat Roller Pressure 1-75
1.20 Setting the Heat Roller Temperature and Heat Roller Pressure 1-76
1.21 Adjusting the Fuser Inlet Guide 1-78

1.22 Adjustment of ADF 1-79
1.22.1 Adjustment of skew with ADF 1-79
1.22.2 Adjustment of ADF horizontal deviation caused for ADF 1-80
1.22.3 Adjustment of ADF leading-edge position 1-81
1.22.4 Adjustment of leading-edge position for ADF (at the Time of Reversing) 1-81
1.22.5 Adjustment of magnetic catches installation 1-82
1.22.6 Adjustment of the separation area 1-83
1.22.7 EEPROM Initialization, Sensor Adjustment and Test Mode 1-84
1.23 Key Copy Counter (MU-8, MU-10) 1-85
1.24 Fine Adjustment of Binding Position/Folding Position 1-87
1.25 Adjustment of RADF Height 1-88
1.26 Flapper Solenoid Adjustment 1-89

2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE 2-1
2.1 Inspection every 440,000 Copies (8070), every 400,000 Copies (6570), every 340,000 Copies (5570), every 280,000 Copies (4580) 2-1
2.2 Inspection and Overhaul every 880,000 Copies (8070), every 800,000 Copies (6570/5570/4580) 2-1
2.3 Periodic Inspection Check List 2-1
2.4 Periodical Maintenance Kit (For 400k) 2-16
2.5 Jig List 2-17

3. PRECAUTIONS FOR STORING AND HANDLING SUPPLIES 3-1
3.1 Precautions for Storing TOSHIBA Supplies 3-1
3.2 Checking and Cleaning the OPC Drum 3-1
3.3 Checking and Cleaning the Drum Cleaning Blade, Transfer Belt Cleaning Blade 3-2
3.4 Checking and Cleaning the Heat Roller Cleaning Roller 1, 2, 3, 4 3-3
3.5 Checking and Cleaning the Upper and Lower Heat Rollers 3-3
3.6 Checking and Replacing Transfer Belt 3-4
3.7 Checking and Replacing Transfer Belt Power Supply Roller 3-4
3.8 Checking and Replacing Transfer Belt Cleaning Brush 3-4

4. TROUBLESHOOTING 4-1
4.1 Scanner System Related Service Call 4-1
4.2 Process System Related Service Call 4-3
4.3 Fuser Related Service Call 4-4
4.4 Communication Related Service Call 4-6
4.5 ADF Related Service Call 4-7
4.6 Other Troubles on the ADF System 4-8
4.7 Other Service Calls 4-12
4.8 Laser Optical system Related Service Call 4-13
4.9 Finisher Related Service Call 4-15
4.10 Image Quality Maintenance Control Related Troubleshooting 4-30

5. INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS FOR FIRMWARE UPDATE THROUGH PC 5-1
5.1 Outline 5-1
5.2 System Configuration 5-1
5.3 Preparation of PC to use a network 5-2
5.3.1 Setting Virtual Modem 5-2
5.3.2 Using Dial-Up Networking 5-6
5.3.3 Using New Connection 5-8
5.4 Installation of FTP Server 5-12

6. MANUAL FOR FIRMWARE DOWNLOAD 6-1
[3] [9] Mode operation 6-1
6.1 Outline 6-1
6.2 Preparation of PC 6-1
6.2.1 Software Installation 6-1
6.2.2 Preparation of Updated Files 6-2
6.2.3 Connection between Copier and PC 6-3
6.3 Download Operation 6-4
6.4 Screen Details 6-10

7. HARNESS WIRING DIAGRAMS 7-1
7.1 AC Wire Harness 7-2
7.2 DC Wire Harness ..... Appendix

1. ADJUSTMENT

1.1 Error Codes

When either the CLEAR PAPER (🖹) or CALL FOR SERVICE (🔧) symbol appears, press the CLEAR/STOP and [8] keys simultaneously and the corresponding error code will be displayed.
🖹/🔧 → [C] + [8] (error code)

Group	Error code	Machine status
Paper transport jam inside the copier 1	E01	Paper leading edge not reaching the fuser exit switch
	E02	Paper trailing edge not passing the fuser exit switch
	E03	Paper remaining inside the machine at power ON
	E09	HDD malfunction
	E0A	Image transport ready timeout
Paper feeding jam	E12	Manual feeding jam
	E15	PFP Feeding jam from the upper PFP
	E16	PFP Feeding jam from the middle PFP
	E17	PFP Feeding jam from the lower PFP
	E19	Feeding jam from LCF
Transport jam to aligning section after feeding	E31	PFP transport jam (not reaching the paper stop switch) E31: Feeding from the upper PFP
	E32	E32: Feeding from the middle PFP
	E33	E33: Feeding from the lower PFP
	E34	Not reaching the PFP transport path E34: Feeding from the upper PFP
	E35	E35: Feeding from the middle PFP
	E36	E36: Feeding from the lower PFP
Cover open jam	E41	Copier front cover is opened during copying
	E47	Exit cover is opened during copying
Transport jam in ADU and reversal section	E50	Paper not reaching the ADU aligning switch
	E51	Paper not reaching the ADU transport switch 1
	E52	Paper not reaching the ADU transport switch 2
	E53	Paper not reaching the PFP upper paper stop switch
	E54	Paper not reaching the ADU feed switch
	E55	Paper remaining on transport path when copy finished
	E56	Paper remaining on PFP transport path after door open/close
	E57	Paper not reaching the reversal switch
	E58	Paper not passing the reversal switch
	E59	Paper not passing the exit switch
	E5A	Paper not reaching the exit switch
	E5B	ADU transport start timeout jam
Original transporting jam at the ADF	E71	Original feeding jam at the feed section of the ADF
	E72	Original transporting jam at the transport section of the ADF
	E73	Original exiting jam at the exit section of the ADF

Group	Error code	Machine status
Finisher jam	E9F	Punch jam
Paper jam at the finisher	EA1	Transporting delay jam
	EA2	Transporting stationary jam
	EA3	Paper remaining in the finisher at power ON
	EA4	Finisher front door opened during copying
	EA5	Staple jam
	EA6	Early arrival jam
	EA8	Finisher saddle stitcher staple jam
	EA9	Finisher saddle stitcher front door open jam
	EAA	Paper remaining in the finisher at power ON
	EAB	Finisher saddle stitcher transport stationary jam
	EAC	Finisher saddle stitcher transport delay jam
	EAD	Print end command time-out jam
	EAE	Finisher receive time-out jam
Paper transport jam inside the copier 2	EB3	Finisher ready time-out error
	EB5	PSTPR-L standby time-out error
	EB6	PSTPR-H standby time-out error
Paper feeding error (Refer to page 1-4)	C11	Duplexer side guide is abnormal
	C12	Duplexer stopper guide is abnormal
	C15	PFP upper tray is abnormal
	C16	PFP middle tray is abnormal
	C17	PFP lower tray is abnormal
	C18	LCF tray is abnormal
Scanner system related service call	C26	Peak detection error
	C27	(Home switch does not turn OFF within a fixed time) Carriage initialization error
	C28	(Home switch does not turn ON within a fixed time) Carriage initialization error
	C29	Exposure lamp disconnection detected
Process system related service call 1	C36	Main charger wire cleaning operation abnormal
	C37	Transfer belt operation abnormal
Process system related service call 2	CD1	Brush motor lock error
	CD2	Auger motor lock error
Fuser related service call	C41	Thermistor abnormal or heater disconnection at power ON
	C43	Thermistor abnormal during warming-up or at standby after disconnection judgement
	C44	Heater abnormal during warming-up or at standby after disconnection judgement
	C45	Upper heat roller end thermistor abnormal
	C46	Lower heat roller thermistor abnormal at standby

Group	Error code	Machine status
Communication related service call	C56	Communication error between PFC and M-CPU
	C57	Communication error between M-CPU and IPC
	C58	Communication error between IPC and the finisher
	C59	Communication error between M-CPU and L-CPU
System communications related service call	F07	Communication error between SYS and LGC boards
	F11	Communication error between SYS and SLG boards
ADF related service call	C72	Error of aligning sensor adjustment
	C73	EEPROM initializing error
	C74	Error of exit sensor adjustment
	C76	Transmission time-out error
	C77	Transmission buffer full
	C78	ADF power ON I/F error
	C79	Reception time-out error
	C80	Error of timing sensor adjustment
Other service calls	C94	M-CPU is abnormal
	C99	PFC microcomputer is abnormal
Laser optical system related service call	CA1	Polygonal mirror motor is abnormal
	CA2	H-SYNC is abnormal
	CA3	Secondary scanning rough adjustment error
	CA4	Primary scanning counter load error
	CA5	Laser power adjustment error
	CA6	Laser PWM calibration error
	CA9	Image data transmission error from SYS board
	CAA	Secondary scanning fine adjustment error
	CAB	Secondary scanning inter-page compensation error
	CAC	Primary scanning dot adjustment error
	CAD	Primary scanning tap adjustment error
	CAE	Primary scanning tap amount measurement error
	CAF	Primary scanning inter-page compensation error
	CD0	Laser initializing time-out error
Finisher related service call	CB1	Feed motor is abnormal
	CB2	Delivery motor is abnormal
	CB3	Tray lift motor is abnormal
	CB4	Alignment motor is abnormal
	CB5	Staple motor is abnormal
	CB6	Stapler shift motor is abnormal
	CB7	Height sensor is abnormal
	CB8	Backup RAM data is abnormal
	CB9	Saddle stitcher paper pushing plate motor is abnormal

Group	Error code	Machine status
Finisher related service call	CBA	Saddle stitcher front stitcher motor is abnormal
	CBB	Saddle stitcher rear stitcher motor is abnormal
	CBC	Saddle stitcher alignment motor is abnormal
	CBD	Saddle stitcher guide motor is abnormal
	CBE	Saddle stitcher folding motor is abnormal
	CBF	Saddle stitcher paper positioning plate motor is abnormal
	CC0	Sensor connector connection error
	CC1	Microswitch error
	CC2	Communications error between finisher saddle
	CC4	Swing motor is abnormal
	CC5	Horizontal registration motor is abnormal
	CC6	Punch motor is abnormal
Option units related service call	F10	HDD formatting error

Addition to the explanation

(1) When a paper feeding error occurs:

: Error has occurred in the unit →Disabled

: No error has occurred in the unit →Enabled

: To operate continuously, error code ([C]+[8]) is not displayed.

(2) During C11 and C12 error codes

* If the mode which Duplexer is used is selected as “single-sided → duplex” or “two-sided → duplex”, the “install the Duplexer” message is displayed and printing is not possible.
* If the mode other than the above (the Duplexer is not used) is selected, the operation can be normally accepted.

(3) During C15, 16, 17 error codes

* If a cassette in which an error has occurred is selected:
  The “Add Paper” message is displayed even if the sheet is set, and copying can be performed when another paper cassette is selected.
* If a cassette other than the above is selected, the operation can be normally accepted.

Error history (08-253)

(Display example)

EA1	9 9 0 3 2 6 1 7 5 7 3 2	6 4	6 4	2 3 6 2 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
Error code	YYMMDDHHMMSS	MMM	NNN	A B C D E F G H I J K L
3 digit	12 digit (Date, time)	3 digit (Reproduction ratio)	3 digit	12 digit (Copy mode)

Copy mode	
A	Paper feed cassette
	0: Non-select 1: Bypass 2: LCF 3: PFP(U) 4: PFP(M) 5: PFP(L) 6: ADU
B	Paper size code
	0: Non-select 1: A5-R 2: ST-R 3: LT 4: A4 5: B5-R 6: LT-R 7: A4-R 8: OTHER/UNIV 9: B5
	A: FOL/COM B: LG C: B4 D: LD E: A3 F: 13'LG G: 8.5×8.5
C	Sort mode/Staple mode
	0: Non-select 1: Group 2: Sort 7: Staple (Front) 8: Staple (2 places) 9: Staple (Rear) A: Saddle stetch
D	DF mode
	0: Not used 1: AUTO FEED (SADF) 2: STACK FEED
E	APS/AMS mode
	0: Non-select 1: APS 2: AMS
F	Duplex mode
	0: Non-select 1: Book 2: Two-sided/Single-sided 4: Two-sided/Duplexed
	8: Single-sided/Duplexed
G	Not used
	0: Not used
H	Image shift
	0: Not used 1: Book 2: LEFT 3: RIGHT
I	Editing
	0: Not used 1: Masking 2: Trimming 3: Mirroring 4: Negative/Positive
J	Edge-erase/Dual-page
	0: Not used 1: Edge-erase 2: Dual-page 3: Edge-erase & Dual-page
K	Not used
	0: Not used
L	Function
	0: Not used 1: PPC 2: Not used 3: Not used 4: GDI 5: DSS

Reproduction ratio	
MMM	Primary scanning reproduction ratio (Y direction)
	Hexadecimal
NNN	Secondary scanning reproduction ratio (X direction)
	Hexadecimal

Setting mode, code "253" displays latest 8 error data

1.2 Self-Diagnostic Modes

This copier is a multi-function copier (net work printer, DSS). So, compared with conventional copiers:

1) It has more setting items in the self-diagnostic mode.
2) Setting items are related to each other.

For this reason, if normal operations are continued on the control panel (by [0] + [9] or [C] keys) when adjustments are completed, operation trouble (e.g. machine lock) may occur due to the internal structure of the program.

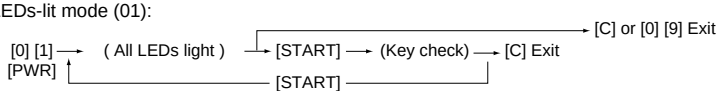
So, when the self-diagnostic mode in adjustments after unpacking, servicing or preventative maintenance, first turn the power OFF before handing the copier over to the user.

Mode	Input code	Definition	Clearing method	Display
All-LEDs-lit	[0]+[1]+ [PWR]	All LEDs on the control panel are lit, and all pixels on the LCD light and go out.	[C]or [0]+[9]	——
Test mode	[0]+[3]+ [PWR]	Input/output signals are checked.	[0]+[9]	100% C A4 TEST MODE
Test print mode	[0]+[4]+ [PWR]	Test print	[0]+[9]	100% P A4 TEST PRINT
Adjustment mode	[0]+[5]+ [PWR]	Adjustment of items	[0]+[9]	100% A A4 TEST MODE
Setting mode	[0]+[8]+ [PWR]	System switchover and setting of each priority mode, PM counter, etc.	[0]+[9]	100% D A4 TEST MODE
List print mode	[9]+[START] +[PWR]	Printing of 05, 08 code data lists	[PWR] OFF	100% P A4 LIST PRINT
Unit replace mode	[6]+[START] +[PWR]	Mode for executing auto-toner adjustment and drum counter clear	[PWR] OFF	100% K A4 TEST MODE

Note: To access the desired self-diagnostic mode, turn on the power switch while pressing the appropriate keys (e.g. [0]+[5]).

<Procedure>

• All-LEDs-lit mode (01):



Notes: 1. The mode cannot be cleared by [0]+[9] during the key check; it can be cleared only by [C]. It can be cleared by both [0]+[9] and [C] when all LEDs on the control panel are lit.

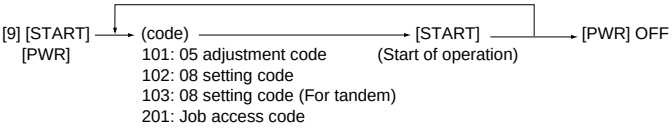
2. Key Check With LED (Press to turn LED out.)
Without LED (Press to display this in message area.)

• Test mode (03): Refer to 1.2.1 and 1.2.2.

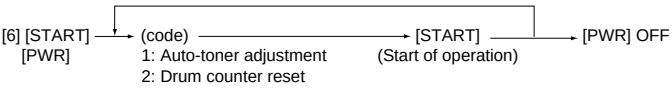
• Test print mode (04): Refer to “1.2.3 Test print mode”.

• Adjustment mode (05): Refer to “1.2.4 Adjustment mode”.

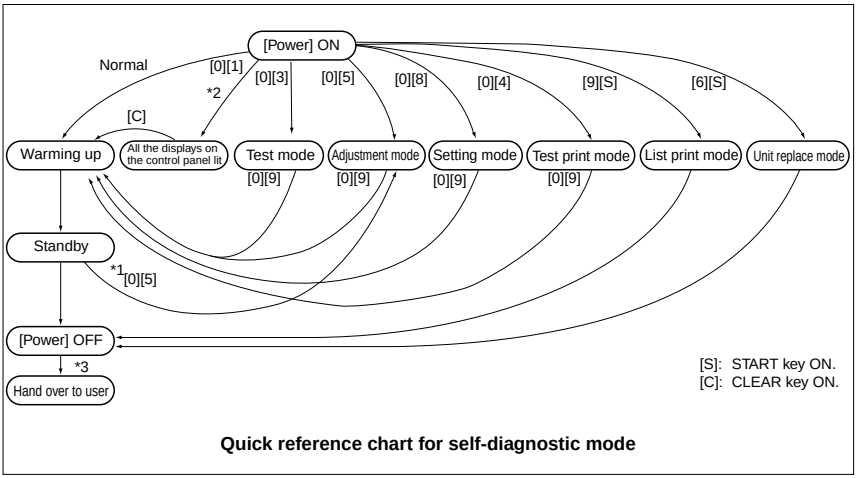
• List print mode



• Unit replace mode



• Setting mode (08): Refer to “1.2.5 Setting mode”.



Quick reference chart for self-diagnostic mode

*1 When the copier is in the adjustment mode which you entered by turning the power switch ON while pressing keys [0] and [5] simultaneously, pressing keys [0] and [9] simultaneously will set the copier to the standby mode. In this standby mode only can the adjustment mode be accessed repeatedly by simply entering [0] and [5].

*2 While all the displays on the control panel are lit, copying is not available. When the copier enters the standby mode by pressing the [0] [9] or [C], copying is enabled.

*3 When the self-diagnostic mode was used, turn the power OFF, then hand over to the user.

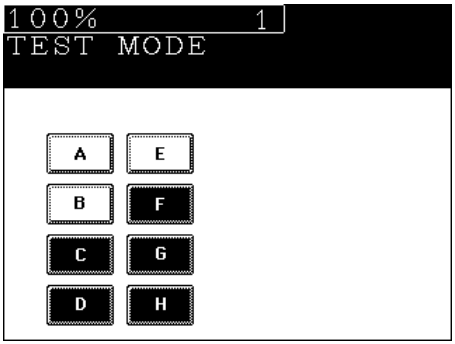
1.2.1 Input signal check (Test mode 03)

In the [0] [3] test mode, the following input signal states can be checked by pressing the corresponding keys.

[A] When the ENERGY SAVER key is OFF (LED indicating the energy saver mode is out)

Icon / Key	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	Remarks
[1]	LCF bottom SW (Bottom)	LCF door SW (Open)	LCF tray up SW (Top)	LCF empty SW (Not empty)	Manual feed paper width switch 3 (OFF)	Manual feed paper width switch 2 (OFF)	Manual feed paper width switch 1 (OFF)	Manual feed paper width switch 0 (OFF)	–
[2]	ADU transport switch 2 (ON)	LCF paper start switch (OFF)	ADU feed switch (ON)	ADU transport switch 1 (ON)	LCF switch (Disconnection)	LCF tray down key (OFF)	Manual feed switch (OFF)	–	–
[3]	–	–	–	–	ADU end switch (ON)	ADU aligning switch (ON)	ADU side switch (ON)	ADU empty switch (Not empty)	–
[4]	PFP-U paper start SW (OFF)	PFP-U paper stop SW (OFF)	PFP-U tray up SW (ON)	PFP-U empty SW (OFF)	–	PFP upper cassette SW (ON)	PFP middle cassette SW (ON)	PFP lower cassette SW (ON)	–
[5]	PFP-M paper start SW (OFF)	PFP-M paper stop SW (OFF)	PFP-M tray up SW (ON)	PFP-M empty SW (OFF)	–	–	–	–	–
[6]	PFP-L paper start SW (OFF)	PFP-L paper stop SW (OFF)	PFP-L tray up SW (ON)	PFP-L empty SW (OFF)	–	–	–	–	–
[7]	–	–	–	–	–	–	ADU connection (Disconnection)	Copier paper stop switch (ON)	–
[8]	Front cover SW (OFF)	Reversal switch (ON)	Exit switch (ON)	–	Toner-full switch (ON)	–	Fuser exit switch (OFF)	–	–
[9]	–	–	–	IPC connection (Disconnection)	–	–	–	Developer unit not mounted SW	–
[0]	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

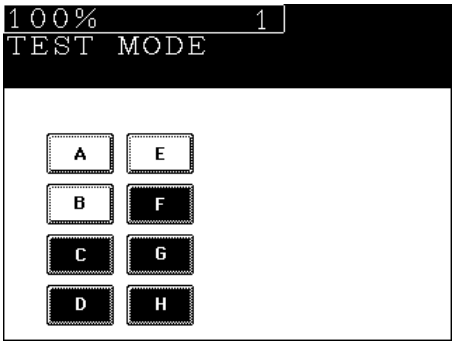
Icons on the control panel in the table states are displayed as white on a black background (ON state).



[B] When the ENERGY SAVER key is ON (LED indicating the energy saver mode is lit)

Icon / Key	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	Remarks
[1]	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
[2]	–	–	Total counter connection (Disconnection)	Auto toner sensor connection (Disconnection)	–	Cleaner connection (Disconnection)	Main charger cleaning switch (OFF)	Exit cover switch (Open)	–
[3]	–	–	–	–	–	Key counter connection (Disconnection)	Toner supply cover switch (Open)	Toner empty switch (OFF)	–
[4]	–	–	–	–	–	–	Transfer belt contact switch (OFF)	Transfer belt separation switch (OFF)	–
[5]	Platen switch (Close)	–	–	–	–	–	ADF connection (Disconnection)	Scanner home SW (OFF)	–
[6]	–	APS sensor 3 (OFF)	APS sensor 2 (OFF)	APS sensor 1 (OFF)	APS sensor 6 (OFF)	APS sensor 5 (OFF)	APS sensor 4 (OFF)	–	–
[7]	ADF size switch 1 (ON)	ADF size switch 2 (ON)	ADF empty switch (OFF)	ADF cover (Open)	ADF APS start SW (ON)	ADF exit sensor (ON)	ADF timing sensor (ON)	ADF aligning sensor (ON)	–
[8]	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
[9]	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
[0]	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

Icons on the control panel in the table states are displayed as white on a black background (ON state).



<Procedure>

[0] [3] [PWR] → [START] → [ENERGY SAVER] → [Digital keys] → (LCD ON) → [0] [9] (Exit)

Note: Initialization is executed before test mode is entered.

1.2.2 Output signal check (test mode 03)

In the [0] [3] test mode, the following output signal states can be checked by entering the corresponding codes.

Code	Function		Code	Function	Operation procedure group
101	Drum motor	ON	151	OFF	1
102	Toner motor	ON	152	OFF	1
103	Polygonal motor mirror (600 dpi)	ON	153	OFF	1
108	Aligning motor	ON	158	OFF	1
109	Pedestal motor	ON	159	OFF	1
110	ADU motor	ON	160	OFF	1
111	Scraper solenoid	ON	161	OFF	1
112	Developer motor	ON	162	OFF	1
113	Heat roller motor	ON	163	OFF	1
114	Transfer belt motor	ON	164	OFF	1
115	Fur brush motor	ON	165	OFF	1
116	Auger motor	ON	166	OFF	1
117	Laser bias	ON	167	OFF	1
118	Laser	ON	168	OFF	1
119	Fuser unit motor rotating slowly	ON	169	OFF	1
218	Total counter counts				2
219	Reversal fan	ON/OFF			3
220	ADU transport clutch	ON/OFF			3
221	ADU aligning clutch	ON/OFF			3
222	ADU feed clutch	ON/OFF			3
223	ADU stack clutch	ON/OFF			3
226	PFP upper feed clutch	ON/OFF			3
227	PFP middle feed clutch	ON/OFF			3
228	PFP lower feed clutch	ON/OFF			3
229	PFP upper aligning feed clutch	ON/OFF			3
230	PFP middle aligning feed clutch	ON/OFF			3
231	PFP lower aligning feed clutch	ON/OFF			3
233	Manual feed motor	ON/OFF			3
234	Manual feed pick-up solenoid	ON/OFF			3
235	Discharge LED lamp	ON/OFF			3
236	Exit fan, low speed	ON/OFF			3
237	Exit fan, high speed	ON/OFF			3
239	Main charger fan	ON/OFF			3
240	Developer fan	ON/OFF			3
241	Heater fan low-speed	ON/OFF			3
242	Heater fan high-speed	ON/OFF			3
243	Main charger wire cleaner	ON (reset)			2
244	Transfer belt cam motor	UP/DOWN			3
249	Developer bias -DC1	ON/OFF			3

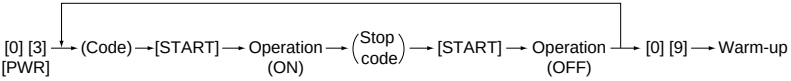
Code	Function		Operation procedure group
250	Developer bias -DC2	ON/OFF	3
251	Developer bias -DC3	ON/OFF	3
252	Main Charger	ON/OFF	3
255	Transfer belt cleaning brush bias	ON/OFF	3
257	Duct (in/out) fan, low speed	ON/OFF	3
259	Duct (in/out) fan, high speed	ON/OFF	3
261	Scanning motor	ON	2
	(Automatically stops at the limit position, its speed is variable using the ZOOM keys.)		
262	Document (indicator) motor	ON	2
	(Automatically stops at the limit position)		
263	Exposure lamp	ON	3
	(Automatically goes OFF after 6 seconds, and the fan motors rotate at low speed.)		
264	Scanning optical system cooling fan motor 1	ON/OFF	3
265	Scanning optical system cooling fan motor 2	ON/OFF	3
266	SLG PC board cooling fan motor 3	ON/OFF	3
270	LCF feed motor	ON/OFF	3
271	LCF tray motor	UP/DOWN	2
272	ADU side guide motor	ON (reciprocating)	2
273	ADU end guide motor	ON (reciprocating)	2
274	ADU/exit switching gate solenoid	ON/OFF	3
275	ADU paper holding gate solenoid	ON/OFF	2
277	ADU reverse clutch	ON/OFF	3
278	PFP upper tray motor	UP/DOWN	2
279	PFP middle tray motor	UP/DOWN	2
280	PFP lower tray motor	UP/DOWN	2
281	ADF pick-up roller rotation	ON/OFF	3
282	ADF aligning roller rotation	ON/OFF	3
283	ADF transport belt CW rotation	ON/OFF	3
284	ADF transport belt CCW rotation	ON/OFF	3
285	ADF reverse roller rotation	ON/OFF	3
288	ADF reverse solenoid	ON/OFF	3
292	Laser unit fan	ON/OFF	3
295	Power off mode		4

List of System Output Check Functions

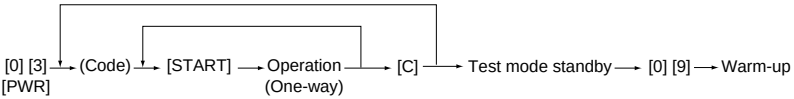
Code	Function	Operation procedure group
401	Get mounted PM (page memory) size	2
402	PM (page memory) read/write check	2

<Procedure>

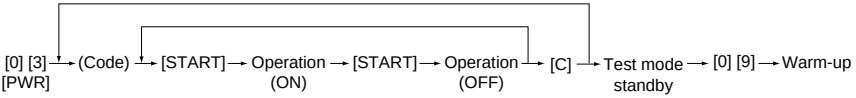
Group (1)



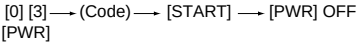
Group (2)



Group (3)



Group (4)

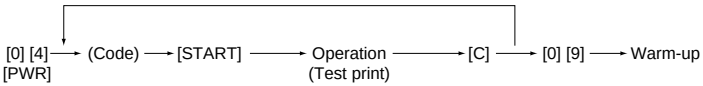


1.2.3 Test print mode (test mode 04)

In test mode “04”, you can print the test pattern generated by the following ASIC codes.

Code	ASIC	Test pattern type	Remarks
111	SH	Primary scanning. 33 gradations, error diffusion	
113	SH	Secondary scanning. 33 gradations, error diffusion	
142	POPS	2 dots grid pattern (10mm Pitch)	

<Operation procedure>



Note: Though errors are displayed when it occurs, recovery is not carried out. This is recovered by turning the power OFF then ON again.

1.2.4 Adjustment mode (05)

In this mode, the following adjustment items can be corrected or changed. To access this mode, turn the power ON while pressing the [0] and [5] keys.

05 MODE						
CODE	ADJUSMENT	MODE	DEFAULT	RANGE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE GROUP
200	Automatic adjustment of the Auto-toner circuit.	All	—	—	Increasing the value increases the sensor out put. Output is automatically set in the range of 2.45 - 2.55V. Refer to the complete auto-toner adjustment.	
201	Manual adjustment of the Auto-toner circuit.	All	128	0-255	The current value of the auto-toner circuit is displayed and can be manually set.	2
♦203	Developer High 1 adjustment Out put is NOT available for measurement. Enter the value set in code 205-0.	Printer	104	0-255	The developer power supply output is increased when the value is increased.	1
♦205-0	Developer High 1 adjustment Output IS available for measurement. Adjust by measuring the output.	Copier (Text/ Photo)	104	0-255	Before performing this adjustment refer to the complete adjustment.	7
♦205-1	Developer High 1 adjustment Output is NOT available for measurement. Enter the value set in code 205-0.	Copier (Text)	104	0-255		6
♦205-2	Developer High 1 adjustment Output is NOT available for measurement. Enter the value set in code 205-0.	Copier (Photo)	104	0-255		6
♦207	Developer High 2 adjustment Out put IS available for measurement. Adjust by measuring the output.	All	104	0-255	The developer bias power supply output is increased when the value is increased. Before performing this adjustment refer to the complete adjustment.	2
♦216	Developer High 3 adjustment Output IS available for measurement.	All	133	0-255	The developer bias power supply output is increased when the value is increased. Before performing this adjustment refer to the complete adjustment.	2
♦Key in Code 205 press the START key, key in the Sub Code, then press the START key. For 205-0, 207 and 216 use the UP or DOWN key to change the value, press the SET key to store or the RESET key. For codes 203, 205-1 and 205-2 key in the value set in code 205-0, press the SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						
♣210-0	Charge corona grid voltage adjustment. The developer unit must be removed. Output IS available for measurement. Adjust by measuring the grid voltage output.	Copier (Text/ Photo)	93	0-255	The charge corona power supply output is increased when the value is increased. Before performing this adjustment refer to the complete adjustment. Check or adjust the output voltage using code 210-0 first, then set the remaining codes 210-1, 210-2 and 212 to the value set in 210-0.	7
♣210-1	Charge corona grid voltage adjustment. Output is NOT available for measurement. Set to the value set in code 210-0.	Copier (Text)	93	0-255		6
♣210-2	Charge corona grid voltage adjustment. Output is NOT available for measurement. Set to the value set in code 210-0.	Copier (Photo)	93	0-255		6
♣212	Charge corona grid voltage adjustment. Output is NOT available for measurement. Set to the value set in code 210-0.	Printer	93	0-255		1
♣Key in Code 210 press the START key, key in the Sub Code, then press the START key. For 210-0 use the UP or DOWN key to change the value, press the SET key to store or the RESET key. For codes 210-1, 210-2 and 212 key in the value set in code 210-0, press the SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						

05 MODE						
CODE	ADJUSMENT	MODE	DEFAULT	RANGE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE GROUP
291	Image Quality Control circuit check value, not adjustable. Value indicates Status: Good or Error.	All	0	0-255	A value of 2 or 4 indicates an error in the image Quality Control circuit. All other values 0-255 indicate that the Image Quality Control circuit is working correctly. For additional information refer to the Image Quality Control Troubleshooting section.	3
292	Image Density Sensor output check value When the LED (light source) is turned OFF. (This is the current value stored in memory from the last time the machine performed the Image Quality Control compensation adjustment). It is not adjustable. Normal value is 102 - 307.	All	0	0-1023	Use this code only when checking or troubleshooting Image Quality Control problems. See Image Quality Control Troubleshooting section.	3
293	Image Density Sensor output check value When the LED (light source) is turned ON. (This is the current value stored in memory from the last time the machine performed the Image Quality Control compensation adjustment) not adjustable. Normal value is 388-819.	All	0	0-1023	Use this code only when checking or troubleshooting Image Quality Control problems. See Image Quality Control troubleshooting section.	3
296	Service Automatic adjustment of image Density Sensor LED intensity. The value displayed is the output check value after the light source is adjusted.	All	0	0-255	Use this code only when checking or troubleshooting Image Quality Control problems. The higher the number the dirtier the sensor or the greater the amount of drum wear. 255 = sensor is too dirty or drum is too worn for compensation. See Image Quality Control Troubleshooting section.	3
305	Leading to trailing edge image shift. Scanner (secondary scanning) start position deviation). Key in the value, press SET key to store or CLEAR key to reset.	All	128	0-255	When the value is increased by 1, the image shift approximately 0.1213mm towards the trailing edge of the paper(machine).	1
306	CCD primary scanning start position deviation. Key in the value, press SET key to store or CLEAR to key to reset.	All	45	0-90	When the value is increased by 1, the image shifts approximately 0.0423mm towards the front side of the paper (machine).	1
310	Exposure lamp intensity. Set to default value. Key in the value, press SET key to store or CLEAR key to reset.	All	55	30-70	The exposure lamp voltage increases or decreases 0.25V/step.	1
•335-0	Scanner acceleration curve setting (50-59%).	All	2	0-2	0: Acceleration ratio (1) 1: Acceleration ratio (2) 2: Acceleration ratio (3) Adjustment corrects for blurs in the leading 2 inches of the copy. Set to the default values when memory has been corrupted. Adjust only when replacing the scan drive motor.	6
•335-1	Scanner acceleration curve setting (60-79%).	All	0	0-2		6
•335-2	Scanner acceleration curve setting (80-95%).	All	1	0-2		6
•335-3	Scanner acceleration curve setting (96-103%).	All	1	0-2		6
•335-4	Scanner acceleration curve setting (104-190%).	All	1	0-2		6
•335-5	Scanner acceleration curve setting (191-400%).	All	1	0-2		6
• Key in code 335 press the START key, key in the Sub code, then press the START key. Key in the value, press the SET key to store or the CELAR key to reset.						

05 MODE						
CODE	ADJUSMENT	MODE	DEFAULT	RANGE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE GROUP
♥340	Scanner copy length reproduction ratio adjustment.	Copier	128	0-255	Adjust the length of the copy image to 1:1 so that it is not stretched or compressed. Use a millimeter scale and ledger/ A3 paper to adjust. Increasing the value decreases the length 0.05% step(or 0.1mm/step).	1
♥350	RADF single sided original stop position.	All	8	0-15	The higher the value, the more the original is fed towards the paper feed side of the machine. 1 step is equal to approxi-mately 1mm change. Test copy can be made in 05 test mode.	1
♥351	RADF double sided original side 2 stop position.	All	8	0-15	The higher the value, the more the original is fed towards the exit side of the machine. 1 step is equal to approxi-mately 1mm change. Test copy cannot be made in 05 test mode. Press 09 to enter normal copy mode and toggle back to 05 mode to adjust.	1
356	RADF sensor automatic adjustment and EEPROM initialization. Press the START key, WAIT is displayed while the automatic adjustment is performed.	All	—	—	Perform RADF EEPROM Initialization when EEPROM, RADF logic PWA or sensors are replaced.	4
♥401	Polygonal motor speed fine adjustment.	Printer	128	0-255	Adjust the width of the printed image (front to rear of machine) to 1:1, so that it is not stretched or compressed. When the value is increased by 1, the width reproduction ratio is enlarged by approxi-mately 0.05% step (or 0.1mm/ step). After setting the value, select LT/A4 paper, then press the ENERGY SAVER key to make a test print.	1
♥405	Polygonal motor speed fine adjustment.	Copier	120	0-255	Adjust the width of the copied image (front to rear) to 1:1 so that it is not stretched or compressed. When the value is increased by 1, the width reproduction ratio is enlarged by approximately 0.05%/step (or 0.1mm/step). After setting the value, select LT/A4 paper, then press the ENERGY SAVER key to make a test copy.	1

05 MODE						
CODE	ADJUSMENT	MODE	DEFAULT	RANGE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE GROUP
410	Laser write position(front to rear of machine image registration). After adjusting code 411, key in the value set in code 411, press the SET key to store in memory or the CLEAR key to reset.	Copier	140	0-255	Always perform code 411 first, then set the value of code 410 to the value set in code 411. When the value is increased by 1, the image on the drum is shifted by 0.0423mm to the rear of the copier(primary scanning direction). Refer to the complete adjustment procedure before performing this adjustment.	1
♥411	Laser write position (front to rear of machine image registration).	Printer	140	0-255		1
♥415	First beam laser power.	Copier	103	0-255	Laser power increases 2.34É W/step.	1
♥416	First beam laser power.	Printer	103	0-255	Set to 103 do not change from the setting.	1
♥430	Copy leading edge void adjustment.	Copier	24	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the void by approximately 0.04233mm.	1
♥431	Copy top edge void adjustment (rear of machine). Top of copy LT/A4 or right side edge of ST-R/A5-R, LT-R/A4-R, Legal/B4 and Ledger/A3.	Copier	0	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the void by approximately 0.04233mm.	1
♥432	Copy bottom edge void adjustment (front of Machine). Bottom of copy LT/A4 or left side edge of ST-R/A5-R, LT-R/A4-R, Legal/B4 and Ledger/A3.	Copier	0	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the void by approximately 0.04233mm.	1
♥433	Copy trailing edge void adjustment.	Copier	30	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the void by approximately 0.04233mm.	1
♥435	Printed page leading edge void adjustment.	Printer	24	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the void by approximately 0.04233mm.	1
♥436	Printed page top edge void adjustment (rear of machine). Top of printed page LT/A4 or right side of ST-R/A5-R, LT-R/A4-R, Legal/B4 and Ledger/A3.	Printer	0	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the void by approximately 0.04233mm.	1
♥437	Printed page bottom edge void adjustment (front of machine). Top of printed page LT/A4 or left side edge of ST-R/A5-R, LT-R/A4-R, Legal/B4 and Ledger/A3.	Printer	0	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the void by approximately 0.04233mm.	1
♥438	Printed page trailing edge void adjustment.	Printer	0	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the void by approximately 0.04233mm.	1
♥442	Bypass registration adjustment. Image on the drum to the paper's leading edge.	All	8	0-15	Increasing the value by 1 shifts the image on the paper by approximately 0.5mm towards the paper's leading edge. Increasing the value makes the paper arrive later.	1
♥443	LCC registration adjustment. Image on the drum to the paper's leading edge. Test copy available while in the 05 Mode.	All	15	0-40	Increasing the value by 1 shifts the image on the paper by approximately 0.5mm towards the papers' leading edge. Increasing the value makes the paper arrive later.	1

05 MODE						
CODE	ADJUSMENT	MODE	DEFAULT	RANGE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE GROUP
♥444	PFP registration adjustment. Image on the drum to the paper's leading edge. Test copy available while in the 05 mode.	All	8	0-15	Increasing the value by 1 shifts the image on the paper by approximately 0.5mm towards the papers' leading edge. Increasing the value makes the paper arrive later.	1
♥445	Duplexer registration adjustment. Image on the drum to the papers' leading edge. Toggle between 09 and 05 Mode to make a test copy.	All	8	0-15	Increasing he value by 1 shifts the image on the paper by approximately 0.5mm towards the papers' leading edge. Increasing the value makes the paper arrive later.	1
♥Key in the value, press the SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						
♠450-0	PFP upper paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller. Paper length 330mm and longer.	All	14	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	6
♠450-1	PFP upper paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller. Paper length 220mm to 329mm.	All	8	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	6
♠450-2	PFP upper paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller. Paper length 219mm and less.	All	5	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	6
♠452-0	PFP middle paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller. Paper length 330mm and longer.	All	2	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	6
♠452-1	PFP middle paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller. Paper length 220mm to 329mm.	All	8	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	6
♠452-2	PFP middle paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller. Paper length 219mm and less.	All	5	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	6
♠Key in Code 450 or 452 press the START key, key in the Sub Code, then press the START key. Key in the value, press SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						
455	Duplexer paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller.	All	10	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	1
■456-0	PFP lower paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller. Paper length 330mm and longer.	All	2	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	6
■456-1	PFP lower paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller. Paper length 220mm to 329mm.	All	8	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	6
■456-2	PFP lower paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller. Paper length 229mm and less.	All	5	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	6
■Key in Code 456 press the START key, key in the Sub Code, then press the START key. Key in the value, press SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						
#457	LCF paper alignment (paper buckle) at the main registration roller.	All	16	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	1
#458	Manual feed paper alignment (paper buckle) amount at he main registration roller.	All	14	0-31	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	1
#459	PFP upper paper alignment (paper buckle) at the PFP upper registration roller.	All	4	0-15	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	1
#460	PFP middle paper alignment (paper buckle) at the PFP middle registration roller.	All	7	0-15	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	1

05 MODE						
CODE	ADJUSMENT	MODE	DEFAULT	RANGE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE GROUP
#461	PFP lower paper alignment (paper buckle) at the PFP lower registration roller.	All	7	0-15	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	1
#462	Duplexer registration roller paper alignment (paper buckle)	All	4	0-15	Increasing the value by 1 increases the aligning (paper buckle) by 0.9mm.	1
464 *	Duplexer end guide shifting amount	All	2	0-3	In stacking of only a few sheets in the case of the following values only, the end guide is moved towards the pickup roller compared with the standard pickup roller position. If the paper is a large size than the standard one or it has much curing or the edges are turned, then if a jam occurs, the position of the end guide is lowered. This will help to decrease the possibility of future jams. 0: A3/LD 0~2mm, other. 0~2mm 1: A3/LD 0~2mm, other. 0~0mm 2: A3/LD 0~4mm, other. 0~2mm 3: A3/LD 0~4mm, other. 0~0mm	1
# Key in the value, press the SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						
▲468-0	Binding position/folding position fine adjustment (A4-R/LT-R)	All	0	-14-14	Position shifts to the right page 0.25mm/step.	6
▲468-1	Binding position/folding position fine adjustment (B4).	All	0	-14-14		
▲468-2	Binding position/folding position fine adjustment (A3/LD)	All	0	-14-14		
469 *	Finisher aligning speed adjustment	All	0	0-4	0: High 1: Middle-high 2: Middle 3: Middle-low 4: Low If the adjustment value is made larger, the finisher aligning speed becomes slower. If the paper exiting to the finisher becomes misaligned or there are staple jams, then only on these occasions these codes should be used.	1
▲ Key in Code 468 press the Start key, key in the Sub Code, then press the START key. Key in the value, press SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						
470	Paper remaining indicator. Automatic adjustment for EMPTY condition. LCF and Drawers.	All	—	0-31	Remove all of the paper from the LCF and PFP, then perform the automatic adjustment.	8

(*) These new codes (464,469) are available from the 8070.

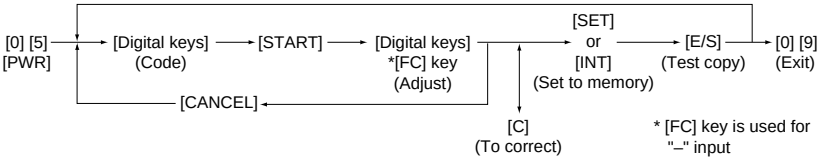
05 MODE						
CODE	ADJUSMENT	MODE	DEFAULT	RANGE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE GROUP
471	Paper remaining indicator. LCF manual adjustment for LESS than 1/2 the capacity. Key in the value, press the START key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.	All	4	0-31	Perform the manual adjustment when the remaining amount of paper is less than 1/2. Perform adjustment code 470 first. Then adjust as necessary. Decrease the value in these codes when the remaining amount of paper indication is slower than the actual amount of paper. Example: When the paper remaining indicator shows "▤" then changes suddenly to "▁"	1
472	Paper remaining indicator. PFP upper manual adjustment for LESS than 1/2 the capacity. Key in the value, press the START key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.	All	10	0-31		
473	Paper remaining indicator. PFP middle manual adjustment for LESS than 1/2 the capacity. Key in the value, press the START key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.	All	10	0-31		
474	Paper remaining indicator. PFP lower manual adjustment for LESS than 1/2 the capacity. Key in the value, press the START key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.	All	10	0-31		
475	Paper remaining indicator. Automatic adjustment for FULL condition. LCF and PFP.	All	—	—	Load 4,000 sheets of paper in the LCC and 500 sheets in the Drawers, then perform the automatic adjustment.	8
△476	Paper remaining indicator. LCF manual adjustment for MORE than 1/2 the capacity.	All	2	0-31	Perform the manual adjustment when the remaining amount of paper is greater than 1/2. Perform adjustment code 475 first. Then adjust as necessary. Increase the value in these codes when the remaining amount of paper indication is greater than the actual amount of paper. Example: When the paper remaining indicator shows "▤" then changes suddenly to "▤"	1
△477	Paper remaining indicator. PFP upper manual adjustment for MORE than 1/2 the capacity.	All	2	0-31		
△478	Paper remaining indicator. PFP middle manual adjustment for MORE than 1/2 the capacity.	All	LT size: 4 A/B size: 8	0-31		
△479	Paper remaining indicator. PFP lower manual adjustment for MORE than 1/2 the capacity.	All	LT size: 7 A/B size: 3	0-31		
△481	Drum motor speed fine adjustment.	Copier	128	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the motor speed by 0.067%. Set value to 128 for the copier and 120 for the printer.	1
△482	Drum motor speed fine adjustment.	Printer	120	0-255		
△483	Registration motor speed fine adjustment.	Copier	128	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the motor speed by 0.097%. Set value to 128 for the copier and printer.	1
△484	Registration motor speed fine adjustment.	Printer	128	0-255		
△485	Fuser drive motor speed fine adjustment.	Copier	128	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the motor speed by 0.061%. Set value to 128 for the copier and printer.	1
△486	Fuser drive motor speed fine adjustment.	Printer	128	0-255		
△487	Transfer belt drive motor speed fine adjustment.	Copier	128	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the motor speed by 0.127%/step (or 0.254mm/step). Refer to the complete adjustment procedure before performing this adjustment.	1
△488	Transfer belt drive motor speed fine adjustment.	Printer	132	0-255		
△489	Pedestal drive motor speed fine adjustment.	Copier	128	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the motor speed by 0.061%. Set value to 128 for the copier and printer.	1
△490	Pedestal drive motor speed fine adjustment.	Printer	128	0-255		

05 MODE						
CODE	ADJUSMENT	MODE	DEFAULT	RANGE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE GROUP
△491	Duplexer drive motor speed fine adjustment.	Copier	128	0-255	Increasing the value by 1 increases the motor speed by 0.148%. Set value to 128 for the copier and the printer.	1
△492	Duplexer drive motor speed fine adjustment.	Printer	128	0-255		
△ Key in the value, press the SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						
▼493-0	Developer drive motor speed fine adjustment. Set to the default value.	Copier (Text/Photo)	6	0-15	Increasing the value by 1 increases the motor speed by 3.85%. Set value to 6.	1
▼493-1	Developer drive motor speed fine adjustment. Set to the default value.	Copier (Text)	6	0-15		
▼493-2	Developer drive motor speed fine adjustment. Set to the default value.	Copier (Photo)	6	0-15		
▼ Key in code 493 press the START key, key in the Sub Code, then press the START key. Key in the value, press the SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						
★495	Developer drive motor speed fine adjustment.	Printer	6	0-15	Increasing the value by 1 increases the motor speed by 3.85%. set value to 6.	1
★501	Manual exposure fine adjustment for the center setting.	Copier (Photo)	128	0-255	Increasing the value darkens the copy at the center setting of manual exposure.	1
★503	Manual exposure fine adjustment for the center setting.	Copier (Text/Photo)	128	0-255		1
★504	Manual exposure fine adjustment for the center setting.	Copier (Text)	128	0-255		1
★505	Manual exposure fine adjustment for the lighter setting.	Copier (Text/ Photo)	20	0-255	Increasing the value lightens the copy at the lighter setting of manual exposure.	1
★506	Manual exposure fine adjustment for the lighter setting.	Copier (Photo)	10	0-255		1
★507	Manual exposure fine adjustment for the lighter setting.	Copier (Text)	30	0-255		1
★508	Manual exposure fine adjustment for the darker setting.	Copier (Text/Photo)	13	0-255	Increasing the value darkens the copy at the darker setting of manual exposure.	1
★509	Manual exposure fine adjustment for the darker setting.	Copier (Photo)	20	0-255		1
★510	Manual exposure fine adjustment for the darker setting.	Copier (Text)	12	0-255		1
★512	Automatic exposure fine adjustment.	Copier (Photo)	128	0-255	Increasing the value darkens the copy at the automatic exposure setting.	1
★514	Automatic exposure fine adjustment.	Copier (Text/Photo)	128	0-255		1
★515	Automatic exposure fine adjustment.	Copier (Text)	128	0-255		1
★ Key in the value, press the SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset.						
580	Image mode automatic gamma adjustment for error diffusion. The TEST PRINT must be on the exposure glass or ERROR will occur.	Copier	None	None	Automatically corrects the image quality after reading the test print pattern. Before performing this adjustment refer to the complete adjustment.	5
593	Image mode gamma data slope correction. Data adjustment for gamma correction.	Copier (Text/Photo)	0	0-9	Increasing the value darkens the image. 0: Default value is the center value 5 (Same as set value 5). 1-9: Slope correction (the higher the value, the darker the image becomes).	1
594	Image mode gamma data slope correction. Data adjustment for gamma correction.	Copier (Photo)	0	0-9		
595	Image mode gamma data slope correction. Data adjustment for gamma correction.	Copier (Text)	0	0-9		

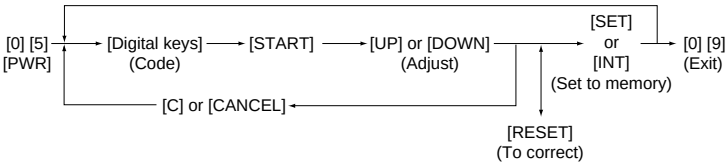
05 MODE						
CODE	ADJUSMENT	MODE	DEFAULT	RANGE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE GROUP
620	HPF(High Pass Filter) strength setting. Normally set it to 1 this places the filtering in the optimum range for the Text/Photo mode.	Copier (Text/Photo)	1	1 Right digit 0-9 Left digit	Right hand digit (2nd digit entered): 1: Text/Photo (fixed at the optimum level) do not enter values other than 1 for the right hand digit. Left hand digit (1st digit entered): 0: Default value is used 1-9: Increasing the value setting enhances the image sharpness Do not set to values other than these: 1, 11, 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, 81, 91.	1
621	HPF(High Pass Filter) strength setting. Normally set it to 2 this places the filtering in the optimum range for the Photo mode.	Copier (Photo)	2	2 Right digit 0-9 Left digit	Right hand digit (2nd digit entered): 2: Photo (fixed at the optimum level) do not enter values other than 2 for the right hand digit. Left hand digit (1st digit entered): 0: Default value is used 1-9: Increasing the value setting enhances the image sharpness Do not set to values other than these: 2, 12, 22, 32, 42, 52, 62, 72, 82, 92.	1
622	HPF(High Pass Filter) strength setting. Normally set it to 3 this places the filtering in the optimum range for the Text mode.	Copier (Text)	3	3 Right digit 0-9 Left digit	Right hand digit (2nd digit entered): 3: Text (fixed at the optimum level) do not enter values other than 3 for the right hand digit. Left hand digit (1st digit entered): 0: Default value is used 1-9: Increasing the value setting enhances the image sharpness Do not set to values other than these: 3, 13, 23, 33, 43, 53, 63, 73, 83, 93.	1

<Procedure>

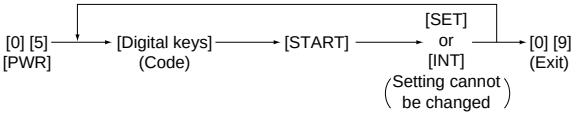
Group 1



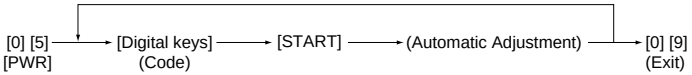
Group 2



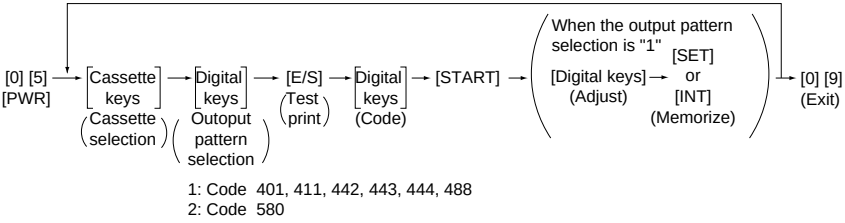
Group 3



Group 4

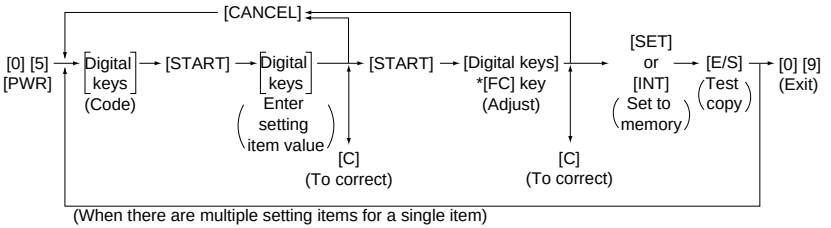


Group 5



1: Code 401, 411, 442, 443, 444, 488
2: Code 580

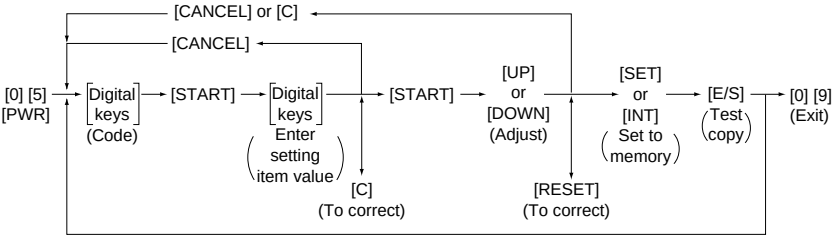
Group 6



(When there are multiple setting items for a single item)

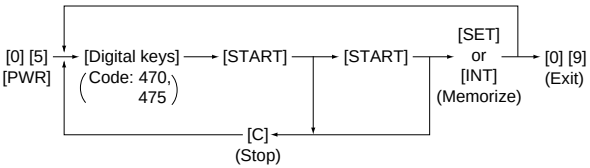
*[FC] key is used for "–" input

Group 7



(When there are multiple setting items for a single item)

Group 8

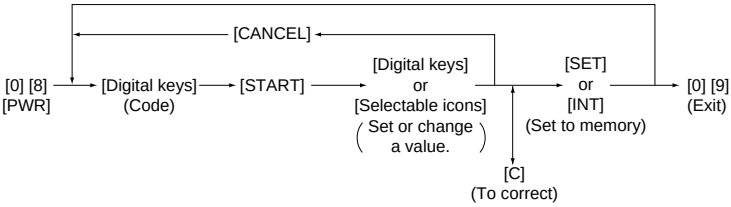


1.2.5 Setting mode (08)

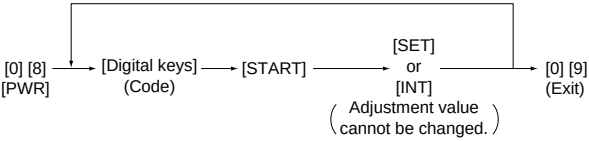
In this mode, the various special modes listed in the Setting Code List can be set or changed.

<Procedure>

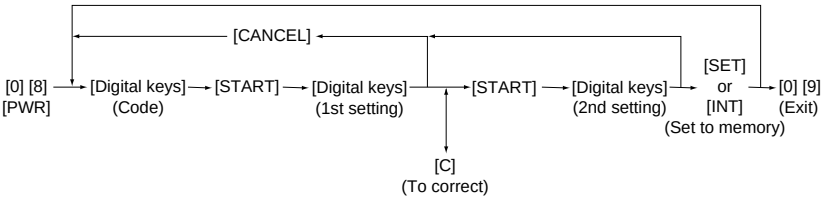
Group 1



Group 2



Group 3



08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
200	Date and time setting	All			13 digits	Year/month/date/day/hour/minute/second Example: 99:08:07:5:11:30:48	1
201	Country paper size change.	All		0/1	0-2	0: Europe (A4/A3/Follio) 1: USA/Canada (Letter/Ledger) 2: Japan (A4/B4)	1
202	Externally installed copy counter/control device	All		0	0-3	Function Clear	
						0: No external copy counter/control device — Not applied 1: Coin controller — Not applied 2: Copy key card — Applied 3: Key counter — Applied	1
						* Condition for Function Clear 2: when card is pulled out 3: when key copy counter is pulled out	
203	Line adjustment mode	All		0	0-1	0: factory shipment 1: for line *Field: Indispensable "0" *When exchanging K-SRAM: needed check	1
204	Clear control panel settings and return to default settings time out	All		3	0-10	0: Disabled 1 to 10: Set number X 15 seconds	1
205	Timer for switching from Readymode to Energy Saver mode.	All		11: JPN 11: UC 11: EUR 0: Others	0-15	0: Disabled 1: 30 sec. 2: 60 sec. 3: 90 sec. 4: 120 sec. 5: 150 sec. 6: 3 min. 7: 4 min. 8: 5 min. 9: 7 min. 10: 10 min. 11: 15 min. 12: 20 min. 13: 30 min. 14: 45 min. 15: 60 min.	1
206	Timer for switching from Ready mode to Auto-Power Shut OFF. US Energy Star Compliance.	All		12: JPN 12: UC 12: EUR 20: Others	0-20	0: 3 min. 1: 5 min.. 2: 10 min. 3: 15 min. 4: 20 min. 5: 25 min.. 6: 30 min. 7: 40 min. 8: 50 min. 9: 60 min. 10: 70 min. 11: 80 min. 12: 90 min. 13: 100 min. 14: 110 min. 15: 120 min. 16: 150 min. 17: 180 min. 18: 210 min. 19: 240 min. 20: Disabled	1
209	Timer for Print job start up time from copy mode	All		1	1-10	1 to 10 Set number X 15 seconds	1
220	Message display language priority.	All		0	0-2	0: English 1: French 2: Spanish After setting the desired language turn the machine power OFF then ON to change the current language in the display. Note: the customer can change the language from the display using the ADJUST icon key.	1
223	Copy or Printer priority mode.	All		0	0-1	0: Copy Mode can interrupt the Print mode during a print job. 1: Copy Mode cannot interrupt the Print Mode during a print job.	1
224	Bypass paper size selection.	All		0-255	Undefined	Select a paper size from the display ICON list of paper sizes. The range changes with the paper size selected.	1
225	LCF upper paper size selection.	All		0-255	Letter		
226	PFP upper paper size selection.	All		0-255	Letter-R /A4-R		
227	PFP middle paper size selection.	All		0-255	Legal/A3		
228	PFP lower paper size selection.	All		0-255	Ledger/A4		
229	Paper size A3 length/width	All		420 X 297	182~432 X 140~297	420 X 297mm	3
230	Paper size A4-R length/width	All		297 X 210	182~432 X 140~297	297 X 210mm	3
231	Paper size A5-R length/width	All		210 X 148	182~432 X 140~297	210 X 148mm	3
232	Paper size B4 length/width	All		364 X 257	182~432 X 140~297	364 X 257mm	3
233	Paper size B5-R length/width	All		257 X 182	182~432 X 140~297	257 X 182mm	3

08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
234	Paper size Letter-R length/width	All		279 X 216	182~432 X 140~297	279 X 216mm	3
235	Paper size Ledger length/width	All		432 X 279	182~432 X 140~297	432 X 279mm	3
236	Paper size Legal length/width	All		356 X 216	182~432 X 140~297	356 X 216mm	3
237	Paper size ST-R length/width	All		216 X 140	182~432 X 140~297	216 X 140mm	3
238	Paper size Computer length/ width	All		356 X 257	182~432 X 140~297	356 X 257mm	3
239	Paper size Folio length/width	All		330 X 210	182~432 X 140~297	330 X 210mm	3
240	Paper size 13 inch Legal (Officio) length/width	All		330 X 216	182~432 X 140~297	330 X 216mm	3
241	Paper size 8.5 X 8.5 inch square length/width	All		216 X 216	182~432 X 140~297	216 X 216mm	3
242	Paper size Universal length/ width	All		432 X 279	182~432 X 140~297	When setting the Universal paper size, remember that the size entered here will limit the maximum size paper the customer can load in a drawer when the Universal paper size is selected from the display.	3
250	Telephone number for "CALL FOR SERVICE"	All		0	14 digits	A telephone number up to 14 digits can be entered. Use the HELP key to enter hyphens (-).	1
251	PM (Preventative Maintenance) counter setting value.	All		400000	0-99999999	Set the counter to the amount of copies/prints that the customer wants to have preventative maintenance performed at. Note: When this counter is set to 0 the counter in code 252 will not count up, it remains at 0.	1
252	PM (Preventative Maintenance) counter Current value.	All		0	0-99999999	Set to 0 after the PM is performed. When code 251 is set to 0, this counter will remain at 0.	1
253	Error code history display.	All		—	—	See page from 1-1 to 1-4 for complete error code history information.	2
300	Maximum number of copies allowed.	Copier		0	0-2	0: 999 1: 99 2: 9	1
302	Resettable Copy and Original counter display.	All		0 3:EUR	0-3	0: off 1: Resettable Copy counter 2: Resettable Original counter 3: Resettable Copy and Original counters	1
351	Electronic total copy/print counter.	All		0	0-99999999	Electronic counter counts all copies and prints including all test mode copies. Note: The mechanical counter only counts the customers' copies and prints not test mode copies or prints.	1
352	Ledger/A3 double count.	All		0:6570 5570 4580 1:8070	0-1	0: Single count (count LD or A3 copies and prints as a 1 page) 1: Double count (count LD or A3 copies and prints as 2 pages)	1
353	Short size counter	All		0	0-99999999	Each counter can be set to 0 (zero) or any other value. When set to 0 this will accurately record the number of pages from each area from the last PM or service call. The counter information can also be supplied to the customer for tracking the usage of an area of the machine.	1
354	Long size counter	All		0	0-99999999		
358	Bypass counter	All		0	0-99999999		
359	LCF counter	All		0	0-99999999		
360	PFP upper counter	All		0	0-99999999		
370	PFP middle counter	All		0	0-99999999		
371	PFP lower counter	All		0	0-99999999		
372	Duplexer counter	All		0	0-99999999		
374	RADF original counter	All		0	0-99999999		
375	Copy job counter	All		0	0-99999999		
376	Pint job counter	All		0	0-99999999		

08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
382	LCF tray lockout counter. Note: For tray lockout clearing to take effect set to 0, then turn the machinepower switch x machine ON.	All		0	0-1	The LCF tray operation is displayed when there is a problem detected with the tray raising or lowering. The machine logic disables the LCF tray movement by placing a 1 in the memory at code 382. To enable the LCF set code 382 to 0 and determine the cause of the LCF tray movement problem.	1

08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
390	HDD (Hard Disk Drive) error counter Note: Only the counter value can be displayed. A value cannot be entered or changed.	Copier		0	0-32767	When an internal problem with the HDD occurs, an error is recorded in the memory at code 390. When too many errors occur, it is then necessary to replace the HDD.	2
393	HDD (Hard Disk Drive) machine (system) error counter Note: Only the counter value can be displayed. A value cannot be entered or changed.	Copier/ Printer (system)		0	0-32767	When there is a problem communicating to the HDD through the machine interfaces an error is recorded in memory in code. When this occurs often, the machine interface cables and PWA's that provide communications to the HDD must be checked and replaced as necessary.	2
400	Thermistor status counter To clear enter 0 then press SET or INTERRUPT. Note: Entering a value other than 0 will create a "CALL FOR SERVICE" condition.	All	All	0	0-9	0: No error 1: C41 occurred once 2: C41 occurs continuously 3: C46 error 4: C43 error 5: C44 error 6: C43 error 7: C44 error 8: C45 error 9: C44 error See the trouble shooting section for additional information.	1
401	Drum counter	All	All	0	0-99999999	Set this counter to 0 anytime the drum is replaced. The count is determined by the amount of time the drum drive motor runs.	1
404	Developer counter	All	All	0	0-99999999	Set this counter to 0 anytime the material is replaced. The count is the total of all copies and prints, including all test mode copies and prints.	1
407	Fuser pre-running time. The time allowed for the fuser to rotate during the warm up mode.	All	—	8	0-14	0: 120 sec. 1: 135 sec. 2: 150 sec. 3: 165 sec. 4: 180 sec. 5: 195 sec. 6: 210sec. 7: 225 sec. 8: 240 sec. 9: 255 sec. 10: 270 sec. 11: 285 sec. 12: 300 sec. 13: 315 sec. 14: 330 sec.	1
410	Fuser temperature in the Print mode.	Printer	—	8	0-15	0: 173°C 1: 180°C 2: 183°C 3: 186°C 4: 189°C 5: 192°C 6: 195°C 7: 198°C 8: 200°C 9: 203°C 10: 206°C 11: 209°C 12: 212°C 13: 215°C 14: 218°C 15: 221°C	1
411	Fuser temperature when the copier is Ready.	All	All	8	0-15	0: 173°C 1: 180°C 2: 183°C 3: 186°C 4: 189°C 5: 192°C 6: 195°C 7: 198°C 8: 200°C 9: 203°C 10: 206°C 11: 209°C 12: 212°C 13: 215°C 14: 218°C 15: 221°C	1
412	Fuser temperature in the ENERGY SAVER mode	All	—	3	0-15	0: 160°C 1: 164°C 2: 167°C 3: 170°C 4: 173°C 5: 180°C 6: 183°C 7: 186°C 8: 189°C 9: 192°C 10: 195°C 11: 198°C 12: 200°C 13: 203°C 14: 206°C 15: 210°C	1

08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
414	Developer powder life control switching	All		0	0-4	0:X-10bit 1:X-14bit 2:X-20bit 3:X-30bit 4:X X: Correction control value before the following versions PRA-300M-09 PRA-302M-03 PRA-304M-01	1
418	Charge corona wire cleaning	All		0	0-1	0: Enabled (cleans every 2,000 copies/prints) 1: Disabled (no cleaning)	1

08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
449	Temporary laser running service mode when the laser beam position adjustment fails. Key in the value, press the SET key to store or the CLEAR key to reset. Set to 1 until copier laser unit can be replaced. Service call Error Codes CA3, CA4, CA5, CA6, CAA, CAB, CAC, CAD, CAE, CAF, or CD0. See troubleshooting section for additional information.	All		0	0-1	0: Normal Mode the laser unit operates in this mode unless a service call is indicated when the beam position adjustment fails. 1: Continuous Mode Set to this mode when the laser beam adjustment has failed. The results of this setting places the laser beam close to target even though the beam position adjustment has failed.	1
460	RADF reversing of transfer belt during original feed to align originals against the original stop.	All		0	0-1	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1
461	RADF automatic detection of the original size.	All		0	0-1	0: Non-standard(Machine will not stop and prompt operator to select copy size when non-standard originals are used). 1: Standard(Machine will stop and prompt operator to select copy size when non-standard originals are used).	1
464	Correspondence for Exposure fluetuations	All		1	0-1	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1
480	Paper source priority selection	All		1	0-4	0: LT/A4 1: LCC 2: Upper drawer 3: Middle drawer 4: Lower drawer	1
481	Automatic paper source change.	All		1	0-2	0: OFF 1: Normal 3: Extended when 1 is set, a paper source becomes empty and the same size paper is present in another source the machine will automatically switch to that source of paper.	1
482	Paper feed retry.	All		0	0-1	0: Enabled 1: Disabled when set to 0 the machine will only attempt to feed the paper 1 time before display a misfeed condition. When set to 1 the machine will attempt to feed the paper 2 times before displaying a misfeed condition.	1
483	Polygonal motor pre-running.	All	All	0	0-2	0: Enabled - RADF (when originals are placed in the tray) and Exposure Glass (when RADF is lifted). 1: Disabled - Motor starts running when the START key is pressed. This will delay the start of copying by 30 seconds. 2: Enabled - RADF only (when originals are placed in the tray) Note: This code is effective only when 08-485 is set to 1.	1
484	Polygonal motor stops at an auto clear (time out) of control panel settings.	All	All	0	0-1	0: Enabled - RADF and exposure glass. 1: Disabled Note: This code is effective only when 08-485 is set to 1.	1
485	Polygonal motor rotation or stop mode.	All	All	0	0-1	0: Rotation 1: Stop When Code 485 is set to 1 the polygonal motor runs all the time. When Code 485 is to 1 the polygonal motor runs according to the settings of Codes 483 and 486.	1
486	Polygonal motor stop time	All	All		0-2	0: 1 minute 1: 3 minutes 2: 5 minutes Effective when 08-484 is set to 0.	1
487 *	Duplexer initial alignment operation	All		0	0-1	0: Enabled 1: Disabled Correct the side skew and the paper corner folding within three copies. If default 1 is selected, the copying speed is a little lower than normal.	1

(*) These new codes (487, 488) are available from the 8070.

08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
488 *	Alignment of the system ROM and the printer ROM	All		0	0-1	When the alignment between the FROM on the SYS Board and MROM on the LGC Board is wrong, this code should be used for preventing operation error. (Note) Production before March, 2000 Default: 0 Old version Production after April, 2000 Default: 1 New version	1
503	Exposure priority power on.	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: Automatic exposure 1: Manual exposure	1
550	Image mode priority	Copier	All	0	0-2	0: Text/Photo 1: Photo 2: Text	1
600	Electronic access code. Note: When this is enabled it does not provide Electronic Access control for the Print mode.	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: Disabled 1: Enabled How to set the Electronic Access Codes is provided in the separate operators manual that is included with the copier at the time of shipping. The information is also provided in this service manual.	1
602	Automatic Energy Saver Icon Automatic Power OFF Icon	All	All	0: Australia Taiwan Saudi Arabia Asian Region 1: JPN, UC, EUR	0-1	0:OFF - Icons are NOT in the display. The customer cannot adjust the Energy Saver and Auto Power Off times. They can only be set by a service technician using 08-205 and 08-206. 1: ON - Icons are in the display. The customer can adjust the Energy Saver and Power OFF times.	1
603	Automatic duplexing mode	Copier	All	0	0-3	0: Displayed 1: Single sided to Double sided 2: Double sided to Double sided 3: User selection	1
604	APS (Auto Paper Size) AMS (Auto Magnification Selection) Mode priority at power on.	Copier	All	0	0-2	0: APS mode 1: AMS mode 3: None	1
607	RADF priority mode at power on.	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: START key (place originals in the tray then press the START key). 1: Auto Start (machine automatically starts copying when originals are placed 1 at a time in the RADF).	1
611	Book double-sided original selection	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: Opening book (copying) from front 1: Opening book (copying)) from back	1
613	User paper size selection for the OTHER key. Note : The customer can change the paper size using the adjust selections.	Copier	All	EUR: FOLIO UC : COMPUTER	0-255	Select the Icon of the paper size requested.	1
618	Mixed size originals priority selection. Note: For USA only Letter-R and Legal size originals can be mixed. For Europe only A4 and A3 size originals can be mixed.	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: Same size originals 1: Mixed originals	1
625	Non-printed sheet prevention mode	Copier		0	0-1	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1

(*) These new codes (487, 488) are available from the 8070.

08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
626	Bypass feed paper size recognition	Copier	All	1	0-1	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1
636	Image shift copying width setting singly (linkage of front side and back side)	All		0	0-1	0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1
638	Paper size change in drawer or LCC enable	Copier	All	2	0-2	0: All menu operations allowed 1: All menu operations prohibited 2: Sheet cassette selectable	1
639	Date and Time display	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1
640	Date format	Copier	All	0: Japan 1: Europe 2: UC, Others	0-2	0: 1999.10.16 1: 16.10.1999 2: 10.16.1999	1
641	Automatic sorting mode from the RADF.	Copier	All	2	0-3	0: OFF 1: STAPLE 2: SORT 3: STACK	1
642	Finisher mode priority selection at power on.	Copier	All	0	0-3	0: NON SORT 1: STAPLE 2: SORT 3: STACK	1
645	Reproduction ratio in the editing mode.	Copier	All	10	0-10	0: 90% 3: 93% 6: 96% 9: 99% 1: 91% 4: 94% 7: 97% 10: 100% 2: 92% 5: 95% 8: 98%	1
646	2 on 1 and 4 on 1 placement of images.	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: Horizontally centers the 2 on 1 images. 1: Vertically centers 4 on 1 images.	1
648	Finisher tray reset	All		0	0-1	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1
649	Magazine sort	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: Opening from the front of the book. 1: Opening from the rear of the book.	1
650	2 on 1 and 4 on 1 order of image placement.	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: Forward image placement 1: Reverse image placement	1
651	Page Numbering	Copier	All	0	0-3	Hyphen / White area provided on black Solids for number 0: OFF / OFF 1: ON / OFF 2: OFF / ON 3: ON / ON hyphen = -1- Example of Hyphen and White area	1
652	Cascade operation setting	Copier		0	0-1	0: OFF 1: ON	1
653	Cascade operation setting	Printer		0	0-1	0: OFF 1: ON	1
657	Annotation default direction when the power is turned on.	Copier	All	0	0-1	0: Short edge 1: Long edge	1
658	Restart setting when supplying paper during the bypass feeding job.	Printer		0	0-1	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1
680	SCSI ID setting.	DSS		0	0-15		1
681	Tandem copy setting	DSS		0	0-1	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1
682	Language supported by SC-2	DSS	—	0	0-1	0: Enabled 1: Disabled (English fixing)	1
690	HDD formatting (Hard Disk Drive). Perform the formatting when the HDD is replaced or the data has been corrupted.	All	—	—	2-4	2: DSI Type formatted. The power switch must be turned OFF/ON after the “WAIT” message is no longer displayed. 3: Tandem type formatted. 4: Only Tamdem area formatted.	1
691	HDD Type display	All	—	—	0-3	0 : Not formatted. 1 : Not used. 2 : DSI Type formatted. 3 : Tandem type formatted. This item is added from the 8070. Power must be turned OFF after "WAIT" is cleared.	2

08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
692	HDD size display	All		—	—	X.X GB	2
800	Toner adhesion amount sensor error count/clear	All		0	0-16		1
802	Image quality maintenance control ON/OFF	All		0	0-1	0: ON 1: OFF	1
803	Image quality maintenance control startup count setting	All		2	0-30	unit : X1,000 sheets	1

08 MODE							
CODE	NAME	MODE	IMAGE MODE	DEFAULT	ALLOWABLE INPUT VALUES	CONTENTS	PROCE-DURE GROUP
805	Test pattern data-1 setting	All		88	0-255		1
814	Toner adhesion amount sensor abnormal value	All		97	0-255		1
900	Displays the System FLASH ROM version for all 6 programs data.	All	—	—	—	JPN : T300SJXXXX UC : T300SUXXXX EU : T300SEXXXX Others: T300SXXXX	2
903	Displays the Main Logic EPROM version	All	—	—	—	30*M-XXX	2
904	Displays the Laser Logic EPROM version	All	—	—	—	300L-XXX	2
905	Displays the Scanner Logic EPROM version	All	—	—	—	300S-XXX	2
921	Displays the System Logic FLASH ROM program data version.	All	—	—	—	VXXX.XXX Example : V006.148 U	
922	Displays the System Logic FLASH ROM Fixed UI (User interface) data fixed area version.	All	—	—	—	VXXX.XXX Example : V006.000 0	
923	Displays the System Logic FLASH ROM Common UI (User interface) data common area version.	All	—	—	—	VXXX.XXX Example : V005.000 0	
924	Displays the System Logic FLASH ROM 1st language UI (User interface) data version.	All	—	—	—	VXXX.XXX Example : V010.001 3	
925	Displays the System Logic FLASH ROM 2nd language UI (User interface) data version.	All	—	—	—	VXXX.XXX Example : V006.000 0	
926	Displays the System Logic FLASH ROM 3rd language UI (User interface) data version.	All	—	—	—	VXXX.XXX Example : V004.001 11	

Supplementary:

(1) Mode "08-203"
When the K-SRAM as a service part is installed, the setting mode "08-203" must be changed at "0". When it is set at "1" the copier may not be able to operate.

(2) Mode "08-449"
Due to the error of an optical component such as the galvanomirror or an error caused by the passing time of the housing, if the beam positioning adjustment is not finished correctly, an temporary countermeasure will be brought about and a mode in which printing can continue to operate be applied. (if the HSYNK is not taken, printing is impossible).
If there is an error in the galvanomirror, then correction control is not performed and "Service Call" is displayed so the copier stops. When image deterioration is allowable, copier can be used without any judgement as to whether adjustment has been finished or not. This can continue until a replacement unit is available and service technician can use this mode for that purpose.

(3) Mode "08-658"
If paper runs out during printing with the bypass, "automatic start or not" is set after paper has been added to the bypass.

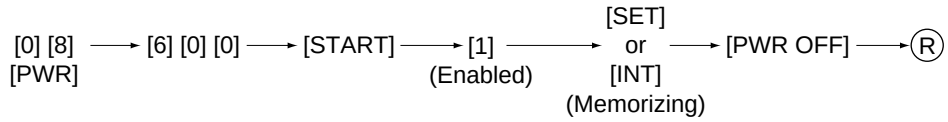
(4) Mode "08-653, 658, 680"
To use these codes, each function should be mounted in advance.

(5) Mode "08-202"
Function clear when there is no key copy counter. When the key copy counter or the card is pulled out, all the setting contents will be cleared. Only when the setting value of 08/202 is 2 or 3, this funcion is effective.

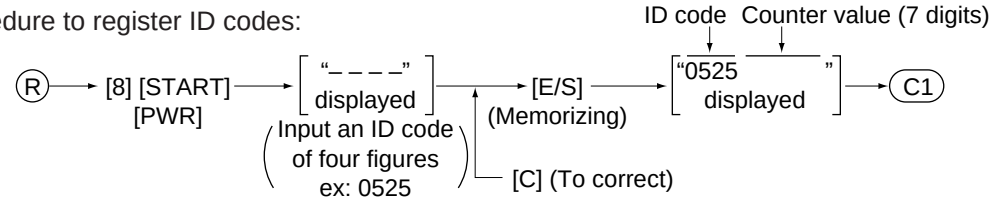
1.2.6 How to register/change ID codes (Access control mode)

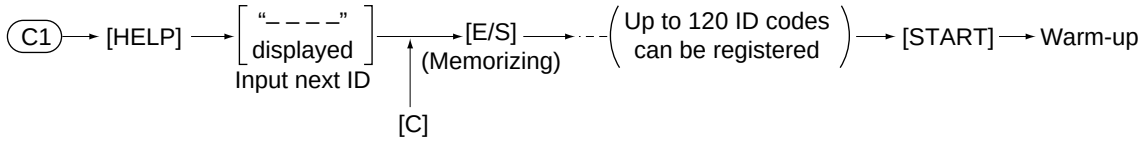
When ID codes are registered, copies made will be classified according to each ID code. The copier will not start unless one of the ID codes registered is keyed in.

<Preparation to enter the access control mode>

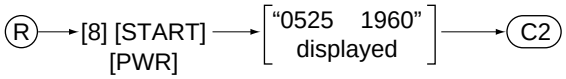


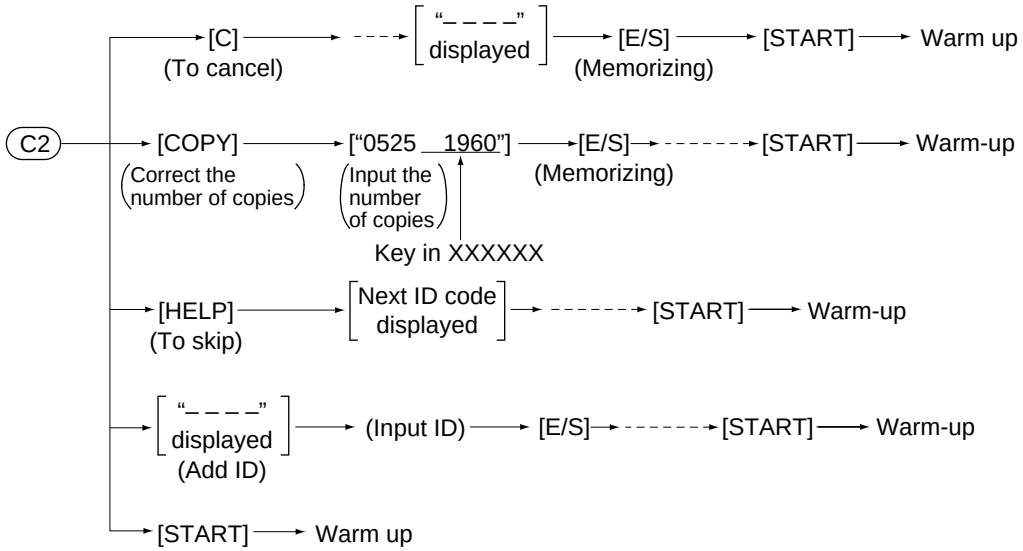
Procedure to register ID codes:





Procedure to change ID codes:





1.3 Formatting the Hard Disk

<Procedure>

(1) Turn the power switch ON while pressing [0] and [8] keys simultaneously.
(2) Make sure that the display indicates the system mode, enter the code [690] and press the [START] key.
(3) Next, input [2] and press the [INT] key.
(4) “Wait” appears on the display.
(5) When “wait” disappears, turn the power switch OFF.

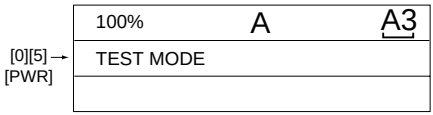
1.4 Auto-Toner Sensor Adjustment

Note: Before performing this adjustment, make sure that the main blade is pressed against the drum.

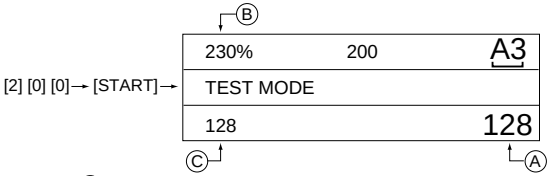
<Procedure> (Use code "200" in the "05" mode.)

(1) Install the process unit to the copier (main blade contacts with drum).

(2) Press the keys [0] and [5] at the same time and turn on the power switch.
The following display appears indicating that the adjustment mode has been entered.

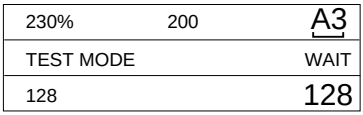


(3) Enter [200] using the digital keys and press the [START] key.
The following display will appear.

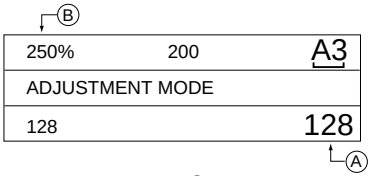


Note: Ⓐ: Indicates the control data value of the auto-toner sensor output. Use the Up, Down icon to change the numerical values.
Ⓑ: The above display indicates an output voltage of 2.30V.
Ⓒ: Indicates the latest adjustment value.
The drum, developer unit, etc., are operating at this time.

(4) After approximately two minutes, the Ⓑ on the message display will automatically start changing.



(5) After a short time, the Ⓑ on the message display will automatically stop changing and, at the same time, the message will also change as shown below, indicating that the auto-toner adjustment has finished completely.



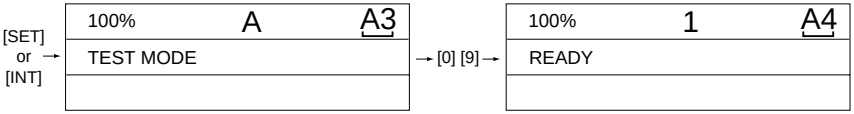
(6) In this status, check if the numerical value in Ⓑ is within the range of 245 ~ 255 (auto-toner sensor output range of 2.45 V ~ 2.55 V).

(7) If the numerical value in Ⓑ is not within the range of 245 ~ 255, use the Up, Down icon to adjust the numerical values manually to within the range of 245 ~ 255.

Note: The relationship between the icon and the numerical values in Ⓐ and Ⓑ is as shown below.

Key used	Ⓐ value	Ⓑ value
Up icon	Increase	Increase
Down icon	Decrease	Decrease

(8) Press the [SET] icon or the [INTERRUPT] key.
The drum, developer unit, etc., will stop operating and the following will be displayed.



(9) Simultaneously press [0] and [9] to exit the adjustment mode.

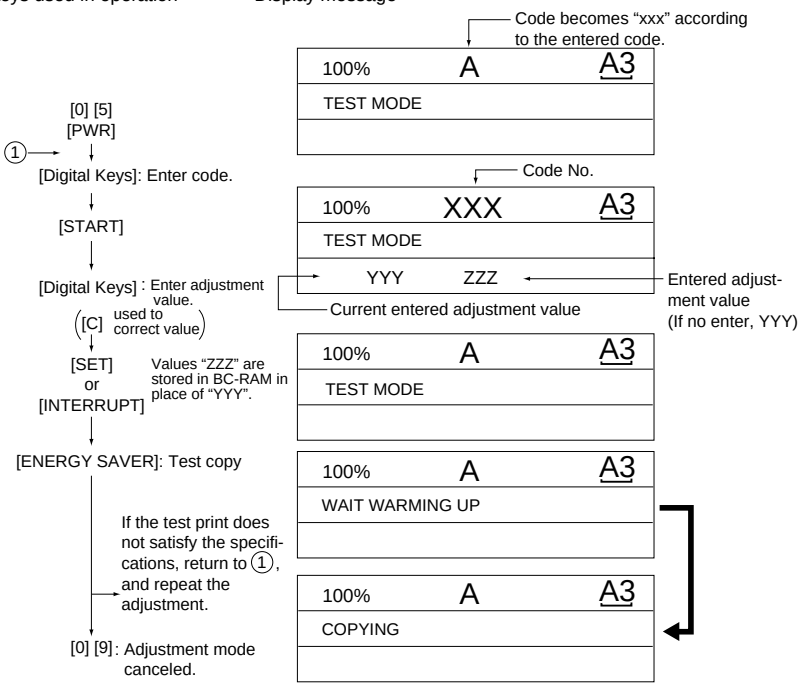
1.5 Print Image Adjustment

As for the print image adjustment, the adjustment items are listed below.
The adjustment should be performed in the following order.

Adjustment Item	Code
(1) Aligning value	(450) ~ (458)
(2) Printer unit adjustment	
a) Primary scanning reproduction ratio Polygonal motor 600 dpi/Printer	(401)
b) Primary scanning position Laser write start position	(411) (410)
c) Secondary scanning reproduction ratio Transfer belt speed adjustment/Printer	(488)
d) Secondary scanning position Laser write start position	(443) (444) (442)
(3) Scanner unit adjustment	
a) Image distortion	–
b) Primary scanning reproduction ratio Polygonal motor 600 dpi/PPC	(405)
c) Primary scanning position CCD primary scanning deviation	(306)
d) Secondary scanning reproduction ratio Scanner secondary scanning reproduction ratio	(340)
e) Secondary scanning position Scanner secondary scanning deviation	(305)
f) Top margin	(430)
g) Right margin	(432)
h) Bottom margin	(433)

[How to Enter Adjustment Values]

Follow the procedure below to adjust each of the adjustment values so that the measurement values obtained from the test copy satisfy specification values. After starting up in adjustment mode "05", only single-sided test copies (in the regular copy mode) can be made with the [ENERGY SAVER] key.



1.5.1 Adjustment of paper aligning value

If necessary, you can extend the feed roller life slightly by increasing the paper aligning value as a temporary measure.

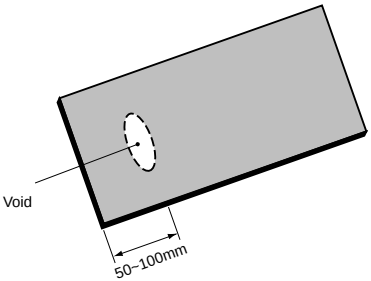
<Procedure> (Use code 450~458 in the test mode "05".)

Copier cassette (PFP)					
Upper (Long)	Middle (Long)	Lower	Duplexer	LCF	Manual feed
(450)	(452)	(456)	(455)	(457)	(458)

(1) [0] [5] [PWR] → [4] [5] [0] (Cassette code) → [START] → (About No.450, 452, 456) [Digital keys] (Setting item value) → [START] → [0] [8] (Current value display) → [1] [5] (New value input) → [SET] or [INT] (Memory set) → [Cassette] → [E/S] (Test copy) → [0] [9]

(2) Check the copy for image void and if there is any, reduce the new value to "31" → "30" → "29"… until no void occurs. Check for paper misfeeding.
When the aligning value is increased, noise caused by the paper scraping against the mylar may possibly be increased.

(3) The same procedure can be used for the Duplexer, LCF and manual feed.

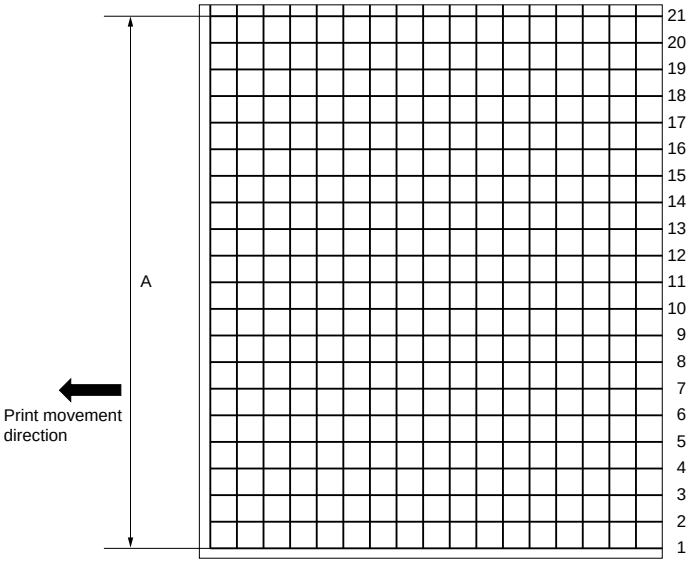


Note: When frequent paper jams occur near the aligning roller caused by using special thin paper other than that specified, the aligning value can be changed (reduced) as a measure. However, when the aligning value is reduced excessively, this may cause the deviation of leading edge registration. Therefore, make sure that no deviation occurs while adjusting the value.

1.5.2 Adjusting the printer section

(a) Polygonal motor 600 dpi (Primary scanning reproduction ratio of the printer unit)
Follow the procedure below to make a test print (Paper source: LCF, Paper size: A4/LT).
(1) [0] [5] + [PWR] ON → [1] → [E/S] →①
(Digital keys)
(2) Measure the distance "A" the distance between the 1st line and 21st line.
(3) In order to set the distance "A" to 200 mm ± 0.5 mm, adjust using the following steps:
① → [401] → [START] → Set the value → [INT] key or LCD [SET] icon (Carry out the same in the following.) → [1] → [E/S] → ①
* An increase in the value makes the reproduction scale (distance "A") longer (0.05mm/STEP).

Notes: 1. Before making a test print, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test print.
2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 86 to 168. The default adjustment value is 128.



(b) Laser write start position (primary scanning)

Follow the procedure below to make a test print (Paper source: LCF, size: A4/LT).

(1) [0] [5] + [PWR] ON → [1] → [E/S] → ①
(Digital keys)

(2) Measure the distance "B" the distance from the edge of the test print paper to the 6th line.

(3) In order to set the distance "B" to 52 mm ± 0.5 mm, adjust using the following steps:

① → [411] → [START] → Set the value → [SET]/[INT] → [1] → [E/S] → ①

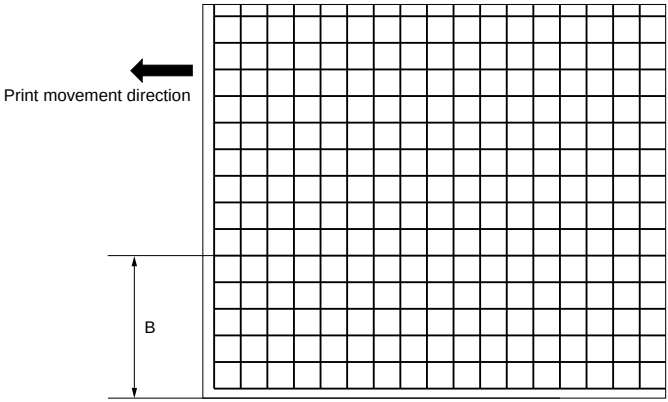
* An increase in the value makes the distance "B" longer (in increments of 0.0423 mm/step).

② [0] [5] + [PWR] ON → [410] → [START] → Value set in ① → [SET]/[INT] → [PWR] OFF

Notes: 1. Before making a test print, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test print or turn [PWR] OFF.

2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 0 to 255. The default adjustment value is 128.

3. Take notice that the first line may be illegible or invisible in some cases.



(c) Transfer belt speed adjustment/printer (Secondary scanning reproduction ratio)

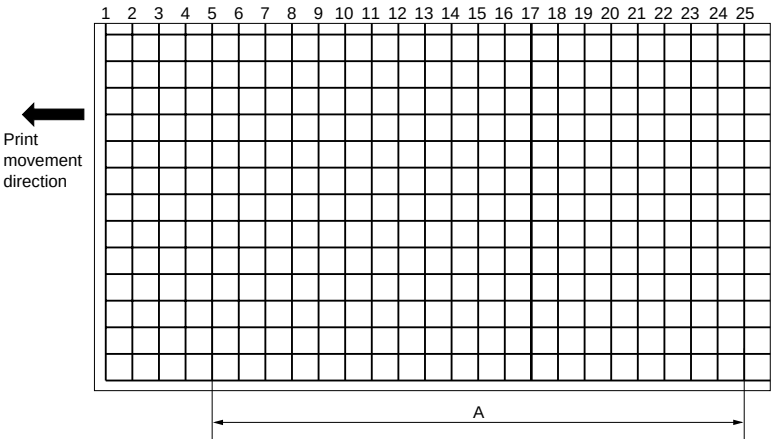
Follow the procedure below to make a test print (PFP middle or lower cassette, A3/LD).

(1) [0] [5] + [PWR] ON → [1] → [E/S] → ①
(Digital keys)

(2) Measure the distance "A" the distance between the 5th line and 25th line.

(3) In order to set the distance "A" to 200 mm ± 0.5 mm, use following steps to make the adjustment:
① → [488] → [START] → Set the value → [SET] or [INT] → [1] → [E/S] → ①
*An increase in the value makes the reproduction scale (distance "A") longer (in increments of 0.25mm/step).

Notes: 1. Before making a test print, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test print.
2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 1 to 255.
The default adjustment value is 128.



(d) Laser write start position (secondary scanning)

<Adjustment Order>	(Code)	(Paper size)
LCF	(443)	A4/LT
↓		
PFP middle/lower	(444)	A3/LD
↓		
Manual feed	(442)	A3/LD

<Procedure>

Follow the procedure below to make a test print.

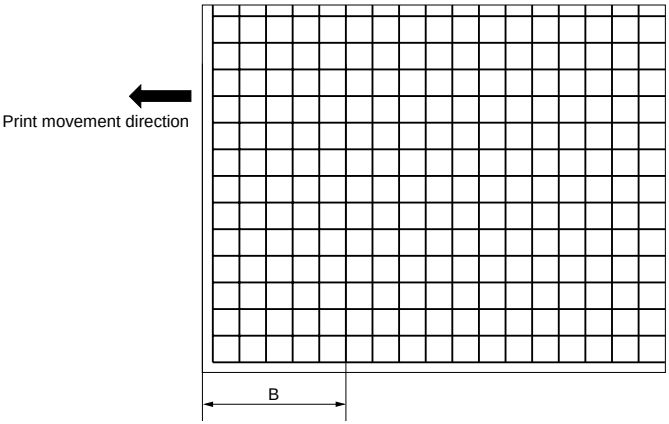
(1) [0] [5] + [PWR] ON → [1] → [E/S] → ①
(Digital keys)

(2) Measure the distance "B" the distance from the edge of the test print paper to the 6th line.

(3) In order to set the distance "B" to 52 mm ± 0.5 mm, use the following steps:

① → [Code] → [START] → Set the value → [SET]/[INT] → [1] → [E/S] → ①

*An increase in the value makes the blank space (distance "B") shorter (in increments of 0.5 mm/STEP).



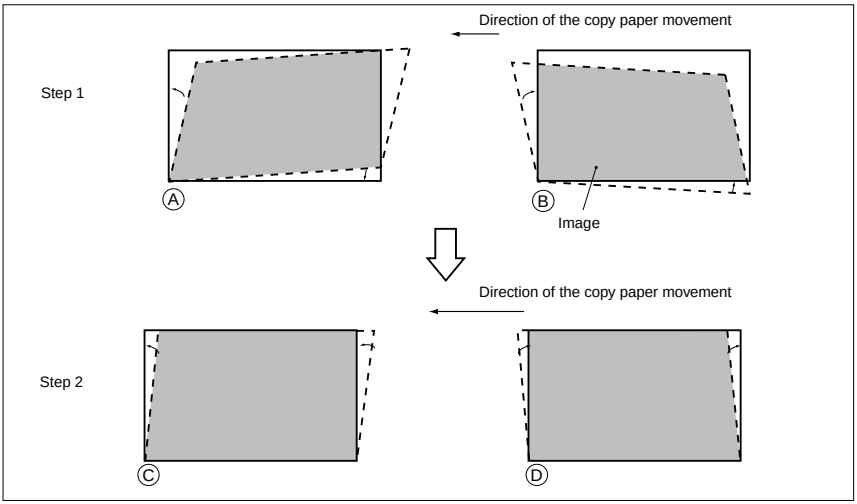
Notes: 1. Before making a test print, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test print.

2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 1 to 15. The default adjustment value is 8.
The adjustment range is 0 to 40 for code 443 only, and the default is 20.

3. LCF (443) values become the reference for all adjustment values. So, be sure to execute the adjustment in the order described above.

4. The first line in the primary scanning direction may not be printed depending on the initial setting for the leading edge margin.

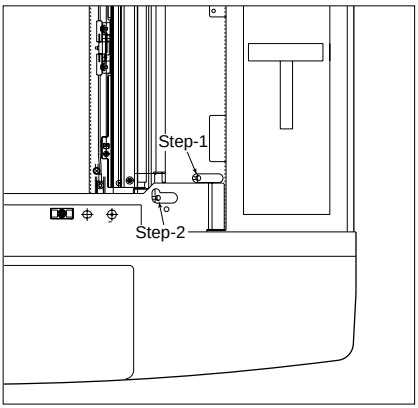
(e) Image distortion adjustment

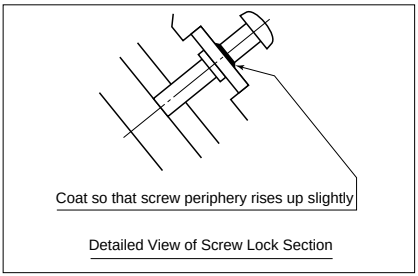


(1) Make an A3-size copy.

(2) Remove the original glass.
(Adjustment order: step 1 → step 2)
Step 1
In case of A:
Loosen the mirror-2 adjustment screw (CCW).
In case of B:
Tighten the mirror-2 adjustment screw (CW).
Step 2
In case of C:
Loosen the mirror-1 adjustment screw (CCW).
In case of D:
Thighten the mirror-1 adjustment screw (CW).

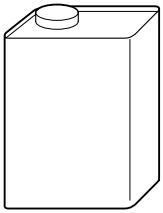
(3) Coat with screw lock after the image distortion adjustment.





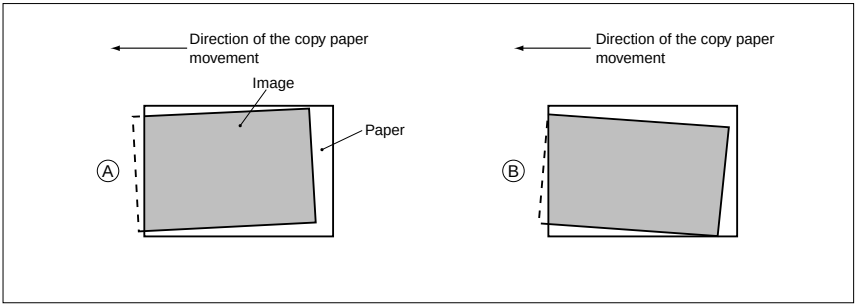
Note: Each can contains 1kg agent, so you should divide up the amount into smaller containers for easy operation.

Part No.	Part Name
4406361350	BOND-1401E



Screw locking agent

(f) Image inclination adjustment



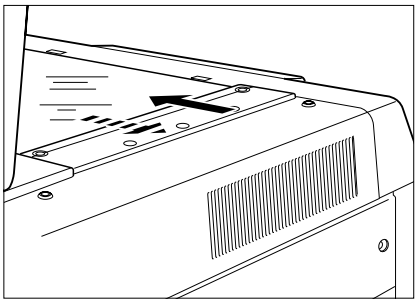
(1) If inclination of the image occurs even the edges of the original are properly aligned with the scale, adjust it by moving the stopper holder on the front side.

(2) In case of A:

Move the stopper holder in the direction indicated by ➡

In case of B:

Move the stopper holder in the direction indicated by ➡



1.5.3 Adjusting the scanner section

(a) Polygonal motor 600 dpi/PPC (Primary scanning reproduction ratio)

(1) Place the scale on the original glass as shown in the illustration below, and make an A4/LT 100% test copy from LCF.

(2) Measure the copy and compare its size with the actual scale.

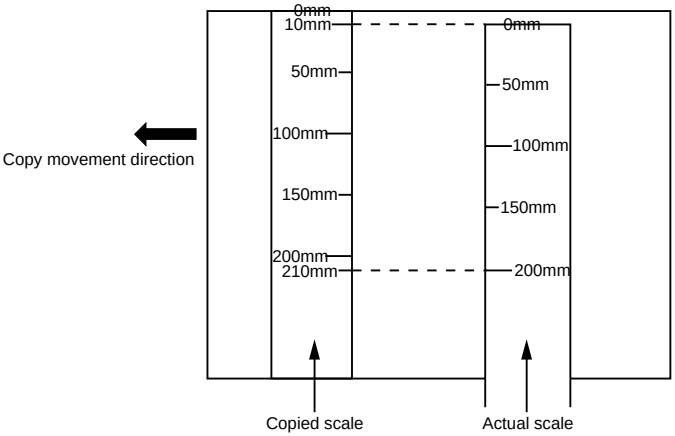
(3) Follow the procedure below to adjust value so that the interval between 10 mm and 210 mm on the scale is 200 ± 0.5 mm.

① → [405] → [START] → Adjust by digital keys → [SET]/[INT] →[E/S] → ①
(Test copy)

* An increase in the value corresponds to an increase in the division of the reproduction scale (in increments of 0.1mm/step)

Notes: 1. Before making a test print, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message dispaly after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test copy.

2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 86 to 168. The default adjustment value is 128.



(b) CCD primary scanning deviation

(1) Place the scale on the original glass as shown in the illustration below and make an A4/LT 100% test copy from LCF.

* Place the scale with its leading edge aligned with the line (on the rear side) indicating A3/Ledger size on the left-side original scale, and the scale side face pushed up against the left-side original scale.

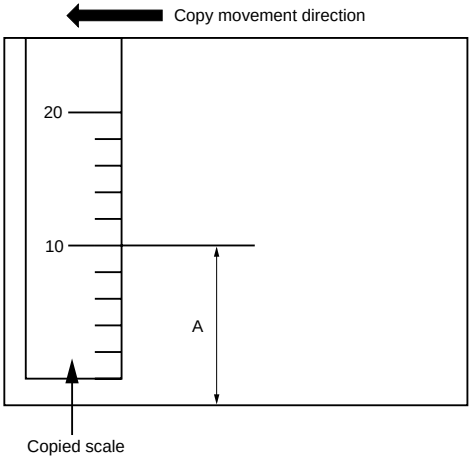
(2) Adjust the distance "A", which should be 100 ± 1 mm from the position copied to the edge of the paper, using the following steps:

① → [306] → [START] → Adjust by digital keys → [SET]/[INT] →[E/S] → ①
(Test copy)

* When the value increases, the image moves toward front side of the paper. (in increments of 0.169 mm/step)

Notes: 1. Before making a test copy, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test copy.

2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 0 to 90. The default adjustment value is 45.



(c) Secondary scanning reproduction ratio

(1) Place the scale on the original glass and make an A3/LD 100% test copy from PFP middle or lower cassette.

(2) Compare the copy with the actual scale.

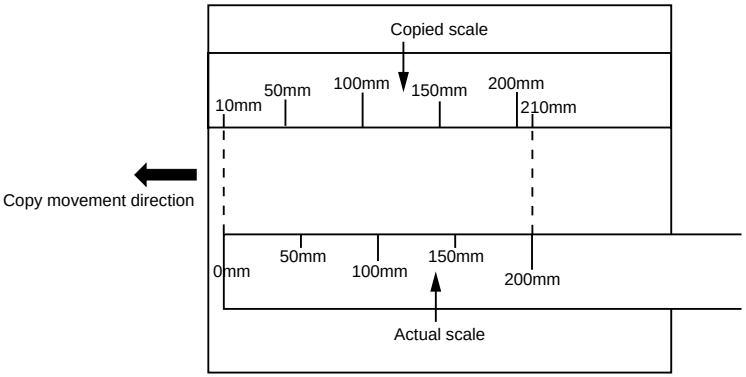
(3) Follow the procedure below to adjust so that the interval between 10 mm and 210 mm on the scale is adjusted at 200 ± 0.5 mm.

① → [340] → [START] → Adjust by digital keys → [SET]/[INT] → [E/S] → ①
(Test copy)

*When the value increases, reproduction ratio decreases: intervals of the scale become narrower. (in increments of 0.1mm/step).

Notes: 1. Before making a test copy, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test print.

2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 0 to 255. The default adjustment value is 128.



(d) Scanner secondary scanning deviation

(1) Set the top margin adjustment value to 0 (zero).

① → [430] → [START] → Enter 0 by digital keys → [SET] or [INT] → ①

(2) Place the scale on the original glass and make an A4/LT 400% test copy from LCF.

* Press the leading edge of the scale against the original scale on the leading edge side.

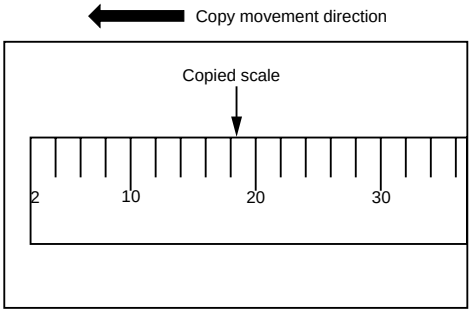
(3) Follow the procedure below to adjust so that the scale on the copied paper starts from the 2 mm ± 0.5 mm position.

① → [305] → [START] → Adjust by digital keys → [SET] or [INT] → [E/S] → ①
(Test copy)

*When the value increases, the image moves to the leading edge (in increments of 0.22 mm/STEP).

Notes: 1. Before making a test copy, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display unit after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test copy.

2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 0 to 255. The default adjustment value is 128.



(e) Top margin

Follow the procedure below to make a test copy.

([0] [5] + [PWR] ON → [C] → [E/S])

(1) Make an A4/LT 100% test copy from LCF with the ADF open.

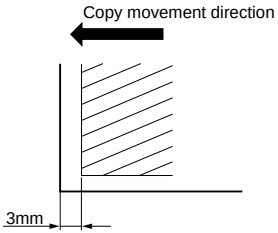
(2) Follow the procedure below to adjust so that the blank space at the leading edge of the copy is adjusted exactly at 3 ± 0.5 mm.

① → [430] → [START] → Adjust by digital keys → [SET] or [INT] → [E/S] → ①
(Test copy)

*When the value increases, the image moves to the leading edge (0.0423 mm/STEP).

Notes: 1. Before making a test copy, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test copy.

2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 0 to 255. The default adjustment value is 24.



(f) Right margin

(1) Make an A4/LT 100% test copy from LCF with the ADF open.

(2) Follow the procedure below so that the blank space at the right edge of the copy is adjusted at 2mm ± 0.5 mm.

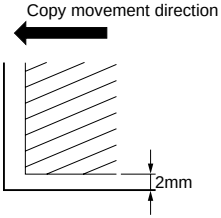
Note: The combination of the right edge blank space and the left edge blank space should be 4mm ± 1mm.

① → [432] → [START] → Adjust by digital keys → [SET] or [INT] → [E/S] → ①
(Test copy)

*When the value increases, margin becomes wider (0.0423 mm/STEP).

Notes: 1. Before making a test copy, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test copy.

2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 0 to 255. The default adjustment value is 0.



(g) Bottom margin

Follow the procedure below to make a test copy.

([0] [5] + [PWR] ON → [C] → [E/S])

(1) Make an A4/LT 100% test copy from LCF with the ADF open.

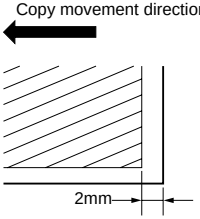
(2) Follow the procedure below to adjust so that the blank space at the trailing edge of the copy is adjusted exactly to 2 mm ± 0.5 mm.

① → [433] → [START] → Adjust by digital keys → [SET]/[INT] → [E/S] → ①
(Test copy)

*When the value increases, margin becomes wider (0.0423 mm/STEP).

Notes: 1. Before making a test copy, make sure that [100% A] is appeared on the top of the message display after the [SET] icon or the [INT] key is pressed, and then make a test copy.

2. The effective adjustment value is within the range 0 to 255. The default adjustment value is 0.



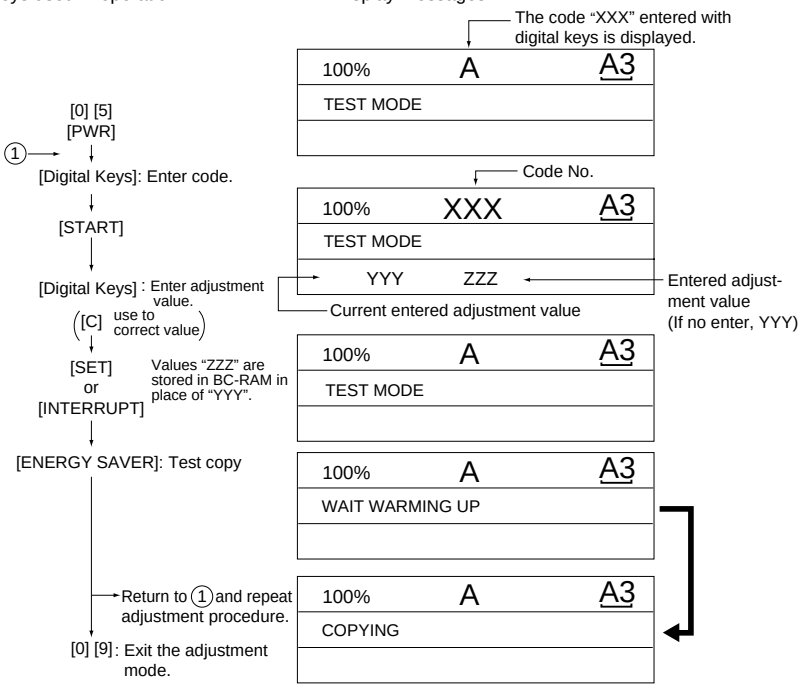
1.6 Image Density

If the user wants to change the image density, adjust the image density in adjustment mode “05.”

	Image mode			Adjustment item		Remarks
	Text/Photo	Photo	Text			
Code	503	501	504	PPC	Manual exposure center value	The larger the value, the darker the image
	505	506	507	Light side	Manual exposure step value	The larger the value, the lighter the light range
	508	509	510	Dark side		The larger the value, the darker the dark range
	514	512	515	PPC	Automatic exposure	The larger the value, the darker the image

Follow the procedure below to adjust the image density to suit the user's preferences while comparing the image obtained in the test copy with the currently entered allowable values.

<Keys used in operation> <Display messages>



Notes: 1. Only one copy of single-sided originals can be made.
2. Duplex copying cannot be carried out.
Make test copies in these modes after exiting the adjustment mode.

1.7 Automatic Adjustment of Gamma correction

(1) At the time of unpacking

When the gradation reproduction deviation is too large, it can be corrected by the automatic adjustment of gamma correction.

This adjustment shall be done upon user's request when the gradation reproduction is too high or too low.

(2) When any of the following parts are replaced, check the image and judge whether adjustment is necessary or not.

- Exposure lamp
- Indicator unit with shading board
- Lens unit
- Laser optical system unit

(3) When any of the following parts is replaced or adjusted, check the copy image and determine the necessity of this adjustment.

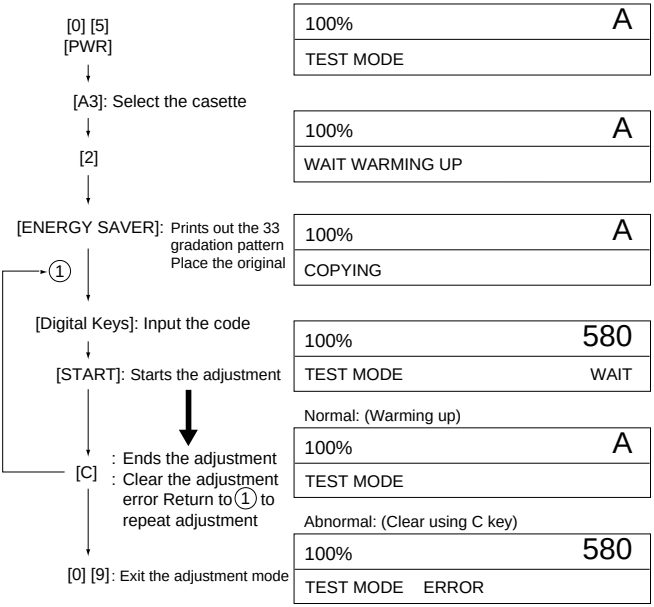
- Optical system position (CRG1, CRG2 position)
- Mirror 1, 2, 3
- Reflector
- Drum
- Developer
- Main charger
- Development bias
- Transfer/bias

Note: This adjustment must be done only after the image adjustment described in 1.5.
After this adjustment, the image density adjustment described in 1.6 must be done.

Code	Adjustment item	Procedure
580	Automatic adjustment of gamma correction	[Procedure] (1) Turn on the power switch with [0] [5]. (2) Select A3 or LD paper for the output paper size. (3) Press the [2] key and then [ENERGY SAVER] key. (One copy of the 33-gradation pattern is outputted.) (4) Confirm that there is no blank or line on the gradation pattern outputted in the above step (3) and the density changes gradually. If there is any problem in the gradation pattern, repeat the step (3) to output a gradation pattern again. (5) Face the darker side of the output gradation pattern to the original scale at the exit side and put it on the original glass with the printed face down. (6) Input the code [580] through the control panel and press the [START] key. (The scanner automatically reads the original and the operation for the automatic adjustment of gamma correction will be done. About 10 seconds) (7) When the operation completes normally, the machine returns to the stand-by status. If the operation ends abnormally, "TEST MODE ERROR" will be displayed. (See the indication on the next page.) For the abnormal ending, press the [C] key to release the error indication. When released, the display on the control panel returns to the stand-by status. Check the position, direction and skew of the gradation pattern on the original glass, and repeat the steps from (5).

<Keys used in operation>

<Display messages>

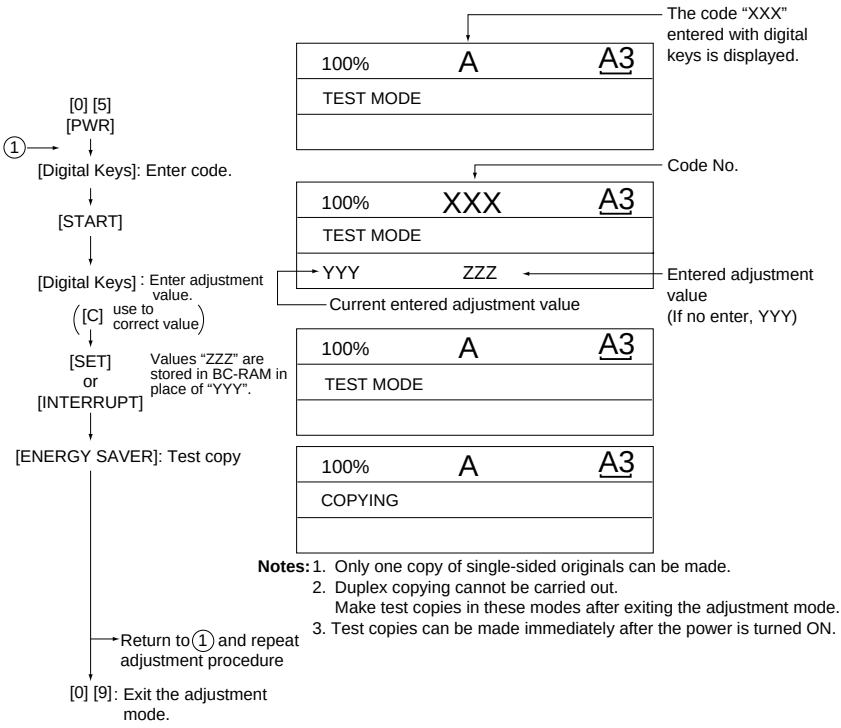


1.8 Sharpness (HPF) Adjustment

If the user wants to change the image sharpness to softer or harder, adjust the HPF intensity in adjustment mode “05”.

	Image mode			Adjustment item	Remarks
	Text/Photo	Photo	Text		
Code	620	621	622	Sharpness setting (HPF intensity)	1st digit : 1 (fixed): Text/Photo 2 (fixed): Photo 3 (fixed): Text 2nd digit : 0: Use default value 1~9: Change the intensity (If the value is increased, the sharpness is increased)

<Keys used in operation> <Display messages>



Notes: 1. Only one copy of single-sided originals can be made.
2. Duplex copying cannot be carried out.
Make test copies in these modes after exiting the adjustment mode.
3. Test copies can be made immediately after the power is turned ON.

1.9 Data Correction

If the user wants to change the gamma curve, adjust the gamma slope correction in adjustment mode “05.”

	Image mode			Adjustment item		Remarks
	Text/Photo	Photo	Text			
Code	593	594	595	PPC	Gamma data slope correction	0: Default used (same as set value 5) 1 to 9: Slope correction (The larger the setting, the darker the image becomes.)

Input procedure of the adjustment value is same as the 1.6 image density adjustment.

1.10 High-Voltage Adjustment

The charger and developer bias outputs must be checked and adjusted when the high-voltage transformer is replaced.

Charger output					
Item	Code	Mode	Image Mode	Adjustment Value	Adjustment Method
Main charger grid voltage	210-0 *2	PPC	TEXT/PHOTO	720 ± 5V	Change the output by changing the bit states.
	210-1 *3	PPC	Text	↑ *4	Input the BIT value of 210-0
	210-2 *3	PPC	Photo	↑ *4	↑
	212 *1	PRINT	——	↑ *4	↑ *5

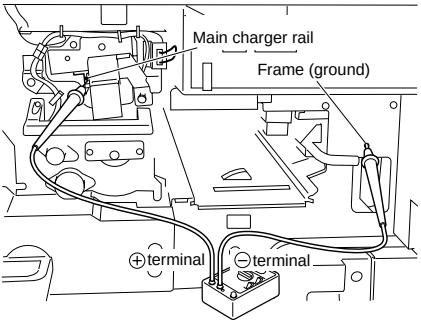
Developer bias output					
Item	Code	Mode	Image Mode	Adjustment Value	Adjustment Method
Developer bias value Hi1	205-0 *2	PPC	TEXT/PHOTO	387 ± 5V	Change the output by changing the bit states.
	205-1 *3	PPC	Text	↑ *4	Input the BIT value of 205-0
	205-2 *3	PPC	Photo	↑ *4	↑
	203 *1	PRINT	——	↑ *4	↑ *5
Developer bias value Hi2	207 *1	ALL	——	↑ *4	↑
Developer bias value Hi3	216 *1	ALL	——	452 ± 5V	Change the output by changing the bit states.

Note 1: *1, *2 and *3 indicate sequence of operation patterns 1, 2 and 3, respectively.
Note 2: BIT of *4 can be changed, however voltage is not output.
Note 3: The BIT value of *5 must be entered by the digital keys.

(1) Preparing for measurement

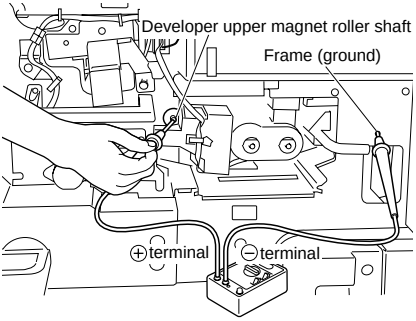
① Main charger grid

1. Remove the developer unit.
2. Connect the digital tester as follows. However, that a digital tester with input resistance of 10 MΩ must be used.
   - Setting range 1000 VDC
   - (+) terminal Connect to the rail for the main charger.
   - (–) terminal Fix to frame earth.
3. Start up the power supply using the door switch jig and then, make adjustment.



② Developer bias

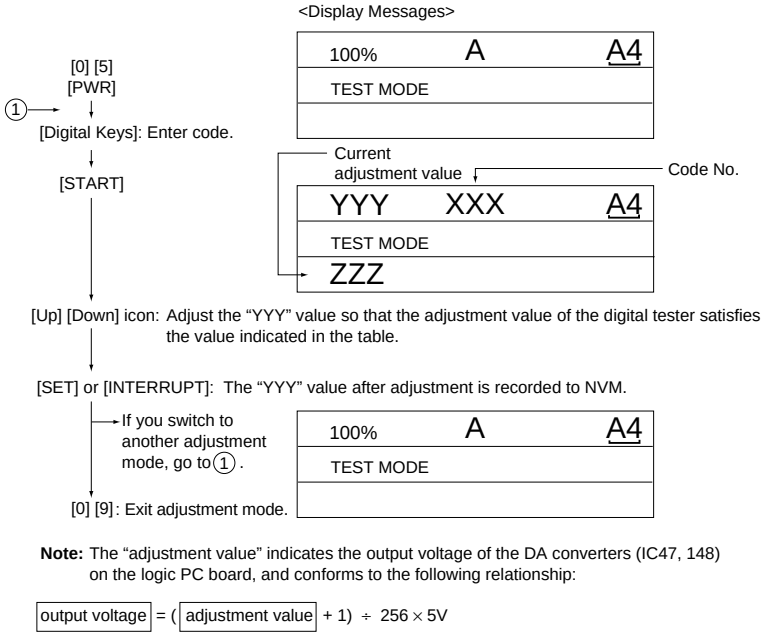
1. Set the developer unit.
2. Connect the digital tester as follows. However, a digital tester with an input resistance of 10 MΩ must be used.
   - Setting range 1000 VDC
   - (+) terminal Connect to upper magnet roller shaft on developer unit front side.
   - (–) terminal Fix to frame earth.
3. Start up the power supply using the door switch jig and make adjustment.



(2) Operation procedure

- Be sure to set the drum counter (08-401) to "0" when you have replaced the drum with a new one.
- Regarding the main charger grid and developer bias output values from the high-voltage transformer, connect a digital tester following (1) and then, make adjustment using the following procedure.

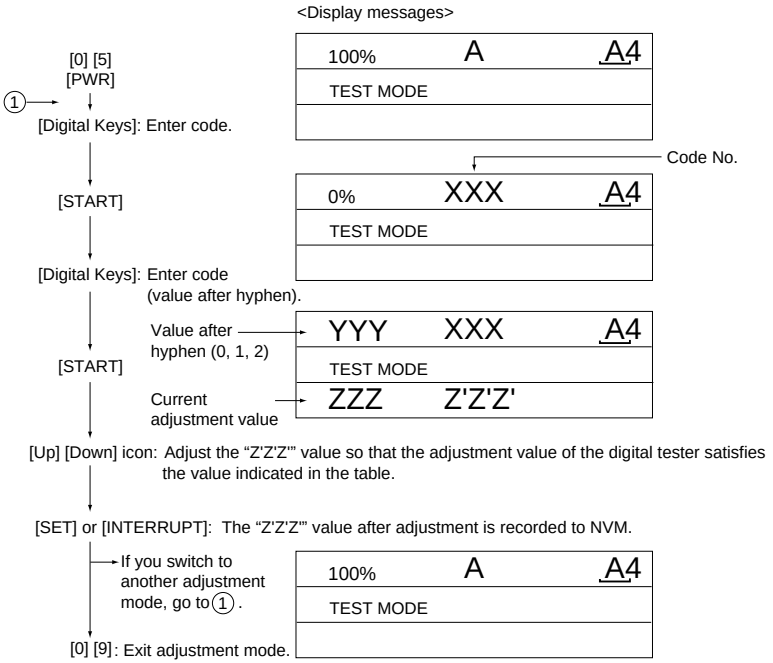
Sequence of Operation, Pattern 1


<Display Messages>
100% A A4
TEST MODE
[0] [5]
[PWR]
①
[Digital Keys]: Enter code.
[START]
Current adjustment value
Code No.
YYY XXX A4
TEST MODE
ZZZ
[Up] [Down] icon: Adjust the "YYY" value so that the adjustment value of the digital tester satisfies the value indicated in the table.
[SET] or [INTERRUPT]: The "YYY" value after adjustment is recorded to NVM.
If you switch to another adjustment mode, go to ①.
100% A A4
TEST MODE
[0] [9]: Exit adjustment mode.

Note: The "adjustment value" indicates the output voltage of the DA converters (IC47, 148) on the logic PC board, and conforms to the following relationship:

$$\boxed{\text{output voltage}} = \left(\boxed{\text{adjustment value}} + 1\right) \div 256 \times 5\text{V}$$

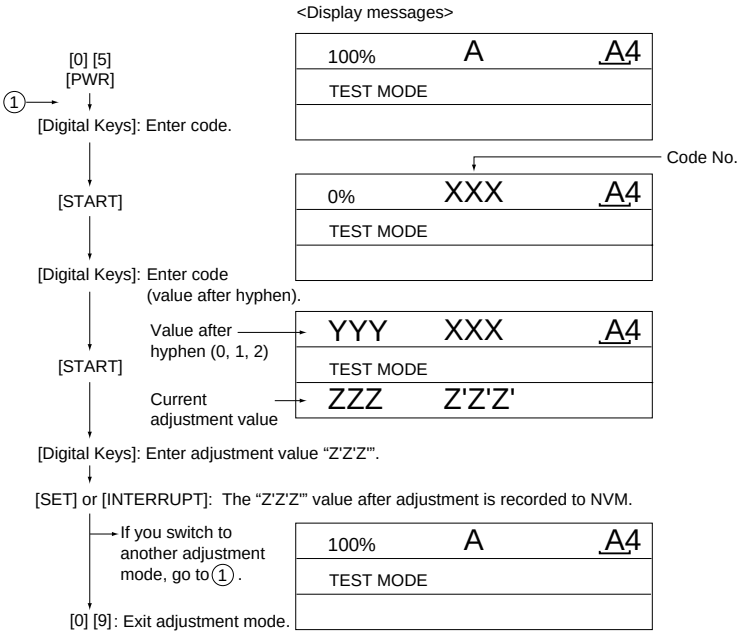
Sequence of Operation, Pattern 2



Note: The "adjustment value" indicates the output voltage of the DA converters (IC47, 148) on the logic PC board, and conforms to the following relationship:

$$\boxed{\text{output voltage}} = \left(\boxed{\text{adjustment value}} + 1\right) \div 256 \times 5\text{V}$$

Sequence of Operation, Pattern 3



Note: The "adjustment value" indicates the output voltage of the DA converters (IC47, 148) on the logic PC board, and conforms to the following relationship:

$$\boxed{\text{output voltage}} = \left(\boxed{\text{adjustment value}} + 1\right) \div 256 \times 5\text{V}$$

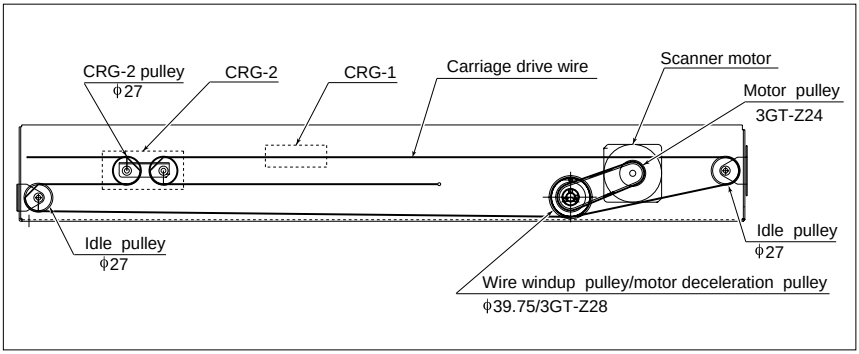
Precautions During Developer Bias Adjustment

If the entire image is foggy in spite of appropriate main charger grid voltage or toner density, adjust the developer bias on the control panel (lower the BIT). If the developer bias is lowered too much, however, the following problems may occur:

- The image contrast drops (tend to produce faint images).
- The carrier in the developer adheres to the photosensitive drum, and scratches tend to occur more easily on the cleaning section.

1.11 Installation of Carriage Drive Wire

When the carriage drive wire is replaced, attach the new wire as shown:



1.11.1 Wire tension adjustment

(1) For this model, it is unnecessary to adjust the carriage drive wire tension since its tension spring maintains constant tension.

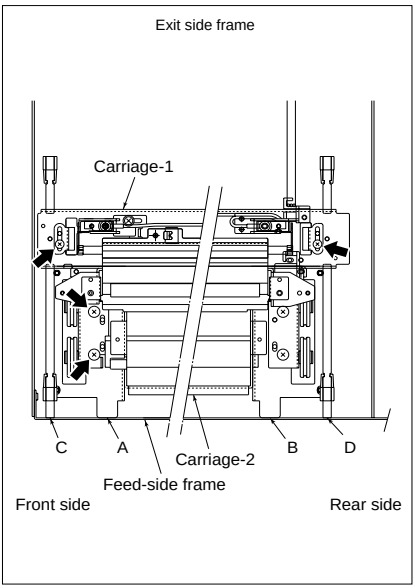
Note: Make sure that the tension of the wire on both the front and rear sides is equivalent and hanged properly.

1.11.2 Adjustment of carriage 1 and carriage 2

(1) Loosen the screws fixing carriage-1 (2 screws; front, rear, 1 screw each) and -2 (2 screws in front) to the wire.

(2) While pressing carriage-2 against the feed side frame (both A & B), tighten the screws fixing carriage-2 (front side).

(3) Also while pressing carriages 1 and 2 against the feed side frame (C & D), tighten the screws fixing carriage-1.

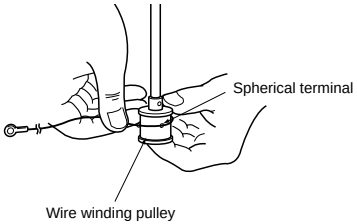


1.11.3 Carriage drive wire assembling

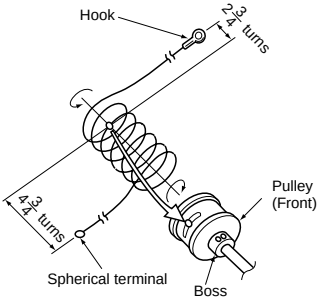
• Winding the wire to the wire winding pulley

(1) Fit the ϕ3 spherical terminal (on the central part of the wire) into the hole of the wire winding pulley.
Set the wire so that the part of the wire with a hook on its crimped side be on the upperside.

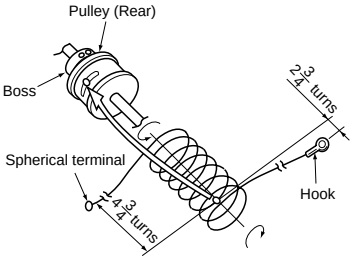
(2) Wind the wire to the each front and rear side pulleys.
Winding turns are:
- 2 and 3/4 turns on the opposite to the boss side (outside) of the pulley.
- 4 and 3/4 turn on the boss side (inside). After winding, secure the wire with the wire holder jig.

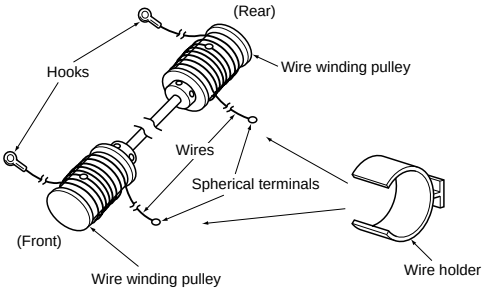


<Front side>



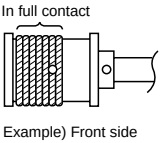
<Rear side>



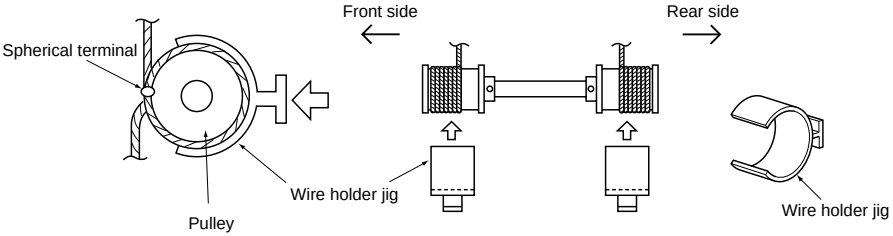


Notes: 1. When winding the wires on pulleys, take the following precautions:
- Never twist the wire when winding.
- Wind the wire tightly to make it come into close contact with the pulley.
- Wind the wire taking care not to leave any gap between the wraps.

2. When the wire holder jig is installed, do not slide or loosen the wound wire.



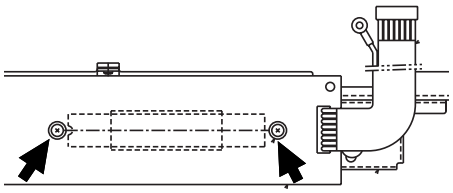
<Installation phase>



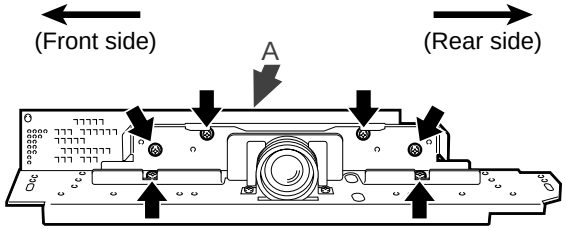
1.12 Lens Unit

It is impossible to adjust the lens unit. Replace the entire unit with a new one.

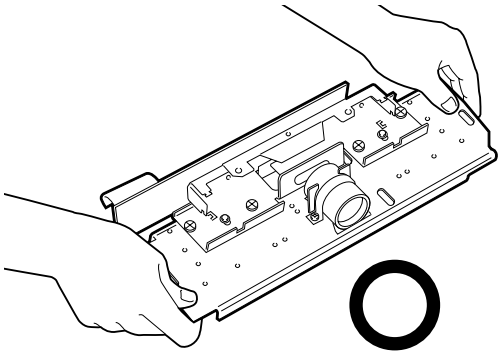
Notes: 1. Do not touch the fixing screw (arrow in the figure: 8 points) indicated with arrows below when replacing the lens unit. The screw color is red.

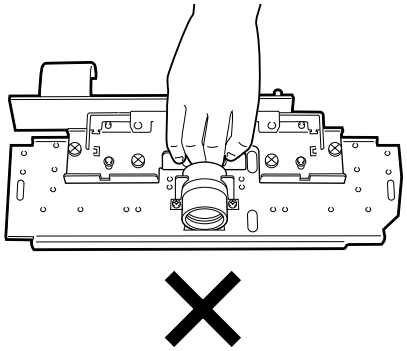


• Pay attention to the two screws (see above figure) on the rear side (see in the figure A.)



2. Take sufficient care when handling the unit not to hold the adjustment area.

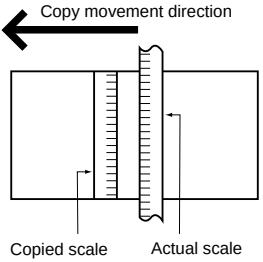




1.12.1 Adjusting the lens magnification

Notes: 1. This adjustment must be carried out only when the scanner lens unit has been removed or replaced.
2. Before this adjustment, check that the primary scanning reproduction ratio of the printer is corrected.

(1) Place the scale on the original glass, and make an A4 100% copy.
(2) Compare the copied scale with the actual scale to measure the error in the reproduction ratio.



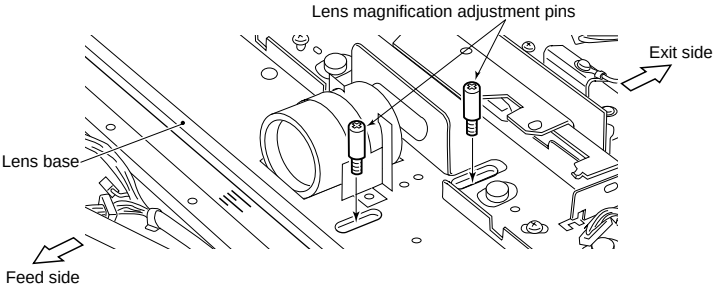
(3) Follow the procedure below to make adjustment so that the distance between each mark of both scales becomes equal.

Notes: 3. After adjusting the lens magnification, be sure to adjust the deviation in the CCD primary scanning direction.

<Procedure>

(1) Remove the original glass, lens cover (11 screws), damp heater unit and lens shield bracket (2 screws).
(2) Screw in the 2 lens magnification adjustment pins into the oblong holes on the lens base.

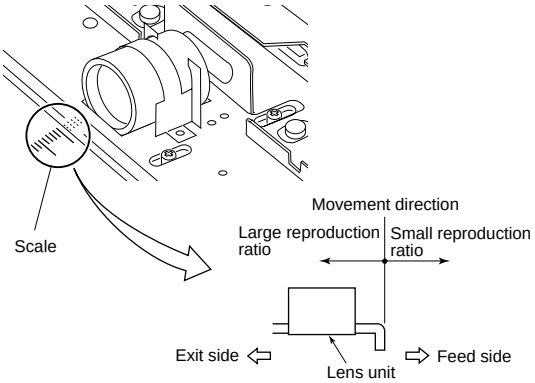
Notes: 4. When screwing in the pin, take care not to nip the harness under the lens base.



(3) Loosen the 2 screws fixing lens unit.

(4) Slide the lens unit either backwards or forwards using the scales on the scanner base as a guide. The following table shows the estimated lens unit movement to adjust the reproduction ratio error between the copy and the actual scale compared to be measured.

Reproduction Ratio Error	Estimated Amount of Adjustment
0.1 %	0.5 mm
0.2 %	1.1 mm
0.3 %	1.6 mm
0.4 %	2.1 mm
0.5 %	2.6 mm
0.6 %	3.2 mm
0.7 %	3.7 mm
0.8 %	4.2 mm
0.9 %	4.8 mm
1.0 %	5.3 mm



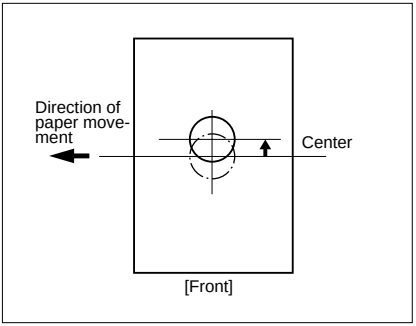
Notes: 5. If the finer adjustment than that in the above is required, refer to "Polygonal motor 600 dpi/ PPC Adjutment".

(5) Re-attach the lens cover and original glass, make a copy and check the reproduction ratio.
(6) Tighten the 2 lens unit screws to fix in place.
(7) Remove the pins for adjusting the lens magnification.
(8) Re-attach the lens cover and original glass.

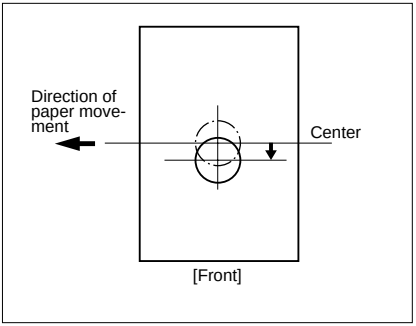
1.13 Adjusting Horizontal Deviation Caused by Paper Feed

<Procedure>

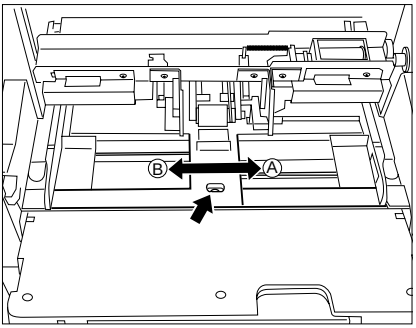
- When the center of the image moves to the rear side: Move the guide to the rear side (direction of arrow Ⓐ).



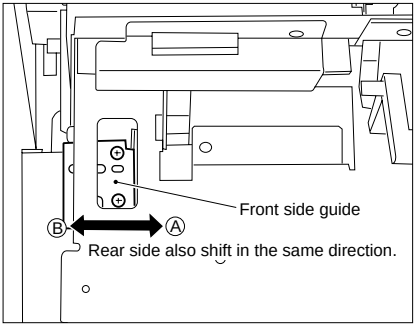
- When the center of the image moves to the front side: Move the guide to the front side (direction of arrow Ⓑ).



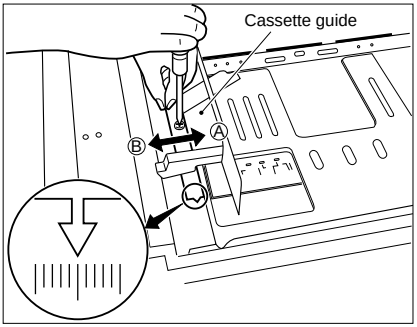
• Manual feed



• LCF feed



• Pedestal cassette feed

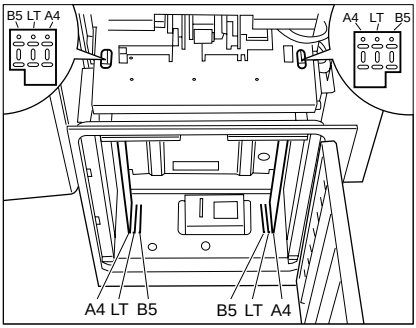


1.14 Changing the Paper Size

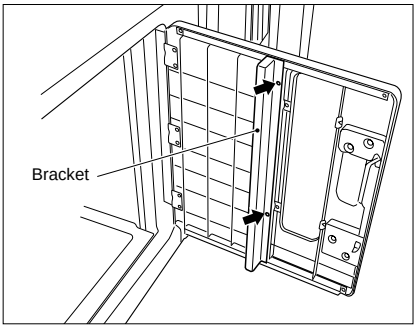
1.14.1 LCF paper sizes

(1) Draw out the LCF unit, and remove the manual feed unit.

(2) Attach the stay guides to match the size of the paper used.



Note: In case of B5 size
The bracket must be fastened onto the LCF door cover by 2 screws only in the case of B5 size.



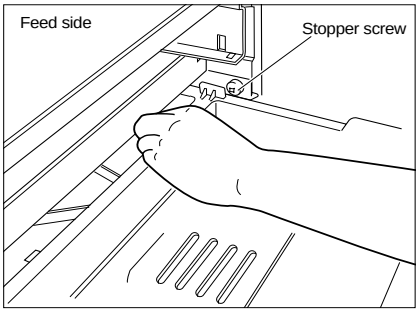
(3) Change the cassette size on the control panel. For details, refer to the setting mode (08) item.

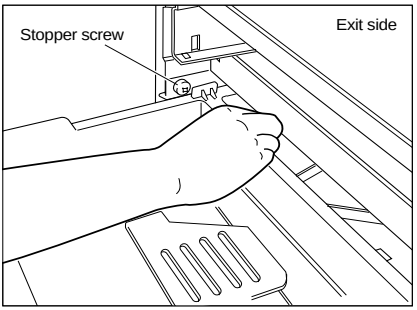
1.14.2 PFP paper sizes

Before the copier is shipped from the factory, A4-R, A3 and B4 (LT-R, LG and LD) are set to the upper, middle and lower cassettes, respectively. The following procedure describes how to change the paper sizes of the cassettes in accordance with a request from the user.
Note: Since the PFP upper is not usable for B5 size paper, do not change its size to B5.

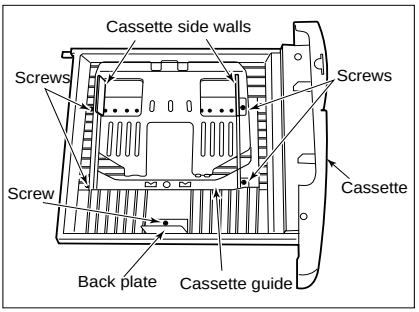
Mechanical Modifications

(1) Draw out the cassette that you want to modify, remove the stopper screws (one each on feed and exit side), and draw out the cassette.

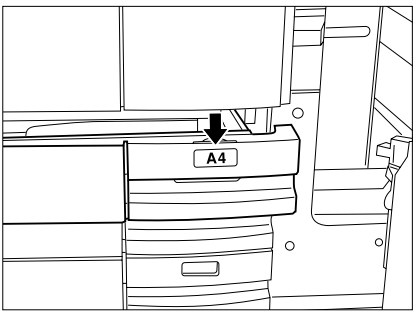




(2) Remove the cassette side walls (2 screws for each) on the front and rear sides, and fix the cassette side walls with the screws matched to the paper size marked on the cassette guide.
(3) Remove the back plate (1 screw), and fix the back plate with the screws matched to the paper size marked on the base frame.



(4) Slide the cassette size label on the right front of the cassette to upward to remove it.
(5) The cassette size label should be folded to display the designated paper size, and then inserted into the cassette.
(6) Insert the cassette into the feeder, and tighten the 2 stopper screws.



Changes on the Control Panel

Change the cassette size on the control panel. For details, refer to the setting mode (08) item.

1.15 Adjustment of Duplexer

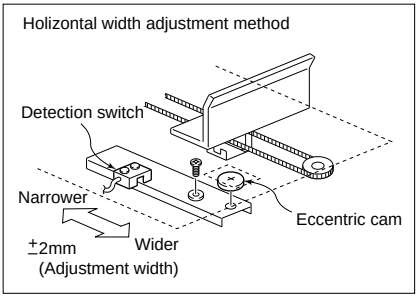
1.15.1 Adjustment of the stack guide unit

[A] Stack guide stop position adjustment

When making copies in the double-sided mode on the Duplexer, make sure that the horizontal deviation on both sides of the paper is less than ±2 mm.

If the deviation is outside of this range, follow the procedure below to adjust.

(1) Stack paper on the stack guide, and make sure that the gap between the paper and the stack stopper on the stack guide is 1±0.5mm. To adjust the gap, loosen the fixing screw on the rear side of the stack guide unit, and then, make adjustment with the adjusting screw.



[B] Duplexer horizontal deviation adjustment

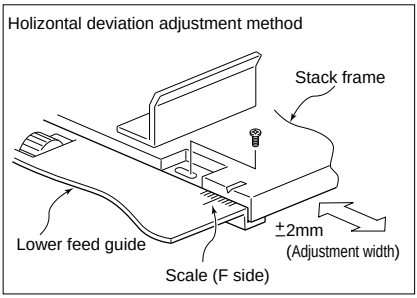
When the image on the double-sided copy deviates horizontally even after adjustment [A]

(1) Loosen the 2 screws for fixing the stack guide unit. If the paper drifts toward either the front or the rear side, move the stack guide unit toward the opposite side by the amount of the paper drift, using the scales on the unit as a guide.

(2) After adjustment, tighten the 4 fixing screws on the stack guide unit.

Note: The 1mm interval scales are useful in making this adjustment.

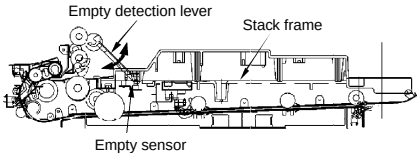
(3) After adjustment, make a copy to check that horizontal deviation is corrected.



[C] Checking the operation of empty detection lever

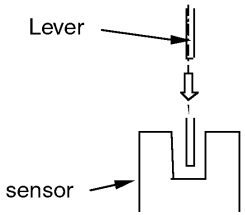
(1) Move the empty detection lever up/down by hand. When the lever goes down, check that the leading edge of the lever is always in the concave of the empty sensor (as shown in the illustration.).

(2) This operation should be repeated several times, to ensure that no error condition occur. (as shown in the illustration.)



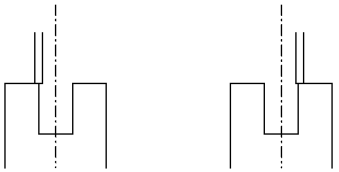
(Supplementary)
When determining the adjustment amount for the horizontal deviation, make copies using the following mode. Decide the amount observing the 8th, 9th and 10th copy images.

[Mode]
Original: A4 size (or LT size) manually placed original (2 sheets)
Paper sheet: A4 size (or LT size)
(LCF paper feeding is preferable.)
Single-sided original → Duplexed copies, Group mode copy Quantity: 10 sheets



Expanded sectionl figure of sensor and lever from the paper feed direction (OK)

(Supplementary)
Several sheets from the head stacked in the Duplexer will be fed right after stacked for the purpose of increasing efficiency of duplex copying. At this time, stacking operation comes as first priority so the width guide of the Duplexer becomes slightly wider than that of other feeding operation (2mm exterior from both edges of the paper). Depending on the mode, the timing to switch the width guide position changes.
Thus, make copies using always the above mode and procedure described in (Supplementary) of [C] to make precise horizontal deviation adjustment.

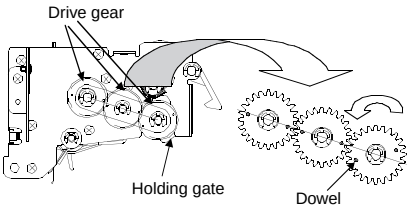


Expanded sectionl figure of sensor and lever from the paper feed direction (No Good)

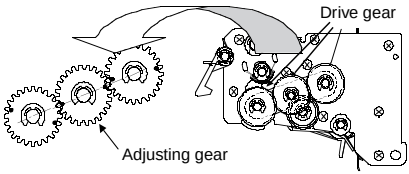
1.15.2 Holding gate position adjustment 1

When the holding gate is removed for replacement, the holding gate position must be adjusted when it is installed.

(1) When installing the drive gears of the holding gate, match each of the drive gear positions withe the positions of the dowels on the gear. Turn only the gear on the holding gate in the direction of the arrow by 2.5 teeth, and install the drive gears. (The front side gear is installed first, and the dowels on the rear side should be aligned).



Front side driving gears



Rear side driving gears (addition)

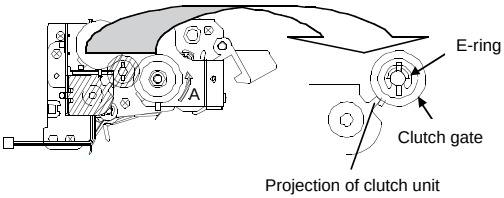
Note1: This adjustment had been performed based on the condition: the rear side drive gears are adjusted automatically when the front side drive gears are adjusted. But the rear side drive gears sometimes do not follow the front. Thus, the procedure has been changed: the front side drive gears are adjusted first, and then, that of the rear side will be adjusted to match the dowel. This procedure has been performed starting with the following models:.

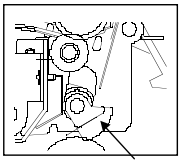
8070: From the first production	6570: From LJ913007
5570: NJ913571	4580: From ZJ910707

Note2: Adjust the front/rear side gears with the central gear. The spring clutch may lock when the gear is operated. So, push the projection of the clutch unit to turn the gear.

(2) Align the projection on the clutch unit of the holding gate, and fasten with an E-ring as shown figure.

Note3: When it is fixed by an E-ring, be sure to check that the holding gate position is as in the illustration (correct position of holding gate).





(3) Make sure that drive gear is installed correctly checking the following points. If it not installed correctly, perform the above (1)~(2)procedures.

Note

When a new arbor is installed, perform the groove for spring installation of 1.15.3 Holding gate position adjustment 2 SLEEVE-P/U-80 in "B"(center).

0) Open the bypass feed unit (Check below while it is opened).

~~1) Open the clutch unit. (solenoid not pulled out)~~

While the solenoid of the clutch unit is attracted (armature is pushed), turn the gear a limited small amount, release the armature.

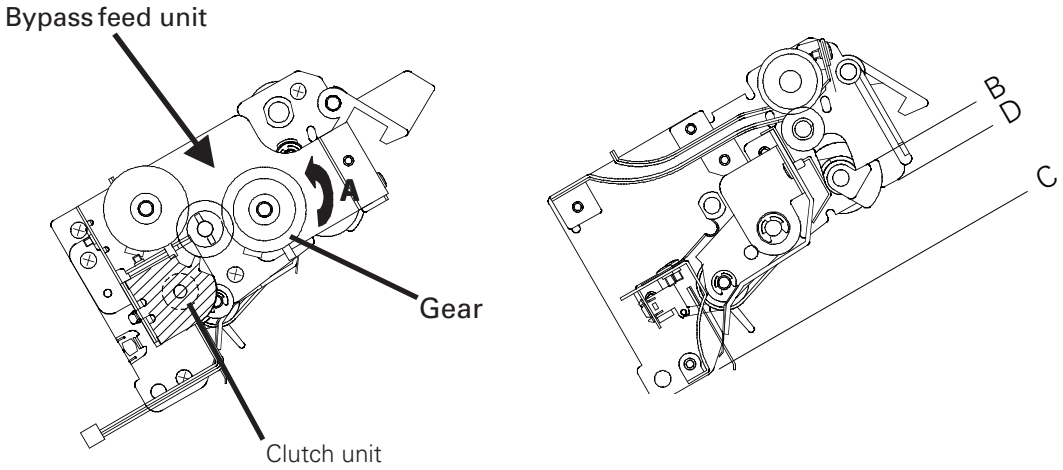
2) Turn the gear in the direction "A" in the figure till the holding gate is stopped.

3) When the holding gate is stopped, check that B face and C or D face are roughly parallel.

B face: flat face of holding gate

C face: end face of frame

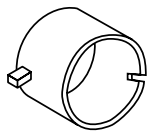
D face: end face of frame



1.15.3 Holding gate position adjustment 2

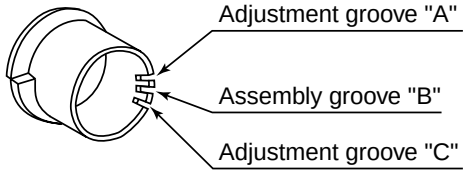
There are two kinds of sleeves, SLEEVE-P/U and SLEEVE-P/U-80.

In the case of SLEEVE-P/U-80, the pushing gate angle can be adjusted as described below.



4406344910

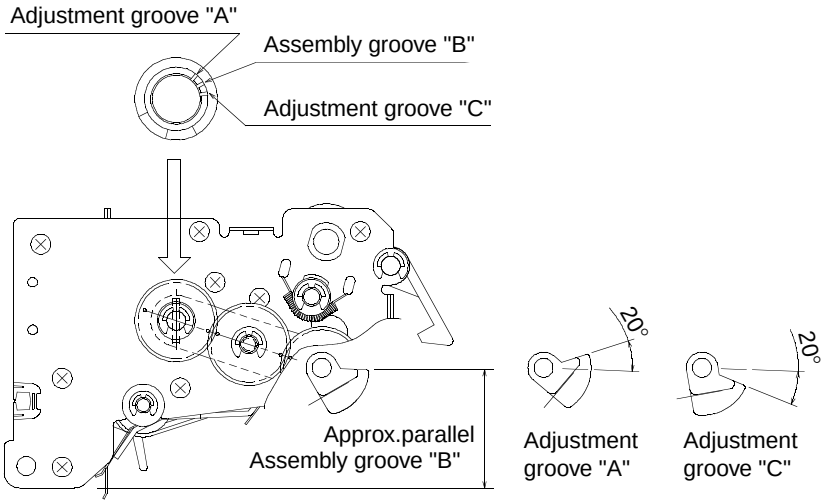
SLEEVE-P/U



4408843921

SLEEVE-P/U-80

(1) There are 3 grooves for installing the spring to SLEEVE-P/U-80.
If the installment position of the spring is changed, then the pushing gate angle can be adjusted.



(2) Check that the pushing gate angle is parallel to the frame.

Note1: At the time of shipping, assembly has been performed using assembly groove “B”.

Note2: If after performing adjustment of the pushing gate position as in 1.15.2 and the angle does not become parallel, then the angle should be adjusted ±20˚ using adjustment groove “A” or “C”.

1.15.4 Operation Check of Holding Gate

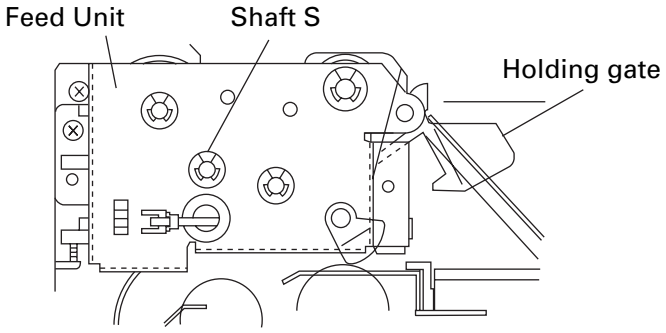
(1) Pull out the ADU, after removing the gray cover which is covering the feed unit (two screws). Replace it inside the copier.
(2) Start Duplex copying with the left front cover of the copier opened by using the door switch jig.
(3) Check the turning of the shaft S shown on the left side (below figure) of the ADU.
- When shaft S turns two times ⇨ Normal
- When shaft S does not turn at all or only once ⇨ **Poor turning**

Note1:

To connect with the shaft S and the holding gate, it is possible to check the movement of the holding gate by looking at the rotation of shaft S.

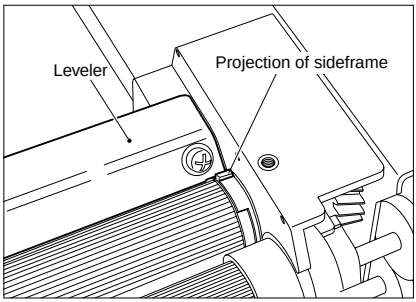
Note2:

If it is not possible to make a visual evaluation, one can judge by the noise of the rotation of the holding gate.



1.16 Adjusting the Thickness of the Magnetic Brush (leveler)

Bring both edges of the developer leveler up against the projections on the front and rear side frames. Positional adjustment is not needed as the thickness of the transport roller magnetic brush is already fixed.



1.17 Adjusting the Gap between the Drum and Sleeve

Since the guide roller of the developer unit is pressed against the drum, no adjustment is necessary.

1.18 Adjustment of Developer Polarity Position

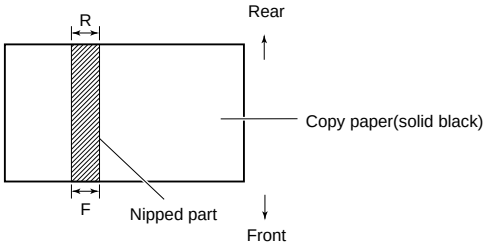
As the developer polarity position is determined by the magnet roller and polarity fixing bush, no adjustment is necessary.

1.19 Adjusting the Heat Roller Pressure

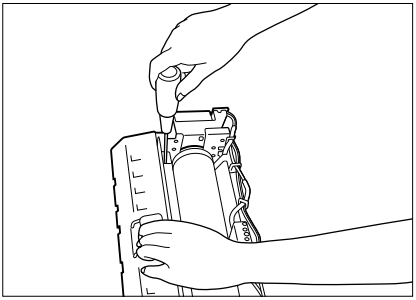
Normally, the heat roller pressure need not be adjusted. However, it must be carried out when wrinkles frequently appear on copies made on plain paper.

<Procedure>

(1) Make an A3 size copy (entirely black) with the ADF open.
(2) Turn the power switch OFF after copying is finished.
(3) Quickly open the front cover, and draw out the belt transport unit.
(4) Insert the copy made in (1) into the fuser inlet guide with the entirely black side facing down then turning the jam release lever CCW until the center of the copy paper is nipped by the heat roller.
(5) After approx. 20 seconds, take the copy paper out by quickly turning the jam release lever CCW again.
(6) Measure the width of the section of the copy paper nipped by the heat rollers at the both front and rear sides.



(7) If |F-R|≧0.5mm, loosen the fixing screw of the pressure spring on the side that having the broader nipped section. One half turn corresponds to narrowing the nipped section by about 0.5mm.
(8) If |F-R|<0.5mm, end the adjustment, and make five copies of A3 size white paper with the ADF closed to clean the heat rollers.



1.20 Setting the Heat Roller Temperature and Heat Roller Pressure

The fuser has been set (heat roller surface temperature: 200˚C, pressurizing pressure: 100 kg) taking the fusing performance, wrinkling, curling and toner transfer deficiency on the leading/trailing edge of duplexing copy into consideration when our company recommended paper is used. This is to allow the characteristics of the paper to be demonstrated in a well-balanced manner. However, various types of paper are used in the field, and factors such as the paper thickness and surface flatness greatly affect the fusing performance, in particular. If the fusing performance deteriorates while using a specific type of paper, adopt the following procedures to cope with each case:

<Procedures>
① Increase the preset temperature of the heat roller surface by keying in the temperature with the control panel.
② Increase the pressurizing pressure of the heat rollers by inserting spacers in the pressure springs.
③ Carry out both ① and ②.

Perform this procedure in order ① to ③ while confirming the effect and adverse influence of the adjustment.

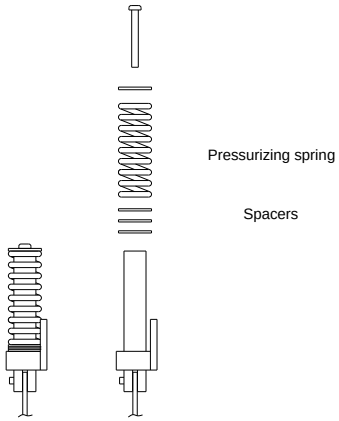
<Procedure ①: Increase the preset temperature of the heat roller surface>
Change the heat roller preset temperature (when the copier is ready) by code 411 in setting mode (08). The default is “8” (200˚C), and can be changed within the range “8” to “11” ((200˚C to 209˚C).

Notes: 1. When a large value is set (to increase the temperature), the level of wrinkling, curling and toner transfer deficiency on the leading/trailing edge of duplexing copy tend to worsen.
2. Do not set the temperature to value larger than “12” (210˚C or more). The fuser thermostat actuates to turn the power OFF, and the thermostat must be replaced.

<Procedure ②: Increase the pressurizing pressure of the heat rollers.>
(Carry this out when procedure ① does not produce the desired result. If the preset value has been changed in procedure (1), it must be returned to its original value before this procedure is carried out.)

Insert spacers (4401 903180/WAS-15-105-FUS) under the pressurizing spring as shown in the figure to increase the pressurizing force. (Up to three spacers may be inserted on one side.) Inserting one spacer on each side increases the pressurizing force by 5kg. This means that the current force of 100kg can be increased to 115kg (when a total of six spacers, three on each side, are inserted).

Notes: 1. The spacers must be inserted under the spring as shown in the figure below.
2. The same number of spacers must be inserted at the front and rear sides. (Skew occurs when a different number of spacers are inserted on the front and rear sides.)
3. Do not insert four or more spacers on one side. (The spring may deform.)
4. When the pressure is increased, the level of wrinkling, curling and toner transfer deficiency on the leading/trailing edge of duplexing copy tend to worsen.

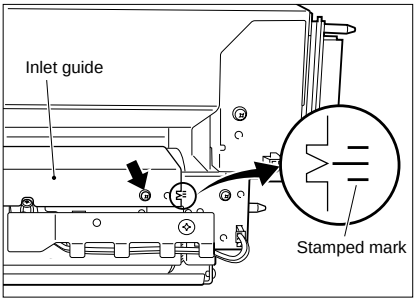


<Procedure ③: Carry out both ① and ②>
(Carry this out when procedure ② does not produce the desired result.)

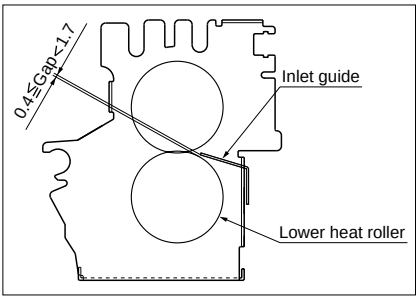
1.21 Adjusting the Fuser Inlet Guide

Check the gap between the inlet guide and the lower heat roller when the following troubles occur:
- Stain on the back side of the paper
- Fuser inlet jam
- Wrinkled paper

(1) Move the screw fixing position to the oblong hole to make adjustment using the stamped mark as a guide.



(2) Adjust the gap between the inlet guide and the lower heat roller. (0.4 ≦ gap < 1.7)

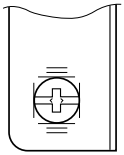


1.22 Adjustment of ADF

1.22.1 Adjustment of skew with ADF

(1) Check that the right hinge is installed as shown below figure.

Note: Fix the screw on the center of scale.



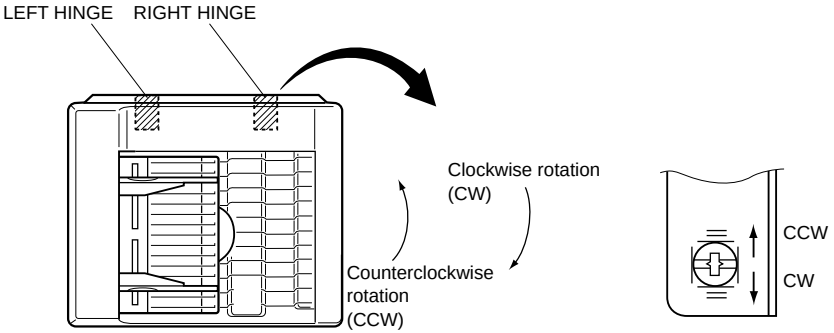
RIGHT HINGE

(2) Place the test original face up in the tray, press PRINT to make a copy.
Check that the copy isn't skew.

(3) If there is a skew, loosen the two screws on right/left hinges and adjust the position of RIGHT HINGE.
Repeat the procedure until the skew is rectified.

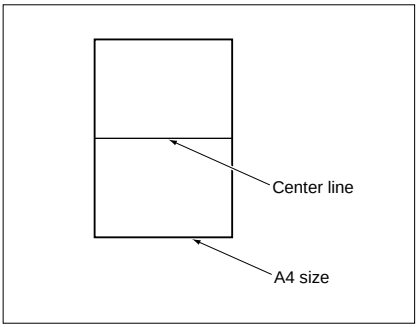
Note: After the adjustment, tighten the two screws of LEFT and RIGHT HINGE without fail.

Image Inclination

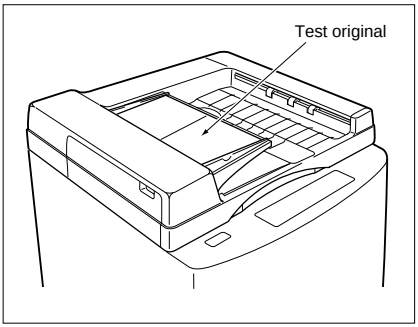


1.22.2 Adjustment of ADF horizontal deviation caused for ADF

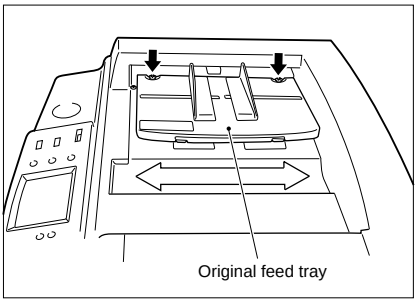
(1) Make a test original as shown: First draw a center line on an A4 sized copy paper.



(2) Place the test original on the original feed tray with the center line side facing up and align the side guides to the sides of the original.



(3) Press the START key to make a copy. Fold the copy in half and check that the center line is in the center of the copy: If it is not, adjust the original feed tray until the center line is copied in the center. After adjustment, tighten the two screws securely to fasten the original feed tray.



1.22.3 Adjustment of ADF leading-edge position

If the original fed from the ADF has not stopped in the preset position, make adjustment using the following procedure:

① While pressing the “0” and “5” keys on the copier’s control panel simultaneously, turn on the power switch.

② After confirming that “TEST MODE” is shown on the display, key in “3”,“5” and “0” and press the START key.

③ To make the original stop at the feed side of the ADF, key in a number smaller than the one shown now and press the SET key or the INTERRUPT key. If you want to stop the original at the exit side of the ADF, key in a number larger than the one shown now and press the SET key or the INTERRUPT key.

1 step: Approx. 1mm adjustable Allowable input values: 0 ~ 15

④ With an original set on the original feed tray, if you press the ENERGY SAVER key, an original is fed in and copied.

⑤ After adjustment is completed, press the “0” and “9” keys simultaneously to go into the normal copy mode.

1.22.4 Adjustment of leading-edge position for ADF (at the Time of Reversing)

If the original fed from the ADF has not stopped in the preset position after reversing, make adjustment using the following procedure:

① While pressing the “0” and “5” keys on the copier’s control panel simultaneously, turn on the power switch.

② After confirming that “TEST MODE” is shown on the display, key in “3”,“5” and “1” and press the START key.

③ To make the original stop at the feed side of the ADF, key in a number smaller than the one shown now and press the SET key or the INTERRUPT key. If you want to stop the original at the exit side of the ADF, key in a number larger than the one shown now and press the SET key or the INTERRUPT key.

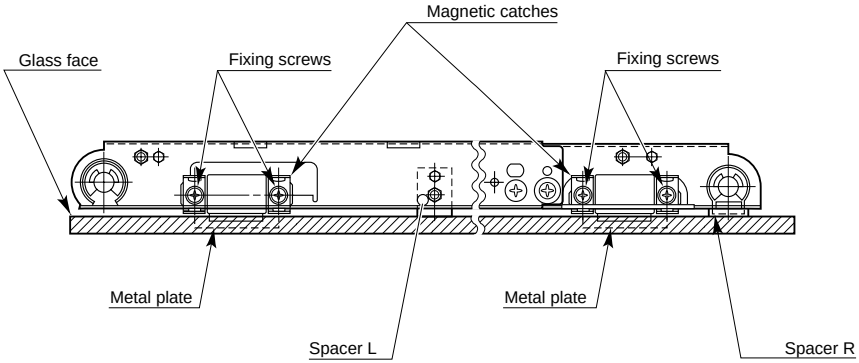
1 step: Approx. 2mm adjustable Allowable input values: 0 ~ 15

④ With an original set on the original feed tray, if you press the ENERGY SAVER key, an original is fed in and copied.

⑤ After adjustment is completed, press the “0” and “9” keys simultaneously to go into the normal copy mode.

1.22.5 Adjustment of magnetic catches installation

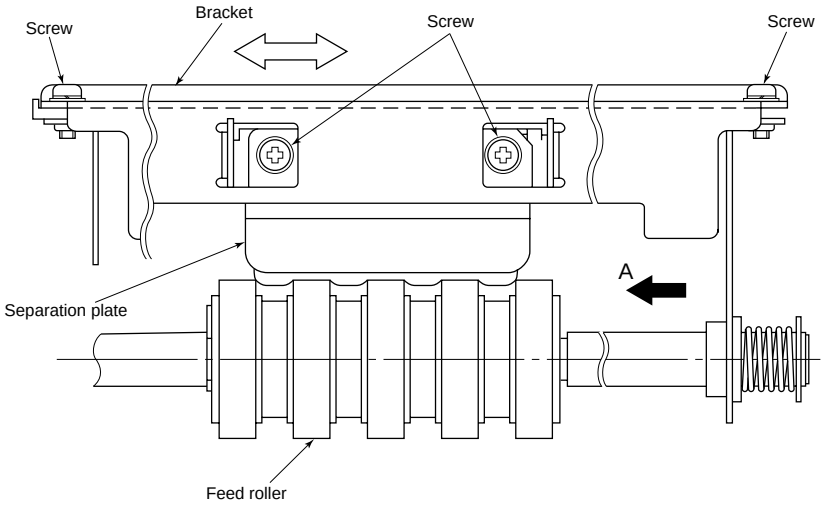
Place the belt unit on the glass face, and make magnetic catches adsorb to the metal plate in the state where the spacers L, R and glass are in contact, and then secure the belt unit with fixing screws.
Space between each spacer and the glass face shall be 0.5mm or less.

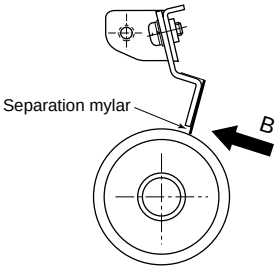


1.22.6 Adjustment of the separation area

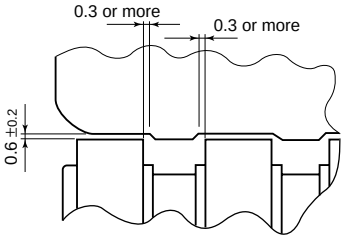
When the separation plate is attached using the thickness gage, there should be a 0.6±0.2mm clearance between the separation mylar and the rubber of the feed roller (the difference by the side of the front and rear is 0.2mm or less).

Adjust the gap between the separation mylar and the feed roller in the thrust direction by sliding the bracket to right and left so that the gap becomes 0.3mm or more (see the view from B).





View from "A"



View from "B"(detailed drawing)

1.22.7 EEPROM Initialization, Sensor Adjustment and Test Mode

(1) EEPROM initialization and sensor adjustment

Whenever the logic PC board, aligning sensor, timing sensor or exit sensor is replaced, it is necessary to initialize the EEPROM and adjust the sensor by adjustment mode (05).

If the initialization and/or adjustment is not performed, errors (paper jam etc.) may occur.

(2) Test mode

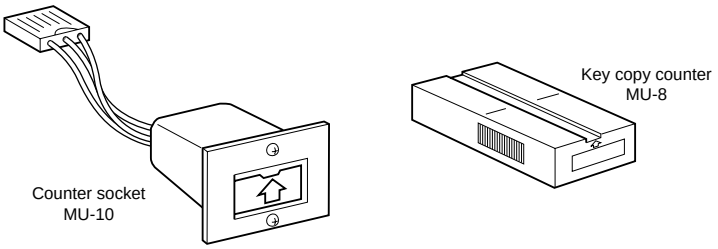
The independent test modes below can be performed by test mode (output check: 03). Refer to the Service Manual for the PPC.

- Pick-up roller rotation
- Aligning roller rotation
- Transport belt rotation CW
- Transport belt rotation CCW
- Reversal roller rotation

1.23 Key Copy Counter (MU-8, MU-10)

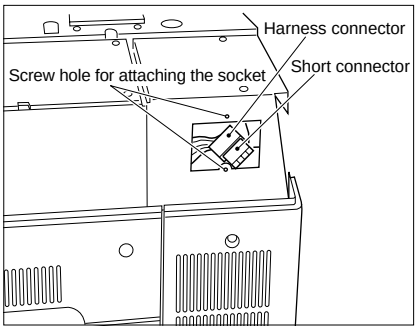
The following two parts are needed for installing the key copy counter.

- MU-10 counter socket
- MU-8 key copy counter

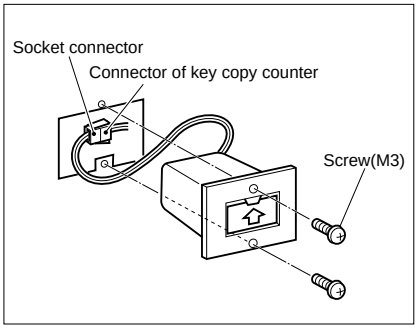


<Installation Procedure>

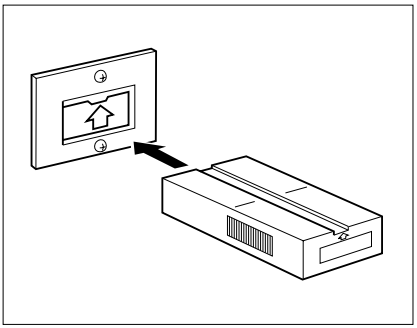
(1) Remove the rear cover (1 screw).
(2) Remove the right top cover and cut the window for the counter.
(3) Draw out the harness connector from the frame hole, and cut the short harness of the connector. (Treat the cut end of the harness properly to avoid it causing short-circuit with the frame.) And then remove the short connector.



(4) Connect the counter socket connector to the harness connector of the machine.
(5) Install the counter socket onto the frame. (2 M3 screws)
(6) Reinstall the right top cover and rear cover.



(7) Insert the key copy counter with its arrow facing up and pointing toward the copier.



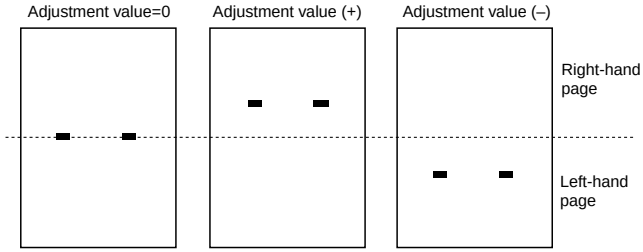
(8) In the “08” setting mode, enter “3” under code 202.

1.24 Fine Adjustment of Binding Position/Folding Position

By moving the paper positioning plate up or down, fine adjustment of the binding position/folding position can be made.

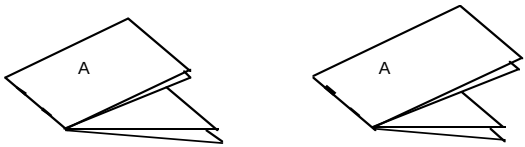
Adjustment Code "05" - Code "468-0~2

* Increasing the adjustment value shifts the binding position/folding position towards the right-hand page by 0.25mm for each/step.
* Decreasing the adjustment value shifts the binding position/folding position towards the left-hand page by 0.25mm for each/step.



Notes: 1. When fine adjustment of the binding positio/folding position is performed, the following result should be obtained.

2. The outermost of the book (“A” in the figure below) will be:
the book opening from the left: A will be the last page
the book opening from the right: A will be the first page.



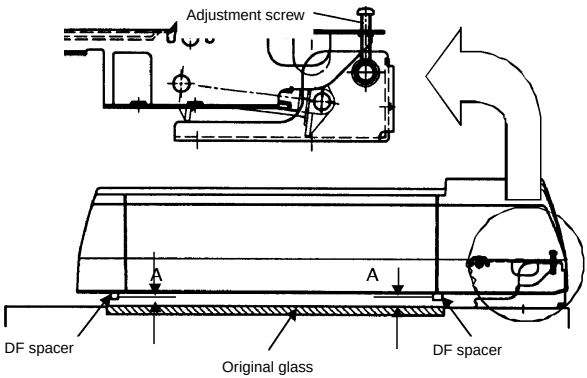
Adjustment value (+) Adjustment value (–)

1.25 Adjustment of RADF Height

The adjustment screws attached to the hinge are to adjust the height of the gap between the glass and the RADF.

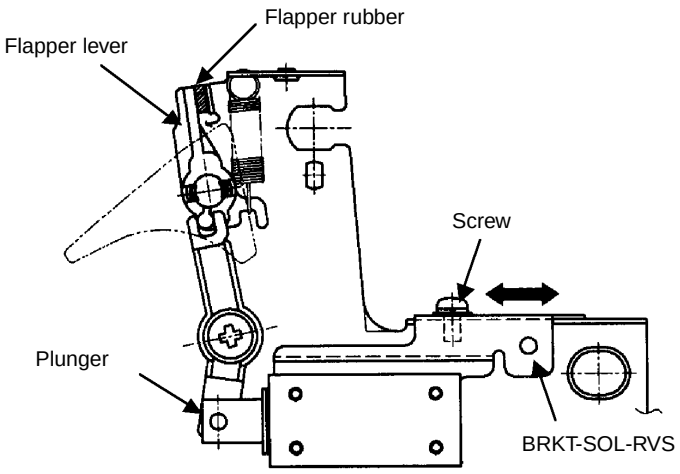
(1) Adjustment screws:
    If they are turned counterclockwise, the gap becomes narrower.
    The adjustment screws are on the right hinge and the left hinge (2 places).

(2) The gap (arrow A) of the adjustment value is 0 ~0.5mm.



1.26 Flapper Solenoid Adjustment

(1) Push the flapper solenoid plunger by hand.
(This makes the solenoid able to be pulled in electrically.)
(2) Install BRKT-SOL-RVS so that the flapper rubber can contact with the flapper lever.
(3) Fix BRKT-SOL-RVS with the screw.
(4) With the solenoid pulled, confirm that there is no gap between the flapper rubber and the flapper lever.



1.27 Developer powder life control switching ("08-414")

(1) Usually select **"0".**
Even if **"0"** is selected, it can be found that toner scattering does not stop in special cases such as repeat printing of small quantities.
In this instance, select 1, 2, 3 in steps.
(2) Select **"2"** in the following case. When **"0"** is selected and toner scattering soils the image after 200,000 to 300,000 copies. **"1"** is an intermediate stage between **"0"** and **"2",** whereas **"3"** is above this.
However in low humidity conditions, **"2"** and **"3"** can reduce the image density.
(3) When the new ROM is applied; If toner scattering occurs on the market, as a countermeasure manually return the machines which have had 10 bits reduced to their previous status by the following method.

New ROM PRA-300M-10~
PRA-302M-04~
PRA-304M-02~

(Adjustment Method)

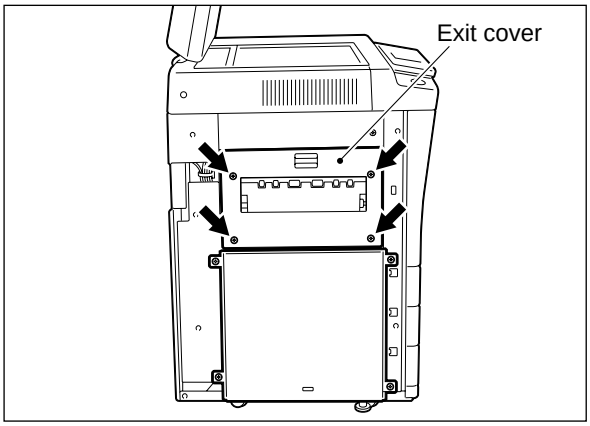
1) Write the value of 08/404.
2) With the UP key in 05/200, raise the current control bit value by 10 bits.
3) Press the setting key.
4) n 04/404 once again, input the written value (1) using the digital keys.

1.27 Additional Parts when Installing the Paper Exit Tray

To ensure perfomance of exiting-paper under all conditions, the parts used in the copier exit area for the installation of the exit tray and the finisher differ as follows.

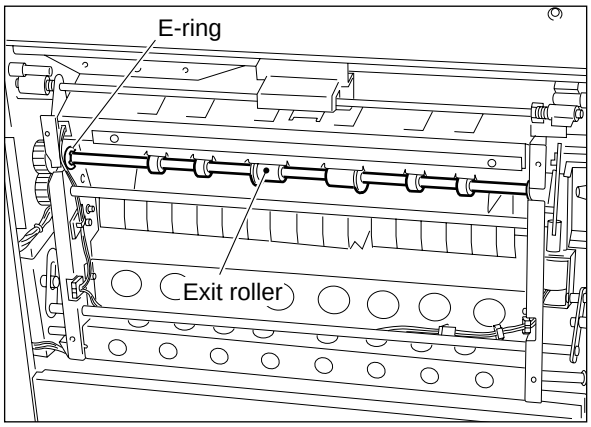
[Installation Method]

(1) Remove the lower exit cover (4 screws)



(2) Remove the rear E-ring, and slide the bearing to the inside of the frame.

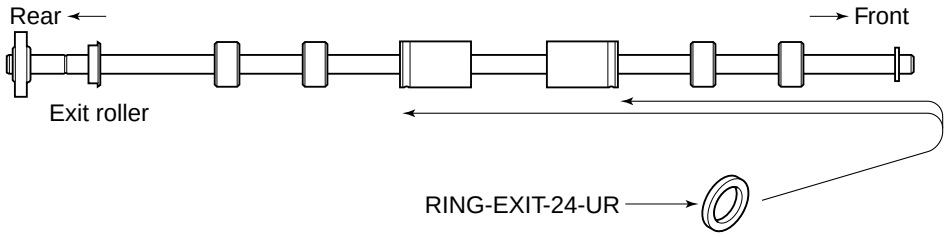
(3) Slide the exit roller to the rear and the bearing to the inside of the frame, and remove the exit roller while pulling out the exit roller rear side.



(4) Install RING-EXIT-24-UR (2 pieces) to the exit roller groove from the front side.

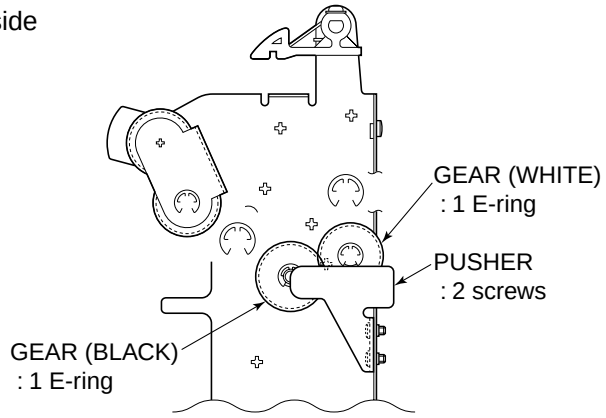
Note

*****The exit roller has the groove for installation.



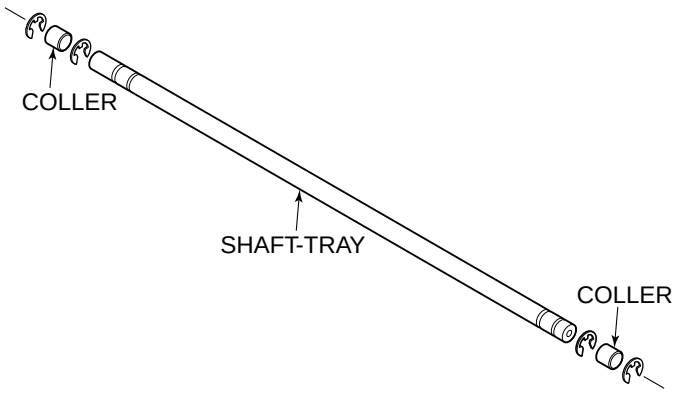
(5) Remove the following parts of the rear side (refer to the figure on the right).

*1 pusher
*2 gears



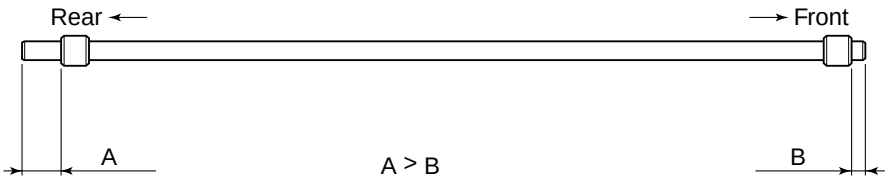
(6) Remove the SHAFT-TRAY.
(screws: 1 at the rear, 1 at the front)

(7) Install the COLLER-SFT-TRAY (2 pieces).

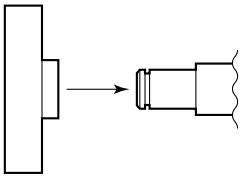


Notes

*When attaching the SHAFT-TRAY, Pay attention to whether it is facing the front or the rear (see below).



*When attaching the gear, be careful to the direction of the gears. (See below; both should face in the same direction)



2. PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE

2.1 Inspection every 440,000 Copies (8070), every 400,000 Copies (6570), every 340,000 Copies (5570), every 280,000 Coies (4580)

(1) Preparation

① Ask the copier operator about the present machine conditions and note them down.

② Before starting the maintenance work, make and retain a few sample copies for comparison reference purposes.

③ Turn the power switch OFF and disconnect the power cord plug.

(2) The periodic inspection should be conducted in accordance with the Periodic Inspection Check list shown below.
Perform the inspection by referring to the figures, as well as to the explanation in the Service Manual when necessary.

(3) After the inspection has been completed, plug in the machine and turn the power switch ON, and check the general operation of the machine by making a few copies and comparing them to those made previously.

2.2 Inspection and Overhaul every 880,000 Copies (8070), every 800,000 Copies (6570/5570/4580)

(1) Replace all the consumables.

(2) Check that if there is any damage to the parts in the driving section (gear, pulley, timing belt, etc.). In principle, replace those parts at this time.

(3) Check to see if there is any damage or peeling of adhered parts (tape, Mylar sheet, etc.). Replace any affected parts if necessary.

(4) Check that if all the switches and sensors operate properly. Replace them if they are not operating properly.

(5) Clean the inside of the machine thoroughly.

Note: Before inspecting and overhauling the feed section of the 3-cassette feed unit, remove the PFP upper aligning unit and PFP feed unit from the copier.

2.3 Periodic Inspection Check List

Symbols used in the Periodic Inspection Check List

Cleaning	Lubrication	Replacement	Operation check	Date
Ⓐ: Cleaning with alcohol	Ⓛ: Launa 40	100: Every 100,000 copies	◯: Check for abnormalities after cleaning or replacement.	User's name
◯: Cleaning with soft pad, cloth, or cleaner (vacuum cleaner)	Application	280: Every 280,000 copies		
	Ⓢⓘ: Silicon Oil	340: Every 340,000 copies		Machine No.
	Ⓦ: White grease (Molycoat)	400: Every 400,000 copies		
	Ⓐⓥ: Alvania No.2	440: Every 440,000 copies		Inspector
		Same from here on		
		△: Replace in event of deformation or other damage		Remarks

PERIODIC INSPECTION CHECK LIST For 6570/5570

Category	Item to check	Clean at 400,000 copies (340,000 copies)	Lubricate at 400,000 copies (340,000 copies)	Replace x 1,000	Check while on	Remarks <Page-Item>
Cleaner	1. Overall unit	◯				
	2. Main blade			400 (340)		*1 <P54-I24>
	3. Toner bag			100		Conducted by copier operator <P57-I29>
	4. Recovery blade	◯		△		*2
	5. Separation claw (for Drum)			400 (340)	◯	*3 <P56-I21>
	6. Fur brush			400 (340)		<P55-I23>
	7. Toner transport auger drive		Ⓦ			*13
	8. Cleaner lower guide	◯				
	8-1. Toner adhesion amount sensor	◯				*22
	8-2. Drum shaft bearing	◯				*22
Drum	9. Discharge LED	◯				
	10. Drum shaft	◯				
	11. Drum			400 (340)		*4 <P47-I1>
	12. Ozone filter (for exit fan)			400 (340)		<P61-I11>
Scanner	13. Glass	◯ or Ⓐ				
	14. Glass holder	◯ or Ⓐ				
	15. Mirror 1	◯				
	16. Mirror 2	◯				
	17. Mirror 3	◯				
	18. Reflector	◯				
	19. Lens	◯				
	20. Exposure lamp			△	◯	
	21. Copy area indicator				◯	
	21-1. Shading glass	◯				<P44-I7>
	22. Automatic paper-size detector	◯			◯	
	23. Slide sheet (front, rear)	◯ or Ⓐ		△		
	24. Air filter	◯		△		*5
Charger	25. Case	◯				*6
	26. Charger wire			400 △ (340)	◯	*6 <P46-I16>
	27. Terminal contact	◯				
	28. Charger wire cleaner			400 (340)		<P46-I9>
	29. Grid			400 (340)		<P46-I24>
Around laser unit	30. Slit glass on the copier	◯				*20
Developer	31. Overall unit	◯				
	31-1. Duct cover	◯				*23
	32. Developer material			400 (340)		*7
	33. Front shield	◯		△		

Notes: 1. Figures in parentheses indicate the inspection cycle of the 5570.

2. The “Remarks” column indicates page and item numbers in the Parts List for consumable parts. The consumable replacement cycle on the feeding system is the number of sheets fed on each feeding source.

For 6570/5570

Category	Item to check	Clean at 400,000 copies (340,000 copies)	Lubricate at 400,000 copies (340,000 copies)	Replace x 1,000	Check while on	Remarks <Page-Item>
Developer	34. Oil seal (9 portions)		Ⓐⓥ			*16
	35. Guide roller	◯ or Ⓐ		△		
	36. Duct filter	◯		△		*5
	37. Toner filter			400 (340)		<P48-I12>
	38. Toner hopper drive worm gear		Ⓦ			
Paper feed section	42. Aligning roller	Ⓐ		△		
	43. Paper guide	◯		△		
	44. Brush	◯		△		
	46. Paper feed system drive gears (tooth faces)		Ⓦ			
	47. Aligning unit support bush and pressurizing leaf spring		Ⓦ			*11
Fuser unit	69. Upper heat roller (Teflon roller)			400 (340)		*8 <P31-I17>
	70. Lower heat roller (rubber roller)			400 (340)		*8 <P31-I19>
	71. Upper separation claw			400 (340)		*9 <P32-I20>
	72. Lower separation claw			△		*9
	73. Cleaning roller 1			400 (340)		*10 <P33-I7>
	74. Cleaning roller 2			400 (340)		*10 <P33-I5>
	75. Cleaning roller 3			400 (340)		*10 <P33-I16>
	75-1. Cleaning roller 4			400 (340)		*10 <P32-I37>
	76. Upper and lower thermistors	Ⓐ		△		
	77. Heat roller entrance guide	Ⓐ				
	78. Heat roller exit guide	Ⓐ				
	79. Paper dust recovery bracket	◯				
	80. Exit roller	Ⓐ				
	81. Heat roller/cleaning roller drive gear		Ⓢⓘ			
	82. Cleaning roller bush		Ⓢⓘ			
Transfer belt	83. Transfer belt			400 (340)		*17 <P29-I42>
	84. Transfer belt power supply roller			400 (340)		*18 <P29-I38>
	85. Transfer belt cleaning brush			400 (340)		*19 <P29-I8>
	86. Transfer belt drive roller	Ⓐ		△		
	87. Transfer belt follower roller	Ⓐ		△		
	88. Transfer belt separation auxiliary roller	Ⓐ		△		
	89-1. Transfer belt cleaning blade			400 (340)		*21 <P29-I27>
	89-2. Flicker periphery	◯				
	89-3. GCB bush and plastic bush		Ⓛ			

For 6570/5570

Category	Item to check	Clean at 400,000 copies (340,000 copies)	Lubricate at 400,000 copies (340,000 copies)	Replace x 1,000	Check while on	Remarks <Page-Item>
Transfer belt	89-4. Transfer belt separation auxiliary roller bearing and GCB	Ⓐ	Ⓛ			
ADU	90. ADU pick-up roller	Ⓐ		△		
	91. ADU feed roller	Ⓐ		△		
	92. ADU separation belt	Ⓐ		△		
	93. Transport rollers 1 to 4	Ⓐ		△		
	94. ADU aligning roller	Ⓐ		△		
	95. GCB bush and plastic bush		Ⓛ			
	96. Drive gear tooth faces		Ⓦ			
	97. Exit/ADU switching gate and Main unit eixt section/ADU relay roller	Ⓐ				
PFP	48. PFP pick-up roller			100		<P11-I43>
	49. PFP feed roller			100		*24 <P11-I21>
	50. PFP separation roller		Ⓐ/Ⓥ	100		*14 <P12-I21>
	51. PFP aligning roller	Ⓐ		△		
	52. Paper guide	◯				
	53. Tray drive worm wheel and gear (tooth faces)		Ⓦ			*12
	54. PFP drive gear (tooth faces)		Ⓦ			
	55. GCB bush and plastic bush		Ⓛ			
ADF	98. ADF pick-up roller			400 (340)		<P81-I18>
	99. ADF feed roller			400 (340)		<P81-I14>
	100. ADF separation pad			400 (340)		<P81-I53>
	101. Transport belt			400 (340)		<P84-I22>
	102. ADF aligning roller	Ⓐ				
	103. ADF reversal roller	Ⓐ				
	104. ADF empty sensor	◯				
	105. ADF aligning sensor	◯				
	106. ADF size sensor	◯				
	107. Exit sensor	◯				
	108. ADF timing sensor	◯				
	109. Transport belt cleaning brush	◯				
LCF	56. LCF pick-up roller			400 (340)		<P17-I19>
	57. LCF feed roller			400 (340)		*24 <P17-I9>
	58. LCF separation roller		Ⓐ/Ⓥ	400 (340)		*14, *24 <P17-I40>
	59. Manual pick-up roller			100		<P18-I19>
	60. Manual feed roller			100		<P18-I15>
	61. Manual separation roller		Ⓐ/Ⓥ	100		*14 <P16-I32>
	62. Paper guide	◯				
	63. Paper feed system drive gears		Ⓦ			
	64. GCB bush and plastic bush		Ⓛ			
	65. Gear		Ⓦ			*15
	66. Worm and worm wheel		Ⓦ			*15
	67. Worm shaft		Ⓦ			*15
	68. Wire pulley shaft		Ⓦ			*15

Note: When lubricating, do not allow oil to come in contact the rollers, belts and belt pulleys.

PERIODIC INSPECTION CHECK LIST For 8070/4580

Category	Item to check	Clean at 440,000 copies (280,000 copies)	Lubricate at 440,000 copies (280,000 copies)	Replace x 1,000	Check while on	Remarks <Page-Item>
Cleaner	1. Overall unit	◯				
	2. Main blade			440 (280)		*1 <P54-I24>
	3. Toner bag			100		Conducted by copier operator <P57-I29>
	4. Recovery blade	◯		△		*2
	5. Separation claw (for Drum)			440 (280)	◯	*3 <P56-I21>
	6. Fur brush			440 (280)		<P55-I23>
	7. Toner transport auger drive		Ⓦ			*13
	8. Cleaner lower guide	◯				
	8-1. Toner adhesion amount sensor	◯				*22
	8-2. Drum shaft bearing	◯				*22
Drum	9. Discharge LED	◯				
	10. Drum shaft	◯				
	11. Drum			440 (280)		*4 <P47-I1>
	12. Ozone filter (for exit fan)			440 (280)		<P61-I11>
Scanner	13. Glass	◯ or Ⓐ				
	14. Glass holder	◯ or Ⓐ				
	15. Mirror 1	◯				
	16. Mirror 2	◯				
	17. Mirror 3	◯				
	18. Reflector	◯				
	19. Lens	◯				
	20. Exposure lamp			△	◯	
	21. Copy area indicator				◯	
	21-1. Shading glass	◯				<P44-I7>
	22. Automatic paper-size detector	◯			◯	
	23. Slide sheet (front, rear)	◯ or Ⓐ		△		
	24. Air filter	◯		△		*5
Charger	25. Case	◯				*6
	26. Charger wire			440 △ (280)	◯	*6 <P46-I16>
	27. Terminal contact	◯				
	28. Charger wire cleaner			440 (280)		<P46-I9>
	29. Grid			440 (280)		<P46-I24>
Around laser unit	30. Slit glass on the copier	◯				*20
Developer	31. Overall unit	◯				
	31-1. Duct cover	◯				*23
	32. Developer material			440 (280)		*7
	33. Front shield	◯		△		

Notes: 1. Figures in parentheses indicate the inspection cycle of the 4580.

2. The “Remarks” column indicates page and item numbers in the Parts List for consumable parts. The consumable replacement cycle on the feeding system is the number of sheets fed on each feeding line.

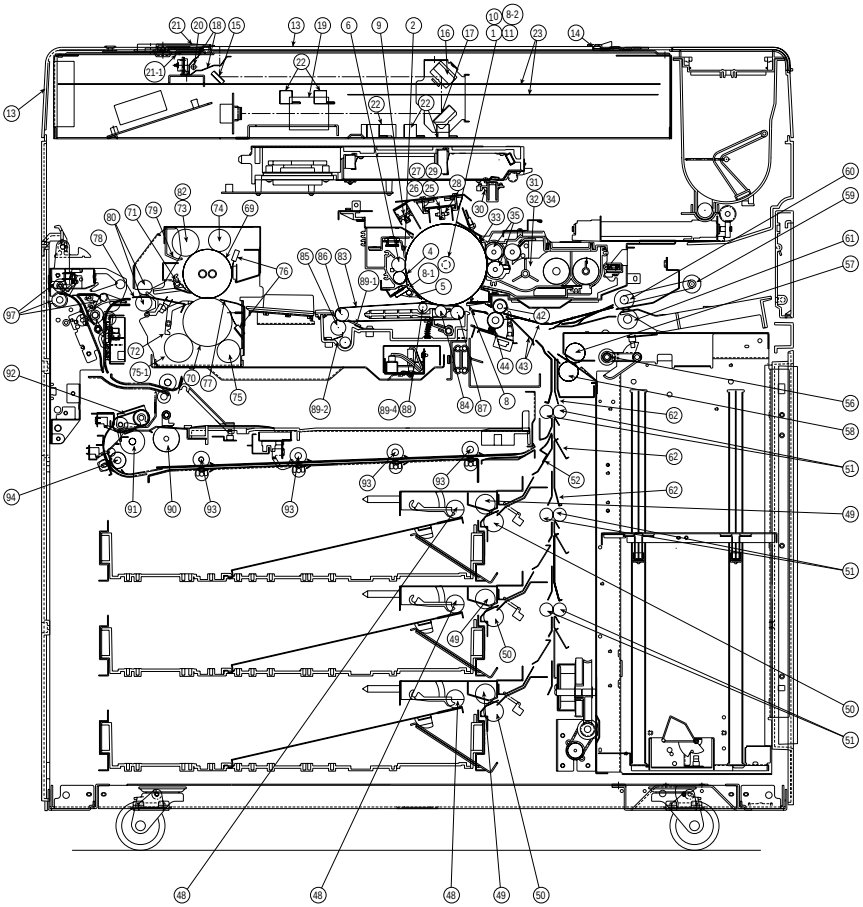
For 8070/4580

Category	Item to check	Clean at 440,000 copies (280,000 copies)	Lubricate at 440,000 copies (280,000 copies)	Replace x 1,000	Check while on	Remarks <Page-Item>
Developer	34. Oil seal (9 portions)		Ⓐⓥ			*16
	35. Guide roller	◯ or Ⓐ		△		
	36. Duct filter	◯		△		*5
	37. Toner filter			440 (280)		<P48-I12>
	38. Toner hopper drive worm gear		Ⓦ			
Paper feed section	42. Aligning roller	Ⓐ		△		
	43. Paper guide	◯		△		
	44. Brush	◯		△		
	46. Paper feed system drive gears (tooth faces)		Ⓦ			
	47. Aligning unit support bush and pressurizing leaf spring		Ⓦ			*11
Fuser unit	69. Upper heat roller (Teflon roller)			440 (280)		*8 <P31-I17>
	70. Lower heat roller (rubber roller)			440 (280)		*8 <P31-I19>
	71. Upper separation claw			440 (280)		*9 <P32-I20>
	72. Lower separation claw			△		*9
	73. Cleaning roller 1			440 (280)		*10 <P33-I7>
	74. Cleaning roller 2			440 (280)		*10 <P33-I5>
	75. Cleaning roller 3			440 (280)		*10 <P33-I16>
	75-1. Cleaning roller 4			440 (280)		*10 <P32-I37>
	76. Upper and lower thermistors	Ⓐ		△		
	77. Heat roller entrance guide	Ⓐ				
	78. Heat roller exit guide	Ⓐ				
	79. Paper dust recovery bracket	◯				
	80. Exit roller	Ⓐ				
	81. Heat roller/cleaning roller drive gear		Ⓢⓘ			
	82. Cleaning roller bush		Ⓢⓘ			
Transfer belt	83. Transfer belt			440 (280)		*17 <P29-I42>
	84. Transfer belt power supply roller			440 (280)		*18 <P29-I38>
	85. Transfer belt cleaning brush			440 (280)		*19 <P29-I8>
	86. Transfer belt drive roller	Ⓐ		△		
	87. Transfer belt follower roller	Ⓐ		△		
	88. Transfer belt separation auxiliary roller	Ⓐ		△		
	89-1. Transfer belt cleaning blade			440 (280)		*21 <P29-I27>
	89-2. Flicker periphery	◯				
	89-3. GCB bush and plastic bush		Ⓛ			

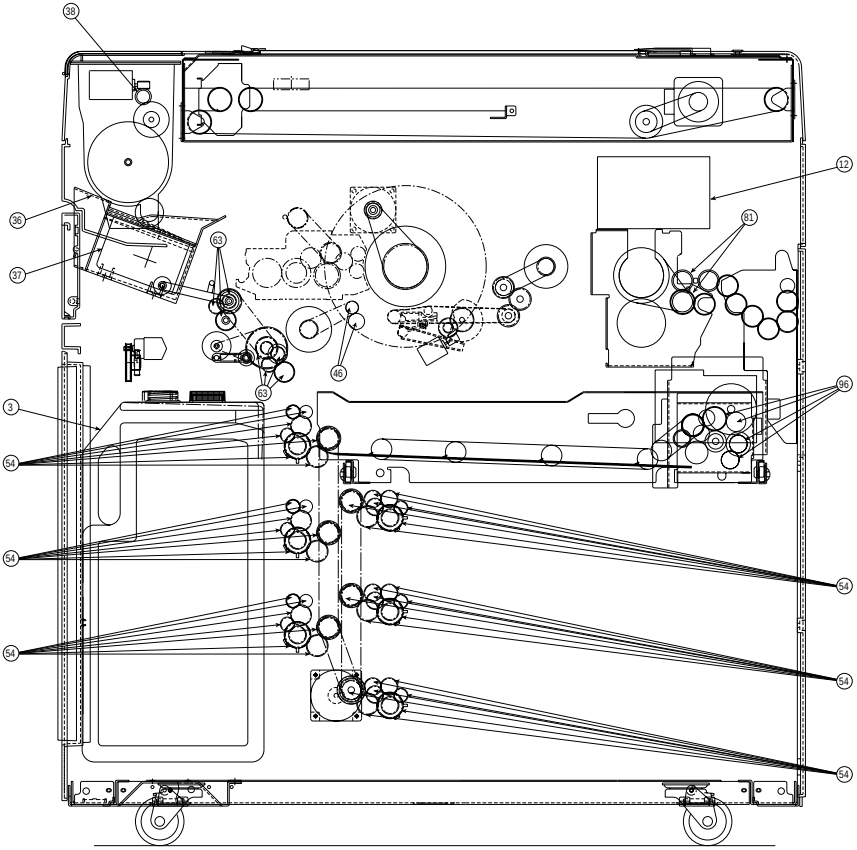
For 8070/4580

Category	Item to check	Clean at 440,000 copies (280,000 copies)	Lubricate at 440,000 copies (280,000 copies)	Replace x 1,000	Check while on	Remarks <Page-Item>
Transfer belt	89-4. Transfer belt separation auxiliary roller bearing and GCB	Ⓐ	Ⓛ			
ADU	90. ADU pick-up roller	Ⓐ		△		
	91. ADU feed roller	Ⓐ		△		
	92. ADU separation belt	Ⓐ		△		
	93. Transport rollers 1 to 4	Ⓐ		△		
	94. ADU aligning roller	Ⓐ		△		
	95. GCB bush and plastic bush		Ⓛ			
	96. Drive gear tooth faces		Ⓦ			
	97. Exit/ADU switching gate and Main unit eixt section/ADU relay roller	Ⓐ				
PFP	48. PFP pick-up roller			100		<P11-I43>
	49. PFP feed roller			100		*24 <P11-I21>
	50. PFP separation roller		Ⓐ/Ⓦ	100		*14 <P12-I21>
	51. PFP aligning roller	Ⓐ		△		
	52. Paper guide	◯				
	53. Tray drive worm wheel and gear (tooth faces)		Ⓦ			*12
	54. PFP drive gear (tooth faces)		Ⓦ			
	55. GCB bush and plastic bush		Ⓛ			
ADF	98. ADF pick-up roller			440 (280)		<P81-I18>
	99. ADF feed roller			440 (280)		<P81-I14>
	100. ADF separation pad			440 (280)		<P81-I53>
	101. Transport belt			440 (280)		<P84-I22>
	102. ADF aligning roller	Ⓐ				
	103. ADF reversal roller	Ⓐ				
	104. ADF empty sensor	◯				
	105. ADF aligning sensor	◯				
	106. ADF size sensor	◯				
	107. Exit sensor	◯				
	108. ADF timing sensor	◯				
	109. Transport belt cleaning brush	◯				
LCF	56. LCF pick-up roller			440 (280)		<P17-I19>
	57. LCF feed roller			440 (280)		*24 <P17-I9>
	58. LCF separation roller		Ⓐ/Ⓦ	440 (280)		*14, *24 <P17-I40>
	59. Manual pick-up roller			100		<P18-I19>
	60. Manual feed roller			100		<P18-I15>
	61. Manual separation roller		Ⓐ/Ⓦ	100		*14 <P16-I32>
	62. Paper guide	◯				
	63. Paper feed system drive gears		Ⓦ			
	64. GCB bush and plastic bush		Ⓛ			
	65. Gear		Ⓦ			*15
	66. Worm and worm wheel		Ⓦ			*15
	67. Worm shaft		Ⓦ			*15
	68. Wire pulley shaft		Ⓦ			*15

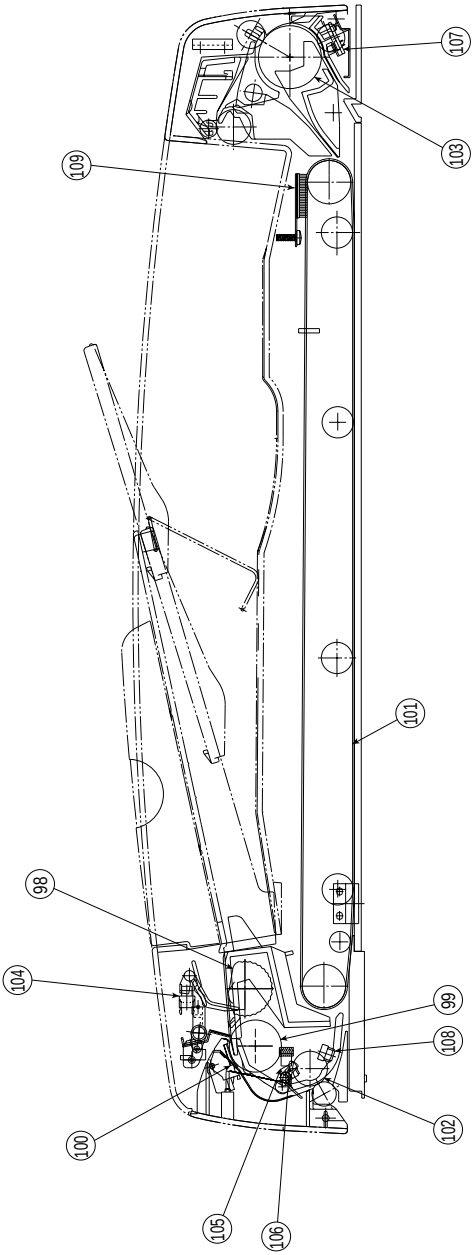
Note: When lubricating, do not allow oil to come in contact the rollers, belts and belt pulleys.



Front sectional view (ec. drive system)



Rear drive system



ADF front sectional view

Explanation of the items in the "Remarks" column of the Periodic Inspection Check List

*1 Main blade and fur brush
If defective cleaning occurs due to the adhesion of paper dust, etc., the edge of the blade might have been damaged. Replace the blade regardless of the number of the copies made so far. Also replace the fur brush at this time

*2 Recovery blade
If the edge of the blade is damaged, replace the blade regardless of the number of copies made so far.

*3 Drum separation claw
If the tip of the separation claw has been damaged (e.g. worn coating) or separation claw marks are apparent in the copied image, replace the claw regardless of the number of copies made so far. Clean the tip of the claw by lightly wiping with a dry cloth. After cleaning, be sure to remove bits of lint from the claw. In addition, be sure to apply patting powder (lubricant) to the separation claw after cleaning the claw and when replacing the claw or drum.

*4 Drum
Refer to section "3.2 Checking and Cleaning the OPC Drum".

*5 Air filter, Duct filter
Replace the air filter if it is heavily dirty.

*6 Charger wire and case
Use a cloth which should be soaked in water and then wrung lightly to clean those.

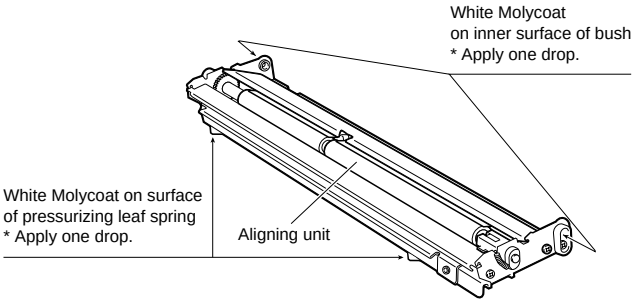
*7 Developer material
After replacing the developer material, be sure to adjust the corresponding auto-toner sensor.

*8 Upper and lower heat rollers
Refer to section "3.5 Checking and Cleaning Upper and Lower Heater Rollers".

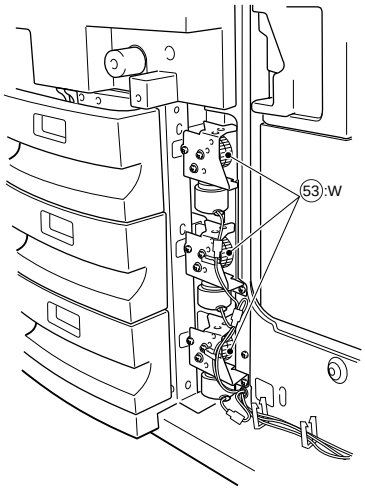
*9 Heat roller separation claw
If the tip of the separation claw is chipped, replace it regardless of the number of copies made so far. If toner adhering to the separation claw is forcibly scraped off, the claw may be damaged. Therefore, replace the claw if its tip is heavily coated with toner.

*10 Heat roller cleaning roller 1, 2, 3, 4
Refer to section "3.4 Checking and Replacing Heat roller cleaning roller 1, 2, 3, 4".

*11 Aligning unit support bush and pressurizing leaf spring

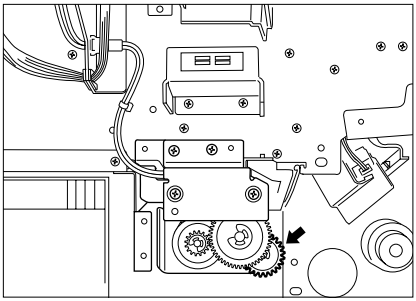


*12 Apply white grease to the tray drive worm wheel and to the faces of the gear teeth.



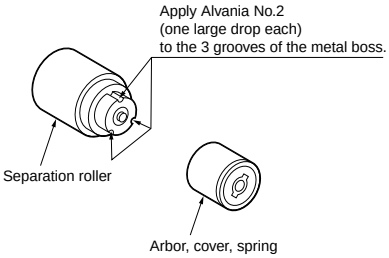
*13 Used toner transport auger drive section

Apply white grease to the used toner transport auger drive section (shown by arrow).

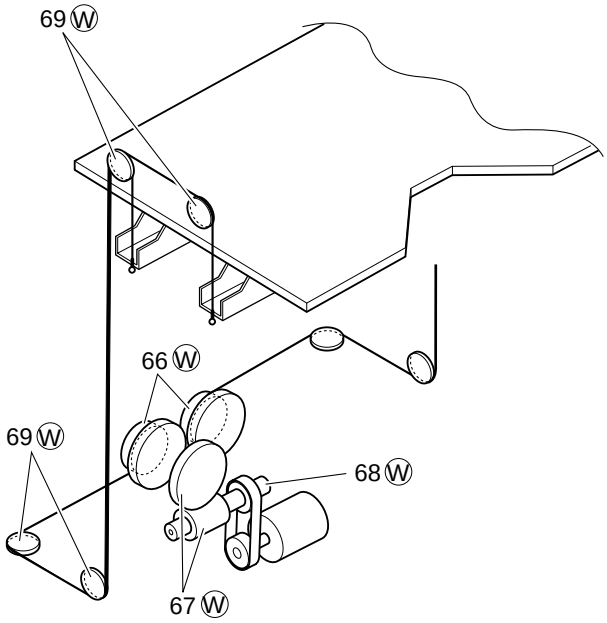


*14 PFP/LCF/manual separation rollers

Apply Alvania No.2 to the separation roller boss.



*15 LCF drive unit



*16 Oil seal

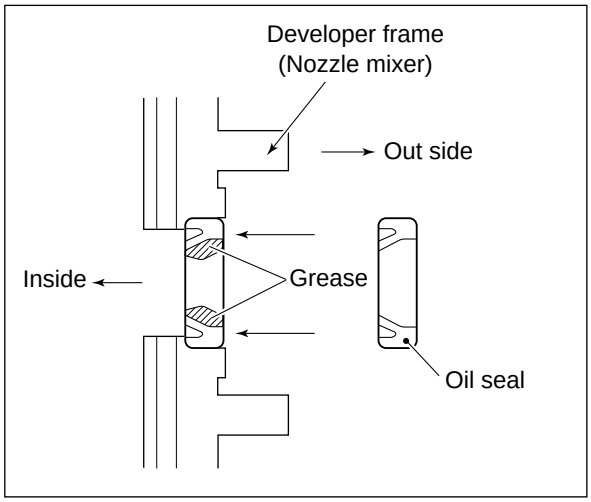
Mixer shaft ..... 4 pcs.
Paddle shaft ..... 2 pcs.
Developer roller (U) ..... 1 pc.
Developer roller (L) ..... 1 pc.
Transport roller ..... 1 pc.

Replace the 9 oil seals on the developer unit every 800,000 copies (6570), 880,000 copies (8070), 680,000 copies (5570), 560,000 copies (4580).

During replacement, coat the oil seal with grease (Alvania No.2) using the following steps:

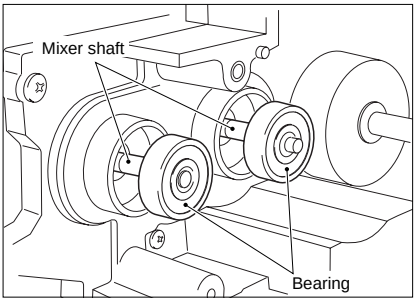
Oil Seal

(1) Push in a new oil seal parallel to the mounting hole section of the developer frame or outside of the nozzle mixer.
    * Pay attention to the direction in which the oil seal is attached. (See figure on right.)
(2) Apply an even coat of grease to the inside of the oil seal.
    • Amount: About two small drops
(3) Wipe off any grease exuded from the inside.



Mixer Shaft

Apply a coating of grease (Alvania No.2) to the entire periphery of the mixer shaft before attaching the bearing.



*17 Transfer belt

Refer to section “3.6 Checking and Replacing the Transfer Belt”.

*18 Transfer belt power supply roller

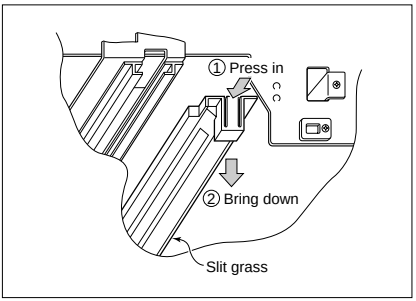
Refer to section “3.7 Checking and Replacing the Transfer Belt Power Supply Roller”.

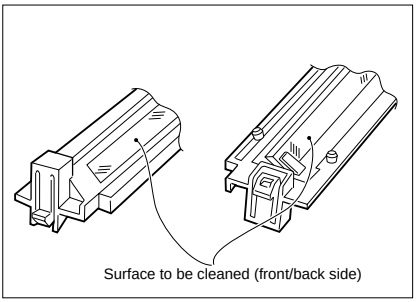
*19 Transport belt cleaning brush

Refer to section “3.8 Checking and Replacing the Transport Belt Cleaning Brush”.

*20 Slit glass on the main unit

Remove the slit glass, and clean the front and back sides.



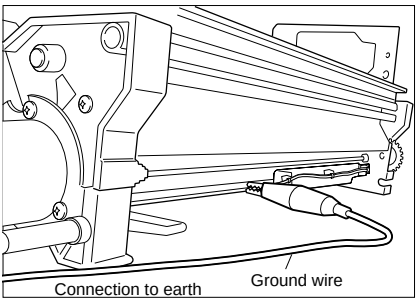


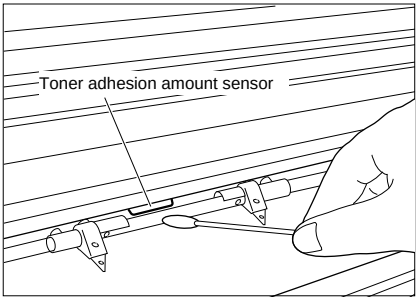
*21 Transfer belt cleaning blade

Refer to section “3.3 Checking and Cleaning the Drum Blade, the Transfer Belt Cleaning Blade”.

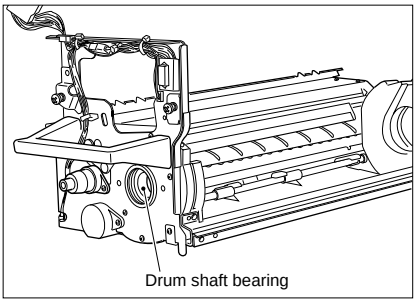
*22 Cleaner Unit

Be sure to connect the ground lead to the aluminum die cast on the rear of the cleaner (exit side) before you clean the cleaner unit. Then clean the unit with, for example, a vacuum cleaner.
(If the cleaner unit is not grounded, static electricity may damage the toner adhesion amount sensor.)
Also wipe the window of the toner adhesion amount sensor with a cotton wool bud or tissue.
(If the window of the toner adhesion amount sensor is dirty, the sensor may no longer function properly.)





Next, wipe the inner diameter of the drum shaft bearing with a cloth.
(If toner adheres to the inner diameter, you may no longer be able to draw out the drum shaft.)



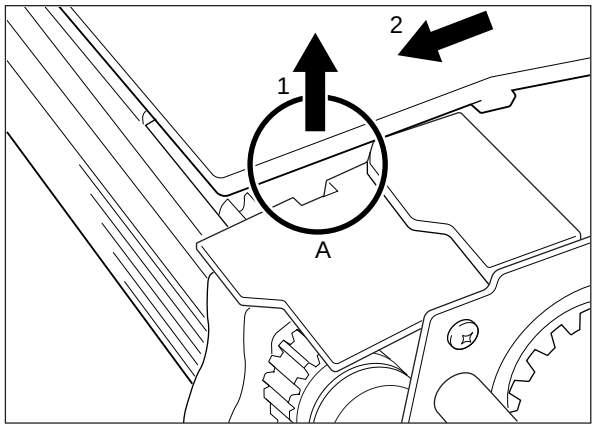
*23 Duct cover

Clean the duct cover by means of the following procedure immediately after extracting the old developer material.

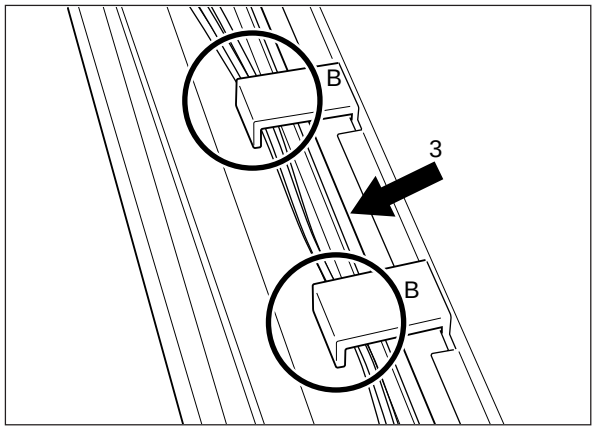
(1) Turn over the developer unit.

(2) The claws on the right and left shown in figure **A** on the right are removed from the developer unit. (see arrow **1**), and the duct is withdrawn towards the front (see arrow **2**).

(3) Remove the dirt and toner from the duct.



(4) The new duct cover is attached using the procedure opposite to that in (3). At this time, be careful to how you turn the harness of **B**. The projecting area of the duct should be slid into the developer unit groove (arrow **3**).



*24 Paper feeding related rollers

Refer to this illustration when servicing the paper feeding related rollers.

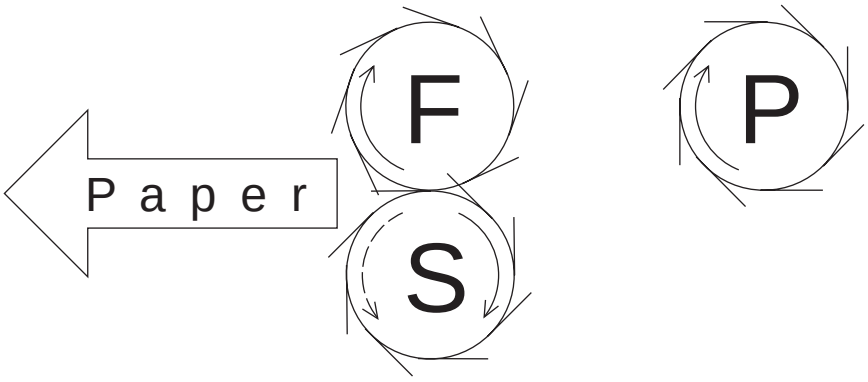
Be especially careful of the roller orientation (elephant skin texture).

(Notes)

P: Pickup roller : Paper path direction

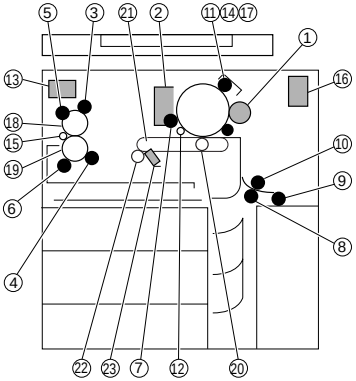
F: Feed roller : Continuous line arrow, Forward rotation

S: Separation roller : Chain line arrow, Backward rotation



2.4 Periodical Maintenance Kit (For 400k)

[Layout Inside Copier]



[Kit Components]

No.	Item	Item name	Q'ty
1	Developer material	D-6570	1
2	Main blade	BL-6570D	1
3	Cleaning roller 2	SR-6570H	1
4	Cleaning roller 3	SR-6570L	1
5	Cleaning roller 1	B-6570H	1
*6	Cleaning roller 4	B-6570L, B-8070L	1
7	Fur brush (cleaner)	B-6570	1
8	Separation roller (LCF)	K-ROL-SPT-CW-S	1
9	Pick-up roller (LCF)	K-ROL-PICK-2	1
10	Feed roller (LCF)	K-ROL-FEED-2	1
11	Charger wire cleaner (for main charger)	K-BASE-PAD-CH-M	1
12	Drum separation claw	K-CLAW-DRUM	2
13	Ozone filter	K-FILTER-OZON	1
14	Charger wire (for main charger)	WIRE-CH-060*398	1
15	Upper heat roller separation claw	SCRAPER-212	6
16	Toner filter (developer unit)	FILTER-DEV-F300	1
17	Grid (for main charger)	GRID-154	1
18	Heat roller (upper)	HR-6570-U	1
19	Heat roller (lower)	HR-6570-L	1
*20	Transfer belt power supply roller	CR-6570TR, CR-8070TR	1
21	Transfer belt	BT-6570TR	1
22	Fur brush (Transfer belt)	B-6570TR	1
23	Transfer belt cleaning blade	BL-6570TR	1

Note: *6. The B-8070L is available for 8070.
Both the B-6570 and B-8070L are available for 6570/5570/4580.
*20. The CR-8070TR is available for 8070.
Both the CR-6570 and CR-8070TR are available for 6570/5570/4580.

2.5 Jig List

Name	Parts List	
	Page	Item
Door switch jig	201	2
Lens adjustment jig	201	3
Wire holder jig	201	1

3. PRECAUTIONS FOR STORING & HANDLING SUPPLIES

3.1 Precautions for Storing TOSHIBA Supplies

A. Toner and Developer

Toner and developer should be stored in a place where the ambient temperature is between 10 to 35°C (no condensation), and should also be protected against direct sunlight during transportation.

B. OPC Drum

Like the toner and developer, OPC drums should be stored in a dark place where the ambient temperature is between 10 to 35°C (no condensation). Be sure to avoid places where drums may be subjected to high humidity, chemicals and/or their fumes.

C. Drum Blade

This item should be stored "horizontally" on a flat place where the ambient temperature is between 10 to 35°C, and should also be protected against high humidity, chemicals and/or their fumes.

D. Heat Roller

Avoid places where the heat rollers may be subjected to high humidity, chemicals and/or their fumes.

E. Cleaning Roller

Avoid places where felt roller may be subjected to high humidity, chemicals and/or their fumes. It should also be stored "horizontally" on a flat place.

F. Copy Paper

Avoid storing copy paper in places where it may be subjected to high humidity.

After a package is opened, be sure to place and store it in a storage bag.

3.2 Checking and Cleaning the OPC Drum

(1) Use of Gloves

If fingerprints or oil adhere to the drum surface, the characteristics of the photosensitive drum may degrade, affecting the quality of the copy image. So, do not touch the drum surface with your bare hands.

(2) Handling Precautions

As the OPC drum surface is very sensitive, be sure to handle the drum carefully when installing and removing it so as not to damage its surface.

Be sure to apply "patting powder" (lubricant) to the entire surface of the drum and separation claws on the cleaner before installing the drum into the machine. When the drum has been replaced with a new one, the drum counter (setting mode "08", code "401") must be cleared to 0 (zero).

Notes: 1. Application of the patting powder is for reducing the friction between the drum, cleaning blade, and separation claws. If the application of patting powder is neglected, the drum and cleaning blade may be damaged.

2. When paper fibers adhere to the cleaning blade edge, they may reduce the cleaning efficiency and, in addition, may damage the blade and the drum. Be sure to remove any fibers found adhering to the blade.

(3) Installation of Copier and Storage of Drum

Avoid installing the copier where it may be subjected to high temperature, high humidity, chemicals and/or their fumes.

Do not leave drums in a brightly lit place for a long time. Otherwise the drum will fatigue, and will not produce sufficient image density immediately after being installed in the machine. However, this effect may decrease as time elapses.

(4) Cleaning the Drum

At periodic maintenance calls, wipe the entire surface of the drum clean using the designated cleaning cotton. Use sufficiently thick cleaning cotton (dry soft pad) so as not to scratch the drum surface inadvertently with your fingertips or nails. Also, remove your rings and wristwatch before starting cleaning work to prevent accidental damage to the drum.

Do not use alcohol, selenium refresher and other organic solvents or silicon oil as they will have an adverse effect on the drum.

(5) Scratches on OPC Drum Surface

If the surface is scratched in such a way that the aluminum substrate is exposed, black spots or streaks will be produced on the copy images. In addition, the cleaning blade will be damaged so replacement with a new drum will be necessary.

(6) Collecting Used OPC Drums

Regarding the recovery and disposal of used OPC drums, we recommend following the relevant local regulations or rules.

3.3 Checking and Cleaning the Drum Cleaning Blade, Transfer belt cleaning blade

(1) Handling Precautions

Pay attention to the following points as the cleaning blade life is determined by the condition of its edge:

① Do not allow hard objects to hit or rub against blade edge. Do not rub the edge with a dry cloth or soft pad.
② Do not stain the edge with any oil (or fingerprints, etc.).
③ Do not apply solvents such as paint thinner to the blade.
④ Do not leave any lint or dirt on the blade edge.
⑤ Do not place the blade near a heat source.

(2) Cleaning Procedure

① Clean the blade edge lightly with a cloth moistened with water.

3.4 Checking and Cleaning the Heat Roller Cleaning Roller 1, 2, 3, 4

(1) Handling Precautions

Never allow solvents such as paint thinner to adhere to the cleaning roller.

(2) Defective Heat-Roller Cleaning and Corrective treatment

Defective heat-roller cleaning should be judged by the toner deposited on the upper heat roller.

If toner is heavily adhered on the heat roller sarface, defective cleaning any occur. If this happens, replace the cleaning roller.

The cleaning roller will be gradually degraded due to subjection to the heat from the heat roller over a long period of time. Replace it preferably after about 440,000 copies (8070), 400,000 copies (6570), 340,000 copies (5570), 280,000 copies (4580) copies have been made.

3.5 Checking and Cleaning the Upper and Lower Heat Rollers

(1) Handling Precautions

A Upper Heat Roller

① Do not leave oil (fingerprints, etc.) on the upper heat roller.

② Be extremely careful not to allow a hard object to hit or rub against the roller because the thin Teflon layer coated on the aluminum substrate is easily damaged and, if damaged, will result in defective drum cleaning.

B Lower Heat Roller

① Do not leave oil (fingerprints, etc.) on the lower heat roller.

(2) Checking

① Check for stain and damage on the heat roller and clean or replace if necessary.

② Clean the separation claws and check for chipped claws.

③ Check the cleaning condition of the cleaning roller.

④ Check the thermistor for proper contact with the heat roller.

⑤ Check the fused condition of the toner image.

⑥ Check the gap between the inlet guide and lower heat roller.

⑦ Check the heat rollers for proper rotation.

(3) Cleaning Procedure for Heat Rollers

When the heat roller becomes dirty, it will cause paper jamming. If this happens, wipe the roller surface clean with cotton moistened in alcohol. For a better cleaning effect, clean the roller while it is still warm.

Note: Be careful not to rub the Teflon-coated surface with your fingernails or hard objects because it is easily damaged. Do not use silicon oil on the upper heat roller.

3.6 Checking and Replacing Transfer Belt

(1) Handling Precautions

① Do not touch the belt surface with your bare hands.
② Prevent oil or other foreign matter from adhering to the belt surface.
③ Do not touch the transfer belt with alcohol or other organic solvents.
④ Do not apply external pressure that might scratch the transfer belt.

3.7 Checking and Replacing Transfer Belt Power Supply Roller

(1) Handling Precautions

① Do not touch the charger roller surface with your bare hands.
② Be carefull not to scratch or hit on to the charger roller surface.

3.8 Checking and Replacing Transfer Belt Cleaning Brush

(1) Handling Precautions

① Do not touch the brush surface with your bare hands.

4. TROUBLESHOOTING

4.1 Scanner System Related Service Call

[C27] [C28] Carriage initialization error

Remove the original glass, turn the power switch ON with the carriage moved to the feed side, and check the following items.

[C27] The carriage moves only slightly in the feed direction, or the carriage stays at a position other than the home position and does not move.

Yes → Check the circuits on the SLG and SDV boards for troubles.

No

- Check the connector pins for disconnection and the harness for breaks and short-circuits.
- Check the SDV board for breaks and short-circuits.
- Check the SLG board for breaks and short-circuits.
- Replace the SDV board.
- Replace the SLG board.

[C28] Is a loud sound emitted after the carriage bumps into the home position?

Yes → Cause: The home switch does not turn ON.

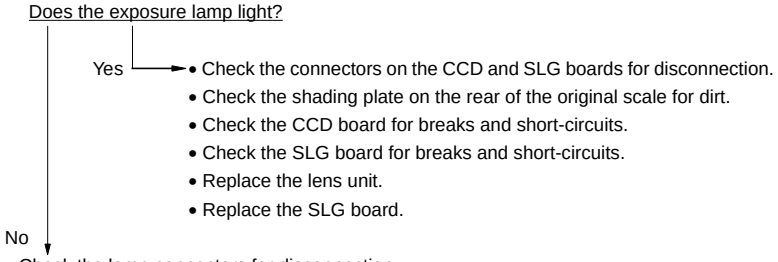
- Make sure that the switch connector is connected.
- Check the circuits on the SLG and SDV boards for troubles.

No

Cause: The carriage is located at the home position and does not move.

- Check the connector pins for disconnection and the harness for breaks and short-circuits.
- Check the SDV board for breaks and short-circuits.
- Check the SLG board for breaks and short-circuits.
- Replace the SDV board.
- Replace the SLG board.

[C26] [C29] Peak detection error exposure lamp disconnection detected


Does the exposure lamp light?
Yes
• Check the connectors on the CCD and SLG boards for disconnection.
• Check the shading plate on the rear of the original scale for dirt.
• Check the CCD board for breaks and short-circuits.
• Check the SLG board for breaks and short-circuits.
• Replace the lens unit.
• Replace the SLG board.
No

- Check the lamp connectors for disconnection.
- Check the thermostat to see if it has blown.
- Check electrical continuity of the lamp.
- Check SLG board connector pins J9-22, 23, 24, 25 and 26 for disconnection and the harness for breaks and short-circuits.
- Check the SLG board for breaks and short-circuits.
- Replace the SLG board.
- Replace the lamp regulator.

4.2 Process System Related Service Call

[C36] Main charger wire cleaning operation abnormal

(1) Check the main charger.
- Is the main charger disconnected?

(2) Check the cleaning motor.
- Is the motor operating?

(3) Replace the LGC board.

[C37] Transfer belt operation abnormal

(1) Check the transfer belt.
- Are the connectors disconnected?
- Are the contact switche and separation switche normal?

(2) Replace the LGC board.

4.3 Fuser Related Service Call

[C41] Thermistor abnormal or heater disconnection at power ON

Note) Before carrying out checks (1) and (2) below, first disconnect the power cord to prevent the danger of electric shock.

(1) Check the thermistor.
- Are the connectors disconnected?
- Are the main and sub (end section) thermistors firmly contacting the heat roller?
- Are the harness of the main and sub (end section) thermistors broken?

(2) Check the heater lamp and SSR.
- Is the heater lamp open-circuited?
- Is the heater lamp connector disconnected?
- Is the thermostat blown?
- Is the SSR connector disconnected?
- Are the SSR and switching power supplies damaged?

(3) Check the LGC board.
- Is connector J326 disconnected?
- Check the circuits for open-or, short-circuits, or other troubles.
- Replace the LGC board.

(4) Reset the status counter.

Carry out the following after you have repaired the location where error [C41] occurred:
- Turn the power ON while pressing the [0] and [8] keys simultaneously.
- Enter “400” from the number key pad, and press the START key.
- Overwrite currently displayed status counter 1 or 2 to 0, and press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key to exit error [C41].
- Turn the power OFF then back ON, and check the machine enters a normal standby state.

[C43] Thermistor abnormal during warming-up or at standby after disconnection judgement
[C44] Heater abnormal during warming-up or at standby after disconnection judgement

Carry out the same checks (1) to (3) in error [C41].

(4) Reset the status counter.

- The status counter for error [C43] indicates 4 or 6, and 5, 7 or 9 for error [C44]. Reset these counters to 0 by following the same procedure for error [C41].

[C45] Upper heat roller end thermistor abnormal

(1) Check the sub (end section) thermistor.

- Are the connectors disconnected?
- Is the sub (end section) thermistor firmly contacting the heat roller?
- Is the sub (end section) thermistor harness broken?

(2) Check the LGC board.

- Is connector J326 disconnected?
- Check the circuits for breaks, short-circuits or other troubles.
- Replace the LGC board.

(3) Reset the status counter.

Reset status counter 8 to 0 by following the same procedure for error [C41].

[C46] Lower heat roller themistor abnormal at standby

(1) Check the thermistor.

- Are the connectors disconnected?
- Is the themistor fimly contacting the pressure roller?
- Is the thermistor harness broken?

(2) Checking of the LGC board is the same as with [C41].

(3) Reset the status counter.

- When [C46] occurs, reset the status counter 3 to 0 by the same procedure as for error [41].

4.4 Communication Related Service Call

[C56] Communication error between PFC and M-CPU

(1) Check the signal patterns (REQ, ACK, RXD, TXD) between IC11 (G/A) and IC21 (PFC) on the LGC board for open-or short-circuits.
(2) Replace the LGC board.

[C57] Communication error between M-CPU and IPC

(1) Check the circuit patterns mainly on IC50 and IC56 on the LGC board for open-or short-circuits.
(2) Check the pattern on the IPC board for open-or short-circuits.
(3) Replace the IPC board.
(4) Replace the LGC board.

[C58] Communication error between IPC and the finisher

(1) Make sure that only the specified finisher is attached.
(2) Check the pattern on the IPC board for open-or short-circuits.
(3) Check the harness connected to connector J2 on the IPC board for disconnected pins and open-circuits.
(4) Check fuse F5 on the power supply unit to see if it is blown.
(5) Check the pattern on the control board inside the finisher for open-or short-circuits.
(6) Check the connectors leading up to the PPC board for disconnected pins and the harness for open-circuits.
(7) Replace the IPC board.
(8) Replace the LGC board.

[C59] Communication error between M-CPU and L-CPU

(1) Check the harness between the LGC board and the laser unit for disconnection and open-circuits.
(2) Check mainly the IC circuits on the LGC board for open-or short-circuits.
(3) Replace the LGC board.
(4) Replace the laser optical unit.

[F07] Communication error between SYS and LGC boards
[F11] Communication error between SYS and SLG boards

(1) Check the connectors J102 and J108 on the SYS board for disconnection.
(2) Check the connector J330 on the LGC for disconnection.
(3) Check the connector J2 on the SLG board for disconnection.
(4) Check the harness between the SYS and the SLG for breaks and disconnected pins.
(5) Check the harness between the SYS and the LGC for breaks and disconnected pins.
(6) CHECK THE FROM version on the SYS board.
(7) Check the MROM (IC36) version on the LGC board.
(8) Check the SROM version on the SLG board.
(9) Replace the SYS board.
(10) Replace the SLG board.
(11) Replace the LGC board.

4.5 ADF Related Service Call

[C72] Error of aligning sensor adjustment

(1) Check between the aligning sensor and the reflection mirror for foreign objects, and the reflection mirror for dirt.
(2) Check the harness between the aligning sensor and the LGC board for open-circuit.
(3) Check mainly IC4, IC5 and CN6 on the LGC board for open-or short-circuits.
(4) Replace the aligning sensor.
(5) Replace the LGC board.
(6) Initialize the ADF EEPROM, and perform automatic sensor adjustment.

[C73] EEPROM initializing error

(1) Check mainly IC1 on the LGC board for open-or short-circuits.
(2) Replace the LGC board.
(3) Initialize the ADF EEPROM, and perform automatic sensor adjustment.

[C74] Error of exit sensor adjustment

(1) Check between the exit sensor and the reflection mirror for foreign objects, and the reflection mirror for dirt.
(2) Check the harness between the exit sensor and the LGC board for open-circuit.
(3) Check mainly IC4, IC5 and CN7 on the LGC board for open-or short-circuits.
(4) Replace the exit sensor.
(5) Replace the LGC board.
(6) Initialize the ADF EEPROM, and perform automatic sensor adjustment.

[C76] Transmission time-out error
[C77] Transmission buffer full
[C78] ADF power ON I/F error
[C79] Reception time-out error

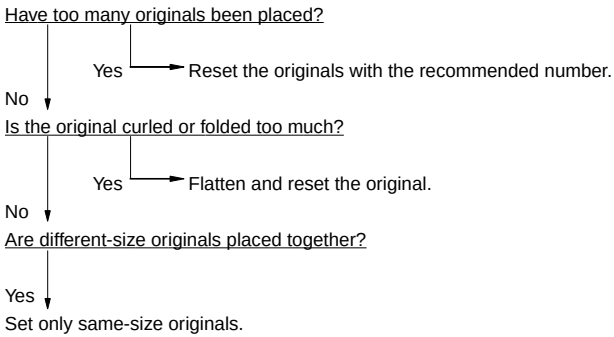
(1) Check the harness between the ADF control PC board and the scanner control PC board for disconnections or open-circuits.
(2) Check mainly the IC2, IC3, IC14, CN1 on the ADF control PC board for open-or short-circuits.
(3) Check mainly the IC1, IC7, J8 on the scanner control PC board for open-or short-circuits.
(4) Replace the ADF control PC board.
(5) Replace the scanner control PC board (SLG board).

[C80] Error of timing sensor adjustment

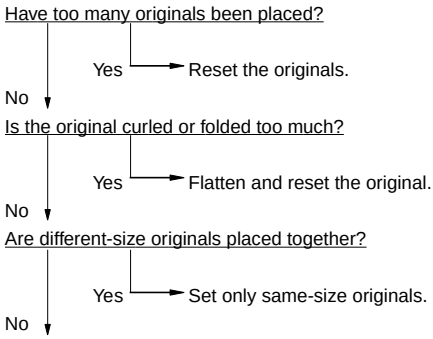
(1) Check between the timing sensor and the reflection mirror for foreign objects, and the reflection mirror for dirt.
(2) Check the harness between the timing sensor and the LGC board for open-circuit.
(3) Check mainly IC4, IC5 and CN6 on the LGC board for open-or short-circuits.
(4) Replace the timing sensor.
(5) Replace the LGC board.
(6) Initialize the ADF EEPROM, and perform automatic sensor adjustment.

4.6 Other Troubles on the ADF System

[Originals other than set on the lowest are fed.]



[Two or more originals are fed simultaneously.]



Is the gap between the aligning plate and feed roller too large?

Yes → Adjust the gap.

No

Is the separation pad dirty?

Yes

Clean the separation pad.

[The original is not fed up to the aligning roller.]

Are the pick-up roller and feed rollers dirty?

Yes → Clean the rollers.

No

Is the gap between the aligning plate and feed roller too small?

Yes → Adjust the gap.

No

Is the transporting force of the pick-up roller and feed rollers insufficient?

Yes

Replace the rollers.

[The original stop, skewed on the original glass.]

Is the aligning roller dirty?

Yes → Clean the roller.

No

Is the transport belt dirty?

Yes → Clean the belt.

No

Is the ADF correctly installed?

No

Properly install the ADF in parallel to the main unit.

Make sure that the skew and height are properly adjusted.

[The side edges of the original are out of alignment with the side edges of the copy.]

Is the slide set too wide in relation to the width of the original?

Yes → Move the slide so that its matches the width of the original.

No

Move the original feeding tray to the left or right to adjust.

[The ADF does not work (excluding paper jams, open cover)]

Is the interface harness correctly connected?

No → Re-connect the harness.

Yes

Is 24V DC being supplied to CN2?

No → Check the main unit.

Yes

Is the voltage across TP26 and TP43 +5V DC?

No → Check or replace the control board.

Yes

Is the voltage measured at EMP-SNS (TP30) +5V when there is no paper?

No → Check or replace the empty sensor.

Yes

Check or replace the control board.

[Motor error]

Is a normal load placed on the motor shaft?

No → Reduce the mechanical load on the motor by adjusting the drive system.
Remove foreign objects.

Yes

Is voltage being supplied to the motor connector?

No → Check or replace the control board.

Yes

Is an excitation pattern signal being supplied to the motor connector?

No → Check or replace the control board.

Yes

Check or replace the motor.

[Communications error]

Is the interface cable normal?

No → Replace the interface cable.

Yes

(1) Check or replace the control board.

(2) Check or replace the main unit PPC board.

[Size detection error]

Is the voltage measured at SIZE-SNS1 (TP9) +5V when there is paper?

No → Check or replace size sensor 1.

Yes

Is the voltage measured at SIZE-SNS2 (TP29) +5V when there is paper?

No → Check or replace size sensor 2.

Yes

Is the original slipping off the aligning roller?

No → Check or replace the control board.

Yes

Clean or replace the aligning roller.

Check and adjust the roller pressure.

[Error of the STOP position of original's leading edge]

Is the voltage measured at REG-SNS (TP25) +5V when there is paper?

No → Check or replace the aligning sensor.

Yes

Is the reflection mirror at the aligning sensor normal?

No → Clean or replace the reflection mirror.

Yes

Check or replace the control board.

4.7 Other Service Calls

[C94] M-CPU is abnormal

Is the service call displayed even after the power switch on the main unit is turned OFF then ON again?

No → Leave as it is and see what happens.

Yes

- Check the circuit pattern between MCPU (IC32) and MROM (IC31) for open-or short-circuits.
- Replace the LGC board if this trouble occurs frequently.

[C99] PFC microcomputer is abnormal

Is the service call displayed even after the power switch on the main unit is turned OFF then ON again?

No → Leave as it is and see what happens.

Yes

- Check the circuit pattern around the PFC microcomputer (IC21) for open-or short-circuits.
- Replace the PFC microcomputer or LGC board if this trouble occurs frequently.

[CD1] Fur brush motor lock error

(1) Check whether the fur brush has become locked mechanically.
- Are there any foreign objects?
- Are there any toner clumps in the transport section?

(2) Check whether connectors on the LGC board are come off or the pins disconnected, etc..

(3) Replace the brush motor.

(4) Replace the LGC board.

[CD2] Toner auger motor lock error

(1) Check whether the auger has become locked mechanically.
- Are there any foreign objects?
- Are there any toner clumps in the transport section?

(2) Check whether connectors on the LGC board are come off or the pins disconnected, etc..

(3) Replace the auger motor.

(4) Replace LGC board.

[F10] HDD formatting error

(1) Perform the "HDD formatting" (Setting Mode: 08-> 690->2).
(2) Make sure that the HDD is mounted.
(3) Make sure that a dedicated HDD is mounted.
(4) Make sure that the HDD connector pins are not bent.
(5) Check HDD connector J106 ont the SYS board for disconnection.
(6) Replace the harness.
(7) Replace the HDD.
(8) Replace the SYS board.

4.8 Laser Optical System Related Service Call

[CA1] Polygon mirror motor is abnormal

Is the polygon motor rotating?

No →
- Check connector J206 on the PLG board for disconnection.
- Check connector CN1 on the POL board for disconnection.
- Check the harness for open-circuit or the connector pins for disconnection.
- Check the patterns on the PLG and POL boards for open-or short-circuits.
- Replace the POL board.
- Replace the PLG board.

Yes ↓

Are pins 2 and 3 of connector CN1 on the POL board always at the level “L”?

No →
- Check the patterns on the PLG and POL boards for open-or short-circuits.
- Replace the POL board.
- Replace the PLG board.

Yes ↓

- Check the pattern on the PLG board for open-or short-circuits.
- Replace the PLG board.

[CA2] HSYNC is abnormal

Is the harness between the PLG and the HSYNC boards open-circuited? Is the connector between the PLG and HSYNC boards disconnected?

Yes → Replace the harness, and re-connect the connector.

No ↓

- Replace the PLG board.
- Replace the unit.

[CA3] [CA4] [CA5] [CA6] [CAA] [CAB] [CAC] [CAD] [CAE] [CAF] [CD0] Laser beam adjustment trouble

Between the PLG board and the galvanomirror, PLG board and laser drive board, and PLG board and HSYNC board, are the harnesses open-circuited or connectors disconnected?

Yes → Replace the harness(es), and re-connect the connector(s).

No

- Replace the PLG board.
- Replace the unit.

[CA9] Image data transmission error SYS board

Is the harness between the PLG board and the SYS board open-circuited, or connector disconnected?

Yes → Replace the harness, and re-connect the connector.

No

- Replace the PLG board.
- Replace the SYS board.

4.9 Finisher Related Service Call

[CB1] Feed motor is abnormal

[Procedure 1]

Is feed motor 2 (M8) operating in reverse at the specified timing?
- No → Replace the feed motor or finisher controller board.

Yes

Is the shutter correctly coupled to the shutter upper/lower bars?
- No → Couple properly.

Yes

Try turning the feed roller 2 in reverse by hand. Do the shutter upper/lower bars move up and down?
- No → Correct the mechanism from the shutter upper/lower bars up to the gears of feed roller 2.

Yes

Is the shutter close detection switch (MS4) normal?
- No → Replace the switch.

Yes

Replace the finisher controller board.

[Procedure 2]

Is the feed motor 2 (M8) operating in reverse at the specified timing?
- No → Replace the transport motor or finisher controller board.

Yes

Is the shutter correctly coupled to the shutter upper/lower bars?
- No → Couple properly.

Yes

Try turning the feed roller 2 in reverse by hand. Do the shutter upper/lower bars move up and down?
- No → Correct the mechanism from the shutter upper/lower bars up to the gears of transport roller 2.

Yes

Is the shutter open sensor (PI5) normal?
- No → Replace the sensor.

Yes

Replace the finisher controller board.

[Procedure 3]

Check safety area detection switch (MS3). Is the switch normal?

No → Replace the switch.

Yes

Is safety area detection switch (MS3) correctly pressed?

No → Correct the mechanical mechanism.

Yes

Is shutter close detection switch (MS4) normal?

No → Replace the switch.

Yes

Is shutter close detection switch (MS4) correctly pressed?

No → Correct the mechanical mechanism.

Yes

Replace the finisher controller board.

[CB2] Delivery motor is abnormal

[Procedure 1]

Try rotating the exit motor by hand. Does it operate smoothly?

No → Correct the mechanical mechanism.

Yes

Is the delivery motor clock sensor (PI10) normal?

No → Replace the sensor.

Yes

Is the voltage across J11-6* and -7* on the finisher controller board 24V when the delivery motor operates?

* J11-6 & 7 : MJ-1006/1007
* J11-4 & 5 : MJ-1015/1016

No → Replace the finisher controller board.

Yes

Is the wiring from the motor up to the controller board normal?

No → Correct the wiring.

Yes

Replace the motor.

[Procedure 2]

Try turning the delivery motor in the reverse by hand. Does the swing guide move up and down?

No → Correct the swing mechanism.

Yes

Is swing guide close detection switch 2 (MS6) normal?

No → Replace the microswitch.

Yes

Is the delivery motor (M2) operating in reverse at the specified timing?

No → Replace the motor.

Yes

Replace the finisher controller board.

[Procedure 3]

Try turning the delivery motor in the reverse by hand. Does the swing guide move up and down?

No → Correct the swing mechanism.

Yes

Is swing guide open sensor (PI18) normal?

No → Replace the sensor.

Yes

Is the delivery motor (M2) operating in reverse at the specified timing?

No → Replace the motor.

Yes

Replace the finisher controller board.

[Procedure 4]

Is the safety area detection switch (MS3) normal?

No → Replace the switch.

Yes

Is the safety area detection switch (MS3) correctly pressed?

No → Correct the mechanical mechanism.

Yes

Is the swing guide close detection switch 2 (MS6) normal?

No → Replace the switch.

Yes

Is the swing guide close detection switch 2 (MS6) correctly pressed?

No → Correct the mechanical mechanism.

Yes

Replace the finisher controller board.

[CB3] Tray lift motor is abnormal

[Procedure 1]

Is the tray home position sensor (PI8) normal?

No → Replace the sensor.

Yes

Is the tray lift mechanism normal?

No → Correct the mechanism.

Yes

Is 24V DC being supplied to the tray lift motor (M5) from the finisher controller during tray drive?

No → Replace the finisher controller board.

Yes

Is the wiring from the finisher controller board up to the tray lift motor (M5) normal?

No → Correct the wiring.

Yes

Replace the tray lift motor (M5).

[Procedure 2]

Is the tray arriving at the tray upper limit switch (MS5) position?

Yes → Lower the tray position.

No

Is the tray upper limit switch (MS5) normal?

No → Replace the switch.

Yes

Is the wiring from the finisher controller board up to the tray upper limit detection switch normal?

No → Correct the wiring.

Yes

Replace the finisher controller board.

[Procedure 3]

Is the tray elevated?

No → Is power being supplied to the motor from the finisher controller board during tray elevation?

No → Replace the finisher controller board.

Yes

Is there a trouble on the tray elevation mechanism?

No → Replace the tray lift motor (M5).

Yes

Correct the tray elevation mechanism.

Yes

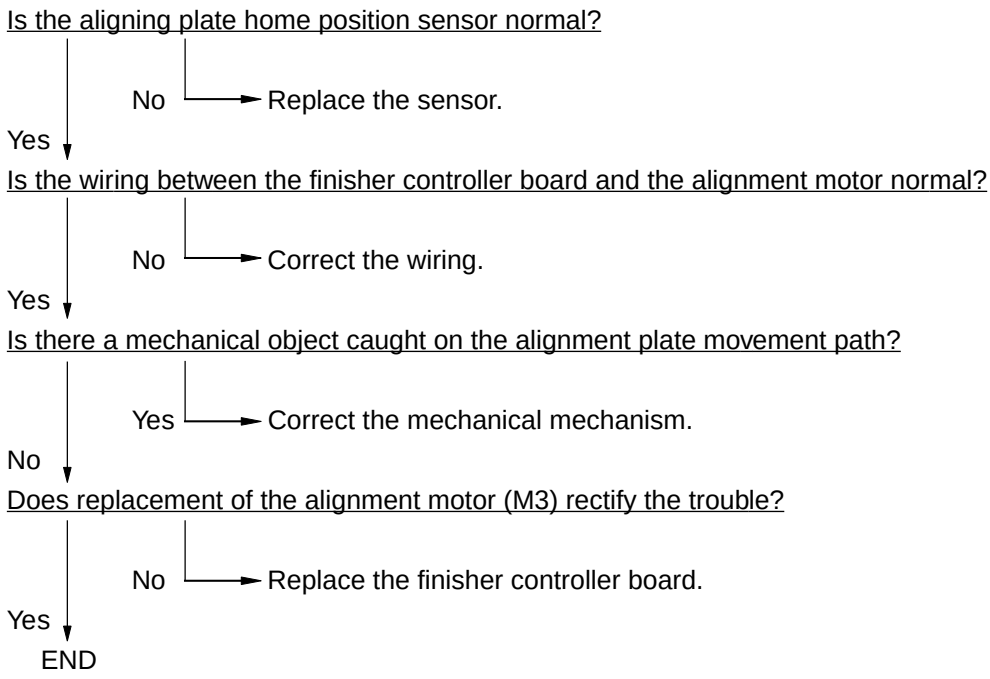
Are tray lift motor clock sensors 1/2 (PI19/PI9) normal?

No → Replace the sensor board.

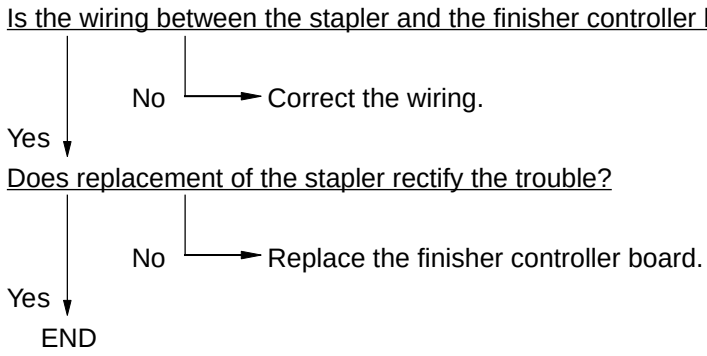
Yes

Replace the finisher controller.

[CB4] alignment motor is abnormal



[CB5] Stapler motor is abnormal



[CB6] Stapler shift motor is abnormal

Is the stapler shift home position sensor (PI7) normal?

No → Replace the sensor.

Yes

Is the wiring between the finisher controller board and the stapler shift motor normal?

No → Correct the wiring.

Yes

Is there any mechanical object caught on the stapler stand shift path?

Yes → Correct the mechanical mechanism.

No

Does replacement of the stapler shift motor (M4) rectify the trouble?

No → Replace the finisher controller board.

Yes

END

[CB7] Hight sensor is abnormal

[Procedure 1]

Does turning the copier's power switch OFF then ON again rectify the trouble?

Yes → END

No

Is the wiring between the finisher controller board and the sensor normal?

No → Correct the wiring.

Yes

Is the voltage across J6-2(+) and J6-4(-) on the finisher controller board 5V DC?

No → Replace the finisher controller board.

Yes

Re-adjust the height sensor. Replace the height sensor if this trouble occurs frequently.

[Procedure 2]

Is connector J6 on the finisher controller board, J114 on the height sensor or relay connector J212 disconnected?

Yes → Re-connect the connector(s).

No ↓

Is the voltage across J6-2(+) and J6-4(-) on the finisher controller board 5V DC?

No → Replace the finisher controller board.

Yes ↓

Is the wiring between the finisher controller board and the sensor normal?

No → Correct the wiring.

Yes ↓

Replace the height sensor.

[Procedure 3]

Does re-adjusting by the DIP switches rectify the trouble?

Yes → END

No ↓

Is the wiring between the finisher controller board and the sensor normal?

No → Correct the wiring.

Yes ↓

Is the voltage across J6-2(+) and J6-4(-) on the finisher controller board 5V DC?

No → Replace the finisher controller board.

Yes ↓

Replace the height sensor.

[CB8] Backup RAM data is abnormal

Is the condition modified by turning OFF and ON the power switch of the copier?

Yes → END

No ↓

Replace the finisher controller board and punch driver board (MJ-1015/1016).

[CB9] Saddle stitcher paper pushing plate motor is abnormal

Is the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S) normal?

No → Replace the sensor.

Yes

Is the paper pushing plate motor (M8S) operating at the specified timing?

Yes → Replace the saddle stitcher controller board.

No

Is the paper pushing plate drive mechanism normal?

No → Correct the mechanism.

Yes

Does replacement of the paper pushing plate motor (M8S) rectify the problem?

No → Replace the saddle stitcher controller board.

Yes

END

[CBA] [CBB] Saddle stitcher front/rear stitcher motor is abnormal

Are the front or rear stitcher and receptacles installed properly?

No → Install them correctly.

Yes

Are the stitching home position switches (PS4S/PS2S*) on the front or rear stitchers normal?

* PS4S/PS2S : MJ-1006/1007
* MS7S/MS5S : MJ-1015/1016

No → Replace the front or rear stitcher.

Yes

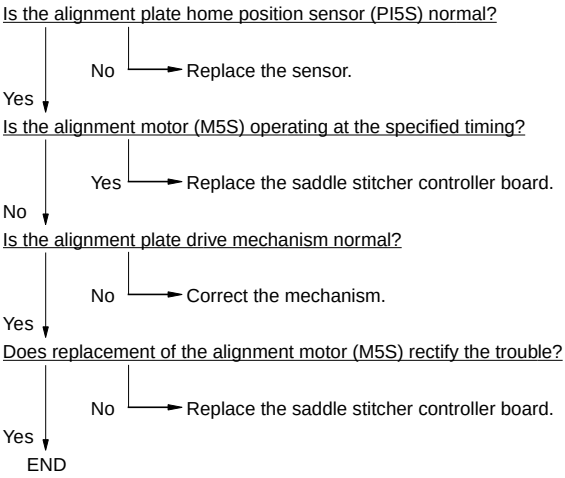
Is the front or rear stitcher operating at the predetermined timing?

No → Replace the front or rear stitcher.

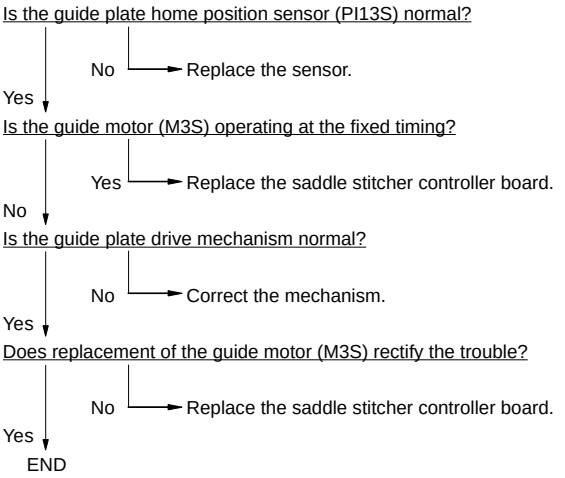
Yes

Check the wiring between the stitcher and saddle stitcher controller board. If it is normal, replace the controller board.

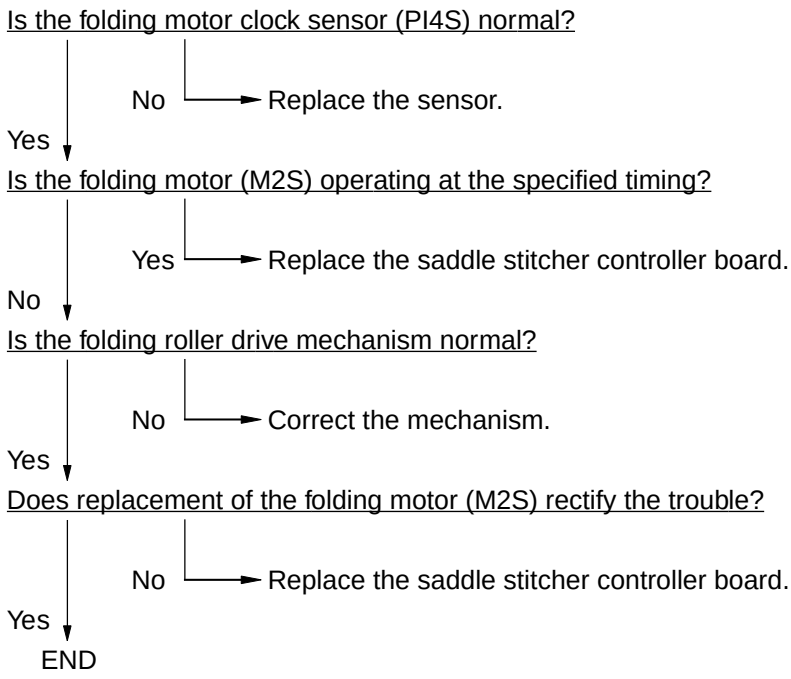
[CBC] Saddle stitcher alignment motor is abnormal



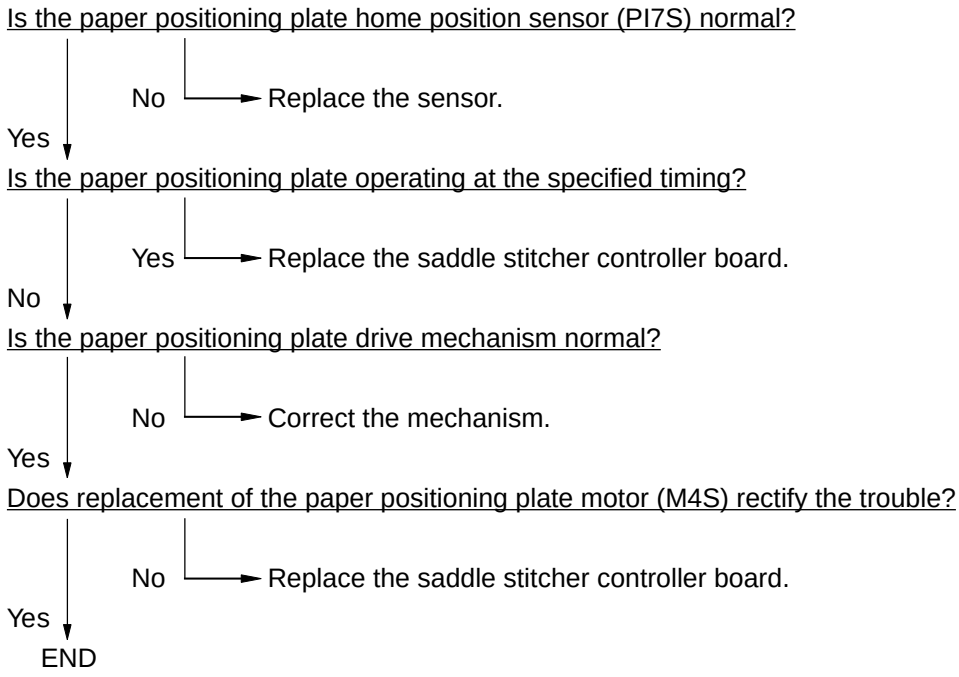
[CBD] Saddle stitcher guide motor is abnormal



[CBE] Saddle stitcher folding motor is abnormal



[CBF] Saddle stitcher paper positioning plate is abnormal



[CCO] Sensor connector connection error

[Procedure 1]

Is the guide home position sensor (PI13S) or saddle stitcher controller board connector connected?
- No → Connect the connector.
- Yes ↓

Is there a open-circuit between the sensor and the saddle stitcher?
- No → Correct this.
- Yes ↓

Is DC5V being supplied from J9-7 on the saddle stitcher control board?
- No → Replace the sabble stitcher controller board.
- Yes ↓

Is J9-8 of the saddle stitcher controller board correctly connected to the ground?
- No → Replace the saddle stitcher controller board.
- Yes ↓

END

[Procedure 2]

Is the connector of the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S) or the connector of the saddle stich controller board connected?
- No → Connect it.
- Yes ↓

Is the connector between the sensor and the stitcher open-circuited?
- No → Connect it.
- Yes ↓

Is DC5V from J9-10 of the saddle stitcher controller board supplied?
- No → Replace the sabble stitcher controller board.
- Yes ↓

Is J9-11 of the saddle stitcher controller board correctly connected to the ground?
- No → Replace the saddle stitcher controller board.
- Yes ↓

END

[Procedure 3]

Is the connector of the paper pressing top position (PI15S) or the saddle stitcher controller board connected?
No → Connect it.
Yes ↓
Is the connection between the sensor and the saddle stitcher disconnected?
No → Connect it.
Yes ↓
Is DC5V from J9-13 of the saddle stitcher controller board supplied?
No → Replace the saddle stitcher controller board.
Yes ↓
Is J9-14 on the saddle stitcher controller board correctly connected to the ground?
No → Replace the saddle stitcher controller board.
Yes ↓
END

[CC1] Microswitch error

[Procedure 1]

Check the switch actuator in the entrance door. Are the switch and the sensor being moved correctly?
No → Correct the mechanism.
Yes ↓
Check the entrance door switch. Is the switch normal?
No → Replace the switch.
Yes ↓
Measure J10-8 voltage on the saddle stitcher controller board when the entrance door is open. Is there 5V being supplied?
Yes → The sensor is broken, so replace it.
No ↓
Measure the voltage across J19-1 (+) and J19-2 (–) on the finisher controller board. Is it 24V?
No → Replace the finisher controller board.
Yes ↓
Check and correct the wiring between J19 of the finisher controller board and J1 of the saddle stitcher controller board. Replace the saddle stitcher controller board if the wiring is normal.

[Procedure 2]

Check the switch actuator of the front door. Are the switch and the sensor being working properly?

No → Connect the connector.

Yes ↓

Check the front door switch. Is the switch normal?

No → Replace the switch.

Yes ↓

Measure J11-12 voltage of the saddle switcher controller with the front door open. Is 5V being supplied?

Yes → The sensor is broken, so replace it.

No ↓

Replace the saddle stitcher controller board.

[Procedure 3]

Check the switch actuator of the exit door. Are the switch and the sensor being working properly?

No → Correct the mechanism.

Yes ↓

Check the exit door switch. Is the switch normal?

No → Replace the switch.

Yes ↓

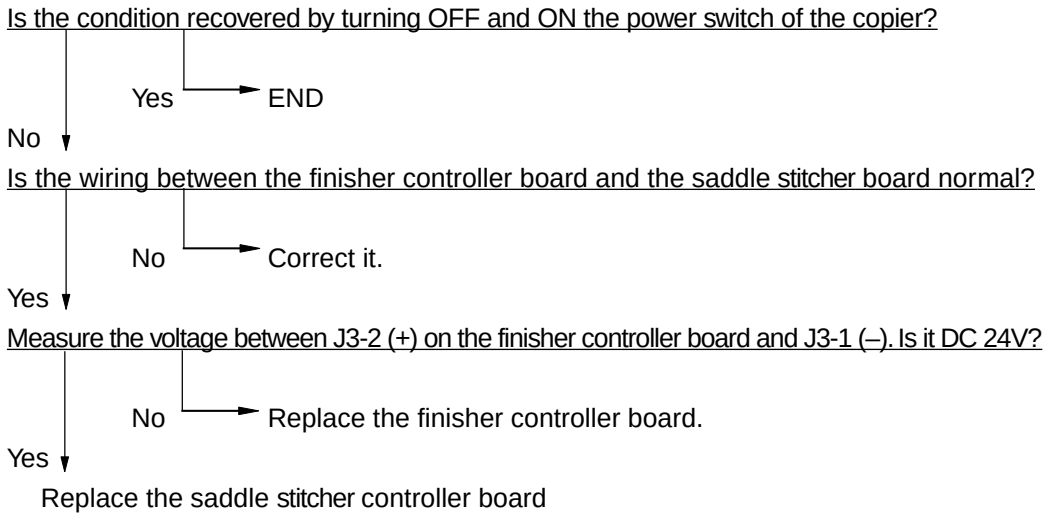
Measure J11-9 voltage access of the saddle stitcher with the exit door is open. Is it 5V ?

Yes → the sensor is broken, so replace it.

No ↓

Replace the saddle stitcher controller board.

[CC2] Communication error between finisher saddle


Is the condition recovered by turning OFF and ON the power switch of the copier?
Yes
END
No
Is the wiring between the finisher controller board and the saddle stitcher board normal?
No
Correct it.
Yes
Measure the voltage between J3-2 (+) on the finisher controller board and J3-1 (–). Is it DC 24V?
No
Replace the finisher controller board.
Yes
Replace the saddle stitcher controller board

5.3 Preparation of PC to Use a Network

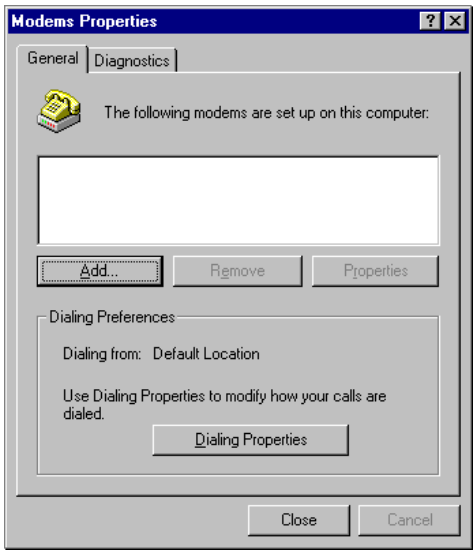
5.3.1 Setting Virtual Modem

The connection between PC and copier is made using PPP(Point-to-Point Protocol). It is necessary to use a dial-up networking, and use a virtual modem.
First, install the virtual modem. The virtual modem can be downloaded from the following web site.

URL: http://www.kevin-wells.com/net/mdmcbx4.inf

After download, set up the modem as follows.

Click “Start” button, point at “Settings”, and then click “Control Panel”.
Click on Modems.



[Procedure 3]

Is the swing guide clock sensor (PI20) working normally?

No → Replace the sensor.

Yes ↓

Is the voltage between J11-6 and -7 on the finisher controller PC board 24V when the swing motor is rotating?

No → Replace the finisher controller PC board.

Yes ↓

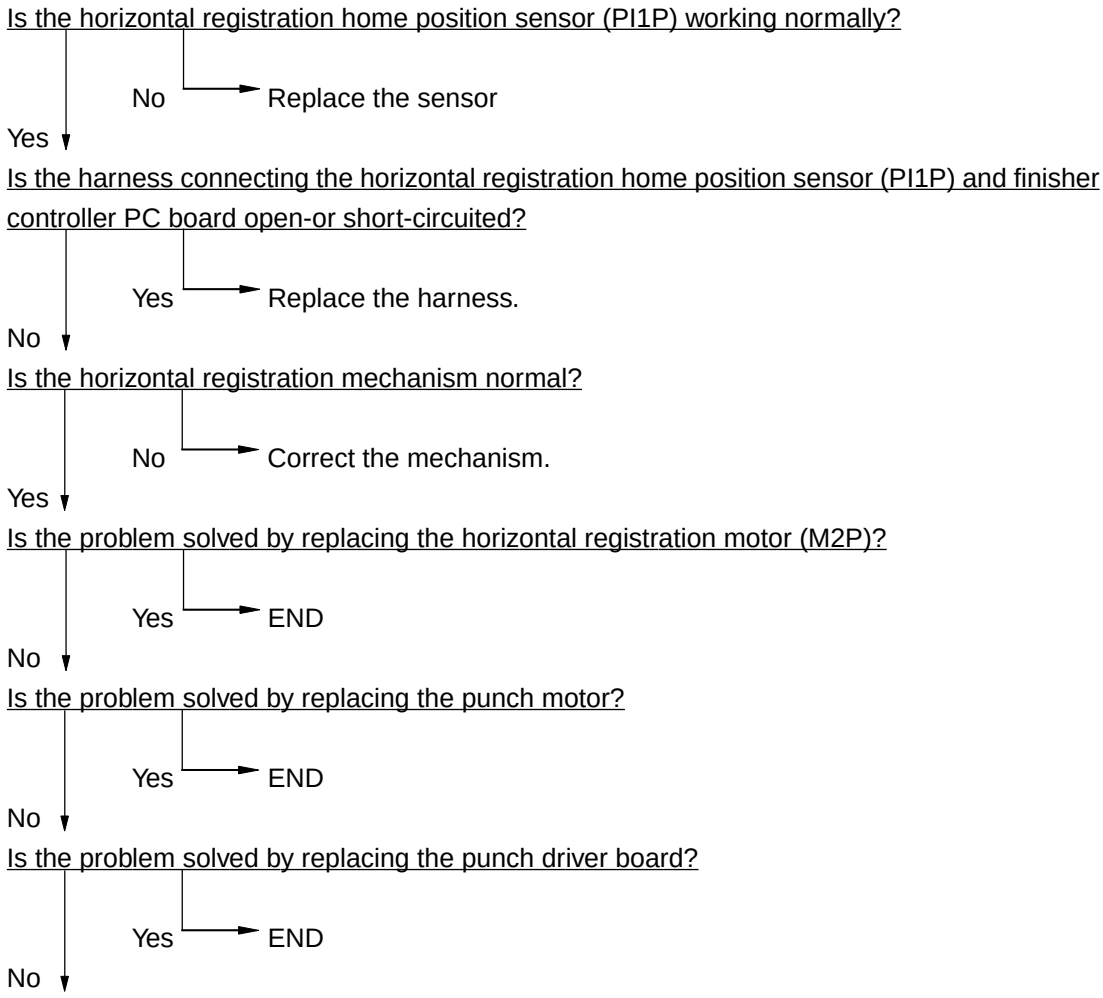
Is the harness connecting the motor and finisher controller PC board (open-or short-circuited?

Yes → Replace the harness.

No ↓

Replace the motor.

[CC5] Horizontal registration motor is abnormal



[CC6] Punch motor is abnormal

Is the punch home position sensor (PI3P) working normally?

No → Replace the sensor.

Yes

Is the harness connecting the punch home position sensor (PI3P) and finisher controller PC board open-or short-circuited?

Yes → Replace the harness.

No

Is the punching mechanism normal?

No → Correct the mechanism.

Yes

Is the problem solved by replacing the punch motor (M1P) ?

Yes → END

No

Is the problem solved by replacing the punch driver board?

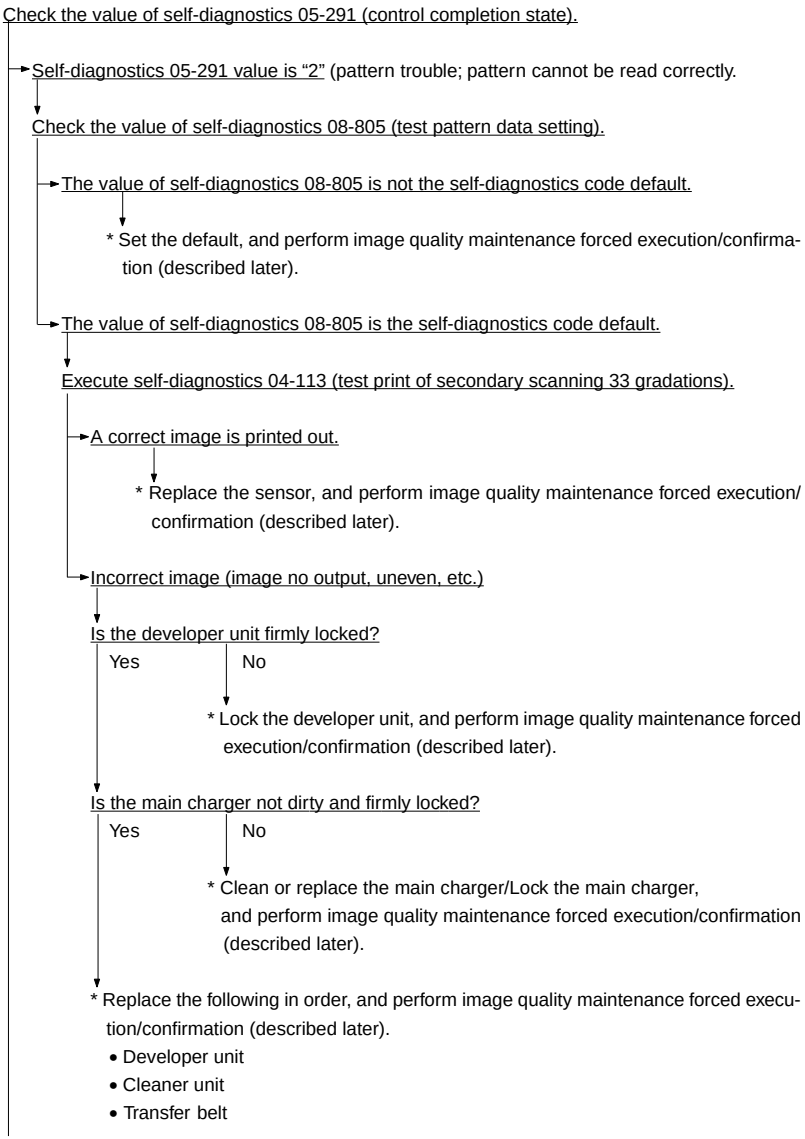
Yes → END

No

Replace the finisher controller PC board.

4.10 Image Quality Maintenance Control Related Troubleshooting

[Corrective action when "Service Recommended for IQC" is flashing]


Check the value of self-diagnostics 05-291 (control completion state).
Self-diagnostics 05-291 value is "2" (pattern trouble; pattern cannot be read correctly.
Check the value of self-diagnostics 08-805 (test pattern data setting).
The value of self-diagnostics 08-805 is not the self-diagnostics code default.
* Set the default, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).
The value of self-diagnostics 08-805 is the self-diagnostics code default.
Execute self-diagnostics 04-113 (test print of secondary scanning 33 gradations).
A correct image is printed out.
* Replace the sensor, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).
Incorrect image (image no output, uneven, etc.)
Is the developer unit firmly locked?
Yes
No
* Lock the developer unit, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).
Is the main charger not dirty and firmly locked?
Yes
No
* Clean or replace the main charger/Lock the main charger, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).
* Replace the following in order, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).
• Developer unit
• Cleaner unit
• Transfer belt

The value of self-diagnostics 05-291 is 4 (sensor trouble; sensor output is not within the normal range.).

Is the value of self-diagnostics 05-292 (sensor output value when LED light source is OFF) within the range 102 to 307?

Yes / No

* Check the connector, replace the sensor, and the LGC board, and then perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).

Is the value of self-diagnostics 05-293 (sensor output value with respect to the drum) within the following range?

([(self-diagnostics 08-814) x4] to 819)

Yes / No

Self-diagnostics 05-293 < [(self-diagnostics 08-814) x4]

Is the value of self-diagnostics 05-296 (sensor light intensity adjustment result) 255?

Yes / No

* Replace the sensor and LGC board, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).

Is the sensor window dirty?

No / Yes

* Clean the sensor window, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).

Is the center of the drum scratched or dirty?

No / Yes

* Replace the drum, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).

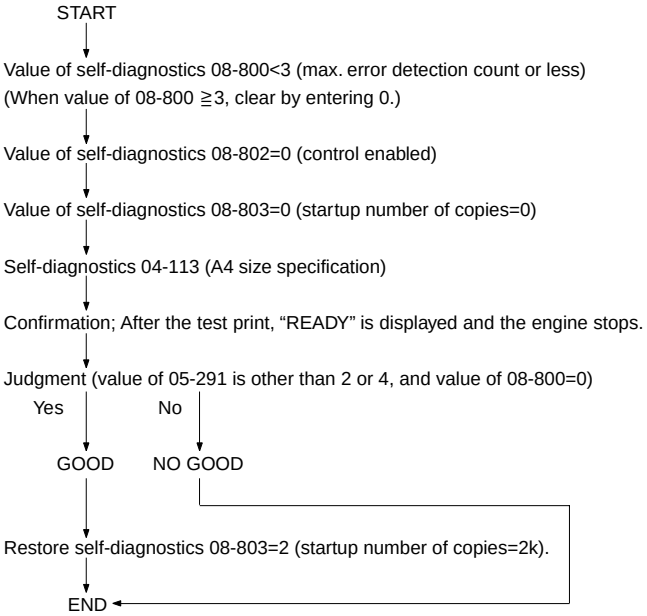
* Replace the sensor and LGC board, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).

Self-diagnostics 05-293>819

* Replace the sensor and LGC board, and perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).

Perform image quality maintenance forced execution/confirmation (described later).

<<Image Quality Maintenance Forced Execution/Confirmation >>

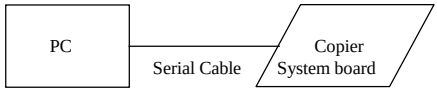

START
Value of self-diagnostics 08-800<3 (max. error detection count or less)
(When value of 08-800 ≧3, clear by entering 0.)
Value of self-diagnostics 08-802=0 (control enabled)
Value of self-diagnostics 08-803=0 (startup number of copies=0)
Self-diagnostics 04-113 (A4 size specification)
Confirmation; After the test print, “READY” is displayed and the engine stops.
Judgment (value of 05-291 is other than 2 or 4, and value of 08-800=0)
Yes
No
GOOD
NO GOOD
Restore self-diagnostics 08-803=2 (startup number of copies=2k).
END

5. Installation Instructions for Firmware Update through PC

5.1 Outline

These instructions show how to set up your PC to use a system firmware download operation using FTP(File Transfer Protocol).

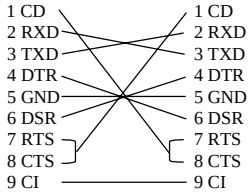
5.2 System Configuration



Software Requirements for PC.
- Microsoft Windows95.
- Virtual Modem.
- FTP Server tools. (Ex. War FTP Daemon)

Serial Cable.
- PC and System board are connected with the following cross line cable.

DTE-DTE connections (D-SUB 9 PIN/RS-232C)



Protocol specifications between PC and system board.

SPEED	115200bps
DATA BITS	8 BITS
PARITY	NONE
STOP BITS	1 BIT
FLOW CONTROL	NONE
ECHO	OFF

5.3 Preparation of PC to Use a Network

5.3.1 Setting Virtual Modem

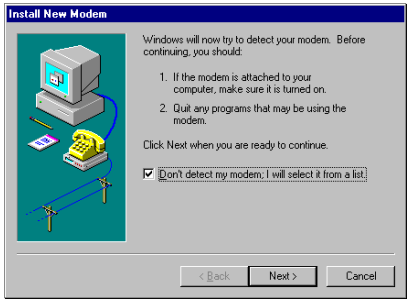
The connection between PC and copier is made using PPP(Point-to-Point Protocol). It is necessary to use a dial-up networking, and use a virtual modem.
First, install the virtual modem. The virtual modem can be downloaded from the following web site.

http://www.kevin-wells.com/net/mdmcbx4.inf

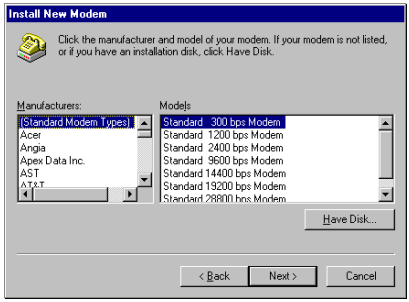
After download, set up the modem as follows.

Click “Start” button, point at “Settings”, and then click “Control Panel”.
Click on Modems.

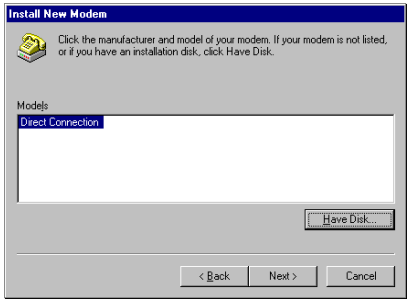
Click “Add” Button, and open “Install New Modem” wizard.
And then, check “Don’t detect my modem; I will select it from a list”, and click “Next” button.


Install New Modem
Windows will now try to detect your modem. Before continuing, you should:
1. If the modem is attached to your computer, make sure it is turned on.
2. Quit any programs that may be using the modem.
Click Next when you are ready to continue.
Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

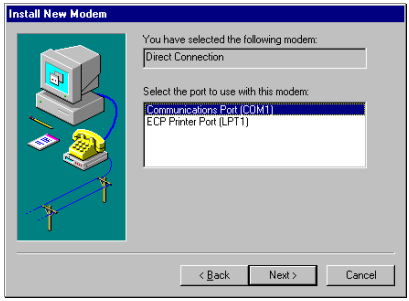
Click “Have Disk” button, and then select a folder download file is stored in.



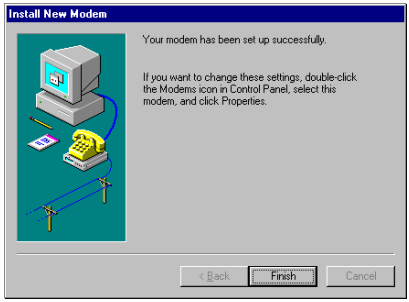
Select “Direct Connection”, and then click “Next” button.


Install New Modem
Click the manufacturer and model of your modem. If your modem is not listed, or if you have an installation disk, click Have Disk.
Models
Direct Connection
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Select “Communications Port(COM1)”,and then click “Next” button.



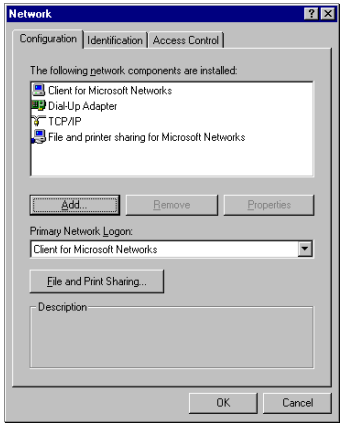
Click “Finish” button, then Virtual Modem installation is completed.


Install New Modem
Your modem has been set up successfully.
If you want to change these settings, double-click the Modems icon in Control Panel, select this modem, and click Properties.
< Back
Finish
Cancel

5.3.2 Using Dial-Up Networking

Note; Your computer may be already set up to use a network. If Windows prompts you for a network password at startup and if Network Neighborhood icon appears on Windows desktop, your network is already set up. In this case, you can skip this section.

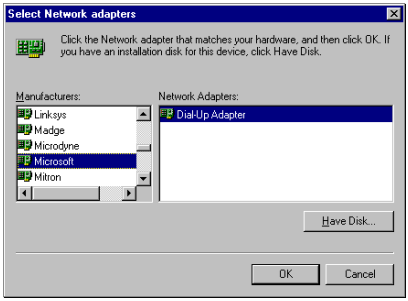
In Network dialog box, click “Configuration” tab.
Confirm that “Dial-Up Adapter” and “TCP/IP” are displayed.



If your PC does not have “Dial-Up Adapter”, then click “Add” button.

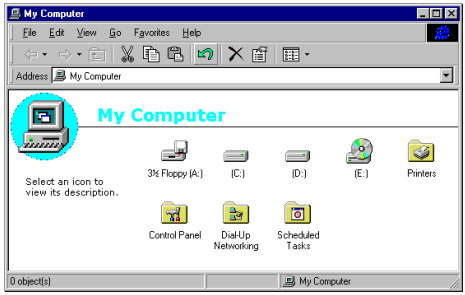
Select “Microsoft” in Manufactures list box, and select “Dial-Up Adapter” in Network Adapters list box, and then click “OK” button.

When you click “OK” button, Windows automatically set up the TCP/IP Protocol components with dial-Up Adapter.

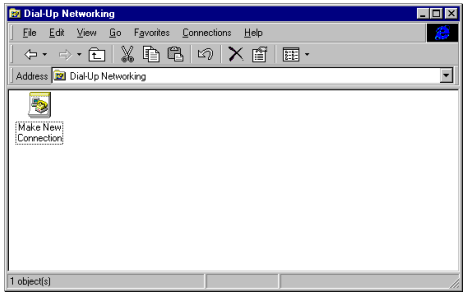


5.3.3 Using New Connection

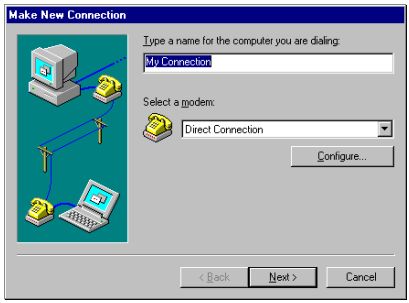
Double-click “My Computer”. If “Dial-Up Networking” icon is not in the window, click “Add/Remove Programs” in Control Panel.
Otherwise, skip to the next step to create a connection.



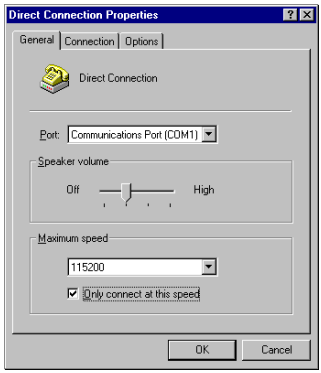
Double-click “Dial-Up Networking”.



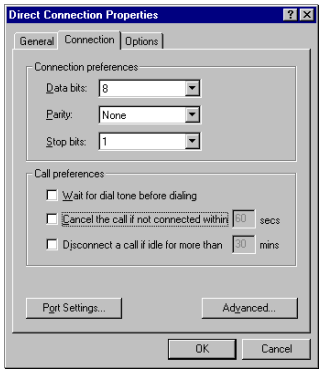
Type something in “Type a name for the computer you are dialing”.
Select “Direct Connection” for “Select a modem”, and click “Configure” button.



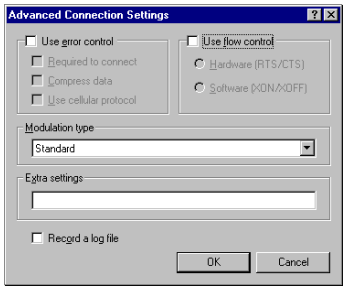
Click “General” tab in “Direct Connection Properties” box, select 115200 for “Maximum speed”, check “Only connect at this speed”.



Click “Connection” tab, confirm that all check boxes in “Call preferences” are not selected, and click “Advanced” button.

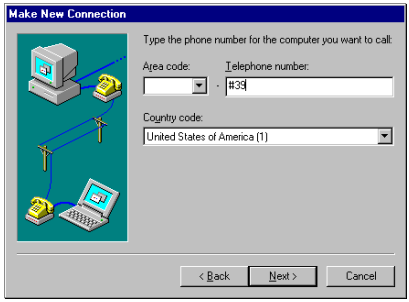


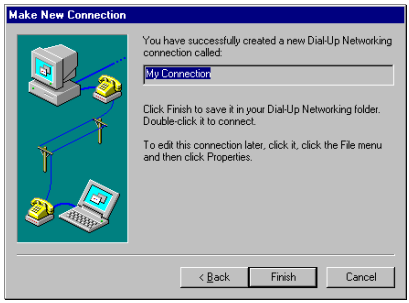
Confirm that all check boxes in “Advanced Connection Settings” dialog box is not selected, click “OK” button, and then return to “Make New Connection” dialog box.



After returning to “Make New Connection” dialog box, click “Next” button.

Type #39 for “Telephone number”.
To change “Country code”, click the arrow next to the country, and select a country you want. After that, click “Next” button.




Make New Connection
You have successfully created a new Dial-Up Networking connection called:
My Connection
Click Finish to save it in your Dial-Up Networking folder. Double-click it to connect.
To edit this connection later, click it, click the File menu and then click Properties.
< Back
Finish
Cancel

Click “Finish” button, then “Make New Connection” is completed.

5.4 Installation of FTP Server

First, it is necessary to install Free Software “War FTP Daemon Version 1.65” as an FTP server.

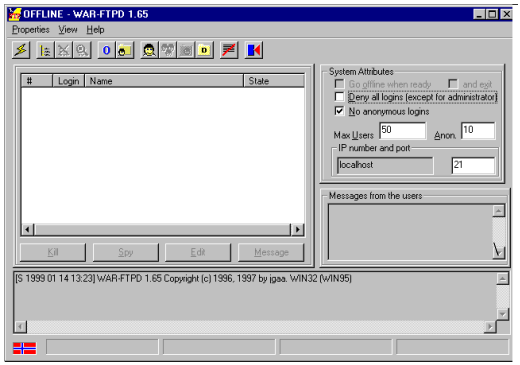
War FTP Daemon can be downloaded from the following web site.

URL: http://www.jgaa.com/downloadpage.htm

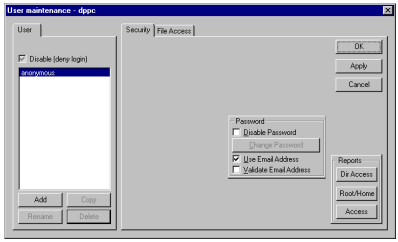
Download the file “ward165.exe” from the above site, and execute it. Some files are created, and then execute “Setup.exe”.

Create the C:\WEBSHARE\FTPROOT folder.

After that, execute “war-ftpd.exe” in “war-ftpd” folder.

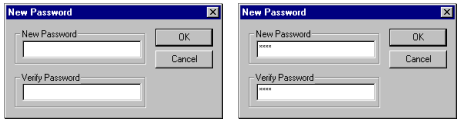


Select [Properties]-[Security]-[Edit User]

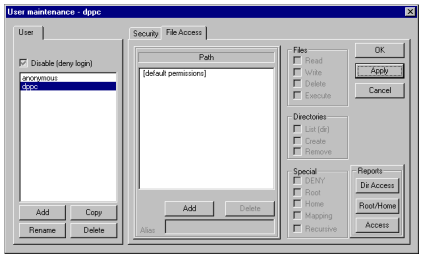


Click “Add” button, and key in dppc for “New name”.

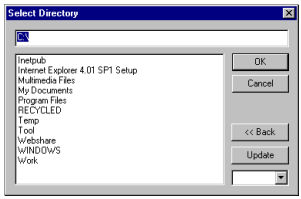
Key in dppc for “New Password” and “Verify Password”, and click “OK” button.



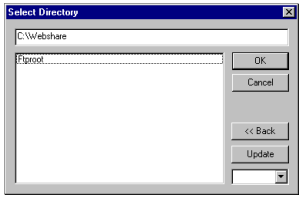
Select “dppc” and click “File Access”. Click “Add” button.



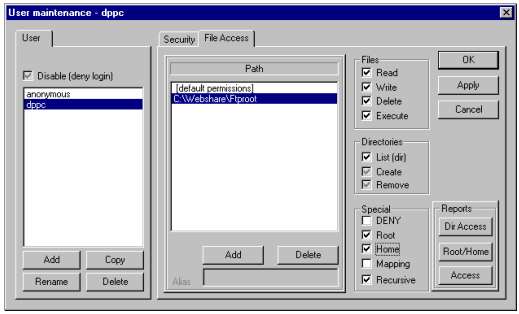
Double-click “Webshare”.



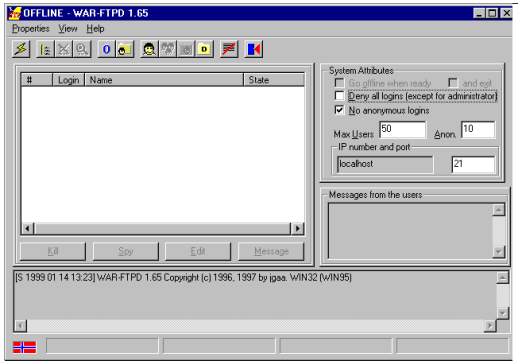
Double-click “Ftproot” and click “OK” button.



Change “Read”, “Write”, Delete”, Execute”, “List”, “Create” and “Remove” from Gray Check to Black Check.
Check “Root”, “Home” and “Recursive” in “Special” box as follows.
And then, click “Apply” and “OK”.



To make the connection “ONLINE” mode, click button before firmware downloading.


OFFLINE - WAR-FTPD 1.65
Properties View Help
Login Name State
Kill Spy Edit Message
System Attributes
Go online when ready and exit
Deny all logins (except for administrator)
No anonymous logins
Max Users 50 Anon. 10
IP number and port
localhost 21
Messages from the users
[S 1999 01 14 13:23] WAR-FTPD 1.65 Copyright (c) 1996, 1997 by jgaa. WIN32 (WIN95)

6. Manual for Firmware Download [3][9] Mode Operation

6.1 Outline

Connect copier and PC with serial cable and turn the power on pressing 3 and 9 keys, the copier goes into “Firmware Version Up Mode”. Then you can update system software data and/or UI data through the PC.

6.2 Preparation of PC

To update the firmware of copier, the following preparations are necessary.

6.2.1 Software Installation

“Virtual modem” and “War FTP Daemon” have to be installed in your PC.
Please refer to “Installation Instructions for Firmware Update through PC”

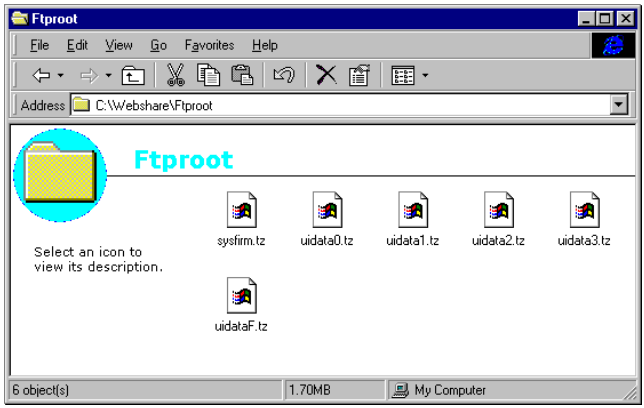
And also, War FTP Daemon has to be “ONLINE” mode.

6.2.2 Preparation of updated files

New files for update are stored in the following folder of the PC.
And also, the files must be named as follows

Folders :

C:\Webshare\Ftproot



New files for update :

Kind of date	File name
- Program date	sysfirm.tz
- Fixed UI data	uidataf.tz
- Common UI data	uidata0.tz
- 1st language UI data	uidata1.tz
- 2nd language UI data	uidata2.tz
- 3rd language UI data	uidata3.tz

6.2.3 Connection between copier and PC

Connect MMF(FSMS) port of the copier and serial communication port of PC specified by the setup of virtual modem using a crossing cable.

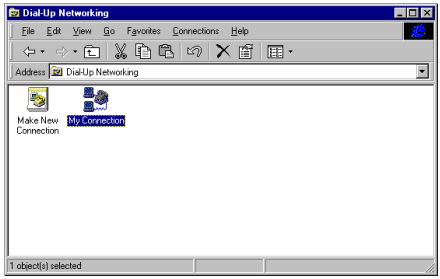
6.3 Download Operation

1. Turn ON the power switch of the copier on pressing 3 and 9 keys.
2. The following messages are displayed on the copier control panel.

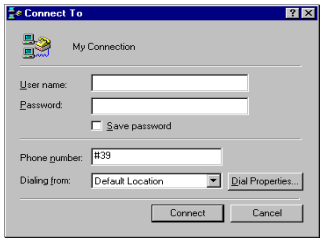
```
Firmware Version Up Mode

> Make a connection from PC.
```

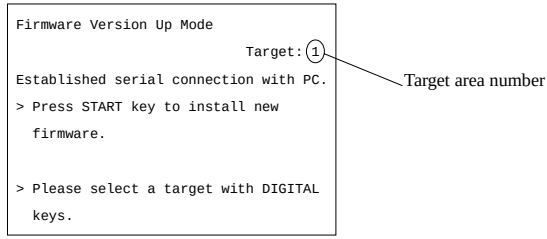
3. Serial connection is made by dial-up from PC.
   Refer to “Installation Instructions for Firmware Update through PC” about procedures for dial up network connection.



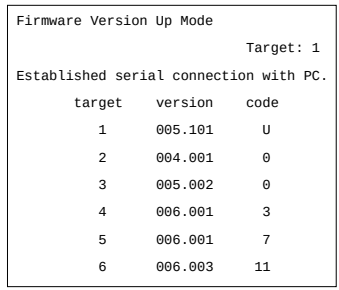
Key in "#39" for “Phone number”.



4. The following screens will be displayed if it succeeds in serial connection.



Depress [HELP], and you can confirm the version number of firmware and UI data, before updating to new one. (To return to previous screen, depress [HELP] again.)



The number of “target” provides with following information.

1 : Program data
2 : Fixed UI data
3 : Common UI data
4 : 1st language UI data
5 : 2nd language UI data
6 : 3rd language UI data

“version” is displayed like “XXX.YYY”.
“XXX” is major version and “YYY” is minor version.

"code" provides with following information.

A. In the case of Program data("target" is 1), "code" means the destination.
   U: for USA and Canada
   E: for European countries
   X: for Australia and Asian countries

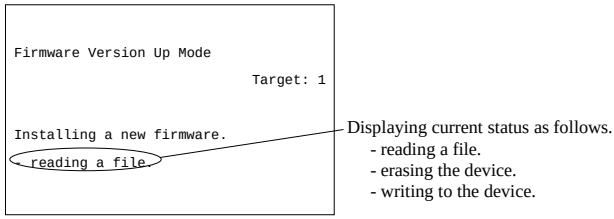
B. In the case of UI data("target" is 4-6), "code" means Language.

Code	Language
2	Japanese
3	American English
4	English
5	reserved
6	French
7	German
8	Swedish
9	Dutch
10	Italian
11	Spanish
12	Danish
13	Finnish
14	Norwegian
15	reserved
16	reserved
17	reserved

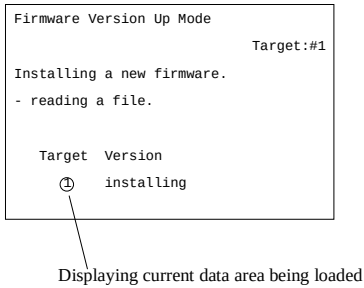
5. Select the area for update using digital keys.
   Using [1] to [6] keys and [INTERRUPT] key, you can select a target area.
   A selected number is displayed at target area. Press [INTERRUPT] to input "#".
   The relation of target area number and firmware data is as follows.
   1 : Only Program data
   2 : Fixed UI data
   3 : Common UI data
   4 : 1st language UI data
   5 : 2nd language UI data
   6 : 3rd language UI data
   #1: All data (1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6)
   #2: All UI data (2, 3, 4, 5 and 6)
   #3: All language UI data (4, 5 and 6)

6. Depress START key and copier starts to update the data.
   Do not turn off the power to the copier or the computer, or disconnect the connection between the copier and computer after pressing the Start key. Interrupting the transmission of a file to the copier will result in corrupting the file in F-ROM of the copier. If this file is corrupted, you have to re-install the data again.

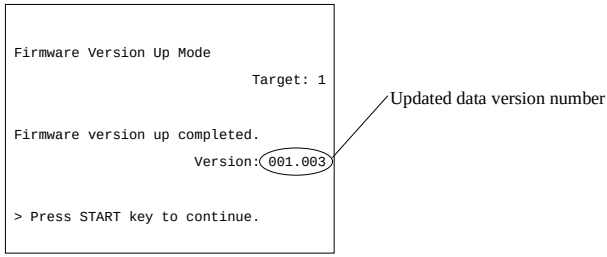
In the case of 1 - 6 :


Firmware Version Up Mode
Target: 1
Installing a new firmware.
- reading a file.
Displaying current status as follows.
- reading a file.
- erasing the device.
- writing to the device.

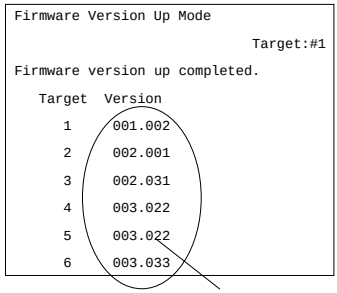
In the case of #1 - #3



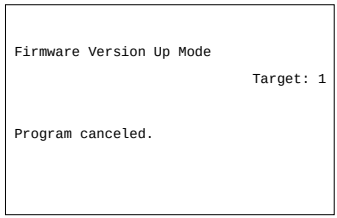
7. The following screen will be displayed after firmware data is updated.
   In the case of 1 – 6:
   If you want to update other area continuously, press [START] key and repeat the operation from step 5.
   After finished, turn off the power or depress [CLEAR] key.



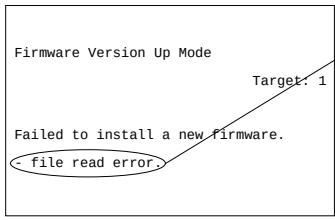
In the case of #1 - #3:
The following screen is displayed after finished.



8. Press CLEAR key to cancel downloading on the way.
   However, it becomes unable to cancel after start of elimination process of flash ROM.



9. When failing in update, the following error message is displayed.
   (If the error occurs, “Recovery Mode” starts automatically when you turns on the power next time. See 10:Recovery mode)



ERROR MESSAGE
- file read error.
- file information error.
- unfit device.
- device erase error.
- device write error.
- verify error.
- cannot set NvRAM flags.

10. Recovery mode
When you turns on the power after an error occurs, you'll see following display.

```
Firmware Version Up Mode


Recovery mode : target 3-6 failed
>make a connection from PC
```

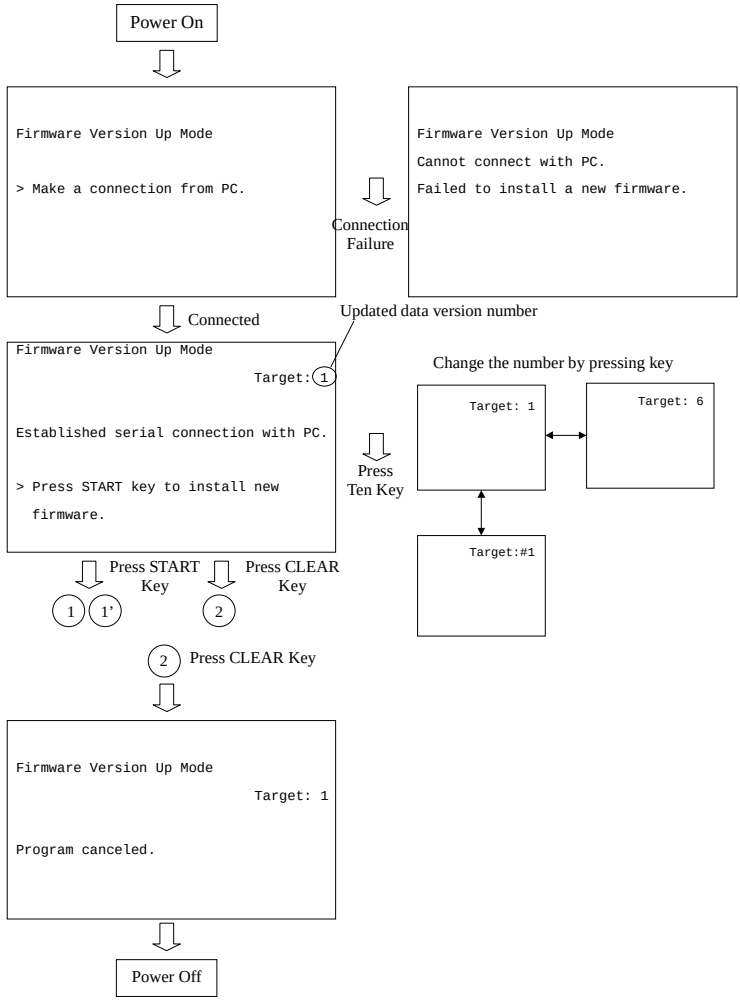
Connect with dial up network(See procedure 3), and the display changes as follows.

```
Firmware Version Up Mode
                              Target: #3
Recovery mode : target 3-6 failed
>Press START key to install new firmware
```

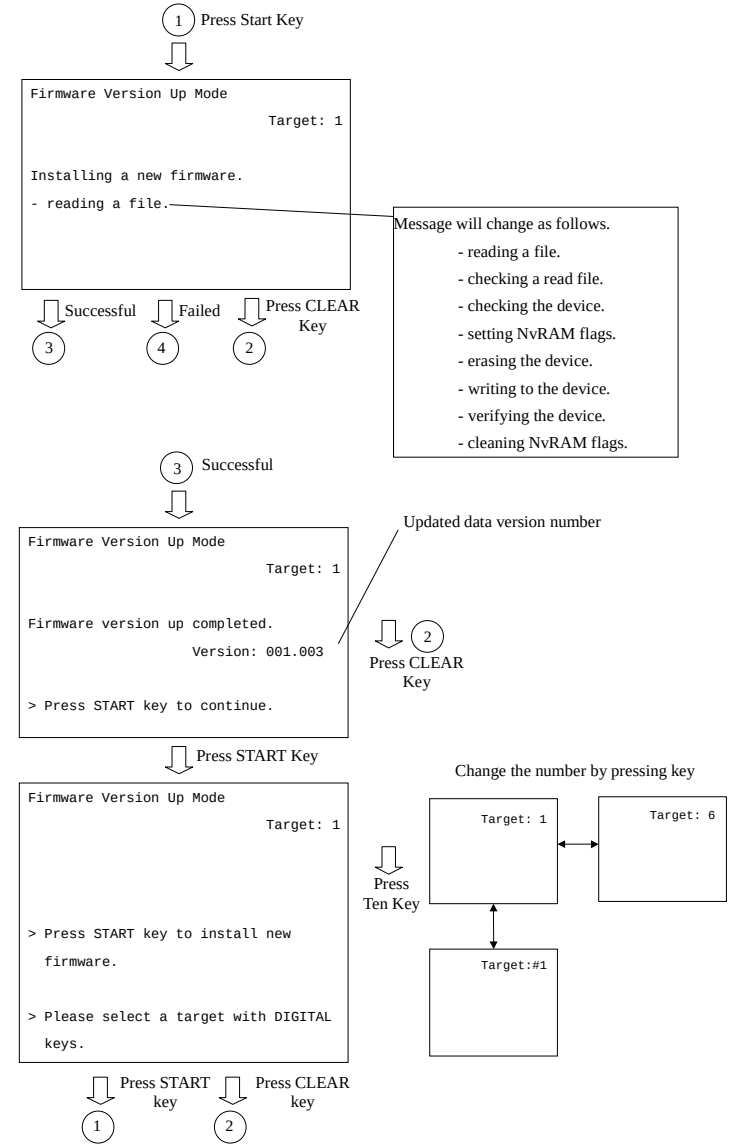
Further procedure is the same as normal sequence.

6.4 Screen Details

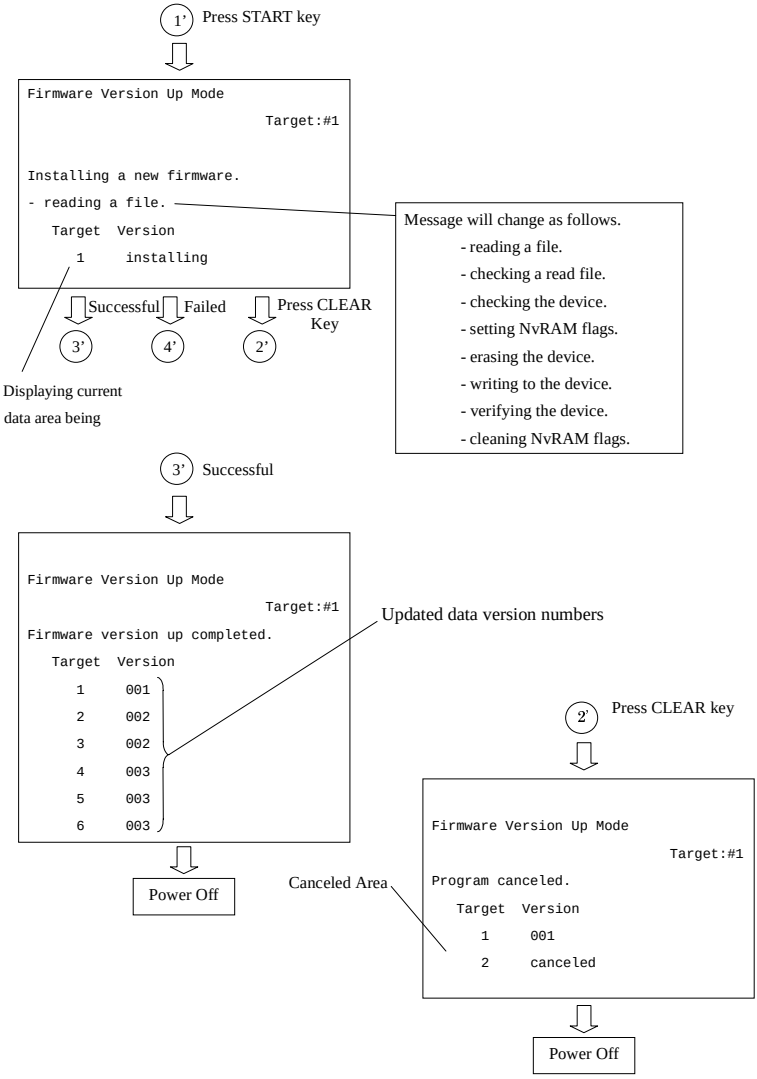
The following screen will be displayed in [3][9] mode.



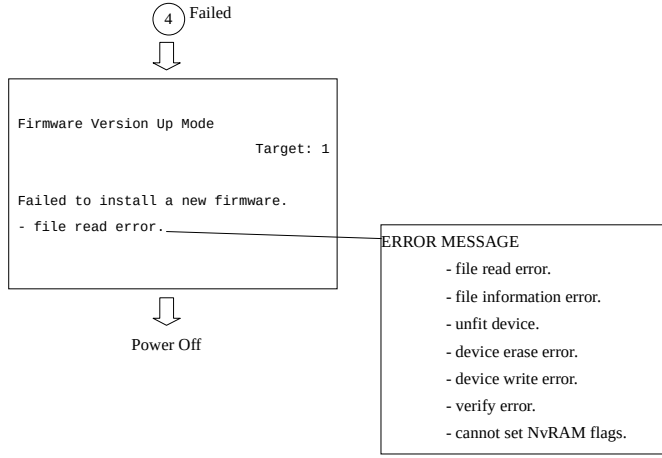
In the case of 1 – 6:



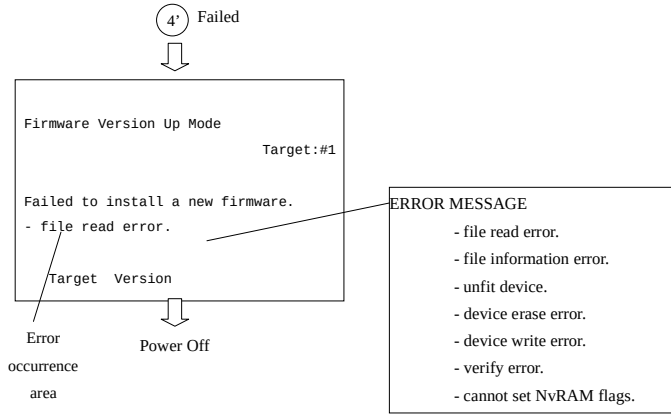
In the case of #1- #3:



In the case of 1 – 6:

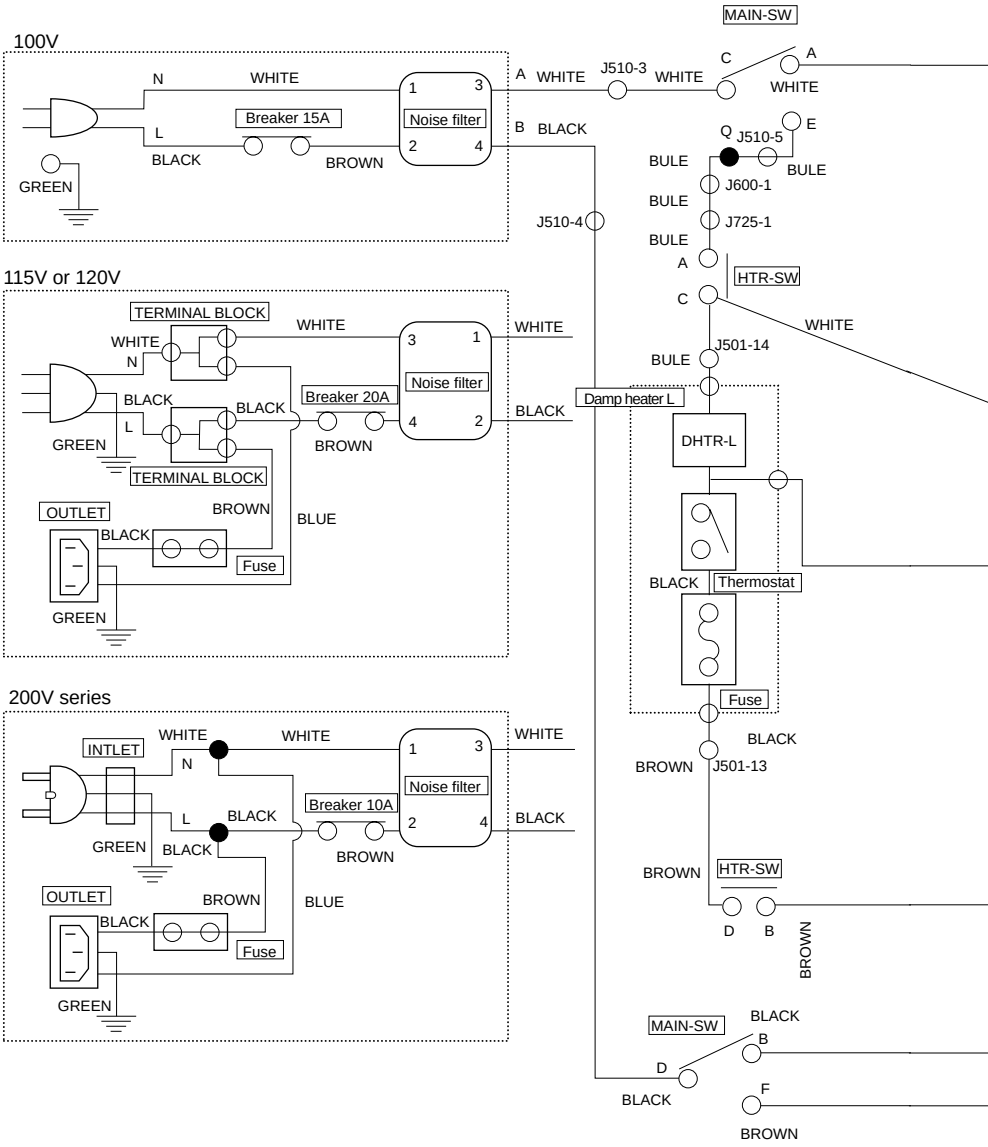


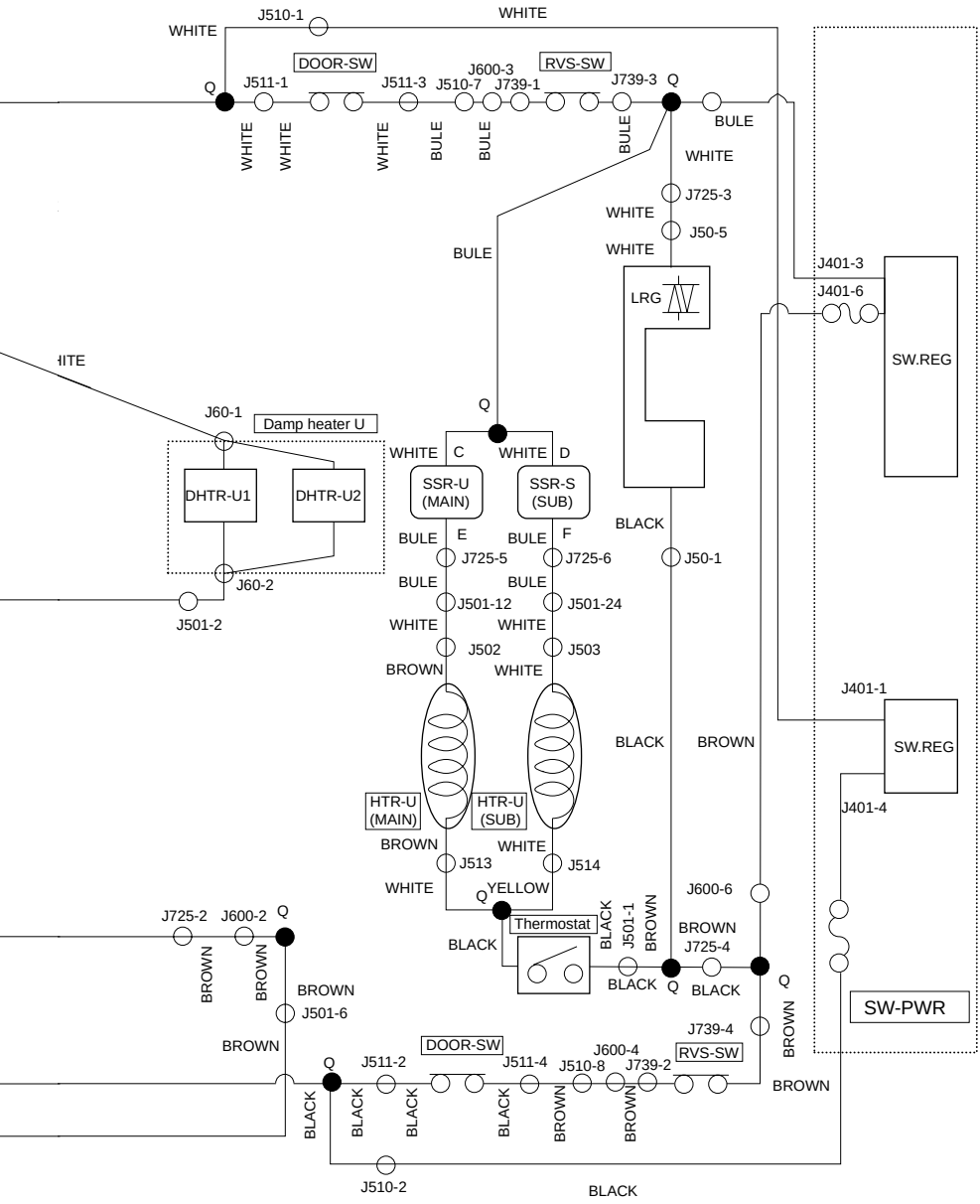
In the case of #1 - #3:



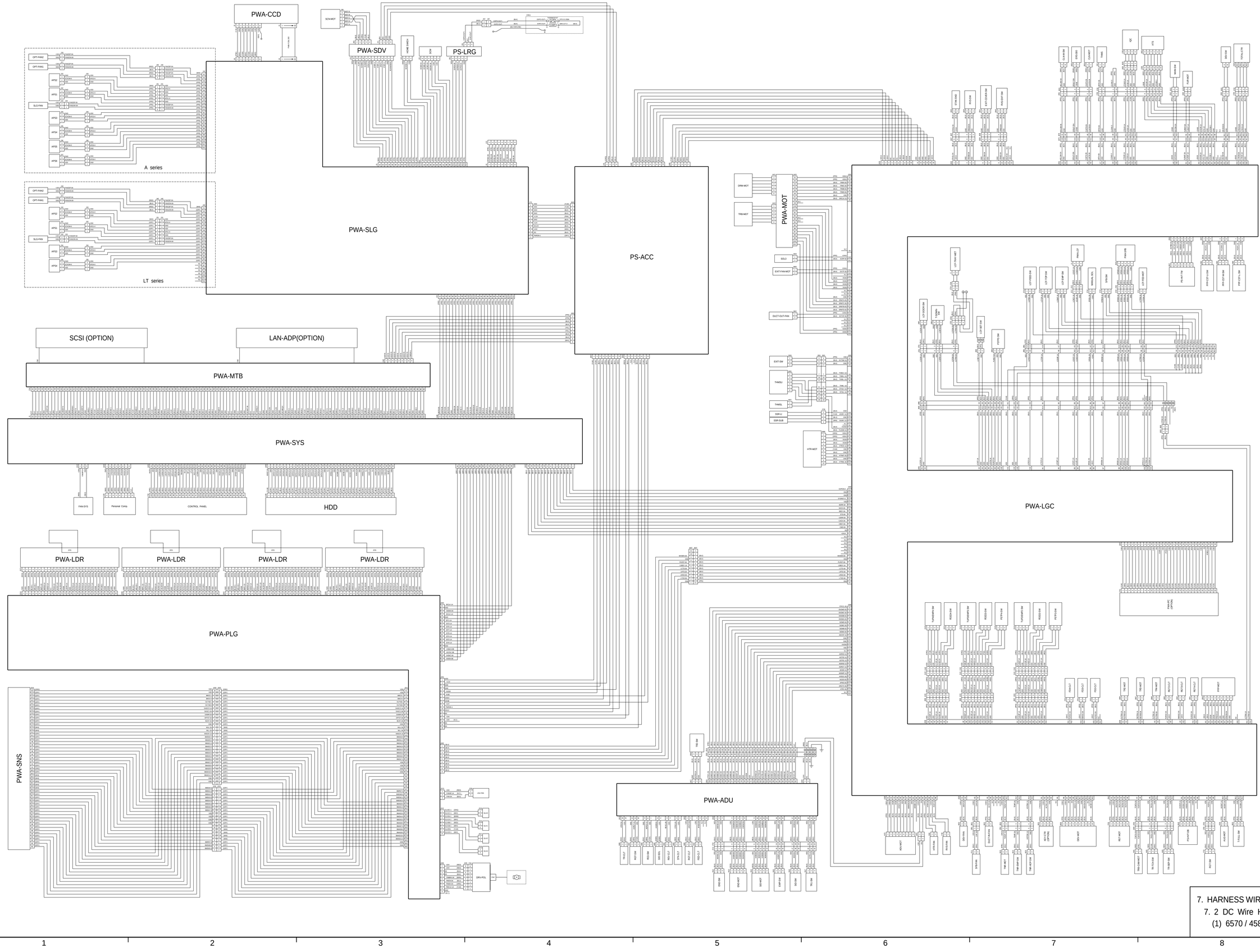
7. HARNESS WIRING DIAGRAMS

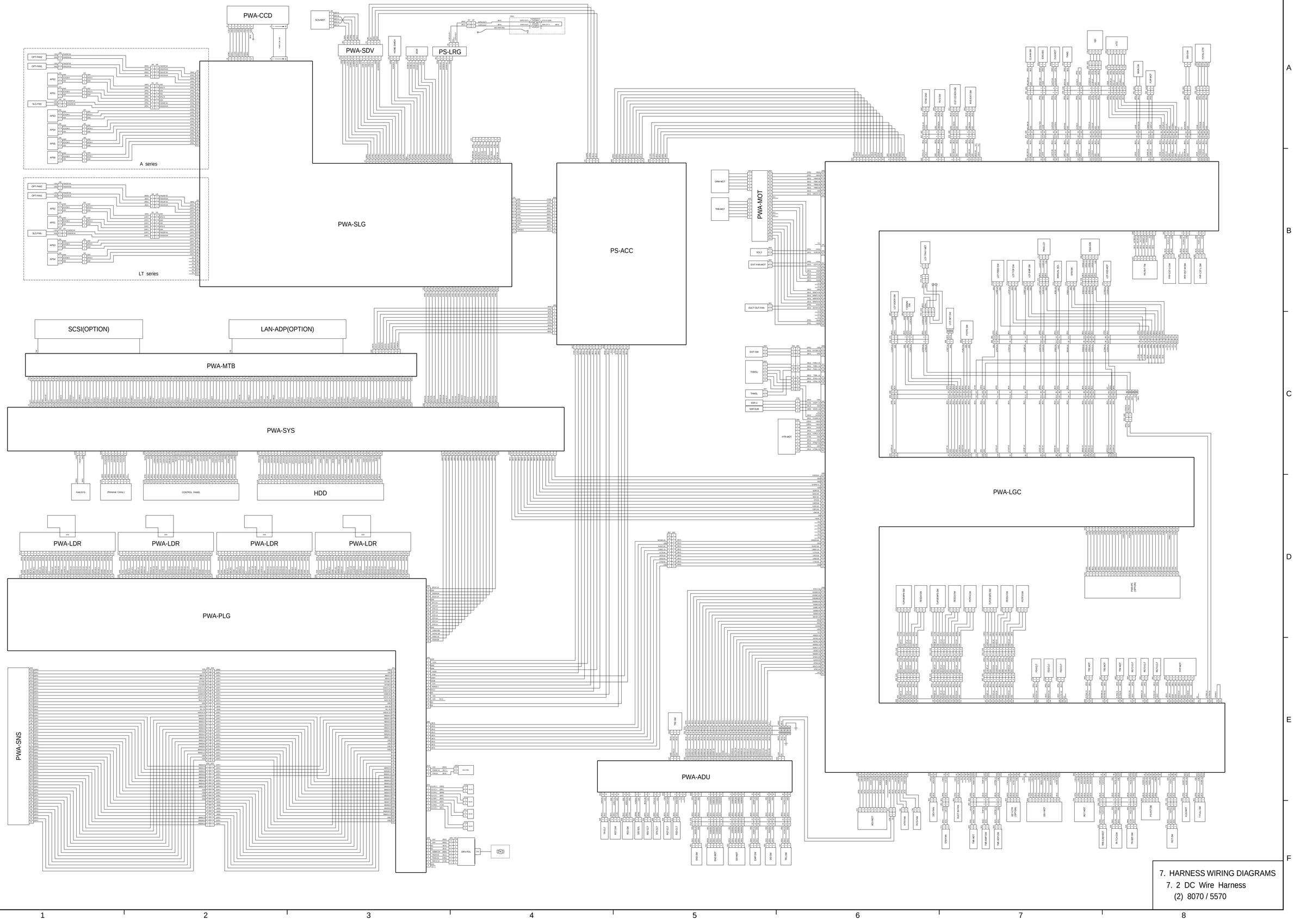
7.1 AC Wire Harness




J510-1
WHITE
WHITE
DOOR-SW
RVS-SW
J600-3
Q
J511-1
J511-3
J510-7
J739-1
J739-3
Q
BULE
WHITE
WHITE
WHITE
BULE
BULE
BULE
WHITE
J725-3
WHITE
J50-5
WHITE
BULE
LRG
J401-3
J401-6
SW.REG
ITE
J60-1
Damp heater U
Q
WHITE
C
WHITE
D
DHTR-U1
DHTR-U2
SSR-U
(MAIN)
SSR-S
(SUB)
BULE
E
BULE
F
BLACK
J725-5
J725-6
J50-1
J60-2
BULE
BULE
J501-12
J501-24
J501-2
WHITE
WHITE
J502
J503
BROWN
WHITE
J401-1
SW.REG
BLACK
BROWN
HTR-U
(MAIN)
HTR-U
(SUB)
J401-4
BROWN
WHITE
J513
J514
WHITE
Q
YELLOW
J600-6
J725-2
J600-2
Q
Thermostat
BLACK
BLACK
J501-1
BROWN
BROWN
J725-4
BROWN
J501-6
BLACK
Q
BLACK
Q
SW-PWR
BROWN
J739-4
BROWN
DOOR-SW
J600-4
RVS-SW
Q
J511-2
J511-4
J510-8
J739-2
BROWN
BLACK
BLACK
BLACK
BLACK
BROWN
BROWN
J510-2
BLACK

7.2 DC Wire Harness


PWA-CCD
PWA-SDV
PS-LRG
PWA-SLG
PS-ACC
PWA-MOT
PWA-LGC
PWA-MTB
SCSI (OPTION)
LAN-ADP(OPTION)
PWA-SYS
FAN-SYS
Personal Comp
CONTROL PANEL
HDD
PWA-LDR
PWA-LDR
PWA-LDR
PWA-LDR
PWA-PLG
PWA-SNS
PWA-ADU
A series
LT series
SCN MOT
DRM-MOT
TRB-MOT
EXIT-SW
THMSU
THMSL
SSR-U
SSR-SUB
HTR-MOT
EXT-FAN-MOT
DUCT-OUT-FAN
SOL3
PWA-LCF
PWA-STB
PWA-PWR
PWB-I/F
PWB-OPTION
DRV-POL
7. HARNESS WIRING DIAGRAMS
7. 2 DC Wire Harness
(1) 6570 / 4580


PWA-CCD
SCN MOT
PWA-SDV
PS-LRG
PWA-SLG
PS-ACC
PWA-MOT
PWA-LGC
PWA-MTB
SCSI(OPTION)
LAN-ADP(OPTION)
PWA-SYS
FAN-SYS
(Personal Comp.)
CONTROL PANEL
HDD
PWA-LDR
PWA-LDR
PWA-LDR
PWA-LDR
PWA-PLG
PWA-SNS
PWA-ADU
A series
LT series
OPT-FAN2
OPT-FAN1
APS2
APS1
SLG-FAN
APS3
APS4
APS5
APS6
DRM-MOT
TRB-MOT
SOL3
EXIT-FAN-MOT
DUCT-OUT-FAN
EXIT-SW
THMSU
THMSL
SSR-U
SSR-SUB
HTR-MOT
DRV-POL
PWA-LCF
PWA-SPB
PWA-TTM
PWA-OPC
PWA-OPC
PWA-OPC
PWA-OPC
PWA-SPC
PWA-SPC
PWA-S

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

TOSHIBA

TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION
1-1, KANDA NISHIKI-CHO, CHIYODA-KU, TOKYO, 101-8442, JAPAN